

ATHOPHYSIOLOGY IN *Surgery*

JAMES D. HARDY, MS (Chem) MD FACS

*Professor and Chairman Department of Surgery and Director of
Surgical Research University of Mississippi Medical Center
Surgeon in Chief Hospital of the University of Mississippi Chief
Surgical Consultant Jackson Veterans Hospital and Mississippi
Tuberculosis Sanatorium*



BALTIMORE

THE WILLIAMS & WILKINS COMPANY

1958

Copyright ©, 1958

THE WILLIAMS & WILKINS COMPANY

Made in the United States of America

Library of Congress

Catalog Card Number

58-8596

Composed and Printed at the

WAVERLY PRESS, INC

Baltimore 2, Md, U S A

To
I S Rardin

Preface

This book had its inception four years ago. At that time an invitation from the publishers to assemble a volume in the field of surgical physiology was at first declined. However, the invitation began its subtle ferment, and I presently found myself examining existing pertinent publications with increasing interest. It gradually became apparent, to me, that existing works on surgical physiology perhaps did not present the available material as one felt it might most effectively be utilized. Therefore, when an adroitly conceived third prompting note arrived, I signed a contract for a manuscript to be delivered at what proved to be an exceedingly optimistic date.

The next step was to impose upon about a dozen friends, asking each to suggest ten areas which he felt should be covered in a surgical physiology. This they very kindly did, and there was a remarkable unanimity in their replies. For the most part, the subjects suggested comprised the standard work-a-day physiology of surgical practice, and such material was utilized as the central core of the "practical" material of the volume.

Nevertheless, to have confined the volume solely to what was considered "standard" surgical physiology would have been to deny oneself the anticipation of constructing a work which might more accurately supply the advanced needs of the contemporary surgeon. It was felt that the striking reapproachment that had recently come about among the disciplines of anatomy, chemistry, internal medicine, microbiology, pathology, physical physiology, and surgery should be reflected in the volume in a functional way. Therefore, many collateral subjects not usually considered as representing 'surgical' physiology have been included.

Guiding Philosophy. One major aim was to construct a work which would represent a fusion of "medical" with "surgical" physiology. Certainly the surgeon has in recent years become much more of an internist, and internists are now frequently in the operating room and surgical suite. A second objective was to emphasize the fundamental unity of the human organism which is achieved through three major coordinators: the nervous system, the circulatory system, and the endocrine system. Third, the intent was to distill the physiologic information in such a way as to bring the applicable material to bear directly at the patient care level in most instances. Numerous case studies have been used to further cement this union between physiology and daily practice.

Selection of Material. One of the more difficult problems was that of selecting the material to be used, once the over-all outline had been constructed. As the volume was to run to some 500 printed pages, not counting illustrations, some process of selection was essential to achieve a balanced work.

The following criteria for selection were applied: (1) Did the material bear directly upon the care of the patient? (2) Did it represent information which, while as yet not immediately "practical," would prepare the reader to utilize advances that were likely to develop in the next decade? (3) Did it afford an opportunity to achieve correlation, to emphasize that all physiologic activities are interrelated, and to provide a balanced volume?

Treatment of Material A matter of genuine importance, always, is that of deciding upon the method of presentation of material. The liberal use of diagrams, along with the aforementioned use of case studies, was conceived of as a unifying framework into which the physiologic principles might be drawn.

The use of the English language was also given much thought. One has but to enjoy the graphic case reports and editorials of many British writers, as well as those of a few journals in the United States, to appreciate the solid impact of the vernacular. If in describing the physiologic factors involved in the case report the writer can make the reader remember the patient he saw day before yesterday, then the reader will remember the physiology involved. Therefore, since the British themselves flex the language to achieve realistic clarity, it was felt that an American might be permitted a similar—though of course less extensive—freedom.

The Problems and Rewards of Single Authorship Single authorship books of this length are less prevalent than they once were, though there are indications that the pendulum is swinging back a bit. There is the question of the thoroughness with which one individual can write about multiple fields of endeavor. For could not specialists in hematology, neurosurgery, and cardiology discuss coagulation defects, increased intracranial pressure, and interventricular septal defects in much greater detail? They doubtless might—but is it greater detail that the general surgeon needs? Or is it a concise summary of the essentials in a given field that are required, not for the practice of that specialty, but for the practice of general surgery? The general surgeon, writing for general surgeons, has the definite advantage of seeing the problems in the perspective of the general surgeon. The inclusion of much extraneous material is thus avoided.

It was noted at the beginning that this book has been long in the writing. Or, more accurately, the final manuscript has been long in delivery to the publisher. For several early chapters have been completely rewritten, not to mention repeated drafts of all chapters. And herein lies a major problem of single authorship, namely, that of keeping the earlier chapters up to date as the later ones are completed. Even so, despite the extra work entailed in rewriting, the long period of gestation has been good for the maturity of the volume. Looking back, the earlier chapters were later revised because the author had considerably broadened, deepened, and extended his knowledge and experience in the field. For once one is aware that he is to write on a particular subject, every patient, publication, and conversation becomes as grist to the mill. As he turns his full attention to a given disease process, he views the problems with an intensity and critical perception that were often lacking before.

Another reward of single authorship is that of knowing the volume from beginning to end. This awareness makes for better correlation and fusion of the many subjects considered. Furthermore, it vastly increases the range of medical interest of the writer, thus enhancing the flavor of everyday surgical practice. For, of course, the value of a knowledge of physiology, of "how it works", is to set the surgeon free from the shackles of the unknown. If in addition to technique he learns also what can be done—and what must *not* be done—to cure the patient physiologically, he can view and enjoy work-a-day practice with a most satisfying perspective. Knowledge promotes freedom of action.

CONTENTS

The first ten chapters deal with the physiology of injury, body fluid physiology, surgical nutrition, connective tissue, wound healing and homotransplantation,

thermal burns the etiology, spread, and control of cancer radiation and radioactive isotopes, surgical enzymology and the biology of aging And these chapters serve as an introduction to the consideration of diseases of the various organs which follows in the next eleven chapters. The chapter on injury begins with a highway accident and concludes with a consideration of the metabolic response to trauma The chapter devoted to body constituents relates both normal and abnormal electrolyte metabolism, with some concrete suggestions as to therapy In each of the other chapters the physiologic implications and indications in therapy are touched upon

The eleven chapters dealing with surgical diseases of different organs usually begin with a brief survey of normal physiology and then proceed to pathophysiology and the therapeutic problems involved

It was not easy to decide whether the material concerning the circulation should be divided into three chapters or be included in one After much vacillation it was included in one with the objective of emphasizing the unity of the physiologic processes involved

Illustrations Particular care and emphasis have been devoted to the illustrations Many of the composites of diseases affecting particular organs were meticulously constructed by Dr Jorge A Rodriguez The extensive illustrative material has had as its special purpose the emphasis of the more practical clinical considerations

References Much reflection was given to the problem of how to handle the references Of the several thousand sources consulted in the over all preparation of the volume a great majority might very legitimately have been included At first it was felt that a comprehensive list should be appended at the end of each chapter Later it was felt that a minimum number should be used Finally, a middle course was followed First sources actually quoted had obviously to be included Second original articles were listed when feasible Not all of these could be verified with the facilities available to us and in some instances a simple statement of 'not read' has been employed Even so prolonged tedious effort has been expended in the pursuit of recording references accurately Third, a few general review references in each field have usually been listed

It is still a matter of regret nevertheless that space could not permit the listing of many fine articles which were quite pertinent to the discussion but which were not needed and were in the end not used In amassing information of the range and type included in this book one comes to know, in a very gratifying way the minds and outlook of a great many investigators and clinicians

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The opportunity to express appreciation to one's friends and associates is always one of the happier moments to be realized in writing a book My first acknowledgement must be to my wife for her understanding and forbearance and to my small children for leaving their father's papers alone

Next I should like to thank Miss Mary Ruth Clayton Miss Betty Anne Crocker Miss Virginia Ward and Miss Edith Hart for assistance with the manuscript Mr John H. Dickson Director of Medical Illustrations has also been most helpful

Appreciation is expressed for the courtesy of the following colleagues in reading the indicated chapters in galley proof Dr Warren N Bell, Associate Professor of Medicine and Chief of the Clinical Laboratories and Hematology—the Chapter

on Blood Transfusion, Coagulation Defects, and Diseases of the Spleen, Dr Thomas M Blake, Assistant Professor of Medicine and Director of the Heart Station—The Circulation, Dr. J Kenneth Seale, Assistant Professor of Anesthesiology—The Physiology of Anesthesia Some Points for Surgeons, Dr Josef R Smith, Director of the Pulmonary Function Section—The Chapter on the Lung, and Dr J Robert Snively, Professor and Chairman of the Department of Medicine—The Liver, Gallbladder, and Biliary Tract

Lastly, special appreciation is extended to the Editors and Staff of The Williams and Wilkins Company for the great care with which the submitted manuscript was prepared for galley proof, for their unfailing patience and courtesy, and for the handsome volume which they have achieved

JAMES D. HARDY, M D
Jackson, Mississippi

Table of Contents

Preface	vii
✓ The Physiology of Injury	1
n Management of Acute Trauma	1
1 A Patient and an Injury	1
2 Clinical Recapitulation Some Principles of Trauma Management	5
b Systemic Response to Injury	8
c The Metabolic Response to Acute Trauma and to Anesthesia Operation	11
1 The Neuroendocrine Response	11
2 Activation of the Stress Response	13
3 Salt and Water Metabolism in Stress	14
✓ 4 Nitrogen Metabolism in Stress	15
5 Carbohydrate Metabolism in Stress	18
6 Lipid Metabolism in Stress	19
7 Miscellaneous Further Comments on the Stress Response	20
✓ 2 d The Stages of Convalescence	21
✓ Body Constituents Water and Solids	28
a Body Composition	28
1 Methods of Measuring Body Water and Solids	28
2 Total Body Water and the Body Fluid Compartments	29
3 The Maintenance of the Volumes of the Individual Water Compartments	32
4 Body Solids	34
b Acid Base Regulation	35
1 Certain Definitions	35
2 Regulation of Blood pH	37
3 The Ratio of Sodium Bicarbonate to Carbonic Acid Key to Practical Acid Base Management	40
c Hormonal Factors In Body Fluid Metabolism	41
1 General Survey of Hormonal Influences	42
2 The Adrenal Cortex Principal Hormonal Organ in Water and Salt Metabolism	43
d Renal Function	45
1 Role in Maintenance of Volume and Composition of the Body Fluid Compartments	45
e Daily Water Balance	48
f Types of Fluid Imbalance	49
1 Water and/or Salt Depletion	49
2 Water and Salt Excess	52
3 General Comments on Edema Formation	54
4 Plasma Sodium Levels Normal, Low and High	61
5 The 'Third Space' Concept	62
6 Potassium Metabolism and the Correction of Potassium Deficits	63

7	Miscellaneous Potassium Effects	63
8.	Clinical Potassium Deficiency	65
g	A General Approach to Fluid Therapy	67
1	Diagnosis of Fluid Imbalance	67
h	Specific Pathologic Fluid States in Surgery	69
1	Pyloric Obstruction with Vomiting Mixed Water and Salt Loss with Metabolic Alkalosis	69
2	Small Bowel Obstruction	72
3	Small Bowel Fistula	73
4	Biliary and Pancreatic Fistulas	74
5	Renal Insufficiency	74
6	Management of Acute Oliguria	76
3	Surgical Nutrition	83
a	Importance of Nutrition In Surgical Patients	83
1	General Considerations	83
2	Effects of Experimental Human Starvation	83
3	Special Surgical Problems Resulting from Nutritional Inadequacy	85
4	Disturbed Organ Function—Further Comment	86
5	Nutritional Edema, Vitamin Deficiencies, and Specific Amino Acid Deficiencies	87
6	Deleterious Effects of Overnutrition	88
7.	Causes of Obesity	88
b.	Methods for Studying Nutritional Processes	89
c	Factors That Influence Spontaneous Food Intake	91
1.	Appetite	91
2.	Thirst	93
d	Functions of Dietary Components in Metabolism	93
1.	Protein	93
2	Fats	94
3	Carbohydrates	95
4	Further Interrelationships between Fat and Protein Metabolism	95
5.	Some Additional Factors in Nutritional Metabolism	97
e.	Special Nutritional Problems In Surgery	98
1.	General Comment	98
2.	Nutrition Following Gastric Resection	99
f	Routes and Materials for Therapeutic Alimentation	99
4.	The Physiology of Connective Tissue, Wound Healing, and Homotrans- plantation of Tissues	104
a.	Physiology of Loose Areolar Connective Tissue· A Few Notes	104
1	Ground Substance	104
2.	Fibrillar Elements	105
b	The Dynamic State of Connective Tissue	106
c.	The Healing of Wounds	106
1	Histophysiology	106
2	The Stages of Wound Healing	107
3	Healing by First Intention, Delayed Primary Closure, Healing by Second Intention, and Healing by Third Intention or Second- ary Suture	108
4	The Healing of Individual Tissues	108

5	Local Factors which Influence Wound Healing	
6	General Factors in Wound Healing	
7	Clinical Wound Management	
8	The Infected Wound	
9	Wound Disruption Causes, Prevention and Management	
d	Transplantation of Tissues	
1	Historical Review	
2	Modern Ideas and Experimentation in Homografts	
3	Behavior of Autogenous Human Tissue Grafts	
4	Homografts	
✓	Surgical Microbiology	
ii	Relationships between Microorganisms and Host	
1	When Does Bacterial Infection Become Bacteremia	
2	Normal Mechanisms for Clearing Bacteria from Blood	
3	A Consideration of Bacterial Invasion Criteria	
4	The Increased Susceptibility of the Diabetic Patient	
5	Immunity and Inflammation Further Considerations	
6	Systemic Effects of Infection	
b	Clinical Infections and Their Control	
1	Interpretation of Blood Cultures	
2	Suppuration and Drainage	
3	Antibiotics General Biologic Principles	
4	Use of Antibiotics in Clinical Infections	
5	Some Surgical Infections of Special Importance	
6	Use of ACTH and Cortisone in Infections	
7	Chemotherapy of Tuberculosis	
8	Fungous Diseases	
9	Tetanus Infection and Management	
6	The Pathophysiology of Thermal Burns	
a	Types of Thermal Injury	265
1	Agents	266
2	Magnitude of the Burn	267
3	Prognosis in Burns	
✓b	General Systemic Response	270
1	Neuroendocrine Reaction	270
2	Other Visceral Responses	270
3	Fluid and Electrolyte Metabolism in Burns	271
c	Principles of Treatment	274
1	General Supportive Measures	274
2	The Burn Wounds	275
3	Some Complications of an Extensive Burn	276
4	Emotional Aspects of the Burn	276
✓	Some Physiologic Considerations in Cancer Control	276
a.	Etiology of Cancer	
1	Hereditary Factors	
2	Chronic Irritation Theory	
3	Hormones in Carcinogenesis	
4	The Role of Nutrition in the Gen-	

5	More Fundamental Considerations in Carcinogenesis	171
b	Mechanism of Local Cancer Invasion and of Metastasis to Distant Sites	175
1	The Nature of Invasiveness	175
2	Mechanisms of Blood-Borne Metastasis	176
3	Factors Affecting the Distribution of Metastatic Tumors	178
4	Other Factors In Tumor Spread and Recurrence	179
c.	General Effects of Cancer upon the Patient	179
1	Malignant Cachexia	179
2	Chemical Changes in Cancer	180
3	Remote Effects of Certain Tumors	181
d	Physiologic Considerations in the Treatment of Cancer	181
1	The Unpredictability of the Individual Tumor	181
2	The Hormonal Therapy of Cancer	181
3	Cancer Chemotherapy	185
✓ 8	Radiation and Radioactive Isotopes	188
a	Radiation	188
1.	Historical Aspects	188
2	Types of Radiation	188
3	Mechanisms of Radiation Energy Transfer	190
4	The Concept of Ionization	191
5	Biochemical Aspects of Radiation Changes	191
6	Effects on Enzymes	193
7	Radiation Effects on Microorganisms, on Cell and Chromosomal Structure, in Genetics, and in Carcinogenesis	193
8	General Physiologic Effects in Mammals Including Man	194
9	Protection Against Ionizing Radiation Injury	196
10	The Modification of Radiobiologic Effect in Simple Systems	196
11	Radiation Dosage Units	197
12	Other Clinical Considerations in Regard to Radiation Therapy	198
b	Medical Uses of Isotopes Research, Diagnosis and Therapy	200
1	Use of Isotopes in Research	201
2	Diagnostic Uses of Isotopes	202
3	Use of Isotopes in Therapy	204
✓ 9	Surgical Enzymology—The Importance of Enzymes and Their Use in Diagnosis and Treatment	206
a	Rôle of Enzymes in Biochemistry	206
b	Use of Enzymes in Diagnosis	209
c	Use of Enzymes in Treatment	210
1	Hyaluronidase	211
2	Streptokinase—Streptodornase (SK-SD)	212
3	Therapeutic Uses of Trypsin	214
10	The Biology of Aging—A Few Notes	216
a	Scope of the Problem	216
1	Some Methods of Study	217
b	The Aging Process in Different Organs	217
c	Surgical Aspects of Aging	219
✓ 11	The Liver, Gallbladder, and Biliary Tract	220
a	The Liver	220

1 Functional Anatomy	220
2 Liver Functions	220
3 Liver Function Tests	224
4 Acute Liver Failure	227
5 Same Pathologic Changes in Hepatic Disease Further Discussion	228
6 Biliary Ductal Disorders Obstruction	229
7 Differential Diagnosis of Jaundice	230
8 Bile Peritonitis	235
9 Portal Hypertension Surgical Problem in a Medical Disease	235
The Gallbladder and Biliary Tract	241
1 Functions of the Gallbladder	241
2 Acute Cholecystitis	243
3 Common Bile Duct Obstruction	246
4 Biliary Dyskinesia—the Postcholecystectomy Syndrome	247
The Pancreas	250
Surgical Anatomy	250
The External (Exocrine) Secretion of the Pancreas and Its Nervous and Humoral Control	251
1 Pancreatic Juice Composition	251
2 Regulation of Pancreatic Secretion	252
Effects of Total Pancreatectomy	254
1 Pancreatic Function Tests	256
Acute Pancreatitis	258
1 Etiology	258
2 The Clinical Attack of Pancreatitis	260
3 Some Practical Points in Conservative Management	262
4 Complications of Acute Pancreatitis	262
Chronic Relapsing Pancreatitis	264
1 Physiologic Considerations in the Management of Chronic Relapsing Pancreatitis	265
1 Fibrocystic Disease of the Pancreas	266
1 Tumors of the Pancreas	267
Blood Transfusion Problems Bloodclotting and Coagulation Defects and Splenic Dysfunction	270
1 Blood Transfusion Problems	270
1 Blood Groups A Few Fundamentals	270
2 Complications of Blood Transfusion	271
1 Blood Clotting and Coagulation Defects	274
1 Mechanism of Coagulation	274
2 Physical and Chemical Properties of the Clotting Factors	275
3 Natural Inhibitors of Blood Coagulation	276
4 Fibrinolysis	276
5 Diagnosis and Treatment of Coagulation Defects in Surgical Patients	276
6 Management of Postoperative Bleeding	277
1 Splenic Dysfunction	280
1 Functions of the Normal Spleen	280
2 Hypersplenism	281
The Alimentary Tract	287

a	The Salivary Glands	287
b	The Esophagus	288
1	General Remarks	288
2	Esophageal Diverticulum	289
3	Caustic Stricture	290
4	Tracheoesophageal Fistulas	290
5	Esophageal Tumors	290
6	Esophageal Varices with Hemorrhage	290
7	Cardiospasm	291
8	Peptic Esophagitis	293
9	Spontaneous Rupture of the Esophagus	294
10	Diaphragmatic Hernia	295
c	Physiologic Basis of Gastric Surgery	298
1	Physiology of Gastric Secretion	299
2	Peptic Ulcer	304
a	Etiology and Pathogenesis	304
b	Mechanism of Ulcer Pain	306
c	Gastric vs Duodenal Ulcer	308
d	Physiologic Principles of Peptic Ulcer Management	309
e	Complications of Peptic Ulcer	310
f	Operations for Peptic Ulcer—Physiologic Pros and Cons	313
1	Complications of Gastric Resection	319
d	Pathologic Physiology of the Small and Large Bowel	322
1	Survey of Normal Secretory, Absorptive, and Motor Functions of the Small Bowel	322
2	Small Bowel Insufficiency	324
3	Small Bowel Fistula	326
4	Intestinal Obstruction	327
5	Paralytic Ileus	335
6	Regional Enteritis	336
7	Mesenteric Vascular Occlusion	337
8	Diverticula of the Intestine	338
9	Intestinal Neoplasms	339
10	Ileostomy	340
11	Appendicitis	341
12	Chronic Idiopathic Ulcerative Colitis	341
13	Congenital Megacolon (Hirschsprung's Disease)	342
✓ 15.	The Circulatory System	347
a	The General Circulation	347
1	Factors in Normal Blood Pressure Maintenance	347
2	Shock	355
3	Controlled Hypotension during Anesthesia	363
4	Arterial Hypertension	364
b	Body Temperature Regulation Normal Physiology, Fever, and Hypothermia	365
1	Normal Physiology	365
2	Fever	368
3	Hypothermia	372
c	The Heart and Great Vessels of the Thorax	373

1	Nervous and Chemical Influences upon the Heart	373
2	Acquired Heart Lesions The Physiology of Conditions for Which Surgery May Be Performed	376
a	Acute Pericardial Tamponade	376
b	Ischemia of the Myocardium	380
c	Diseases of the Mitral Valve	383
d	Aortic Stenosis	390
e	Aortic Insufficiency	391
3	Congenital Heart Lesions	392
a	Patent Ductus Arteriosus	393
b	Coarctation of the Aorta	396
c	Tetralogy of Fallot	399
d	Pulmonic Stenosis	403
e	Interatrial Septal Defect	404
f	Interventricular Septal Defect	406
g	Transposition of the Pulmonary Veins	408
h	Transposition of the Aorta and Pulmonary Artery	410
d	The Peripheral Vessels Pathophysiology and Therapeutic Principles	410
1	The Diagnosis of Vascular Disease	410
2	Immersion Foot Trench Foot, and Frostbite	418
3	Raynaud's Phenomenon and Raynaud's Disease	421
4	Causes of Pain in the Upper Extremity	425
5	Arteriosclerosis Obliterans	431
6	Sudden Arterial Occlusion (Embolism and Thrombosis)	436
7	Arterial Aneurysms	439
8	Traumatic Arterial Injuries	444
9	Disease of the Veins	451
a	Methods of Studying Venous Disease	452
b	Varicose Veins	453
c	Thrombophlebitis and Postphlebitic Sequelae	456
d	The Postphlebitic Syndrome Chronic Venous Insufficiency	458
e	Principles of Management of Stasis Ulcers of the Lower Leg	458
f	Miscellaneous Other Manifestations of Thrombotic Disease of Veins	460
✓ 10	The Lungs	468
a	The Physiology of Respiration	468
1	Control of Pulmonary Ventilation	468
2	Mechanics of Pulmonary Ventilation	472
3	Functional Anatomy of the Lungs	476
4	Lung Volumes and Capacities	479
5	Lung Function Tests	481
b	Pathophysiology of Certain Representative Thoracic Conditions	493
1	Respiratory Dysfunction Due to Excision of Pulmonary Tissue	493
2	Indications and Value of Pulmonary Decortication	494
3	Abnormalities of the Pulmonary Circulation Further Comment	494
a	Bronchomotor Tone Rôle in Regulation of Pulmonary Circulation	496
b	Pulmonary Arteriovenous Shunts	498

c Pulmonary Embolism	499
4 Acute and Chronic Pulmonary Emphysema	501
5 Intrathoracic Tumors	502
6. Lung Cysts	504
7 Chronic Pulmonary Infection Bronchiectasis, Lung Abscess, and Tuberculosis	506
8 Thoracic Trauma	509
9 Severe Hemoptysis Causes and Management	510
17 The Physiology of Anesthesia Some Points for Surgeons	512
a. Role of Preanesthetic Medication	512
b Inhalation Anesthesia	512
1 Broad Principles	512
2 The Signs of the Various Stages and Planes of General Anes- thesia	514
3 Reflexes of Importance in the Conduct of Anesthesia Further Comment	516
4 Controlled Respiration	518
c Commonly Used Anesthetic Agents	519
1 Some Volatile Liquids and Inhalation Gases	519
2 Intravenous Agents	520
d Spinal Anesthesia	522
1 Agents	522
2 Complications	522
e Complications of Anesthesia in General	523
1 Respiratory Difficulties	523
2 Other Circulatory Disturbances	523
3 Cardiac Standstill and Ventricular Fibrillation	525
18. The Endocrine System	531
a The Pituitary	531
1 Anterior Pituitary	531
2 Posterior Pituitary	534
b The Thyroid	534
1 Iodine Cycle Rôle in Histologic Appearance of the Gland	535
2 Mechanism of Action of Thyroid Hormones	539
3 Hyperthyroidism	539
4 Physiologic Considerations in Nontoxic Goiter Diffuse and Nodular	547
5 Post-Thyroidectomy Complications	549
6 Relation of Thyroid Gland to Other Endocrine Glands	552
7 Thyroiditis	553
c The Parathyroid Glands	554
1 Historical Notes	554
2 Normal Physiology	554
3 Hyperparathyroidism Diagnosis and Management	555
d The Adrenal Cortex	564
1 Hyperadrenocorticism	564
2 Cushing's Syndrome	565
3 Adrenogenital Syndrome	571
4 Primary Aldosteronism	578

5	Adrenocortical Insufficiency	578
6	Complications of Adrenocortical Therapy for Conditions Other Than Adrenal Insufficiency	580
e	The Adrenal Medulla	581
1	Phochromocytoma	581
f	Endocrine Disorders of the Pancreas	586
1	Hyperinsulinism	586
2	Hypoinsulinism (Diabetes Mellitus)	589
g	The Breast	590
1	Functional Anatomy	590
2	Hormonal Influences	594
h	The Nervous System Its Role In Surgical Practice	599
i	Emotions and Their Visceral Consequences The Autonomic Nervous System	599
1	Stress-Promoting Factors in the American Culture	601
2	Examples of Subconscious Influences upon Measurable Bodily Functions	602
3	The Autonomic Nervous System	604
b	Pain	616
1	Nature and Types of Pain	616
2	Surgical Procedures for Relief of Pain	618
c	Increased Intracranial Pressure Pathophysiology and Management	618
1	The Third Circulation Origin, Course and Absorption of the Cerebrospinal Fluid	618
2	Mechanics of the Problem	621
3	Signs and Symptoms of Acutely Increased Intracranial Pressure	622
4	Signs and Symptoms of Chronically Increased Intracranial Pressure	622
5	Focal Signs of Increased Intracranial Pressure	623
d	The Care of Acute Head Injuries	624
1	Electroencephalography	625
20	Infancy Poses Special Problems	629
a	Pathogenesis of Developmental Defects	629
1	Historical Notes	629
2	Experimental Studies	629
3	Types of Teratogenic Agents	630
4	Prevention of Anomalies	630
5	Some Congenital Defects of Surgical Importance	631
6	Some Hemodynamic Changes That Occur in Fetal Circulation at Birth	632
b	Altered Physiology Found in Newborn and Premature Babies	634
1	Respiratory Problems	634
2	Circulatory Problems	634
3	The Alimentary Tract	635
4	Renal Function	636
5	Endocrine Function	636
c	Metabolic Response of Infants to Anesthesia and Operation	636
1	Problems with Anesthesia	637

2	Body Temperatures during Anesthesia	637
21	Urologic Considerations of Special Interest	639
a	Urinary Calculi	639
1	Physical Factors in Stone Formation	639
2	Prevention of Stone Formation	640
b	Hematuria	640
c	Urinary Tract Injuries	640
d	Urinary Retention Acute and Chronic	641
e	Pathophysiology of Ureterosigmoidostomy	643
	Index	645

Chapter 1

The Physiology of Injury

The Management of Acute Trauma

The management of trauma is traditionally the responsibility of the surgeon. And yet a surprisingly large number of surgeons complete their training and begin practice having had remarkably little contact with the severely injured. Admittedly, these cases are not only inordinately demanding of time and skill but are also likely to require a prolonged period of hospitalization. Even so, there is a rich satisfaction in acquiring the over-all competence required to maintain "life limb, and happiness" for a man who has sustained multiple gunshot injuries of the chest, abdomen and extremities or for the woman badly injured in a car wreck. It is one thing to perform a routine cholecystectomy or colon resection at 8 o'clock in the morning—and it is quite another thing to admit at midnight a patient in shock from multiple stab or gunshot wounds to initiate resuscitative measures to stabilize common fractures to aspirate or operate for pericardial tamponade or for other intrathoracic hemorrhage, to repair a bronchus to explore the abdomen, close perforations of the small bowel or stomach perhaps to exteriorize large bowel, repair kidney or bladder, remove the spleen, and ligate bleeding vessels, or to perform the required primary end-to-end anastomosis of a severed popliteal artery to save the extremity (Fig. 1). Nevertheless, not until the senior resident can perform these measures, in the order of physiologic urgency (Fig. 2), is he properly prepared to manage casualties. He achieves the necessary information and

poise through technical practice and by acquiring a basic knowledge of the physiologic requirements involved in different types of injuries.

It is the purpose in this chapter to present some of the physiologic considerations attendant upon trauma and convalescence. We shall begin with an illustrative annotated case study, followed by a brief survey of the principles of trauma management. The general systemic response to injury is then reviewed after which the metabolic reaction to operation is detailed. The discussion of the systemic response will consist to a considerable extent of the general alterations which occur and which can be grossly observed by the clinician, especially with the aid of various commonly used clinical measurements. The review of the neuroendocrine response to trauma will, in contrast, involve a descent into the more subtle functions of the organism, functions described in terms of laboratory measurements but functions which make possible the more gross alterations observed clinically. The metabolic processes that are set in motion by a major injury involve not only all organs and all cells but doubtless the ultimate components of the cells themselves.

A Patient and An Injury

CASE STUDY J.T., a 62 year old man, had bought his weekly groceries on Saturday evening at the general store and was trudging back up the highway on his way home when he was struck by the trailer of a passing log truck. He was brought within the

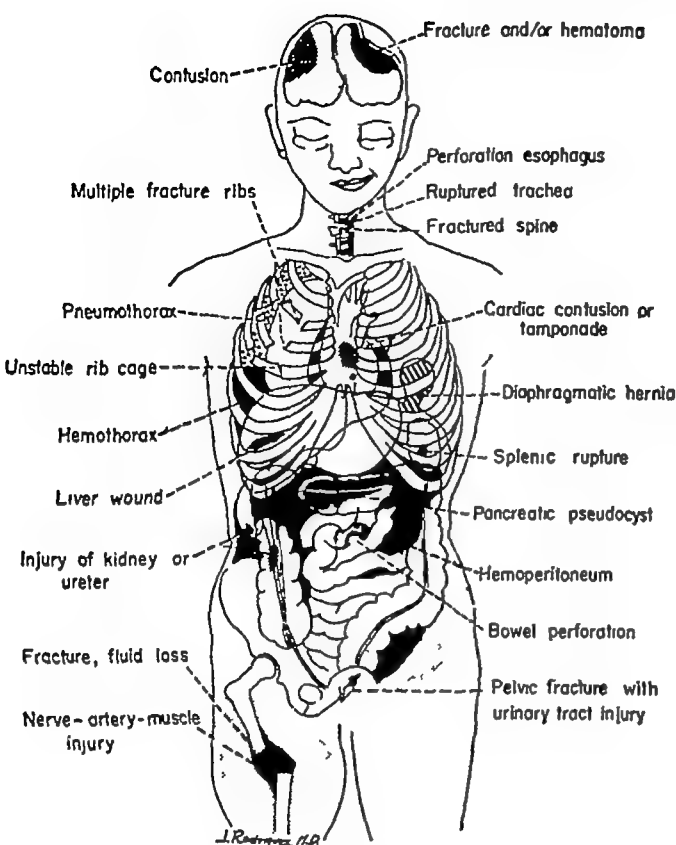


Fig 1 Shock following trauma can be due to many factors



Fig 2 Gunshot wound of the face. The immediate and basic physiologic problems are those of restoring the blood volume and of providing a dependable airway by tracheostomy. All else is of secondary importance.

hour to the University Hospital, was found to be comatose and in deep coma. The coma was considered to be due in part, to the obvious head trauma, with contusion or hemorrhage (C appeared more likely, in the absence of localizing signs, respiratory rate 12. The shock was considered to be due to the head injury but also to fluid loss around the multiple fractures of the bones, to possible intra-abdominal hemorrhage, and to defective pulmonary ventilation. An infusion of dextran was begun. As blood was being prepared, a tracheostomy was performed, and oxygen was administered. (To avoid difficulty with type crossmatching, the blood sample had been drawn prior to the dextran infusion) There was no blood in the catheterized urinary bladder.

Meanwhile, rapid physical examination had shown no evidence of external hemorrhage. As noted, fractures of the lower extremities were evident, a skull fracture probably a depressed fracture with pneumothorax possible. Intraabdominal injuries due to trauma not excluded. There was no abdominal rigidity or blood in the rectum. Possibly pertinent findings were a 2-inch linear skin abrasion over the right inguinal region and a right scrotal hematoma which probably contained bowel.

Röntgen examination of the skull revealed a nondepressed fracture, which itself did not require surgery, there was no evidence of bleeding or loss of cerebrospinal fluid through the ears or nose, and the pupils were equal and reacted to light. The chest film disclosed several rib fractures (there was no paradoxical motion) and there was a left pneumothorax which was treated by the introduction of an intercostal rubber catheter with underwater drainage. Fractures of both femurs, the left tibia, and the right humerus (compounded) were demonstrated. However, the fractures were all merely immobilized with the best means possible, no effort being made to apply special traction, to cast, or

these fractures in the comatose individual. A lateral decubitus film of the abdomen revealed no free air or apparent fluid.

RECAPITULATION AND FURTHER MEASURES

By now the immediate and overriding emergency requirements had been met in this comatose and hypotensive patient. A dependable airway had been achieved by tracheostomy and the circulating blood volume had been increased by the intravenous infusion of dextran, followed by whole blood as soon as typing and crossmatching were complete. The lung volume and thoracic bellows had been examined and, while the chest was not crushed, it had been found necessary to improve lung volume by treating the left pneumothorax with closed (underwater) drainage. Therefore the patient was now moving an adequate tidal volume of air (though pulmonary edema might be interfering with gas exchange across the alveolar membrane). Second, the net effect of transfusion and improved respiration had been to restore the blood pressure to 90 mm Hg systolic. The hemoglobin and hematocrit values had been found to be relatively normal in this individual, but too brief a time had elapsed for the blood remaining in his circulation to have become diluted by extracellular water, even if blood had been lost into the abdomen from injury to one of the viscera (liver or spleen, especially) or around the various fractures which he had sustained (for from 250 to 300 cc of blood may be lost around each fracture of the femur and a lesser amount around those of other bones).

FURTHER PROGRESS Following the emergency resuscitation the patient emerged somewhat from his coma and while certainly not rational he at least gave evidence that he would probably regain consciousness in a few hours (and that craniotomy or burr holes for decompression would probably not be required). This was important for one did not wish to perform a laparotomy upon a patient who was still in coma, if this could possibly be avoided—and it was too early to exclude intra abdominal injury.

With the tracheostomy functioning satisfactorily (it permitted an opportunity to aspirate tracheal secretions in the semicomatose patient, it diminished the respiratory effort required for respiration, and it diminished the anatomic dead space of the tracheobronchial tree), and with the blood pressure rise to above 90 mm Hg it was decided to move the patient from the emergency room to the surgical floor. On the ward the abdomen was again carefully examined. The fact that the blood pressure had responded rather promptly to improved pulmonary ventilation and limited blood transfusion rendered it unlikely that a significant volume of blood had been lost into the abdominal cavity or bowel, and it was still considered probable that the shock which he had exhibited had been due to the head injury, the pneumothorax, the numerous fractures and the loss of blood and extracellular fluid into the tissues surrounding the fractures. The large right inguinal hernia which contained bowel and for which relatives stated he had never worn a truss was again noted, as was the inguinal abrasion. Peristalsis was barely audible, but the abdomen was not rigid. It was difficult to evaluate tenderness because of his semicomatose state, but certainly the abdomen was not markedly tender. Only gastric juice was aspirated through the Levin tube and microscopic examination of the urine removed at the time the Foley catheter was inserted had demonstrated no red cells. Had there been red cells, an intravenous pyelogram and a cystogram would have been performed to examine for urinary tract extravasation. If there had been serious injury operation would have been necessary for re-to a kidney, ureter, or the bladder, early pair and drainage since urine may have a very vicious effect upon body tissues outside the urinary tract itself (Fig 277).

Throughout the remainder of Saturday night the sensorium gradually cleared and the blood pressure was readily maintained above 100 mm Hg with a slow drip of blood.

He had been admitted to the hospital at approximately 10 o'clock Saturday evening, and by the next morning he appeared to be doing fairly well. There was, however, concern over the fact that the early improvement in the sensorium had not continued to progress, and for this reason operation for definitive management of the fractures was further delayed. Repeat roentgen examination of the chest indicated virtually complete re-expansion of the left lung. Re-examination of the abdomen again indicated diminished peristaltic activity and possibly more tenderness than had been present the previous evening. Even so, it was felt that this tenderness was not out of proportion to the muscle trauma that the abdominal wall had probably sustained, in view of the obvious abrasion in the right inguinal region, conservative management was continued, with heavy antibiotic coverage and continuous nasogastric suction. It was noted, nevertheless, that the scrotal hernia was more tender, in that palpation here caused him to wince more than palpation of any other region of the abdomen. He still was not sufficiently alert to answer to his name or to recognize members of his family.

Late Sunday afternoon he took a turn for the worse, the systolic blood pressure declined to within the 90's, and an additional blood transfusion was given. The pulse rate had increased to approximately 110 per minute and the rectal temperature was approximately 100 to 101° F. These changes were of course disturbing but it was felt that, aside from the moderate hypotension, the alterations in the vital signs were perhaps not out of line with the amount of trauma which he had sustained—and that, indeed, the moderate decline in blood pressure might be due to a continued extravasation of blood and fluid into the tissues surrounding the fractures. By midnight, though, it was found that the transfusion of blood would no longer readily maintain the blood pressure above shock level. The hematocrit was repeated and it was 53. A small amount of norepinephrine was required to sustain the blood

pressure, but no other change was noted by the examiners.

By the Monday morning after admission matters had taken a rather drastic turn. Within the period of an hour or so his temperature had risen to 104° F, the pulse rate had increased to 120, and the abdomen had become moderately distended and now exhibited generalized tenderness. It was necessary to add several ampules of norepinephrine to each bottle of infused fluid to maintain the blood pressure above 90, and it was obvious that some further and quite serious diagnosis had to be considered. The fever, the tender and distended abdomen, the fall in blood pressure, the rapid pulse, and the ever more tender hernia—these findings prompted us to explore the abdomen of this patient, who remained semicomatose. No sooner had the peritoneum been exposed under local anesthesia than dark fluid showed through, and upon opening the peritoneum a considerable volume of dark, bloody and foul-smelling fluid escaped. Gentle traction was exerted on the bowel entering the hernia, and there emerged a grossly gangrenous loop. It was found that the 18-inch loop of small bowel contained in the right inguinal hernia was necrotic, due to the fact that the blow in the inguinal region had completely severed its mesentery. There was no definite evidence that the bowel itself had been perforated by the injury, the mesentery had simply been mashed in two. The gangrenous bowel was resected, but despite increased amounts of blood given postoperatively the shock was irreversible. The patient lived only eight hours following surgery.

Comment on Case

This particular case was chosen from among many because it exemplifies a number of physiologic variables which must be borne in mind in the management of a severely injured person. First, it served to emphasize, again, that *the two most important considerations in the immediate emergency*

management of an injured person are those of maintaining adequate respiration and circulation

Second, this patient afforded an opportunity to emphasize the fact that shock may be due to many different factors, in addition to the obvious and always to be considered possibility of diminished circulating blood volume due to blood loss *per se*. The likelihood that the shock was due, in part, to intracranial trauma had to be entertained, as well as the fact that the pneumothorax might be resulting in hypercapnia and anoxemia. Moreover, the pneumothorax had produced a shift in the mediastinum (Fig. 181) that could be interfering with the venous return to the right heart, further diminishing cardiac output. We treated a patient with massive pyopneumothorax from a stab wound who had edema of the lower half of his body and the upper left portion of the body—but no edema of the upper right portion of the body, including the arm (Fig. 208). When the massive right shift of the mediastinum had been corrected by the removal of 6 L. of fluid from the left chest, the edema cleared within 24 hours. It was considered probable that the left innominate vein and the inferior vena cava had been kinked by the mediastinal displacement, while the right innominate vein had not.

Traumatic shock is occasionally due to cardiac contusion or to coronary thrombosis, and an electrocardiogram was made in the first case for that reason though it was within normal limits. Moreover in any patient who is comatose one must consider the possibility of a cerebrovascular accident. Fat embolism to the brain is also a serious complication in many traumatic injuries. The multiple and severe fractures which the patient sustained were more or less typical of those which one may anticipate in an automobile accident, and they in themselves were sufficiently extensive to have produced shock from the loss of blood and fluid into the surrounding tissues. Only one of the fractures was an open or compound fracture,

however, and bacteremic shock from that source seemed unlikely.

Finally, the case emphasizes that despite the continued observation and the awareness that intra abdominal injury might have occurred, the extent of the intra abdominal pathology was not appreciated by the attending surgeons until the marked fall in blood pressure, with the increase in pulse rate and the spike in body temperature, suggested that peritoneal soiling had occurred. This possibility was further supported by the moderate tenderness and rigidity which the patient gradually developed, despite the semicomatose state. The point is made also that a great deal can be done with local anesthesia, for certainly no one wished to give this patient a general anesthetic, and the multiple fractures rendered it most difficult to use a spinal anesthetic.

In conclusion, let it be noted that the mortality rate following severe traumatic injuries is high, particularly among the elderly. This man, with the extent of injury which he had sustained, might have died from intracranial trauma, or from respiratory difficulties, had enough ribs been fractured to produce the very dangerous flail chest with paradoxical motion (Fig. 181), or from complications attendant upon the long siege of care for the fractures of the extremities, though fractures *per se* are surprisingly well tolerated. He could well have died from lower nephron nephrosis and uremia, fat embolism, infection other than that which occurred in the peritoneal cavity, or from entirely unanticipated complications which have a way of following in the wake of other serious diseases—such as cerebral hemorrhage, pulmonary embolism, heart failure, or pneumonia.

Clinical Recapitulation: Some Principles of Trauma Management

The physiologic requirements of the treatment of any particular case of trauma vary with the injury that has been sustained. Therefore, every injured patient must have

a complete clinical examination, including the neurologic evaluation. In intoxicated patients who have sustained stab or gunshot wounds, the nerve injuries are often missed until the postoperative recovery period. The "simple" gunshot injury may consist of several slugs that have struck the patient and have gone in various directions. At the writing there is a patient on our wards who was shot twice in the back with a .38-caliber pistol. There were seven perforations of the small bowel, two of the stomach, a fracture of the left kidney and division of the right ureter, a vertebral fracture with spinal cord injury, and a fracture of the right radius. He has a right ureteral fistula, but otherwise is doing well except for some paralysis of the right leg. The point is, bullet wounds may cause an astonishing amount of damage.

Full use should be made of routine roentgen studies of the head, chest, abdomen, and extremities and of radiopaque materials for urogram, cystogram, bronchograms, esophagram, and angiograms.

If there is a *knife wound of the chest*, it may or may not have penetrated the diaphragm and injured abdominal viscera. One can gain a reasonably good estimate of the probable distance which the knife penetrated if the length of the knife is known (which information the patient may or may not have gleaned in the emergency) and if the distance from the diaphragm at which the chest was penetrated is noted. Actually, many knife injuries do not penetrate the body wall, but virtually all wounds that involve the abdomen are explored, at least to the extent of determining whether or not the peritoneum was penetrated. Knife injuries of the chest *per se* need not be explored in the majority of instances. Bleeding from a pulmonary vessel will usually cease, though blood may need to be aspirated from the chest several times. Bleeding from a systemic vessel such as an intercostal artery, the internal mammary artery or, of course, the aorta will commonly not stop, and thoracotomy may be required. Pericardial tamponade can be successfully managed by

pericardicentesis in most patients who reach the hospital, repeated as necessary, occasionally thoracotomy is required. Air leaks are treated by aspiration or by underwater seal drainage. Similarly, a bullet wound of the chest may not require exploration. This is particularly true if there are wounds of both entrance and exit, and if it appears probable that the abdominal cavity has not been involved. Of course, one must always consider the possibility that, aside from leaks of air or blood which may have been produced through pulmonary injury, the esophagus may have been perforated or a major bronchus torn. In brief, any structure which lies along the probable path of the bullet or knife may sustain damage and appropriate examination must be conducted to exclude or repair injuries which might otherwise result in death from infection. This is especially important in the case of injuries to the esophagus as it passes through the mediastinum. Shotgun wounds of the chest, particularly if inflicted at close range, may require thoracotomy to remove wadding, clothing, and devitalized tissue, for otherwise empyema will often result.

Bullet wounds of the abdomen should also be explored, since usually one or more of the viscera will have been seriously injured (Fig 1).

A definite routine of the operator's choice should be employed when exploring the abdomen, else injuries will be missed. To begin with, adequate exposure will be necessary, and it might as well be obtained at the beginning without the subsequent delay of having to manipulate the drapes to extend the incision. We have found a paramedian incision, usually on the right, a suitable one for this work. The character of any fluid within the abdomen will be noted, for the presence of fresh blood renders it imperative that the site of hemorrhage be located, if for no other reason than to exclude perforation of a viscus. If the injury is quite recent, a fecal odor suggests colon injury, if the injury is many hours old, small bowel contamination may also produce a foul odor.

From the bacteriologic standpoint, the seriousness of bowel injury increases from the stomach downward. If it appears that there are perforations of the intestine and continuing hemorrhage is not serious, the bowel wounds should be taken care of first, to diminish further soiling as the gut is manipulated in the examination of other organs. The obvious perforations are closed or, if necessary, resected, and then the bowel is "run" from the stomach to the pelvic floor. Perforations of the posterior surfaces of unmobilized stomach, duodenum, and colon are especially apt to be missed. If there is any serious question regarding injury to the bowel below the pelvic floor, which can be suspected from the direction of the bullet wound or other injury and from rectal and sigmoidoscopic examinations which reveal blood, one must decide whether he will do a proximal colostomy and/or drain the perirectal space by perianal incisions below—or depend upon conservatism. As a rule, it is safer to perform a proximal colostomy, but regardless, I do not routinely drain from below. If a perforation is seen on one surface of the bowel or stomach, then one must look very carefully for a perforation on the other side. While tangential injury from a missile does rarely occur, it is hazardous to assume that this is the case until a careful search of the opposite side of the viscus has been made.

Following closure of all perforations of the bowel, with resection of unsalvageable portions, one may then turn attention to other organs. (He may have been forced to turn his attention to other organs earlier if loss of blood from these organs was a serious threat to the maintenance of an adequate blood pressure.) The other organs too must be examined in just as systematic a manner as was the bowel. I often begin by examining the spleen chiefly because this organ is easily injured and is easily removed since it is not possible to suture the splenic capsule; the diagnosis of capsular damage is the indication for splenectomy. At the time the spleen is examined one may

also examine the left kidney region for damage and the diaphragm for perforation, if he has not done this while examining the upper portions of the stomach. Defects in the diaphragm should be closed to prevent future herniation of abdominal viscera. Next, the liver is inspected and evidence of bile leakage or blood noted. If an injury to the liver is not a large one, it is usually a relatively simple matter to suture a bleeding point. Mattress sutures are employed. On the other hand, if a large segment of a lobe of the liver has been fractured or macerated it may be extremely difficult to stop hemorrhage. Major vessels within the substance of the liver can be ligated with suture ligatures, but once the capsule of the liver overlying macerated parenchyma has been lost, innumerable oozing points may render efforts at hemostasis quite exasperating. We examined this problem in the laboratory, following a fatal case of hemorrhage in which we had been unable to stop bleeding from the right lobe of a woman whose liver was crushed when she was pinned in a ditch by the bumper of a car. It was found that temporary occlusion of the portal vein had little effect upon bleeding from liver wounds inflicted in dogs, but that temporary occlusion of the gastrophatic artery had a marked effect in diminishing this oozing and allowed a number of the bleeding points to clot. The use of heavy ("pistol") cautery was of some value in coagulating bleeding surfaces or in actually excising portions of the liver. Neither late hemorrhage nor biliary fistula occurred following the use of such cautery. Packing of the injured liver is often ineffective in controlling hemorrhage.

The pancreas may have been injured and, if so, the area should be drained.

Suitable evaluation of the status of the urinary tract should also be carried out. However, if there was no blood in the pre-operative urine specimen and emergency intravenous pyelogram showed no extravasation of radiopaque medium from the kidneys, ureters or bladder we do not routinely expose and directly visualize these

structures (A cystogram may be obtained by injecting Urokon through the indwelling Foley catheter) Conservatism is always advisable regarding removal of an injured kidney, for often it can be saved. Moreover, the opposite kidney may have been damaged. Recall that in a case cited above the left renal parenchyma was damaged but that the right ureter was later found to be severed. This ureteral injury was missed at the original laparotomy and was discovered only when urine escaped through the drainage stab wound. Since the right kidney eventually had to be removed, it was well that the injured left kidney had been conserved.

Drainage is advisable in most instances where extensive damage has occurred. It permits escape of blood, and overlooked pancreatic, biliary, urinary, or bowel injuries may be more readily diagnosed.

Vascular injuries respond extremely well to competent management. If several liters of blood (pumped in rapidly) have not raised the blood pressure of a patient with

abdominal wounds, the abdomen should be promptly opened (if shock is present, little anesthesia is needed) and the bleeding controlled surgically, following hemostasis, the infusion of further blood may soon restore a stable and adequate blood pressure. Intrathoracic hemorrhage can be followed by means of repeated chest x-rays and thoracenteses, but the possibility that the shock is due to pericardial tamponade in a penetrating injury should not be overlooked—a diagnostic pericardial tap is usually harmless and may be lifesaving. Wounds of the mouth may require tracheostomy (Fig 2).

Above all, it is no longer permissible simply to ligate important arteries. The ends can usually be debrided and anastomosed with a continuous over-and-over stitch. If the divided ends cannot be pulled together, a venous graft, arterial homograft, or plastic vascular substitute can be used. The results of primary suture of the femoral or popliteal artery are almost uniformly good, in our experience.

Systemic Response to Injury: A Brief Survey

Every organ and virtually all cells of the body participate in the response to injury (Fig 3) and, up to a point, the magnitude of the physiologic response is proportional to the magnitude of the injury. However, if the individual is chronically ill his response to a given operation will be less marked.

THE CIRCULATION Major trauma produces a release of epinephrine and norepinephrine, which results in an increased rate and force of the heart beat and a further rise in blood pressure due to vasoconstriction. The spleen contracts and makes available additional red blood cells for the general circulation. Nevertheless, if these sympathomimetic effects on the peripheral vascular bed are outweighed by blood loss, then the blood pressure will fall.

The general state of the circulation, as reflected in the blood pressure, is usually taken as a gauge of the magnitude of the injury or of the volume of blood loss. A

SYSTEMIC REACTION TO INJURY

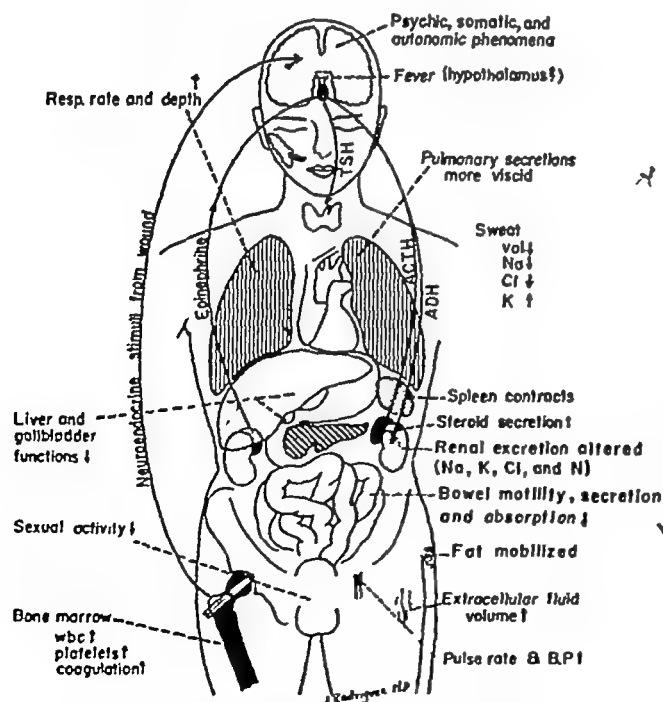


Fig 3 All organs participate in the stress response to anesthesia-operation or other trauma. The diminished urine volume is one of the more conspicuous effects, associated with a retention of sodium and chloride and an excretion of potassium.

man in profound shock following trauma will usually have suffered serious damage. Yet, if a simple vascular injury has merely resulted in massive blood loss—there being little additional tissue injury—recovery may be prompt with adequate blood transfusion.

Irreversible shock has been considered by Shorr and his associates²⁰ to be due to prolonged hepatic anoxia which results in the elaboration by the liver (and muscles) of abnormally large quantities of a substance they termed a vasodepressor material (VDM) later tentatively identified as ferritin. In their view a certain amount of VDM is ordinarily produced by the liver but the normal liver is also able to detoxify this substance. Moreover, an opposing factor, vasoexcitatory material (VEM) produced by the normal kidney, tends to elevate the blood pressure. As tissue anoxia continues, increasing amounts of VDM and decreasing amounts of VEM are produced and irreversible shock results.

Regardless of the ultimate explanation of irreversible shock—and we believe that the problem is still an unsolved one—the experience gained during the Korean War proved that many cases of shock which might previously have been considered “irreversible” actually were reversed with massive transfusions of blood ranging up to 25 or more pints. In all branches of surgery, civilian and military the experiences of the last two decades have emphasized with increasing force the need for truly adequate blood replacement (Fig. 134).

As opposed to shock there is at times a hypertensive response to trauma. We have encountered this phenomenon in a few patients who had sustained thermal burns of relatively mild extent and who were not oliguric. The hypertension appeared during either the first or the second day following the burn and often persisted for almost one week before gradually subsiding. A similar response was observed occasionally in recently wounded soldiers in Korea the hypertension persisting until an anesthetic was

given. It was found that Regitine depressed and that hexamethonium abolished, the hypertensive response.²¹ Recent studies of secretion of epinephrine and norepinephrine during trauma further emphasize the possible rôle of the adrenal medulla in the crisis of this type of hypertension.²²

Abrupt hypertension is occasionally countered following operation and in certain circumstances. For example, a certain number of patients develop arterial hypertension following a portacaval anastomosis, though it is not clear whether this is due to altered renal, hepatic or adrenal function. Furthermore, patients with oliguria or anuria, in addition to renal damage commonly develop a degree of hypertension. Resection of coarctation of the aorta may be followed by temporarily increased hypertension, perhaps the result of adrenal medullary secretion.²³

Lastly, although a great many facets of altered circulation in injury can be discussed—among them cardiac function, arteriolar changes, capillary permeability and alterations in red cell mass and plasma volume—further discussion will be limited to mention of the impaired quality of postural circulatory reflexes during convalescence. All clinicians have noted that a patient who has recently been operated upon is unstable on his feet on first standing a few days in bed. This is due to the fact that not only does the circulating blood volume quantitatively diminish following bed rest but also to the fact that the system with which the circulatory reflexes begin about a redistribution of the blood volume upon standing is diminished. The phenomenon of orthostatic hypotension often occurs following extensive sympathectomy for hypertension, and the patient may actually faint because of cerebral ischemia, the result of pooling of blood in the lower extremities and in the splanchnic area.

In the healthy subject the circulatory adjustments to postural changes occur so rapidly that hypotension does not occur. As shown by Mayo and others²⁴ that circulatory abnormalities exhibited

gical patients during convalescence could be minimized by an aggressive feeding program which reduced the usual negative nitrogen balance

(C) THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM The ways in which the respiratory system reacts to a distant injury are not so well documented as are those of the circulatory system, but few doubt that the lungs and bronchi participate. For example, the patient often appears to exhibit a more viscid and tenacious sputum postoperatively, even when spinal anesthesia was used. Sporadic workers have attempted to demonstrate chemical and other alterations in the tracheobronchial secretions postoperatively, but by and large these efforts have not been notably successful. Yet, there can be little question that the cells lining the respiratory tract are affected by the manifold physiologic responses to trauma.

Following major surgical procedures, various degrees of pulmonary atelectasis may result in defective pulmonary ventilation and oxygenation of the blood. This fact has long fostered an insistence upon deep breathing and coughing in the early postoperative period, plus the use of nasotracheal catheter suction to remove secretions and prevent bronchial occlusion (Fig 184). The cyanosis that many patients exhibit postoperatively is probably due less to inadequate total ventilatory exchange than to inadequate ventilation of multiple smaller bronchi occluded by secretions; blood continues to flow through these poorly ventilated lung segments but is not oxygenated, resulting in cyanosis due to this "functional shunt." In effect, this is the cyanosis which results from a pulmonary arteriovenous (A-V) fistula, for here, too, pulmonary arterial (venous) blood passes to the pulmonary veins and thence to the left atrium without having been oxygenated. In the event of blood's passing through the atelectatic or nonventilated lung, it does pass through the capillary bed, to be sure (in contrast to the pulmonary A-V fistula), but it is still not oxygenated and the carbon

dioxide contained in the blood flowing through the atelectatic lung is not excreted. The vital capacity is diminished in most patients following operation

More recently an additional type of measurement has been employed which promises to be useful in further analyzing the effect of anesthesia and operation upon lung function. This is the study of *pulmonary compliance*. Simply put, the compliance of the lung is measured in terms of the amount of positive pressure (exerted through the tracheobronchial tree) required to expand the lung. In the normal lung this is, of course, a very small positive pressure. However, following the use of most types of inhalation anesthetic agents—and presumably following injury and in cardiac failure—pulmonary compliance is reduced, the lung becomes less distensible and hence less efficient in achieving adequate respiration. Although the methods available for measuring compliance clinically are still crude, it is likely that much useful information will be derived from such studies performed before and following operation. Compliance represents, in essence, the elasticity of the lungs, and it is reflected in the elastic recoil of the lung during expiration.

Postoperative pulmonary edema, whether due to excessive salt infusion or other causes, is a threat to effective ventilation and to the exchange of gases across the alveolar membrane

(S) THE GASTROINTESTINAL TRACT The mouth is dry and the patient thirsty when shock follows blood loss. Moreover, the volume of gastric secretions is diminished during stress, and following operation the volume of fluid which can be aspirated from the small bowel through an inlying Miller-Abbott tube is diminished.¹³ One practical implication of the latter is that the surgeon need not be concerned if the drainage volume is small, so long as the abdomen is not distended, the bowel is in all likelihood adequately decompressed and the anastomosis protected.

Intestinal motility and the absorption of

various substances are altered by injury, and postoperative intestinal dysfunction remains a major source of morbidity in surgical practice

THE LIVER, GALLBLADDER, SPLEEN, AND PANCREAS Numerous studies over the years have indicated various minor alterations in liver function following the insult of an anesthesia and operation.¹⁰ Yet the tremendous functional reserve of the liver usually precludes a serious failure in any of its multiple activities, though in the occasional patient acute liver failure may result in death. The liver is the center of a major segment of the metabolic activity of the body (Fig 73) and patients with liver disease, particularly those with homologous serum jaundice or other hepatitis are notoriously poor risks for major surgery. Most important, the liver is sensitive to anoxia and defective anesthesia and shock must be avoided.

Gallbladder function has been shown to be affected by acute trauma.¹⁶

The spleen also has long been known to participate in the physiology of stress in animals, since the release of epinephrine and norepinephrine results in a contraction of this organ to force additional red cells into the general circulation to assist in meeting the emergency. Any medical student may inject a small amount of epinephrine into the splenic artery of the dog and observe the rapid reduction in size and increase in firmness of this organ. However, the increment in red cell mass supplied by splenic contraction in man is probably not very significant.

The more subtle role of the spleen with respect to regulation of the numbers of platelets, red cells and white cells following trauma may be more important in man than is splenic contraction. Blood coagulability is increased following operation, perhaps in part the result of an increase in platelet concentration.

The bone marrow participates in stress but these functions have not yet been clarified. The white blood cell and platelet counts increase, but the eosinophil count decreases.

The pancreas has a role in the stress of anesthesia and operation, both endocrine and exocrine. Following massive injury, as for example in thermal burns, the patient may exhibit an elevated blood sugar level, a diabetic type glucose tolerance curve, and glycosuria. It is possible that this is due to the diabetogenic effect of the increased amounts of adrenocortical hormones in causing "insulin resistance," but the possibility of reduced insulin production cannot be excluded. Unfortunately, there exists as yet no simple way in which to measure insulin concentration in the blood. Biologic assays are quite too insensitive to study minor changes in endogenous insulin production.

The serum amylase level may be diminished following traumatic injuries which do not involve the pancreas, but it is usually increased in blunt (or other) trauma to the organ itself.

② THE NERVOUS SYSTEM, THE MUSCLES, THE ENDOCRINE GLANDS, AND THE KIDNEYS These organs are mentioned in this particular location merely to indicate the general nature of the response to stress. The nervous system participates profoundly in the stress response—through hypothalamo-hypophyseal release of adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH), through altered psychic and motor functions and through the sympathetic and parasympathetic discharges. The muscles comprise the large portion of the metabolically active lean tissue mass and hence must be considered the site of a major portion of the metabolic response to trauma. The rôle of other endocrine organs and of the kidneys will be described in detail below for the changes in the function of these organs constitute major features of the reaction to operation.

The Metabolic Response to Acute Trauma and to Anesthesia-Operation

The Neuroendocrine Response (Fig 4)

The assault of anesthesia and the operation, or of other trauma, releases

NEUROENDOCRINE REACTION TO INJURY

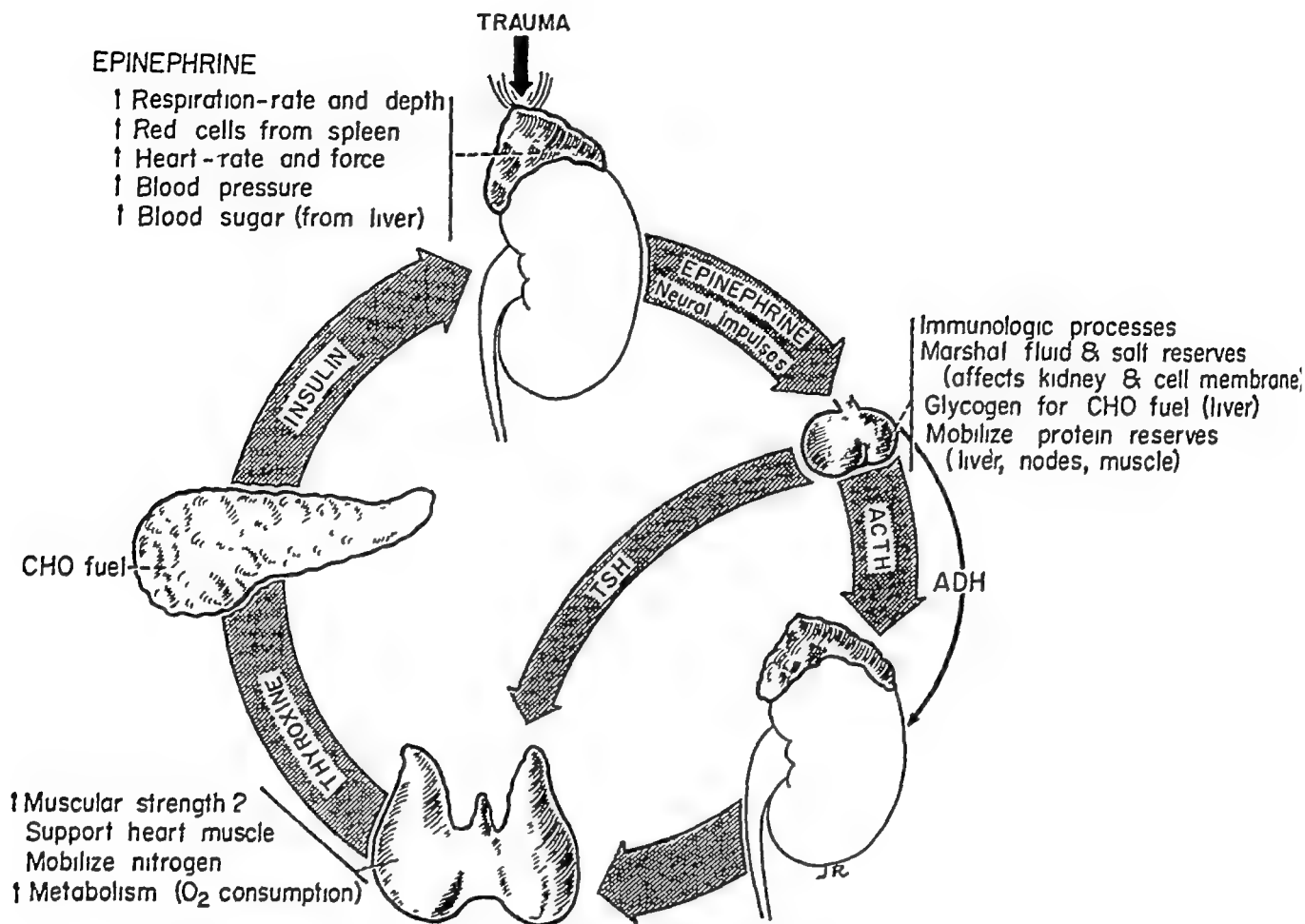


Fig. 4 In this diagram the interrelationships between the effects of the various endocrine organs are emphasized. Elaborate systems of checks and balances exist among hormonal functions (Modified from HARDY, J. D. *Surgery and the Endocrine System*, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Company, 1952.)

both neural and humoral, which cause the adrenal medulla to secrete increased amounts of epinephrine and norepinephrine, with their sympathomimetic effects. It was demonstrated by Cannon⁴ in 1914 that injury or the threat of injury to an animal resulted in a neuroendocrine response which prepared the animal for defensive activity or for flight. These studies were centered chiefly upon the rôle of the adrenal medulla, but the rôle of the nervous system was not ignored. This problem has recently been re-examined by Hume¹⁵

Simultaneously with the increased secretion of epinephrine, the pituitary is caused to release at least three important hormones: adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH), thyroid stimulating hormone (TSH), and antidiuretic hormone

(ADH). In turn, the ACTH stimulates the adrenal cortex to secrete increased amount of its various steroids with their manifold effects upon a great variety of body processes, the TSH probably stimulates the thyroid to increased activity, though the particular rôle of an increased thyroid activity in the stress response still cannot be precisely defined at this time, and the increased secretion of ADH by the posterior pituitary results in the retention of water, due to an increased reabsorption by the renal tubules. ADH may under some circumstances increase the excretion of sodium and chloride by the renal tubules, but the net effect of the interaction of this hormone with the adrenocortical hormones is usually that of a temporary retention of sodium, chloride, and water, but an excretion of potassium

Teleologically speaking, it may be that the retention of salt and water is to augment the extracellular and plasma volumes as a defense mechanism against injury and blood loss.

It has been seen that the epinephrine liberated in stress has effects upon the rate and depth of respiration, upon the rate and force of cardiac muscular contraction upon circulatory vascular reflexes upon the rate of body metabolism and upon the release of additional red cells from the spleen. It promotes glycogenolysis in the liver to provide an immediately utilizable source of fuel (glucose) for the body. The more sustained elevation of the blood sugar level that may be met in chronic trauma, burns and sepsis is perhaps the result of the antagonistic effect of adrenocortical hormones to that of insulin and their conversion of amino acids to glycogen.

So much for the general picture. How specifically is activation of the neuroendocrine response initiated?

Activation of the Stress Response

In pursuing this discussion of the pituitary-adrenal interrelationships it is of interest to note that the stress reaction may be initiated by a considerable variety of stimuli other than traumatic injury. For example, minor but definite stress responses may be obtained from psychic or emotional insult, from acid loads from the "dumping syndrome" which follows subtotal gastric resection (actually shock?), from fever infection, and many other factors. Thus, the cycle of the stress reaction (Fig. 4) may be initiated at any of several points. For example, hyperthyroidism may be precipitated at first by emotional stress but once the disease has developed the thyroid hormones further exaggerate the emotional turmoil. The absence of a sufficient quantity of insulin results in stress as does the presence of too much insulin, with convulsions and coma. The psychic factors produce the stress reaction through the neurohumoral chain extending from the cerebral

cortex to the hypothalamus, to the pituitary, and to the adrenal cortex, on the other hand, typical psychic aberrations may result from the stress imposed by the excessive secretion of adrenocortical hormones, as when a tumor of the adrenal cortex causes Cushing's syndrome. Thus all bodily functions are closely interrelated and an imbalance of one will surely result in an imbalance of others.

STIMULATION OF THE PITUITARY GLAND Since the stress mechanism rests so heavily upon the release of ACTH by the anterior lobe of the pituitary gland and its resulting stimulation of the adrenal cortex, let us examine further the factors which bring about ACTH release.

To demonstrate both neural and humoral transmission of impulses to the pituitary, Fortier² studied the ACTH response to systemic stimuli (epinephrine, cold and histamine) and to "neurotropic" stimuli (sound, immobilization). The adenohypophysis was separated from the hypothalamic centers in rats through transplantation of the gland of a donor into the anterior chamber of an eye of a recipient, who was later hypophysectomized. These animals along with normal controls, were stimulated at weekly intervals and the fall in the circulating eosinophil count was used as an index of ACTH release. Epinephrine, cold and histamine brought about a definite eosinopenia in both normal and grafted animals. Sound and immobilization produced a marked fall in the eosinophil count in the intact but none in the grafted animals. It was considered that the data suggested a dual regulation of ACTH release, one purely humoral in response to systemic stimuli, and the other neurohumoral, mediated by the hypothalamic and hypothalamo-hypophyseal neurohumoral pathways. In the injured patient the systemic or humoral effects may represent tissue products from the wound as well as epinephrine since though the response is delayed, a metabolic response to amputation in paraplegics does occur.

ACTH RELEASE IN NORMAL VERSUS STRESSED

SUBJECTS The adrenal cortex evidently has some degree of autonomy independent of stimulation by ACTH, particularly with regard to the zona glomerulosa and its regulation of water and salt metabolism, including the release of aldosterone. However, the activity of the adrenal cortex—in the absence of a tumor of this organ, which may or may not be responsive to variations in the plasma level of ACTH—rests largely upon the rate of release of ACTH by the anterior lobe of the pituitary gland. *How, then, is the rate of release or production of ACTH regulated in the absence of stress?*

Under normal or nonstress circumstances, it would appear that the rate of release of ACTH is governed by the blood level of adrenocortical corticosteroids (hereinafter referred to as corticoids). It has been shown that in the presence of adrenocortical insufficiency the blood level of ACTH is elevated, and that following an increase in the blood corticoid level produced by giving cortisone the blood level of ACTH is diminished. Although the methods available for ACTH measurement require further refinement, it does appear that normally the rate of ACTH liberation into the blood stream for the stimulation of the adrenal cortex is governed in some fashion by the need of the tissues of the body for adrenocortical hormones.

In stress, on the other hand, a different set of circumstances exists, and the release of ACTH may be effected by the several modalities previously mentioned.

Epinephrine injection can result in a small increase in ACTH release, but the physiologic importance of this phenomenon has been seriously questioned by many.

The rôle of nerve impulses can hardly be doubted for Egdahl and Richards⁶ stimulated the proximal end of a divided peripheral (femoral) nerve in dogs and produced a rise in corticoid secretion. The response to operation in the paraplegic or in patients having spinal anesthesia is delayed, but a delay is not noted when the patient is under general anesthesia where, presumably, nerv-

ous impulses can travel immediately from the site of the incision to the brain.

THYROID ACTIVITY FOLLOWING OPERATION It has proved exceedingly difficult to demonstrate beyond question that thyroid activity is increased following a stress stimulus.¹⁴ Yet, if increased thyroid activity were to be documented, certain aspects of postoperative nitrogen metabolism might be more readily explained. For example, it has long been known that the maximum effect of injected thyroxine is not realized until approximately six or seven days after its administration. Since the increased excretion of nitrogen occurs within the first two or three postoperative days, as a rule, it would appear that the effect of thyroxine is not the primary cause of the increased excretion of nitrogen. However, more recently *triiodothyronine*, another active thyroid principle, has been available for study; and this hormone, when injected experimentally, produces effects in patients and in animals which occur much more rapidly than do those produced by thyroxine (p 538). The amounts of *triiodothyronine* circulating in the body are much less than those of thyroxine, but *triiodothyronine* is far more effective, gram for gram, than thyroxine. Therefore, the study of additional thyroid principles may yet reveal that thyroid activity is indeed increased following trauma.

The thyroid hormones have multiple effects upon body metabolism, most of which are probably due to the promotion of an increased utilization of oxygen. It will be recalled that the patient with thyrotoxicosis has alterations in the nervous system, cardiac irritability, increased cardiac effort, deranged glucose metabolism, liver changes, increased gastrointestinal motility and irritability, and autonomic changes consisting particularly of flushing and excessive sweating.

Salt and Water Metabolism in Stress

① RENAL EXCRETION OF SODIUM, CHLORIDE, POTASSIUM, AND WATER Immediately following a major operation the urine volume is usu-

ally diminished, there is a retention of sodium and chloride, but potassium excretion is augmented. These changes probably represent the net effect of the increased secretion of ADH and of adrenocortical hormones including aldosterone which has been shown to appear in the urine in greater amounts following surgery.¹² Cortisone and hydrocortisone may or may not cause a retention of sodium and chloride, depending upon the circumstances but they almost invariably increase the excretion of potassium.

PHYSIOLOGICAL FLUID COMPARTMENTS AND PLASMA ELECTROLYTE LEVELS. These exhibit fairly consistent alterations following operation. The extracellular fluid volume is usually increased at the expense of the intracellular volume and the plasma volume shares in the extracellular increase. The plasma sodium level tends to be decreased, though no sodium may have been lost from the body. This constitutes a "physiologic" low sodium level. The precise cause of this cannot always be explained, but dilution by increased extracellular water often plays a rôle. It has not been demonstrated clearly that the sodium content of bone or skin is increased following trauma, to explain a low plasma sodium level.

The volume of sweat secreted is often reduced in the early postoperative period¹ and the sweat electrolyte concentrations vary in the same direction as do those in the urine, that is the concentrations of sodium and chloride in sweat (and in saliva) are diminished whereas the concentration of potassium is increased. These alterations in both sweat and saliva have been shown to reflect alterations in endocrine and in particular adrenocortical activity. Earlier in this chapter it was noted that the volume of gastrointestinal secretions is diminished following major trauma and this too has been correlated with an increase in adrenocortical activity.¹³

The practical importance of the diminished urinary output of sodium, chloride and water during the immediate postoperative

period is that, since the patient cannot excrete these substances at a normal rate, their administration should be carefully regulated lest circulatory overloading occur. The infusion of excessive amounts of non electrolyte-containing solutions may produce water intoxication.

Efforts have been made to correlate post operative intestinal ileus with an increase in adrenocortical activity and with diminished plasma potassium levels, but these studies have not been conclusive. That potassium deficiency can result in a degree of paralytic ileus is generally accepted, but it remains to be shown that ileus can result from an increase in adrenocortical activity in the absence of a potassium deficiency.

Nitrogen Metabolism

EFFECT OF INJURY. In 1932 Cuthbertson⁵ showed that following the fracture of a long bone the excretion of nitrogen and calcium was elevated for a period of many weeks. Although such phenomena are now accepted as commonplace at that time these studies occasioned quite a stir in metabolic circles, and they provided one of the pioneer descriptions of the metabolic response to injury. Through such investigations it came to be realized that the apparently solid portions of the body were actually masses of constantly moving molecules, as breakdown and repair proceeded continuously and simultaneously. Yet not until Schoenheimer and his associates⁴ published their now classic isotopic studies of fatty acid turnover was it realized with crystallizing clarity that virtually all tissue components of the body, including those of bone, are in constant exchange. That is the component elements of the various organs are constantly being broken down reused in the metabolic pool, or excreted. This concept of the *dynamic state of body constituents* is a basic tenet of modern biochemistry.

Since Cuthbertson's report, few other aspects of the stress response have been studied more intensively than has that of nitrogen metabolism (Figs 5 and 6). Lon-

W.C. GASTRIC RESECTION
EFFECT OF OPERATION ON NITROGEN
BALANCE, TOTAL EOSINOPHIL COUNTS
AND URINARY EXCRETION OF CREATININE
CORTICOSTEROIDS AND 17 KETOSTEROIDS

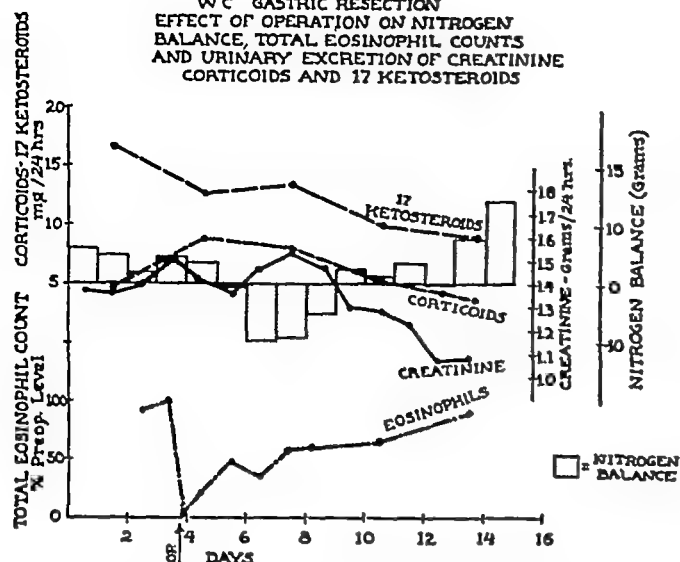


Fig 5 The nitrogen balance was positive prior to operation on the fourth day, and he was retaining several grams daily. Following surgery the balance became negative as the nitrogen excretion exceeded the intake. The intake of nitrogen and calories remained constant throughout the study. The negative balance was greatest on the seventh, eighth, and ninth days; thereafter the nitrogen balance was again positive, and on the fourteenth and fifteenth days (eleventh and twelfth postoperative days) the nitrogen retention exceeded that observed during the control period. Of some importance, the alimentation immediately following operation was provided by the intravenous route using protein hydrolysate mixtures—admittedly inferior to the oral ingestion of whole food products (see Fig 30). Nonetheless, this is the usual pattern of nitrogen metabolism seen following trauma. The altered adrenocortical activity was reflected in a fall in the total eosinophil count, a rise in urinary corticoid excretion, and a decline in the urinary 17-ketosteroid excretion. The metabolic response to soft tissue operations such as colectomy, gastrectomy, or cholecystectomy is not as prolonged as that which follows operations involving bone (Fig 8) (From HARDY, J. D., RICHARDSON, E. M., AND DOHAN, C. The urinary excretion of corticoids and 17-ketosteroids following major operations: correlation with other aspects of metabolism. By permission of Surgery, Gynecology and Obstetrics, 96: 448, 1953.)

associates²¹ soon found that adrenocortical extract increased nitrogen excretion and liver glycogen formation in the fasted animal, and for some time thereafter it was believed that the increased excretion of nitrogen which followed a major operative procedure was due chiefly to an increase in the secretion of adrenocortical hormones. How-

ever, it was subsequently found by Ingle and his associates¹⁹ and by Engel⁸ that the increased excretion of nitrogen following trauma also occurred in the adrenalectomized animal maintained on a constant but adequate supply of adrenocortical replacement therapy. This gave rise to the concept that the presence of a certain "permissive" level of cortical hormone is necessary for the nitrogen wastage to occur following injury, but that the increased excretion of nitrogen is not due to the increase in the secretion of the adrenocortical hormones *per se*. Recently, it has been suggested that a given amount of cortical hormone may be rendered metabolically more effective during stress—and in view of increasing knowledge that corticosteroid conjugation (inactivation) is a dynamic (and reversible?) process, this hypothesis may prove to be a valid one (Fig 11). Meanwhile, there is no doubt that nitrogen excretion is regularly increased by cortical hormone therapy.

EFFECT OF ACTH AND CORTISONE ON NITROGEN METABOLISM The increased excretion of nitrogen following the administration of ACTH and/or cortisone has been studied intensively since these substances became readily available. The marked losses of nitrogen which accompany the administration of these hormonal agents can be largely compensated for by doubling the caloric and protein content of the diet, though the amount of nitrogen excreted remains considerably elevated over the control levels. Furthermore, Spigau and his associates,²⁷ noting the demonstration by Albright¹ that the negative nitrogen balance of Cushing's syndrome could be altered by the administration of testosterone, found that the negative nitrogen balance produced by 200 mg of cortisone daily was reversed by the administration simultaneously of 25 mg of testosterone propionate. Whitney and Bennett²⁸ observed that the catabolic effect of ACTH on nitrogen metabolism could be inhibited by a diet high in potassium, and a similar observation was made by Ehel and Pearson⁷ in the treatment of a case of Cushing's syn-

G.Q. (4) EFFECT OF THREE STAGE THORACOPLASTY ON NITROGEN METABOLISM

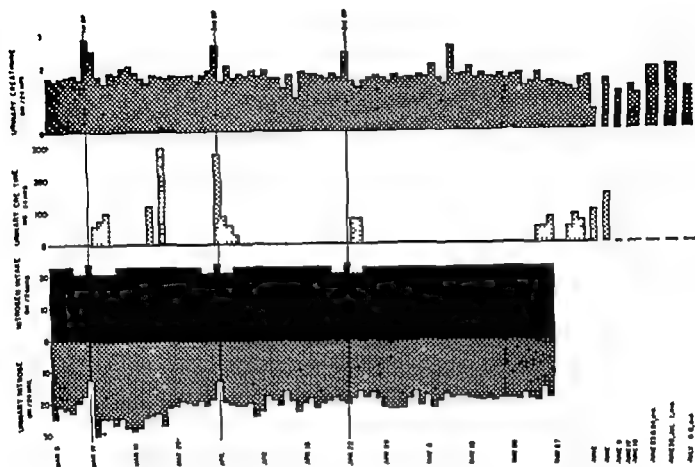


Fig 8 There was an increase in the excretion of creatinine on the day of operation reflecting participation of the muscle mass in the response to the injury. The increased excretion of nitrogen following the first operation persisted for almost 12 days, the nitrogenous and caloric intakes being constant throughout. The second and third operations were not followed by nitrogen wastage. This was believed to reflect the fact that after the "mobile nitrogen reserve" has been utilized by a first operation or illness a second insult is not attended by the same degree of nitrogen excretion (HARDY J D Metabolic reaction to staged operations in man Unpublished data)

drome. Hayes and co workers¹⁵ demonstrated that postoperative nitrogen catabolism could be reduced by the use of androgenic hormones, and subsequent work by others has tended to confirm this.

The fact that the usual effects of adrenocortical hormones on nitrogen metabolism and excretion can be altered, if not prevented entirely by the administration of an increased amount of potassium (presumably by preventing the development of a potassium deficit) has been of much interest in the light of reports attesting the importance of potassium stores in the fabrication of tissue protein. It has long been known, of course that this element is essential for normal growth and that a deficiency of this

cation may cause such pathologic manifestations as weakness or paralysis of various muscles. In a series of careful studies, Cannon and his associates^{2, 3} showed that adequate amounts of this ion are necessary for the synthesis or reconstruction of tissue protein. Whereas in protein depleted rats a ration affording an adequate supply of calories, vitamins, amino acids and salts caused excellent acceptance and effective recovery of lost weight, the removal of potassium from the salt mixture in the ration led to poor food consumption, failure to gain weight adequately, development of cardiac lesions characteristic of potassium deficiency and early death. However, the addition of small amounts of potassium chloride

to the deficient ration enabled the animals quickly to achieve effective protein repletion. In substance, their investigations demonstrated that a minimal daily intake of potassium salts is required for the processes of protein construction. These studies also demonstrated the inability of protein hydrolysate of excellent amino acid composition to produce protein synthesis in the absence of sufficient amounts of potassium. Incidentally, commercially available protein hydrolysate solutions commonly contain little potassium.

Thus, the question is raised as to whether or not the primary effect of adrenocortical hormones on protein metabolism is not that of the mobilization and excretion of the potassium ion. These questions may be answered, in part, through further investigation with recently isolated aldosterone. Its metabolic effect is almost entirely upon salt and water metabolism and not upon protein and carbohydrate processes.

Finally, the thyroid and the pancreas share in the metabolism of protein materials and, as stated, it is possible that the former plays a large part in the mobilization of nitrogen postoperatively.

Carbohydrate Metabolism in Stress

The metabolism of protein was discussed under the general heading of increased adrenocortical activity following trauma because the adrenal cortex apparently has a dominant rôle in the metabolism of this foodstuff. The adrenal also has, of course, a part in the metabolism of carbohydrate, but this rôle is not always as clear or definite as is its rôle in protein metabolism. It is now desirable to begin a more integrated discussion of the hormonal effects of several endocrine organs in food metabolism. For example, it was seen at the close of the discussion of nitrogen excretion above that not only the adrenal cortex but also the thyroid and the pancreas, if not other endocrine organs, are important in the metabolism of protein.

Normally one thinks of carbohydrate

metabolism as being regulated primarily by the amount of insulin available—adequate amounts of insulin resulting in adequate utilization of glucose and excessive amounts of insulin resulting in hypoglycemic shock. Nevertheless, insulin does not regulate carbohydrate metabolism without vast assistance from other sources. The intestine is responsible for the adequate absorption of glucose from the ingested foods. Hypoglycemia may be a cause of death in the presence of inadequate liver function, for, to maintain a constant and uniform supply of glucose fuel it is necessary to store glycogen in the liver and, perhaps to a lesser extent, in the muscles. Accordingly, abnormalities of glucose metabolism are common in liver failure. Furthermore, glycosuria and hyperglycemia are often found in the presence of adrenocortical hyperfunction, such as occurs with ACTH and/or cortisone therapy, or in the presence of Cushing's syndrome. In Addison's disease or hypopituitarism, on the other hand, hypoglycemia may be a cause of death. Finally, to give one more example of endocrinologic alteration in glucose metabolism, patients with thyrotoxicosis may exhibit glycosuria and hyperglycemia.

Thus, the regulation of the normal blood sugar level represents the net effect of a delicate balance of a considerable number of factors.

"STRESS DIABETES" Usually the rise in the glucose level following stress is not great, but in severe and prolonged stress this level may increase from the normal of approximately 100 mg per 100 cc of blood to from 400 to 700 mg. This has often been observed following extensive trauma, including burns, and during the past several years we have observed it in two other diseases. The first patient was an individual who had had a recurrently infected lung cyst for a number of years, during which time he had gradually developed diabetes mellitus for which he was eventually receiving more than 100 units of insulin daily, in combination with a rigid diet. To facilitate control of the diabetes by

abolishing the intermittent infection in the lung the cyst was resected. To the surprise of all within the next few weeks the diabetes improved to the extent that the insulin was stopped entirely and, eventually, very little dietary restriction was necessary. This was interpreted as evidence that the stress of chronic sepsis had increased the insulin requirements, presumably by increasing factors antagonistic to insulin (adrenocortical hormones?). To our knowledge decreased insulin production in stress has not been demonstrated.

The second patient was a woman who had had an operation for atelectasis of a portion of the right lung (due to a bronchial adenoma it was later shown). The bleeding encountered had been such that the operation was abandoned but apparently a bronchus had been entered in the dissection and postoperatively she developed a bronchopleural fistula and empyema. This was drained and over the next 8 to 10 months she had a bronchopleural cutaneous fistula. She sustained great weight loss and developed diabetes mellitus for which she eventually received insulin. At the time of her admission to the University Hospital the diabetes was discovered and was brought under control prior to operation. The bronchograms demonstrated extensive destruction of the right lung due to infection distal to an adenoma which now occluded the right main bronchus and a pneumonectomy was performed. Following the pneumonectomy a staged thoracoplasty was carried out to close the residual space. As convalescence progressed and the sepsis cleared the blood sugar level declined to normal without insulin. In other words, the diabetes had apparently been cured by removal of the chronic stress of sepsis, and similar experiences have been reported by others.¹⁰ Therefore again it must be remembered that insulin and cortical hormones are physiologic antagonists. The diabetes of total pancreatectomy is ameliorated by adrenalectomy and the hypoglycemia associated with functioning hepatic metastases

of a tumor of the Isles of Langerhans has been effectively combated by the administration of cortisone. This hormone will maintain an adequate blood sugar level in patients with Addison's disease in the presence of prolonged fasting. Again, further clarification of these relationships awaits a suitable method for the measurement of blood insulin levels.

THE NITROGEN-SPARING RÔLE OF CARBOHYDRATE. The foregoing discussion of carbohydrate metabolism has not included the interrelationships which have long been known to exist between the availability of calories in the form of carbohydrate and fat on the one hand, and tissue protein catabolism on the other.

Metabolism of Lipids in Stress

Until relatively recently the metabolism of lipids in stress was less extensively studied than was that of protein and carbohydrate and indeed there was the impression that fat shared little in the response to operation. The work of Moore and his associates,²³ however, has indicated that considerable amounts of fat are burned as fuel in the immediate postoperative period. These conclusions were based upon both total body water determinations and the measurement of the respiratory quotient in postoperative patients. The adrenocortical hormones will probably be found to have an important rôle in fat mobilization. In fact, there is considerable evidence to indicate that adrenocortical hormones can and do have a rôle in fat metabolism. For example, the abnormal distribution of fat in patients with Cushing's syndrome is well known, and recent studies in adrenocortical hyperplasia have shown that when the excessive androgen production (which causes the adrenogenital syndrome) is suppressed by the administration of cortisone, there may occur such a rapid redistribution and deposition of fat as to cause white striae of the skin beneath the female contours which develop. This redistribution of fat in the female is due to the interrelationships which exist be-

tween the adrenocortical hormones and the secretion of estrogens, and considerable research is now being devoted to the rôle of androgens and estrogens in the metabolism of proteins and fats. Obviously these hormones are important in protein anabolism; the female who has excess androgen production exhibits increased muscular development.

The metabolism of lipids is considered further under nutrition.

Miscellaneous Further Comment on the Stress Response

BODY TEMPERATURE. A mild increase in body temperature, at times following an initial decrease immediately after the trauma, is a part of the alarm response (Fig 7). Patients who have a clean herniorrhaphy with no "foreign body" reaction or infection almost always exhibit some mild rise in temperature during the first few days following operation. Moreover, the rise in temperature is somewhat proportional to the degree of the trauma. However, when major trauma has occurred it is often impossible to exclude the possibility that infection or the absorption of blood or damaged tissue may not be responsible for the febrile response. As noted above, studies which we conducted some years ago indicated that patients sweated with less facility postoperatively than they

did preoperatively,^{12, 14} and it appeared that postoperative fever might be due in part to a diminished rate of heat loss, regardless of whether actual heat production was increased (p 369).

If there is a useful purpose in such fever following trauma, it would appear to reside in the fact that the rate of almost all chemical reactions is increased by an increase in temperature and, in the last analysis, the stress response consists of myriad individual chemical reactions. Moreover, evidence indicates that the stress response results not from a different chemical reaction but from alterations in the rate of chemical reactions which occur normally.

MUSCLE PARTICIPATION IN STRESS RESPONSE

It would be surprising indeed if the musculature did not participate in the stress response, and of course it does. Alterations occur in the water and electrolyte content of muscle cells, and in muscle's rôle in carbohydrate metabolism. Moreover, urinary creatinine excretion is frequently increased following trauma, and the rate of creatinine excretion in health is usually considered an approximate index of the rate and magnitude of muscle metabolism. In wasting diseases, the urinary excretion of creatinine gradually declines as the muscle mass shrinks, as the lean tissue is reconstituted during convalescence, the daily creatinine

GO (f) EFFECT OF THREE-STAGE THORACOPLASTY ON BODY WEIGHT AND TEMPERATURE

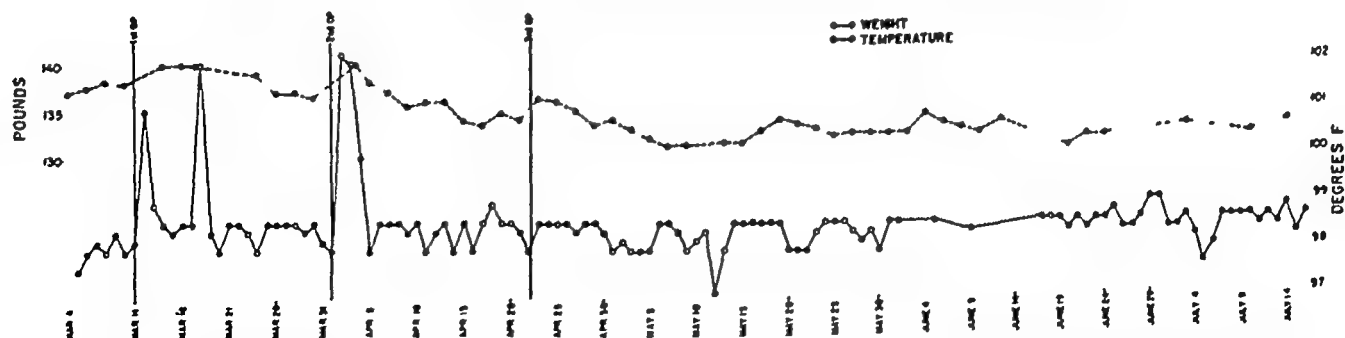


Fig 7 The body temperature rose after each of the first two operations but not after the third. Most operations are followed by a "stress" febrile response of various magnitudes. The body weight curve rose slightly after each operation due to retention of fluid in which nitrogen and calories were given intravenously, but the over-all trend of the weight curve was downward over the period embraced by the three stages. Most patients lose 10 lb or more (4.5 kg \pm) following a major operation. This loss consists of both fat and lean tissue. During convalescence the lean tissue tends to be regained first, then fat (Hardy, J D. Metabolic reaction to staged operations in man. Unpublished data.)

excretion gradually returns to the preoperative level. Fever and hyperthyroidism also increase creatinine excretion.

THE RÔLE OF ENZYMES IN STRESS A discussion of the systemic reaction to injury should not be concluded without at least mention of the rôle of enzymes, for there is increasing evidence that the ultimate chemical reactions which in the aggregate constitute the response to trauma are regulated by enzyme systems which are in turn influenced by hormones. The status of enzymes in modern surgical physiology will be discussed later in a separate chapter, but it may be noted here that it will doubtless be demonstrated that many of the phenomena of stress which we now must accept as being due to "altered endocrine activity" will ultimately be traced to specific enzymic changes (Fig. 71).

The Metabolic Response to Injury: Recapitulation

A traumatic injury initiates a series of metabolic forces which constitute at once the catabolic reaction to the immediate insult and also the positive forces which will develop and motivate the repair itself. The processes of recovery from the insult are collectively termed *convalescence*. It has been seen that all systems of the body respond to severe trauma, doubtless with the purpose, if at times obscure, of permitting the individual to survive the episode. The length of time that the acute forces are in action will depend upon the magnitude of the operation in the physiologic sense, since it appears that operations which involve bone produce more prolonged metabolic changes than do those which involve only soft tissue as, for example, cholecystectomy and gastric resection. Moreover, since there is such a marked variation in the response to different operations, we have chosen to compare common metabolic alterations in graphic form. It will be seen in Figures 6 and 8 that the response to a thoracoplasty is more prolonged than the relatively brief response to gastric resection (Fig. 5). The response to an

extensive thermal burn (Fig. 51) exceeds the response to any operation that we have studied.

The "feed back" mechanisms which arise to reverse the metabolic response to surgery, once it has served its purpose, are largely unknown.

The Stages of Convalescence

It remains to correlate the various facets of the response to operation—the psyche, the wound and the general metabolic response. Moore²³ has offered a clinical correlation which we feel is particularly well developed and which is useful in better visualizing the complex physiologic phenomena that constitute convalescence. He divided convalescence into four stages: the *adrenergic-corticoid phase*, the *corticoid withdrawal phase*, the *spontaneous anabolic phase*, and the *fat gain phase*. Of course, there is overlapping between these various stages, but it does afford a framework within which one can correlate observed clinical findings with the metabolic changes which are defined by laboratory study. Again, it is the injury itself which activates the forces of convalescence, this having been recognized by John Hunter two centuries ago. Moore's paper has been drawn upon liberally in presenting the following outline but modifications have been made.

Phase 1: The Adrenergic-Corticoid Phase

CLINICAL. The patient goes to the operating room, anesthesia is induced, the operation is performed, and convalescence begins. The first clinical findings of note are those caused by adrenal medullary activity: an increase in pulse rate, a narrowing of the pulse pressure, peripheral vasoconstriction with or without sweating, and an elevation of the blood sugar level due to glycogenolysis. These changes may occur with apprehension alone or during the excitement stage of ether anesthesia, subsiding as the patient is lowered into deeper anesthesia and stabilization of the respiratory and circulatory functions is achieved. Spinal anesthesia, intravenous barbiturates, and drugs which in-

G.Q.(8): EFFECT OF THREE-STAGE THORACOPLASTY ON THE EOSINOPHIL COUNT AND URINARY EXCRETION OF CORTICOIDS AND 17-KETOSTEROIDS

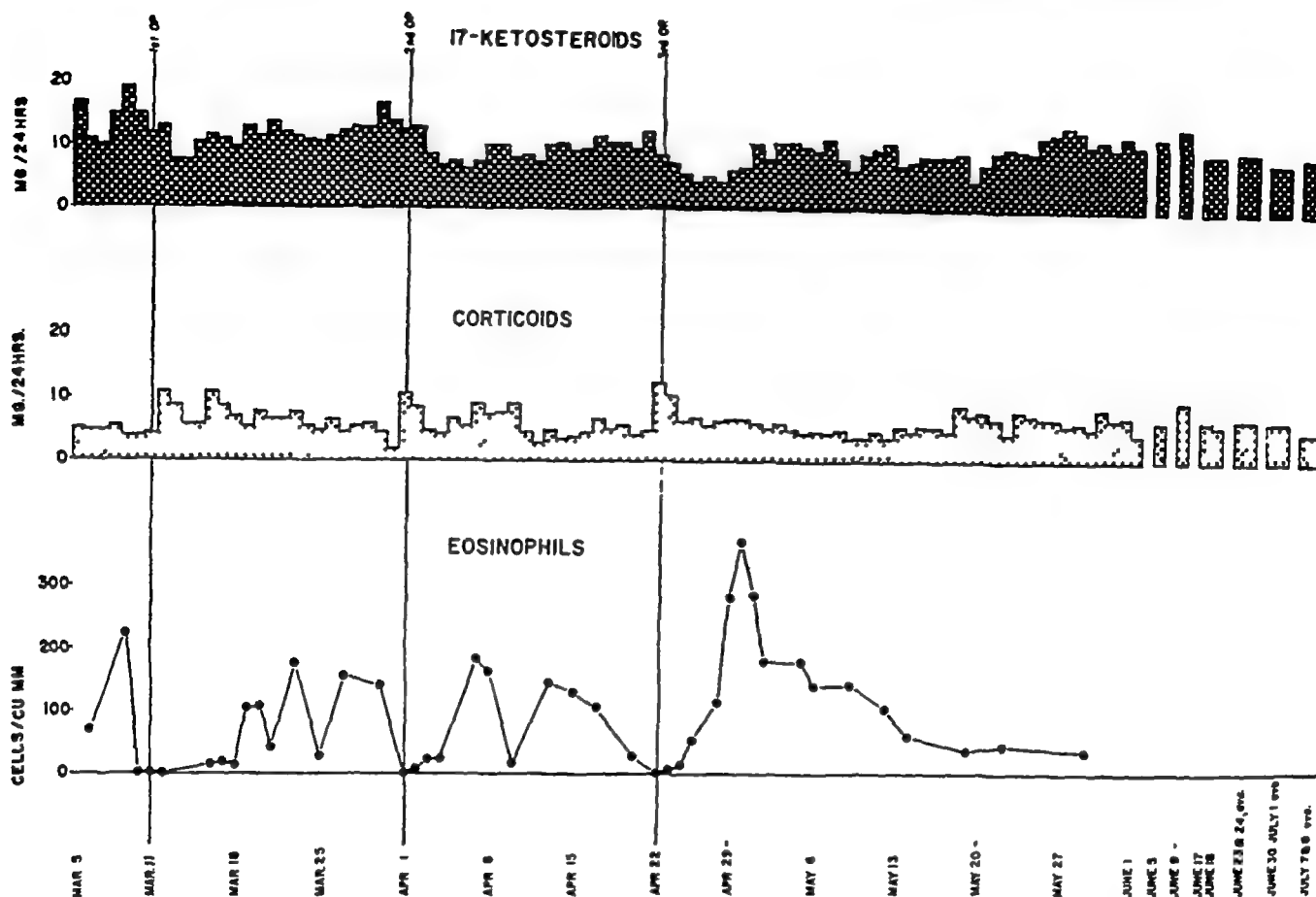


Fig 8 The excretion of 17-ketosteroids showed an immediate fall after each operation, and a gradual general decline over the period embraced by the three stages. The level of this excretion provides one index of the general state of health, declining during prolonged illness and rising again to normal during convalescence. The excretion of corticoids was increased after each operation, reflecting a continued capacity to respond to repeated trauma. The total eosinophil count fell to zero following each "stage," and gradually rose thereafter, the "rebound" to supernormal levels following the third stage was particularly noteworthy (HARDY, J. D. Metabolic reaction to staged operations in man. Unpublished data.)

interfere with normal autonomic transmission result in alteration of the adrenal medullary phase, either decreasing its intensity or delaying it. Actually, the most intense type of adrenal medullary response is observed in trauma in the unanesthetized individual, a common example being the wounded soldier or the traumatic injury in civilian practice.

Within a few hours the patient emerges from the anesthesia and complains of incisional pain. He is listless and the pre-operative excitement and apprehension have disappeared. Peristalsis is quiet and will probably be absent for the next day or so. The pulse rate may continue rapid for approximately 24 hours and rectal temperatures will demonstrate an elevation in the

body temperature. (Incidentally, a common nursing omission is the failure to take all temperatures rectally in patients who have nasogastric suction or who may be taking sips of water, here the oral temperature may not reflect the actual body temperature.) There is a relative oliguria the day of operation unless excessive amounts of water have been given, but during the following days the urine output will rise.

Thus, during the adrenergic-corticoid phase the patient has little interest in his surroundings. The end of this phase is defined by the beginning of peristalsis, the passage of flatus, the return of a degree of appetite, and an increasing interest in the environment.

THE WOUND. During the adrenergic corticoid phase the strength of the wound is dependent almost entirely upon the sutures. If it is necessary to open the wound to evacuate a hematoma, it falls apart quite easily on simply spreading with a hemostat. Fibrin clot and matrix has sealed the edges of the wound, but there is no particular healing from fibroblastic activity. The usual local cellular picture of inflammation is present, and there arise forces in the injured cell loci to cause regrowth of these cells until existing tissue gaps are filled. Moreover, humoral factors from the wound itself influence general metabolism.

METABOLIC. There is a decrease in body weight (Fig. 7) due in part, not only to the catabolism of lean tissue with nitrogen loss in the urine but also to the utilization of body fat. The characteristic nitrogen loss has been described in some detail. This increase in nitrogen excretion in our experience begins in earnest on the second postoperative day and continues for a variable number of days depending upon the magnitude of the operation (Figs. 5 and 6). Potassium excretion is increased and sodium excretion is diminished. The caloric intake of the individual is usually reduced during the immediate postoperative period and this, in itself, has been shown to be a potent stress stimulus for many of the metabolic activities previously regarded as entirely due to the operation. Furthermore the untoward effects of operation may be diminished by giving the patient an adequate caloric intake during this period. However the writer, for one, while making every effort in the past to achieve alimentation in the early postoperative period has never been convinced that any particularly useful function is achieved by forcing food upon patients at this time.

✓ The total eosinophil count falls during the adrenergic-corticoid phase to or almost to zero then it gradually rises during the next few days. In general it is fairly well correlated with the increase in the urinary excretion of corticoids (Figs. 8 and 9), though this correlation is by no means an exact one, and

actually a cause and effect relationship should be advanced with some caution. In other words, the factors which produce an increase in the corticoid secretion in trauma may also cause a decrease in the total eosinophil count—this despite the well-known fact that the administration of ACTH and/or cortisone will usually cause a fall in the total eosinophil count.

The hydrocortisone secretion per minute has been measured during operation by collecting left adrenal vein blood at laparotomy (Figs. 10 and 11). The level of free hydrocortisone in adrenal vein blood was 224 gamma per cent, compared with 24 gamma per cent in peripheral blood.

During this first phase the plasma sodium level may be diminished and the bicarbonate level increased. The total body water volume changes only slightly, despite weight loss. This fact has been interpreted, with supporting data, to indicate that a considerable amount of body fat is burned for fuel during this acute injury phase.

The end of Phase 1 is signified by the return of the eosinophils to a high level and the lowering of urinary nitrogen excretion, along with the clinical findings which have been mentioned.

Phase 2: The Corticoid Withdrawal Phase

CLINICAL. This phase of normal convalescence begins about the fourth day and lasts from two to three days after extensive surgery such as a gastric resection occupying the period from about the fifth to the seventh or eighth day. The appetite has improved considerably and peristalsis has increased. Spontaneous physical activity is rapidly increasing and the usual interest in surroundings and visitors has returned. Moore makes the point that during this period the patient's interest in activity is frequently greater than his ability to follow through, characterized by the fact that while the patient is most anxious to get a newspaper he can read but a few paragraphs before he lies back and lays the paper down.

Phase 2 is also the time when water diu

R.P.(s): EFFECT OF THREE-STAGE THORACOPLASTY ON THE EOSINOPHIL COUNT
AND THE URINARY EXCRETION OF CORTICOIDS AND 17-KETOSTEROIDS

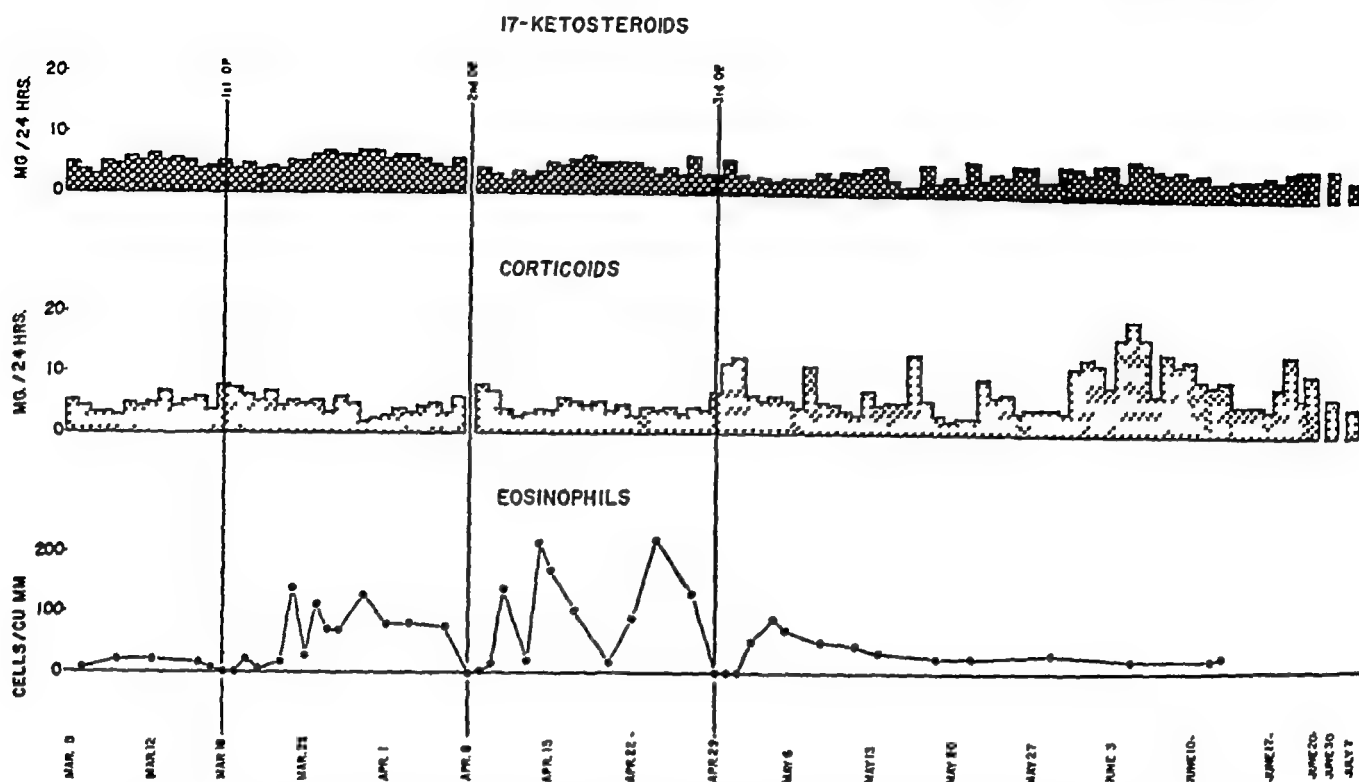


Fig 9 The chronically and severely ill individual presents characteristic patterns of urinary steroid excretion and of other metabolic responses to surgery. Note the low level of 17-ketosteroid excretion throughout the entire 4-month period of the study (average normal for adult males, 15 mg per 24 hours—in our laboratory). The level of corticoid excretion was little affected by the first two operations. The chronic stress was further reflected by the low control total eosinophil counts, the very mild postoperative rebound phenomena observed after all operations, and the prompt return to the low control level following the third operation. (From HARDY, J. D. *Surgical Physiology of the Adrenal Cortex* Springfield, Ill., Charles C. Thomas, 1955.)

resis occurs, probably due to the interaction of the decline in the previously increased secretion of adrenocortical hormones and, probably also, to a diminished secretion of the posterior pituitary antidiuretic hormone. Actually, the diuresis may exceed what is necessary or "overshoot." The weight curve (Fig 7), after rising due to the retention of fluid infused postoperatively, may briefly fall below that which is seen on subsequent days.

THE WOUND During the second phase the wound has become painless unless suddenly subjected to tension or unless infection is threatening, and microscopic study during this period shows that there is marked fibroblastic proliferation. The tensile strength of the wound is rapidly increasing (see wound healing curve, Fig 37) and by the sixth to

the eighth day epithelization has occurred to the extent that the skin sutures have usually been removed from an abdominal incision. To drain such a wound, more than a blunt instrument such as a hemostat is needed, and the line of incision has become red.

METABOLIC Changes during the second stage are in many respects a continuation of those occurring during Phase 1, but there is less evidence of fat combustion and there is a better correlation between water excretion and nitrogen metabolism, particularly as regards weight loss. Positive nitrogen balance is rapidly being achieved, due both to the diminished effect of the initial trauma and also to the fact that the oral intake of nutritional substances has been increased.

The potassium excretion in the urine is diminishing, whereas that of sodium is in-

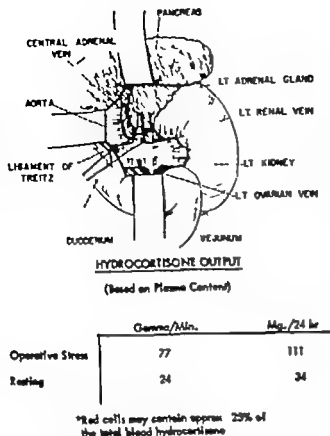


Fig 10 Direct measurement of hydrocortisone secretion. Above: Left adrenal gland as exposed at laparotomy. By aspirating only adrenal vein blood (renal vein blood temporarily excluded by loop of silk) over a timed interval the steroid secretion per minute was measured. Below: Hydrocortisone secretion in man as determined by left adrenal vein blood samples. Since hydrocortisone represents 11 per cent of the corticoid secretion in man, the measurement of hydrocortisone output reflects with considerable accuracy the level of adrenocortical activity. The values given represent only approximations, especially in the case of the "resting" values. Yet the data obtained by this direct method agree remarkably well with those reported by previous workers using indirect methods. (From HARDY J D, TURNER, M D, WARD V, AND CARTER, T. Steroid metabolism in man. *Surgery* 42: 191 1957.)

creasing. The eosinophil count has risen to normal or above normal limits (Fig 5) and the urinary corticoid excretion has subsided to control levels or to levels slightly below those recorded during the control period. Perhaps this decline in corticoid excretion to levels below those present preoperatively has the physiologic purpose of allowing normal metabolic rates and activities to re-establish themselves. The sodium level of

EFFECT OF SURGERY ON ADRENAL VEIN AND SYSTEMIC HYDROCORTISONE PLASMA LEVELS

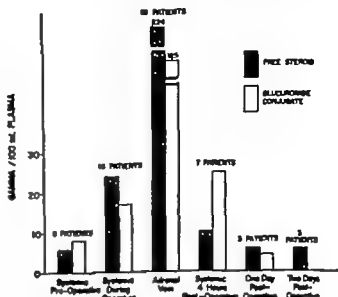


Fig 11 During operation the plasma level of free (active) hydrocortisone was 25 µg per 100 cc in peripheral vein blood and 221 µg per 100 cc in adrenal vein blood. Since the adrenal cortex supposedly secretes the active hydrocortisone in the form of the free alcohol the relatively high level of conjugated hydrocortisone in adrenal vein blood is not readily explained for this level far exceeds that of the entering arterial blood. It has been shown that to a degree extrahepatic conjugation (inactivation) can occur in the circulating blood but that following hepatectomy the capacity of an animal to conjugate hydrocortisone is lost in 6 hours. The very high level of free hydrocortisone in adrenal vein blood may have facilitated more rapid conjugation in plasma. The disproportionately high level of conjugated hydrocortisone in systemic blood 4 hours after operation presumably reflected inactivation of the large amounts of the free steroid secreted during stress. By the following day the control levels of both free and conjugated hydrocortisone had been regained. (From HARDY J D, TURNER, M D, WARD V, AND CARTER, T. Steroid metabolism in man. *Surgery* 42: 194 1957.)

plasma is returning to normal despite an increased sodium excretion in the urine.

The end of Phase 2 is signaled by the return of the various indices of the acute stress response to preoperative levels and the availability of sufficient nutritional intake to permit this return.

Phase 3: Spontaneous Anabolic Phase

CLINICAL. This phase is initiated when adequate calories and other nutritional sub-

stances are provided. After major abdominal injury Phase 3 begins on from the seventh to the tenth postoperative day. During this time the patient's strength and appetite have increased *pari passu* with his activity, and he is beginning to be anxious to be discharged. "The telephone is in frequent activity and visitors are welcomed and urged to remain longer. An intense interest in business requirements is developed, and it is realized that time has been lost from the usual occupations."²¹ The plasma chemistry measurements are not remarkable, and to measure the metabolic activity which is proceeding, one must perform metabolic balance studies and total body water measurements to demonstrate that during this period lean tissue is being reconstructed, body fat is being deposited, and stores of other substances lost during the acute injury are being replenished.

THE WOUND Now the wound is returning rapidly to normal tensile strength and should not give pain. If it does, one should look for the presence of infection, perhaps previously suppressed by the administration of antibiotics. Some induration and overgrowth of the tissue elements producing the wound healing are notable and the incision is still a dull red. However, the biologic forces ("wound hormones"? enzymes?) which produced cellular repair of the wound, even excessive repair, are now giving way to the local (?) forces which inhibit further proliferation. The cellular inflammatory reaction which resulted in repair subsides.

METABOLIC The *body weight curve* is beginning to turn upward, following the decline during the first two phases of convalescence, furthermore, there is a good correlation with nitrogen retention during this period, indicating that fat gain is not prominent. The provision of more than the optimal caloric intake during this period does not further increase the nitrogen retention in most patients.

During this phase some potassium is being regained (positive balance). A zero sodium balance is present, indicating neither excre-

tion nor retention of this ion, the output being equal to the intake. The rebound phenomenon in the total eosinophil count (Fig 8) has subsided, and the level is flattening toward control levels, as is the excretion of corticoids. During the late anabolic phase the level of excretion of 17-ketosteroids begins to rise toward normal, following the postoperative decline. However, after a severe debilitating injury the normal excretion of 17-ketosteroids is not regained for many weeks. There is some increase in total body water during the third phase, due to the fact that lean tissue contains approximately 73 per cent water (Fig 13).

Phase 4: The Fat Gain Phase

Clinically, the patient has gone home and gradually resumed his usual activities. Weight gain is prominent and this weight is chiefly due to lean tissue but, as the lean tissue reserves are restored following the losses in nitrogenous substance after injury, the fat gain period begins. If the diet is plentiful and the physical exertion not excessive, there is a fairly rapid restoration of body fat which begins during the third or fourth week following operation and lasts for many months. Moore emphasizes that the most outstanding clinical phenomena in the fat gain phase are a gain in body weight and a return of normal sexual activity. Of course, if the operation has interfered with normal gastrointestinal function, such as a nearly total gastric resection, the patient may not gain weight and may actually continue to lose weight until a very lean level has been reached.

During the fourth phase the wound flattens out. The scar broadens somewhat and turns white, however, gradual alterations in its appearance and character may continue for months. Nitrogen, potassium, sodium, eosinophil counts and steroid excretion are within normal limits. The excretion of 17-ketosteroids gradually increases with the return of health, and it has been suggested that this excretion is useful as an index of the rate and progress of convalescence.

REFERENCES

- 1 ALBRIGHT F. Cushing's syndrome. *Harvey Lect.*, 38: 123 1912-1913
- 2 CANNON P. R., *et al*. Potassium and sodium interrelations. In *Report of The Sixth W. C. R. Pediatric Research Conference* September 22, 1952 p. 15
- 3 CANNON P. R., GRAHAM J. F. AND HUGHES R. H. Influence of potassium on tissue protein synthesis. *Metabolism* 1: 49 1951
- 4 CANNON W. B. The emergency function of the adrenal medulla in pain and the major emotion. *Am J Physiol*, 33: 326 1914
- 5 CLITHERBURN D. I. Observations on the disturbance of metabolism produced by injury to the limbs. *Quart J Med* 1: 233 1932
- 6 EDWARDS R. H., AND RICHMOND J. B. The effect of stimulation of the femoral nerve on adrenal 17-hydroxycorticosteroid secretion in dogs. *Surgical Forum* 7: 112 1957
- 7 ELIEL, L. P., AND PEARSON O. H. The metabolic effects of adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) in a patient with Cushing's syndrome and acromegaly. *J Clin Endocrinol* 11: 913 1951
- 8 ENGEL, F. L. A consideration of the roles of the adrenal cortex and stress in the regulation of protein metabolism. Recent Progress in Hormone Research 6: 277 1951
- 9 FORTIER, C. Dual control of adrenocorticotrophic release. *Endocrinology* 49: 782 1951
- 10 GOODMAN J. I. Management of diabetes mellitus during ketoacidosis: acute infection and surgery. *J A M A*, 159: 831 1955
- 11 HANSON W. G. ARONOW J. AND MOORE, F. D. Studies in surgical endocrinology. III. Plasma concentrations of epinephrine and norepinephrine in anesthesia, trauma and surgery as measured by a modification of the method of Weil Malherbe and Bone. *Ann Surg.*, 144: 715 1956
- 12 HARDY J. D. Relationships between fever and sweating. *Fed Proc* 11: 61 1952
- 13 HARDY J. D. The adrenal cortex and post-operative gastrointestinal secretions. *Surgery* 29: 517 1951
- 14 HARDY J. D. AND RAVDEN I. S. Some physiologic aspects of surgical trauma. *Ann Surg.*, 136: 345 1952
- 15 HAYES M. A. HODGSON P. E. AND COLLIER, F. A. Use of testosterone in preventing post-operative liver dysfunction in poor risk surgical patient. *Ann. Surg.*, 136: 643 1952
- 16 HOWARD J. M. Gallbladder function (cholecystographic studies) following nonspecific trauma. *Surgery* 36: 1051 1954
- 17 HOWARD J. M., ARTZ, C. P., AND STAHIL, R. R. The hypertensive response to injury. *Ann Surg.*, 141: 327 1955
- 18 HUME, D. M. The neuro-endocrine response to injury. Present status of the problem. *Ann Surg.*, 138: 518 1953
- 19 INGLE, D. J., WARD F. O. AND KUTZENDA M. H. The relationship of the adrenal glands to changes in urinary non-protein nitrogen following multiple fractures in the force-fed rat. *Am J Physiol.*, 149: 510 1917
- 20 KRETOW R. W., COLLE, W. H., CALLOWAY N., GLUCKMAN N., MITCHELL, H. H. DRYNIEWICZ, J., AND HOWES D. Convalescence: a study in the physiological recovery of nitrogen metabolism and liver function. *Ann Int Med.*, 28: 521 1948
- 21 LONG C. N. H. KATZIN B., AND FRY E. G. The adrenal cortex and carbohydrate metabolism. *Endocrinology* 26: 309 1910
- 22 MACKAY R. L., KOOP C. E., RIEDEL, C., KOUGH N. T., AND STARR, I. Convalescence from surgical procedures. III. The relation of nitrogen balance and blood volume to abnormalities of the circulation. *Am J M Sc* 212: 501 1946
- 23 MOORE, F. D. Bodily changes in surgical convalescence. I. The normal sequence—observations and interpretations. *Ann Surg.*, 137: 289 1953
- 24 SCHÖENHEIMER R. *Dynamic State of Body Constituents*. Cambridge: Harvard University Press 1946
- 25 SPALT W. C., HARRIS J. M. YOUNG W. G., JR., AND CALLAWAY H. A., JR. Paradoxical hypertension following resection of coarctation of aorta. *Surgery* 42: 135 1957
- 26 SHORR E. ZWEIFACH D. W. AND FURCHGOTT R. F. On occurrence sites and modes of origin and destruction of principles affecting compensatory vascular mechanisms in experimental shock. *Science* 102: 489 1945
- 27 STRAUSS, R. G. Cortisone and ACTH. *Am J Med* 10: 567 1951
- 28 WHITNEY J. E. AND BENNETT L. L. Inhibition of the catabolic effect of adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) in rats fed a diet high in potassium chloride. *Endocrinology* 50: 657 1952
- 29 ZIMMERMAN B., CASEY J. H., BLOCH H. S. BICKEL, E. Y., AND GOVRIK, K. Excretion of aldosterone by the postoperative patient. *Surgical Forum* 6: 3 1956

Chapter 2

Body Constituents: Water and Solids

Body composition, acid-base regulation, hormonal factors in body fluid metabolism, renal function, daily water balance, types of fluid imbalance, a general approach to fluid therapy, and specific pathologic fluid states in surgery are the topics that will be considered in this chapter

Introduction It is no longer permissible to consider extracellular fluid as functionally separate from intracellular fluid. Nor is it realistic to discuss body water without acknowledging the dynamic molecular interchange between body water and body solids. Hydrogen and oxygen, for example, are continuously being incorporated into metabolic compounds, and simultaneously these atoms are being freed from other organic compounds to form water. Therefore, while in the ensuing pages we shall for convenience discuss body water apart from body solids, the reader must remain constantly aware that the skin of a human being encompasses a mass of watery tissue the elements of which are in rapid turnover. This total body mass must be conceived of as representing a single functional unit. *This concept of the functional unity of body constituents represents the very essence of modern physiology.*

Body Composition

Methods of Measuring Body Water and Solids

Early measurements of body content of water and solids were achieved by desiccation procedures, and one of the first studies

reported in man was that of Bischoff⁶ in 1863, he estimated the body water content of a cadaver at 58.5 per cent of body weight. In 1941 Behnke⁴ showed that in normal subjects the determination of body specific gravity enabled one to estimate the body fat content. Fat, with its low specific gravity of 0.92, was identified as the primary variable that determined body density in health, and upon the basis of these studies Behnke formulated the now widely used concept of the *lean body mass*. He pointed out that the body consists of a fat free portion of essentially constant gross composition and of a variable quantity of fat. It was later demonstrated that if the body weight and the body fat content of a normal subject are known, then the body water can be calculated—for body water and body fat bear an inverse relationship to each other, the greater the percentage of body weight represented by fat the less the percentage represented by water.

DILUTION METHOD (FIG 12) Useful as were the data derived from desiccation and specific gravity studies, these procedures were of course not applicable to the routine study of normal and ill human beings. There remained the need for some method of measurement which could be readily applied in living persons in the clinic. A variety of substances were tried but of these only urea, aminopyrine, and heavy water have enjoyed widespread usage. Of these three, heavy water (deuterium oxide, D_2O) has achieved importance since von Hevesy and Hofer²⁷ advanced it for this purpose in 1934. It has

been found to be well tolerated by the organism, it equilibrates rapidly (1 to 2 hours) with body water in normal subjects, it is not selectively stored or excreted, and it is not metabolized to any significant extent. While the techniques are laborious, the concentration of deuterium in urine and plasma can be accurately measured by certain physical methods, the most commonly used ones employing either the mass spectrograph or the falling drop apparatus. Aminopyrine, while to an extent metabolized in the body, is much more readily measured in body fluids and thus it is being increasingly used in clinical studies.

Total Body Water and the Body Fluid Compartments

To examine specifically the range of percentage body water in persons of different habitus we used D-O to study a group of healthy adult male and female subjects ranging in size from the very lean to the very obese (Fig. 13). The leanest male subject had a total body water value of 71 per cent of body weight (44.5 L), and the most obese male subject had a total body water value of 42 per cent (48.3 L).²²⁻²⁶ Similarly, the leanest female subject had a total body water value of 68 per cent and the most obese female subject a body water value of 50 per cent. In general the values for percentage of body water of female subjects appeared to be somewhat lower than those for male subjects of corresponding weight and habitus. The average value for body water for eight healthy men was 60 per cent of body weight, and the subjects who individually had values in the immediate range of 60 per cent were merely of good nutrition being neither skinny nor fat. Comparable values were obtained by Schloerb and his associates,⁴⁰ who found that the average healthy young adult male contained 61.8 per cent water and the young adult female 51.9 per cent.

Thus it has become necessary to revise previous concepts concerning the average percentage value for body water content in

DILUTION METHOD

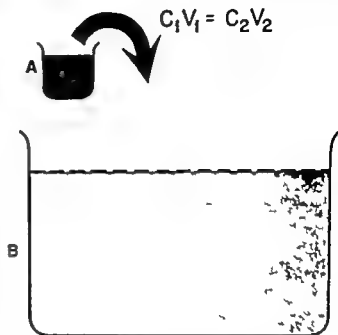


Fig. 13 All dilution methods for measuring volumes are based on the principle that when the concentration (C_1) and the volume (V_1) injected as well as the subsequent concentration in plasma following equilibration (C_2) are known—that is when three of the four members of the formula are known—then the fourth (V) can be solved for. The same relationship applies whether the concentrations are determined by measuring color change (as with T 1821) density (as with heavy water) or radioactivity (as with radioiodium).

healthy adults, the previously used figure of 70 per cent being acceptable only in the unusually lean subject. It is hazardous to calculate fluid replacement and drug dosages solely on a weight basis in the very obese, for fat is relatively inactive metabolically. Hence, the use of some convention such as "ideal" body weight for the average person would appear to have real merit where the estimation of drug dosages is concerned. Finally the fact that women tend to lose less nitrogen than men following a given operation²³ may merely reflect the presence of less lean tissue to give up nitrogen.

BODY WATER IN DISEASE STATES A moment's reflection will render it obvious that the percentage of body weight represented by water will vary markedly in different disease states. For example the dehydrated

TOTAL BODY WATER (D₂O DILUTION SPACE)

AND BODY SIZE RELATIONSHIP

Subject	Mass, \bar{W}	Stem length, \bar{L}	Nutritive Index, \bar{N}_o	$\bar{N}_o - \bar{N}_m$ †	Percentage overnutrition above minimum value, [[$\frac{\bar{N}_o - \bar{N}_m}{\bar{N}_m}$] x 100]	Total body water		
					Amount	Per cent of body weight	Per cent deviation from maximum value	
	Kg.	cm.			Per cent	L.	Per cent	Per cent
Leanest (theory)	(56.4)	(91.0)	(0.42)†	(0.00)	(0.0)		(75)	(0.0)
J.M. ♂	60.9	91.0	0.43	0.01	<u>2.4</u>	44.5	73	<u>2.4</u>
H.G.B. ♂	60.0	81.3	0.48	0.06	<u>14.3</u>	41.1	69	<u>8.0</u>
J.D.H. ♂	77.3	83.8	0.51	0.09	<u>21.4</u>	46.6	61	<u>18.7</u>
J.R. ♂	66.4	76.0	0.53	0.11	<u>26.2</u>	37.6	57	<u>24.0</u>
W.B. ♂	121.0	90.2	0.55	0.13	<u>31.0</u>	60.6	50	<u>33.4</u>
S.G. ♂	116.0	81.5	0.60	0.18	<u>42.9</u>	48.3	42	<u>44.0</u>
M.McG. ♀	53.7	90.2	0.42	0.00	<u>0.0</u>	36.4	68	<u>9.3</u>
A.D. ♀	59.1	82.6	0.47	0.05	<u>11.9</u>	35.3	60	<u>20.0</u>
J.R. ♀	54.6	75.0	0.51	0.09	<u>21.4</u>	31.7	58	<u>22.7</u>
W.T. ♀	86.4	76.2	0.58	0.16	<u>38.1</u>	45.1	52	<u>30.6</u>
Fattest (theory)	(111.0)	(76.2)	(0.63)	(0.21)	(50.0)		(40)	(46.7)

* \bar{N}_o = observed nutritive index = $\bar{W}^{1/3} / \bar{L}$ cm. (Cowgill and Drabkin, 1927)

† \bar{N}_m = minimum nutritive index, or minimum value of \bar{N}_o = 0.42

Fig 18 Total body water (D₂O dilution space) and body size relationship These healthy individuals were selected to cover a wide range in degrees of obesity The leanest male (J M) had a body water of 44.5 L which represented 73 per cent of body weight (60.9 kg), the most obese male (S G) had a body water of 48.3 L which represented 42 per cent of body weight (116.0 kg) Subject J M contained only 2.4 per cent fat in excess of the minimum normal value, whereas subject S G contained 42.9 per cent fat in excess of the minimum normal value Similarly, in subject J M the value for body water (44.5 L) was only 2.4 per cent less than the theoretical maximum normal value, whereas in subject S G the value for body water (48.3 L) was approximately 44 per cent less than the theoretical maximum value (75 per cent of 116.0 kg) These data show that if in normal persons the total body water is measured, the body fat can be calculated and *vice versa* Moreover, by substituting in the formula of Cowgill and Drabkin the values for weight and stem length, a useful approximation of the body fat (and water) content can be achieved in normal subjects (From HARDY, J D, AND DRABKIN, D L In *Fluid Therapy*, by Hardy, J D Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1954)

individual will exhibit not only an absolute reduction in body water content, in liters, but he will also exhibit a diminished proportion of body weight represented by body water , that is, body water would be reduced whereas body solids and body fat might not be proportionately reduced over a short period of time On the other hand, the patient with cardiac decompensation, or one who has abnormal deposits of fluid from their causes, may contain considerably

more than 70 per cent body water For example, one patient we studied during an episode of cardiac decompensation had a value of 83 per cent before his edema fluid had been mobilized with digitalis therapy and mercurial diuretics

The Body Water Compartments

THE INTRACELLULAR COMPARTMENT It has been customary to view the total body water as being contained in two major compart-

ment—the *intracellular* and the *extracellular*, the latter being further divided into the *interstitial* water and the *plasma* water. The intracellular water is measured by subtracting the value obtained by the measurement of extracellular water from the total body water (measured with deuterium oxide, antipyrine, urea, or other substance). These relationships are shown in Figure 14. In health the intracellular water represents approximately two thirds or from 65 to 70 per cent of the total body water. It will be clear that the estimation of intracellular water rests entirely upon the validity of the measurements of extracellular water and total body water since as noted above the value for intracellular fluid is obtained by subtracting measured extracellular fluid from measured total body water. Unfortunately, there still exists considerable controversy regarding the accuracy of the various techniques utilized for the measurement of extracellular water.

EXTRACELLULAR WATER. As with total body water numerous substances have been employed for the measurement of extracellular fluid utilizing the dilution principle. Of these only sodium thioeyanate and inulin have had wide usage. In general the measurements of extracellular volume in lean subjects have usually resulted in values representing approximately 22 per cent of actual body weight and 32 per cent of total body water. Measurements with inulin which is perhaps most generally accepted as the more reliable substance for this purpose, have resulted in values for the extracellular fluid in the neighborhood of 15 per cent of body weight. Thus values for extracellular water obtained through measurement with inulin are lower than those obtained with thioeyanate. There is no doubt that thioeyanate does enter some cells and a correction is usually made for that which enters red cells. Moreover in certain disease states the thioeyanate volume of distribution increases considerably. Ariel and associates⁵ demonstrated a marked

BODY COMPOSITION OF A NORMAL MALE OF AVERAGE OBESITY

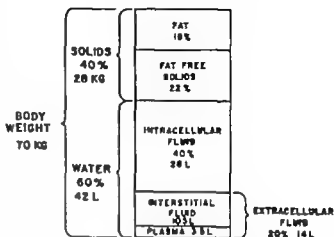


Fig 14 During illness the relative proportion and absolute mass of any of the several body components may change. Water is gained in heart failure and lost in vomiting. Fat is gained in health and lost in illness. In Cushing's syndrome there exists the unusual circumstance of fat gain with lean tissue loss. Usually, however, both fat and lean tissue are lost together during illness and regained during convalescence—though the timing of the losses or the gains of these two tissues may be different (see text). (From Haddy J D. *Fluid Therapy* Philadelphia Lea & Febiger 1951.)

increase in patients with a perforated peptic ulcer.

For practical purposes, the extracellular fluid represents approximately one-third, and the intracellular fluid two thirds, of the total body water. It has been shown that both volumes are more closely related to total body water than to body weight, and that each is inversely related to body fat. In the healthy person weighing approximately 70 kg. and containing 42 L. of water, the intracellular fluid would represent approximately 28 L. of water and the extracellular water approximately 14 L. of water (Fig. 14). The visible clinical signs of body water loss are due largely to deficits in the extracellular fluid volume, and it is helpful in clinical therapy to have some value in mind regarding the volume of water by which the extracellular fluid compartment may have been depleted. Changes in the concentration of electrolytes and other substances in the extracellular fluid can be readily measured by means of a sample of

plasma, whereas such changes in intracellular fluid can be discerned only by indirect research methods which are thus far too tedious to be useful in clinical therapy.

PLASMA WATER The extracellular water is further subdivided into the *interstitial water* (between the cells but outside the vascular bed) and the *plasma water*. The interstitial volume is determined by subtracting the plasma volume, measured with radioiodine-tagged serum albumin (RISA) or with Evans blue dye (T-1824), from the measured extracellular fluid. The *total blood volume* may be calculated using the measured plasma volume and the venous hematocrit, or, the red cell mass may also be determined directly by measuring the volume of dilution of red cells tagged with a radioisotope of phosphorus, chromium, or iron.

All these techniques involve the use of the dilution principle (Fig 12).

In the lean individual, *plasma volume* represents approximately 4 to 5 per cent of body weight, or approximately 6 to 7 per cent of body water. Plasma volume also is more closely correlated with total body water than with body weight, and the plasma volume of the lean individual represents a higher percentage of body weight than it does in the obese individual. The estimation of what the normal volume should be is probably better arrived at by utilizing body height than body weight, and the utilization of the convention of "ideal body weight" is again helpful in this connection. In the individual of average nutrition, or using the ideal weight of the lean or obese subject, the *blood volume* represents a figure ranging from 75 to 85 cc per kg of body weight. Since the red cell mass represents somewhat less than one-half of the total blood volume (normal hematocrit, 46 vol. per cent), the plasma volume constitutes slightly more than half the total blood volume.

The plasma volume and the interstitial volume are perhaps even more closely related functionally than are the intracellular and the extracellular volumes, and deficits

in interstitial volume promptly affect the plasma volume. A rapid loss in plasma volume due to hemorrhage is compensated for by the movement of water from the interstitial space into the vascular bed.

Finally, it should be pointed out that the body fluid compartments are listed as such only for the sake of conceptual convenience, for there is a constant and extremely rapid exchange of water molecules throughout all areas of the body. For this reason, we like to refer to the circulation of water throughout the body as the *greatest circulation*, the circulation of blood systemically as the *greater circulation*, and the circulation of blood through the pulmonary circuit as the *lesser circulation*. Water comprises the major transportation system of the body, and most of the body chemical reactions go forward within this medium.

The Maintenance of the Volumes of the Individual Water Compartments

In health the several water compartments are maintained at stable relative volumes, and it is of interest to consider how this is achieved. In brief, the water is held by the osmotic potentialities of the various substances contained within the intracellular fluid, the interstitial fluid, or the plasma. For example, the volume of the extracellular fluid depends largely upon its content of sodium chloride, especially sodium. The chemico-physical structure of the extracellular fluid is built around its sodium content, an important concept which is valuable in the treatment of patients. For, not only is the absolute salt content (and osmolarity) of the extracellular fluid dependent upon sodium, but sodium constitutes the principal ion responsible for the regulation of the pH of the extracellular fluid. It is clear that *sodium emerges as the dominant ion of the extracellular fluid*.

The normal concentration of sodium in the extracellular fluid is approximately 145 mEq/L of water (as measured in plasma water). The normal level of chloride is approximately 103 mEq/L, that of bicar-

ACID-BASE COMPOSITION OF BLOOD PLASMA

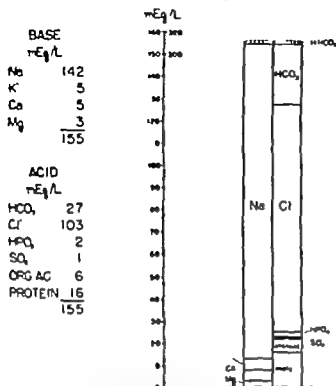


Fig 15 The milliequivalents of anion equal the milliequivalents of cations under all circumstances (From GAMBLE, J I *Chemical Anatomy Physiology and Pathology of Extracellular Fluid* Cambridge Mass., Harvard University Press 1917)

bonate approximately 27 mEq/L.; and that of potassium approximately 35 to 5 mEq/L. (Fig. 15) As will be seen later when the content of salt in the extracellular fluid decreases the extracellular volume usually decreases and when the amount of salt in the extracellular fluid increases, it holds water and tends to increase the extracellular volume

THE DARROW-YANNET CONCEPT It may be seen in Figure 16 that the various body fluid compartments are essentially isotonic or iso-osmotic with plasma and with each other. This is true even though the relative proportions of the different ions vary considerably from one body fluid to another. Similar osmotic pressures are found in gastric juice, pancreatic juice and plasma for example, and these relationships suggest the existence of a delicate mechanism for adjustment. This mechanism by which osmolar balance is preserved between extracellular and intracellular fluid was studied by Darrow and Yannet¹⁷ who demonstrated that

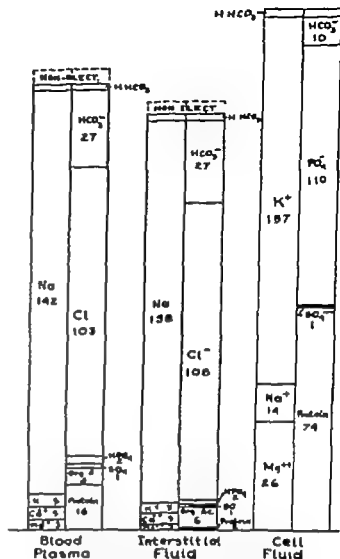


Fig 16 The relative ionic compositions of plasma, interstitial fluid and intracellular fluid. Sodium is the major cation of the extracellular fluid (plasma plus interstitial fluid) and potassium is the major cation of intracellular fluid. Similarly, chloride and bicarbonate are the principal extracellular anions whereas phosphate and protein are the principal intracellular anions. (Modified from BLAND, J H *The Clinical Use of Fluid and Electrolyte* Philadelphia W. B. Saunders Company 1952)

water introduced by mouth or intravenously was rapidly distributed between the extracellular and intracellular fluid compartments. Similarly, the introduction of sodium chloride into the extracellular compartment resulted in the movement of water from the cells into the extracellular space to preserve relative osmotic equilibrium between the extracellular and the intracellular compartments. This relationship has been used in the treatment of water intoxication (due to cellular overhydration) and in neurosurgery

to reduce cerebrospinal fluid pressure by the introduction of sodium chloride into the extracellular compartment the sodium and chloride ions are not readily carried into the cells and thus they exert an osmotic force in the extracellular space to draw water from the cells

The *plasma volume* is a component, with the interstitial water, of the extracellular water compartment. How, then, is the plasma volume maintained, particularly when there may be derangements in the extracellular volume?

The plasma volume is of course influenced by changes in interstitial fluid volume, but there is a strong tendency for normal plasma volume to be maintained even in the face of a body water deficit. This is because of the relatively small but very important *colloid osmotic pressure* exerted by the plasma pro-

teins, especially by albumin. Therefore, while the relatively high hydrostatic pressure (32 mm Hg) at the arterial end of the capillary forces water out of the blood stream, the relatively high colloid osmotic pressure (25 mm Hg) at the venous end of the capillary tends to draw water back into the capillary (Fig 17). Again, the plasma volume is actually a portion of the extracellular fluid, and the major distinguishing feature between plasma and interstitial fluid is provided by the higher concentration of proteins found within the blood stream.

INTRACELLULAR IONS (FIG 16) The major intracellular ions are potassium, magnesium, protein, and phosphates, and the osmotic force provided by these substances maintains the intracellular fluid volume relative to the extracellular volume. The concentration of potassium within the cell is relatively enormous and represents a level which would be quickly fatal if in the extracellular fluid. That such a release of intracellular potassium rarely occurs, except in the presence of extensive cellular destruction, attests the remarkable orderliness of the factors which regulate body fluid composition.

It is unlikely that more than a small amount of the potassium contained within the cell is in ionized form. Moreover, there is now much evidence that the movement of water across the cell membrane in response to osmolar effects is closely related to the metabolism of the cell. In other words, the substances within the cell may exert greater osmotic pull or force at one time than at another, depending upon the metabolic circumstances existing within the cell at the time. The volumes of the fluid compartments are commonly altered in disease, and in normal subjects they can be made to change by the injection of salts, water, or hormones.

Body Solids

Up to this point we have dealt principally with body water and body fat. In the individual of average obesity, the body water represents approximately 60 per cent of body weight and the body fat represents approximately 18 to 20 per cent of body

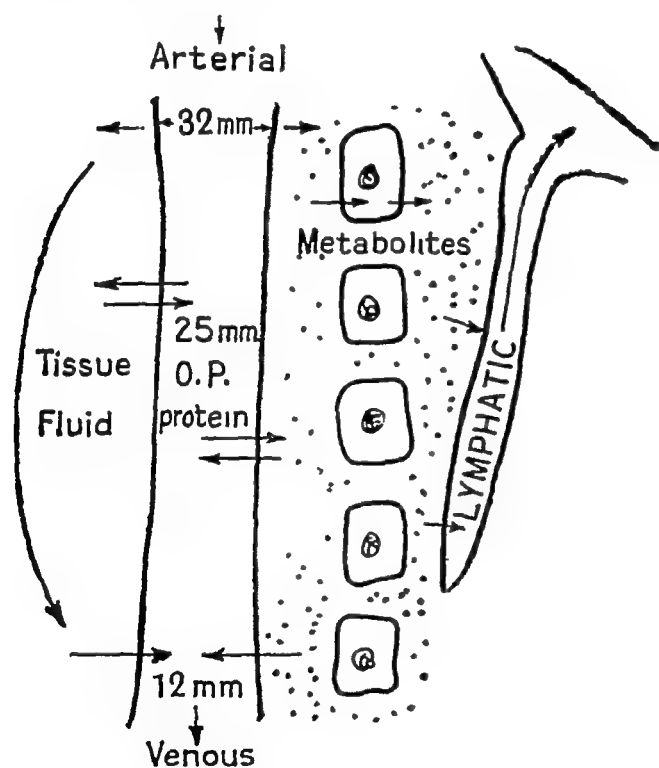


Fig 17 In essence, hydrostatic pressure forces fluid into the extravascular space at the arterial end of the capillary, and the colloid osmotic pressure of the plasma proteins (chiefly of albumin) pulls the fluid back as the hydrostatic pressure declines toward the venous end of the capillary. Yet, transcapillary transfer of the constituents of plasma is a highly complex process, and it is by no means all a matter of simple diffusion. (From WRIGHT, S. *Physiologic aspects of rheumatism* Proc Roy Soc Med, 32: 651, 1939)

weight (Fig. 14). Obviously there is an additional percentage, approximately 20 per cent which is unaccounted for by fat and water. This portion is referred to as the *fat free solids*, and is composed of the minerals of the body and of solids other than minerals. For instance these other solids would represent the portions of the cells which were not mineral and which were not water—that is, the organic solids. It should be noted here that even the very lean individual in health has about 10 per cent of body fat.

The *electrolyte pools* or stores of the body, particularly those of sodium and potassium can be measured with the radio-isotopes of these elements utilizing the dilution principle. One injects a known amount of radio activity or a known volume of counts and then allows this radioactivity, say in the form of radio-sodium, to be distributed through or equilibrated with the readily exchangeable sodium of the body. A plasma sample is then drawn and the concentration of sodium in 1 ml. of the sample determined. By measuring the number of counts in 1 ml. of plasma—and by knowing the miliequivalents of sodium in the milliliter of plasma and the total number of counts injected—one can solve for the total miliequivalents of sodium in which the total counts injected must have been distributed. Precisely the same type of procedure may be performed utilizing radiopotassium, and the exchangeable potassium pool measured. Therefore it is possible to measure or to calculate in the living subject the plasma and the blood volumes, the extracellular fluid, the total body water, the intracellular fluid, and the total exchangeable potassium and sodium, body fat, and fat free solids. McCance and Widdowson³⁴ found that the minerals of the body may vary from 6.6 per cent of the body weight of the thinnest normal subject to 2.9 per cent of that of the most obese subject. Moore and his associates¹⁰ listed eight basic types of change in body composition as follows: (1) *Whole tissue loss* or 'balanced starvation' as in

short periods of fasting without thirsting or such as might be observed in the presence of carcinoma of the esophagus (2) *Fat loss*, such as might occur in the presence of an inadequate caloric intake due to cancer or from dieting in obesity (3) *Water loss*, a clinical example of which might be acute gastric or intestinal obstruction, untreated (4) *Lean tissue loss with or without fat gain*, such as the muscular wasting which occurs following immobilization for the treatment of a fracture or in the final stages of starvation after the available fat has been burned. This also would occur in the presence of Cushing's syndrome where lean tissue is lost but fat is gained (5) *Whole tissue gain* as seen in normal growth, and also during convalescence from a prolonged illness or severe operation (6) *Pure fat gain* (7) *Water gain*, as in heart failure, liver failure or nephrosis (8) *Lean tissue gain*, such as in athletic training or in certain stages of convalescence.

Such measurements enable the clinician to appreciate better the changes in body composition which are constantly occurring in many of his patients, and will inevitably lead to more appropriate nutritional therapy.

Acid Base Regulation

At this point it is convenient to examine the mechanisms by which the acid base balance of the body fluids is maintained.

Certain Definitions

MOL AND MILLIMOL. A mol of a substance comprises a gram weight of the substance equal to its molecular weight. For example, a mol of sodium chloride weighed out on the chemical balance represents, for practical purposes 58 gm. of the salt (representing 23 gm. of sodium and 35 gm. of chloride). Since it is frequently desirable to deal with sub-units of the mol, the term millimol is employed to represent 1/1000 of the mol. The amount of sodium chloride contained in a liter of extracellular water is approximately 8.5 gm., and one might estimate that

TABLE 1 RELATIONSHIPS BETWEEN MILLIOSMOLS AND MILLIEQUIVALENTS

1 mol → 1000 millimols	1 equivalent weight of a substance provides 1000 mEq
1 mol in solution provides 1 osmol, or 1000 milliosmols, of osmotic pressure	The equivalent weight of a substance is determined by dividing the atomic weight by the valence. For example, sodium is a monovalent ion and its equivalent weight is 23 gm divided by 1, or 23 gm. In contrast, calcium is a divalent ion, and its equivalent weight is obtained by dividing the atomic weight of 40 gm by 2, giving 20 gm.

Thus, the term milliosmol is used to describe the osmotic pressure provided by ions or nonionized particles in solution. In contrast, the term milliequivalent is used to denote the acid or base neutralizing potential of particles in solution. However, since most of the ions in the body are monovalent ions and represent highly dissociated (ionized) salts, the total milliequivalents of acid and basic ions in a liter of plasma reflects with considerable accuracy the molar concentration (tonicity) of the extracellular fluid.

the individual who has 15 L of extracellular fluid would contain in this fluid approximately 8.5×15 or 127 gm of sodium chloride. Of course, the absolute amount of salt will vary from one person to another, though the plasma concentration is remarkably constant in health. A part of the sodium in the extracellular fluid is combined with bicarbonate, and so there is always more sodium than chloride in the extracellular fluid.

The term millimol is used to denote the concentration of particles in a solution, in contradistinction to the term milliequivalent which connotes the acid-base or neutralizing potential of the particles in solution (Table 1)

OSMOL AND MILLIOSMOL The mol represents the actual weight of the salt or other substance in the solution, and the *osmol* represents the osmotic pressure or force exerted

in the solution by the mol of the substance. Similarly, the millimol corresponds to the milliosmol.

However, mols of two different substances do not necessarily provide equal osmotic pressures, since one substance may be more completely ionized than the other and thus may provide a greater number of particles to exert osmotic force. Such would be true of sodium chloride as compared with glucose. A molecule of glucose, relatively unionized, would exert approximately the osmotic force of 1 mol (1 osmol). In contrast, 1 mol of sodium chloride, a largely ionized salt, would represent almost 2 osmols, 1 from the sodium ion and 1 from the chloride ion.

EQUIVALENT AND MILLIEQUIVALENT Another definition which must be understood to achieve effective practical fluid therapy is that of the *equivalent weight* of a compound and its sub-unit, the *milliequivalent*. Whereas the mol and the osmol have to do with the *number* of particles in solution and with the osmotic force which they exert, the *equivalent* and the *milliequivalent* have to do with the acid base *neutralizing potential* of the element. To refer to basic chemistry, an equivalent weight (1000 mEq) of a salt is that weight in grams which in a liter of water produces a *normal solution*. In the case of monovalent ions, such as sodium and chloride, an *equivalent weight* of the salt (NaCl) corresponds to the *molecular weight* of the salt (58 gm). One mol of sodium chloride provides 1 equivalent weight of both sodium and chloride or 1000 mEq of each. However, when the *valence* of the ion is greater than 1, such as that of calcium which is 2 (e.g., CaCl_2), the equivalent weight no longer corresponds to the molecular weight of the salt. Here 1 molecular weight of calcium chloride provides 2 equivalent weights of calcium and 2 equivalent weights of chloride. That is, calcium, a divalent ion, can neutralize 2 monovalent ions of chloride. Therefore, the ionic diagram of milliequivalents shown in Figure 15 does not precisely reflect the milliosmols

of osmotic pressure exerted by the substances represented in the diagram. Nevertheless, since over 90 per cent of the ions in the extracellular fluid (chiefly sodium and chloride) are univalent, for practical purposes the sum of the milliequivalents of electrolytes reflects with considerable accuracy the millimols (and the milliosmols of osmotic pressure) of these ions. This fact is useful in clinical fluid therapy. When normal osmolar or osmotic pressure relationships exist in the extracellular fluid the sum of the milliequivalents of plasma chloride plus the carbon dioxide combining power in milliequivalents represents a figure of approximately 130 mEq/l. If this sum is significantly less than 130 hypotonicity or hypotonicity of the extracellular fluid exists, and relatively more salt or relatively less water is needed depending upon the circumstances. If the sum of the milliequivalents of chloride and of bicarbonate is significantly greater than 130, relatively more water or relatively less salt is required to restore normal osmolarity. Again a lowered plasma concentration of an electrolyte may reflect either a deficit of the electrolyte or an excess of water, and both situations are encountered in clinical practice.

THE USE OF MILLIEQUIVALENTS INSTEAD OF MILLIGRAMS OR VOLUMES PER CENT. The normal plasma electrolyte values are given in Figure 15, and no mention is made of milligrams or of volumes per cent. This is because it is impossible to conduct orderly fluid therapy in the absence of a knowledge and use of milliequivalents. In no other way can the relative relationships between acid and basic radicals be visualized promptly and appropriate corrections made for disorders in acid base balance and osmolar concentration.

As noted above milliosmols have to do with maintaining the volume of a body fluid compartment (representing a physical process) and milliequivalents have to do with the acid base relationships of these volumes (representing a chemical process). Actually, however for the most part the

same ions perform both functions. The tonicity or osmolarity of the extracellular fluid is regulated by the number of particles in this solution, the acid base balance (or the hydrogen ion concentration, or pH) is regulated by the electrical charge on these various ions. There must exist proper proportions between negatively charged ions (e.g., Cl^-) and positively charged ions (e.g., Na^+). When the proper proportion between the acid radicals (negatively charged ions or anions) is not maintained relative to the proportion of basic radicals (positively charged particles or cations), acid base imbalance results: an excess of strong cations would produce alkalosis and an excess of strong anions would produce acidosis. However utilizing the weak anion bicarbonate, the total anions equal the total cations at all times. A mildly alkaline pH (7.4) results.

Regulation of Blood pH

Let us now focus the discussion upon a single function, that of the regulation of the blood pH or hydrogen ion concentration, since this permits a review of the factors which assist in maintaining the normal pH of approximately 7.4. Though unfolding evidence increasingly documents the complexity of this process, certain principles have long been established and have proved valid. The restriction of the hydrogen ion concentration to within rather sharply circumscribed limits is essential to life.

What is pH? Distilled water at 22°C is dissociated or split very slightly into hydrogen and hydroxyl ions. This dissociation is of such a magnitude that in 10,000,000 L of water there occurs 1 gm of hydrogen (H^+) ion and 1 gm of hydroxyl (OH^-) ion. This may be expressed as an hydrogen ion concentration of 10^{-7} and an hydroxyl ion concentration of 10^{-7} , the product of these being 10^{-14} . In any water solution, whether acid or alkaline, the product of the hydrogen ion and the hydroxyl ion is always 10^{-14} . A completely dissociated full strength alkali would have an hydrogen ion concen-

tration of 0 000000000000001 (which is more conveniently expressed as 10^{-14} , since the product of the hydrogen ion and the hydroxyl ion is always 10^{-14}), similarly, the completely dissociated strong acid could be expressed as an hydroxyl ion concentration of 10^{-14} . Thus, it is clear that an expression which denotes the concentration of either hydrogen or hydroxyl ions in a solution automatically describes that of the other, since the product of the concentrations must be 10^{-14} . By convention, the concentration of the hydrogen ion has been chosen to indicate the reaction (acidity or alkalinity) of a solution, and the term "hydrogen ion concentration" is abbreviated to the simple *pH* (the exponent with the minus sign dropped).

In point of fact, strengths such as those given for the completely dissociated (ionized) acid or alkali are never reached, and the acidity or alkalinity of a solution may be expressed as a *pH* which will generally lie somewhere between 1 and 14—the lower the *pH*, the higher being the hydrogen ion concentration. For example, an 0.1 normal solution of hydrochloric acid could be expressed as having an hydrogen ion concentration of 10^{-1} or a *pH* of 1, each 10 L. of solution would contain 1 gm. of hydrogen ions. In a 0.1 normal solution of sodium hydroxide there would occur 1 gm. of hydrogen ion in each 10,000,000,000,000 L. of solution, the hydrogen ion concentration being 10^{-13} or a *pH* of 13. An absolutely equal concentration of hydrogen and hydroxyl ions would represent a *pH* of 7, or absolute neutrality. Actually, the *pH* of the body fluids is normally slightly alkaline, and the normal *pH* of blood is 7.4.

THE MAINTENANCE OF A NORMAL BLOOD PH
In this section will be considered the blood buffers, the excretion of carbon dioxide by the lungs, and the excretion of fixed acids by the kidneys.

The blood buffers. Living organisms are quite sensitive to alterations in the *pH* of the surrounding medium and, as mentioned, they can often tolerate only slight variations from the normal hydrogen ion concentra-

tion. Therefore, the regulatory mechanisms which protect the body fluids from rapid or marked changes in *pH* upon the introduction of acid or alkali must be sensitive indeed. The basic protective mechanism is represented by renal function, since only the kidneys can eventually excrete fixed acid or basic radicals such as an excess of sodium, on the one hand, or an excess of chloride, on the other. However, this represents a relatively slow process and there is a much more rapid, though less sturdy, system of buffers which is able to absorb the immediate shock when fixed acid or alkali is infused. This system consists of the blood buffers, which are promptly assisted by the lungs through the retention or excretion of carbon dioxide. The most sensitive and important of these blood buffers is, therefore, the *bicarbonate-carbonic acid system*.

The manner in which the bicarbonate-carbonic acid buffer system functions may be better visualized by reference to Figure 15. The total sum of the plasma cations is equal to the sum of the plasma anions (acid radicals) per liter. Note that if the bicarbonate ion (HCO_3^-) be disregarded, then the milliequivalents of cations or basic radicals are in excess of the milliequivalents of anions. Note further that the number of milliequivalents of bicarbonate (largely in the form of sodium bicarbonate) is normally 27 per L. of extracellular fluid, that is, there are 27 mEq. of cations or basic radicals in excess of the anions or acid radicals other than the bicarbonate ion (HCO_3^-). These 27 mEq. of excess cations over and above the anions other than bicarbonate represent the foundation of acid-base regulation and are referred to variously as the *alkali reserve*, the *alkaline reserve*, or the *available base*. It is upon the alkali reserve that the normal maintenance of a slightly alkaline *pH* of the extracellular fluid depends. The available base is measured clinically as the "carbon dioxide combining power" or the " CO_2 ," or the " CO_2 combining power" of the plasma (and the extracellular fluid). As an example, if one were to infuse hydro-

chloric acid into a vein, the sodium bicarbonate of the alkali reserve would combine with the hydrochloric acid to form sodium chloride and carbonic acid, with excess carbonic acid being readily excreted by the lungs (Fig. 18). In this way the dangerous strong acid (hydrochloric) is converted to a neutral salt and a weak acid. Carbonic acid, a mildly dissociated substance, has effectively reduced the acid potential of the hydrogen ion derived from the hydrochloric acid. This capacity to excrete or retain carbonic acid as necessary to maintain a normal blood pH, is referred to as *respiratory* or *pulmonary compensation*. Actually one can infuse considerable amounts of hydrochloric acid in human beings before any measurable change is produced in the blood pH in many instances, although eventually the blood pH must change if this is continued. Or the opposite experiment may be done, namely the infusion of sodium hydroxide solution slowly into a vein. The infused sodium combines with carbon dioxide derived from metabolic sources and here a strong basic radical is incorporated into a relatively weak or poorly dissociated alkali. The sodium ion of the sodium bicarbonate thus increases the alkali reserve without significantly altering the blood pH. The additional carbonic acid would be made available by a diminished minute volume of respiration with a consequent retention of carbon dioxide (Fig. 18).

Other buffers of blood. While the bicarbonate-carbonic acid buffer system is the most prominent of the blood buffers, the phosphate buffer system, the plasma proteins, and the buffers of the red blood cells are also of importance. Furthermore it has been found that the buffering capacity exhibited by the extracellular fluid when much acid is infused is greater than would be expected were only the ions contained within this fluid compartment to be active in neutralizing the infused acid. Thus and other types of evidence have prompted an increasing awareness that the pH of the extracellular fluid is as might be expected closely

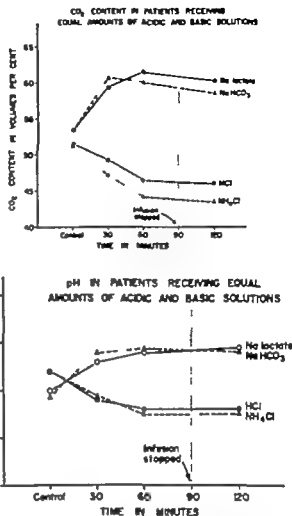


Fig. 18 The relative efficacy in man of sodium bicarbonate and sodium lactate as alkalinizing compounds, and of ammonium chloride and hydrochloric acid as acidifying compounds. In each instance 167 mEq. of the substance under study were infused in a volume of 1 L. at a constant rate. Each group consisted of 4 patients. Sodium lactate and sodium bicarbonate were both effective alkalinizing compounds, and HCl and NH₄Cl were both effective acidifying compounds. (Modified from HARDY J. D., DAMLER J. O. JR., and TURNER M. D. Further studies in body fluid metabolism. II. The relative efficacy in man of sodium bicarbonate and sodium lactate as alkalinizing compounds and of ammonium chloride and hydrochloric acid as acidifying compounds. *Surgical Forum* 7: 56, 1957.)

related to the pH of the intracellular fluid—and that the ions within the cell are apparently available for assistance in the neutralization of infused acid or alkali.

In the case of the phosphate buffers the intravenous infusion of hydrochloric acid results in a combination of hydrochloric acid with disodium phosphate (Na_2HPO_4) to form sodium chloride and monosodium phos-

concerning the influence of various hormones upon body water metabolism, but it is only in relatively recent years that the tremendous surge of research in this field has resulted in a far better understanding of what the ultimate precise relationships are likely to be. Even so, many accepted boundaries of hormonal influence in fluid metabolism are still dimly perceived, not to mention the possible vast expanse of the unknown. While arbitrarily selected, the elements of the following discussion were chosen to occupy an intermediate position between material that is so new as to require further confirmation, on the one hand, and that which now is of largely historic interest, on the other.

General Survey of Hormonal Influences

So far it has been indicated that the relative volumes of the body fluid compartments are regulated in large part by the electrolyte content of these volumes, and that the pH of the fluids is regulated by the relative proportions of these ions. Were one to add to these considerations only the hydrostatic pressure exerted upon capillary water by the pumping action of the heart and the counter-effect of the colloid osmotic pressure of plasma, the reader might conclude that body fluid metabolism is a relatively simple physicochemical process. However, there are yet to be considered the somewhat more subtle influences which regulate the body content of the electrolytes which, in turn, regulate the relative volumes of the body fluid compartments. These subtle influences are often hormonal in nature and were mentioned briefly in Chapter 1. Basically, it is the kidney and, in particular, the function of the renal tubule (Fig. 21) which maintains the proper amounts of salts and water in the body; the normal function of the tubule is maintained largely through hormonal influences. Thus, we now move further into the exceedingly complex mechanisms which in the aggregate preserve body salt and water concentrations, in the proper volumes and at the proper pH.

Virtually all endocrine substances in-

fluence water and salt metabolism either directly or indirectly (Fig. 3). To begin with the pituitary, the anterior lobe of this organ secretes thyroid stimulating hormone (TSH) and adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) which influence the thyroid and the adrenal cortex, respectively. *Thyroxine* is released and acts as a diuretic agent, and this effect is readily noted in the myxedematous individual given this hormone. Moreover, thyroxine alters general metabolism, and this in turn also affects body composition. The ACTH from the pituitary results in the liberation of a complex of active *steroids from the adrenal cortex* and these will be discussed in somewhat greater detail below. The posterior lobe of the pituitary (or perhaps the adjacent hypothalamus) secretes the *antidiuretic hormone* (ADH). There is a growing body of evidence to indicate that this hormone is even more important than previously realized in the normal regulation of fluid metabolism. When inadequate amounts of this hormone are secreted, the well known syndrome of diabetes insipidus results. Functioning tumors of the posterior pituitary secreting large amounts of ADH have not yet been demonstrated, but an increased antidiuretic effect is often observed following operation. Experimentally, one can inject a patient or an animal with large amounts of pitressin (ADH) and produce, upon the infusion of enough water, symptoms and signs of water intoxication due to the fact that the water load is not excreted, water intoxication is also encountered clinically. The action of the antidiuretic hormone is, then, to increase the tubular reabsorption of water, though there is also an effect which decreases slightly the excretion of sodium and chloride. The relationships of the neurohypophysis are shown in Figure 20.

Epinephrine and norepinephrine also have an effect upon renal tubular function. In a recent study of these effects in man Smythe, Nickel and Bradley⁵⁰ found that both depressed the urinary excretion of sodium and potassium in normal subjects. Since the

recently isolated hormone *aldosterone*, which has a profound effect upon water and salt regulation but virtually no rôle in nitrogen and glucose metabolism. This remarkable adienal steroid, only recently isolated, is now considered to have normally a major rôle and possibly the major rôle in water and salt metabolism. The secretion of this substance is increased following operation, and it may be chiefly responsible for the excretion of potassium and the retention of sodium and perhaps chloride.

The effects of cortical hormones on fluid metabolism may be generally summarized as follows: first, there is an effect on renal tubular function which influences the rate and extent of water excretion. Second, as a rule, the adrenocortical hormones result in an increased tubular reabsorption of sodium, with the consequence that there is a retention of water due to the osmotic effect of the retained cation. Nevertheless, it has been shown that a particular hormone may cause a different effect in the same individual under a different set of physiologic circumstances. Third, the administration of adrenocortical hormones or their secretion in the body almost invariably results in an increased excretion of potassium, due both to a cellular depletion (increased mobilization) of this ion and, probably, to an influence on the tubular reabsorption of potassium. Finally, the adrenocortical hormones have a marked effect upon the transfer of potassium across the cell membrane, probably by altering cellular metabolism.

In the presence of adrenocortical insufficiency the cells tend to become overhydrated and water intoxication may ensue, in contrast, the administration of adrenocortical hormones greatly reduces the susceptibility to water intoxication. Again, although the administration of adrenocortical hormones may in the same individual induce at one time sodium retention and at another time sodium excretion, the usual effect of these hormones on potassium is to increase the excretion of this ion. It is difficult to produce a potassium deficiency in dogs by diet-

tary means, but this objective is fairly readily achieved by the administration of desoxycorticosterone or other adrenocortical hormones.

TYPES OF ADRENOCORTICAL INSUFFICIENCY

It is important to make the distinction between acute adrenocortical insufficiency and chronic adrenocortical insufficiency (p 578). In acute adrenocortical insufficiency, such as might follow the resection of a large functioning tumor or bilateral adrenalectomy, the signs of adrenocortical insufficiency are notably different from those in the chronic form and they come on much more rapidly, before marked changes in body water and electrolyte concentrations have occurred. The patient who goes into *adrenocortical crisis* within 48 hours following resection of adienal tissue manifests hyperthermia, hypotension with a rapid heart rate, apprehension, anorexia, and often nausea and vomiting. However, if the individual slips into failure more slowly or subacutely, as might result from the too rapid withdrawal of replacement therapy following subtotal adrenocortical resection, there is more time for the plasma sodium level to decline and for the nonprotein nitrogen (NPN) level of the blood to rise, with associated mental confusion. There may be no rapid change in blood pressure at this stage.

Finally, in the patient who has had chronically inadequate but life-maintaining adrenocortical function there will have occurred large losses of sodium, chloride, and water, with resulting weight loss and general debility. The plasma sodium and chloride levels will be low. There will be a diminished blood pressure level, an elevated plasma NPN level, a low blood sugar level due to defective carbohydrate metabolism, and an elevated potassium level. Instead of hyperthermia, as seen in acute insufficiency, hypothermia is usually present in chronic adrenocortical insufficiency. As sodium is lost, water moves into the cells with a resulting relative increase in the state of cellular hydration. This cellular overhydration increases the susceptibility to water intoxication.

cation, and the administration of cortical hormones reduces this susceptibility, as noted previously. The administration of desoxycorticosterone in adrenocortical insufficiency restores the extracellular fluid volume, partially at the expense of the intracellular fluid volume.

FACTORS WHICH MODIFY THE EFFECTS OF ADRENOCORTICAL HORMONES The administration of desoxycorticosterone in patients with Addison's disease may result in the development of edema which this hormone is much less likely to produce in normal subjects. This would appear to imply an antagonism between the different cortical steroids in their effect on water and salt metabolism. Moreover, it has been demonstrated that in adrenal insufficiency there is an increased tubular reabsorption of water and, in the opinion of Gaunt and Birnie,²¹ this accelerated reabsorption of water by the renal tubules is probably due to an increased sensitivity to, and/or an increased blood level of the posterior pituitary antidiuretic hormone (ADH). These workers believe that there is probably not necessarily an increased rate of production of ADH in adrenal insufficiency but that there may be a decreased rate of inactivation of the substance, since in adrenal insufficiency the liver may not be able to inactivate this hormone in a normal fashion.

As regards the effect of adrenocortical insufficiency upon acid base balance (in addition to the acidosis which results from the over all loss of sodium) there is evidence that following adrenalectomy the ability of the kidney to conserve base by the exchange of hydrogen and ammonium ions may be impaired.

Renal Function

Role in Maintenance of Volume and Composition of the Body Fluid Compartments

The kidney is the primary organ in the maintenance of the normal volume and composition of the extracellular fluid and, through this volume the intracellular fluid

In addition, the kidney of course excretes waste products, and the importance of this activity is quickly appreciated when renal function is absent. However, we wish first to direct attention to the kidney's rôle in water and salt metabolism.

Let us begin by noting that the tubules of the kidney reabsorb approximately 180 liters of water (plasma filtrate) per day and selectively reabsorb those electrolytes and other materials (glucose, for example) which the body requires. Should the kidney tubules fail to reabsorb most of the water which is filtered, the individual would be dead within a very few minutes due to water loss and diminished circulating blood volume. Clinically, the importance of the reabsorption of water is apparent in patients with diabetes insipidus because of an inadequate amount of posterior pituitary antidiuretic hormone (ADH), large amounts of water are lost through the renal tubules in the form of a dilute urine. The administration of pitressin reverses the process to increase water reabsorption in the renal tubule and, should the individual continue drinking enormous volumes of water at the previous rate, water intoxication would ensue. Again, water intoxication even in these circumstances is difficult to produce if sufficient amounts of sodium chloride are given the patient, or if an adrenocortical hormone and in particular desoxycorticosterone (or aldosterone) is administered. Therefore, while it is essential that the glomerular filtrate pass down the tubule (Fig. 21) to permit the excretion of waste substances which would prove fatal if retained in sufficient concentrations it is equally essential that the kidney reabsorb most of the water. Thus it normally does except for the formation of from 1 to 2 L of urine on a daily fluid intake of from 2 to 3 L.

A second exceedingly important function of the kidney is to reabsorb sodium and chloride, as well as other ions. Were it not to do this, as is the case in certain forms of "salt-losing nephrosis," the body would rapidly be dehydrated due to the loss of salt

FUNCTIONS OF THE NEPHRON

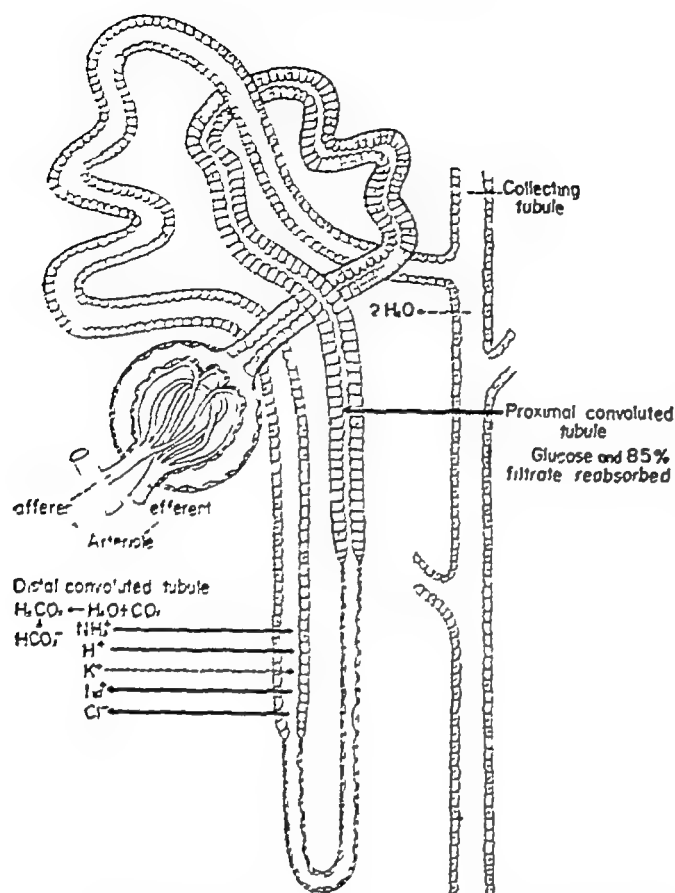


Fig 21 Glucose and 85 per cent of the filtrate are reabsorbed in the proximal convoluted tubule. In the distal convoluted tubule, sodium and chloride are reabsorbed and some potassium is reabsorbed, here ammonium and hydrogen ions are produced to combine with anions, thus replacing sodium and conserving this fixed base (Modified from MERRILL, JOHN P. *The Treatment of Renal Failure*. New York, Grune & Stratton, Inc., 1955.)

which would ordinarily "hold" water within the extracellular space. An example of this is the massive diuresis and salt loss which may accompany the resumption of renal function following the oliguria observed in lower nephron nephrosis. However, we agree with others that if fluid intake has been strictly limited during the oliguric period the "diuresis" is not often remarkable.

In addition to the excretion of waste products and the maintenance of the body stores of water and electrolytes, the kidney has a critical rôle in the maintenance of acid-base balance. This has been touched upon previously but certain points may be further emphasized here. Whereas the blood buffer- and the pulmonary excretion or re-

tention of carbon dioxide could temporarily ward off threats to the normal blood pH, eventually the kidney must excrete an excess of fixed acid or alkali. Accordingly, a crucial function that protects the reaction of the body fluids is the *renal conservation of base*. Ordinarily the kidney stabilizes the alkali reserve (the carbon dioxide combining power) at a level of from 25 to 27 mEq/L of plasma or extracellular water. Similarly, the respiratory system participates by stabilizing the plasma carbonic acid level at from 1.25 to 1.35 mEq/L. And, as we have seen, the normal ratio of the bicarbonate bound base to the carbon dioxide level, being 20:1, results in the normal pH of 7.4.

For the kidney to maintain the normal alkali reserve at 27 mEq/L it is necessary primarily to conserve fixed base, chiefly sodium. This is done in three ways. First, base is conserved by the conversion of the dibasic to the monobasic phosphate



by the substitution of an hydrogen ion for a sodium ion and the reabsorption of the latter. Second, base combined with inorganic acids in blood may, in the tubules, be replaced by hydrogen ions, the acid is then excreted in the free form and the base is reabsorbed. Third, the kidney forms ammonia which it substitutes for fixed base in the neutralization of acids excreted in the urine.

FUNCTIONAL ANATOMY OF THE RENAL TUBULE
The fluid in Bowman's space of the glomerulus has the same composition as does the extracellular fluid, but as this filtrate proceeds down the renal tubule the constituents are altered by the living cells of the tubule. Performing actual work, they cause particles of both an inorganic and an organic nature to migrate from a region of lower osmolar concentration to a region of higher concentration, exactly the opposite to what the direction of flow would be were the process entirely passive or osmotic in nature. In the proximal tubule the filtrate is

approximately the pH of plasma (slightly alkaline), but in the distal tubule the filtrate usually becomes acid in reaction because the strong basic inorganic ions (particularly sodium) are reabsorbed and hydrogen ions and the weak ammonium ions substituted. When the kidneys can no longer substitute a sufficient quantity of ammonium and hydrogen ions to permit conservation of the basic cations such as sodium, fixed base must neutralize the inorganic phosphates and sulfates, in addition to organic acid radicals, and this base is lost to the body, reducing the protective alkali reserve. Moreover, as the extracellular sodium—the foundation of the extracellular fluid structure—is lost, so is water also lost.

Whereas the pH of the plasma is normally 7.4, the urine is usually acid and a pH as low as 5 is not uncommon, for the kidney tolerates marked shifts in reaction without injury. Pitts¹⁸ estimated that more than a pound of sodium salt is conserved by the tubules each day. The proximal tubule is responsible for the reabsorption of sugar, phosphate, sodium, part of the chloride, and a portion of the water. The distal tubule is likewise concerned with water reabsorption and with the conservation of base (Fig. 21).

Practical Measurement of Renal Function²¹

The parts of the nephron may be tested separately and it is important to know which part is being tested, since differential values may be of aid in diagnosis. Furthermore, it is important to realize that certain kidney functions may be normal when other functions are seriously impaired. From the urea clearance and the blood NPN concentration one may gain a gross but practicable evaluation of *glomerular filtration rate*. The measurement of the maximal urinary specific gravity, the ordinary "concentration test" utilizing a period of dehydration, serves as a measure of *tubular reabsorptive capacity*. Finally, the fractional excretion of phenol

sulfonphthalein (PSP) serves as a measure of *tubular excretory capacity*.

As an illustration that one function may be normal when other components of renal function are diminished, Merrill²² has pointed out that with glomerular disease such as occurs in glomerulonephritis the urea clearance, blood NPN, and PSP tests may be abnormal, while the concentrating ability remains relatively good (1.020 to 1.024). In contrast, in the course of pyelonephritis in which the lesions begin in the distal convoluted tubule where much water is normally reabsorbed, the concentration test is impaired early, while the blood NPN, urea clearance and even the PSP may still be relatively unaffected. Therefore, to adequately judge renal function prior to operation all tests may be indicated when there is a reasonable doubt regarding the adequacy of renal function to support the patient through the contemplated surgery. In conclusion, if the specific gravity measurement of a single specimen of urine is above 1.020, it usually suggests fairly adequate distal tubular function. In our own experience, a low specific gravity—and above all if this remains fixed—is a finding to be viewed with the most serious concern in patients upon whom one plans to perform major surgery.

Two other "function tests" which afford much useful information are the intravenous pyelogram and the indigo carmine excretion rate. The visualization of the kidneys, ureters and bladder by means of intravenous pyelography depends upon the ability of the normal kidney to concentrate the various iodine compounds which may be used for this type of roentgenography. Many urologists consider this one of the better indices of adequate renal function. However, for maximum information from the study it is important to know which preparation was administered, since diodrast is excreted chiefly by the renal tubules and skiodan by the glomeruli. Kidneys that are unable to concentrate to a specific gravity above 1.014 during a concentration test usually are un-

FUNCTIONS OF THE NEPHRON

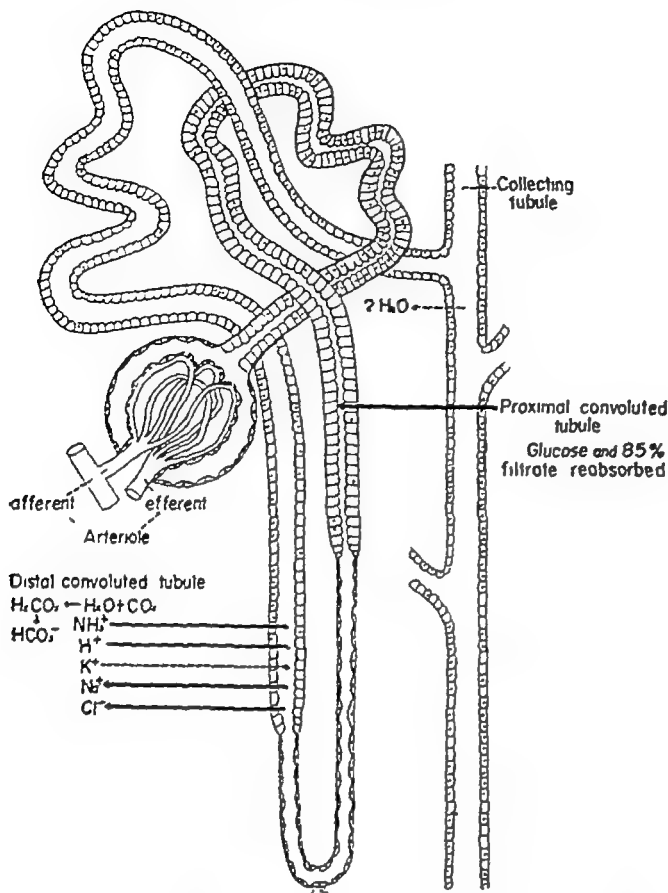


Fig 21 Glucose and 85 per cent of the filtrate are reabsorbed in the proximal convoluted tubule. In the distal convoluted tubule, sodium and chloride are reabsorbed and some potassium is reabsorbed, here ammonium and hydrogen ions are produced to combine with anions, thus replacing sodium and conserving this fixed base (Modified from MERRILL, JOHN P. *The Treatment of Renal Failure* New York, Grune & Stratton, Inc., 1955)

which would ordinarily "hold" water within the extracellular space. An example of this is the massive diuresis and salt loss which may accompany the resumption of renal function following the oliguria observed in lower nephron nephrosis. However, we agree with others that if fluid intake has been strictly limited during the oliguric period the "diuresis" is not often remarkable.

In addition to the excretion of waste products and the maintenance of the body stores of water and electrolytes, the kidney has a critical rôle in the maintenance of acid-base balance. This has been touched upon previously but certain points may be further emphasized here. Whereas the blood buffers and the pulmonary excretion or re-

tention of carbon dioxide could temporarily ward off threats to the normal blood, eventually the kidney must excrete a excess of fixed acid or alkali. According to a crucial function that protects the reaction of the body fluids is the *renal conservative base*. Ordinarily the kidney stabilizes the alkali reserve (the carbon dioxide combining power) at a level of from 25 to 27 mEq/L of plasma or extracellular water. Similarly, the respiratory system participates by stabilizing the plasma carbonic acid level at from 1.25 to 1.35 mEq/L. As we have seen, the normal ratio of bicarbonate bound base to the carbon dioxide level, being 20:1, results in the normal pH of 7.4.

For the kidney to maintain the normal alkali reserve at 27 mEq/L it is necessary primarily to conserve fixed base, chloride and sodium. This is done in three ways. First, base is conserved by the conversion of dibasic to the monobasic phosphate



by the substitution of an hydrogen ion for a sodium ion and the reabsorption of the latter. Second, base combined with inorganic acids in blood may, in the tubules, be replaced by hydrogen ions, the acid is excreted in the free form and the base is reabsorbed. Third, the kidney forms ammonia which it substitutes for fixed base in the neutralization of acids excreted in urine.

FUNCTIONAL ANATOMY OF THE RENAL TUBULE
The fluid in Bowman's space of the glomerulus has the same composition as does the extracellular fluid, but as this filtrate proceeds down the renal tubule the constituents are altered by the living cells of the tubule. Performing actual work, they cause osmotic particles of both an inorganic and an organic nature to migrate from a region of low osmolar concentration to a region of high concentration, exactly the opposite to what the direction of flow would be were the process entirely passive or osmotic in nature. In the proximal tubule the filtrate

approximately the pH of plasma (slightly alkaline), but in the distal tubule the filtrate usually becomes acid in reaction because the strong basic inorganic ions (particularly sodium) are reabsorbed and hydrogen ions and the weak ammonium ions substituted. When the kidneys can no longer substitute a sufficient quantity of ammonium and hydrogen ions to permit conservation of the basic cations such as sodium, fixed base must neutralize the inorganic phosphates and sulfates, in addition to organic acid radicals and this base is lost to the body, reducing the protective alkali reserve. Moreover, as the extracellular sodium—the foundation of the extracellular fluid structure—is lost so is water also lost.

Whereas the pH of the plasma is normally 7.4 the urine is usually acid and a pH as low as 5 is not uncommon, for the kidney tolerates marked shifts in reaction without injury. Pitts⁴⁶ estimated that more than a pound of sodium salt is conserved by the tubules each day. The proximal tubule is responsible for the reabsorption of sugar, phosphate, sodium, part of the chloride, and a portion of the water. The distal tubule is likewise concerned with water reabsorption and with the conservation of base (Fig. 21).

Practical Measurement of Renal Function⁴⁷

The parts of the nephron may be tested separately and it is important to know which part is being tested since differential values may be of aid in diagnosis. Furthermore, it is important to realize that certain kidney functions may be normal when other functions are seriously impaired. From the urea clearance and the blood NPN concentration one may gain a gross but practicable evaluation of *glomerular filtration rate*. The measurement of the maximal urinary specific gravity the ordinary "concentration test" utilizing a period of dehydration serves as a measure of *tubular reabsorptive capacity*. Finally the fractional excretion of phenol

sulfonphthalein (PSP) serves as a measure of *tubular excretory capacity*.

As an illustration that one function may be normal when other components of renal function are diminished, Merrill⁴⁸ pointed out that with glomerular disease such as occurs in glomerulonephritis the urea clearance, blood NPN, and PSP tests are abnormal, while the concentrating ability remains relatively good (1.020 to 1.025). In contrast, in the course of pyelonephritis, in which the lesions begin in the distal convoluted tubule where much water is normally reabsorbed, the concentration test is impaired early, while the blood NPN, urea clearance and even the PSP may be relatively unaffected. Therefore, one must cautiously judge renal function prior to operation; all tests may be indicated. Where there is a reasonable doubt regarding the adequacy of renal function to support a patient through the contemplated surgery. In conclusion if the specific gravity of a specimen of urine is above 1.020, it usually suggests fairly adequate distal tubular function. In our experience, a low specific gravity—below 1.010 if this remains fixed—is a finding to be viewed with the most serious consideration in patients upon whom one plans to perform major surgery.

Two other "function tests" which give much useful information are the intravenous pyelogram and the indigo carmine excretion rate. The visualization of the kidneys, ureters and bladder by means of intravenous pyelography depends upon the ability of a normal kidney to concentrate the various iodine compounds which may be used in this type of roentgenography. Many urologists consider this one of the better tests of adequate renal function. However, to obtain maximum information from the study it is important to know which preparation is administered since diodrast is excreted chiefly by the renal tubules and skiodine the glomeruli. Kidneys that are unable to concentrate to a specific gravity above 1.020 during a concentration test usually are

able to concentrate iodine compounds sufficiently to afford good visualization on pyelography

The indigo carmine test measures the functional capacity of the kidneys by determining their ability to excrete the injected dye. The intravenous injection of 5 cc of a 4 per cent solution of indigo carmine is accompanied by cystoscopic examination of the urine and the ureteral orifices. When the kidneys are normal the dye appears as a pale blue jet from each ureteral orifice in from 3 to 8 minutes, and within 30 to 60 seconds the color changes to a deep blue. Renal impairment is evidenced by a delay in the appearance of the dye in the ureters and by a less intense shade of blue.

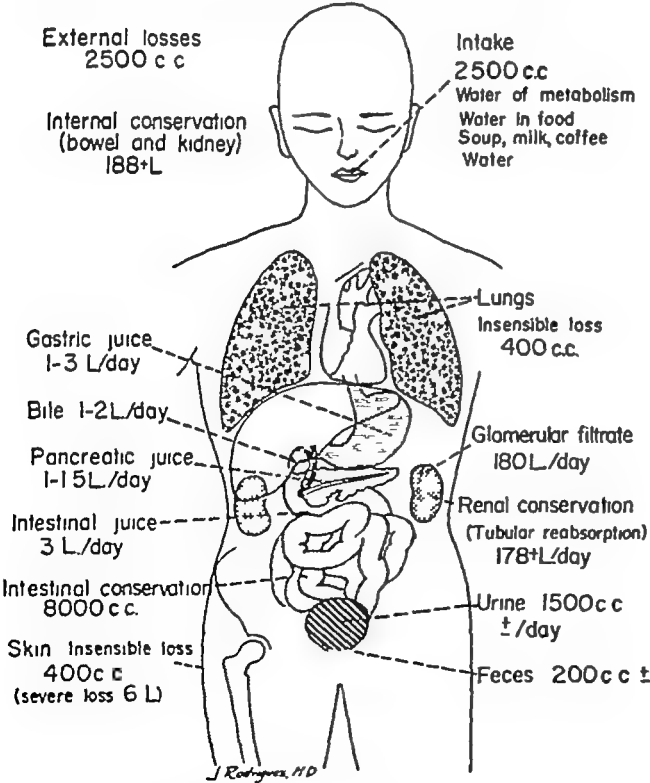
In summary, like the liver, the kidney has many subtle functions and a variety of function tests are required to measure the various facets of the activity of this remarkable organ. The three major functions of the kidney are to eliminate waste, to maintain the proper state of body hydration, and to regulate acid-base balance. Renal function tests

may indicate the type and the extent of renal damage, but they usually do not indicate the nature of the fundamental disease process, which is more readily diagnosed by means of the clinical picture, the urinary sediment, and special examinations of the urine as well as roentgenograms of the kidneys. The normal adult must secrete a minimum of from 400 to 500 ml of urine each 24 hours in order to eliminate the average of 35 gm of solids representing waste products. If renal function is impaired, an even larger volume of urine formation is necessary to prevent uremia, and eventually even 2500 ml of urine per day may be inadequate to avoid uremia in far advanced renal failure.

~ Daily Water Balance

In practical daily fluid therapy, the physician is perhaps more concerned with the more narrow concept of daily water balance—that is, the intake-output chart—than he is with the more general problem of water and electrolyte exchanges within the areas of the body itself, such as the renal and intestinal conservation of fluid. The list below gives representative and approximate values for an average person in a moderate climate at bed rest. Note particularly the relatively large volume of water contained in solid foods and that derived from food oxidation.

DAILY WATER BALANCE AND CONSERVATION



Water Intake	cc
Drinking water	700
Coffee, milk, soup	800
Water contained in solid foods	700
Water from oxidation of hydrogen in protein, fat and carbohydrate	300
Total	2500
Water Output	cc
In urine	1500
In feces	300
Insensible loss through skin and lungs	700
Total	2500

Fig. 22 The gross intake-output record reveals little concerning the tremendous fluid movements which take place within the body continuously

Actually, of course, the amounts given for the various sources of water intake and water output would vary from one person to

r and in the same person from day

Furthermore, the person need not precisely the same volume of water as that he took in that day, but over a period of a number of days the amount taken in must equal the output, otherwise the patient must either lose weight—and the weight of an individual in health is remarkably constant—or the individual would excrete on a given day only a relatively small number of the water molecules of water ingested on that day. The half time of ingested water molecules is from 6 to 11 days.

ROUNDATE LOSSES FROM VARIOUS ROUTES Helpful in replacing fluid losses to have an idea concerning the approximate volume which may be lost from various routes, and approximations for a 24 hour day are given below and in Figure 22

the juice	1000 to 3000 cc
creatic juice	1000 to 2000 cc
per small bowel fistula	500 to 1500 cc
drinking in small bowel obstruction	Up to 8 L
at	Up to 8 L (not including losses into bowel lumen that are not vomited)
at	400 to 6000 cc at extremes of temperature
iva	1500 cc
estimal juice	3000 cc

These are, again, only approximate volumes. Pyloric obstruction increases gastric secretion, and one may upon occasion aspirate from 5 to 8 L of fluid from the stomach.

24 hour period, far beyond the range mentioned in the table above. The importance of renal reabsorption or conservation of water has been mentioned, but it is also important to appreciate that gastrointestinal conservation of water amounts to 8 or more each 24 hours quite enough to be a serious illness and possibly death, if the entire amount to be lost from the body suddenly.

Types of Fluid Imbalance

CLASSIFICATION As a working outline, most states of fluid imbalance can be defined within the following categories: water and/or salt depletion (pure or mixed), water and/or salt excess (pure or mixed), acid base imbalance with acidosis (respiratory or metabolic) or alkalosis (respiratory or metabolic), and deficits of other important ions such as potassium, calcium, and magnesium.

Water and/or Salt Depletion

PURE WATER DEPLETION Although severe states of pure water depletion may be encountered among shipwrecked individuals and among those lost in the desert, in clinical practice pure water depletion is rarely encountered except in patients who cannot swallow or who are too weak to do so. Thus *clinical losses are almost always mixed losses*. If water is available and the individual is able to swallow, simple habit or the more complicated thirst (derived from osmoreceptors of the hypothalamus?) usually results in the ingestion of an adequate amount of fluid.

It will be appreciated that insensible fluid loss and obligatory urine excretion do not stop with the cessation of water intake, and hence the individual incurs a deficit of at least a liter per day. Even in the individual anuric because of renal disease, the insensible loss continues at the rate of from 600 to 800 cc per day regardless of intake. To put this another way, if the water intake is 1000 cc per day and the urine volume 1000 cc, there occurs a water deficit equal to the volume of the insensible fluid loss plus the loss by stool.

Pure uncompensated water loss from the extracellular fluid compartment by the formation of urine by insensible vaporization and by stool will deplete the extracellular fluid space, with resulting hypertonicity of this space. A shift of water from the intracellular fluid compartment to the extracellular fluid compartment will occur to maintain relative (but not normal) osmolar

equilibrium Simple water loss results, therefore, in a depletion of both the intracellular and the extracellular fluid compartments in approximately equal proportions Complete absence of water intake for longer than five or six days will result in a weight loss of from 5 to 7 kg and death will soon ensue, this eventuality occurring more quickly in infants than in adults because of the narrow margin of reserve and greater rate of water turnover in infants In pure water loss, the plasma sodium and chloride levels and the NPN level are elevated

In an experimental study involving human volunteers, it was found by Black, McCance and Young^{7, 35} that an *intense thirst was the initial symptom in pure water depletion* There followed dryness of the mouth and difficulty in swallowing, the urine volume fell to a minimum, and the urine became as concentrated as the renal powers of the individual would allow Since the urine volume could be little less than 500 cc per 24 hours to excrete the daily load of approximately 35 gm of solids, such a water restriction imposed a severe load upon the kidneys

Black and his associates found in their experimental subjects that weakness was progressive but was not marked until three or four days had passed Thereafter, as the dehydration progressed, the patient became confused, and his mental faculties were eventually seriously impaired In these studies the plasma sodium level was increased by 30 mg per 100 cc (13 mEq per L) after from three to four days It was suggested that death in severe water depletion may be the result of an excessive rise in body fluid osmolarity

Marriott³¹ has emphasized that there may be little hemoconcentration and shrinkage of the plasma volume at levels of water depletion below 6 per cent of body weight

Despite continued renal filtration at a reasonably normal level, the concentration of urea in the blood increases in simple water depletion, though the resumption of water

intake promptly restores the individual to a normal state

EXPERIMENTAL WATER DEPLETION VERSUS MIXED WATER AND SALT DEPLETION Elkinton Danowski and Winkler¹⁸ produced severe water depletion in dogs by restricting the water intake and at the same time dehydrating them by giving a solution of glucose and urea intravenously It was found that marked dehydration resulted in a diminished cardiac output, plasma volume, circulation rate, and mean arterial pressure, but that peripherovascular collapse did not occur In further studies it was shown that surprisingly little peripheral circulatory failure occurred in severe chronic water depletion in the dog However, *in sharp contrast to simple water depletion, the loss of both salt and water resulted in marked impairment of circulatory efficiency* Changes in extracellular volume alone did not appear to explain these differing circulatory reactions It was concluded that extracellular volume *per se* is only one of the factors that affect plasma volume, and that it is not necessarily the most significant one It was further concluded that the amount of salt in the extracellular fluid is highly important in maintaining circulatory efficiency, regardless of what the total volume of the extracellular fluid may be

PURE SALT DEPLETION Pure salt depletion usually occurs in individuals who are placed on stringent salt restriction with unlimited water intake, such as the low-salt diet commonly used in heart failure or, in surgical patients, the replacement of body fluid losses with only salt-free solutions Clinically, however, even in "pure salt depletion" there is usually some water loss Therefore, to examine the effects in man of pure salt depletion *per se*, McCance³³ studied this problem experimentally in four human subjects who underwent prolonged periods of sweating without limitation of the ingestion of water but with the dietary sodium intake carefully restricted It was found that the

renal excretion of sodium was rapidly reduced when the sodium content of the plasma fell below normal, and that it required a week of sweating, with sodium intake restricted, before evidence of a marked salt deficit appeared. After a significant degree of sodium depletion had been produced, the studies were prolonged for several more days and lassitude, apathy, anorexia, and nausea were noted in all experimental subjects, *though none complained of thirst*. This is an important clinical point of differentiation between relatively pure water depletion and relatively pure salt depletion, since the stimulus for thirst is considered to be a rise in osmolar concentration of the body fluids surrounding the osmoreceptors (cells in the hypothalamus that are sensitive to changes in osmolarity and which regulate the secretion of ADH). Where only salt is lost, the osmolarity (tonicity) of the body fluids is reduced, and there would not necessarily be a stimulation of the osmoreceptors to produce the sensation of thirst.

It has been seen from the experiments of Elkinton and his associates that salt depletion seriously affected circulatory efficiency, and it is of particular interest that in McCance's studies the ingestion of water alone failed to produce a diuresis in the subjects who had been specifically depleted of salt.

In contrast to simple water depletion, in which there is more or less equal relative or percentage loss from the intracellular and the extracellular fluid compartments, the loss of sodium chloride from the extracellular space results in hypotonicity of this compartment and water then flows into the intracellular space, resulting in overhydration of the cells. If the patient depleted of sufficient sodium chloride (extracellular) be given a large volume of water, the relatively higher osmolar concentration in the intracellular compartment may cause an excessive flow of water into the cells and produce water intoxication.

To recapitulate, the findings in pure water depletion differ considerably from those in

pure salt depletion. *Thirst* may be marked in pure water depletion but slight or absent in pure salt depletion. The *urine volume* is markedly reduced in pure water depletion, but is fairly well preserved until late in the course of pure salt depletion. *Sodium chloride* is usually present in the urine in pure water depletion, but is largely absent in pure salt depletion. *Vomiting* and *cramps* are usually not present in pure water depletion, but are often marked in pure salt depletion. *Weakness* and *orthostatic fainting* are not prominent features of pure water depletion, but are prominent aspects of pure salt depletion. The *plasma volume* is well preserved until late in pure water depletion, but is promptly reduced in pure salt depletion. Similarly, *hemoconcentration* is not an early feature of pure water depletion, but is a prominent finding in pure salt depletion. The *blood pressure* is well maintained for prolonged periods of pure water depletion, but it falls rather quickly in pure salt depletion. The *mode of death* in pure water depletion is obscure but may be due to a rise in the osmolar concentration of the body fluids, whereas death in pure salt depletion is usually due to peripheral circulatory failure (shock).

MIXED WATER AND SALT DEPLETION Under clinical circumstances, it is usually a combination of water and salt depletion that is encountered. This loss may take the form of the fluid and salt lost by vomiting or diarrhea, or by drainage from various types of fistulas. It may also be due to excessive sweating in the presence of febrile illnesses, or to the loss through the skin and wounds in burns. Since the losses involve both salt and water, the clinical picture does not reflect either pure salt loss or pure water loss but is rather nonspecific. Nevertheless, if a sufficient volume of fluid has been lost one does find anorexia, weakness, and peripheral vascular collapse. Thirst may or may not be a prominent feature.

It is now generally appreciated that a common way in which a mixed water and

salt depletion is produced clinically is that of placing a Levin tube in the stomach with constant suction and then allowing the patient to drink unlimited quantities of water. This results in the aspiration of the ingested water and along with it considerable amounts of sodium chloride and potassium. This depletion of body salt causes a loss of additional water from the extracellular compartment, since the salt is no longer present to "hold" the water in the body.

Water and Salt Excess

WATER EXCESS A relative water excess of course obtains in the presence of salt depletion without water depletion, but at this point we have in mind an *absolute water excess* which may be produced in patients who are given water but cannot excrete this fluid. This can result in water intoxication due to overhydration of the cells, such as may occur in the immediate postoperative period when renal water excretion is physiologically diminished. Or, it can be produced by giving a subject pitressin (ADH) and then giving a large water load. Among the conditions which predispose to the development of water intoxication are the following: (1) adrenocortical failure, due both to salt depletion in the extracellular space and to the absence of the adrenocortical hormones for the regulation of salt and water volumes of the extracellular compartment relative to the intracellular fluid compartment, (2) acute renal "shutdown" or diminished renal function due to the excessive loss of extracellular electrolytes, as seen in the "low sodium syndrome" of heart failure therapy and other similar circumstances, and (3) following trauma or operation, as mentioned above, where the secretion of ADH may be increased.

The syndrome of *water intoxication*, due to excessive body water without proportional salt content, was first described in 1922 by Weir, Larson and Rowntree,⁵⁶ who noted convulsions in a patient with diabetes insipidus who continued his usual fluid in-

take after polyuria and polydipsia had been controlled with posterior pituitary extract. Subsequently this phenomenon was reproduced in animals, and it was demonstrated that the seizures were related not only to the amount of water ingested but also to the concentration of extracellular ions. The administration of sodium chloride was shown to reverse or prevent the syndrome, and it has since also been found that the administration of adrenocortical hormones also greatly diminishes the facility with which the convulsive seizures of water intoxication are produced. Zimmermann and Wangenstein⁵⁸ reported a series of 17 surgical patients in whom water intoxication was considered to have occurred in the early postoperative period. The clinical manifestations consisted of convulsive seizures following operation, associated with a dilution of extracellular electrolytes. The water balance was strongly positive in most of these subjects, and in all but one instance the convulsions occurred between 12 and 48 hours following the operation. The intravenous administration of hypertonic sodium chloride solution was effective in restoring normal osmolar concentration and resulted in prompt clinical improvement.

Correction of water excess The most direct treatment of water excess would be to reduce the total volume of water in the body rather than merely to add salt to balance the excess water. To achieve this end, Hammond and his associates²² have infused mannitol to produce diuresis in patients with a low plasma sodium level due to excessive water retention following valvulotomy. D'Angelo and his group¹⁴ have used intravenous alcohol; it appears that the alcohol suppresses the secretion of ADH. Such therapy avoids the distinct hazard of giving additional salt to the cardiac patient to restore normal extracellular salt concentration and osmolarity.

SALT EXCESS Aside from the relative salt excess which is present when there is a "pure water depletion," there is occasionally an absolute salt excess in patients whose ex-

S.S. RUPTURED ABDOMINAL ANEURYSM LOWER NEPHRON NEPHROSIS

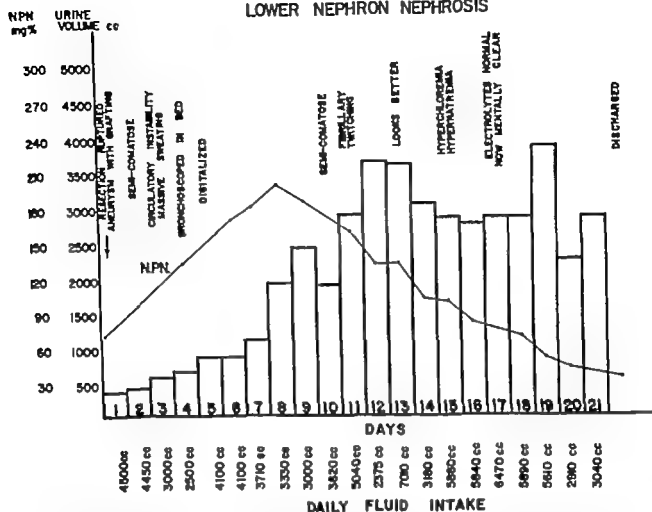


Fig 23 This patient (see also Fig 169) had a period of marked azotemia and at times he was virtually comatose. He was not long hypotensive during surgery but he had had several periods of shock prior to that time. A prominent feature of his case was the massive sweating, even in an air-conditioned room. Daily weights were not available and fluid therapy had to be estimated on the basis of clinical evaluation and blood chemistry values. Despite intakes ranging from 2.5 to 7 L. per day he developed hyperchloremia and hyponatremia, which responded satisfactorily to further nonelectrolyte-containing fluid. The nonprotein nitrogen (NPN) reached a level of 200 and then subsided. Potassium intoxication was not a serious hazard after the first 96 hours. He eventually returned to full employment.

tracellular fluid volume (and probably the intracellular fluid volume) is actually excessive as evidenced by pitting edema. Such patients may exhibit a plasma sodium level of 160 mEq/L (normal, 145 mEq/L) and a plasma chloride level of from 120 to 130 mEq/L. This represents a markedly elevated sodium and chloride concentration in the extracellular fluid, the precise genesis of which is not clearly known. We first encountered such instances in a patient with an extensive thermal burn (Fig 60) and in a patient with a pancreatic fistula, both of them had suffered prolonged hypotension

and presumably had sustained some subtle qualitative alteration in renal tubular function, since both were excreting considerable volumes of urine in the presence of these high plasma levels of sodium and chloride and both were clinically edematous. More recently, however, this phenomenon was encountered in a patient whose ruptured abdominal aneurysm had been successfully grafted (Fig. 23). In this individual it appeared that simple dehydration was the cause of the markedly elevated plasma sodium and chloride levels, and prompt im-

provement accompanied the infusion of additional salt-free solution

Several different types of lesions, presumably in the brain (though kidney lesions could not be excluded), were recorded by Allott² in 1939. He reported his cases as representing sodium and chloride retention without renal disease. In four of the five patients an autopsy had been performed, and in each a brain lesion was demonstrated. In 1948 Sweet and his associates⁵³ reported gastrointestinal hemorrhages, hyperglycemia, azotemia, hyperchloremia, and hypernatremia (increased plasma sodium level) following frontal lobe lesions in man. In 1952 Cooper and Crevier¹² reported electrolyte abnormalities observed in association with brain lesions, and for this reason they described the findings as representing "neurogenic" hypernatremia and hyperchloremia. It was suggested that these abnormalities were produced by damage to a cerebral osmoreceptor mechanism which resulted in defective posterior pituitary function. However, in the first of our cases cited above there was no gross evidence of brain damage at autopsy, the patient whose ruptured aneurysm had been resected lived, but his hypernatremia and hyperchloremia appeared to have been due to an inadequate water intake *under the clinical circumstances*. Therefore, it is always important to be certain that elevated sodium and chloride concentrations are not due to simple water deficiency, for this can be treated—and one suspects that a water deficiency, absolute or relative, may be a common cause of these elevated plasma electrolyte concentrations.

General Comments on Edema

The accumulation of water and salt, in combination, in the body, whether generalized or in only one part, is referred to as representing a state of edema. The presence of edema is often apparent on clinical observation, as reflected in the pitting which may be demonstrated in the lower extremities in cardiac decompensation. On the other hand, the

edema may not be readily demonstrable clinically except through weighing the patient. In fact, by utilizing daily weight measurements one employs one of the most practical methods for the management of the cardiac patient. Edema not apparent on clinical examination is often referred to as subclinical or larval edema, and the individual can retain several liters of water before pitting edema becomes apparent. This can also be observed in a majority of surgical patients who receive from 2 to 3 L. of fluid intravenously for the first several days following surgery, particularly if a considerable proportion of this fluid contains sodium chloride (Fig. 7). If such patients are weighed for several days preoperatively and these measurements then continued for several days postoperatively, it will be found that during the first day or so following operation there may be an increase in body weight due to fluid retention, following which most patients will lose several kilograms due to the loss of this water plus both fat and lean tissue (Chapter 1). Weight gain due to fluid retention is even more striking when a newborn is given an excess of salt solution, since the neonatal kidney is relatively inefficient in excreting sodium chloride. Still another common clinical example of the retention of infused sodium chloride solution is that observed in the treatment of patients with extensive thermal burns (Figs. 54, 55, and 56). Massive fluid administration is required to offset the outpouring of fluid which results in characteristic swelling of the part representing "burn edema" or "wound edema." Actually, such an outpouring of fluid occurs adjacent to almost any injury, such as traumatic contusion of the extremity or around a fracture, though blood also is extravasated in these instances. This retention of fluid following injury is usually transiently increased, and it is necessary to restrict the circulating volume to prevent circulatory shock. A patient with a severe burn or fracture may exhibit a marked increase in weight during the first few days following the injury, but this is usually followed by a gradual decrease as the fluid is excreted. The weight gain is usually proportional to the amount of fluid administered, and the patient may be weighed daily to determine the effect of fluid administration. The weight gain is usually proportional to the amount of fluid administered, and the patient may be weighed daily to determine the effect of fluid administration.

chloride moves into this fluid and depletes the extracellular space, and salt-loss shock may result

MECHANISMS OF EDEMA FORMATION The few examples given above serve to indicate that the formation of edema fluid is a common circumstance in surgical practice, and they serve also to emphasize that the formation of edema has important physiologic significance. It is appropriate now to review some of the more common mechanisms of edema formation, bearing in mind the while that these mechanisms intermesh and that the formation of edema under any particular set of physiologic circumstances may reflect a considerable number of contributory physiologic factors.¹ In addition to "therapeutic edema produced by the infusion of sodium chloride solution (as in burn therapy)" the following types may be considered (1) nutritional, (2) hypostatic, (3) cardiac, (4) renal, (5) hepatic, (6) hormonal, (7) lymphedema, (8) lipedema, and (9) allergic and inflammatory edema.

Nutritional (starvation) edema The classic concept was that the edema which frequently is observed in starved populations was the result of a simple depletion of body protein with attendant depletion of the plasma proteins themselves and, in particular albumin (Fig 24). Yet this concept has been questioned by Keys and his associates²³ following a prolonged study of 34 normal male volunteers in whom famine edema was produced experimentally (Fig. 29). These men lost approximately a quarter of their body weight, the ratio of extracellular water to cellular tissue was roughly doubled and their clinical state resembled that seen in Europe among prisoners of war during 1945. There were no signs of renal or cardiac failure and the plasma protein concentration fell only slightly, with the albumin globulin (A/G) ratio remaining within normal limits. The venous pressure was found to be about 50 per cent below normal. Keys and his co-workers concluded that obviously a lowered serum albumin level *per se* could not be the explanation

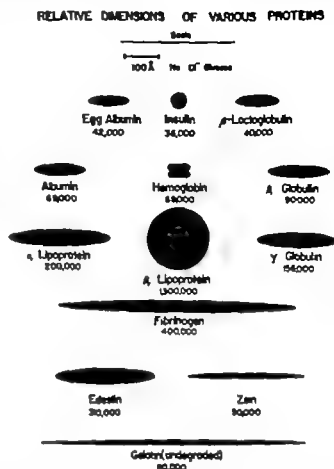


Fig 24 Mere physical size limits the transcapillary movement of many molecules. (From *ANATOMY & PHYSIOLOGY* In *Physiologic Principles of Surgery* edited by L. M. Zimmerman and R. Levine Philadelphia and London, W. B. Saunders Company 1957 Based on data of Oncley J. L. Scatchard G., and Brown A. Physical-chemical characteristics of certain of the proteins of normal human plasma *J. Physiol. & Colloid Chem.* 51: 181 1917)

for the observed edema, since the observed albumin level was usually within normal limits.

Therefore, while in many starved subjects hypoproteinemia does occur in conjunction with the formation of edema the edema need not necessarily be the result of the diminished plasma protein level.

More recently, Borkman⁸ has advanced a concept of starvation edema which rests upon the apparent demonstration that the kidney of the starved individual is less able to excrete sodium than is the kidney of the same individual in health. In treating patients with anorexia nervosa, he found that most of these individuals would develop clinical edema if in therapy sodium were given in excess of the limited ability

of the "starved" kidney to excrete this ion. However, if in therapeutic alimentation the amount of sodium in the diet were limited strictly to the amount which the particular patient could excrete, then edema did not develop no matter how much water was given in the diet. Moreover, when the patient had regained health, there was a progressive increase in the ability to excrete sodium until an essentially normal rate for sodium excretion had been reached. This additional evidence would appear to fit in with that presented by Keys and his group to the effect that famine edema is not due simply to a diminished colloid-osmotic pressure of plasma resulting from a diminished level of circulating plasma protein but may, in fact, represent still another instance of renal inability to excrete sodium in a normal manner.

Hypostatic ("physiologic") edema. Before discussing additional types of edema, perhaps it should be recalled that many normal individuals will develop pitting edema of the ankles if the legs are held continuously in a dependent position for a number of hours without exercise. For example, during World War II the writer attended the removal of approximately 500 healthy young German soldiers from Newport News, Virginia, to Rupert, Idaho, on a prisoner-of-war train. These troops represented the cream of Rommel's Afrika Korps and were in splendid physical condition. Nevertheless, after sitting upright under armed guard for four consecutive days (they might neither stand nor lie down, and only one man in each car might go to the latrine at a time) these men exhibited a 12 per cent incidence of varying degrees of pitting edema of the ankles.

Regarding hydrostatic venous pressure and dependent edema, certain of the studies reported by Wood⁵⁷ are of interest. To review briefly, the generally accepted theory is that fluid transfer across the capillary membrane is regulated, as originally hypothesized by Starling and measured by Landis, by the balance between the hydro-

static pressure which tends to force fluid from the capillaries and the colloidal osmotic pressure of the plasma which tends to draw fluid back into the capillaries (Fig 17). The hydrostatic pressure at the *arterial* end of the capillary has been shown to be approximately 32 mm Hg and at the venous end approximately half of this value; in contrast, the colloidal osmotic pressure of the plasma protein is approximately 25 mm Hg, being somewhat greater, through hemoconcentration, at the venous end than at the arterial end of the capillary. If capillary hydrostatic pressure at the *venous* end of the capillary increases to values above 30 mm Hg (that is, to levels above the colloidal osmotic pressure exerted by the plasma proteins) more fluid is lost through the capillary walls and edema formation occurs, when a person stands quietly in the erect position, the venous pressure may rise to levels several times greater than the colloidal osmotic pressure of the plasma.

Wood and his associates estimated that during standing and walking for 10 minutes the rate of fluid loss from the vessels into the tissues is approximately 20 cc per minute, representing a loss of 200 cc of fluid from the blood during this 10-minute period. It is apparent that such losses could not continue indefinitely without producing serious circulatory alterations and a fall in blood pressure, were the losses into the tissues sufficiently great. In this connection, it has long been observed that if a formation of soldiers is made to stand at rigid attention for a prolonged period some of the group may faint, particularly if the unit has not been rigidly conditioned physically. This doubtless reflects both a loss of fluid into the tissues of the lower extremities and, perhaps also, a certain vasomotor instability, the latter has been shown to be improved on exercise and conditioning, and to be aggravated by prolonged illness or bed rest.

Fortunately, there are a number of processes which tend to reverse the flow of water into the tissues on prolonged standing

One of the more important of these mechanisms is the maintenance of tone by the skeletal muscles, and this is particularly improved by walking. When an individual at rest in the upright position takes a step, there is a prompt increase in venous pressure followed by a rapid decrease in venous pressure and then, if the stationary upright position is regained, there is a gradual rise of venous pressure at the ankle to the level which was present before the step was taken. The contraction of the voluntary muscles propels the column of blood towards the heart, and the valves of the larger veins prevent backflow of the blood which was extruded from the extremity. Even during walking however, the mean venous pressure is approximately 30 mm. Hg the threshold for edema formation.²⁷ Mechanisms other than the pump mechanism of the voluntary muscles are, first an increase in the tissue pressure of the extremity as fluid is lost from the vessels, which tends to diminish the rate of fluid loss from the vessels into the tissues and to encourage the flow of water from the tissues back into the capillaries. Second, there is an increased flow of lymph into the venous capillaries or along the lymphatic channels to empty into the thoracic duct. This increases the return of fluid from the lower leg. There are doubtless other factors which are unknown at the present time.

Edema of venous origin is essentially hydrostatic in nature. Edema of the lower leg frequently occurs in various types of venous disease that are associated with an increase in *peripheral venous pressure* in contradistinction to *central venous pressure* which is increased in heart failure. The edema of the ankle that is associated with incompetent valves of the great saphenous vein and its tributaries represents a common example of an increase in venous pressure. A second example of venous edema is that which is found in association with an arteriovenous fistula where the arterial pressure is transmitted directly into the venous system with a consequent transudation of fluid.

Hydrostatic edema of the legs may be caused also by the pressure of massive ascites upon the inferior vena cava. We once measured femoral venous pressure continuously during paracentesis in such a patient, and the pressure was observed to fall gradually from an initially much elevated level to a normal level at the completion of the tap. During the next 48 hours the leg edema subsided.

Cardiac edema. Despite the controversy which has been going on for a number of years regarding the causes and the mechanism of the clinical complex termed heart failure, most workers appear to have returned to the fundamental concept that the manifestations of heart failure are basically due to failure of the heart regardless of what secondary phenomena may occur. Moreover, the signs and symptoms of heart failure in the individual patient appear to be the result of a cardiac output that is inadequate for the patient in question at a given time, regardless of the absolute volume.

Other considerations aside, many observers feel that cardiac edema results, at least in part, from inadequate renal excretion of sodium with consequent retention of sodium and (with it) water in the tissues. The absolute increase in the volume of the circulating blood that results from salt and water retention increases, in turn, the venous return to the right side of the heart. However, since cardiac propulsion of blood is inefficient a damming back of blood entering the right atrium results in a rise in venous pressure with the resulting extensive hydrostatic effect in the venous capillary bed, an increase in the flow of fluid out of the vascular system produces clinical edema. Therefore sodium retention and an increased venous pressure (in part due to the retained sodium and water) would appear to be factors which induce cardiac edema. An important diagnostic point to be used in differentiating pitting edema of the extremities due to heart failure is that if the pitting edema of the extremities has not

been associated with dyspnea, the edema is probably not due to heart failure⁴⁷ In other words, to confirm a diagnosis of cardiac edema of the lower extremities or elsewhere one should demonstrate collateral evidence of heart failure At first the edema of heart failure, as is other edema due to increased venous pressure, is noted only near the end of the day or on prolonged standing, but later this edema may be generalized to the extent of anasarca Classically, cardiac edema is dependent edema, and the presacral area of the bed patient should be examined for pitting when cardiac edema is suspected In contrast to the venous edema due to obstruction of the veins of an extremity, cardiac edema is associated with an elevation of both the peripheral venous pressure and the central venous pressure

Pulmonary edema, common in heart failure of certain types, is precipitated when the capillary hydrostatic pressure exceeds the level of colloid osmotic pressure and other forces tending to return fluid in the alveoli to the blood stream Positive pressure breathing is helpful (p 386)

Renal edema One of the striking clinical examples of edema formation is that ob-

served in nephrosis or in acute or chronic nephritis Edema in acute nephritis may be due in part to a generalized increase in capillary permeability due to a toxic injury Normally, the renal capillaries are relatively impermeable to protein (Fig 25)

In nephrosis, however, it has been repeatedly demonstrated that there is a marked loss of albumin in the urine and that the plasma proteins which remain in the blood vessels to provide colloidal osmotic pressure are qualitatively different from normal In general, the serum albumin level closely parallels the degree of edema in nephrosis, though diuresis may occur when there has been relatively little increase in the serum albumin level⁴⁷ Yet, the loss of proteins in the urine in nephrosis is only one part of the complex picture of this disease, for it has long been appreciated that the processes of serum protein formation may be abnormal in nephrosis

The basal metabolic rate has frequently been recorded as depressed in nephrosis and the possibility of a myxedematous element advanced Nevertheless, the significance of individual studies has often been impaired by the fact that the measured metabolic rates were not correlated with the lean body mass Obviously, massive edema cannot be considered as representing metabolically active tissue

Hepatic edema The leg edema and the ascites which appear in many cases of portal cirrhosis may serve as examples of hepatic edema There has been and there remains a considerable lack of precise information regarding the factors which produce edema in the presence of hepatic cirrhosis, but at least two factors are generally agreed upon and a third is debated First, there is the *increased hydrostatic pressure* in the portal venous system, due to obstruction of portal blood flow through the liver as a result of the generalized fibrosis and regeneration The normal portal venous pressure is approximately 100 mm of water (8 mm Hg), but we do not commonly consider that it is pathologically elevated until the level is

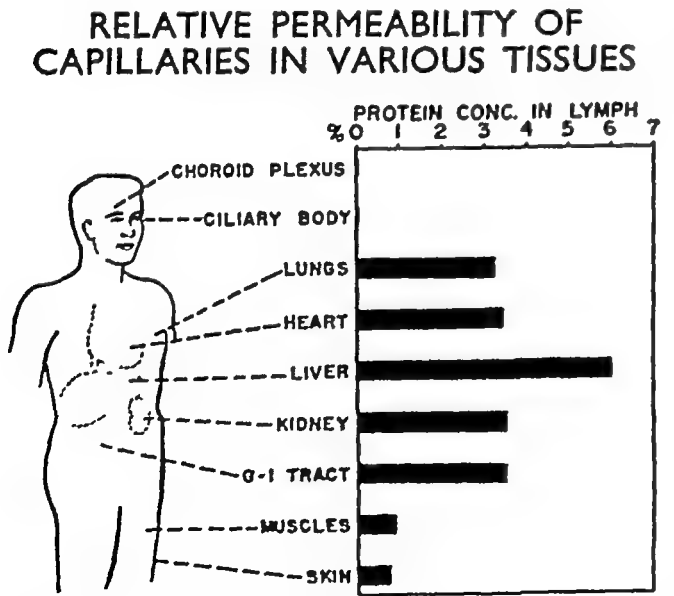


Fig 25 It is now appreciated that the capillaries in certain organs, especially the liver, are normally permeable to protein (From RUSHMER, R F *Cardiac Diagnosis A Physiologic Approach* Philadelphia, W B Saunders Company, 1956)

above 200 mm (Fig 74) Second, the liver is the site of the formation of the *plasma proteins* (Fig 73), which supply the highly important intravascular increment of colloid osmotic pressure The plasma protein levels are often diminished in the presence of liver disease. This is especially true of albumin and it is this protein that, because of its smaller molecule and hence greater number of dispersed particles (gram for gram, as compared with globulin), is chiefly responsible for the colloid osmotic pressure of the plasma. Again, it is the number of particles in solution, rather than the size of the particles, that is important in terms of osmotic pressure exerted Third, there has been evidence, though questioned by some, that the diseased liver is unable rapidly to inactivate the posterior pituitary *antidiuretic hormone* Others have suggested that perhaps the metabolism of the posterior pituitary antidiuretic hormone (ADH) is normal in liver disease but that the metabolism of adrenocortical steroids by the liver is abnormal, and that since the antidiuretic hormone and the adrenal steroids are in many respects antagonists in water metabolism the unopposed action of the posterior pituitary antidiuretic hormone results in water retention through an increased renal tubular reabsorption of water Fourth, there is evidence that sodium is retained in the presence of portal cirrhosis There can be little doubt that there does exist a relationship between hepatic and renal function in a number of conditions such as acute hepatic failure, following operation ('hepatorenal syndrome'), irreversible shock and essential hypertension Endocrine factors may well be important in producing sodium retention.

Hormonal edema Various hormonal influences may result in edema as has been seen The adrenocortical steroids probably produce edema by limiting sodium excretion through increasing renal tubular reabsorption of this ion The most striking of these hormones is *desoxycorticosterone*, which results in a retention of sodium, chloride and

water and an excretion of potassium. *Al-dosterone* has a similar effect. The administration of *cortisone* or *hydrocortisone* may produce edema, as may the administration of *testosterone* in some individuals *Estrogens* notoriously may cause retention of water, premenstrual tension being an example The absence of an adequate amount of *thyroid hormone* results in the characteristic extravascular deposits of water and protein known as myxedema, and thyroid substitution therapy effects dramatic mobilization of these collections The etiology of eclampsia of pregnancy is not entirely clear, but there can be little doubt that endocrine factors play a major rôle Excessive amounts of *pitressin* might result in edema formation

Lymphedema Edema may result from inadequacy of the lymphatic drainage of an affected extremity The most common example seen in surgery is the lymphedema which develops in the arm on the involved side following radical mastectomy with extensive excision of the axillary lymph nodes and lymphatics However, defective lymphatic drainage may also result from inflammatory or neoplastic occlusion of the lymph channels and nodes draining an extremity, or it may be due to a congenital defect in the lymphatic system as seen in congenital lymphedema

The *treatment* of massive lymphedema of an extremity is usually rather unsatisfactory When the condition involves the lower extremity, the Kondoleon operation may be employed. This consists of excising the subcutaneous tissues down to the fascia overlying the leg muscles, one-half the circumference of the leg is treated at the first operation and the other one-half at a later stage To excise the subcutaneous tissue of the entire circumference of the leg at one operation incurs the unnecessary risk of a massive slough of the undermined skin However, some surgeons prefer to excise the skin as well and to graft with split thickness skin grafts taken from the upper thighs, the abdomen or the back. Even so, the operation

is palliative and the results are often disappointing

The lymphedema of the arm which follows radical mastectomy can be exceedingly unsightly and can cause marked psychic trauma. Treatment for this condition has not been particularly satisfactory, though certain measures do improve it. First, the patient should sleep with this arm elevated on a pillow, if possible, and it is helpful to apply an elastic bandage from the fingers upward towards the shoulder during the night. Second, it has been observed that exposure of the involved extremity to sunlight often results in inflammation and further swelling, and thus excessive exposure of the extremity to sunlight should be avoided. Third, the injection of hyaluronidase may improve lymph drainage. Finally, the Kondeleon operation has also been used upon the arm, but we do not advocate it.

Lipedema This is a condition observed almost entirely in women in which fat with a large water content is deposited, usually symmetrically, around the buttocks, thighs, and even the legs but not including the feet. This fat is often tender and hypersensitive. Hines²⁸ believes that the condition is probably due to the effects of gravity on the circulation in a tissue that constitutes a poor supporting structure and which consequently offers little resistance to the passage of fluid from the blood and lymph vessels into the surrounding tissue spaces. To be sure, hormonal factors have a bearing here, if for no other reason than that the hormonal factors cause the specific distribution of the female fat.

As a striking example of estrogen effect on fat deposition, let me cite a girl in her early teens who had the adrenogenital syndrome (Fig 251). She was placed on oral cortisone therapy to suppress the adrenal production of androgens and this was successful, as reflected in a fall of the urinary 17-ketosteroids to normal. This permitted feminization by her own estrogens and the process proceeded at a rapid rate. Unfortunately, the fat deposited in the buttocks

and thighs was asymmetrically distributed and her complaint now was that one thigh and buttock were considerably larger than their opposites. However, this asymmetry disappeared during the next few months, when the fat deposition in the second thigh achieved symmetry with that of the first in forming the usual female contours.

Allergic edema This condition is commonly observed in the swelling of the lips, periorbital tissues and face in the syndrome referred to as angioneurotic edema. A similar phenomenon is of course associated with the familiar urticaria or hives or with the histamine flare and surrounding wheal. This is probably due to vasodilatation with an accompanying inflammatory process which temporarily increases capillary permeability.

Inflammatory edema is present in, beneath, and surrounding almost all wounds and injuries, and is an integral part of the inflammatory process.

It will be clear that body fluid distribution is regulated by many different forces, among these being hydrostatic pressure, osmolar forces, and hormonal influences.

Membrane Transfer

Only the briefest mention has been accorded the processes by which molecules pass through the walls of the capillaries—which anatomically consist of supposedly closed spaces but which physiologically obviously do not. Too little has been said regarding the general principles of the transport of substances across other biologic membranes such as tissue cell membranes. Though a considerable amount of information has been gathered in these fields, it is not yet possible to present a concise survey which would have obvious clinical applicability at this time. Nevertheless, two timely reviews have not only summarized much present information, but they have also afforded a bibliography which may be consulted by those interested in further exploration of the field. Pappenheimer¹⁷ surveyed factors influencing the passage of

molecules through capillary walls, and Usig²⁵ briefly summarized a portion of the information available concerning transport across biologic membranes

Plasma Sodium Levels: Normal, Low, and High

Although a measurement of the plasma sodium level cannot always be obtained immediately on admission (particularly at night when the technician who operates the flame photometer is absent), a knowledge of this value is most helpful in planning corrective fluid therapy. It has been emphasized that the composition of the extracellular fluid—volumetric and electrolytic—is dependent upon its sodium content. The amount of sodium ion determines largely, the volume of water to be held in the extracellular space, and it is also the principal electrolyte which determines acid base balance, since most of the alkali reserve is in the form of sodium bicarbonate. Therefore, while in most patients satisfactory fluid therapy can be achieved by using plasma

"CO₂" and chloride values in the occasional case plasma sodium measurements are almost essential for precise therapy—and sodium values are always useful if available.

THE NORMAL PLASMA SODIUM LEVEL. A rule of thumb which is ordinarily valid is that the plasma chloride level (normally 103 mEq) plus the plasma "CO₂" level (normally 27 mEq) plus 12 equals the plasma sodium level ($103 + 27 + 12 = 142$). However this would not be the case in diabetic acidosis or in renal acidosis, since in these instances the kidney, to compensate for the retention of organic (e.g. fatty) acids or inorganic (phosphates, sulfates) acid radicals would have excreted some chloride, hence, the sodium in the left column of the ionic diagram (Fig. 19) would actually be in combination with some bicarbonate, some chloride, and an abnormal amount of one of the organic or inorganic radicals such as acetoacetic acid or sulfates and phosphates. Here, then, $\text{CO}_2 + \text{chlorides} + 12$ would not necessarily reflect accurately the plasma

sodium level it must be measured. It is obvious that a knowledge of the plasma sodium level is helpful in estimating the osmolarity of the extracellular fluid. Again, whereas the milliequivalents of chloride plus the milliequivalents of "CO₂" should ordinarily equal 130, if this value were only 120 in the presence of acidosis it would not necessarily mean that the extracellular fluid was hypotonic, since the difference between 120 and 130 might have been made up by an excess of acid radicals from metabolic sources (Fig. 19).

THE LOW SODIUM SYNDROMES.²⁶ A low plasma sodium level has been observed to occur consistently in certain conditions, and these have come to be known as *low sodium syndromes* (Table 2). In surgery, a common example is the low plasma sodium level which is seen following massive trauma, and it does not usually indicate that the absolute quantity of sodium in the body is reduced. Whether this low sodium level is due to an absolute increase in the extracellular fluid volume with consequent dilution of the sodium contained therein, or whether the extracellular volume remains relatively unchanged while sodium migrates into cells or bone, has never been settled to this writer's satisfaction. Nevertheless it is a fact that in many patients following major operation the plasma sodium level does fall, and that this change does not need to be treated.

A low plasma sodium level may be due to an absolute increase in the extracellular fluid volume while the sodium content remains the same, as just seen. This circumstance may readily lead to the signs and symptoms of water intoxication, and it has been noted particularly in patients with heart failure who have been placed on a prolonged low sodium diet (over many weeks) with unlimited water intake. Of distinct importance have been recent reports which indicate that the excess water present in these patients can be mobilized and eliminated by the infusion of alcohol¹⁴ or mannitol.²² A low plasma sodium level may be observed in cirrhosis and in thermal burns, but of

TABLE 2 ETIOLOGY OF ABNORMAL PLASMA SODIUM LEVELS AND BODY SODIUM CONTENT

I Low sodium syndromes	
A Absolute sodium deficiency	
1	Inadequate intake—as in low salt diet used in patients with heart failure, or where nonelectrolyte containing fluids are used for prolonged intravenous maintenance
2	Excessive loss—as in diarrhea, external biliary fistula, ileostomy, gastrointestinal suction, or adrenocortical failure
B Water excess—where the normal amount of sodium is present but water logging has occurred, as following mitral valvulotomy.	
C Following trauma—where no sodium has actually been lost from the body, though the absolute volume of the extracellular fluid may have increased to dilute the sodium present	
D In cirrhosis—the condition also occurs in some poorly understood circumstances, as in liver disease with or without ascites	
II High sodium syndromes	
A Hypernatremia and hyperchloremia due to water deficit (perhaps the most common cause)	
B Hypernatremia and hyperchloremia due to qualitative renal tubular dysfunction. We have encountered this condition in patients with various diseases, often following shock. Some observers have suggested that the hypernatremia was due to brain damage, but in our cases brain damage was minimal or absent. An endocrine factor may be important.	
III Sequestration of sodium in “third spaces”	
A Massive pleural effusion	
B Rapid ascites	
C Retroperitoneal effusion in trauma	
D Fluid in the obstructed bowel	
E Wound edema	
F Translocation of sodium following hypodermoclysis with salt-free solution	

forts to correct these values by salt therapy are usually ineffective, at least initially.

Of course, an actual sodium deficit may account for the low plasma sodium level in patients who through vomiting have lost relatively more salt than water, who have been maintained on intravenous fluids which have not contained adequate amounts of

salt, or who have been maintained on a low salt diet. Specifically, a low plasma sodium level is often encountered in patients with pyloric obstruction, small bowel obstruction, in certain forms of diarrhea, in the salt-losing nephritis, or occasionally during recovery from renal shut-down. A low plasma sodium level may also be due to adrenocortical insufficiency (Fig. 245).

The treatment of a low plasma sodium level will depend upon whether absolute sodium deficiency exists, whether absolute water excess is present, or whether the plasma sodium level is in fact “physiologic” following major trauma. The treatment of absolute sodium deficiency consists of giving salt-containing fluids, perhaps as 3 per cent sodium chloride solution. The treatment of water excess would formerly have consisted of balancing the water excess with a sodium infusion, but the recent studies cited above indicate that relatively pure water diuresis may be achieved under circumstances of water excess by the administration of either alcohol or mannitol and perhaps urea. Clearly, it is more desirable to remove the water excess than to balance a water excess by producing a proportionate salt excess. Finally, in the light of present knowledge, the low sodium level which is observed following massive trauma requires no specific therapy.

In patients who present no obvious cause for an observed low plasma sodium level, the possibility of chronic adrenocortical failure should be considered.

Elevated plasma sodium levels were discussed previously. This circumstance may result from a relative water deficiency (Fig. 23), but a qualitative defect in renal tubular function cannot always be excluded (Fig. 60).

The “Third Space” Concept

The term “third space” has appeared with increasing frequency in the recent literature. Actually, this is but another phrase to designate fluid that is in neither the intracellular nor the interstitial space, as usually con-

sidered. Examples of such fluid translocations are wound edema, ascites, pleural effusion, and losses into the bowel in intestinal obstruction. The clinical recognition of such collections is not new, but the term "third space" does emphasize that these deposits of fluid are not as readily available to the interstitial and intracellular spaces and the plasma volume as is normally the case.⁴⁸ That is, since these collections of fluid cannot be reclaimed by the blood stream with normal facility to replenish the extracellular fluid volume, they must not be depended upon as immediate sources of additional fluid in the treatment of the acutely ill patient. Fluid lost into the bowel in intestinal obstruction is not readily reabsorbed, due to the fact that the wall of the involved bowel does not absorb with normal efficiency. It has been found that injected substances such as inulin which are used to measure the extracellular volume do not enter such collections of fluid as readily as they do the usual confines of the extracellular space. Therefore, it is not surprising that the physiologic potentialities of these sequestered bodies of fluid are different from those of the interstitial fluid.

Potassium Metabolism and the Correction of Potassium Deficits

GENERAL PHYSIOLOGY: Potassium is the principal intracellular cation and its concentration within the cell is more than 25 times that in the extracellular fluid (normal level, 3.5 to 5.5 mEq per L). However, the potassium inside the cell is not all in ionized form and does not all exert the same osmotic potential as it would were the entire intracellular potassium content fully ionized. The concentration of potassium within the cell is dependent upon the concentration of potassium outside the cell, the pH of the intracellular and the extracellular fluid and the metabolism within the cell at the time. When the acidity outside the cell is increased, potassium emerges to neutralize the acid, thus maintaining acid base balance between the tissue cells and

perfusate. Using radioisotopes of potassium, it has been found that in the normal person weighing approximately 70 kg the exchangeable potassium ranges from 3000 to 4000 mEq, of which only approximately 75 mEq are in the extracellular fluid. Normally, from 40 to 100 mEq of potassium are excreted in the urine each day, depending, of course, upon the intake, the average excretion is in the range of 50 mEq. Therefore, 6 gm. of potassium chloride, which contain approximately 80 mEq of potassium, are more than adequate to cover the daily loss in the urine under normal conditions.

POTASSIUM INTOXICATION When the extracellular potassium level rises above 7 mEq per L, there is serious danger of cardiac arrest in diastole and, indeed, the injection of potassium into the aorta proximal to a clamp placed distal to the coronary ostia has been used to stop ventricular fibrillation at operation. The injection of potassium usually results in cessation of the fibrillation with the heart stopping in diastole. This cation is also used as a cardioplegic agent in open heart surgery.

Under conditions of rapid tissue breakdown and oliguria, as are present in acute renal shutdown associated with fever and starvation, the amounts of potassium released from cells can prove lethal if not successfully treated.

Miscellaneous Potassium Effects

FAMILIAL PERIODIC PARALYSIS The relationship which exists between the integrity of normal neuromuscular irritability and muscular tone is well exemplified by examining the relationship between potassium concentration in the extracellular fluid and a peculiar condition involving skeletal muscle: familial periodic paralysis. This syndrome of muscular weakness is associated with a fall in the plasma potassium level though the onset of attacks is not preceded or accompanied by an increase in the loss of potassium from the body. Evidence has been obtained by several groups that the paralysis is associated with a transfer of extra

cellular potassium into the intracellular phase, and they have ascribed this transfer to the cycle of carbohydrate combustion in skeletal muscle. During the paralytic seizure or immediately prior to its onset, the plasma potassium values may vary from 2.6 to 3.0 mEq/L (normal, 3.5 to 5.5). The precise cause of the shift of potassium into the cells in these patients is not always clear, but it is known that the administration of insulin or a high carbohydrate intake is prone to increase glycogen formation and thus lower the plasma potassium level and, in susceptible individuals, to produce typical attacks of the paralysis. The treatment of the acute attack consists of the intravenous administration of potassium chloride. Subsequent episodes can usually be minimized by the consumption of a diet low in carbohydrate, high in protein, and medium in fat.

Recently, Conn and his associates¹¹ have reported an increase in the secretion of aldosterone during attacks of familial paralysis.

POTASSIUM AND CARBOHYDRATE METABOLISM²⁰ The fact that the formation of glycogen within the cell results in a movement of potassium from the extracellular to the intracellular fluid compartment has been used in the medical therapy of impending potassium intoxication (p. 79), glucose and insulin being administered for this purpose. Since potassium is required for normal glycogen deposition, it has been found that in states of marked potassium deficiency there may intervene almost total absence of liver and muscle glycogen, with the development of a "diabetic" type of glucose tolerance curve. In this same connection, it has been observed clinically that patients suffering from postoperative potassium deficiency may develop a gradually increasing glycosuria, the degree of glycosuria bearing a direct relationship to the severity of the intracellular potassium deficit.

POTASSIUM AND PROTEIN FORMATION In the fasting mammal, potassium and nitrogen are excreted in the urine in the ratio of ap-

proximately 1:10. It is therefore possible to gain some knowledge of the nitrogen balance when the potassium balance is known. This is because these elements exist in lean tissue in the proportions given. In 1951 Cannon and his associates¹⁰ reported their investigations concerning the relationship which exists between nitrogen storage and available potassium. They found that rats given potassium chloride in addition to the basal ration, which was deficient in potassium, grew at a greater rate than did the controls, who received no potassium supplement. Moreover, the animals that had received potassium had better appetites and consequently ingested greater amounts of food, an effect which we have observed in dogs.²⁴ Subsequent reports have confirmed that in both animals and human beings potassium must be available for normal protein formation.

POTASSIUM AND THE HEART EFFECTS OF OTHER IONS The influence of potassium upon normal myocardial function is reflected in the fact that consistent changes appear in the electrocardiogram (ECG) in states of potassium deficiency, and that elevated potassium concentrations produce cardiac arrest. The ECG (Fig. 142) alterations consist of a diminished voltage, flattening and eventual inversion of the T-wave, and prolongation of the Q-T interval. However, these changes can be altered by the administration of other ions, for the electrical activity of the heart reflects both total and relative ionic effects. For example, the deleterious effects of an elevated plasma potassium level upon the heart can be diminished by the infusion of sodium chloride, and, in fact, there is considerable biochemical evidence to indicate a reciprocal physiologic relationship between potassium and sodium under a variety of circumstances. For instance, during potassium depletion the sodium content of cardiac and skeletal muscle increases, and in states of potassium deficiency the administration of excessive amounts of sodium ion may further aggravate the condition. The administration of

only sodium ion in metabolic alkalosis due to potassium depletion can further increase the gravity of the situation, in rats, the administration of a high sodium low potassium intake during protein repletion, following potassium and protein depletion, was shown by Cannon and co workers⁸ to result in congestive heart failure and pulmonary edema, associated with a characteristic type of myocardial necrosis.

RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN POTASSIUM DEFICIENCY AND METABOLIC ALKALOSIS Darrow and his associates^{15, 16} published searching studies regarding the relationship which appears to exist between potassium deficiency and metabolic alkalosis. In brief, they showed that there is a reciprocal correlation between intracellular potassium and cellular sodium content, and they calculated that as much as one-half of an intracellular potassium deficit may be replaced by about two thirds of the equivalent amount of sodium, the additional potassium being replaced by hydrogen ion. Muscle analyses showed that in alkalosis the cellular concentration of potassium was decreased. Moreover, high plasma bicarbonate and low plasma chloride levels almost invariably accompanied the low muscle potassium and the high muscle sodium levels—regardless of whether the potassium deficiency had been produced by potassium losses such as occurred in pyloric obstruction by low potassium diets, desoxy corticosterone therapy, or the prolonged administration of sodium salts in the presence of a low potassium diet. Further clarifying this problem Darrow and his co-workers showed that the administration of potassium chloride in the presence of metabolic alkalosis due to cellular potassium deficiency resulted in a movement of the administered potassium ion into the cell and a movement of sodium and hydrogen ions out of the cell. The movement of the acid hydrogen ion out of the cell reduced the sodium bicarbonate level in the extracellular fluid. Moreover, as the hydrogen ion was excreted by the kidney while sodium ion was being conserved, there resulted the

apparent paradox of an acid urine during the recovery period, even in the presence of metabolic alkalosis.

Burnell and Scribner⁹ subsequently published data which partially reopened the question of whether the alkalosis (as in pyloric obstruction) is the *result* or the *cause* of the lowered plasma potassium level. In brief, they showed that by infusing alkali the plasma potassium level could regularly be lowered and by infusing acid it could be raised—this in the nephrectomized animal. We and others have confirmed these findings (though the amount of acid that must be infused to produce a significant change exceeds physiologic limits), and thus the precise role of potassium metabolism in the genesis of alkalosis must await further study.

Clinical Potassium Deficiency

ETIOLOGY AND DIAGNOSIS Potassium deficiency is to be anticipated in the same clinical situations that are found to have resulted in deficits of water and other electrolytes. Among these are pyloric or intestinal obstruction with vomiting diarrhea, small bowel fistulas, an ileostomy, the more chronic stages of burn injuries, diabetic acidosis, prolonged gastrointestinal suction without adequate replacement of potassium, ACTH or cortisone therapy without adequate potassium supplementation or prolonged parenteral maintenance of the patient with solutions which contain little potassium. Since most foods contain considerable amounts of potassium, especially meat, it is rare indeed for potassium deficiency to develop in a normal individual who is eating a normal diet. By the same token once a patient is taking food again by mouth the diet can usually be depended upon to supply an adequate potassium intake though an existing deficit can be more rapidly overcome by providing oral supplements in the form of potassium chloride.

The diagnosis of a probable cellular potassium deficit is best established by measuring the plasma potassium level and find-

ing it low. Of course, Scribner's work suggests that if alkalosis is present a low plasma potassium level may not necessarily indicate a cellular deficit, though a deficit will usually be present. Moreover, the plasma potassium level may be normal on admission only to decline following hydration of the patient, for this reason, the level should be rechecked from time to time. The ECG is useful in following the net cardiac effects of hypokalemia and hyperkalemia, but it does not afford quantitative information regarding the plasma potassium level.

Finally, the conclusive proof of a potassium deficit in the given patient is provided by a balance study which demonstrates the retention of significant amounts of administered potassium.

CLINICAL FINDINGS IN POTASSIUM DEFICIENCY The *symptoms and signs* of potassium deficiency, as with various of the other electrolyte deficiencies, are not very specific. A feeling of weakness or listlessness is not uncommon, and a loss of appetite has been reported both in human beings and in experimental animals. Postoperative gastrointestinal distention may be due to potassium deficiency, though perhaps not quite so often as has been indicated in the literature. Severe potassium deficiency, however, can result in profound muscular weakness, disorientation, and even coma.

TREATMENT OF POTASSIUM DEFICITS **FURTHER COMMENT** Prophylactic measures are important in preventing the development of a potassium deficiency, for the kidney cannot conserve potassium with the efficiency with which it can conserve sodium and chloride. That is, there is an obligatory excretion by the renal tubules of some potassium, regardless of how low the plasma level or how great the intracellular deficit. Therefore, it is important to provide parenteral potassium intake in a patient who cannot ingest food over a prolonged period of time. Prophylactic amounts of potassium should also be administered parenterally in the presence of intestinal disease (vomiting, diarrhea, or

fistula), or when adrenal steroids or ACTH are given.

The replacement of existing potassium deficits is, in our practice, usually achieved by the infusion of potassium chloride. Six grams of potassium chloride placed in a liter of almost any type of fluid that is to be given (representing a 0.6 per cent solution) provides approximately 80 mEq of potassium. Since the daily excretion of potassium in health is approximately 50 mEq in the urine, the administration of 6 gm of potassium chloride (13.4 mEq of K per gm) does little more than cover the daily requirements, without significantly reducing the deficit. Accordingly, when a significant potassium deficit exists we usually give 6 gm of potassium chloride in each of 2 L of fluid, given at separate times of the day. For example, if the patient is to receive 3 L of fluid, the first liter would contain 6 gm of potassium chloride, given over a period of not less than 2 hours, and the last liter would also contain 6 gm of this salt. This may be given in 0.4 per cent sodium chloride or in glucose solution or in one of the protein hydrolysates.

A *practical precaution* to be employed in potassium therapy is that renal function must be adequate in the individual to avoid the production of an excessive plasma potassium level, since 6 gm of potassium chloride represents an amount of potassium ion equal to that normally found in the entire extracellular space. The rate of infusion must permit cellular uptake of the infused ion.

The renal excretion of potassium represents an important protective function, as is quickly apparent in anuria, potassium is liberated by metabolism.

Where the potassium deficit is great, a number of days are usually required to overcome the depletion, even when as much as 12 gm or more of potassium chloride are administered each day. Using radiopotassium, we found that in the patient with prolonged intestinal obstruction, without adequate potassium replacement, the potassium

pool might be only approximately one-half the normal of perhaps 3000 to 4000 mEq. Nevertheless, such a figure may not reflect the clinical picture with complete accuracy, for the individual will have metabolized a considerable number of lean tissue cells. In other words, to suddenly provide such a patient with his full pre-illness stores of potassium would result in potassium intoxication, for he no longer has a normal lean tissue mass.

A General Approach to Fluid Therapy

Diagnosis of Fluid Imbalance

In this section consideration will be given to the following topics: volume deficit, osmolar deficit, specific ion deficits, and acid base status.

VOLUME (WATER) DEFICIT When the patient is seen on admission, it is important to estimate the probable volume deficit, that is, the volume of fluid that has been lost from the body. Clinical experience has shown that when the individual is only mildly dehydrated he has lost from 2 to 4 per cent of his body weight as water. If he appears moderately dehydrated this figure is more accurately 4 to 6 per cent and if he is markedly dehydrated he has lost from 8 to 10 per cent. In practice we use the figures of 4, 6, and 8 per cent.

The actual assessment of the probable volume deficit rests largely on the clinical evaluation of the patient. The history should include questions regarding recent weight loss, fluid intake, urinary output, vomiting, diarrhea, and other pertinent facts. On physical examination the condition of the tongue, skin turgor, eyeballs, and cheek pulse rate and blood pressure should be noted. The color of the urine, if quite dark, would indicate a diminished urine flow. For in health the absolute amount of pigment excreted each 24 hours is almost constant regardless of urine volume. The important point to note is that the diagnosis of the volume deficit must rest primarily on clinical grounds, though collateral evidence is de-

rived from laboratory measurement of the concentrations of the blood constituents. The body weight measurement is also helpful in infants, for a rather close check of the weights of babies has often been kept. Once the percentage of weight loss as water has been estimated from the clinical examination, the value is considered as kilograms or liters of fluid required to replace the volume deficit.

OSMOLAR (SALT) DEFICIT Having estimated the approximate volume of water that has been lost and hence the approximate volume of water that must be replaced, the next step is to decide what the volume of water is to contain in the way of salts. Perhaps no salt is required, at least initially, in which case the therapeutic solution would consist of 5 per cent glucose in water. The glucose has two purposes, one to introduce the four calories made available by each gram of the sugar and the other to render the solution more nearly isotonic—for distilled water is hypotonic, it would be irritating, and it would cause red cell hemolysis.

However, as noted previously, clinical fluid losses almost invariably represent mixed losses and some salt is usually required in therapy. It is therefore important to know relatively how much salt is needed by estimating the osmolar deficit, that is, whether the remaining extracellular fluid is hypotonic due to inadequate salt content or is hypertonic due to a relatively greater water loss than salt loss. Moyer^{41, 42} has emphasized a simple rule of thumb which is useful clinically, namely, that normally the sum of the milliequivalents of chloride plus the milliequivalents of carbon dioxide combining power ($103 + 27$) is equal to approximately 130 mEq/L of extracellular fluid. If the sum of the values is greater than 135 mEq/L of extracellular fluid (measured in plasma), then the extracellular fluid is relatively hypertonic (hyperosmolarity), that is, the extracellular fluid remaining to the patient contains relatively more salt than water. Here therapy should be initiated

with salt free solutions, such as 5 or 10 per cent glucose in water. On the other hand, if the sum of these two values is less than 120 mEq, then the patient requires relatively more salt than water and either isotonic or hypertonic sodium chloride solution should be used to initiate therapy.

ACID-BASE STATUS Third, when one has estimated the *volume deficit* by means of the clinical examination of the patient (plus hemoconcentration) and has estimated the *osmolar deficit* by means of the laboratory measurements of plasma chloride and "CO₂" levels, the next step in the diagnosis of the state of fluid imbalance is that of determining whether or not *acid-base imbalance* exists. For practical purposes, this is usually done by a clinical estimate of the probable circumstances, used in conjunction with measurements of the carbon dioxide combining power. To be sure, an elevated carbon dioxide combining power might represent either compensated respiratory acidosis or metabolic alkalosis (Fig 26). Similarly, a lowered carbon dioxide combining power could signify the presence of either meta-

bolic acidosis or respiratory alkalosis. If, however, the precise reaction of the blood can be determined by measuring the blood pH, the blood bicarbonate, and, moreover, using the blood pH, the blood bicarbonate, the blood pO₂, the blood pCO₂, and the carbon dioxide combining power one can describe accurately the acid-base relationship existing in the plasma at the time of measurement.

Fortunately, these laborious techniques are not usually essential for practical fluid therapy. One estimates from the clinical examination the probable presence of metabolic alkalosis or acidosis, and most of the time the degree of either will be adequately reflected in the carbon dioxide combining power value to permit satisfactory planning of therapy. In the absence of an opportunity to actually examine the patient clinically, the measurements of base-bicarbonate, carbonic acid, and blood pH would all be desirable to profile the acid-base relationship in the extracellular fluid. Even so, as it is neither necessary nor desirable to consider the chemistry values apart from the clinical evaluation of the patient (the contemplation of the diagrams in Fig 26 will clarify understanding of these base relationships).

SPECIFIC ION DEFICITS: POTASSIUM, CALCIUM, AND MAGNESIUM A fourth step in the diagnosis of the state of fluid imbalance in the patient in question has (regardless of how the particular abnormality in fluid balance may have been produced in the patient) is that of estimating whether the ions of *potassium*, *calcium*, and *magnesium* are present in adequate amounts. Practically speaking, it is potassium that one shall be most concerned with, since the large stores of calcium available in the bones, and it is only under special circumstances (most often, parathyroid deficiency) that inadequate supplies of ionized calcium are present to preserve normal neuromuscular irritability. Of course, a sufficiently low serum calcium level results in tetanic contractions (calcemic tetany).

A rapid and accurate method for

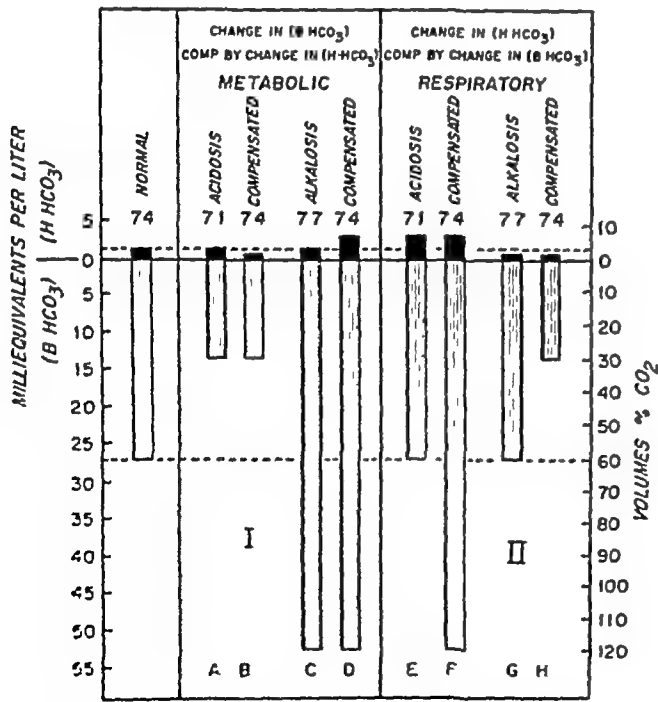


Fig 26 Metabolic acidosis and alkalosis, and respiratory acidosis and alkalosis (Modified from GAMBLE, J. L. *Chemical Anatomy, Physiology, and Pathology of Extracellular Fluid*, Cambridge, Mass., Harvard University Press, 1917)

measurement of the plasma magnesium level is not yet available and, since at present knowledge concerning the clinical importance of the magnesium ion is scanty, it is rarely given in therapy. Although various types of clinical changes have been attributed to hypomagnesemia and to hypermagnesemia, largely on the basis of animal experiments, it is most uncommon in surgical practice to encounter a patient in whom, first, hypomagnesemia is documented and in whom, second, there are definite symptoms and signs which may be attributed to this deficiency. In general it has been maintained that the clinical signs and symptoms produced by an increased serum level of magnesium appear to be lethargy, which progresses into coma, and respiratory failure. There is evidence that the magnesium level may be elevated in some severely wounded individuals and in shock states.

Hypomagnesemia has been reported to cause cutaneous vasodilatation and hyperexcitability progressing to tetany. The normal level of magnesium in extracellular fluid is from 1.4 to 2.5 mEq per L, and this level is much higher in the intracellular fluid (Fig. 15). Alterations in the electrocardiogram have been reported in magnesium deficiency, perhaps because of the fact that calcium and magnesium both have an effect upon cardiac neuromuscular irritability.

Specific Pathologic Fluid States in Surgery

Pyloric Obstruction with Vomiting: Mixed Water and Salt Loss with Metabolic Alkalosis

The state of fluid imbalance which results from pyloric obstruction with prolonged vomiting represents perhaps the most important single type of fluid derangement in surgical practice. It is a very common one, a feature which it shares with that due to intestinal obstruction. The profile of the normal plasma chemistry values is shown in Figure 15 and the changes in py-

loric obstruction with vomiting are shown in Figure 124. From a knowledge of the electrolyte content of gastric juice, one knows that the patient will have lost large amounts of chloride (perhaps 100 mEq per L. of gastric juice), some sodium (perhaps 50 mEq per L.), and from 5 to 15 mEq of potassium per L. of gastric juice. With these electrolytes he has also lost water, possibly from 2 to 4 L. per day when completely obstructed—a rate of net loss not long tolerated, however.

CASE STUDY Let us assume that a patient has been admitted to the hospital with a history of prolonged vomiting. The evidence indicates that the site of obstruction is probably at the pylorus. He is known to have had a duodenal ulcer in the past and the vomitus, while brownish, does not contain obvious bile, moreover, roentgenograms of the stomach confirm obstruction at the pylorus.

How much, of what type of fluid, shall be given this 154 lb (70-kg) man, and over how many hours?

The *volume deficit* (the amount of fluid to be replaced) should first be estimated by judging the degree of dehydration. The physical findings suggest marked dehydration, or a water loss equal to 8 per cent of body weight: 8 per cent of 70 kg = 5.6 L.

Second, does an *osmolar (salt) deficit* exist? To decide this point a blood specimen is sent immediately to the laboratory for plasma chloride and carbon dioxide combining power measurements. Treatment is begun with isotonic saline in 5 per cent glucose solution while the laboratory analyses are being performed. The sum of "chlorides plus CO_2 " is found to be 112 mEq per L. It will be recalled that this value should normally be approximately 130 mEq per L. Thus, one finds that while the patient has lost a large amount of water, he has lost even more salt, relatively speaking, and that the extracellular fluid which remains to him is relatively hypotonic. That is, hypotonicity exists and in early therapy, fluid should certainly contain salt.

least isotonic concentration, if one does not elect to give an hypertonic sodium chloride solution. We usually do give 500 cc of a 3 per cent solution to individuals whose extracellular fluid is hypotonic at the time of admission, continuing thereafter with the remainder of the therapy. However, in the vast majority of instances efficiently functioning kidneys may be depended upon to restore normal osmolarity on isotonic saline therapy, without requiring hypertonic saline solution. So, all 5.6 L of the volume that is to be given should be in the form of isotonic sodium chloride—unless from 500 cc to 1 L is given in the form of a 3 per cent sodium chloride solution. Of course, continuing losses during therapy must be added to the deficit initially estimated at 5.6 L, if one is to restore the required volume of body water. In practice, one “rounds out” the 5.6 to 6 L.

Third, it is important to estimate the *acid-base status* of this individual. The plasma chloride level was reported from the laboratory as 78 mEq per L (normal, 103 mEq) and the plasma carbon dioxide combining power as 34 mEq per L (normal, 27). These values are compatible with either metabolic alkalosis or compensated respiratory acidosis (Fig 26), but on the basis of the obvious vomiting the presence of metabolic alkalosis appears virtually certain—and there is no pulmonary disease to suggest that respiratory acidosis might exist.

While there may be some pulmonary compensation for the elevated base-bicarbonate (by retention of carbonic acid), this compensation may not have been sufficiently complete to prevent a shift in the reaction (hydrogen ion concentration) toward the alkaline side—a point that can be settled, if desired, with a blood pH determination, if the normal 20:1 ratio of $\text{BHCO}_3/\text{H}_2\text{CO}_3$ has been maintained, the pH will remain normal, but if the increase in H_2CO_3 retention has not kept pace with the BHCO_3 increase, perhaps allowing the ratio to increase to 22:1, then the pH will have become more alkaline. Even so, pH measurements are not often used in routine clinical fluid

management, nor are they essential. In fact, regardless of whether or not measured pH values have changed in metabolic alkalosis, it is probable that pulmonary compensation is rarely complete and that some shift in the pH has usually occurred.

As for management of the metabolic alkalosis produced by pyloric obstruction with vomiting (the most common cause of this condition in surgical practice), there is usually no need for undue haste in its correction unless signs of alkalotic tetany are present. Pyloric obstruction in the adult does not constitute a surgical emergency, and there is time to restore fluid balance in an orderly manner. We usually depend upon sodium chloride therapy to correct the alkalosis and do not infuse ammonium chloride or hydrochloric acid unless the need is clear. A liter of extracellular fluid contains 145 mEq of sodium and 103 mEq of chloride, and the infusion of a liter of 0.85 per cent (isotonic) sodium chloride (145 mEq of Na and 145 mEq of Cl) introduces a “physiologic excess” of 42 mEq of chloride, which in effect represents the infusion of 42 mEq of hydrochloric acid. Since the patient is to get almost 6 L of isotonic sodium chloride solution, a considerable amount of acid (in the form of excess chloride) will be infused. Potassium deficits contribute to the development of metabolic alkalosis and should be corrected.

In contrast to adults, infants frequently do require specific therapy for alkalosis to abolish tetany. If the alkalosis in any patient is sufficiently severe to cause symptoms, then one may give either M/6 ammonium chloride solution or M/10 hydrochloric acid in isotonic solution intravenously.

Fourth, it is necessary to decide whether or not a *potassium* deficit exists, otherwise the acid-base balance might not be readily restored with sodium chloride and glucose solutions alone. The plasma potassium level is measured with the flame photometer, and it is found that the value is 3.8 mEq per L. (normal, 3.5 to 5.5 mEq per L.) Al-

though the value of 38 is barely within normal limits after the patient is hydrated this value may be lower, indicating that a deficit does exist. As noted above, alkalosis *per se* has been shown to lower the plasma potassium level somewhat, even when no potassium has been lost from the body, but for our purposes here a low plasma potassium level probably reflects a cellular potassium deficit. This deficit should be corrected as soon as renal function has been reestablished with 0.6 per cent potassium chloride solution. In severe potassium deficits renal function itself may be improved by potassium administration, but such therapy must be conducted cautiously.

A normal plasma level may or may not indicate normal cellular stores of potassium, but a sharply lowered plasma potassium level usually reflects a cellular potassium deficit.

IN SUMMARY, it has been determined from the clinical examination that the patient under consideration has an initial volume deficit of 5.6 L. of water that he needs relatively more salt than water (extracellular fluid is hypotonic), that metabolic alkalosis exists (high CO_2 and low chlorides, with vomiting), and that the initial "low normal" plasma potassium value may or may not indicate cellular potassium depletion—certainly potassium therapy may be deferred until renal function is improved with initial fluid replacement and until a subsequent measurement of the plasma potassium level reveals a subnormal value. However, a potassium deficit probably does exist, for gastric juice has been vomited, with its relatively high potassium content and the potassium intake has been very small. Specifically then, we would begin therapy either with a liter of isotonic saline in 5 per cent glucose solution or with 500 cc. of 3 per cent sodium chloride solution, followed by the remainder of the volume deficit in the form of isotonic saline in glucose the latter to provide some calories. In general we would give these 6 L. of fluid during the first 12 to 24 hours following

admission, realizing that additional fluid losses will occur by insensible loss, gastric tube suction, and urinary excretion as time passes—and that these losses must be added to the initial deficit of essentially 6 L. to achieve rehydration. Even so, one need not be particularly concerned over the continuing losses, they can be replaced in due course. The important consideration is to reassess both clinical findings and plasma chemistry values at the end of the initial 11 L. of therapy, for it will often be found that the therapy already given has more nearly corrected the requirements than anticipated. Above all, it is essential to realize that there are no precise and infallible calculations that can be used to compute, at the time of admission, the entire corrective therapy that the patient will require. Knowledge of fluid metabolism being what it is, guides in treatment may be employed but beyond this the effect of prior treatment must be constantly re-evaluated by repeated examination of the patient and measurement of the plasma chemistry values. A decrease in the volume deficit is reflected in improved skin turgor, moisture of the tongue and urinary output. Osmolar and acid base status are reflected in plasma chemistry values, as is that of the potassium stores. Should a potassium deficit become apparent on the second or third day, from 3 to 6 gm. of potassium chloride may be added to any therapeutic solution, as considered necessary. In marked deficits, 11 gm. may be given twice daily, each dose being infused over a period of not less than 2 hours—and only in the presence of active renal function.

COMMENT The therapy in this case has been outlined in some detail because it presents in an orderly sequence the factors important in establishing an accurate diagnosis of the state of fluid imbalance and in treating the condition found. Moreover, the series of steps described and illustrated is applicable to a wide variety of states of fluid imbalance. One begins by estimating the volume of fluid that needs to be given,

then the *type* of fluid required, whether *acid-base* imbalance is present and, if so, whether or not it needs to be specifically treated with an alkali or an acidifying compound, and, finally, the correction of *potassium* and *calcium* deficits. The state of fluid imbalance has often developed over a period of days, and several days are usually required to achieve complete correction.

Small Bowel Obstruction

The volume losses in the presence of upper small bowel obstruction may be relatively great, numbering from 6 to 8 L in a single 24-hour period. The electrolyte loss is usually a more balanced one than in the presence of pyloric obstruction (where an acid material is lost, producing metabolic alkalosis) or in diarrhea (where relatively more sodium is lost than fixed anions and metabolic acidosis occurs) (Fig 27). Thus, the principal requirement in high small bowel obstruction is usually replacement with a balanced electrolyte solution, such as isotonic sodium chloride solution or,

better, a solution of 1 part M/6 sodium bicarbonate and 2 parts isotonic sodium chloride, with adequate amounts of potassium, such a bicarbonate solution more nearly approximates normal plasma values than does isotonic sodium chloride, and it avoids the acidifying effect of a physiologic excess of chloride. Of course, one will note whether or not acid-base balance is normal, but marked aberrations in acid-base status are not common findings in uncomplicated small bowel obstruction, if present, they are treated. In passing, it should be noted that in high intestinal obstruction death is most frequently due to water and salt loss, whereas in low intestinal obstruction death is more often due to loss of integrity of the bowel wall with resulting passage of toxic materials from the bowel lumen into the peritoneal cavity and thence into the blood stream.

Only a fraction of the fluid lost into the bowel lumen may be vomited, and thus a relatively large volume of body water may be sequestered in this "third space," unavailable to the dehydrated tissues and circulation but not detectable by the clinician as fluid deficit. Accordingly, it is often difficult to estimate, on the basis of weight loss, the precise fluid requirements of the patient with intestinal obstruction, for the fluid sequestered in the bowel still contributes to body weight. The writer vividly recalls one patient in whom everything that could be thought of had been done—certainly the amount of fluid that had been infused was considered adequate despite large distended loops of fluid-containing bowel, the result of ileus accompanying peritonitis. Nevertheless, the patient's condition was steadily deteriorating and the systolic blood pressure was hovering in the low 90's. It was finally decided to give him, quite empirically, an additional 2 L of isotonic sodium chloride solution for want of anything better to do. Flame photometers were not available then, and fluid therapy had been conducted solely on the basis of plasma "CO₂" and chloride values. Almost miraculously,

ELECTROLYTE CONTENT
OF THE BOWEL AT VARIOUS LEVELS

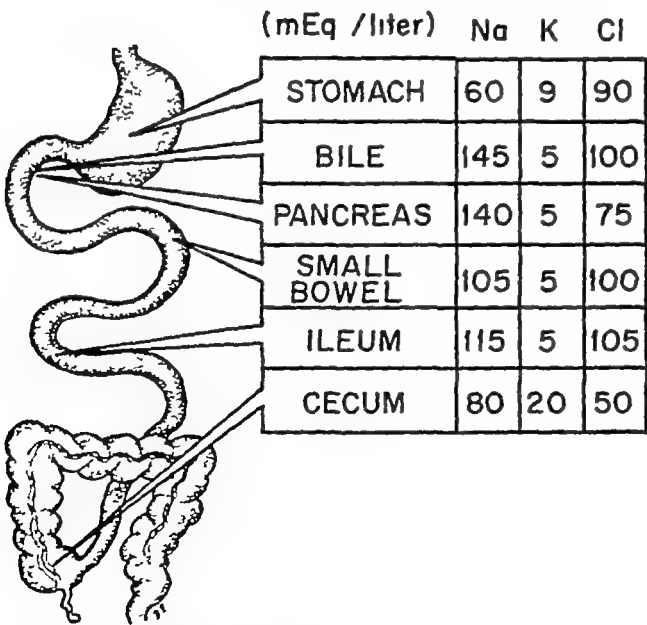


Fig 27 The acid-base derangement produced by vomiting, enteric fistula, or diarrhea is determined by the electrolytes lost (data from RANDALL, H. T. Water and Electrolyte Balance in Surgery. Surg Clin North America, 32: 445, 1952.)

this increment in saline solution was apparently what was required, the blood pressure promptly rose above 100 and was never at shock levels thereafter. It has been pointed out previously that sodium chloride loss is far more apt to produce shock than is the loss of a similar volume of water without salt loss.

Since the weight of the individual may not be a reliable guide to the actual extracellular fluid deficit in the patient with intestinal obstruction, here again one must depend upon the blood pressure and pulse rate, urinary volume, skin turgor, moisture of the tongue and other usual clinical aids in estimating the volume of fluid that is required—aided of course by the volume of fluid that is aspirated through the Levin or Miller Abbott tube. It should not be forgotten, also, that in addition to the fluid aspirated through the indwelling tube and the urinary volume, one must add an additional fluid supplement, depending upon the climate, to provide for insensible fluid loss.

Small Bowel Fistula

As with small bowel obstruction, the fluid loss through a small bowel fistula (Fig. 122) represents a fairly well balanced loss. The major problem is to correct the volume deficit and if present, the osmolar deficit; marked acid base derangements are uncommon but, if present, usually take the form of metabolic acidosis. An important feature of the management of a small bowel fistula is that the condition may not be readily remediable by surgical intervention. That is not only may from 4 to 8 L. of fluid be lost through the fistula in a 24-hour period but one has little knowledge of precisely when the fistula will close. Fortunately most small bowel fistulas, including those involving the duodenum, do close over a period of from a few days to a few weeks. Nevertheless, since one will need to replace perhaps 5 L. of drainage from the fistulous site (collected by catheter suction), 1500 cc. of urine and 1 L. of insensible fluid loss—

a total volume of 7.5 L. in a 24-hour period—it is obvious that the greatest conservation of veins must be achieved, beginning on the very fingers and moving methodically upward. Otherwise, the available veins may be quickly occluded by thrombosis, and after one has cut down on the ankle veins and the antecubital veins he may be in a very difficult position from the standpoint of administering fluid to the patient. Even so, the outlook in small bowel fistula is far better than it formerly was, since it is possible more accurately to measure and replace daily fluid losses, permitting time for the fistula to heal. Too, fistulas are now more often closed surgically.

Specifically, then, the important measures in the management of a small bowel fistula are the following: (1) nothing by mouth (since it will merely escape through the fistula), (2) intravenous fluids to maintain adequate hydration, estimating daily volume requirements on the basis of measured losses as well as skin turgor and other clinical phenomena, (3) estimation of osmolar requirements on the basis of measurements of the plasma sodium chloride, and carbon dioxide combining power, (4) utilization of catheter suction with a small pump or wall suction to collect all possible drainage from the fistula, (5) correction of acidosis, should it develop, (6) nasogastric suction (this may or may not be employed), (7) protection of the skin.

The mortality from duodenal fistulas is still high.

Aspiration of the fistulous drainage results on the one hand in a better measurement of actual fluid losses and, on the other hand, it tends to protect the skin of the patient from the irritating effects of the fluid from the fistula. The skin surrounding the fistula can be further protected with aluminum paste, zinc oxide, or Amphojel dehydrated to a paste in a boiler over a hot plate. If an adequate urinary output measurement cannot be otherwise achieved the use of an indwelling Foley catheter is justified. The basic therapy in intestinal fistula

is usually that of a holding action only, to gain time for the fistula to close. However, if the fistula is not too high it may be possible to anastomose around the defect, excising the fistulous loop later. Or, one may boldly attack the fistula itself, excising it and performing an end-to-end anastomosis, for there is an increasing awareness that one can often attack fistulas surgically with success. Still again, a duodenal side fistula may be treated by gastric resection (Billroth II), converting the side fistula to a well drained end fistula, oral feeding is made available by the gastrojejunostomy. As seen, a low fistula may be bypassed, if not excised outright, at an initial operation. Here it is helpful to have introduced preoperatively a Miller-Abbott tube whose tip has been advanced to the point of the fistulous opening in the abdominal wall. Under these circumstances, any loop that one finds containing Miller-Abbott tube is proximal bowel and any loop that does not contain Miller-Abbott tube is distal bowel. This can prove a most helpful aid when dense and widespread adhesions render dissection difficult. Following the bypassing procedure, it is surprising how little fluid continues to drain from the fistula, most of it going down the bowel in the usual fashion. When the patient's nutrition has been improved and general health regained, a secondary operation may be employed to excise the fistulous loop. One other technic which is at times successful is that of passing a nasogastric or Miller-Abbott tube to a point beyond the fistula, to permit feeding of the individual. This is preferable to a "feeding jejunostomy," when it works.

Biliary and Pancreatic Fistulas

The volume of fluid lost from a pancreatic fistula or from a complete external biliary fistula usually ranges in the neighborhood of from 1000 to 2000 cc per 24-hour period. However, water and salt depletion are more frequently associated with biliary fistulas than with pancreatic fistulas. Two patients who had biliary fistulas developed marked

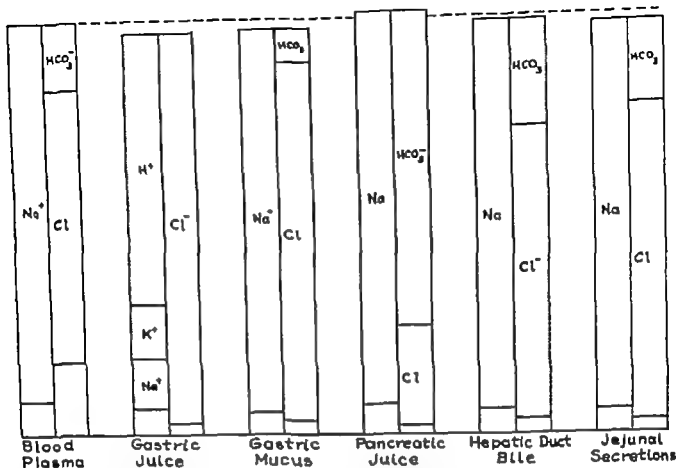
sodium and chloride deficits, both of which responded promptly to adequate salt therapy, a third similar patient also had cirrhosis, and it proved extremely difficult to correct the low salt syndrome that developed in this individual.

The external biliary fistula usually results from injury to the common bile duct, and may continue indefinitely if there exists obstruction below the point of injury or if the common bile duct has been completely severed. However, eventually the proximal portion of the duct is likely to undergo cicatricial stricture formation, bile drainage ceases, and the patient becomes jaundiced. Occasionally, excessive bile loss occurs through a T-tube even when no distal obstruction is demonstrated on cholangiography. Under these circumstances the T-tube may be clamped or, if leakage then occurs around it, the tube may be removed—provided that the cholangiogram has revealed no obstruction.

In contrast, the *pancreatic fistula*, while less depleting from a fluid balance standpoint, is a more vicious problem from the standpoint of total patient management. Many pancreatic fistulas close spontaneously in a matter of days or weeks, but many others result in intra-abdominal sepsis, especially if in association with small bowel defects, and death finally ensues. Pancreatic juice is an alkaline material and the volume ranges from 1 to 1.5 L per 24 hours (Fig 28).

Renal Insufficiency

ACUTE RENAL DECOMPENSATION Acute renal failure occurs on all surgical services from time to time, and there are two particular predisposing circumstances to which the clinician should be alert. The first of these is the borderline renal function which may exist in a patient coming to elective major surgery, particularly in the elderly individual. While renal function may be adequate for the patient's needs at his usual occupation and way of life, the further imposition of the insult of anesthesia and



Electrolyte Composition of Various Gastrointestinal Fluids (Gamble, J L *Chemical Anatomy Physiology and Pathology of Extracellular Fluid* 1947 courtesy of Harvard University Press.)

Fig 28 While the proportions of the several ions vary among the different types of fluids, the total ionic concentrations are remarkably similar. Thus iso-osmolality of the different body fluids is preserved.

major surgery may result in renal insufficiency from which the patient may not recover. Accordingly, it is our firm rule to request at least a nonprotein nitrogen (NPN) or a blood urea nitrogen (BUN) measurement prior to surgery in all patients above the age of 50. The reason for this is that if renal compensation is found to be borderline, the anesthesia or the extent of the operation may be altered or a purely elective procedure may be abandoned entirely. All of us have seen patients with borderline renal function slide into chronic renal failure following operation, from which they never fully recovered. Such patients must often drink large volumes of water daily if they don't, the functioning nephrons remaining will not be able to clear the blood of the metabolites and a state of ure-

mia will ensue. If the NPN or the BUN is at the upper limits of normal in a patient above the age of 50, further studies should include at least a phenolsulfonphthalein (PSP) test and usually a urea clearance. An elevated serum creatinine level is apt to have a more sinister connotation regarding renal reserve than a single elevated NPN, the latter being more readily affected by dehydration, bleeding into the bowel, adrenocortical insufficiency, and factors other than serious renal insufficiency. Needless to say, the urinary specific gravity is not to be ignored.

ACUTE RENAL SHUTDOWN The second type of renal failure that is likely to be encountered in the surgical patient is that of acute renal shutdown. In general, the patients in whom acute renal shutdown occurs are those who have suffered prolonged bouts

of hypotension, severe crushing injuries, severe infection, mismatched blood transfusion, or the ingestion of some toxic substance such as bichloride of mercury. The renal lesion which results has been variously termed "necrotizing nephrosis," "crush syndrome," "lower nephron nephrosis," or "hemoglobinuric nephrosis." However, despite the variety of circumstances under which acute renal failure may occur, Lucke³⁰ studied a large number of cases during the second World War and pointed out the remarkable similarity in the renal lesion produced under different etiologic circumstances. Oliver and his associates⁴⁴ later demonstrated that in acute renal failure two distinct types of tubular injury are encountered in varying proportions, depending upon the clinical insult. The first type, *nephrotoxic necrosis*, is the predominant lesion in renal failure following the injection of a toxic substance excreted by the kidneys, such as bichloride of mercury. Structural changes are limited to the proximal tubules and consist of varying degrees of damage to the epithelial cells without disruption of the basement membrane. Both kidneys are equally affected and all nephrons are involved. As one might expect, the pathologic picture is consistent with the filtration of a foreign toxic substance through the glomerulus and its absorption by the cells of the proximal convoluted tubules, where the intracellular concentration leads to death of the cells. The basement membrane and the cells of the distal portion of the nephron, being functionless in regard to the toxic substance, are not affected.

Oliver and his associates termed the second type of lesion *tubulorrhexis*, and considered it the predominant lesion in acute renal failure following crushing injuries or shock. The damage occurs at random among the nephrons and in any part of the nephron, and is characterized by localized destruction of the entire tubular wall. In this lesion the basement membrane is broken so that the lumen lies open to the intertubular con-

nective tissue where an inflammatory reaction can occur. The tubulorrhexic type of lesion was attributed to renal damage secondary to circulatory collapse. In contrast, in *nephrotoxic necrosis* the integrity of the basement membrane permits an orderly regeneration of the tubular epithelium. It appears that the number of nephrons affected in shock is directly related to the period of renal ischemia, and that the sooner the renal blood flow is increased the better is the chance for ultimate recovery.

Even so, despite the fact that two types of lesions can be produced experimentally, the nephrotoxic and the tubulorrhexic, it is rare that either one or the other of these conditions will be found present alone clinically, since even in toxic poisoning the associated vascular spasm is enough to produce, in addition to the nephrotoxic necrosis from the drug, a prolonged ischemia which results in a certain degree of tubulorrhexis.

It is of considerable interest that Mueller and Mason,⁴³ using the electron microscope, have been able to demonstrate differences in the ultramicroscopic changes produced by different agents which produce lower nephron nephrosis. That is, renal injury produced by one agent resulted in microscopic changes which were clearly different from those produced by another agent.

Management of Acute Oliguria

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS The clinical course of acute renal shutdown may be summarized as follows. The oliguria, proteinuria, hematuria and decreasing urinary specific gravity usually begin within hours of the causative event. A period of severe oliguria of a few days to a few weeks duration is associated with increasing clinical and chemical evidence of renal failure. In successful cases this is followed by a period of rapidly returning function and excretion of water, inorganic ions, and metabolites accumulated during the oliguric period. The *oliguric phase* is followed by the *diuretic phase*, the period during which clinical improvement and the return of

renal function is rapid. The "diuresis" consists largely of excess fluid that has accumulated from intake plus the combustion of body tissue.

Swann and Merrill² have emphasized that the transition from the oliguric to the diuretic phase is of major importance in limiting the incidence of the morbidity and mortality from the complications of the oliguric phase. The average duration of oliguria in acute renal failure is from 10 to 12 days, and during this phase the prominent symptoms and signs are those of cardiovascular, gastrointestinal, neuromuscular, and cerebral dysfunction. Cardiovascular changes consist of the development of arterial hypertension, pulmonary edema, and cardiac failure that results from hyperkalemia. It is now accepted that the elevated plasma potassium concentration is a major threat to life during the oliguric phase. Gastrointestinal symptoms consist particularly of anorexia, vomiting and diarrhea, often with distention and not infrequently with hemorrhage. Cerebral and neuromuscular dysfunction result first in somnolence but later in stupor, delirium and coma. Some patients manifest convulsions, though in our experience this has not been a major problem. Neuromuscular findings may be those of weakness and hyporeflexia progressing to paralysis of the limbs and of respiration. Areflexia and paresthesias of the extremities, lips and tongue—progressing to anesthesia—may develop. Some fever and leukocytosis are common. Anemia usually appears whether due to hemorrhage, increased red cell destruction or to depressed bone marrow function.

PRINCIPLES OF TREATMENT *Therapeutic objective.* The problem is to maintain life until the cells of the renal tubules have had time to regenerate, for if regeneration does not occur the patient is doomed regardless of therapy. To begin with it must be appreciated that the kidneys cannot be forced to excrete urine by the administration of large amounts of water during the oliguric phase and one can only try to maintain

the patient in the best possible general condition while renal tubular (and glomerular³) repair is taking place. With this fact firmly in mind, let us examine the means which over the past decade have proved useful in achieving these requirements.

Fluid intake. There can no longer be the slightest doubt that excessive fluid administration has in the past been a major cause of early death in these patients. Stock²¹ has estimated that by careful conservative management without dialysis, and in particular by the limitation of fluid, one can yield a recovery rate of approximately 80 per cent. While we do not agree with this high figure, we would certainly agree that limitation of fluid is important. Specifically, then, the fluid intake should usually be limited to not more than 800 cc per day, plus estimated losses by whatever urine is excreted, vomitus, and stools. If excessive sweating does not occur (at times it does), the daily intake of 800 cc plus measured losses is a practicable volume. Actually, it has recently been our practice to weigh these patients on litter scales each day and to allow the loss of 1 lb of weight each day. The reason for allowing weight loss is that, were the body weight to be maintained constant without variation, the continued combustion of tissue with water formation would result in overhydration for the combustion of tissue liberates a considerable volume of water. If litter scales are not available the patient can usually stand on ordinary hospital scales for the first few days of the illness, before disorientation and profound weakness occur. Otherwise the rule of giving approximately 800 cc plus measured losses of fluid each day is helpful. As noted if sweating is profuse and body weight cannot be followed the clinical evaluation must still remain an important guide in fluid administration (Fig 23).

Aside from the volume of fluid to be given, the type of fluid is important. Since the patient is not losing much salt unless he is vomiting the daily fluid requirements are given as glucose solution, ranging from 10

to 40 per cent, depending upon the size of the vein into which the polyethylene catheter has been introduced. The patient will not often develop a serious sodium deficit during oliguria, unless this ion is needed for the neutralization of the organic and fixed acids derived from tissue breakdown.

Acidosis is treated with oral or intravenous sodium bicarbonate.

Caloric intake If the patient can eat he is given a diet containing much fat and carbohydrate, in a small volume of fluid. Unfortunately, most of the patients that we have treated have eaten little after the first day or so, and usually the intravenous route has been used for both nutrition and hydration. The objective of the nutritional intake is, of course, to diminish tissue catabolism by the protein sparing action of the calories introduced in the form of carbohydrate and fat. The catabolism of 70 gm of tissue protein, as might occur in one day's total fast, releases approximately 140 mEq of non-excretable potassium.¹³

It has been found that the catabolism of tissue protein can be spared, in considerable measure, by the provision of at least 400 calories daily in the form of glucose or invert sugar. Actually, it may be possible to provide intravenously or orally a diet of somewhat more than 400 calories, often approximately 1000 calories. However, again, if the patient cannot tolerate oral feedings (and the most severely ill usually cannot), it will be very difficult to introduce many calories by intravenous feeding, since the volume of fluid required would endanger the objective of avoiding overhydration. The introduction of a polyethylene tube into a femoral vein or into the superior vena cava is well tolerated, and through this polyethylene tube lying in a large vein one can introduce 30 to 40 per cent glucose solutions without causing serious thrombosis. Recently, plastic tubing has become available which may be left in the vein for many days without causing difficulty. If inflammatory phlebitis does develop, this can constitute a genuine threat in these patients whose antimicrobial capacities are depressed. In addition to the hazards

of septicemia, the fever caused by infection will increase tissue breakdown, liberate additional potassium. But for emphasis, the use of plastic tubing will increase the conservation of veins, and is a matter of practical importance in patients who, if they live, will frequently require intravenous maintenance for at least two weeks and possibly longer.

Potassium intoxication Hyperkalemia with its deleterious effect upon myocardial function, is now recognized as a major cause of death in acute anuria, particularly in patients who are not overhydrated. The reports of Merrill,³⁸ of Teschan and his associates,⁵⁴ and of Meroney and Herndon³⁶ are pertinent. Of these, the report of Meroney and Herndon is particularly helpful in outlining the management of potassium intoxication. Normally, the potassium liberated by the catabolism of tissue cells during fasting is readily excreted by the kidneys. However, this cannot occur during periods of anuria and, furthermore, the coincidence of massive trauma and serious infection is a particularly effective way of causing rapid elevation of the plasma potassium level in the oliguric individual. Compromised tissue, whether permanently destroyed or temporarily embarrassed by trauma, infection, chemical or physical agents, or hypoxia, releases potassium to the plasma.¹⁰

Under the previous discussion of potassium metabolism, the statement was made that we relied upon the plasma potassium level as determined by flame photometry more than upon the ECG, in judging the presence or absence of potassium deficiency. Nevertheless, it has been repeatedly pointed out that in potassium intoxication (representing potassium excess) the effect upon the heart may be apparent from the ECG before the plasma potassium level has risen significantly above the upper limit of normal. Moreover, improvement in the cardiac function, as reflected in the ECG, may be achieved in the absence of a significant lowering of the plasma potassium level. The reason for this is that the ECG reflects the net effect of various ionic influences upon

myocardial electrical activity, the toxic effect of potassium is potentiated by a lowered plasma calcium and/or sodium level. In other words, if there is a calcium deficiency with hypocalcemia, the toxic effects of an elevated potassium level, as indicated by the ECG, may be out of proportion to the degree of elevation of the plasma potassium level. Meroney and Herndon called particular attention to the fact that the retention of inorganic phosphate in anuria results in a fall in the plasma calcium level. Accordingly, the replacement of a calcium deficit may produce a striking improvement in the ECG which then reverts to that degree of abnormality characteristic of the plasma potassium level present at the time. It was cautioned that calcium and digitalis appear to have an additive effect in their antagonism to potassium (in influencing the myocardium) and that care should be exercised not to give digitalis and calcium simultaneously. Ordinarily calcium strengthens myocardial tone and contractions and potassium has the opposite effect. In the presence of potassium intoxication the infusion of calcium in the form of calcium gluconate may cause prompt improvement in the electrocardiographic evidence of potassium intoxication and in the over all clinical picture.

In general, progressive potassium intoxication may cause no symptoms until it has reached the stage at which the ECG shows severe deterioration and in the Korean experience patients who had symptoms with a less abnormal ECG were found to have other causes for their symptomatology.³⁶

The plasma sodium level also influences the electrocardiographic evidence of potassium intoxication. It has been noted previously that there exists a physiologic antagonism between sodium and potassium and that raising the sodium level may result in a fall in the plasma potassium concentration. A sodium infusion may modify the electrocardiographic effects of potassium intoxication even when the plasma potassium level does not diminish. In potassium intoxi-

cation, Meroney and Herndon found it possible to produce an almost normal ECG by the infusion of sodium chloride—even though the plasma potassium concentration was still 7.2 mEq/l. Similar results were obtained by the infusion of calcium.

Other measures by which the plasma potassium level can be altered. The administration of hypertonic glucose solution, with or without insulin, results in the movement of potassium and phosphate into the cells, as both are incorporated into the glycogen carbohydrate complex. If this procedure is to be employed to ameliorate the condition of potassium intoxication, it is recommended that the infusion be given continuously rather than in intermittent doses.

Oral ion exchange resins should theoretically be useful, given by mouth in removing potassium from the body but, practically speaking they have often not been particularly helpful, since many patients with severe renal insufficiency are unable to retain these agents. They may also be given by enema.

Antibiotics. It is judicious to give antibiotics prophylactically to these patients to diminish the likelihood of concurrent infection, particularly pneumonia, which would impose further metabolic strain upon the anuric individual.

USE OF THE ARTIFICIAL KIDNEY. The experience of the Renal Insufficiency Center in Korea did not indicate that the "kidney" was usually necessary for the treatment of hyperkalemia alone, and whether to use the artificial kidney was determined largely by the clinical course of the patient. After a period of oliguria usually from five to eight days the syndrome of clinical uremia began to develop. The patient gradually became lethargic and showed evidence of mental torpor with tremulous and hyperreflexic extremities. The nausea that had been present frequently progressed to active vomiting and retching and intractable hiccups were common. Clinical manifestations of uremia first appeared in the patients of Meroney and Herndon when the blood NPN level

was approximately 250 mg per 100 cc. In general, this level was reached approximately one day after a level of 200 mg had been exhibited, allowing plans for dialysis. It was the practice to utilize dialysis when the NPN level reached 250 mg. per 100 cc., six hours of dialysis producing dramatic relief of symptoms as well as restoration of electrolyte balance. Dialysis was then repeated as soon as the previous degree of uremic symptomatology had again been reached. In Korea, dialysis was performed one or more times in 27 of 46 patients treated for acute renal shutdown—14 had dialysis once, 6 twice, and 7 three times.

It was the common experience that renal insufficiency resulted in an NPN level which rose gradually to the critical level of 250 mg per 100 cc over a period of approximately one week. In general, when relatively severe symptoms had appeared dialysis was performed. In a few patients dialysis was delayed, and after a day or so more threatening clinical manifestations such as coma, convulsions, and pericarditis appeared. In some patients dialysis was avoided because diuresis occurred before clinical uremia had appeared, and in others the use of measures to control hyperkalemia made fewer dialyses necessary. In the presence of clinical uremia no attempt was made to control potassium further by medical means, because dialysis was otherwise indicated and was effective in removing potassium. The principal advantage of the medical control of hyperkalemia (hyperkalemia) was to allow time for removal of the anuric patient to the Renal Center, or to permit more orderly management of the clinical uremia itself.

Anemia and hemorrhage Recent studies have shed little further light upon the bleeding tendency which has long been recognized clinically in uremia. The group in Korea found no abnormality in the clotting mechanism, only increased capillary fragility. Unlike other manifestations of uremia, artificial dialysis had little effect upon the bleeding tendency, and it was frequently worse after spontaneous diuresis had begun. The administration of vitamins C and K or

fresh blood transfusions appeared to have little effect upon the diathesis. Despite the fact that increased potassium levels might result from transfusion, small transfusions were given to the extent of 200 to 300 cc. daily to correct anemia and had little apparent deleterious effect. (There is, incidentally, recent work indicating that the increased plasma potassium concentration which develops in stored blood may be reduced by the proper use of resins.) The bleeding tendency caused concern when dialysis needed to be done, but it was eventually found that this need constitute no contraindication to necessary dialysis for uremia.

Prophylactic management of hyperkalemia in traumatic injuries It was further appreciated during the Korean experience that it is utterly mandatory to effect adequate debridement of devitalized tissue as a therapeutic measure to prevent hyperkalemia and infection which would further diminish the chances for recovery of the patient in acute renal failure. It was noted that while aggressive debridement might result in the sacrifice of some viable tissue, the failure to perform an adequate debridement might well prove fatal. It was further again confirmed that it was impossible to control infection in devitalized tissue with antibiotics, since the blood supply of such tissue would not bring the antibiotics to the site of bacterial growth. In all surgery, adequate debridement and drainage are essential if infection is to be controlled, regardless of antibiotic therapy.

Stage of diuresis If the patient survives the period of oliguria and regeneration of the renal nephrons occurs, diuresis will begin. This is usually heralded by an increase in the urinary output to greater than 1 L per day, following which it may steadily climb to several liters. The volume of fluid diuresed depends to considerable extent on the volume of water that has accumulated during the period of anuria. During diuresis the kidneys have apparently little capacity to conserve sodium chloride, and a sodium deficiency or "low sodium syndrome" may

lop For this reason, it is of importance flow the plasma electrolytes and to sup-sodium chloride and, where needed, po-um to these patients during this re-ry period The fortunate clinical fact at at this time appetite is rapidly re-el, and once the patient is on a sub-tial diet the problems of salt and other tional maintenance rapidly resolve nselves

rognois of acute renal shutdown with of artificial kidney While the advent of blood dialysis has improved the out- in many patients the mortality in te renal failure is still high The over all tality rate in 51 patients treated in the al Insufficiency Center in Korea was 53 cent However a serious complicating tor in these soldiers was the presence of ere wounds, often infected

REFERENCES

- ALLEN E V, BARKER W., AND HINES E A JR. *Peripheral Vascular Diseases* Ed 2 Philadelphia W B Saunders Company 1946
- ALLOTT E V. Sodium and chloride retention without renal disease *Lancet* 1: 1033 1939
- ARTEL, I M, KENNEDY A J AND WAXENSTEIN O H. An expanded interstitial (thiocyanate) space in surgical patients *Surgery* 27: 827 1950
- BECKE A R. Physiologic studies pertaining to deep sea diving and aviation especially in relation to the fat content and composition of the body *Harvey Lect* 37: 198, 1941-1942
- BERNARD J M. A concept of starvation edema *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 25: 265 1950
- BISCHOFF E. Einige Gewichts und Troken Bestimmungen der Organe des menschlichen Korpers *Ztschr f rat, med* 20: 73 1863
- BLACK, D A H, McCANCE, R A AND YOUNG W F. Study of dehydration by means of balance experiments *J Physiol* 102: 406 1944.
- BURNELL, J M., AND SCHROEDER, B H. Interpretation of the serum potassium concentration in patients with acid-base imbalance *Surgical Forum* 7: 71 1957
- CANNON P., ET AL. Potassium and sodium interrelations. *Report of the Sixth M & R Pediatric Research Conference September 22 1952* p 15. Published by M & R Laboratories, Columbus, Ohio
- CANNON P R., FRAXIER, L E AND HUGHES, R. II Influence of potassium on tissue protein synthesis *Metabolism* 1: 49 1952
- 11 CONY J W., FJAJAN S S., LOUIS L H, STREITEN D H P., AND JOHNSON R D. Intermittent aldosteronism in periodic paralysis. Dependence of attacks on retention of sodium and failure to induce attacks by restriction of dietary sodium *Lancet* 1: 802 1937
- 12 COOPER, I S AND CRETZER, P H. Neurogenic hypernatremia and hyperchloremia *J Clin Endocrinol*, 12: 821 1952.
- 13 COOPER, A C. Advances in treatment of acute and chronic renal insufficiency *J A M A*, 153: 1233 1953
- 14 D'ANGELO G J, MURDAUGH H V, JR., SEALY W C AND BROWN I W JR. The use of alcohol in the treatment of the postoperative hyponatremic syndrome *Surgical Forum* 7: 225 1957
- 15 DARROW D C. Disturbances in electrolyte metabolism and their management *Bull New York Acad Med*, 24: 147 1948
- 16 DARROW D C., SCHWARTZ, R., LANTUCCI J F., AND COVILLE, F. The relation of serum bicarbonate concentration to muscle composition *J Clin Invest*, 27: 193 1948
- 17 DARROW D C AND LANTUCCI H. Changes in the distribution of body water accompanying increase and decrease in extracellular electrolyte *J Clin Invest*, 14: 266 1935
- 18 ELKINTON J R., DANOWSKI T S., AND WINKLER, A W. Plasma volumes of dogs in dehydration with and without salt loss. *J Clin Invest*, 25: 120 1946
- 19 FENY W. Physiological and biochemical aspects of potassium metabolism *Report of the Sixth M & R Pediatric Research Conference September 22 1952* p 11
- 20 GAROVIN, L I. Experimental potassium depletion. Effect on carbohydrate metabolism and pH of muscle *Journal Lancet* 73: 190 1953
- 21 GAULT R., AND BLANTZ, J H. *Hormones and Body Water* Springfield Ill., Charles C Thomas, 1951
- 22 HANNOUD W G., CARTER R. C., DAVIS J M., AND MOORE, F D. Osmotic diuresis as treatment in severe hyponatremia. *Surgical Forum* 7: 82, 1957
- 23 HARDY J D. Metabolic reaction to staged operations in man. In *Surgical Physiology of the Adrenal Cortex* Springfield, Ill Charles C Thomas, 1955
- 24 HARDY J D, BOBOW A E., PAYNEK E J., ROBINSON J K, SMITH J E., AND ZIMMERMAN A. F. Potassium depletion in dogs. Effect on wound healing, on blood protein and electrolyte levels, and on response to anesthesia. *A M A Arch Surg* 66: 225 1953

- 25 HARDY, J D, AND DRABKIN, D L Measurement of body water, techniques and practical implications *J A M A*, **149**: 1113, 1952
- 26 HARDY, J D, AND DRABKIN, D L The D₂O dilution space as a measurement of total body water to body size *Am J M Sc*, **219**: 108, 1950
- 27 VON HEVESY, G, AND HOFER, E Die Verweilzeit des Wassers im menschlichen Korper, untersucht mit Hilfe von "schwerem" Wasser als Indicator *Klin Wchnschr*, **113**: 1524, 1934
- 28 HINES, E A, JR Lipedema and "physiologic" edema *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin*, **27**: 7, 1952
- 29 KEYS, A, BROZEK, J, HENSCHER, A, MICKELSON, O, AND TAYLOR, H L *The Biology of Human Starvation*, Vols 1 and 2 Minneapolis, The University of Minnesota Press, 1950
- 30 LUCKE, B Lower nephron nephrosis *Mil Surgeon*, **99**: 371, 1946
- 31 MARRIOTT, H L *Water and Salt Depletion* Springfield, Ill, Charles C Thomas, 1950
- 32 MASON, R L, AND ZINTEL, H A *Preoperative and Postoperative Treatment* Philadelphia, W B Saunders Company, 1946
- 33 McCANCE, R A Experimental sodium chloride deficiency in man *Proc Roy Soc, London*, s B, **119**: 245, 1936
- 34 McCANCE, R A, AND WIDDOWSON, E M A method of breaking down the body weights of living persons into terms of extracellular fluid, cell mass and fat, and some applications of it to physiology and medicine *Proc Roy Soc, London*, s B, **138**: 115, 1951
- 35 McCANCE, R A, YOUNG, W F, AND BLACK, D A K Secretion of urine during dehydration and rehydration *J Physiol*, **102**: 415, 1944
- 36 MFRONEY, W H, AND HERNDON, R F The management of acute renal insufficiency *J A M A*, **155**: 877, 1954
- 37 MERRILL, A J Chronic renal failure *American Prac & Digest Treat*, **4**: 679, 1953
- 38 MERRILL, J P *The Treatment of Renal Failure* Grune & Stratton, New York, 1955
- 39 MOORE, F D The low sodium syndromes of surgery, an outline for practical management *J A M A*, **154**: 379, 1954
- 40 MOORE, F D, HALEY, H B, BERING, E A, JR, BROOKS, L, AND EDELMAN, I S Further observations on total body water II Changes in body composition in disease *Surg Gynec & Obst*, **95**: 155, 1952
- 41 MOYER, C A *Fluid Balance, A Clinical Manual* Chicago, Year Book Publishers, Inc, 1952
- 42 MOYER, C A Fluid and electrolyte balance *Surg Gynec & Obst*, **84**: 586, 1947
- 43 MULLER, C B, AND MASON, A D, JR A study of the pathologic anatomy of the proximal tubules of the mouse produced by nephrotoxins *Surgical Forum*, **7**: 641, 1952
- 44 OLIVER, J, MACDONALD, M, AND TRACY, A pathogenesis of acute renal failure associated with traumatic and toxic injury *J Invest*, **30**: 1307, 1951
- 45 PAPPENHEIMER, J R Passage of molecules through capillary walls *Physiol Rev*, **33**: 387, 1953
- 46 PITTS, R F Acid-base regulation by the kidneys *Am J Med*, **9**: 356, 1950
- 47 PRUITT, R D Edema of renal origin *Staff Meet Mayo Clin*, **27**: 11, 1952
- 48 RANDALL, H T Water and electrolyte balance in surgery *S Clin North America*, **3**: 1952
- 49 SCHLOERB, P R, FRIIS-HANSEN, B J, EDWARDS, I S, SOLOMON, A K, AND MOORE, F D measurement of total body water in the man subject by deuterium oxide dilution *Clin Invest*, **29**: 1296, 1950
- 50 SMYTHE, C McC, NICKEL, J F, AND BRADSHAW, S E The effect of epinephrine (L-epinephrine, and l-norepinephrine) on merular filtration rate, renal plasma flow, the urinary excretion of sodium, potassium and water in normal man *J Clin Invest*, **31**: 499, 1952
- 51 STOCK, R J The conservative management of acute urinary suppression *Bull New Acad Med*, **28**: 507, 1952
- 52 SWANN, R C, AND MERRILL, J P The clinical course of acute renal failure *Medicine*, **32**: 215, 1953
- 53 SWEET, W H, COTZIAS, G C, SUD, V, YAKOVLEV, P I Gastrointestinal hemorrhages, hyperglycemia, azotemia, hypocalcemia, and hypernatremia following lesions of the frontal lobe in man *Proc A Nerv & Ment Dis*, **27**: 795, 1948
- 54 TESCHAN, P E, POST, R E, SMITH, L H, ABERNATHY, R S, DAVIS, J H, GRAY, D, HOWARD, J M, JOHNSON, K E, KLOPF, MUNDY, R L, O'MEARA, M P, AND RUBIN, B F, JR Post-traumatic renal insufficiency in military casualties I Clinical characteristics *Am J Med*, **18**: 172, 1955
- 55 USSING, H H Transport through biological membranes *Ann Rev Physiol*, **15**: 1, 1953
- 56 WELSH, J F, LARSON, E E, AND ROWNTREE, G Studies in diabetes insipidus, water balance, and water intoxication, study I *Am Int Med*, **29**: 306, 1922
- 57 WOOD, E H Physiologic mechanisms for preventing edema of the lower extremities *Staff Meet Mayo Clin*, **27**: 2, 1952
- 58 ZIMMERMANN, B, AND WANGENSTEIN, O H Observations on water intoxication in surgical patients *Surgery*, **31**: 651, 1952

Chapter 3

Surgical Nutrition

In discussing nutritional problems in surgery, the following topics will be considered: importance of nutrition in surgical patients, methods for studying nutritional processes, factors that influence spontaneous food intake, functions of dietary components in metabolism, special nutritional problems in surgery, and routes and materials for therapeutic alimentation.

Importance of Nutrition in Surgical Patients

General Considerations

Virtually no system of the body is unaffected by nutritional deficits, though a given deficit may affect one organ more than another. Caloric inadequacy results in the loss of body tissue and weakness of the muscular system. The chief sources of calories in the diet are carbohydrate and fat. A deficiency of protein over a suitable period of time results in deterioration of the actual cellular structure of most organs of the body. While the primary function of dietary fat is to supply calories, fat is also essential for certain types of normal growth.

Effects of Experimental Human Starvation

Physicians present at the time have studied the effects of mass starvation in various countries of the world. Yet, conditions were usually not conducive to careful physiologic measurements throughout the development of and recovery from, the starvation. Therefore, the careful experimental studies of Keys and his associates¹⁶ were of

particular significance and interest. These workers placed 36 human volunteers on a fixed diet which was below daily minimal requirements and then followed various physical and physiologic indices during the ensuing weeks, later the subjects were re-fed. Prolonged undernutrition which produced a body weight loss of more than 50 per cent resulted in emaciation, weakness, apathy, reduced metabolism, bradycardia and a tendency to develop edema. For the first three months of the control period these individuals required slightly more than an average daily intake of 3150 calories to maintain balance. The mean daily intake of protein was 110 gm. and fats supplied about 30 per cent of the calories. A semi-starvation diet of approximately 1800 calories was then begun and was based on the food items used in Europe in times of famine such as potatoes, turnips, and coarse cereals, with only minute amounts of meats and dairy products.

WEIGHT LOSS In Figure 29 are shown the average body weights in semistarvation and in the first 12 weeks of rehabilitation of a group. There was a mean weight loss of 168 kg. (37 lb.), which represented 24 per cent of the control body weight. The actual loss of body tissue however, was considerably more than this, being somewhat obscured by the development of edema and a general state of excess water in the body. At the end of the semistarvation period there was an average of about 12 to 16 lb. of excess water in the body, so that the real tissue loss was close to 50 lb. per man.

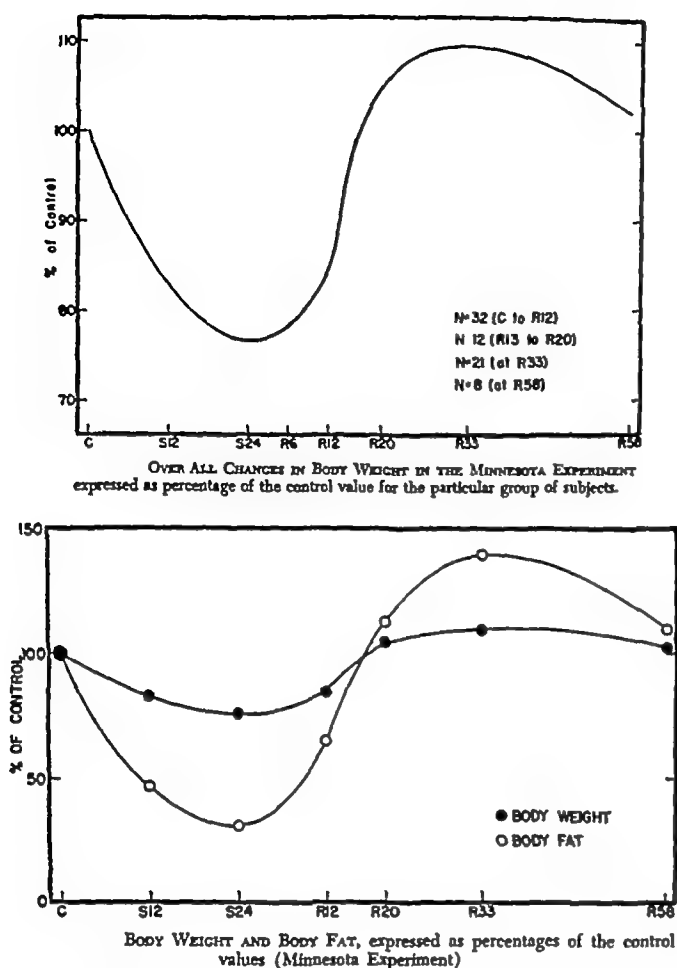


Fig 29 Body weight curves during controlled starvation and realimentation (S24 = 24 weeks of starvation and R12 = 12 weeks of re-alimentation) Note that fat loss was a prominent feature during starvation and fat gain conspicuous during re-alimentation (see text) (From KEYS, A, BROZEK, J, HENSCHEL, A, MICHELSON, O, AND TAYLOR, H L *The Biology of Human Starvation*, Vol I Minneapolis, The University of Minnesota Press, 1950)

BLOOD VOLUME The total blood volume was not markedly altered, and there was an actual increase in plasma volume. It is known, of course, that the malnourished individual may have an almost normal blood volume, due to the fact that the plasma volume may be normal or increased. Nevertheless, a severe anemia may at times be present, and this is the important point in view of the fact that there must be adequate hemoglobin in adequate numbers of red cells to carry oxygen to the tissues.

MUSCULAR STRENGTH Much of the weight loss in Keys' patients was from the muscles, and there was marked weakness, particularly seen in tasks requiring any endurance. The loss in strength for a single muscular contraction amounted to only about 30 per

cent, but the loss in capacity to continue work which would not ordinarily result in exhaustion in a few minutes was close to 80 per cent. The speed of small muscular movements, however, was little affected, and the loss in neuromuscular coordination was considerably less than that in strength.

CIRCULATORY CHANGES The shrunken heart (evaluated by roentgen examinations) beat slowly but regularly, and there was evidence that circulatory function was better preserved than muscular function. There was some decrease in blood pressure (a common finding in patients who come to the hospital in a starved condition), and there was a remarkable resting bradycardia, the average heart rate in basal rest being 35 beats per minute after 12 weeks of semistarvation and 37 at the end of 6 months. It was noted that this slow heart rate differed from the bradycardia of beriberi in that exercise did not provoke an excessively fast heart rate in the starved man. Moreover, the small heart of starvation contrasted sharply with the big heart of beriberi.

The efficiency of circulatory reflexes, especially as regards readjustments to change in posture, was impaired by the prolonged period of semistarvation.

PSYCHIATRIC CHANGES The mood of most of the experimental subjects gradually changed to one of mild depression, a preoccupation with food, and loss of sexual interest.

SOME MISCELLANEOUS OTHER EFFECTS OF STARVATION *Hepatic function* and structure are often altered in starved individuals, and certain types of protein deficiency may result in cirrhosis. Many starved persons exhibit deranged absorptive patterns for foods placed in the *intestinal tract*, and some have an actual intolerance for certain items of diet. The mucosal pattern of the small intestine may be abnormal on roentgen study. The activity of various *endocrine organs* is diminished in starvation. Perloff and his associates²¹ have emphasized the rôle of starvation in producing hypopituitarism, and starvation is an important etiologic factor

in the syndromes referred to as Simmonds' disease and anorexia nervosa, in fact, the functional hypopituitarism produced by starvation may be difficult to delineate from hypopituitary cachexia due to structural impairment of the anterior pituitary gland in Simmonds' disease. The other endocrine organs whose activity is regulated by the pituitary will have altered function in the presence of depressed pituitary function. It has been shown that a low calorie diet for one week may lower the basal metabolic rate as much as 10 per cent. In starved individuals the daily urinary excretion of adrenal corticoid substances is low normal, but the excretion of 17 ketosteroids is usually markedly diminished reflecting at least a qualitative alteration in adrenocortical activity. It has also been stated that a diet deficient in vitamin C results in a diminished insulin content of the pancreas.⁶

Nutritional anemias may be encountered. Deficiencies of iron, folic acid, or vitamin B₁₂ may cause anemia but protein deficiency may also do this. The intimate relationship which exists between the formation of hemoglobin, plasma protein, and cell protein was delineated by the classic studies of Whipple and Madden.³²

Hogan¹⁰ has called attention to evidence that maternal malnutrition may possibly result in an increased incidence of congenital malformations, and that there may be a relation between maternal nutrition and the functional activity of the brain of the progeny. Certainly it would appear that the functional activity of the central nervous system in rats can be impaired by some type of inadequacy in the maternal diet. The question was also posed as to whether there is a correlation between economic level and intelligence. It was suggested that the cause and effect are reversed in public opinion and that some of the stupid are stupid because they are poor.

The foregoing thoughts are offered merely to indicate the extremely broad scope of nutritional influences in the surgeon's patients. The well nourished patient who comes to

operation in a good frame of mind, with a determination to come through safely, will usually represent a better surgical risk than the starved individual who comes to operation mentally depressed and with little physiologic reserve.

Malnutrition may occur even when the oral intake would be adequate for normal activity in the healthy individual. Such a circumstance would exist when bowel absorption is poor, as in pancreatic insufficiency, total gastrectomy, or following extensive small bowel resection, in circumstances where nutritional needs are much increased as in prolonged fevers or hyperthyroidism where abnormal losses occur, as in open wounds, small bowel fistula, burns or purulent conditions, and where metabolic use of foodstuffs is inefficient, as in diabetes mellitus.

Special Surgical Problems Resulting from Nutritional Inadequacy

✓ POOR TOLERANCE FOR OPERATIVE STRESS AND DELAY IN CONVALESCENCE. Patients with nutritional deficiencies require a longer time for convalescence than those whose nutrition has been maintained. There is abundant evidence in the literature to indicate that the disability which follows surgery, traumatic injury, or disease is significantly prolonged by malnutrition.

✓ POOR WOUND HEALING. The state of nutrition plays a rôle in the healing of wounds, and it has been demonstrated that proteins, vitamin C, riboflavin, and vitamin A are all important in this respect. Moreover, the patient with protein deficiency is prone to postoperative wound disruption. Skin grafts which take poorly in the malnourished and anemic individual may be successful when the nutritional status has been improved. The incidence of decubitus ulcers (bed sores, pressure sores) has been correlated with a protein deficit in many instances, but good general nursing care is also a major factor in reducing the incidence of bed sores.

✓ INCREASED SUSCEPTIBILITY TO INFECTION AND LOWERED RESISTANCE TO DISEASE. Semi

starved and starved individuals are highly susceptible to the development of infections of various types (Chapter 5) In part, this is due to a diminished ability of the host to form antibodies, for when depleted animals are passively immunized they tend to survive infections as well as normally nourished controls In addition to low antibody titers, actual changes in the tissues of starving individuals may explain their increased susceptibility to infection Superficial necrosis of the mucous membrane of the respiratory tract, the gastrointestinal tract, and the skin frequently is seen, and this break in continuity of normally protective surfaces makes a ready portal for the organisms which are always present The combination of a weakened tissue barrier, a decreased capacity of the malnourished bone marrow to form leukocytes of both the granulocytic and the lymphatic series, and a decreased immunologic response to invading organisms accounts for the increased severity of infection (increased "virulence") in the malnourished individual²² Among the many infections which progress more rapidly in the presence of poor nutrition, none is better documented than that of pulmonary tuberculosis (p 127)

Disturbed Organ Function—Further Comment

It has been seen above that the gastrointestinal tract is frequently affected by malnutrition Anorexia may develop early in the course of generalized vitamin or protein deficiency and leads to a vicious cycle This is seen in patients with thiamine deficiency, anorexia may appear in the patient with thyrotoxicosis who has an increased need for this vitamin due to the increased rate of metabolism We have found that forced tube feeding in anorexic burn patients may improve the appetite after a brief period of time

Disturbed gastrointestinal motility with the diarrhea that may accompany severe prolonged dietary inadequacy may become one of the most serious and difficult compli-

cations of malnutrition—and of re-alimentation This was an outstanding feature of attempts to feed liberated displaced persons in Germany at the close of World War II.

Nervous system lesions appear after various types and degrees of nutritional deficiency, as mentioned The sensorium may change and the individuals may become hypochondriacal and difficult to work with Furthermore, not only is the mental outlook considerably altered in malnourished states but definite organic lesions can be demonstrated in the peripheral nerves, such as the polyneuritis associated with thiamine deficiency

The *liver* contains less protein and often more fat in starvation, due to the mobilization of fat from the depots, this diminishes liver tolerance for certain forms of anesthetic agents It has been shown that young rats consuming low protein diets may develop necrotic livers, whereas adult animals develop fatty infiltration followed by incipient fibrosis²⁰ Under certain circumstances such liver changes may be reversed by the feeding of a more adequate diet, but if the adequate diet is delayed too long the lesions may become irreversible

On the basis of various studies, it would appear that in man the most important protective factors for the liver in an adequate diet are probably animal protein, choline, and methionine An adequate, balanced diet tends to protect the liver against injury and to promote regeneration of liver cells Such a diet should therefore be prescribed under circumstances in which liver injury is suspected or may be anticipated Yet, an adequate diet is only one of many factors which assist in preventing or managing liver damage

Enzymic activity may be reduced by caloric, vitamin, and protein deficits All enzymes and many hormones are either proteins or are combined with a protein molecule Furthermore, the vitamins, especially those of the B complex, are concerned with enzyme activity For example, protein deficiency may result in a decreased peptic

activity of the gastric juice, in a diminished renal phosphatase and succinic dehydrogenase, in a reduced xanthine oxidase activity in the liver, and in a reduced total concentration of hyaluronidase in the testes. Protein repletion re-establishes enzyme activity at a normal level.²²

Hypoproteinemia eventually occurs when there is a prolonged negative nitrogen balance. In the early stages of protein deficiency there is a reserve of protein available for mobilization, and this is used in an attempt to maintain normal serum protein concentrations. Eventually, however, the continued depletion of the body protein reserves will usually be reflected in a lowered serum protein level, particularly as regards albumin. The return of the serum protein concentration to normal will thereafter be slow even with a good dietary intake since it is estimated that about 30 gm. of protein must be deposited in the tissues before 1 gm. is restored in the circulation. Chronic hypoproteinemia results in an increase in the susceptibility to shock from hemorrhage due not only to qualitative and quantitative alterations in blood constituents but to the hormonal, cardiovascular and other factors that have been described.

Nutritional Edema, Vitamin Deficiencies, and Specific Amino Acid Deficiencies

A severe protein deficiency is commonly associated with the development of edema. This edema may be in a latent form which is not apparent unless the patient is weighed or it may be readily detectable on physical examination. Yet, while a lowered serum protein is frequently associated with edema, extremely low serum protein levels may be observed in patients who have no demonstrable edema.

It has been seen that the vitamins, accessory food substances are important in various physiologic activities, including reactions which involve enzymes. The common clinical manifestations of specific vitamin deficiencies are known to all, including scurvy (C), beriberi (B₁), rickets (D), and

cheilosis (riboflavin). Moreover, the vitamins are often closely interrelated, and a deficiency of one member of the B complex may affect the metabolism of other members of this complex. As an example, hyperkeratotic skin lesions are said to be produced by a deficiency of Vitamin A, Vitamin C, niacin, or pyridoxine. Glossitis and fissures of the tongue may be produced by deficiencies of one or more vitamins. While cheilosis usually responds to riboflavin therapy, in some cases it heals only when pyridoxine is administered.

Clinically, however, isolated or pure single vitamin deficiencies are rarely encountered, and if one vitamin deficiency is manifest it is to be expected that other vitamin deficiencies are also present. A possible exception is that of vitamin K deficiency, leading to a lowered prothrombin level. Therefore, in the usual vitamin therapy a multivitamin preparation providing liberal amounts of all known vitamins is desirable.

For the *construction of protein* it is necessary not only that a sufficient quantity of amino acids be present but also that the amino acids be present in the proper proportions. A diet inadequate in a single 'essential' amino acid may cause a specific deficiency syndrome as well as provoke a negative nitrogen balance. In the adult human being tryptophane deficiency results in a loss of weight. In an infant, ten days of tryptophane deficiency results in anorexia and a marked drop in plasma protein levels. Two weeks of tryptophane deficiency in chicks have been shown to produce changes in enzyme activity which are reversible if an adequate quantity of the amino acid is subsequently provided.^{12, 24} Various other amino acids have likewise been shown to be specifically important. The significant fact is that whereas the body can itself form or compensate for the lack of some substances certain other nutritional requirements are highly specific and must be included in the diet.

Deleterious Effects of Overnutrition

Much has been stated regarding the undesirable effects of undernutrition or malnutrition, but overnutrition is likewise undesirable. Generalized atherosclerosis with associated coronary artery disease, diabetes mellitus, and hypertension are far more common in obese individuals. The presence of large amounts of fat often makes surgical exposure troublesome, and, particularly in operating for malignancy, it may be difficult to excise the desired tissues as accurately and as satisfactorily as in a lean individual. The obesity is not limited to the body wall, of course, since it involves the mesentery of the bowel, the omentum, and the retroperitoneal area (Fig 73)

Fat contains little water and has a scant blood supply. This results in a poor defense against infection, an all too common compli-

cation in the wounds of obese patients. Postoperative respiratory complications are also prone to develop in obese persons because of the fact that the diaphragm is forced upward by abdominal fat and viscera.

Obesity Syndrome In Figure 30 are shown the major features of a syndrome which may develop in extremely obese subjects. Thus, not only does the obesity predispose to the development of other diseases, it here constitutes itself a disease which can produce fatal cardiopulmonary complications.

The Causes of Obesity

✓ EXCESSIVE CALORIC INTAKE Obesity is usually the result of a dietary intake in excess of energy requirements. Simply put, the daily caloric intake of the sedentary individual may be increased from 3000 to 5000

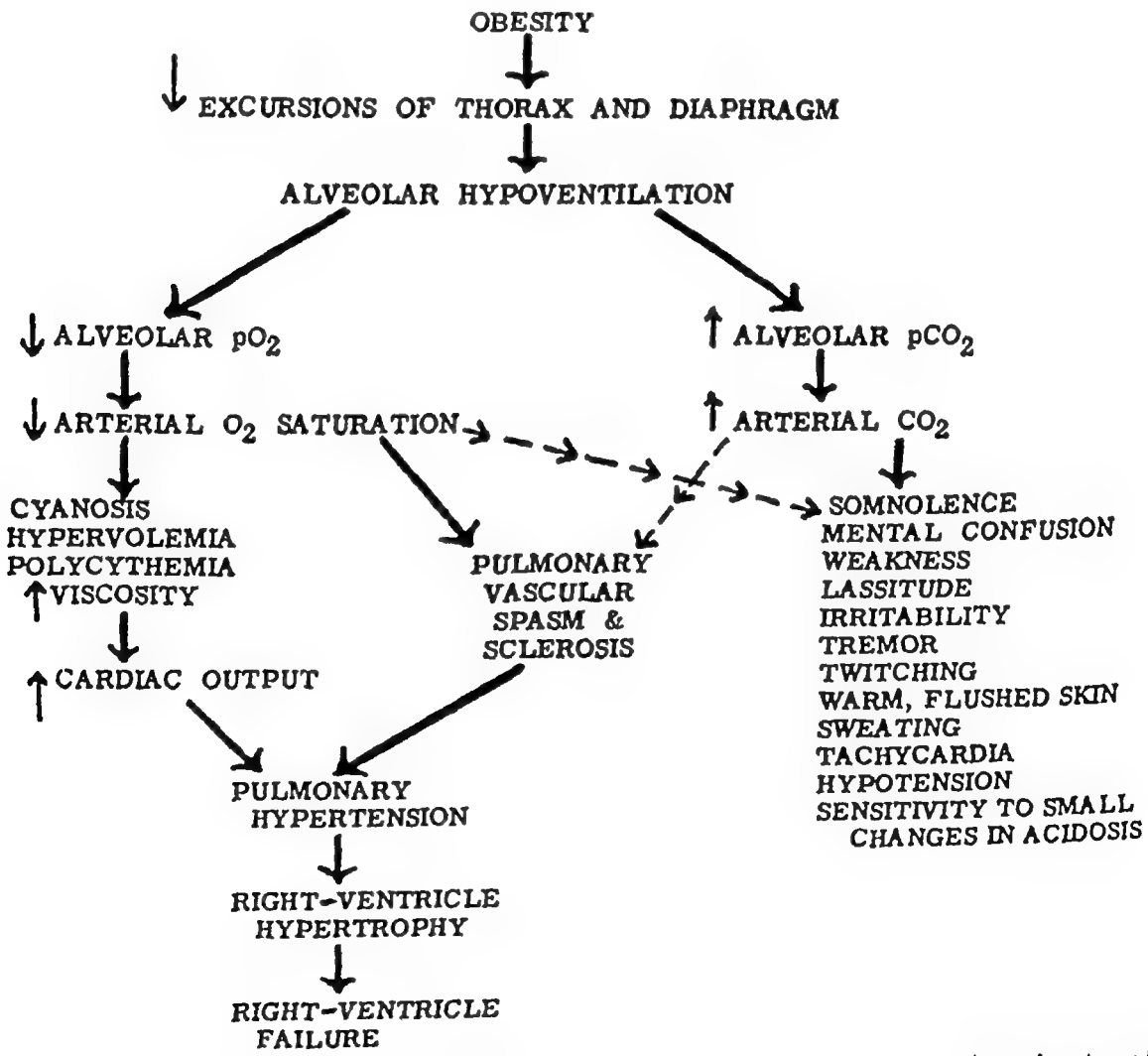


Fig 30 The obesity ("Pickwickian") syndrome (From SEHR, M J Heart failure due to extreme obesity report of a case with autopsy findings New England J Med, 257: 1227, 1957)

without a body weight increase—provided that the man begins hard physical labor or exercises vigorously for several hours each day. Otherwise, the accumulation of fat is reflected in an increase in body weight.

It is frequently stated that obesity represents a component of a neurosis and this is certainly true of those compulsive individuals who must be nibbling when not otherwise occupied, including those persons whose unfulfilled emotional needs are assuaged by eating. Yet, the moderate obesity that is so common—the middle-age 'spread'—is largely the consequence of a persistence of the eating habits of the young adult into years when physical activity is declining. Moreover the metabolic rate and growth requirements decline with the advance toward middle age, and during this period hormonal changes other than thyroidal may also contribute to the development of obesity.

OTHER FACTORS IN OBESITY The problem of obesity in being subjected to an increasing amount of experimental study, and some interesting facts emerge. One type of obesity may follow overtreatment with adrenocortical steroids (Cushing's syndrome). Obesity can also be produced by certain lesions in the hypothalamus. Furthermore, obesity runs in families, and genetically obese strains of mice have been developed. Non-obese littermates of genetically obese mice choose a low fat high carbohydrate diet while the obese mice choose a diet low in carbohydrate and high in fat. An outstanding characteristic of the genetically obese mouse is its low level of activity. However if forced to exercise the mouse does lose weight.¹⁹

Methods for Studying Nutritional Processes

CALORIMETRY AND RESPIRATORY QUOTIENT

Nutritional processes may be studied in a variety of ways. For example, one can put the person inside a calorimeter and actually measure the amount of energy derived (as heat) from the metabolic usage of various

types of foodstuffs. This is a difficult and tedious process. Recently the nutritional metabolism in surgical patients has been studied by means of a bedside collection of expired carbon dioxide over a timed interval, since the proportionate combustion of the three major foodstuffs (fat, protein and carbohydrate) is reflected in the CO_2 content of the expired air. Kinney and his associates¹⁷ found that a rate of infusion of at least 40 cal per hr was required to alter metabolism sufficiently to be detected by this method. Of course, the more fat burned, the lower the respiratory quotient ($\text{RQ} = \text{O}_2 \text{ used} / \text{CO}_2 \text{ excreted}$).

THE BALANCE STUDY The most widely used means of investigating body usage of individual foodstuffs, salts, and water is the balance study. In brief, the amount of the material ingested or infused is carefully measured as is its excretion in the urine and feces. If during the actual study period more of the substance (nitrogen, for example) is ingested than is excreted, the individual is said to be in positive nitrogen balance; if intake equals excretion he is in nitrogen equilibrium; if losses exceed intake he is in negative balance.

While much fundamental information has been gathered by balance studies, this type of approach affords relatively little information regarding what metabolic pathways the substance took while it was in the body. Modern physiologists are no longer satisfied merely to know how much of a substance was fed and how much of the substance was excreted; they desire to know what chemical steps occurred in the protein molecule during the absorption, utilization, and eventual excretion of its nitrogen. Moreover, how long did an individual nitrogen atom remain in the body, on the average? Such information is not to be gained from the nitrogen balance study.

ISOTOPIC TECHNIQUES Using radioactive and stable isotopes as tracer elements, however, one can often identify the steps of degradation and excretion—or re-synthesis and utilization—of the compound under study.

For example, an amino acid can be synthesized which contains a radioactive carbon atom. This amino acid is then fed to an animal and its progress through different chemical steps ascertained by suitable analyses of the excreta, blood, and organs of the animal. The isotope technic has permitted the settling of numerous questions where the balance study would have failed.

Isotopic studies have shown that the living cell is able to incorporate into itself, at a surprisingly rapid rate, the elementary chemical compounds out of which its protoplasm is constituted. By feeding radioactive glycine, Rittenberg and his associates²⁸ were able to demonstrate that many labeled amino acids turned up in the various proteins of the body of the animal. This was, of course, direct evidence not only for the interconversion of at least the amino group of the amino acids but also for the synthesis of new proteins.

When a small amount of a labeled amino acid is added to the normal diet of an animal (or man) for a short period and the isotope concentration in the proteins investigated, it may be demonstrated that the isotope concentration in the serum proteins is increased. This increasing isotope concentration mirrors a process in which labeled amino acids, either the one fed or others metabolically formed from it, are being incorporated into the serum proteins. In a human experiment, Rittenberg and his associates²⁹ found that even though radioactive glycine (or the carbon tracer derived therefrom) appeared in the serum and other proteins, nitrogen equilibrium existed, indicating that degradation and synthesis proceeded simultaneously. They found also that after cessation of the administration of labeled amino acids to then subject the isotope concentration of the serum proteins promptly began to decline. It was further proved that glycine is utilized for the synthesis of the protoporphyrin of hemoglobin. When labeled glycine was administered to a mammal, the hemin took up N^{15} . This occurred, according to Rittenberg, because

glycine is the specific precursor of hemin. By suitable mathematic treatment it was possible to calculate the rate of destruction of the red cells, as a function of the period elapsed since their production. For example, during the initial period after the labeled glycine was fed, the glycine was employed in the marrow to form labeled heme, which then resulted in labeled red cells. As these cells were released to the circulation the average isotope concentration of the entire circulating mass of red cells increased. After 20 days this process fell to a negligibly small value. For the next 80 days the labeled red cells produced during the first part of the experiment were destroyed, resulting in a decline of the isotope concentration of the total circulating red cell mass.

These examples of the isotopic method have been given in some detail to illustrate the uses to which isotope technic can be put, for it is certain that our knowledge of cellular and tissue metabolism will be greatly extended by further use of these important tools.

ENERGY METABOLISM AT THE CELLULAR LEVEL This brief survey of methods with which one may study nutritional problems should include reference to studies at a cellular level. Obviously, most aspects of nutrition must eventually come down to the cellular level, and important studies are in progress. Since bacteria represent single cells, an analysis of the metabolism of these cells can reveal much concerning fundamental energy processes. The classic works of Lipmann¹⁸ represent a case in point. Utilizing various bacterial organisms as the experiment required, he was able to demonstrate that many of the basic cellular chemical reactions have as their primary components a surprisingly few important chemical linkages. That is, there is increasing evidence that the living organism tends to use a standard type of chemical energy, derived from the phosphate bond. Lipmann points out that if the cell uses a standard energy, then this presupposes a certain uniformity of processing. He further notes that

if one focuses his attention on primary chemical linkages, it is discovered that the linkages in different classes of compounds are quite similar, that as an endlessly repeating process in the building up of cell material one finds the elimination of water between groupings. One of the most common reactants in these condensations through intermolecular dehydration is the carboxyl group. Quite generally, ester and peptide links appear to be formed by way of carboxyl activation. The energy input necessary to perform these linkages as they occur in fat, protein, and elsewhere is very similar, around 3000 cal. Thus, in the field of bio-synthesis one has the rare example of progress leading to simplification.

The studies of Gunsalus⁹ are also pertinent here. Again, bacterial organisms and their metabolism and need for various nutrients were used to study the various compounds. Specifically, Gunsalus used bacterial growth to study vitamin B₁₂. The need of a certain strain of bacteria for a single amino acid in the nutrient medium may be extremely specific. Thus by comparing growth in a standard synthetic medium containing a known amount of the specific amino acid with that in a medium (e.g., urine) containing an unknown amount of the specific amino acid, one can analyze quantitatively for the amount of the specific amino acid contained in the unknown medium.

From analysis of such investigations there emerges a surprisingly consistent picture of the energy mechanism employed by cells for the synthesis of a variety of compounds ranging widely in their complexity. The primary ways of forming the initial energy-containing bonds by reactions coupled to oxidations appear to be relatively limited in number.²¹ Variety and flexibility in synthetic capacity are obtained by the evolution of complex group transport mechanisms which by preserving the bond energy content make possible the reshuffling necessary for variety. The basic building units especially in the formation of carbon skele-

tons, are very simple ones. "In solving the problem of the fabrication of a complex molecule, such as a branched steroid, nature apparently prefers to weave from simple elements rather than stamp them out from more complex precursors."²²

Summary

In concluding this section one may note that there is an enormous range in the types of studies that may be done in evaluating nutritional problems, methods which vary from one so simple as that of determining whether or not a person gains or loses weight on a particular diet, to one which utilizes a pure culture of a particular bacterial organism to study the metabolism of a single amino acid.

Factors That Influence Spontaneous Food Intake

Appetite

Despite the importance of the appetite in patient care, the locus of the appetite remains tantalizingly elusive. Various types of evidence may be cited. (1) Miller and Kessen²³ studied the hunger reducing effects of food by gastric fistula versus food by mouth. They found that animals which received milk by mouth, either immediately or after a delay, learned faster than those which received milk by way of a gastric fistula. The albino male rats used were given enriched milk when they went to the correct side of a simple T maze and isotonic saline when they went to the incorrect side. (2) Janowitz and Grossman¹⁴ found that the average daily volume of food ingested by dogs was not significantly modified by feeding small portions of sucrose solution, cream, casein hydrolysate, alcohol, or bitters 20 minutes before the regular feeding. They also found that bulk rather than caloric content was the factor which diminished further food intake, since the same bulk of cream containing from 73 to 172 per cent of the average daily caloric intake caused approximately the same decrease in food in

take as did a sucrose solution containing only 22 to 26 per cent of the daily caloric intake (These studies notwithstanding, it is certain that appetite is, at least in part, a diffuse metabolic phenomenon and not a function located entirely in the gastrointestinal tract. As seen below, the *hypothalamus* is known to have much to do with the intake of food, as well shown in certain pathologic states) (3) Marked variations in food intake have been described in various species of animals following injury to certain parts of the *hypothalamus*, including an increased food intake produced by lesions in the region of the *ventromedial nucleus*, the hyperphagia induced leads to obesity. Anand and Biörbeck² were able to localize in the *hypothalamus* of rats an area which was intimately associated with appetite. Bilateral destruction of this area led to a complete cessation of eating, but a unilateral lesion had no such effect. Bilateral lesions involving either the *ventromedial nuclei*, or the region between them and the lateral area (but not involving the lateral area), produced hyperphagia and obesity. Bilateral lesions in the other areas of the *hypothalamus* did not produce a change in food intake, with the exception that injury to regions adjacent to the lateral area might induce diminished eating for a few days after operation. If the animal was made obese by medial lesions, eating ceased when the lateral areas were destroyed bilaterally. This lateral area has been called a "feeding center." It may be responsible for the central hunger reaction or the urge to eat, while the *ventromedial nucleus* or some structure in its neighborhood may be capable of exerting an inhibitory control over the "feeding center" through fibers which run laterally to the lateral hypothalamic area. (4) Gastric hunger contractions are rhythmic tonic contractions of the stomach which often reach a tetanic peak. They appear in the newborn at birth and recur after feedings as the stomach empties. They persist after vagotomy, though diminished in intensity, and are augmented by stimuli from the central

nervous system induced by insulin hypoglycemia. After vagotomy and alcohol block of the splanchnic nerves in rats, the hunger drive is maintained but is diminished in strength. Hunger contractions persist in starvation, but the sensations of hunger diminish after the first few days. After total gastrectomy a patient may not feel hunger pangs such as he had normally experienced, but he often will have a lively desire for food and will experience an emptiness in the abdomen. Thus, the absence of these contractions or the blocking of the neural impulses from them does not rob the person of the desire for food, and then presence does not insure that he will experience such a desire. They cannot, therefore, be regarded as an obligatory stimulus for hunger drive. (5) Anencephalic children may accept and swallow sweet solutions but reject sour and bitter ones. The decerebrate pigeon becomes restless and walks about his cage when his crop is empty, but when it is filled he quiets down and remains immobile. These and other studies indicate that the reflex centers concerned in the acquisition of food are subcortical in location.¹⁵ The location of appetite centers in the *hypothalamus* was cited above. (6) "Modifications of the hunger drive are produced by various forms of reflex conditioning in which the cerebrum primarily participates. For the purposes of distinction and analysis of factors involved one may now define appetite as resulting from modification of the behavior of the hypothalamic hunger drive by cerebral activity."¹⁵ Training and table etiquette and the social amenities of life under the guidance of parents are largely responsible for softening this aspect of hunger in children. "Psychiatrists have taught that the hypothalamic biochemical definition of food has been extended widely by the cerebrum. They point out that the nursing of a child is a complete ritualistic ceremony. The fondling, petting, and singing of lullabies by the mother comes to be food as realistically as the milk which trickles into the child's throat. The child's tension for food cannot

be relieved by breast milk alone. The tension for emotional gratification will remain unsatisfied."¹³

From these different types of evidence regarding the physiology of appetite, it is apparent that systematic knowledge of the factors governing food (and water) intake is difficult to obtain because of interlacing psychogenic, pathologic, and physiologic factors.

Thirst¹

The origin of the sensation of thirst is also far from settled. Yet, here again, much has been learned. (1) The dog with a complete esophageal fistula derives much relief from his thirst by drinking even though the water is lost to the outside through the fistula. (2) The burro will, upon reaching water, drink at once a volume of water almost precisely equal to his water deficit. (3) The patient in shock often complains bitterly of thirst. (4) Subjects depleted of water experience marked thirst whereas those depleted of salt do not. Holmes and Gregerreen¹¹ produced thirst by the intravenous injection of hypertonic solution. This suggested that the sensation may arise, at least in part, from an increased osmolarity of body fluids, and other evidence has indicated that the hypertonic solution stimulates central osmoreceptors. Finally, Anderson and McCann² stimulated the hypothalamic regions of goats directly with small amounts of hypertonic saline solution (and on other occasions with electrodes) and with movies recorded most convincingly the enormous volume of water which repeated hypothalamic stimulation can force the animal to drink. Habit too is an important stimulus for water intake.

Functions of Dietary Components in Metabolism

Protein

The primary function of protein foods is to supply the amino acids needed for the growth, repair, and general maintenance of

the structural and catalytic machinery of living cells."¹⁴ Therefore, inasmuch as calories are available in the form of carbohydrate and fat—and some calories are normally derived from protein as well—the primary function of ingested protein is to provide the building stones for the lean tissues of the body. Most past studies of protein metabolism have been based upon the nitrogen balance, the factor of 0.25 being used, that is, by multiplying the grams of nitrogen excreted in the urine each day by 0.25, one arrives at a useful approximation of the amount of protein which was metabolized to provide that amount of nitrogen. Similarly, of course, by dividing the actual weight of protein ingested by 6.25 one derives a useful approximation for the amount of nitrogen contained in the diet during the period of consideration—though in balance studies it is advisable actually to homogenize an aliquot of each day's diet and analyze chemically for nitrogen content. Also, an estimate of protein catabolism can be gained by measuring potassium excretion, since the ratio of nitrogen to potassium is approximately 10:1.

Body protein equilibrium, as reflected in the nitrogen balance, can be maintained by a high protein level and a lowered level of caloric intake in the form of carbohydrate and fat. Or, one can markedly lower the protein intake, and, if the caloric intake remains unchanged, the body will eventually achieve a new nitrogen balance. Or, it may be possible to maintain a nitrogen balance at the original high level, following reduction of the protein intake, if the caloric intake in the form of fat and carbohydrate is sufficiently increased. However, regardless of the caloric intake, the protein in the diet cannot be reduced below a critical level, otherwise negative nitrogen balance ensues—for a certain critical level of protein intake is required to maintain the structure of the body cells and, if less protein is supplied, the tissues of the body will be catabolized. The minimal daily protein requirement for an adult living quietly in bed is

DAILY NITROGEN BALANCES

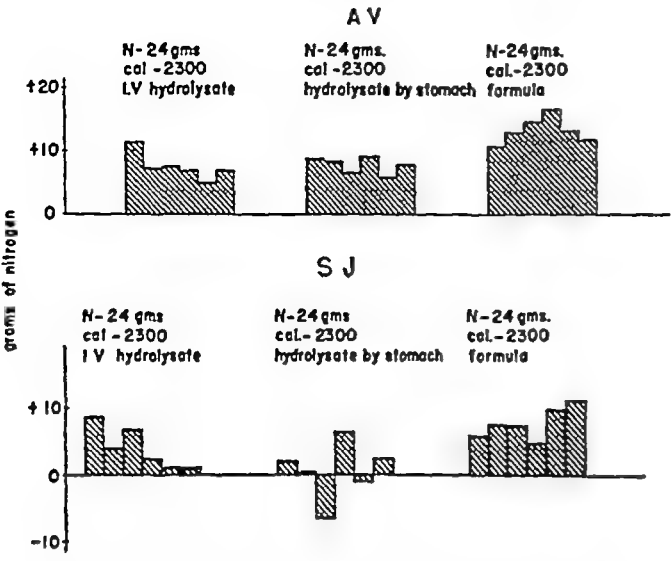


Fig. 31 Two questions are examined First, it is seen that the protein hydrolysate-glucose-alcohol solution was about as effective by vein as by mouth in both patients by vein more nitrogen was lost in the urine, and by mouth more nitrogen was lost in the stools Second, it is clearly apparent that the isocaloric, isonitrogenous whole food mixture was definitely more effective in achieving a positive nitrogen balance than was the protein hydrolysate mixture (From LOVELACE, J R, AND HARDY, J D Surgical nutrition I Intravenous vs oral route, nitrogen balance, a preliminary report Surgical Forum, 5: 439, 1955)

from approximately 1 to 1.5 gm of protein per kg of body weight—at a caloric intake of from 25 to 30 cal per kg of body weight Even so, these figures represent basal requirements and must be revised sharply upward in the presence of fever, hyperthyroidism, unusual protein losses from wounds, after operation, and in other circumstances

RELATION OF AMINO ACID CONTENT TO FOOD VALUE OF PROTEIN The food value of a particular protein depends upon its amino acid composition The amino acids of most animal proteins are in proper balance for optimal nutritional effect in human beings, whereas plant proteins frequently provide a spectrum of amino acid composition and concentration which may not be optimal for human nutrition The fate and usefulness of various amino acids in the body have been examined by means of balance studies and by amino acids labeled with N^{15} or C^{14} Schoenheimer,²⁵ using N^{15} -labeled amino

acids, showed that the rate of protein breakdown and subsequent resynthesis *in vivo* was far more rapid than had been supposed by previous workers Geiger,⁸ among others, showed that the process of protein synthesis requires that the amino acids necessary to form the protein molecule be present simultaneously There is no mechanism thus far known whereby amino acids may be stored either individually or in polypeptide aggregates, as certain vitamins, fat, and carbohydrate (glycogen) can be stored Incomplete but supplementary mixtures of amino acids or proteins may fail to give nitrogen retention when separated from one another by a few hours, but do so when fed simultaneously

AMINO ACIDS VERSUS WHOLE PROTEINS IN HUMAN NUTRITION Satisfactory protein nutrition and nitrogen balance are achieved more readily by feeding whole proteins than by feeding amino acid mixtures of equivalent nitrogen content (Fig 31)

Fats

Fats have at least two main functions first, that of fuel reserves which are variable in amounts and, second, as an integral and constant part of the structure of living tissues For a long while it was considered that the fat of the body was relatively inert and that changes in its composition were very slow Yet, farmers had known for many years that the type of fat an animal deposited could be influenced by the diet he was fed In 1939, Schoenheimer and Rittenberg,²⁶ using isotopic methods, demonstrated conclusively that there was a constant turnover of fatty acids in the body, a process far more rapid than previously believed Since that time many studies of this type have confirmed the knowledge that the apparent constancy of the quantity of fat in the normal adult mammal results not from a chemical inertia of the fat deposits but rather from the nice balance which exists between the processes leading to the deposition of fat and the processes leading to its mobilization, utilization, and excretion In

this connection, while the fatty acid composition of the fat deposited by farm animals can be altered by selective feeding, if permitted a wide dietary choice the animals will select those foods which form fat characteristic of the species.

The forces which mobilize fat from the depots and cause it to be transported to the liver, and the factors which increase the rate of turnover of fat in the liver with resulting storage in the depots, are incompletely understood. The fatty condition of the liver seen in starvation stress may be due in part to the action of a factor derived from the anterior pituitary and endowed with the specific capacity of accelerating the mobilization of depot fat⁶ (Fig. 73). The term *adipokinin* was suggested for this substance by Weil and Stetten²⁰ who found that it was excreted in the urine.

FAT SYNTHESIS IN THE BODY. The body can synthesize fat from other building stones such as carbohydrate. For instance Brady and Gurn⁷ showed that cell free preparations of pigeon liver synthesize fatty acids from labeled acetate. To cite another example of this type of study and the complexity of metabolic processes it was found that, in liver slices, lipogenesis from C¹⁴ acetate was strikingly reduced by previous fasting or by a calorie restriction in the diet of the animals. Refeeding after fasting or even a single administration of glucose enhanced fatty acid synthesis to a level higher than that found in the tissue of animals on ordinary diets.

FAT CONTENT AND DIET PALATABILITY. Whereas formerly many diets especially those for patients with liver disease contained little or almost no fat, it is now considered desirable to give at least enough fat to make it reasonably palatable and attractive to the patient otherwise the accompanying protein and carbohydrate calories will not be ingested and the entire objective of the diet defeated. Moreover there is evidence that a certain quantity of fat is required for normal growth. When certain unsaturated fatty acids are absent from the

diet, animals may exhibit a marked retardation in growth and will develop skin lesions, histologic changes in many tissues, increased basal metabolic rates, and high water consumption, and even death may ensue. Linoleic acid, of plant origin, and arachidonic acid, of animal origin, can prevent or cure these lesions.²²

Carbohydrates

The third major foodstuff, carbohydrate, has as its principal function that of supplying calories. Yet in discussing it as a third separate foodstuff, one cannot but agree with Weinhouse²¹ that 'it is now recognized that the traditional division of metabolism into carbohydrate, lipid etc., is no longer entirely appropriate to modern biochemistry. Not only have the broad fields become enlarged but they lose their identity at the intermediary stages with the formation of common metabolites.'

As was stated above with regard to the formation of lipids from labeled acetate by the liver, it is now appreciated that the acetyl group represents the focal point for numerous dissimilative and synthetic processes. The progress of recent years in our understanding of how the major metabolic fuels glucose and fatty acid both yield this active intermediate has underscored the close metabolic interrelationships which exist between carbohydrate and fat. Thus, fatty acids may be formed from carbohydrate, and carbohydrate from fatty acids. Certain hormonal influences are shown in Figure 32.

✓ CALORIC EQUIVALENTS. In contrast to the approximately 4 cal which are derived from 1 gm. of protein or 1 gm. of carbohydrate, fat makes available approximately 9 cal per gm. Absolute alcohol provides approximately 7 cal. per gm. or 6 cal. per ml.

Further Interrelationships Between Fat and Protein Metabolism

There is evidence that fats may have a specific regulatory effect on protein metabolism, this being over and above the protein

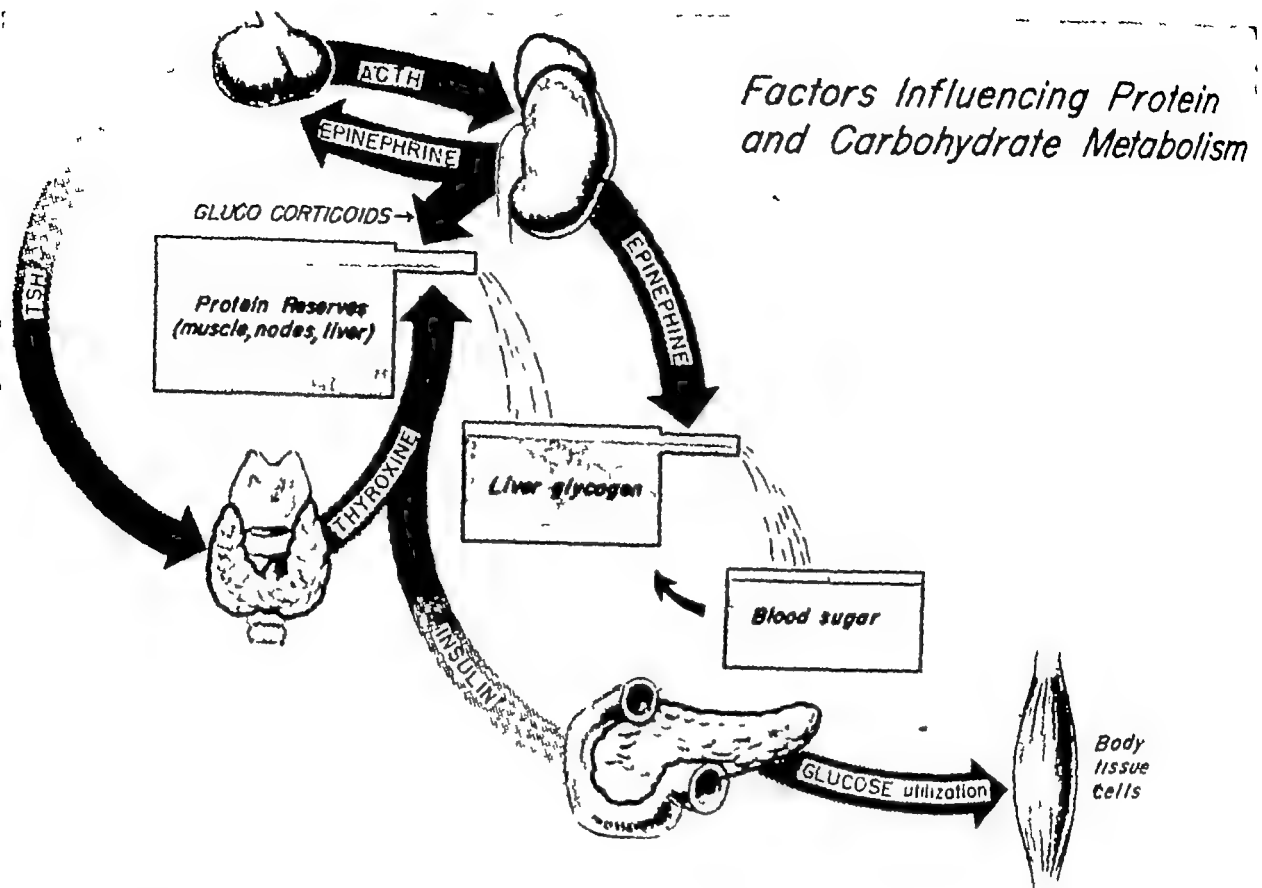


Fig 32 Glucose is the fuel which is most quickly required in stress. It is derived largely from liver glycogen, glycogen, in turn, can be formed from glucose or from protein by gluconeogenesis (From HARDY, J D *Surgery and the Endocrine System* Philadelphia, W B Saunders Company, 1952)

sparing effect of the calories afforded by fat¹³ It was found in animals and human beings that when fat constituted 30 per cent of the ration there was a decrease in the excretion of urinary nitrogen as compared with isocaloric rations containing 10 per cent and 20 per cent fat. This was considered an indication that the nitrogen-sparing effect of fat was due, in part, to the higher fat content *per se*. Moreover, animals consuming a low fat diet have been shown to excrete significantly larger quantities of certain amino acids in both the feces and the urine than animals eating a ration higher in fat.²²

✓ CALORIC REQUIREMENTS—ADDITIONAL COMMENT As noted previously, the daily caloric requirement for the nonobese adult is from 25 to 30 cal per kg of body weight. While the body can adapt to caloric restriction to some extent, after prolonged starvation or semistarvation the basal metabolic rate may decrease by 50 per cent, of this about two-thirds is due to shrinkage of the metaboliz-

ing mass of tissue and about one-third to a decrease in the intensity of the metabolism. Nor is this reduction in energy expenditure explained by a reduced tissue temperature. During starvation, complete or partial, there is a differential metabolic destruction of special tissues: the brain, skeleton, and serum proteins remain fairly well intact for long periods, whereas fat, muscle, liver, and subcutaneous tissues undergo large losses. The heart weight also decreases proportionately, but of course cardiac work is reduced during the period of deprivation.

THE HAZARDS OF RE-ALIMENTATION The re-alimentation of semistarved individuals presents certain problems which are of much clinical importance. In brief, refeeding must be initiated gradually, lest diarrhea or even death occur. This was forcefully impressed upon us when two patients, a man and a woman, in their eighties were admitted in a semistarved state. Each had had for years a cervical esophageal diverticulum which rendered eating difficult, and during the

weeks immediately preceding hospitalization neither had consumed even a bare maintenance intake. Each lived alone in a rooming house and thus, since it was difficult to eat under the best of circumstances, both were in a state of advanced starvation. They were placed on a high caloric, high protein intake by means of a tube introduced at esophagoscopy. The woman, however, developed diarrhea, and balance studies revealed that she retained only a small portion of the tube-fed calories and protein, the rest being lost in the stools. She improved slowly; the diverticulum was repaired under local anesthesia and she regained health. The man, on the other hand, retained all the diet and died suddenly, approximately two days after the feeding had been started. Autopsy revealed the effects of starvation but no particularly obvious probable cause of death. Unknown to us at the time, there are a number of reports in the literature that vigorous refeeding of the starved subject not infrequently results in sudden death, presumably because the increased metabolic requirements imposed by the suddenly massive nutritional intake are more than the atrophic heart can bear, sudden heart failure being precipitated. Therefore it is advisable to begin re-alimentation with adequate protein but without an overabundance of calories. Incidentally, the systolic blood pressure of each of the two patients described above was usually in the eighties but this clearly did not represent "shock" in these subjects.

Some Additional Factors in Nutritional Metabolism

So broad is the physiology of nutritional metabolism that certain aspects are discussed in several chapters of this volume. In particular the effect of trauma upon the metabolism of protein, fats, carbohydrates and electrolytes was discussed in Chapter I.

NONDIETARY FACTORS AFFECTING METABOLISM. Less food is required in warm climates than in cold climates; troops stationed in the Arctic regions require up to 5000 cal. or

more per day, depending upon their activity.²² Age is also a factor, greater requirements being present during growth than after the person has reached adult stature. As someone has remarked, children are in positive balance for almost everything except noise, the growth of children is similar to the gain in tissue which follows the wasting produced by a serious operation or other prolonged illness. Sex is also a factor in nutritional requirements, for women often require fewer calories per unit of body weight than men, this may be a reflection of the relatively greater fat content of women. The National Research Council recommends an average allowance of 60 gm. of protein per day for women as contrasted to 70 gm. of protein per day for men.²³

As has been seen, injury and disease increase nutritional requirements, as do pregnancy and lactation. Moreover, nutritional requirements are altered under circumstances of psychological stress, which include fatigue, tension and lack of sleep and climatic stresses. It has been noted elsewhere in this volume that diabetic ketosis and acidosis can be precipitated in well controlled diabetics with no change in their routine except the superimposition of severe emotional crisis. This unquestionably reflects hormonal alterations.

SURVEY OF ENDOCRINE INFLUENCES. In brief, the anterior pituitary influences nutrition through elaboration of the growth hormone, adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH), thyroid stimulating hormone (TSH), lactogenic hormone, and gonadotropins, with their manifold metabolic effects. The growth hormone increases the need for amino acid building blocks by stimulating the growth of tissue. Thus, growth hormone is apparently a protein anabolic factor which produces nitrogen retention. Purified growth hormones have also been found to have a nitrogen sparing effect accompanied in the fasting animal by an acceleration of fat metabolism.²⁴ It is well known that hypophysectomy causes profound alterations in the nutritional status of the individual. Tes-

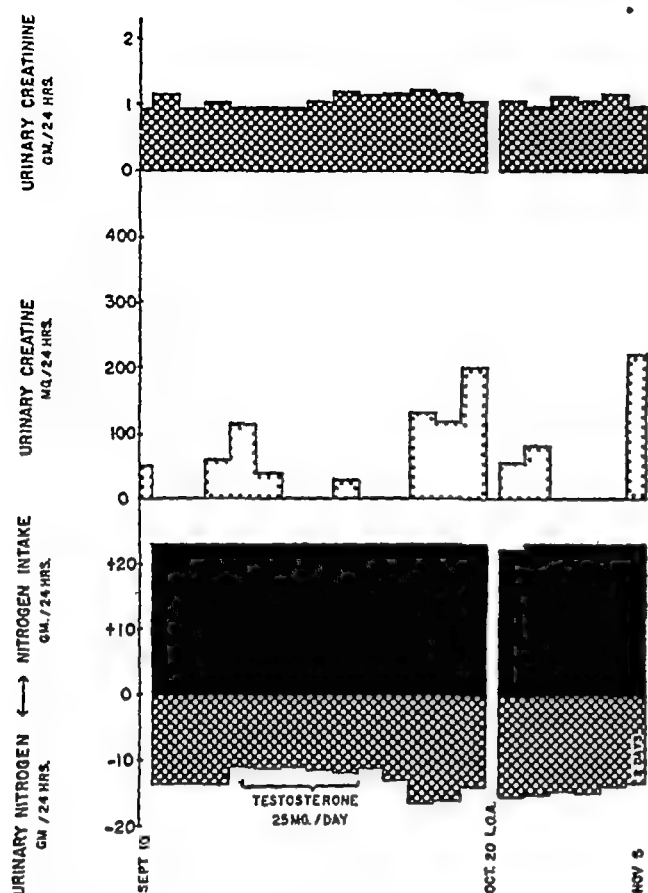


Fig 33 Effect of testosterone on nitrogen excretion. This 23-year-old woman was placed on a constant caloric and nitrogenous intake for 10 days, and then testosterone was administered for 15 days. During the period of hormonal therapy there was a definite increase in nitrogen retention, but this was reversed when testosterone was stopped (HARDY, J D. Unpublished data.)

testosterone produces nitrogen retention (Fig 33)

Special Nutritional Problems in Surgery

General Comment

The particular circumstance which often sets surgical patients apart from most other patients is the fact that operations upon the gastrointestinal tract preclude oral intake. Not only may the patient come to operation in a much less than optimal nutritional condition, but it may be some time following the operation before he can eat—and intravenous nutrition is a poor substitute for oral nutrition.

An additional cause of nutritional deficit is that which we often refer as "hospital starvation." By this is meant the scheduling of preoperative studies—in particular roent-

genograms involving the gallbladder, stomach, and colon—on consecutive days with the purpose of getting the planned studies completed in the shortest possible time. The preparation and the studies themselves may so interfere with food intake that the patient loses weight even preoperatively. Even a well person would be weakened by missing most of his meals for several days, and this surely represents poor preoperative preparation for the patient.

It is difficult to obtain objective data to support the view that hyperalimentation of the well nourished individual preceding operation, or the maintenance of positive nitrogen balance in the immediate postoperative period by massive tube feeding or intravenous therapy, improves surgical results. Nevertheless, no one would seriously question the fact that a starved subject represents a less favorable operative risk than the well nourished subject. In brief, we now feel that probably little is accomplished by producing a positive nitrogen balance during the first 72 hours postoperatively. However, the less optimal the preoperative nutritional status of the individual, the more aggressively do we administer nutritive materials postoperatively.

NUTRITIONAL STUDIES IN POSTOPERATIVE PATIENTS. Numerous careful studies of the nitrogenous and caloric intake required to produce positive nitrogen balance following major operations have been reported. In general, contrary to the older belief that positive nitrogen balance could not be produced in the immediate postoperative period, the various studies have, in many cases, demonstrated that a positive nitrogen balance can be achieved postoperatively provided that enough calories (even from 5000 to 6000) and large amounts of protein (from 2 to 3 gm per kg) are provided. It must be understood that while positive balance is achieved, a tremendous loss of nitrogen in the urine occurs under these circumstances, partly due to the increased intake and partly due to the catabolic effect of the operation. Again, there is no convincing evidence that

hyperalbuminemia in these patients during the first four days postoperatively provides any truly beneficial effect. It has been documented that postoperative nutritional alterations involve not only protein wastage with nitrogen excretion, but also a decreased carbohydrate tolerance (increased insulin resistance), and the combustion of considerable amounts of fat. A number of pertinent factors are shown in Table 3.

Nutrition Following Gastric Resection

The nutritional complications which may follow gastric resection have appropriately been reviewed in some detail in connection with the physiology of the stomach. Nevertheless, it is of value to mention here that the nutritional difficulties which follow high or total gastric resection are, along with the problems attending the management of a small bowel fistula perhaps among the most difficult with which the surgeon must deal. There is now a trend away from extremely radical gastric resections for benign duodenal and gastric ulcers, to a less radical procedure in which less of the stomach is removed, perhaps in combination with vagotomy. Furthermore, it appears that nutrition may be more readily maintained following the Billroth I or the vagotomy gastrectomy procedure than following a Billroth II procedure.

In general, the difficulties in maintaining weight and nutrition in patients who have had a high gastric resection are largely due to excessive "dumping" or to the fear that the symptoms of dumping will occur if the patient eats, or to too rapid transit of the food materials through the small bowel (essentially a variant of the dumping syndrome)—and not necessarily to defective small bowel absorption *per se*. Yet, a number of studies appear to show that when the food is made to pass through the duodenum and presumably is mixed with the digestive juices in the usual way as occurs after the Billroth I procedure, weight is more readily maintained than after the Billroth II operation. This advantage is often due

TABLE 3 SOME FACTORS THAT INFLUENCE NUTRITIONAL REQUIREMENTS AND SUCCESS

- ✓1 Previous nutritional condition
- ✓2 Age
- ✓3 Sex
- ✓4 Trauma
- ✓5 Infection
- ✓6 Exercise
- ✓7 Metabolic rate
- ✓8 Presence of excessive losses (suppuration fistula diarrhea)
- ✓9 Composition and balance of food intake
- ✓10 Malignant tumors
- ✓11 Hormonal imbalance as in Cushing's syndrome or diabetes mellitus

to a decreased loss of fat and calories in the stool, so that the absorptive factor *per se* cannot be disregarded as a cause of weight loss following gastric resection.

Routes and Materials for Therapeutic Alimentation

ORAL. There can be no question whatever that whole food introduced by the oral route is more beneficial to the patient than the split products that can be administered intravenously. A gastrostomy is superior to a jejunostomy for feeding purposes, but both are less effective than the oral route. Moreover, even when food is introduced by the oral route the nutritional effect of whole protein appears to be better than that achieved by the administration of split protein products (Fig. 31). Why, one might ask, is it necessary to consider the oral route at all since, presumably, if it is available the patient could and should eat of his own accord?

To begin with, the patient may be in a condition which were he to be allowed to eat unlimited quantities of food, might result in severe metabolic difficulties, particularly if he has previously been starved for some time. Second, while the oral route may be available the patient may not desire to consume the food as in patients with anorexia nervosa and in numerous other conditions. Similar though less profound psychological deterrents to adequate nutritional

intake are found among many preoperative and postoperative surgical patients In such subjects it may become desirable to pass a small polyethylene nasogastric tube for liquid alimentation If the high caloric feeding mixture is too thick, gravity alone may not be adequate and some type of pump must be used to avoid plugging of the small tube

Or, the patient may wish to eat but is prevented from doing so by an esophageal carcinoma or diverticulum In such a situation it is, again, a common practice in our clinic to use esophagoscopy and, if possible,, to pass a small tube into the stomach for

feeding purposes. Much nutritional provement can often be achieved preopatively in the patient with carcinoma of esophagus, since the wasting which he hibits may have resulted more from an ability to take in food than to the pecu inability of the cancer patient to utilize gested food in the more advanced stage his disease

There has been an increasing tendency utilize oral fat emulsions to provide ab dant calories, as fat provides approximat 9 cal per gm However, the oral fat prepa tions on the market (e g , Lipomul, Upjo are usually diluted and may provide c approximately 4 cal per ml Moreover, th is a limit to the number of fat calories wh can be tolerated by the individual, a co mon upper limit being in the neighborh of 2200 cal per day for fat administe orally, if greater than this amount is gi gastrointestinal symptoms may develop

Caloric values of common foodstuffs given in Tables 4 and 5

TABLE 4 INTRAVENOUS ALIMENTATION

A Caloric values of foodstuffs	
Carbohydrate (CHO) (glucose, fructose)	4 cal /gm
Protein (or protein hydrolysate)	4 cal /gm
Fat	9 cal /gm
Alcohol	7 cal /gm
B Daily requirements (minimal)	
Calories	25/kg body weight
Protein	1.5 gm /kg body weight
C Add vitamins, especially C	
D Intravenous feeding	
1000 cc 5% glucose (50 gm CHO)	200 cal
1000 cc 10% glucose (100 gm CHO)	400 cal
1000 cc protein hydrolysate-glucose mixture (5% each)	400 cal
70 grams of alcohol (7 cal / gm)	490 cal

In general, only 1 L. of fluid containing alcohol and 2 containing protein hydrolysate are well tolerated over one 24-hour period

TABLE 5 ADVERSE EFFECTS OF OBESITY SURGICAL PATIENTS

- 1 Pulmonary ventilation is hampered by ward displacement of diaphragm
- 2 Inhalation anesthetic agents are usually sorbed in greater amounts
- 3 Cardiovascular reserve is often impaired hypertension is more frequent
- 4 Liver functional reserve is impaired by fat infiltration
- 5 Diabetes is more common, to complicate c valescence
- 6 The exposure at operation is more diffic (the fat in the omentum and mesentery n be as voluminous as that in the abdomi wall)
- 7 Poor water and blood flow through the fat the abdominal wall reduces the inflow leukocytes, antibodies, and antibiotics, tl plus a marked tendency to necrosis of fragile fat cells, results in an increased incidence of wound infection and wound disrtion
- 8 It is more difficult to estimate drug and fl requirements safely on a weight basis (p 29) when the patient is fat

A formula which is useful for oral tube feeding is as follows

Homogenized milk	500 ml
Geval Protein (Lederle)	175 gm
Carlose (glucose)	300 gm.
Kilm (powdered whole milk)	75 gm.
Raw egg	4
Water to bring to total volume of	1000 ml.

This formula provides about 21 gm. of nitrogen (130 gm of protein) per L. and is low in fat. With this preparation it has been possible to give an occasional patient up to 6000 cal. per day. Diarrhea, the most troublesome complication of tube feeding, can usually be successfully managed by introducing the feeding into the stomach at a slow rate (1-19 ml per minute). Yet, at a slow rate it is necessary, as noted above, to use some form of mechanical feeding pump to prevent plugging of the tube by the thick formula. With this formula it has been necessary in some patients to include with each feeding 100 mg of Banthine and variable amounts of paregoric during the first 48 to 72 hrs to inhibit intestinal motility. After the first two or three days it has usually been feasible to discontinue these agents and no further diarrhea has resulted. In patients whose physiologic state can tolerate the high caloric high protein diet provided in this mixture it may be possible to increase the patient's weight by as much as 1 lb per day for several weeks. Total body water measurements combined with nitrogen balance studies will indicate the water content and often the type of the tissue being laid down. The prompt improvement in the patient's psychologic outlook following a period of hyperalimentation by tube feeding is frequently most gratifying emphasizing the close relationship which exists between nutritional adequacy and mood.

GASTROSTOMY FEEDING While the use of the polyethylene tube may render preoperative gastrostomy unnecessary there are many circumstances under which diseases of the esophagus or mouth preclude oral tube

feeding and a gastrostomy must be done. In general, the simple and easily performed Stamm gastrostomy is about as satisfactory as the other more complicated procedures. Too, it is readily taken down in the event one wishes to pull the stomach into the chest to be anastomosed to the esophagus, or when the gastrostomy is no longer needed.

Skimmed milk may be used as a basic ingredient of many gastrostomy formulas, other materials being added gradually as tolerated.

Whole foods may be homogenized with a Waring blender or other means and fed through the nasogastric tube.

JEJUNOSTOMY FEEDING We have not had a large experience with jejunostomy, but we do not hesitate to use it when it appears to be the only means available for maintaining life. Nevertheless, the experience that we have had with this route of feeding patients has been one of rather limited success. For one thing it has usually been employed only after the patient was in the most dire nutritional circumstances. Second, occasional complications due to the technique itself have occurred. In one patient, the #16 French rubber catheter (introduced approximately 3 in. into the distal jejunal loop and Witzelized in) impinged on the wall of the bowel when postoperative inflammatory adhesions produced a sharp kink in the loop, and eventually the tube eroded through in to the free peritoneal cavity with fatal peritonitis.

In contrast, Zollinger and his associates,²² who have had a relatively large experience with jejunostomy performed often under optimal conditions reported that in approximately one-half their cases the jejunostomies were considered to have been definitely worthwhile. They felt that the general condition of the "successful" patient was definitely improved, and that in some cases the jejunostomy feeding had been life-saving.

The incidence of gastrointestinal complications—nausea, vomiting or diarrhea—is considerably greater in patients fed by je

junostomy than in those fed by gastrostomy or by the oral route. Moreover, with jejunostomy the material must be introduced at a much slower rate (keeping the patient immobilized while the material drips in) if loose stools are not to result. Consequently, it is more difficult to achieve a satisfactory nutritional intake with jejunostomy than with gastrostomy. Again, skimmed or homogenized milk is a useful basic ingredient to use in the formula, supplemented progressively with other materials. There has been little difference in the incidence of diarrhea with homogenized as compared with skimmed milk. Zollinger and Ellison³⁴ employ homogenized milk, which contains approximately 700 cal and 35 gm of protein per L. They find that most patients will take as much as 2400 ml per day, and in this way 84 gm of protein and 1680 calories are provided.

INTRAVENOUS ALIMENTATION In the overwhelming majority of patients who cannot eat, the intravenous route is employed, at least temporarily, in achieving what nutritional intake can be given by this means. Intravenous alimentation is conveniently used for relatively short periods of time, and it usually is sufficient to tide the patient over the immediate preoperative or postoperative emergency. Moreover, at this writing a woman has just been discharged, cured of her gastric fistula after four months of almost constant intravenous alimentation. To re-emphasize, though, for caloric maintenance over prolonged periods the oral route is by any comparison the best, gastrostomy next, jejunostomy perhaps next and the intravenous route last.

During recent years it has become possible to give greater amounts of calories by vein than had previously been possible. In addition to the use of hypertonic solutions of *glucose*, *alcohol* (6 to 7 cal per ml), and *fructose* (4 calories per gm.), *intravenous fat mixtures* have quickened interest in the feasibility of truly adequate parenteral alimentation. In our clinic intravenous fat is now rather frequently used in debilitated

patients, with beneficial effect and relatively few reactions. Since fat contains 9 cal per gm, a fat mixture, even if diluted as it must be for intravenous infusion, still offers a means of introducing a considerable number of calories. As stated, fat has usually been given in approximately 15 per cent concentration, which affords approximately 900 cal per L. Massive amounts are unsafe.

Finally, *protein hydrolysates* have been widely used for a number of years to provide nitrogenous intake. However, our own results, as well as the studies of many others, have demonstrated that amino acid mixtures are nutritionally inferior to whole protein mixtures.

The usual liter of amino acid or protein hydrolysate contains from 40 to 50 gm of split protein products in a 5 per cent (50 gm) glucose solution. By increasing the glucose solution to 10 per cent, an additional 200 cal can be made available (200 from the 50 gm of protein products, and 400 from the 10 per cent glucose). If to this solution one adds 70 ml of absolute alcohol, allowing some loss for the necessity of removing a portion of the fluid in the bottle to permit the introduction of the alcohol, he then provides in this liter of fluid an additional 490 cal. Thus, by the administration of 1 L of protein hydrolysate solution in 10 per cent glucose and 70 ml of absolute alcohol, one can theoretically provide the patient with approximately 1000 cal and 50 gm of split protein products. The administration of 2 L of this solution during the 24-hr period affords an intake of 100 gm of protein products and approximately 2000 cal. Nevertheless, these values are all approximate, and upon chemical analysis one will find that the stated constituents of protein hydrolysate preparations vary between brands and even in the product from the same company at different times. Therefore, if one wishes to do accurate nitrogen balance studies using intravenous protein hydrolysate solutions, he is obliged to run a nitrogen analysis on each liter of fluid infused to achieve valid studies. Moreover

it might be mentioned here that the electrolyte content also varies considerably. The usual protein hydrolysate solution is low in sodium and low in potassium, but since some companies employ an alkali for hydrolysis, the solution may contain a disproportionate amount of sodium as compared with fixed anions such as chloride.

REFERENCES

- 1 ADOLPH E F. Water metabolism. *Ann Rev Physiol* 9: 381 1947
- 2 AYAND H K., AND BABCOCK J R. Hypothalamic control of food intake in rats and cats. *Yale J Biol & Med.*, 24: 123 1931
- 3 ANDERSON B. AND MCCANN S M. Polydipsia evoked by hypothalamic stimulation in the goat. *Kungl. Veterinärhögskolan Stockholm Sweden (Phycol)* Motion picture 40th Ann Meeting April 16-20 1936
- 4 BALDWIN E. *Dynamic Aspects of Biochemistry*. New York The Macmillan Company 1947
- 5 BAXTER-JELLS, S., AND GOSH N C. Relation of scurvy to glucose tolerance test, liver glycogen and insulin content of pancreas of guinea pigs. *J Biol Chem* 168: 207 1947
- 6 BEST C H., AND CAMPBELL, J. Anterior pituitary extracts and liver fat. *J Physiol.* 86: 190 1936
- 7 BEATTY R O. AND GURRY S. Biosynthesis of radioactive long chain fatty acids by homogenized pigeon liver. *Fed. Proc.*, 11: 190 1952
- 8 GEIGER E. Experiments with delayed supplementation of incomplete amino acid mixtures. *J Nutrition* 34: 97 1947
- 9 GUNVALUER I C. Comparative metabolism bacterial nutrition and metabolic function. *Harvey Lect.*, 45: 40 1949-50
- 10 HOGAN A C. Nutrition. *Ann Rev Biochem* 22: 209 1953
- 11 HOLMES J H. AND GREGERSEN M I. Role of sodium and chloride in thirst. *Am J Physiol* 162: 336 1950
- 12 HOLT L E JR. ALBANESE A A. BRUMBACK, J E JR., KANDI C N. AND WANDERER D M. Nitrogen balance in experimental tryptophane deficiency in man. *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 48: 726 1941
- 13 HOOVER, C., AND SWANSON P. Role of fat in protein metabolism. *Fed. Proc* 9: 362 1950
- 14 JAKOWITZ, H. D., AND GROSSEMAN M I. Effect of prefeeding, alcohol and bitter on food intake of dogs. *Am J Physiol* 164: 182 1951.
- 15 KETZOV R. W. Nutrition and appetite training during illness. *J A M A* 151: 253 1953
- 16 KEYS A. BROOKS, J. HENSCHEL, A. MICKELSON O., AND TAYLOR, H L. *The Biology of Human Starvation* Vols 1 and 2 Minneapolis, The University of Minnesota Press, 1950
- 17 KINNEY J M., HAMMOND W G., ANDERSON W B. AND MILLER, E V. Efficiency of utilization of oral foodstuffs studied by carbon dioxide production. *Surgical Forum* 7: 114 1957
- 18 LERMAN F. Biosynthetic mechanisms. *Harvey Lect.*, 44: 99 1948-1949
- 19 MATER J., BATES M W., AND VAN HALLIE, T B. Blood sugar and food intake in rats with lesions of the anterior hypothalamus. *Metabolism* 1: 310 1952
- 20 MILLER N F., AND KESSEN M L. Reward effects of food via stomach fistula compared with those of food via mouth. *J Comp & Physiol. Psychol* 45: 555 1952
- 21 PERLOFF W H., LASCHE, E M., NOBINE J H., SCHNEIDER N G. AND VIELLEARD C B. The starvation state and functional hypopituitarism. *J A M A.*, 155: 1807 1954
- 22 POLLACK, H. AND HALPERN S L. *Therapeutic nutrition*. Publication 231 Washington National Research Council 1952
- 23 RITTENBERG D. Dynamic aspects of the metabolism of amino acids. *Harvey Lect.*, 44: 200 1948-1949
- 24 RUSSELL, W C. TAYLOR M W., AND RUSSELL, I W. Effects of tryptophane depletion and repletion on enzyme activities of tissues of chick. *Fed. Proc.*, 9: 368 1950
- 25 SCHÖENHEIMER L. *The Dynamic State of Body Constituents*. Cambridge Mass. Harvard University Press, 1946
- 26 SCHÖENHEIMER R., AND RITTENBERG D. The study of intermediary metabolism of animals with the aid of isotopes. *Physiol Rev.* 20: 218 1940
- 27 SPIEGELMAN S., AND SUMMNER M. Energy metabolism of biosynthesis at the cellular level. *Ann Rev of Physiol* 14: 97 1952
- 28 SZEDO C M. AND WHITE, A. The influence of growth hormone on fasting metabolism. *Endocrinology* 44: 180 1949
- 29 WAILL, P N. Diet and curthous of the liver. *Arch Pathol* 47: 119 1949
- 30 WEIL, R., AND STETTIN D, JR. The urinary excretion of a fat-mobilizing agent. *J Biol Chem.*, 168: 129 1947
- 31 WEINHOUSE, S. Carbohydrate metabolism. *Ann Rev of Biochem.* 23: 125 1954
- 32 WHIPPLE, G H. AND MADSEN S C. Hemoglobin, plasma and cell protein—their interchange and construction in emergencies. *Medicine* 23: 215 1944
- 33 ZOLLINGER R M., AND ELLISON E H. Nutrition after gastric operations. *J A M A* 154: 811 1954
- 34 ZOLLINGER R M. AND ELLISON E H. Nutrition in surgical patients. *GP* 2: 37 1950

Chapter 4

The Physiology of Connective Tissue, Wound Healing, and Homotransplantation of Tissues

Physiology of Loose Areolar Connective Tissue: A Few Notes

Since wound healing consists in such a large measure of repair by means of connective tissue, it is pertinent to examine certain aspects of the physiology of such tissue. The review by Ragan³⁵ has been drawn upon freely in the following discussion.

The main *functions* of loose areolar connective tissue are: (1) support, (2) transport, (3) storage, (4) repair (healing), and (5) protection (antibody formation). Another possible function which has been ascribed to this tissue is that of assisting in the regulation of salt and water metabolism, but this remains to be proved.

The three major *components* of connective tissue are the *amorphous ground substance*, *fibrillar elements* (reticulum, collagen, and elastic fibers), and *cells* (fibroblasts).

Connective tissue is developed from embryonal mesenchyme. It is generally accepted that in the development from embryonal to adult tissue the macrophages, mast cells, fibroblasts and endothelial cells (which evolve into capillaries and larger vessels) are derived from stellate mesenchymal cells. Ground substance is believed to be derived during embryonal development from the embryonal syncytium.

Ground Substance

In adult tissue, ground substance may be secreted by fibroblasts or by mast cells from an heparin-like precursor. The secretion of ground substance is probably mediated by vitamin C, since in scurvy very little metachromatic material is present in regenerating connective tissue. Mast cells have also been said to secrete the hyaluronic acid of synovial fluid, and synovial cells grown in tissue culture have produced a "mucin." There are those who believe that the ground substance may vary in a reversible manner from a rigid gel to a more or less fluid state, depending chiefly on the rate of replacement of glycoprotein and on the degree of depolymerization of the glycoprotein caused by enzymes of the mucinase class. In support of this possibility, it has been shown that the glycoprotein of the ground substance in mice becomes more highly polymerized at about the time of birth, this polymerization being greatest at the site of formation of the basement membrane. The younger material is water soluble, but with maturation it becomes insoluble and more highly polymerized.

Continuing with the ground substance, three types of chondroitin-sulfuric acid (a mucopolysaccharide), all varying in specific rotation and in enzymatic reaction, have been isolated from various sources. It has

been estimated that in 100 gm of fresh human skin there are approximately 24.5 mg. of hyaluronic acid and 20.2 mg of chondroitin sulfuric acid. The enzyme hyaluronidase hydrolyzes hyaluronic acid and certain chondroitin sulfates.

Histologically, in repair a progressive series of changes have been found to occur in areolar connective tissue, with a shift from the amorphous to the fibrous elements of the intercellular substances.

In essence Ragan points out that the origin of the ground substance is not clearly defined, that its turnover if any, is not known, that its function is still a matter of conjecture.

Fibrillar Elements

RETICULUM AND COLLAGEN It has been shown that *fibroblasts are essential for the production of collagen fibers* and in tissue culture fibrin fibrils bear no special relation to the deposition of collagen. Fibrin itself is a fibrous protein, and it has a characteristic electron microscopic structure. Fibrils join laterally to form compound fibers, depending on the pH, and clotting has been represented as a three-dimensional polymerization. It has been suggested that collagen is formed by an enzyme present in the ground substance from a soluble polypeptide derived from the fibroblast.

By means of electron microscopy (Fig. 34) it has been seen in tissue cultures of fibroblasts that a precollagen consisting of nodular filaments and some larger, finely striated fibrils are present, it is believed that these represent a stage in the extracellular development of collagen. The smallest collagen filaments consist of chains of globular protein molecules. The unit fibers or component units of collagen then come together into parallel arrays in a manner similar to that in which the unit fibers of fibrin aggregate to produce large strands of a clot.

Porter²⁴ was able to demonstrate that the early collagen fibril is apparently spun off the surface of the fibroblast. He believed



Fig. 34. Electron microscope photograph of collagen fibers (Courtesy of Dr. C. A. Ashley of the Walter Reed Hospital, Washington, D. C., and Dr. K. R. Porter of the Rockefeller Institute of New York.)

that the material for the fibril was derived from the plasma gel of the fibroblast and also possibly from fibroglial fibers. He found that the smallest fibril, as spun off the surface of the fibroblast, had a periodicity of 210 Å. After the fibril had been spun off the cell and while it was lying in the extracellular space, every third period seemed to enlarge and the typical collagen spacing of 640 Å developed.

Collagen which has been produced in tissue culture, was thought by Hass and McDonald¹² to be a secretory product of fibroblasts. New collagen is not laid down unless fibroblasts undergo proliferation. Lymphocytes appear to take no part in collagen deposition.

Collagen (Fig. 34) has little elasticity but great mechanical strength; is insoluble in organic solvents, water, dilute acids, and alkalis at ordinary temperature but has a large swelling capacity in aqueous acids or alkalis in the absence of a high salt concentration. When collagen is heated sufficiently it is converted into gelatin. Collagen is not attacked by trypsin, but can be di-

gested by pepsin at a low pH, since under such conditions the native fiber is disrupted. However, trypsin does hydrolyze gelatin. Collagen is, of course, quite susceptible to the action of the enzyme collagenase, and 0.1 mg. of collagenase will often liquefy 25 mg. of collagen.

ELASTIC FIBERS This third major fibrous element of connective tissue (the other two being reticulum and collagen) appears late in embryonal life. Although the cellular source of elastic fibers is as yet unknown, in tissue culture these fibers are produced only by tissues which contain them *in vivo*.

Elastic fibers are capable of great mechanical strength and long range elasticity. They are resistant to boiling water, dilute acids, and alkalis. These are not susceptible to recrystallized trypsin but are hydrolyzed by a crude pancreatic enzyme which has been called "elastase." Upon exposure of elastic fibers to a preparation of elastase, an opalescent solution appears which separates into a clear solution and a creamy fraction. This creamy fraction consists of sphingomyelin, lecithin, cholesterol, and cephalin.

Ragan summarized the foregoing essentially as follows. It would appear that fibroblasts develop from stellate mesenchymal cells and deposit ground substance, then spin reticulum. The reticulum associates laterally into collagen, losing its anisotropy in the process, with orientation of cells and fibers in accord with mechanical stresses. The origin of the elastic fiber is unknown. Functionally, the fibrous and amorphous elements serve their purpose well. *Reticulum* acts as a fine meshwork surrounding and serving as a supporting structure for organs and blood vessels, *collagen* provides a fiber of great mechanical strength for cohesiveness, *elastic fibers* permit long range elasticity for movement and rebound. The *ground substance* acts as a medium for transport and for storage of water and electrolytes and with its gel-like character, also absorbs shocks. Teleologically, an excellent adaptive mechanism for simple support and

transport would appear to have been evolved.

The Dynamic State of Connective Tissue

Although the concept of the dynamic state of the living organism has largely replaced the idea that the structures of the living organism were more or less static in nature, relatively little information is available regarding the molecular turnover in such connective tissue. However, from calculations based on excretion studies and N^{15} incorporation into body protein, the half-life of proteins of carcass tissues appears to be quite long.

The Healing of Wounds

The healing of an incision is such a commonplace thing that the student rarely records this process the importance it deserves. Nevertheless, if the trainee follows enough wounds from incision to white scar to know the natural history of the healing and complications, he will have learned a great deal about the practice of surgery.

Histophysiology

One of the major functions of the connective tissue is that of the repair of wounds following trauma or following injury from infections and other noxious agents. Regardless of the type of injury, the host response is basically similar.

Following accidental injury or an operative incision, a substance is elaborated in the damaged tissue which Menkin²⁶ terms "leukotaxine." This material appears to increase capillary permeability and, with this increase, polymorphonuclear leukocytes, lymphocytes, and monocytes migrate into the area of injury. At the same time, some substance is present which causes the leukocytes of the blood stream to adhere to the capillary wall, and gradually these leukocytes pass through the wall and into the damaged tissue. Fibrin is laid down in the area and shortly thereafter fibroblasts appear, following their appearance, grow

substance can be demonstrated by histochemical techniques.

As reticular and collagenous fibers develop, new blood vessels grow out from capillary buds on pre-existing vessels. The pH at first decreases and becomes more acid but then returns to normal as the reparative process continues toward the normal state. It is of interest that a decrease in pH has also been found at the site of fractures in the first stage of the reparative process. The biologic factors which initially promote these processes that eventually result in wound healing—and the biologic controls which effect a cessation of the proliferative activity of the various tissue elements of the wound once healing is complete—are unknown.

*The Stages of Wound Healing*¹⁶

FIRST STAGE EXUDATIVE OR LAG PHASE Following a simple incision which heals uneventfully there is first the escape of blood serum and lymph which form the coagulum, a dense fibrin network which is filled mainly with erythrocytes and leukocytes. This coagulum serves as a scaffolding which temporarily unites the edges of the wound, it also serves later as a bridge for the ingrowth of fibroblasts. Soon after the injury phagocytes appear and remove devitalized tissue while all leukocytes serve as protection against bacterial invasion. The enzymes of the wound which were studied by Howes and others¹⁵ doubtless have to do with the digestion of necrotic material and with promoting other phases of wound toilet and healing. New blood vessels may begin budding as early as the third day but even so during the first four to five days the wound is dependent largely upon the union afforded by the fibrinous exudate and the tensile strength of this is very low thus, during this exudative or lag phase the strength of the wound is largely dependent upon the suture material that was used for closure.

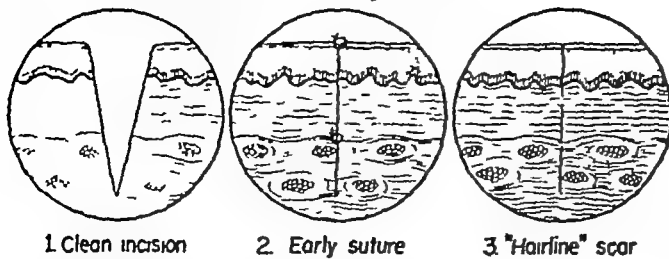
SECOND STAGE FIBROPLASIA. Following the lag period which lasts four or five days the

second phase of wound healing begins. This is the stage of fibroblastic proliferation or fibroplasia. The strength of the wound during this time is not as great as that afforded by the sutures immediately after repair, for the actual tensile strength of the wound is minimal and the holding power of the tissues for sutures drops progressively. Stage two lasts from about the fifth postoperative day to the fourteenth or sixteenth day, by which time the wound has achieved the maximum strength afforded by the connective tissue scar, as a rule. It is during the early part of stage two, when absorbable sutures are weakening but fibroblastic union is still minimal that wound complications are most likely to develop.

THIRD STAGE MATURATION Certain structures such as bone, tendon and fascia have in effect, a third stage of wound healing, a stage during which maturation or differentiation is occurring for greater strength is required in these tissues. There may be some lag between the second and the third stage, and this differentiating process by which the original strength of the tissue is regained may last for many months. Indeed it is well known that progressive realignment of the united fracture may continue for several years.

Connective tissue *per se* may have, in effect a third stage of healing which may be called the *phase of contraction* during which the line of incision is assuming first the dull red appearance of the early scar, followed over the months by an increasing contracture and whitening. During this phase the scar tissue becomes more compact and less cellular, and the vascular branches are squeezed until many of them are obliterated. Occasionally the phase of fibroplasia is not terminated in the usual period of time and the proliferating fibroblasts continue to reproduce until a *keloid* is formed.

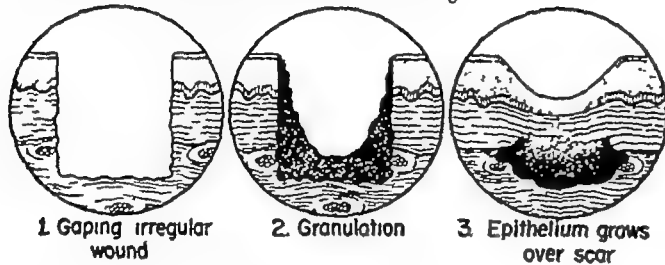
Keloids may prove most difficult to manage for the excision of one is usually followed by the formation of another at the same site. Neither cortisone therapy nor x ray has controlled this tendency satisfactorily.

A FIRST INTENTION (Primary union)

1. Clean incision

2. Early suture

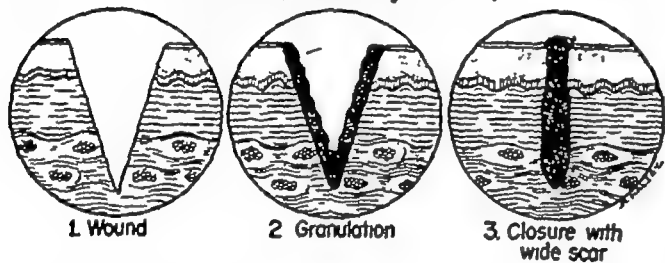
3. "Hairline" scar

B SECOND INTENTION (Granulation)

1. Gaping irregular wound

2. Granulation

3. Epithelium grows over scar

C THIRD INTENTION (Secondary suture)

1. Wound

2. Granulation

3. Closure with wide scar

Fig 35 Types of wound healing ("Chronologic course of wound healing by first, second and third intention. In the final stage of second intention healing it is to be noted that the underside of the epithelium is smooth and not serrated as normally. In the third stage of third intention healing an early phase is shown. Later the granulation tissue will be incorporated as a wide fibrous scar" HARKINS, H N. In *Surgery—Principles and Practice*, edited by Allen, J G, Harkins, H N, Moyer, C A, and Rhoads, J E, Philadelphia, J B Lippincott Company, 1957.)

torily. Occasionally a fibrosarcoma may arise in a keloid.

Healing by First Intention, Delayed Primary Closure, Healing by Second Intention, and Healing by Third Intention or Secondary Suture

The terminology of wound closure (Fig 35) has been a source of much confusion. *First intention* (primary union) is the term used when the wound is sutured at once and heals without event. *Delayed primary closure* is not to be confused with the term of "secondary suture," since delayed primary suture simply means that the wound is allowed to remain open for perhaps four days and then closed as usual. Healing by

second intention (granulation) is referred to as the situation which exists when the wound is allowed to "granulate in", the skin heals by contracture, with gradual diminution of the size of the skin defect by scar formation. Healing by *third intention* or *secondary suture* is that healing which occurs when, after perhaps several weeks, the edges of the unhealed wound are undermined and freshened and the defect brought together with sutures to hasten the rate of healing.

To avoid misunderstanding, it is recommended that the student know what he is talking about and describe it, rather than to go through the laborious procedure of memorizing the various terminologies for the types of wound healing under discussion.

The Healing of Individual Tissues

SKIN Healing of the skin may be very rapid and, if the cut edges of a wound are closely approximated, epithelial repair *per se* may be far advanced by the end of from 48 to 72 hours. Indeed, it is stated that evidence of epithelial cell migration may be noted sometimes within an hour after trauma. As a general rule, however, skin sutures are removed from wounds about the face and neck (if a buried, subcuticular stitch has not been used) by the end of from 48 to 72 hours, and from most abdominal incisions by the end of five days. Yet, in contrast, it is well to leave sutures in incisions involving the back or shoulder for from six to eight days or longer (Fig 36) since the stresses of movement may result in disruption of the wound with an unsightly cosmetic result.

FASCIA Rates of fascial healing are shown in Figure 37.

MUSCLE Muscle cells do not take part in the active process of tissue regeneration, for muscle defects are repaired with fibrous scar tissue. For this reason damaged muscle tissue should be removed, since it will not regenerate and heal and, rather than assist in the union of the wound, will act as a foreign body and furnish a culture medium for bacteria. For this same reason—and it applies in the correction of diastasis recti—there

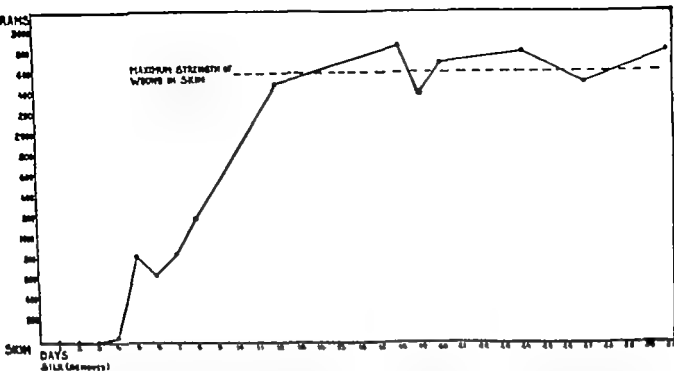


Fig 36 Wound healing curve for skin. Note that a moderate increase in tensile strength occurred between the fourth and fifth days, and that thereafter the tensile strength increased rapidly up to about the eleventh day (From Howze E. L., Soor J. W., and Harvey S. C. The healing of wounds as determined by their tensile strength J. A. M. A. 92: 42 1929)

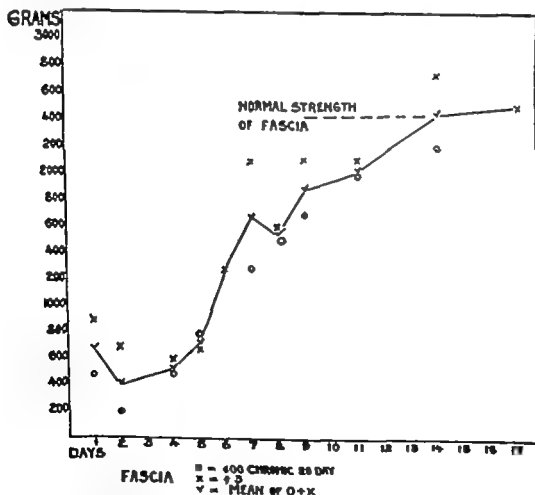


Fig 37 Wound healing curve for fascia. Note that the wound begins to gain strength after 5 days and reaches normal strength by the end of about 14 days (From Howze E. L., Soor J. W. and Harvey S. C. The healing of wounds as determined by their tensile strength J. A. M. A., 92: 42 1929)

no point in using heavy suture material to suture muscle bundles together. It is enough merely to bring them together loosely, else the sutures will cut through.

TENDON After a lag period of from four to five days, the fibroblasts proliferate. This fibroblastic tissue later becomes rather avascular and the connective tissue fibers become arranged longitudinally in the lines of stress, as is characteristic of normal connective tissue. Short gaps between the tendon ends may be bridged by tendon cells within two weeks but, more often, solid union is not achieved until a longer period has elapsed. Mason and Allen²⁵ demonstrated a decline in tensile strength of sutured tendons during the first five days after injury, but this was followed by a rapid increase in strength which reached a plateau on about the sixteenth day. From the nineteenth to the twenty-first day there was a further increase in tensile strength of the tendon. He recommended that passive movement of the repaired tendon be started two weeks after injury, not only to increase the tensile strength of the tendon but also to diminish the likelihood of immobilization of the tendon by adhesions. Active movement is begun gradually at approximately three weeks.

BONE The initial processes of bone healing are much the same as for soft tissue healing, but soon the proliferation of the connective tissue occurs from the endosteum, the periosteum, and the Haversian canals. Osteoblasts from the periosteum and endosteum form fibrils which extend in all directions and these fibrils, as well as the cells themselves, become embedded in an homogeneous matrix. Calcium salts are deposited in this matrix, and callus is then said to be present. Further callus formation and some absorption occurs, and gradually the new bone takes on the characteristic pattern. Excess callus is usually produced, but this is gradually revised by reabsorption and over the ensuing months the normal contour of the bone is restored.

The elements of bone have been shown to

be in constant turnover, and following fracture the increased amounts of calcium excreted are derived not only from the surface of the fracture but from other bones as well.

NERVE Section of a peripheral nerve results in the well known process of Wallerian degeneration, in which the nerve axons fibrils break into granular fragments. The myelin sheaths undergo chemical change to form irregular fatty globules in the tissues and, finally, the degenerated fibrils and myelin are absorbed. The cells of the nerve sheath, on the other hand, proliferate and result in a new sheath which acts as a receptacle or strut for the regenerating functional nerve ends. It is frequently difficult to state categorically in the given patient whether or not regeneration of a peripheral nerve has reached its maximum or will continue further. After three months, however, the chances of regeneration of additional peripheral nerve fibers diminish rapidly, in part because of the increasing denseness of the surrounding scar tissue. Unless immediate nerve suture is performed within six to eight hours following injury, it is the common practice to allow from six weeks to three months for the inflammatory reaction to subside, before re-exploring the area. Incidentally, it is helpful to tag the nerve end with a black silk suture at the initial closure. It has been estimated that the regenerating nerve may advance peripherally at a rate of approximately one millimeter a more per day.

GASTROINTESTINAL TRACT Healing of anastomoses in the alimentary tract, particularly as regards the epithelium of the mucosa, proceeds at the same rapid rate as does the healing of the skin. As shown by Antoine Lembert, a pupil of Dupuytren's, it is essential that the sutures be so placed that the serosa is in contact with serosa. If mucosa protrudes through the suture line, a fistula will often result. For satisfactory healing the blood supply must be adequate, this is always a hazard in esophageal surgery but rarely so in gastric surgery.

Local Factors Which Influence Wound Healing

ARTERIAL SUPPLY As just stated, a most important factor for the proper healing of any type of wound is the arterial blood supply. If the blood supply is inadequate, the tissue edges will become necrotic and will not hold the suture material. A frequent cause of inadequate blood supply to the healing wound edges is that the wound was closed under too much tension, resulting in occlusion of the finer vessels.

FOREIGN MATERIAL (Fig. 38) The use of excessive amounts of suture material is inimical to good wound healing. Furthermore, the formation of an hematoma in the wound further forces the healing tissues apart and diminishes the rate of wound healing. This hematoma must either be removed by macrophages, by liquefaction and absorption, or by drainage to the outside. In all too many instances the hematoma is not absorbed and must drain spontaneously or be drained surgically.

INFECTION A third important factor in the healing of a wound is whether or not the wound becomes infected. Infection results in destruction of the healing fibers of the wound, and it also interferes with the blood supply by occluding the finer vessels. In addition, collections of pus act mechanically as foreign material and must be evacuated or absorbed before proper wound healing will take place. Gastrointestinal procedures in obese patients are particularly prone to result in infection in the subcutaneous fat. When infection does occur, it is far more desirable to have the pus drained to the outside than to have the infection proceed in the opposite direction and result in a separation of the fascial layers, which tissue represents the true strength of the healed wound. In fat individuals it is frequently advisable to place subcutaneous drains and to close the skin loosely around them, especially in situations where contamination of subcutaneous fat may have occurred. Among such operations are colon resection employing an open



Fig. 38 Gunshot wound of anterior thorax and arm. Initial drainage was inadequate and further surgery was required. When the wound was again explored and debrided the zipper components shown were removed. The entire defect was then grafted. There developed a late contracture of the grafted axillary extension of the wound and this was freed by a Z-plasty.

anastomosis (which I prefer), the removal of a suppurative or ruptured appendix and the repair of a ventral hernia in a fat person regardless of whether bowel was opened or

not Fat is quite fragile, and the mere retraction of fat may be sufficient to cause disintegration of a certain number of fat cells with the liberation of an oily material which must find egress from the wound. Many wounds are considered to be infected following the repair of a ventral or umbilical hernia in an obese person when, in fact, the "pus" is not significantly contaminated with bacteria but represents chiefly the drainage of the oily material liberated by the liquefaction of subcutaneous fat. The chief function of the drains is to prevent the accumulation of serum, blood, or purulent material in a "dead space" within the healing wound, such an accumulation increases the morbidity, impairs cosmetic success, prolongs

the hospital stay, and upsets the patient (and the referring physician)

The reason why fat so readily becomes infected is, again, that its low blood supply and water content result in facile necrosis, in diminished local tissue protection by antibodies and leukocytes, and in reduced penetration by antibiotics (Fig 39)

General Factors in Wound Healing

PROTEIN INTAKE In 1938 it was demonstrated by Thompson, Ravdin, and Frank⁴ that wound healing was retarded in the presence of a significant hypoproteinemia. Since that time it has been generally acknowledged that the body protein reserves have much to do with the healing of wounds, and clinically and experimentally it has been repeatedly shown that wound healing is not optimal when the plasma protein levels are low.

VITAMIN INTAKE Ascorbic acid (vitamin C) deficiency results in retarded wound healing and, according to recent evidence, it may also cause degenerative changes in previously healed wounds. In Anson's voyage in 1769 it was recorded that "the scars of wounds which had been for many years healed were forced open by this virulent distemper" (scurvy). Experimental support of this presumptive susceptibility of scar tissue to vitamin C deficiency was reported by Pirani and Levenson.³³ They first reared guinea pigs on a diet containing adequate amounts of ascorbic acid. A linear midline laparotomy incision 4 cm in length was then performed on each animal and the wounds were allowed to heal for six weeks. At the end of this time half of the animals were placed on a diet free of vitamin C and the other half were given a nutritionally complete diet to serve as controls. Signs of scurvy developed in the "deficient" animals by the seventeenth or eighteenth day and were pronounced by the twenty-sixth day. At this time considerable swelling, herniation, and hemorrhage were noted in the laparotomy scars of the "deficient" animals.



Fig 39 Obesity and wound healing. There was poor healing of this incision through an obese abdominal wall, and the lower portion of the wound separated down to the fascia. Had the fascia too separated (but not the peritoneum) a hernia might have later developed. Had the peritoneum also separated, evisceration might have occurred. Actually, it was a simple matter to reapproximate the skin edges, and satisfactory healing was achieved.

No similar changes were noted in the control animals. The animals were then sacrificed and histologic examination showed that in the scurvitic guinea pigs the epidermis of the laparotomy wounds appeared normal, but that the underlying connective tissues were abnormal. The degenerative changes consisted of fibroblastic proliferation, regression of connective tissue elements, and hemorrhage. It was concluded that these studies and other evidence indicated that adequate ascorbic acid intake is essential not only for normal healing in the period immediately following trauma but also for the maintenance of previously formed scar tissue. Scar tissue is apparently more susceptible at least in animals, to vitamin C deficiency than is normal tissue. There is other evidence that in vitamin C deficiency the fibroblasts mature but are unable to produce the extracellular components of connective tissue, *i.e.*, ground substance and collagen.

✓ POTASSIUM AND WOUND HEALING We were not able to demonstrate a deleterious effect of a dietary potassium depletion on the healing of skin, fascia, or stomach in dogs.¹¹

✓ BODY FLUID METABOLISM ACUTE ANEMIA, LOCAL TEMPERATURE AGE, EMOTION AND HORMONES These factors do not materially influence wound healing in ordinary surgical practice. The potential adverse effect of steroid therapy on wound healing has not materialized.

Clinical Wound Management

✓ EFFECT OF EARLY AMBULATION ON WOUND HEALING In 1941 Lothausser and Bergo¹⁹ in the United States again focused attention upon the advantages of early postoperative ambulation but many surgeons remained apprehensive that the incidence of wound dehiscence would increase. In allaying this concern a valuable experimental study was that of Royster McCain and Sloan²⁰ who showed in dogs that (1) the general condition of the ambulated animals was improved over that of the controls, (2)

a significant number of animals in the ambulated group gained weight while the controls generally lost weight, and (3) the tensile strength of the postoperative abdominal wound in the ambulated group did not differ significantly from the values in the control group. These authors noted that their curves for wound healing of the skin, anterior rectus fascia, and peritoneum posterior rectus fascia did not vary materially from those published in 1929 by Howes, Soov, and Harvey¹⁰ (Figs 36 and 37).

EFFECT OF PREGNANCY ON TENSILE STRENGTH OF HEALING LAPAROTOMY WOUNDS IN RATS Localio and Chassin²⁰ reported that pregnant rats showed a marked diminution in the tensile strength of healing laparotomy wounds as compared with normal, nonpregnant female rats. Since in our own experience wounds made in pregnant women have healed satisfactorily, it would appear advisable to await further study before reaching a negative decision regarding the healing capacities of tissues in such patients.

THE EFFECT OF ROENTGEN RAYS ON WOUND HEALING It has been a common belief that wound healing is poor following irradiation, and many surgeons have hesitated to operate through skin which had been heavily irradiated. Nevertheless Lawrence, Nickson, and Warshaw¹⁸ obtained experimental evidence that irradiation does not seriously impair wound healing. They studied the effect of irradiation on the healing of standard abdominal incisions in young rats over intervals of from one to three months following the exposure. The irradiation administered in the preoperative period was in the clinical therapeutic range, and the wounds were comparable to clinical laparotomy incisions. Studies of the rate of healing of these wounds in terms of tensile strength were carried out and showed that all wounds reached the maximal strength range, although there was some delay in the rate of attainment of this strength by the irradiated wounds. Delay in healing was most marked in the wounds

receiving irradiation immediately or within one week before surgery. The difference in the healing curves of tissues irradiated three weeks, five weeks, eight weeks, and twelve weeks prior to surgery was not great. It was noted by these authors that the healing of surgical wounds in recently irradiated tissue is impaired, in a practical sense, only in terms of rate of healing and not in terms of the final wound strength. They felt that the data also appeared to demonstrate little or no practical advantage in delaying surgery more than three weeks after irradiation. The presence or absence of irradiation-induced skin erythema, *per se*, seemed to have little effect on the rate of wound healing in the rat.

In passing, the clinical hazard of excessive x-ray dosage should be emphasized. Few surface lesions are more distressing than a severe radiation "burn."

The Infected Wound

Wound infections have not been abolished by antibiotic therapy. In fact, it often seems that these complications are now as common as ever. Therefore, it is important to diagnose purulent collections promptly, when prophylactic measures have failed and an infection has developed.

There are, of course, all types and degrees of infection, not only with regard to the actual tissues involved but also to the particular bacterial organisms encountered. For our purposes here, however, let it be assumed that the infection is due to a staphylococcus. What findings may be anticipated?

General or *systemic signs* may appear before *local evidence* is present. Fever, tachycardia, and malaise may suggest that one of the common postoperative febrile complications—pulmonary atelectasis, wound infection, phlebitis, or urinary tract infection—is present or impending. A wound infection does not usually become apparent until several days following the operation, but sooner or later the wound becomes tender, painful, indurated, erythematous, or swollen—or all of these. Yet, actual suppuration may not have occurred, and one is

all advised to probe around in it until the site of the probable abscess manifests itself—which it almost always will do, if hot wet soaks are combined with watchful waiting. Once the abscess is located, it is readily evacuated by opening a recent incision with a hemostat and placing a drain. Toxic systemic manifestations usually cease promptly when purulent collections are afforded free drainage to the outside.

Wound Disruption: Causes, Prevention, and Management

CAUSES *Suture material* The cause of wound disruption in surgical patients has, in part, been alluded to previously. Suture material has not been mentioned, but whatever substance is used, it is important that it not strangulate the tissue of the wound margins by improper suture technique. While the type of suture material used is a factor of the greatest importance, it is also important that the strength of the suture material be at least adequate. For example, I have had the experience of having a large patient scratch himself as he was emerging from anesthesia, with a resulting rupture of the silk sutures with which the wound had been repaired, recurrence of the wound occurred then and there. Since coughing or straining during the first few days postoperatively cannot always be prevented, the repair must be firm. On the other hand, the suture material should not be excessively large for the purpose. Excellent results are obtained by excellent suture technique whether silk, chromic catgut, stainless steel wire, or cotton is used for fascial closure.

Metabolic disorders It has appeared that patients with diabetes mellitus are more prone to wound disruption than are patients without this metabolic disorder. This is also true of patients with Cushing's syndrome.

Protein deficiency The direct correlation between inadequate protein stores and poor wound healing has been mentioned previously. Patients with advanced malignancy, who usually

protein deficient, are apt to exhibit poor wound healing. In such individuals every possible precaution against wound complications is in order.

Type of incision. It is often claimed that the vertical incision is less likely to result in wound separation than is the transverse incision or *vice versa*. However, in a study of the factors involving wound dehiscence in 1000 cases Marsh and his associates⁴ found no difference in the incidence of wound disruption with vertical as compared to transverse incisions. They concluded that the important factors predisposing to wound dehiscence were: (1) Nutritional deficiencies incident to carcinoma, infection, or other debilitating factors. (2) Mechanical factors such as violent coughing or abdominal distention. (3) Type of wound closure. (In a controlled series of 500 consecutive cases in which through and through retention sutures plus layer closure were used systematically there was no incidence of wound dehiscence in uncomplicated transverse or vertical incisions. This was not the case in a series of 500 cases in which systematized wound closure was not used, even though all other factors were comparable). (4) Age. (The average age of patients with wound separation was 56 years as compared to an average age of less than 49 years for the 906 patients whose wounds healed primarily.)

Type of closure. Certain considerations have been mentioned above. Hoerr, Allen, and Allen¹⁴ compared a mass closure with wire and layer closure with silk. At the beginning they acknowledged that (1) accurate approximation of the wound edges is essential. (2) suture material should be as fine as is consistent with safety. (3) suture material should be kept at a minimum. and (4) nonabsorbable suture material produces little inflammatory and foreign body reaction in the wound but may act as an unpleasant nidus of infection at a later date, particularly in a potentially infected wound. Such wounds may 'spit' silk even in the absence of frank sepsis. These authors studied a series of 127 abdominal incisions in 122 patients; they alternated between a

method employing No 31 stainless steel wire as an interrupted suture through peritoneum, muscle, and the rectus fascia, as compared to a layer-to-layer technique with interrupted 00 silk sutures. The skin was closed with metal clips in the wire wounds and with interrupted silk in the silk wounds. The group of 66 wire closures and the group of 61 silk closures were roughly equivalent from the standpoint of location of incision, length of incision, duration of operative procedures, and potential contamination at the time of operation. There was approximately the same incidence of early postoperative complications in the two types of wounds, and there was no detectable difference in the appearance of the wounds. Postoperative pain was the same. In the available follow-up, late complications appeared to be about the same with the exception of minor infections for sinuses which occurred more frequently after a closure with interrupted silk. There had been three hernias in silk wounds to one in a wire wound. Wire closures were simpler to execute, required only three-fourths as much time as silk closures, and seemed to be especially well adapted for use in patients with long incisions.

We prefer the above type of wire closure—with or without heavy silk retention sutures—in any wound where there exists a strong possibility of postoperative dehiscence. This applies particularly to patients with advanced malignancy, potentially infected wounds and obese subjects. There are few problems due to wire *per se* if each wire is cut separately just at the knot to avoid subsequent impingement of the wire against the undersurface of the skin, should the patient lose weight. In younger persons who present no particular reason to suspect that wound difficulties may arise, chromic catgut is commonly used for peritoneum posterior rectus sheath closure and interrupted silk is used to close the anterior sheath and the skin in our clinic. But, again, whatever the suture material employed there is no substitute for careful placement of the sutures so as correctly to approximate the layers of the abdominal wall.

Increased intra-abdominal pressure We are convinced that increased intra-abdominal pressure—whether due to coughing, hiccups, vomiting, intestinal distention, or ascites—is a major cause of the wound disruption in many instances

TREATMENT OF WOUND SEPARATION One should be keenly alert to the possibility of wound separation following aortic resection, or, as noted, in the patient who is distended, who has infection in the wound, or who is coughing, straining or vomiting. An additional factor which frequently suggests impending wound separation is the drainage from the wound of a profuse amount of serous or serosanguinous material. Since such material often represents fluid from within the peritoneal cavity, this calls for immediate precautionary measures. The first thing to be done is to apply wide adhesive tape, beginning far around on one flank, crossing over the incision, and being secured on the other flank—placed in such a way as to put traction on the skin lateral to the wound edges in order to diminish tension on the suture line itself. In this way healing of the skin may often be secured even though separation of the peritoneum and fascia has occurred beneath. This of course limits wound separation to the formation of a hernia, thus avoiding the far more serious complication of actual evisceration. If evisceration is minimal, such as the appearance of a single loop of bowel through the skin edges, this may be replaced, the wound taped as described above, and the patient not taken to the operating room—if the patient's condition is considered sufficiently critical to warrant this choice of conservatism.

To place wire sutures in a wound that has separated is usually a difficult matter unless enough anesthesia can be given the patient to secure relaxation of the abdominal wall. For this reason, and since wound evisceration most commonly occurs in individuals who were poor operative risks initially, it may be desirable to avoid anesthetizing these patients, if by means of

adhesive strapping this necessity can be achieved. The reason adequate anesthesia is required is that the edges of the healed (and often infected) wound are friable and will not hold the sutures if the patient strains while. With taping, if only a hernia results it can be repaired later as an elective procedure in a good risk patient.

If frank evisceration has already occurred, it is usually mandatory to take the patient to the operating room, use whatever anesthesia is essential, replace the loops of bowel, and close the wound with through-and-through stainless steel wire sutures. These include all layers of the abdominal wall and are twisted sufficiently tightly to coapt the edges of the abdominal wall. Additional skin sutures may be placed between the heavy wire sutures. As these heavy sutures are drawn up tight, the examining finger must make certain that no loop of bowel is caught or can later herniate through one of the wire loops. Though these sutures are left in place from 14 to 21 days, it may be necessary to loosen them from time to time as the wound swells with edema.

✓ Transplantation of Tissues

Historical Review

PARABIOSIS Among the early attempts at the transplantation of one tissue to another were those which were concerned with parabiosis in mammals, the actual joining of one animal to another (Fig. 40). The earliest work in this field was done by Paul Bert, performed in the 1860's in Claude Bernard's laboratory in Paris, and his first successful pairing of two young albino rats was achieved on April 7, 1862. In this pioneering experiment, it was demonstrated that injected fluid passed from the external jugular vein of one rat, through cutaneous vessel anastomoses, to the femoral vein of the partner. Further details of his general work in this field were published later, when he reviewed the regenerative capacities of lower animals, contrasted them with those of birds and mammals and discussed the grafting of

skin, tails, and feet. Apparently the parabiosis technic was the result of attempts to accomplish successful grafts from one animal to another. In white rats the tails were transplanted to other rats of the same age but it was not possible to produce positive results between different species, such as between the rat and guinea pig, cat rat, or mammal birds. Various means of parabiosis were employed, some of the parabionts being attached only by suture of the skin of adjacent flanks while with others fusion of the muscular body walls as well was performed. In many autopsies Bert demonstrated generally by injection techniques that vascular connections of capillary size were formed. Another method of showing cross circulation was that of injecting belladonna into one partner and noting dilatation of the pupils of the attached animal within 20 to 30 minutes. Successful skin homografts were made by separating the parabionts after two months of parabiosis leaving part of the skin of one rat attached to its partner. The flap persisted in its new site.⁷

Following the work of Bert, the technic of parabiosis was little used until it was revived in Germany by Sauerbruch and Heyde¹⁰ in 1908. In 1909 Roux²⁸ published a paper in the United States in which he showed that parabiosis of a rat resistant to tumor transplantation did not affect the tumor susceptibility of its partner. Since then parabiosis has been used as an experimental tool in many fields including studies of skin grafting, kidney removal, irradiation effects, nutritional deficiencies, pituitary gonad relationships, diabetes mellitus, and the metabolic effects of malignant tumors.

TISSUE CULTURE. In 1878 Claude Bernard¹ emphasized the paramount importance of the internal chemical environment of living tissue. It was appreciated that this internal environment is not only the product of tissue metabolism, but that it in turn reacts upon the tissues thereby further regulating tissue activity. The development of tissue culture methods was a natural outgrowth of such ideas for to study the functional prop-

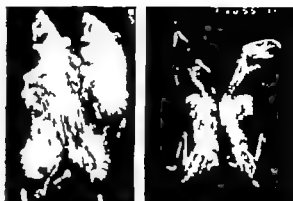


Fig. 40 Parabiotic mice. Parabiosis is here achieved by joining the parabionts along the flanks (see text).

erties of cells and how they influence, or are influenced by, their immediate environment, it was necessary to isolate these cells in a way which would eliminate the continuing effect of the parent organism.

The first experiment in tissue culture was carried out by Wilhelm Roux²⁸ in 1885, when he announced an 'explanation' of living tissues. The medullary plate of a chick embryo was isolated and was placed in a warm saline solution, and eventually Roux was able to demonstrate that the closure of the medullary tube was a function of the constituent cells rather than a result of mechanical pressure of surrounding tissues. Subsequently other investigators were able to maintain living tissues in salt solutions or in body fluids but the first actual visualization of cell growth is credited to R. G. Harrison,¹ who in 1907 observed the migration of nerve fibers in a frog embryo under the microscope. He also described an important basic principle of tissue culture technic, namely that the cells will not grow when floating freely in the nutrient fluid but must be attached to a solid substrate, such as clotted lymph. Later other workers observed cells undergoing mitosis *in vitro*.

Yet important as these pioneer studies were the technic of tissue culture was established on its modern basis by Alexis Carrel. He developed most of the presently used techniques of tissue culture and demonstrated that adult mammalian tissues could be grown successfully in blood plasma. In 1913 Carrel⁴ reported that the addition of

aqueous extracts of embryos made possible continuous cell proliferation, and he maintained a strain of chick fibroblasts in culture for over 30 years. Moreover, his laboratory at the Rockefeller Institute became perhaps the world center for tissue culture work, and the techniques employed there have been recorded in book form by Parker.³⁰ In 1911 Rous³⁷ demonstrated that a virus from a chicken cancer would produce a tumor when injected into a healthy fowl, and that the virus could be recovered again by filtration. Some years later a cancer was produced by exposing normal tissue *in vitro* to the filtered extract of Rous' sarcoma and also by application of carcinogenic agents to the normal cells in tissue culture.

The most commonly employed methods of tissue culture are the hanging drop method, the roller tube technic, and the flask method. In the first, a fragment of tissue is placed in a drop of culture medium on a clean cover slip, which is then inverted over a hollow-ground microscope slide and sealed with paraffin before being placed in the incubator. In the second method, small test tubes are used and fragments of tissue are planted in a thin plasma coagulum on the side of the tube and then the tube is sealed and placed in the incubator where it is slowly rotated. This rotation facilitates the interchange of oxygen, food materials, and metabolites between the cells and the medium. In the flask method, Carrel flasks or other specially designed glass flasks are used.

Modern Ideas and Experimentation in Homotransplantation

The basic problems in tissue homotransplantation have nowhere been more lucidly presented than by Leo Loeb²¹ in his classic work entitled *The Biological Basis of Individuality*, which incorporated most of the important research prior to 1945. He stated that "there is inherent in every higher individual organism, something which differentiates him from every other individual which can be discovered by observing the

reactions of certain cells and tissues belonging to one individual toward the tissues and cells of another individual of the same species. It is not only the cells and tissues of one individual, however, which react towards these elements of another individual in such a specific manner, but there is also a substance in the body fluids of one individual which responds towards all cells and tissues of another individual in accordance with the degree of genetic difference between these two animals."

The genetic factor that precludes a permanent transplantation of blood-nourished tissues from one animal to another of the same species for any length of time except in closely inbred animals of lesser degree of genetic dedifferentiation has been emphasized. In man, the only homotransplants that have been definitely proved to take successfully have been transplants between identical twins, or to individuals with agammaglobulinemia. The absence of immunoglobulin was described by Bruton in 1952. Subsequently Good and Varco⁸ performed successful skin homografting on such a child. These workers reviewed the evidence in favor of the hypothesis that the failure of homotransplantation has an immunologic basis as follows: (1) the time required for rejection of homografts is in the same time range as that required for antibody production, (2) the speed of rejection of homografts is related to the dose of "antigen" supplied, (3) the circulation of blood or lymph without barrier to antibody is essential for the rejection of homotransplants, (4) evidence for secondary response or so-called anamnestic reaction is found in the more rapid rejection of a second antigenically similar homograft than of the first, (5) agents such as total body irradiation and cortisone that suppress antibody formation may prolong the survival of homotransplants, (6) desensitization with skin antigens results in prolonged survival of homologous skin grafts, and (7) rejection of homotransplants of skin is associated with the appearance of antibodies against

donor cells and tissues in the circulation of the host

Behavior of Autogenous Human Tissue Grafts

The transfer of autogenous tissues has long been successful and is commonly accepted as a routine practice, particularly with respect to skin, nerve, bone tendon, and certain other tissues. Peer and Walker²¹ studied free autogenous human grafts under two conditions of transfer: first, in contact with unlike tissues and second, in contact with like tissues. The cells of cartilage, septal bone, fascia tendon, and surface skin grafts all tended to survive, the tissues retaining their specific structure. Thus, cartilage appeared as cartilage, septal bone as bone, fascia as fascia, and so forth, regardless of whether the recipient site consisted of like or unlike tissue. (This is not true of blood vessel grafts, as will be seen later.) Rib, tibial and iliac bone grafts in contact with unlike tissues were replaced by host fibrous tissue, regardless of the thickness or the thinness of the grafts or the vascularity of the host site. The bone cells in the grafts often survived transplantation, but they were unable to maintain their calcified intercellular material which was absorbed and replaced by host fibrous tissue in a period of about eight months. Rib, tibial, and iliac bone grafts in contact with bone tended to retain their calcified structure. About 50 per cent of the fat cells in fat grafts survived transplantation and those surviving fat cells, together with their connective tissue framework, comprised the bulk of the fat graft that remained one year or more following transplantation. There was no evidence that cellular elements from the host tissues took on fat and replaced fat cells in the graft. Fat grafts transplanted in contact with fat had the same fate as fat grafts transplanted in contact with unlike tissue.

Muscle cells or fibers in free muscle grafts always degenerated and disappeared following free transplantation irrespective of whether the graft was in contact with unlike

tissues or with muscle. The fibroblasts in the connective tissue framework of muscle grafts survived transplantation, and these cells together with infiltrating host fibroblasts converted the muscle grafts into a small fibrous tissue band in a period of about one month.

The epidermis, hair follicles, and glands tended to degenerate and to disappear in dermal skin grafts. This doubtless accounts for the relative infrequency of inclusion cysts when buried dermal grafts are used for the repair of inguinal hernias. The fibroblast cells in the dermis survived transplantation, associated with the bundles of collagenous and elastic fibers which constituted the bulky intercellular portion of the dermis.

When nerve grafts were transplanted in contact with unlike tissues, the fibroblast cells in the framework of the graft survived and proliferated to such an extent that they completely replaced the degenerating axons and myelin sheaths. The Schwann cells survived the initial shock of transplantation but disappeared among the larger number of proliferating fibroblasts. When nerve grafts were transplanted in accurate contact with nerve, the Schwann cells survived but the axons and myelin sheaths degenerated and disappeared. A few axons from the proximal host nerve grew down through the unobstructed channels in the nerve graft and continued on into the distal end of the host nerve.

It was concluded by these workers that the vascular system in free grafts tends to survive transplantation, and that early circulating blood for these surviving blood vessels of the graft is provided through direct anastomosis of host and graft blood vessels. If this circulating blood reaches the centrally located cells in four days, the cells may not die from the effects of their accumulative waste products and lack of oxygen.

Homografts

ATTEMPTS TO MODIFY FATE OF HOMOGRAFT
There have been numerous attempts by var-

ious workers to modify, on the one hand, the host reaction to the homograft and, on the other, to influence the graft so that it would not act as an antigen. The protein of grafts has been denatured by heating, irradiation, and other treatment, the hosts have been given antihistaminic agents, adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH), cortisone and other substances which were considered likely to minimize the antibody reaction of the host to the graft. Generally speaking, all such efforts have been unsuccessful, for as yet no truly satisfactory method of homografting has been achieved, certainly in the sense that the transplanted tissue maintains its individuality and actually functions. It will be seen that arterial homografts are useful even though the donor cells are eventually replaced by host tissues.

In studies of skin homografting in chicks, Cannon and his associates³ concluded that, taken all together, their observations indicated that tissue specificity in the chick is gradually assumed, probably beginning some time in the latter part of incubation. It is not completed in the individual as a reacting organism until the seventh day following hatching. The tissue specificity of the skin is not invariably detectable by 1-day-old chicks until the donor chick is 14 days of age.

CLINICAL USES OF HOMOGRAFTS *Skin grafts* Skin autografts are used commonly, wherever coverage is required, but the most frequent use of skin homografts is in the grafting of burns where the status of the individual or the extent of the burn precludes the immediate availability of sufficient amounts of the patient's own skin (autografts) to cover the burn wounds. While in certain clinics the use of such homografts is strongly advocated, it has never solved the problem of successfully covering the patient's wounds permanently, for these homografts usually survive for only several weeks and then gradually disappear. Therefore, regardless of the number of homograft "takes," it will eventually be necessary to graft the patient with his own skin. Even

so, the successful homograft constitute physiologic dressing, though temporary, and may be lifesaving.

The chief factors which limit the use of homografts are (1) the uncertainty of a temporary "take" of the graft when the general condition of the recipient is such to contraindicate autografting, (2) the difficulties of obtaining skin donors, (3) the convenience to the skin donor if sizeable grafts are taken, (4) the dangers of a generalized allergic reaction to foreign skin, (5) the uncertainty of the survival time of the graft if a primary "take" occurs and, (6) the undesirable local effects as the homograft begins to "melt away" before the patient is ready for autografting.²²

To overcome some of these objections, however, many have advocated the use of homografts obtained at autopsy and preserved. The upper limit of time which such homografts may be stored has not been fully determined, but it is certainly a matter of weeks if not months.

✓ **Factors in the host which influence success in skin grafting**—Whether the graft is to be autogenous or homologous, certain nonantigenic factors materially influence whether or not the graft will "take." First, an infected recipient area is notoriously unfit for grafting. Second, the presence of dead tissue is an additional contraindication to grafting, and a healthy granulating free surface is to be strived for. Third, among other factors the general condition of the patient is important, malnutrition and anemia are factors which, for reasons as yet poorly defined, diminish the number of "takes."

Split thickness skin grafts, especially autografts, will take in a variety of places such as the exenterated orbit, the stomach from which the mucosa has been stripped, the mouth, in hernia repairs (buried), and elsewhere.

✓ **Blood vessel grafts** Although sporadic vessel transplantation had been performed much earlier, it was Carrel,⁵ in 1907, who established that blood vessels could readily

be preserved and transplanted in experimental animals.¹ Yet, despite these early studies which clearly presaged the clinical use of blood vessel grafts, application of this early work did not gain momentum and a number of decades passed before the subject was re-examined in the experimental laboratory and applied in the clinic. In 1949 Gross² and Percec³² and their associates published their clinical experience with arterial homografts, and securely established the technique in modern surgical practice.

Autogenous vessel grafts—Because of the basic failure of most efforts at homotransplantation of tissues naturally the first choice for replacement of vascular defects was that of using vascular grafts from the same individual to bridge arterial defects. Autogenous grafts would have two advantages: (1) fresh tissue would be available and (2) the autogenous tissue would remain a living structure after transplantation. Unfortunately, few arteries can be spared and so venous autografts were used fairly widely for a time. However, studies soon showed that there was a marked tendency for unsupported fresh venous autografts to dilate in the thoracic aorta of both the growing pig and the adult dog.¹² Therefore the use of venous grafts has been largely abandoned.

Homologous vessel grafts—Following the original reports by Gross and his associates regarding the temporary storage by refrigeration of arterial homografts and the successful clinical use of such material a prodigious volume of work was done regarding methods by which the grafts might be stored over extended periods of time. At first it was thought necessary to maintain the grafts in a viable state, but it gradually became apparent that such was not necessary since the homograft actually functioned only as a bridge and was eventually replaced with the host's own tissue, *with the possible exception of the elastic fibers*. The most common method of storing or preserving arterial homografts is that of freeze-drying or lyophilization, but an even simpler

method, which appears definitely promising is that of merely placing the fresh graft in 70 per cent alcohol until it is to be used.

Results with arterial homografts—The initial results with homografts have been gratifying. Gross and his associates have now had arterial homografts in place, following resection of coarctations of the aorta, for approximately eight years without evidence of significant deterioration of the graft. However, there is no question but that grafts inserted in the abdominal aorta in older individuals not infrequently become aneurysmal or become thrombosed.

Heterogenous vascular grafts—These have not been successful.

The use of plastic materials for bridging arterial defects—Since the advent of homografting the volume of vascular cases which may be aided by such arterial replacement has increased to the extent that it is not always possible to have available a suitable homograft. For this reason—in addition to the fact that homografts themselves are not perfect arterial substitutes—there has been much interest in the use of various plastic materials for arterial replacement. In 1952 Voorhes, Jaretski, and Blakemore⁴³ reported the use of a porous plastic (Vinyon N) cloth tube, and since that time various other substances have been employed such as nylon, Ivalon, Orlon, and others. These materials are now regularly employed clinically. They are subject to most of the same complications as are homografts and they probably will be attended with approximately the same degree of success—which is not inconsiderable when the usual outlook for the unoperated patient with an aneurysm is contemplated.

Growth of anastomoses—One technical point of probable importance is that in inserting a graft in younger individuals (and in suturing arteries at any time in the younger individual) it would appear advisable to use interrupted sutures for at least a portion of the vascular anastomosis to allow for growth of the vessel as the individual enlarges. While the evertng mat

tress suture, either interrupted or continuous, is the time-honored method of suturing blood vessels, a simple continuous over-and-over suture around the entire circumference of the vessel is quite satisfactory, certainly in adults

iv, *Bone grafts* Autogenous —The use of autogenous bone grafts is well established and such grafts are, in general, readily incorporated into the bony structure at the new site. The most common source of such bone is the crest of the ileum, the tibia, or rib. These grafts are often used in the form of chips rather than long solid segments of bone.

Homologous —The great interest in the use of homografts of all types has, of course, included bone. *Homologous bone*, particularly as ground bone, has been used widely, but it is not as readily incorporated into the tissues of the host as is autogenous bone.

v, *Cartilaginous grafts* Autogenous —Autogenous cartilaginous grafts have been used with reasonable success for many years.

Homologous —In reviewing the present status of cartilaginous grafts, Schofield⁴¹ offered the following conclusions: (1) there seems to be no doubt that cartilaginous implants can provide a satisfactory filling material in contour defects for at least two years in over 70 per cent of the clinical cases, (2) results suggest that 50 per cent of the implants may show evidence of absorption by the end of two years.

vi, *Homotransplantation of the lung* Homotransplantation has been attempted by a number of workers. It has been demonstrated that the homologous transplants may be placed in an animal and then the animal's other lung immediately resected, leaving only the grafted lung for oxygenation of the blood. Hardin and Kittle¹⁰ had two animals which survived for six and nine days, proving unequivocally the functional ability of the homologous lung during these periods. However, although the operative technique of transplantation of one entire lung has been demonstrated to be feasible, as with

other types of homotransplantation the limitations imposed by foreign protein in transplantation appear responsible for the present failure of these organs to survive.²⁰ In contrast, autogenous lungs reimplanted in the same animal do survive.

vii, *Homologous transplantation of the heart* Homologous heart transplantation was achieved by Neptune and his associates.¹ They reported three instances in which the heart and lungs had been successfully transplanted in dogs under hypothermia, with the donor heart maintaining all circulation and allowing return of reflexes, spontaneous respiration, restoration of normal body temperature, and survival of the animal up to six hours following surgery. Neptune and his associates pointed out that, while Mann and co-workers²³ had previously transplanted intact mammalian hearts from one animal to another in various parts of the vascular system, the donor heart had not been previously called upon to perform the function of maintaining complete circulation in the recipient animal.

viii, *Renal homotransplantation* A preliminary study of renal homotransplants in dogs was reported by Murray and his associates²¹ in 1953. It was concluded that host rejection of kidney homotransplants is not accompanied by the suppression of serum complement that has been observed in some types of acute renal failure. However, although some homografted kidneys did establish a variable urine flow for some 12 to 96 hours, ureteral necrosis and other evidences of transplant failure then became apparent. More recently, several teams have reported transplantation of kidneys, both experimentally and in human cases. Even so, successful and permanently functioning renal homotransplantation has been accomplished only between identical twins.

ix, *Other homotransplantation studies* Almost all of the readily approachable organs have been transplanted at one time or another, particular attention being accorded endocrine organs. By and large, homotrans-

plantation has not thus far been successful. The sporadic reports of successful homografts in which the original transplant achieves a new blood supply and continues to grow have rarely been substantiated by subsequent experimentation.

REFERENCES

1. BRUNARD C. Leçons sur les phénomènes de la vie communs aux animaux et aux végétaux. Paris, 1878-1879.
2. BAUTOV O C. Agammaglobulinemia. *Pediatrics* 9: 722, 1952.
3. CANNON J A, WESSER, R A., AND LONGMIRE, W P., JR. Factors influencing the survival of successful skin homografts in the chicken. I. Effects of varying age of donor and recipient. *Ann Surg.*, 139: 468, 1954.
4. CAMEL, A. Artificial activation of the growth *in vitro* of connective tissue. *J Exper Med* 17: 14, 1913.
5. CAMEL, A. Heterotransplantation of blood vessels preserved in cold storage. *J Exper Med.*, 9: 226, 1907.
6. CAMEL, A. Results of transplantation of blood vessels, organs and limbs. *J A M A* 51: 1662, 1908.
7. FENESTY J C. Parabiosis in physiological studies. *Physiol Rev* 32: 277, 1952.
8. GOOD R. A., AND VASCO R L. Successful homograft of skin in a child with agammaglobulinemia: studies on agammaglobulinemia. *J A M A* 157: 713, 1955.
9. GROSS R. E. BILL, A H. JR. AND PIERCE, E. C. II. Methods for preservation and transplantation of arterial grafts. *Surg Gynec & Obst.*, 88: 689, 1919.
10. HARDIN C A., AND KITTLE, C F. Experiences with transplantation of the lung. *Science* 119: 97, 1954.
11. HARDY J D. BORTH A E., PAVSEK E J. ROBINSON J K., SMITH J E. AND ZIMMERMAN A F. Potassium depletion in dogs: Effect on wound healing on blood protein and electrolyte levels, and on response to anesthesia. *Arch Surg* 66: 226, 1953.
12. HARRISON R G. Observation on the living developing nerve fiber. *Anat Record* 1: 116, 1906-1908.
13. HAAS G. AND McDONALD F. Studies of collagen. I. The production of collagen *in vitro* under variable experimental conditions. *Am. J Path* 16: 525, 1910.
14. HODGE, S O. ALLEN R., AND ALLEN K. The closure of the abdominal incision. A comparison of mass closure with wire and layer closure with silk. *Surgery* 30: 166, 1951.
15. HOWES E L., ARMITAGE C M., AND MANDL, I. Enzymes in the healing wound. *Surgical Forum* 6: 54, 1956.
16. HOWES E L., SOOT J W., AND HARVEY S C. The healing of wounds as determined by their tensile strength. *J A M A.*, 92: 42, 1929.
17. JOHNSON J., KIRBY C K., AND HARDY J D. Absorption formation in experimental vein grafts in the thoracic aorta. *Surgery* 33: 207, 1953.
18. LAWRENCE, W., JR. NICKSON J J. AND WASHAW L M. Roentgen rays and wound healing: experimental study. *Surgery* 33: 376, 1953.
19. LEITHAUSER D J., AND BERGO H L. Early rising and ambulatory activity after operation. A means of preventing complications. *Arch Surg* 42: 1086, 1941.
20. LOCALIO S A., AND CHARNIN J L. The effect of pregnancy on the tensile strength of healing laparotomy wounds in rats. *Surgery* 32: 39, 1952.
21. LOEB L. *The Biological Basis of Individuality*. Springfield Ill., Charles C Thomas, 1915.
22. LONGMIRE, W P., JR., AND SMITH S W. Homologous transplantation of tissues. *A M A Arch Surg* 62: 443, 1951.
23. MANN F C. PRIESTLEY J T., MARKOWITZ J., AND LATER, W M. Transplantation of the intact mammalian heart. *Arch Surg.*, 26: 219, 1933.
24. MARSH R. L., COOK, J W. III. ROSS W L. AND STEVENS G A. Factors involving wound dehiscence. Study of 1000 cases. *J A M A.*, 155: 1197, 1954.
25. MARON M L. AND ALLEN H S. The rate of healing of tendons. An experimental study of tensile strength. *Ann. Surg* 113: 424, 1941.
26. MENKIN V. *Dynamics of Inflammation*. New York: The Macmillan Company, 1940.
27. MURRAY J E. FAVOUR, C B. WENTZAS C T., JR. AND MILLER, B F. A preliminary study of renal homotransplants in dogs. *Plast & Reconstruct. Surg* 11: 353, 1953.
28. NEITZKE, W B. COOKSON B A. BAILEY C P., APPLER, R. AND RAJKOWSKI, F. Complete homologous heart transplantation. *A M A Arch Surg* 66: 174, 1953.
29. NEITZKE, W B. WELLS, R W. AND BAILEY C P. Experimental lung transplantation. *J Thoracic Surg* 26: 275, 1953.
30. PARKER, R C. *Methods of Tissue Culture*. New York: Paul B Hoeber Inc., 1950.
31. PIER, L. A. AND WALKER J C JR. The behavior of autogenous human tissue grafts: a comparative study. *Plast & Reconstruct. Surg.*, 7: 6, 1951.

- 32 PEIRCE, E C, II, GROSS, R E, BILL, A H, JR, AND MERRILL, K, JR Tissue-culture evaluation of the viability of blood vessels stored by refrigeration *Ann Surg*, **129**: 333, 1949
- 33 PIRANI, C L, AND LEVENSON, S M Effect of vitamin C deficiency on healed wounds *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med*, **82**: 95, 1953
- 34 PORTER, K R Josiah Macy, Jr Foundation, *Conf on the Connective Tissue*, 2nd meeting, New York, N Y, May 24-25, 1951
- 35 RAGAN, C The physiology of the connective tissue (loose areolar) *Ann Rev Physiol*, **14**: 51, 1952
- 36 ROUS, P Parabiosis as a test for circulating antibodies in cancer *J Exper Med*, **11**: 810, 1909
- 37 ROUS, P Transmission of a malignant new growth by means of a cell-free filtrate *J A M A*, **56**: 198, 1911
- 38 ROUX, W Cited in *Cancer Bull*, **6**: 84, 1954
- 39 ROYSTER, H P, MCCAIN, L I, AND SLOAN, A Wound healing in early ambulation *Surg Gynec & Obst*, **86**: 565, 1948
- 40 SAUERBRUCH, F, AND HEYDE, M Über Parabiose künstlich vereinigter Warmbluter *Munchen med Wchnschr*, **55**: 153, 1908
- 41 SCHOFIELD, A L A preliminary report on the use of preserved homogenous cartilage implants *Brit J Plast Surg*, **6**: 26, 1953
- 42 THOMPSON, W D, RAYDIN, I S, AND FRANK, I L Effect of hypoproteinemia on wound disruption *Arch Surg*, **36**: 500, 1938
- 43 VOORHEES, A B, JR, JARETZKI, A, III, AND BLAKEMORE, A H The use of tubes constructed from vinyon "N" cloth in bridging arterial defects, preliminary report *Ann Surg*, **135**: 332, 1952

Chapter 5

Surgical Microbiology

Far from having been abolished by antibiotics surgical infections continue to represent major sources of morbidity and mortality. To be sure many of the most feared infections, such as staphylococcal and streptococcal septicemia, were brought under control during the 1940's, and most streptococcal infections still respond promptly to properly selected antimicrobial agents. In the case of staphylococci however the incidence of resistant strains has increased rapidly now almost 80 per cent of those isolated from hospital wound infections fail to respond to penicillin. Accordingly staphylococcal septicemia is again a common and often a lethal surgical complication. Thus, while the epidemiology of bacterial infections has changed over the past 20 years the problems before the microbiologist were never more challenging than now.

The primary purpose of this chapter is then to outline certain of the physiologic relationships which exist between microorganisms and the host. A second objective is to survey certain of the therapeutic requirements encountered in the management of surgical infections.

Relationships between Microorganisms and Host

In the preparation of the discussion which follows liberal use was made of the penetrating monograph by Dubos⁸ entitled *Biochemical Determinants of Microbial Diseases*. The following questions will be considered in this discussion: (1) when does bacterial infection become bacterial disease? (2) normal mechanisms for clearing bacteria

from the tissues, (3) a consideration of bacterial invasion—criteria of pathogenicity, (4) the increased susceptibility of the diabetic patient to infection, (5) immunity and inflammation and (6) systemic effects of infection.

When Does Bacterial Infection Become Bacterial Disease?

There is now abundant evidence that many of the organisms which cause the usual surgical infections are commonly harbored by normal subjects. For example, streptococci, staphylococci, colon bacilli, anaerobic organisms, tubercle bacilli and certain viruses such as that of herpes simplex are normally found within or upon the human body. Therefore, unlike the situation which existed during the nineteenth century when great epidemics of pestilence swept whole countries with a heavy mortality, the present day organisms that are the source of much morbidity and of significant mortality are microorganisms that are "endemic" in most healthy individuals. In other words, the physician in the present part of the twentieth century is not primarily concerned with cholera or yellow fever or even typhoid fever or smallpox; he is concerned with staphylococcal and streptococcal infections and to a declining extent tuberculosis. Viruses are prominent. So while the problems which confront the microbiologist are less spectacular than previously, they are not greatly reduced in over all dimensions.

It has been suggested that, now that the goal of modifying or limiting epidemics has been reached it is time to acknowledge that

mortality rates no longer constitute satisfactory yardsticks with which to measure the importance of medical problems.⁹ If one were to use as a criterion the amount of life spoiled by disease, instead of measuring only that destroyed by death, or the number of days lost from pleasure and work because of so-called minor ailments, or merely the sums paid for drugs, hospitals, and doctors' bills—then the toll exacted by microbial pathogens would still loom large indeed. "Microbial diseases have not been conquered. Rather, scientists have resigned themselves to the

MICROBIAL INFECTION VS MICROBIAL DISEASE

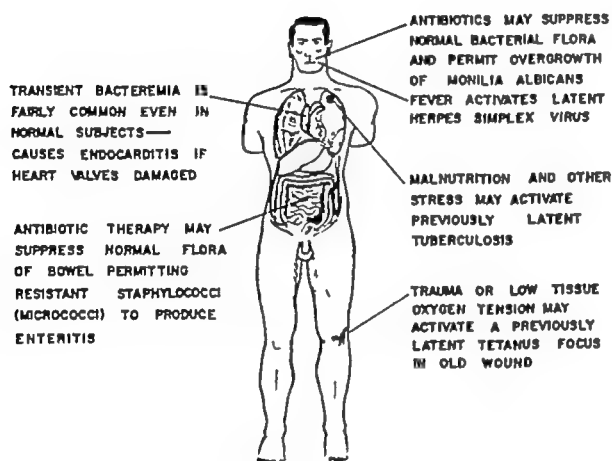


Fig 41 There is a vast difference between the mere presence of microorganisms in the body, on the one hand, and overt disease due to these microorganisms, on the other



Fig 42 Multiple and extensive suppurative foci of the buttocks. For many years this patient had drained much pus each day from multiple fistulous or sinus tracts. While the mortality under such circumstances is not great, the morbidity due to such chronic infections is enormous.

belief that a relative protection against them can be had only at the cost of a huge ransom."

In considering further the types of infections which should be of the greatest interest to the modern scientists and microbiologists, Dubos points out that the major effort should no longer be directed toward the study of diseases which produce a highly lethal exotoxin, such as diphtheria and tetanus. Attention should be focused on the common microorganisms which do not manifest themselves by any dramatic effect but cause slow, low grade intoxications. These low grade toxins interfere with the optimum performance of everyday life, and may cause an enormous amount of inefficiency (*Fig 42*).

BLOOD STREAM INVASION Certain types of microorganisms are constantly present in the intestinal tract and in other parts of the normal body, and it has long been realized that from time to time some of these organisms do invade the blood stream, for even apparently healthy human beings and animals may occasionally exhibit a positive blood culture. Even so, while such brief bacteremias may cause no obvious symptomatology, in reality they probably do have an adverse effect upon health. It will be seen later in this discussion that relatively small amounts of the cellular constituents of gram-negative bacilli can be responsible for a large variety of disease manifestations, ranging from a febrile response to profound disturbances in sugar metabolism. We have cited the case of a patient (*p 18*) who developed diabetes mellitus, requiring almost 100 units of insulin per day in addition to a strict diet, all this while he was being treated intermittently for an infected lung cyst. After the cyst had been surgically excised to simplify management of the diabetes, the absence of chronic infection was followed by a regression of the diabetes until no insulin was required and the diet was a matter of no particular annoyance.

STIMULI WHICH MAY PRODUCE OVERT DISEASE
LATENT INFECTION (*Fig 41*) First, the herpes simplex is probably acquired

by the individual early in life and requires only the presence of fever, however induced, to become active and produce the common fever blister of the lip. Second, starvation and other privations of prisoners of war commonly resulted in a marked increase in tuberculosis among these individuals who unquestionably had, for the most part, carried tuberculosis organisms most of their lives. As soon as these individuals were released from prison and given better environmental conditions and adequate food, but given no specific drug therapy, the tuberculosis usually improved rapidly. As an example of a highly specific nutritional relationship, a diet deficient in pantothenic acid permits the overt manifestation of previously latent corynebacterium infection in albino rats. Third, whole body irradiation of sufficient degree results in an impairment of the antibacterial defenses of the body and produces a bacteremia and toxemia which may result in death. This emphasizes the fact that while the barrier constituted by the epithelium of the skin or intestine is an important one, it does not constitute the only protection against invasion by microorganisms; for this barrier is intact following whole body irradiation. In the tissues and other body fluids there are multiple antimicrobial agents as will be described which are probably more important in defending the body against bacteria than is the skin or the intestinal mucosa. Fourth, there is a greater incidence of fungous infections of the mouth in patients receiving antibiotic therapy than is normally the case. It appears that the new microbial population which follows in the wake of the microbial flora which was present prior to the administration of the antibiotic permits the fungi, notably *Candida albicans*, to multiply rapidly; the fungus is then able to cause disease where normally, even though it is probably present in the mouth, it does not do so.

An additional example of the fact that the administration of antibiotics may so alter the normal flora as to allow the overgrowth of one organism is the now generally recog-

nized staphylococcal enterocolitis (p 144).

BACTERIOPHAGE. A circumstance which militates against bacterial growth is illustrated by the relationship that exists between the bacterium and the bacteriophage which the organism itself may carry. In nature, many bacterial species, termed "lysogenic," carry an inactive form of one or several bacteriophages potentially capable of causing lysis of the bacterium itself. The inactive form of the bacteriophage (prophage) is apparently reproduced with ease by bacterial division without causing any detectable disturbance in the bacterial cell. However, if the bacterial cell be irradiated, it will frequently be lysed. This may be due to the fact that the prophage renders the bacterium more sensitive to the radiation or that the radiation renders the bacterium susceptible to the prophage or that both circumstances are required for the lytic phenomenon. To complicate the matter still further, it has been shown that in some cases the activating effect of radiation can take place only in media of certain composition, thus rendering the problem of the etiologic determination of the disease lysis still further obscure.²⁰

Phage activity may of course alter the capacity of the bacterium to produce disease and phages are employed for typing organisms such as staphylococci.

Normal Mechanisms for Clearing Bacteria from the Tissues

The intestinal tract, the skin, and the respiratory tract normally contain large numbers of a variety of bacterial forms. From time to time some of these bacteria penetrate into the blood stream causing a transient bacteremia, but they do not cause overt infection. On the other hand, if an organ becomes damaged, as with rheumatic damage to the valves of the heart, these agents (which are normally present and which are considered to enter the blood stream innocuously at other times) may cause a disease such as subacute bacterial endocarditis.

Rates at which bacteria can be removed from the blood stream were studied by Price and his associates³⁴ They found that if organisms were infused at a rate of less than 1000 organisms per minute, no bacteremia could be demonstrated by blood culture, if the number of organisms introduced significantly exceeded 1000 per minute, positive blood cultures could be obtained in the dog

Thus, as with experimental tumor "takes," the probability of bacterial infection increases with the size of the dosage In either case the body defenses may be overwhelmed

The organs which filter the bacteria out of the blood stream are the reticuloendothelial elements in such organs as the spleen, liver, bone marrow, and lung

A Consideration of Bacterial Invasion: Criteria of Pathogenicity

The most important difference between a pathogenic organism and a nonpathogenic organism consists, largely, in the ability of the former to multiply within the tissues of the host and to maintain a satisfactory rate of multiplication In other words, the fundamental point of difference is not necessarily that the pathogenic bacterium elaborates a more toxic factor than does the nonpathogenic organism, it is that in a particular setting the one can grow and the other cannot³⁵

INTRACELLULAR PROCESSES It has been noted that most pathogens as well as saprophytes are rapidly engulfed by various types of phagocytic cells, some immediately becoming surrounded by a vacuole and others appearing to remain free within the cytoplasm The chemical changes which occur in the cell as it engulfs the foreign material are largely unknown, but it has been shown that following the engulfment of certain types of foreign particles and bacteria the intracellular pH falls to a very low level, at least in the phagocytic vacuole In addition, there are studies which suggest that cellular metabolism is modified in such diseases as diabetes, and thus that it can be altered by hormones (see below) Yet, to acquire de-

tailed knowledge of intracellular infection which as Dubos points out represent largest number and the most important the infectious diseases, a type of chemical analysis is required for which methods have not yet been developed.

ATTENUATED MICROORGANISMS NATURE REDUCED PATHOGENICITY It is of importance to realize that the so-called "attenuated" "avirulent" organisms which are often used to produce active immunity against a virulent infection are attenuated or avirulent only in the sense that their proliferation *in vivo* is not sufficiently extensive or prolonged to lead to serious disease In this sense, let us compare bovine and human types of virulent tubercle bacilli Injection of a very few bacilli of either type in guinea pigs or mice results in a fatal outcome, but it is only the bovine bacillus which can cause progressive tuberculosis in cattle or rabbits While bacilli of the human type do grow in the tissues of cattle or rabbit during the first few days even more rapidly than do the bovine organisms—the human bacilli in these animals do not continue to grow and to give rise to progressive disease Thus, the infection brings about in the tissues of cattle and rabbits a change which is more antagonistic to the human than to the bovine bacilli

THE SOIL The importance of the "soil" in determining virulence is particularly striking in the case of certain viruses Some viruses reproduce freely only in nerve tissue (neurotropic viruses) while others grow more readily in viscera (viscerotropic viruses) If monkeys are inoculated peripherally with a mixture of viscerotropic and neurotropic yellow fever virus, the viscerotropic virus multiplies more rapidly than does the neurotropic, whereas the reverse is true if the mixture is injected into the brains of mice Such differences emphasize the fact that "the reasons for the differences in virulence between the vaccine and virulent strains of the viruses under consideration must be looked for in differences in the normal biochemical environment of certain specific organs"

Evidence strongly suggests that the more virulent the strain, the more resistant it is to the growth inhibitory conditions and substances that prevail at the site of the lesion as the result of inflammatory and immune processes.

There are other important processes which are active at the site of infection. Phagocytes, antibodies, or antimicrobial drugs do not protect effectively unless they come into contact with bacteria under the proper physicochemical conditions. Moreover, antibodies appear not to function within intact phagocytic cells and may not react with homologous antigens at an acid reaction. Wood⁴⁸ showed that phagocytosis is much more effective on tissue surfaces than in edema fluid, and antibacterial drugs that are highly effective in the extracellular environment may fail to affect microorganisms within phagocytic cells. It is important to develop means of testing the effect of antibiotic drugs upon bacteria under the physicochemical conditions which may obtain within the body, rather than in an artificial culture medium *in vitro*.

The Increased Susceptibility of the Diabetic Patient to Infection

It has long been a common observation that the patients with diabetes mellitus, particularly those who are not well controlled, have an increased susceptibility to bacterial infection. The question arises as to whether the metabolic disorders occasioned by the inadequate insulin supply make available to invading infectious agents substances not normally present in significant amounts in the tissues to permit their growth or whether on the other hand, immune defenses are impaired.

There is some experimental evidence to support the hypothesis that bacterial growth is facilitated in diabetics, and the fact that changes in metabolism can permit the growth of invading bacteria was demonstrated by Dubos⁴⁹ and others. Animals whose metabolism had been disrupted by treatment with small doses of thyroid ex-

TABLE 6 SOME REASONS WHY DIABETES PREDISPOSES TO INFECTION

- 1 Subtle endocrine changes may impair body defenses (e.g. spontaneous infections during cortisone therapy)
- 2 An increased blood sugar level may be less important in permitting bacterial multiplication than is the acidosis which develops in general; however acidosis is inimical to bacterial growth
- 3 Phagocytes in diabetic rabbits retain unimpaired the ability to engulf pneumococci but their bactericidal power for these microorganisms is impaired
- 4 Evidence has been obtained that the leukocytes of diabetics have an impaired glycolytic power toward bacteria a situation that reverts to normal upon the addition of insulin (see text) thus even the leukocytes can be diabetic

tract or dinitrophenol, or by adding to the diet certain substances such as citrate and pyruvate became more susceptible to infection with tubercle bacilli, staphylococci and Friedlander's bacillus. Adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) and cortisone have also been shown to facilitate the invasion of certain organisms.

It has been suggested that the whole blood of diabetic patients, regardless of its sugar content, has a weaker bactericidal power than normal blood, and that this loss of activity is related more to acidosis than to any other biochemical disturbance accompanying diabetes. Evidence has also been presented that while phagocytes of rabbits made diabetic by alloxan treatment retain unimpaired the ability to engulf pneumococci, they lose some of their bactericidal power for the organisms. There is some indication that the leukocytes of diabetics have an impaired glycolytic power which can be returned to normal by the addition of insulin.⁵⁰ "Even the leukocytes are diabetic!"

Immunity and Inflammation: Further Comment

ACIDITY There is suggestive evidence that variations in intracellular acidity may be one of the means by which bacterial cells

are able to bring about the death of certain bacteria, but it is to be remembered that many organisms normally exist within cells and are able to multiply and to cause disease in this situation. That the ingestion of foreign material by the cell results in changes in the acidity within the cell was first recognized by Metchnikoff in 1905, when he followed the change of color of litmus particles within the cell.⁹

The fact that lactic acid is quite bactericidal at an acid reaction and that lactic acid is an important product of the normal metabolism of phagocytic cells lends further support to the possibility that alterations in pH within phagocytic cells may be bactericidal. Moreover, it is possible that pathogenic organisms are more resistant to changes in acidity than are nonpathogens, this may be one of the factors which permits them to invade—and, as we have seen, the ability to invade is one of the primary factors in virulence. In decomposing tissue, for example in necrosis caused by bacterial invasion, fatty acids and other acids are released and accumulate, and they may, in themselves, exert a bacteriostatic and even a bactericidal effect on surrounding organisms.

INTRACELLULAR ENZYMES Many investigators have described the presence of intracellular enzymes, and those contained in leukocytes have been intensively studied. Leukocytes contain proteases, lipases, esterases, saccharidases, oxidases, and many other enzymes, many of which may attack one or the other part of the bacterial composition. Leukocytes are particularly able to produce lysozyme, which has bactericidal and lytic properties. Lysozyme appears to be especially abundant in granulocytes.

BLOOD FLOW OXYGEN CONCENTRATION, AND IONIC CONTENT Obviously the changes in blood flow and in the permeability of the vascular bed will alter many factors, such as the oxygen supply or lack thereof, as well as the accumulation or dissipation of acid materials which could influence the invasion of microorganisms. There is also evi-

dence that the liberation of potassium ion which occurs following destruction of body cells, may be a part of the trigger mechanism which initiates the process of inflammation and the defense against microbial invasion.⁹

Effect of Chemical Environment on Toxin Production It is known that, by altering the oxygen or the carbon dioxide tension surrounding a bacterial culture, the organism can be made to grow without producing toxin of the usual strength. There are also other properties which the organism may normally possess in the optimal medium, but which may be suppressed or modified by varying the composition of the medium in which the organism is growing. Manifestly this is important in considering means by which the body may, by altering the local soil at the site of bacterial invasion, modify the deleterious effect of the microorganisms. This represents an additional type of immunity against bacterial invasion.

THE FIBRIN BARRIER In the foregoing discussion it was emphasized that acquired resistance can operate not only through a direct action on the infective agent but also by creating around it an environment which is unfavorable to survival of the microorganism, or to its multiplication in sufficient numbers to produce a disease, or by altering its ability to produce its usual toxins. The sum total of these influences represents immunity, and one of the most constant effects of the immunologic response is to accelerate and intensify the inflammatory processes around the infective agent and its products.⁹

Multiple processes assist in eliciting the inflammatory response during infection. Among these are the release by microorganisms of substances which are chemotactic for leukocytes, the antigen-antibody as well as allergic reactions with their attendant local production of pharmacologically active substances, the various factors controlling diapedesis, and others.

We shall limit the further discussion of the inflammatory defense here to a single

process, that of fibrin deposition. On the one hand, the fibrin network provides interlacing pathways throughout the tissue spaces distended with fluid, thus permitting the phagocytes to move readily and to accumulate at the site of infection, on the other hand, the fibrin clot tends to block the various channels and to wall off the infected area, in this way retarding the spread of the invading agent. Attention has been called to the fact that when serum is filtered under pressure or diffuses across a fibrin membrane, albumin passes through while the larger globulin molecule is concentrated at the membrane. Antibodies, being globulins, do not go through the membrane and remain localized as a protective influence. Certain toxins, such as diphtheria toxin, diffuse slowly, while most bacterial products do not diffuse through the membrane at all. Bacteria themselves tend to be held back by the fibrin membrane, while leukocytes pass readily through it.⁹ It is apparent that the presence of the fibrin conglum is of much importance in determining the chemical and biologic circumstances which exist within the lesion and which may act upon the invading organism. Nevertheless, this protective barrier can be destroyed. Certain of the invasive capacities of organisms such as streptococci are due to the fact that these organisms have the capacity to produce enzymes which will lyse these fibrin clots and other barriers and permit the organisms to spread. Streptokinase and streptodornase are familiar examples.

Systemic Effects of Infection

It is now in order to consider the effects upon the body that are brought about by the bacterial invasion, since these effects are rarely due to the morphologic size, shape, or other characteristics of the organism. The organic constituents and the chemical products produced by microorganisms which cause the deleterious effects in the host include a variety of chemical substances such as proteins, lipids, polysaccharides, and many other smaller molecules. Moreover,

TABLE 7 SOME ANTIMICROBIAL DEFENSES OF THE BODY

I Local

- A Fibrin barrier—Albumin traverses the inflammatory membrane but the larger globulin molecule carrying antibodies is arrested, to neutralize bacterial products at the periphery of the infection.
- B Leukocytes—Bacteria are engulfed, lysis of leukocytes may trigger the local inflammatory response.
- C Acidosis—Local products of tissue necrosis result in acidosis which retards multiplication of many microorganisms.
- D Oxygen concentration—The toxin produced by an organism can be altered quantitatively and qualitatively by local alterations in tissue oxygen content.
- E Enzyme mechanisms—The effects of coagulase from coagulase positive staphylococci and of streptokinase and streptodornase from streptococci are important considerations in the local picture; the amounts of these enzymes liberated are influenced by tissue reactions.

II General

- A Febrile response—Fever retards growth of some microorganisms.
- B Bone marrow reaction—Increased numbers of leukocytes are made available.
- C General antibody (immune) response—A complex defensive process.
- D General circulatory and endocrine reaction—Infection often flourishes where blood supply is poorest.

different substances vary profoundly in the manner by which they adversely affect various functions and structures of the body. They may represent *endotoxins* or *exotoxins*, and some of the substances are toxic for a wide variety of different cells of the body whereas others are quite specific, such as neurotropic microbes.

It is not possible to review in detail the specific processes by which bacteria exert toxic effects upon the body (even if all were known), but a mere listing may suffice to suggest certain of these mechanisms. One form of toxicity is that resulting from *metabolic competitions*. A second mode of effect is through *enzyme toxins*, such as the leucithinase of *Clostridium welchii*. This enzyme

is the chief cause of toxemia in gas gangrene, and may be a factor in death from strangulation obstruction. In the presence of calcium it is capable of hydrolyzing lecithin rapidly and sphingomyelin slowly. Some enzymes of practical importance are hyaluronidase, produced by many bacterial species, collagenase, which is formed by certain strains of *Clostridia* and can bring about disintegration of collagen fibers, streptokinase, which is the product of Group A streptococci that converts the protease precursor in plasma (plasminogen) into its active proteolytic form plasmin and thus renders it capable of causing dissolution of fibrin clots, and staphylocoagulase, which is produced by virulent staphylococci.

SOME ADDITIONAL PHYSIOLOGIC DISTURBANCES PRODUCED BY ENDOTOXIN The physiologic disturbances produced by endotoxins, which are the factors elaborated by most bacteria of current surgical importance, were reviewed by Thomas,⁴³ who stated

"The term endotoxin will be used in this review to designate, as a class, the relatively homogeneous group of toxic substances which exist as phosphorus-containing, polysaccharide-protein-lipid complexes in the intact cells of a wide variety of gram-negative microorganisms, or are liberated into culture media during autolysis of the bacteria."

TABLE 8 ENDOTOXINS SOME PERTINENT FACTS

- 1 The chemical nature of the endotoxin produced has usually little relationship to the morphologic characteristics of the microorganism
- 2 It is the similarities between endotoxins, rather than the differences, that are most striking. The endotoxins of a wide variety of gram-negative microorganisms contain very similar phosphorus-containing, polysaccharide-protein-lipid complexes. These materials are liberated into the culture medium upon the death and autolysis of the bacteria
- 3 The usual effects of the injection of an endotoxin in sufficient dosage are fever, circulatory collapse, hyperglycemia, and leukopenia followed by leukocytosis
- 4 It is difficult to exclude endotoxin as an etiologic factor in many cases of clinical shock

He emphasized that there has grown up the misunderstanding that gram-negative bacteria produce a wide variety of toxic materials, all differing in their properties as well as their names, that because of the multiplicity of gram-negative bacteria which contain endotoxins, the basic resemblance between the materials is not readily appreciated. Yet, endotoxins with similar properties can be extracted from numerous unrelated species of bacteria, and it is the similarity between endotoxins from different bacteria that is remarkable, rather than the dissimilarity.

The endotoxins produce in experimental animals a syndrome which is rather typical physiologically and pathologically. Although the severity of the reaction produced may vary because of different potency of the particular preparation of endotoxin, the basic pattern of the effects produced in experimental animals by various endotoxins is qualitatively indistinguishable. These effects include (1) a profound vasomotor disturbance terminating in shock, characterized by intense, generalized arteriolar constriction, (2) a metabolic disturbance consisting of hyperglycemia followed by hypoglycemia, abrupt depletion of liver glycogen, and excessive amounts of lactic acid in the blood and tissues, (3) high fever, sometimes followed by hypothermia, (4) extreme polymorphonuclear leukopenia, followed by leukocytosis, (5) the production of hemorrhagic necrosis in the substance of rapidly growing tumors, and (6) with sublethal doses, the rapid appearance of a state of resistance against the same and other endotoxins. In addition, the endotoxins produce the local and generalized Shwartzman reactions, characterized by hemorrhagic necrosis in the skin and bilateral cortical necrosis of the kidneys when two properly spaced injections of sublethal amounts of endotoxin are administered.⁴⁴

VASCULAR EFFECTS It is of particular interest to note that the effects produced by the injection of endotoxins in many animals result in shock, since Fine and his associ-

ates¹⁴ have emphasized that irreversible traumatic and hemorrhagic shock may be due, in part, to the absorption of bacterial products from injured or anoxic tissues. Bowel perforation may produce shock (Fig 43).

An extremely virulent form of shock may result from the transfusion of blood contaminated by staphylococci. The writer once observed a patient who went into profound shock shortly following the beginning of a blood transfusion. The procedure was immediately stopped, the crossmatch checked, and the donor blood cultured. The crossmatch proved correct but heavy staphylococcal growth was demonstrated. Unfortunately, the patient died a few hours following the transfusion. The blood pressure had never risen above shock levels, despite all therapy.

EFFECTS OF ENDOTOXIN ON CARBOHYDRATE METABOLISM. A striking effect of endotoxin on carbohydrate has been described by many investigators, and there is general agreement that the following events occur with regularity during intoxication by endotoxin. The blood sugar becomes elevated within 1 or 2 hours after injection, and hyperglycemia persists for several hours. In severely poisoned animals this is followed by extreme hypoglycemia during the terminal stages. The liver glycogen becomes greatly reduced within 1 or 2 hours after injection, and the lactate content of the blood and tissues becomes much elevated. There may be a concomitant rise and subsequent decrease in pyruvate. Evans and Zeckwer,¹⁵ in 1927 found that the effect of endotoxin on carbohydrate metabolism was completely prevented by ergotamine and reversed by insulin. They postulated that the hyperglycemia was the result of central stimulation of the adrenals and upon the injection of suspensions of *Escherichia coli* into adrenal ectomized rabbits, they observed that instead of hyperglycemia a profound fall in blood sugar levels occurred, accompanied by convulsions and death of the animals.

THE PYROGENIC EFFECT OF ENDOTOXIN. In



Fig 43 Fatal "bacteremic" (endotoxin?) shock. This patient had been sent home on medical therapy for proved amebiasis. Several days following discharge he was seized with severe right lower abdominal pain and was readmitted to the hospital in deep shock. 3 hours later Laparotomy revealed that at two sites a large patch of right colon wall had disintegrated permitting profuse contamination of the peritoneal cavity with liquid fecal material. The involved colon as it appears above was simply exteriorized over a glass rod despite all therapy. The shock proved irreversible and he died 6 hours following surgery.

fection characteristically causes fever. This property of gram negative bacterial endotoxins has been investigated intensively by physiologists for many years. According to Thomas,¹⁶ the property of endotoxin which causes fever does not appear to be one which is independent of the properties of the materials which produce the other, more drastic effects such as those upon the cardiovascular system. Substances liberated by destroyed leukocytes may also cause fever.

The mechanism of pyrogen induced fever has also been the subject of a considerable volume of contradictory literature. Suffice it to say that, on the one hand, it has been suggested the fever results largely from a reduced rate of heat elimination¹⁷ due to the marked sympathomimetic effect of the endotoxin which results in peripheral vascular constriction and thus a decreased volume of skin vasculature which could result in the usual cooling. On the other hand there are those who suggest that peripheral vaso-

constriction is of less importance than the actual overproduction of heat, which is considered by them to be the primary factor in fever. Evidence which we obtained in post-operative patients suggested that these individuals sweated less readily than they had preoperatively.¹⁹

Leukopenia is followed by leukocytosis. Later, *anemia* may appear. Wintrobe and his associates⁴⁵ published a series of articles dealing with their studies of the anemia which develops in infection. In brief, they found that both hematopoiesis and the life span of the individual red cell were diminished. Not only were fewer red cells being produced, but also the life span of those that were produced was diminished in length.

Central nervous system manifestations are among the outstanding effects of certain endotoxins.

Clinical Infections and Their Control

The following questions will be considered in this discussion: (1) interpretation of blood cultures; (2) suppuration and drainage; (3) antibiotics: general biologic principles; (4) use of antibiotics in clinical infections; (5) some surgical infections of special importance; (6) use of ACTH and cortisone in infections; (7) chemotherapy of tuberculosis; (8) fungus diseases; and (9) tetanus infection and management.

Interpretation of Blood Cultures

In beginning a review of certain clinical infections, together with the physiologic circumstances under which they occur and can be controlled, it is fitting that the positive blood culture be considered first, particularly as it often denotes an infection which is no longer under control and requires the most strenuous treatment.

Blood cultures may be positive when overt disease is absent as we have seen. Arnold¹ showed that by introducing highly acid chyme into the small intestine the bowel was rendered more permeable to bacteria and that a bacteremia resulted. He further

showed that certain physiologic alterations in the body, such as adaptations to extreme temperature, whether artificially induced or caused by disease, could result in bacteremia. Similarly, Reith and Squier³⁵ reported a study of 293 subjects who had blood drawn for culture at random intervals while they were performing their usual daily occupations. All had been carefully examined and had had dental x-rays. Nevertheless, positive cultures resulted from 113 of the 293 subjects. In 48 the bacteria were considered to be frank contaminants, but in 65 they were considered to have been in the blood at the time of culture. Moreover, an increase in positive blood cultures was noted during the months when upper respiratory tract infections were common. As early as 1904 Horder²⁰ observed the fact that the agent in most cases of subacute bacterial endocarditis was derived from the mouth, and it has since been amply confirmed that alpha streptococci can be found in the blood following tooth extractions in many patients. Murray and Moosenick³² demonstrate positive blood cultures from patients with chronic dental disease after they had chewed paraffin for ½ hour. Others have indicated that the bacteremia following oral manipulations is related more to the degree of trauma than to the intensity of oral sepsis.

It has been shown that the trauma of operative procedures in the neighborhood of infections, or during the drainage of infections, may result in a blood culture positive for organisms identical with those found in the focus of infection. For example, Seifert³⁸ reported that 10 minutes after surgical drainage of a variety of abscesses, positive blood cultures with organisms identical to those in the abscesses were obtained in 45 per cent of his cases, and similar findings have since been reported by others. As mentioned earlier, whole body irradiation often results in a bacteremia which may cause death but which can be controlled in considerable measure by liberal amounts of antibiotics. The administration of ACTH and cortisone in lobar pneumonia may sup-

press toxic manifestations while the blood culture remains positive

In reviewing 5000 blood cultures at the Los Angeles County Hospital, Kotin¹⁰ attempted to correlate the results of the cultures, where positive, with the clinical situation and with the likelihood that the organism isolated was the cause of the clinical circumstances. His conclusion was that, as one might anticipate, the results of blood culture can be definitive in establishing a clinical diagnosis and in determining the prognosis in any given case. Past clinical confusion in the interpretation of blood cultures was believed due to several factors: (1) an unawareness of bacteremic states during apparent health and in association with minimal trauma; (2) preconceived ideas of certain "nonpathogenic" attributes of certain organisms; (3) disregard of special considerations of pediatric bacteriology; (4) lack of correlation with associated diseases in the host; (5) lack of a standard technique of blood culture; and (6) failure to compensate for antibiotic and chemotherapeutic agents. Organisms recovered from the blood during health and after minimal trauma were viewed as chiefly and usually "nonpathogenic." The ability of these bacteria to multiply in the blood stream was usually low; their power to produce a septicemic state limited, and their presence transient. Even so these "nonpathogens" may constitute a distinct threat to patients with chronic heart disease, particularly those with valvular heart disease.

Kotin emphasized that pediatric bacteriology as applied to blood culture, requires special consideration, since organisms effectively overcome by adults can be morbid or even fatal to infants in spite of treatment. In his series all the cases of *Staphylococcus albus* coagulase negative, were found in cultures from pediatric patients. Furthermore gram negative bacilli also were considered to have an increased pathogenicity for infants and children with their limited immune mechanisms. Coliform bacilli were present alone or as part of a

multiple invasion in 16 cases in children in sufficient numbers to indicate blood stream invasion during life.

Another matter of interest was the recurrent finding that a high incidence of positive blood cultures was observed in patients with diabetes and azotemia, especially with regard to the production of disease by facultative pathogens. It was seen above that the immune response may be impaired in both these disease states.

Suppuration and Drainage

Purulent collections of significance must be drained adequately to achieve prompt cure, regardless of what antibiotics are used. This fact is well understood, but one important point in technique is often overlooked and leads to disappointment with the results of the surgical management. *The drainage tract must remain open until the collection has been evacuated completely and the space obliterated with tissue.* A patient we treated illustrated this point very well indeed. Following a cholecystectomy he had developed an abscess anteriorly and superiorly, between the dome of the liver and the diaphragm. The original surgeon had explored the abdomen and drained the collection; yet, all drains were removed within a few days. After a few weeks the patient again began to run fever but this time went to another surgeon, who again explored and drained—but again the drains were removed promptly, and signs and symptoms of an abscess recurred. When he came to the University Hospital, almost 18 months after the original biliary surgery he was febrile, he had lost a great deal of weight, he was getting a divorce from his wife, he had lost all confidence in doctors, and he was convinced he would never get well. However we too drained the huge space, partially filled with pus and necrotic debris, but when the packing was removed postoperatively a 25-cc Foley catheter was introduced into the space. When weeks later the space had closed to the 25-cc size the bag was deflated, but the catheter was still left in place and the

space was irrigated with streptokinase-streptodornase until it had become obliterated. Following this the patient's "psychosis" disappeared, he gained weight, he got his job back, paid his bill, effected a re-approachment with his wife, regained confidence in doctors—and turned out to be a very pleasant person. There was no recurrence.

Antibiotics: General Biologic Principles

The biochemistry of antibiotics has come to constitute a vast field of endeavor, and some of the important papers in this field have been reviewed by Duggar and Singleton¹¹

SYNERGISM IN ANTIBIOTIC THERAPY. The specific use of antibiotics under various circumstances will be further discussed below. Before proceeding, though, certain conceptual considerations should be examined, and the first of these is the matter of whether or not *synergism* exists between different antibiotics. On the basis of their studies, it was concluded by Romansky and his associates³⁶ that antibiotic combinations, *in vitro*, exhibited synergistic action against some strains of bacteria. Jawetz and Gunnison²³ concluded that it was not an easy matter to prove synergism between antibiotics—that is, to demonstrate a large increase in the rate of early bactericidal action and the rate of cure of infections beyond that obtainable by simple additive effects of the agents. Regarding the value of using antibiotics in combination (bearing upon synergism) Dowling, Lepper, and Jackson^{7, 8} offered the following suggestions. First, a single antibiotic can be used effectively in most infections caused by a single organism and, moreover, one of the broad spectrum antibiotics (Aureomycin, oxytetracycline, or chloramphenicol) may be employed in mixed infections of the peritoneum that follow the rupture of a viscus. Occasionally a single antibiotic may be used in a mixed infection in which it has been proved to be of value, for example, peni-

cillin may be used in the treatment of lung abscess.

Second, in certain infections the value combinations of antibiotics has been proved both in the laboratory and the clinic. This group includes streptomycin plus Aureomycin, chloramphenicol, or oxytetracycline in brucellosis, penicillin plus streptomycin in enterococcal endocarditis, and penicillin plus Aureomycin, chloramphenicol or oxytetracycline in serious staphylococcal infection in which the organism is resistant to any of these antibiotics used alone. In these infections the proper combination should be used from the start of therapy and when such a combination succeeds where the individual drugs have not succeeded, one might justifiably say that synergism has been demonstrated. Third, if the infection does not fall into either of these classes, the *in vitro* effect of combinations of various antibiotics should be studied, and the combination showing the greatest synergistic effect should then be used. Fourth, these authors noted that antibiotics may be divided into two groups. Those in Group 1 are primarily bactericidal and they are penicillin, streptomycin, bacitracin and neomycin, those in Group 2 are primarily bacteriostatic and they are Aureomycin, chloramphenicol, and oxytetracycline.

Clearly, it is most difficult to prove synergism conclusively, since so many of the drugs which might be used in combination have individually a broad range of effectiveness and because various physicochemical circumstances have, as we have seen previously, a profound effect upon the capacity for bacteria to multiply. Furthermore, synergism *in vitro* may by no means represent the same circumstances which exist in the human body, where truly controlled data are difficult, if not impossible, to obtain.

ANTAGONISM As noted, the introduction of a wide variety of active chemotherapeutic agents has led to the use of combinations of these agents, with the objective of obtaining

additive or synergistic effects. Nevertheless, there is also evidence that under certain circumstances antimicrobial agents may, when combined, actually have an *antagonistic* action. Lankford and Laev⁷ studied the *in vitro* bacteriostatic action of Aureomycin penicillin and Aureomycin streptomycin mixtures on staphylococci and concluded that synergistic, indifferent, or antagonistic effects could be obtained, depending on the relative concentrations of the two drugs. Spicer¹⁰ also demonstrated *in vitro* an antagonistic effect between certain antibiotics, and he concluded that if an antibiotic to which a bacterial strain was only moderately sensitive were combined with one of high activity, the action of the latter might be impeded.

Again, as with the question of synergism it is not easy to prove in human beings the existence of antagonism between two antibiotics. Moreover to emphasize once again the presence of antagonism in the test tube does not by any means represent the circumstances which may exist in the body.

RESISTANCE OF MICROORGANISMS TO ANTIBIOTICS Not many years after penicillin was available it became apparent that certain strains of bacteria were becoming penicillin resistant. Among the first organisms to exhibit such a resistance were the gonococci, but soon the staphylococci¹¹ were proving refractory to treatment in many instances streptococci showed less capacity to develop resistance. For example when penicillin first came into general use in the United States (1943-1945) 80 to 90 per cent of the strains of staphylococci encountered were quite sensitive to this agent, by 1955 however this therapeutic advantage had been greatly diminished for now in many hospitals from 75 to 85 per cent of the staphylococci isolated from wound and other infections were found resistant to penicillin. Spink⁴¹ reported that the case fatality rate for micrococcal septicemia before the advent of sulfonamides was over 80 per cent and that it was slightly less than this

during the sulfonamide era. In the years 1942 to 1944 just after penicillin was introduced, the fatality rate fell to 28 per cent but by 1955 it had risen again to 50 per cent, regardless of the antibiotic used. Similarly, Howe²¹ reported a progressive increase in the incidence of wound infections from 1.09 per cent in 1949 to 3.98 per cent in 1953 following "clean" operations.

The simplest explanation is that the widespread use of penicillin has resulted in a gradual evolution of mutant strains which can multiply in a medium containing penicillin. While it has been in the treatment of staphylococcal infections that resistance has constituted the most serious cause for concern—in view of the high incidence of staphylococcal infections and the fatal issue of staphylococcal septicemia in many cases—other bacteria exhibit diminished sensitivity in varying degrees. Moreover it is to be remembered that, whereas resistant strains of bacteria are on the increase, the viruses and fungi have never been effectively controlled by antibiotics.

The development of resistance may take place even while the patient is under treatment with antibiotic. For instance it has been noted that a strain of alpha streptococci may increase more than 1000-fold in resistance to penicillin during only a few weeks⁸ though streptococcal resistance is uncommon. Another important clinical manifestation of resistance is that in which the original bacterium was sensitive to the antibiotic, but when this was suppressed other organisms which were originally present in small numbers overgrew the predominant organism. A common example of this is the urinary tract infection in which a *Proteus* replaces *Escherichia coli* while the patient is receiving one of the tetracyclines. Another example which will be discussed in somewhat greater detail subsequently is that of micrococcal dysentery (pseudomembranous enterocolitis), which may appear during the course of treatment of some remote infection. Most of the other micro

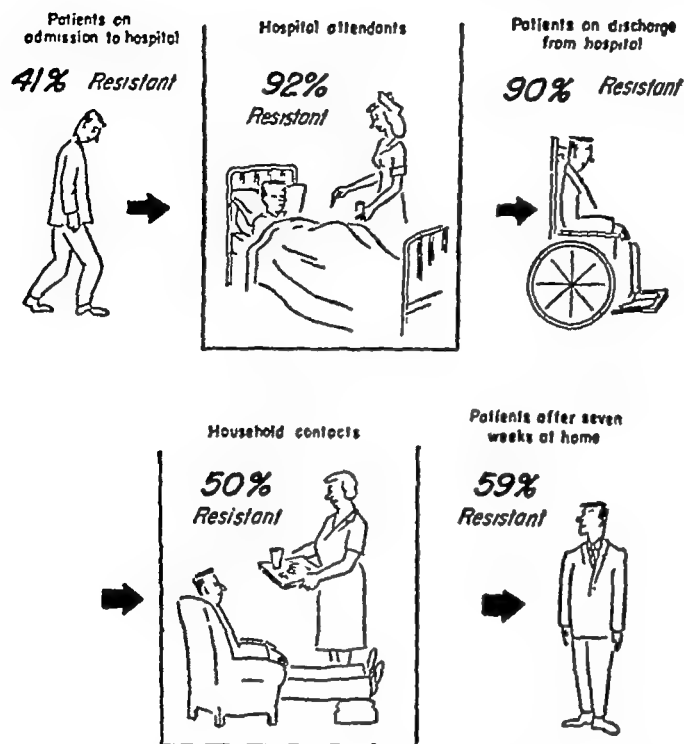


Fig 44 The acquisition of resistant organisms by the patient during hospitalization. Percentage of chlortetracycline-resistant micrococci cultured from the upper respiratory tracts of patients, hospital attendants, and household contacts (From DOWLING, H F, LEPPER, M H, AND JACKSON, G G. Clinical significance of antibiotic-resistant bacteria J A M A, 157: 327, 1955)

organisms in the intestine are suppressed by the use of the antibiotics, and the micrococci (*Staphylococcus aureus*) that are resistant to the antibiotic which is being administered are allowed to grow out in the bowel in enormous numbers.

In general, more resistant strains are encountered in the hospital population, including both patients and hospital attendants, than are encountered in the population at large, unquestionably due to the large amounts of antibiotics which are used in hospitals. In Figure 44 are presented the changes in the number of resistant micrococci encountered under various circumstances. It will be seen that the patient harbored far more resistant organisms on discharge from the hospital than on admission. Such resistance applies both to penicillin and to chlortetracycline (Aureomycin), though in different degrees.

As pointed out, in contrast to the increased development of resistance by

staphylococci, streptococci have not exhibited this phenomenon in a parallel fashion. Although streptococcal resistance is not rare, Berntsen² found that there was no significant change in the penicillin susceptibility of alpha hemolytic streptococci (*Streptococcus viridans*) isolated from patients with bacteremia and bacterial endocarditis. It was noted that the absence of change in such an ubiquitous organism as the alpha streptococcus emphasizes that the problem of the increased prevalence of penicillin-resistant micrococci does not necessarily represent a phenomenon with general application to all penicillin susceptible microbial species.

Cross-resistance to antibiotics has further limited the effective antibiotic armamentarium. In brief, it has been found that resistance to one antibiotic may be transferred to resistance to other antibiotics, though by no means to all antibiotics. Furthermore, the matter of the development of resistance varies considerably from one antibiotic to another. In a report by Haig Wilcox, and Finland,¹⁸ serial subcultures were carried out in media containing streptomycin, neomycin or no antibiotic, and the resulting bacterial strains were tested for sensitivity to both streptomycin and neomycin and also to six other antibiotics. The organisms which had been transferred to antibiotic free media retained their original sensitivity to both antibiotics. The repeat subcultures in media containing streptomycin or neomycin resulted in increased resistance to the homologous antibiotic in most but not in every instance. The development of neomycin resistance was quite regularly associated with a significant increase in resistance to streptomycin, but the reverse did not occur so often, that is, neomycin resistance developed irregularly and was of relatively low degree in the organism which had become streptomycin resistant.

Use of Antibiotics In Clinical Infection

THE COMMONLY USED ANTIBIOTICS The sulfonamides have largely given way in many

portance to antibiotics. Thus the sulfonamides, while important in some instances, will only be touched upon in the subsequent discussion.

Penicillin This agent represents perhaps the most important single advance in therapy against infection, and it became available to the general medical profession in 1944. It is bacteriostatic in threshold doses (being bactericidal in higher concentrations), it is relatively well absorbed when given orally, it is rapidly absorbed from intramuscular depots, and it is extremely rapidly excreted by the kidneys, a factor which results in marked fluctuation of blood levels. Penicillin is quite soluble and readily penetrates most body tissues, with the exception of the brain, other nervous tissue, and fat. Its precise effect upon the microorganism is obscure, but it appears to cause some subtle derangement of protein synthesis within the bacteria.

Penicillin has a marked selective affinity for gram positive organisms and spirochetes. It is quite effective against *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* and *Neisseria intracellularis*, but it is not effective against gram negative, mycobacterial, rickettsial, protozoal, most viral (exceptions, psittacosis and ornithosis) and fungous infections. It is not as effective in controlling mixed infections as it is in controlling monobacterial infections, largely because certain bacteria have the power to produce an enzyme, *penicillinase* which inactivates the drug. Resistance is most commonly encountered in the staphylococcal and nonhemolytic streptococcal species, and least often in *Neisserian* organisms.

The maintenance of a constant blood level of penicillin is not necessary for satisfactory treatment. Organisms exposed to bacteriostatic concentrations of penicillin cease multiplying and are damaged in such a way that they do not resume normal growth for several hours after the drug has been stopped. The time required for postpenicillin recovery varies from strain to strain with the concentration of penicillin used, and with the duration of the exposure. One im-

portant factor in the effect of penicillin is its accumulation in inflamed tissue.

For the most effective action, penicillin is given intramuscularly or intravenously in adequate dosage, but the oral route is popular with the patient and the expense involved is no longer excessive, as it once was. To produce comparable blood levels, the oral dose must be from three to five times the intramuscular dose. Since different individuals show considerable variation in the absorptive capacity for penicillin, the daily oral dose should probably exceed 250,000 units to be certain that absorption will be satisfactory. Penicillin may be administered by nebulizer, and it has been used locally in joints, pleural cavities, open wounds and around the base of carbuncles.

Streptomycin Streptomycin was isolated from a soil actinomycete (*Streptomyces griseus*) by Waksman and his associates²⁷ in 1944. This agent was for a time the major antibiotic weapon against gram negative organisms and is still a major weapon against the tuberculosis organism. It possesses both a bacteriostatic and a bactericidal action, depending upon its concentration. Because it is not absorbed from the gut, parenteral administration is required to insure adequate serum and tissue levels, whereas it provides an excellent agent for sterilizing the bowel prior to intestinal surgery when it is given by mouth.

When streptomycin is used intramuscularly the drug passes readily from the blood stream into the peritoneal cavity and pleural fluid. Since diffusion of streptomycin into the cerebrospinal fluid (as with penicillin) does not readily occur in normal patients, it is best to employ the intrathecal administration of from 1 to 1.25 mg. per kg. of body weight per day to insure proper levels in meningitis. Nevertheless, there is evidence that in the presence of meningitis streptomycin given intramuscularly can pass more readily into the cerebrospinal fluid.

The dosage of streptomycin is usually on the order of from 1 to 3 gm. per day in divided doses. This dosage should be

duced within a few days, to diminish the risk of VIIIth nerve damage and deafness. To produce high sputum levels of streptomycin, it may be given by nebulizer in doses of 100 mg per day.

Dihydrostreptomycin This relative of streptomycin was introduced in 1948 as a less neurotoxic agent than streptomycin. Unfortunately, it was soon shown that *qualitatively* it had the same toxic effects as did streptomycin, although the *quantitative* effects were less. That is, if given long enough and in sufficient dosage, dihydrostreptomycin may also cause VIIIth nerve damage, but not as readily as streptomycin.

Dihydrostreptomycin is effective against a variety of gram-negative and gram-positive bacteria, being quite similar to streptomycin in this respect, it is used intramuscularly but not intravenously. This agent is considered to be synergistic with penicillin, and a useful combined dose is 0.5 gm with 400,000 units of procaine penicillin daily.

Aureomycin (chlortetracycline) This drug was one of the first broad spectrum antibiotics to be isolated, and was reported by Duggar¹⁰ in 1948. Isolated from a soil actinomycete (*Streptomyces aureofaciens*), it is effective against many gram-positive and gram-negative bacilli, all species of rickettsia, certain viral agents, and protozoa. Of further interest, the feeding of this agent to farm animals may result in larger animals.

Aureomycin is not effective against tuberculosis infection in man, nor against most strains of *Proteus* and *Pseudomonas*. It is supplied in 250-mg capsules for oral administration, and in 100-mg vials for intravenous use. The intravenous dose is approximately one-fourth the oral dose, and it may be given in saline over a 30-minute period at 12-hour intervals. It often causes an inflammation of the vein, particularly will thrombophlebitis result from repeated injections in the same vein, and thus the oral route is used when possible. One may prefer to give the medication with some foodstuff, to diminish the irritation and likelihood of nau-

sea and vomiting and diarrhea which infrequently develop, though this is not usually a major complication. The total dose for adults varies from 1 to 4 gm daily, depending upon the situation, and is usually divided into 250-mg or 500-mg doses. For children, a satisfactory dosage is from 15 to 25 mg per kg of body weight per day in divided doses given with some sweetener which will make the taste more palatable. Aureomycin, unlike streptomycin and penicillin, readily traverses the blood-brain barrier and enters the cerebrospinal fluid as well as pleural fluid. It is irritating locally and should not be given intrathecally, intrapleurally, or by nebulization.²⁸

Chloromycetin (chloramphenicol) This drug was isolated from *Streptomyces venezuelae* in 1947.¹² As with Aureomycin, it exerts a bacteriostatic but not a bactericidal effect. It is particularly used in the treatment of typhoid fever, the rickettsial diseases, and certain of the gram-negative urinary tract infections. It is of use in the treatment of pertussis in brucellosis when given in combination with streptomycin and in relapsing fever, bacillary dysentery, and *Hemophilus influenzae* infections.

Chloromycetin is supplied in 250-mg capsules for oral administration, and is readily absorbed from the gut. The recommended initial dose is 60 mg per kg of body weight, with a maintenance dose of from 0.25 to 0.5 gm every 3 to 6 hours during the febrile period, and for 5 to 10 days thereafter. For infants and children a satisfactory dose is from 100 to 200 mg per kg of body weight per day, given in divided doses.

Terramycin (oxytetracycline) Terramycin is an active antibiotic isolated from the metabolic products of *Streptomyces rimosus*. It has a wide range of activity against both gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria, and it is rapidly absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract, producing significant and continuous blood concentrations for periods up to 6 hours. The principal route of excretion is by the kidneys, and it appears in the urine in an active state. How-

ever, relatively large amounts of Terramycin are also excreted in the feces. The drug is widely distributed throughout the body.

In general, Terramycin has a spectrum range similar to that of Aureomycin. For oral use, capsules of 200 mg. are available and the drug may be given in a flavored syrup for children. It may also be given intramuscularly and intravenously, and is available in vials containing 100 mg., 250 mg. and 500 mg. respectively. The latter amounts are easily given intravenously and the former intramuscularly. A satisfactory dosage in children is from 6 to 12 mg. per kg. of body weight per 24 hours given in two divided doses. Terramycin does not diffuse readily into the cerebrospinal fluid.

Erythromycin. A particular advantage of this agent is that it is effective against some strains of bacilli, especially staphylococci, that are resistant to penicillin. *Micrococcus pyogenes* (*Staphylococcus aureus*) is now commonly insensitive to penicillin, streptomycin, chlorotetracycline (Aureomycin) and oxytetracycline (Terramycin) and has produced fatal cases of ileocolitis (pseudomembranous enterocolitis). In uncontrolled infections due to this organism erythromycin has in many instances proved to be of great value. In fact many have considered it advisable to reserve erythromycin for staphylococcal infections which do not respond to the other antibiotics.

A daily dose of from 20 to 25 mg. per kg. of body weight is recommended for the average adult patient. When the oral dose exceeds 400 mg. every 6 hours gastrointestinal irritation may occur. The smallest oral daily dose which will maintain adequate concentration in the serum is approximately 300 mg. Erythromycin does not readily enter the cerebrospinal fluid but does appear to enter ascitic and pleural fluid. The drug may be given orally, intramuscularly and intravenously. The oral route is preferred for patients with enterocolitis.

Tetracyclins (*Achromycin*, *Tetracyclin*). Tetracycline is similar in chemical structure and action to Aureomycin and Terramycin.

Finland and his associates¹⁵ studied cross resistance between tetracycline (Achromycin), chlortetracycline (Aureomycin) and oxytetracycline (Terramycin). They found almost complete cross-resistance among the three tetracycline analogues *in vitro*.

One advantage of tetracycline is that gastrointestinal symptoms appear to be somewhat less common and worrisome than those due to Aureomycin and Terramycin.

Neomycin. This drug is relatively effective against *Proteus*, and has had a particularly important use in sterilization of the intestine in association with large bowel surgery. It is only very slightly absorbed from the intestinal tract. Poth²² has stated that the injection of neomycin in saline into a loop of bowel can result in sterilization of the bowel contents within minutes. We have used it in this manner when unanticipated colon resection was required, but we have not checked its effectiveness by culturing the colon content.

The chief disadvantage of neomycin—and a fact which has greatly limited its use—is its nephrotoxicity and ototoxicity. Granular casts regularly appear in the urine during and following treatment and the blood urea nitrogen rises in patients having an elevated blood urea nitrogen level at the beginning of therapy.²³ Impairment of the VIIIth nerve may result in total deafness, a complication which may not appear until after the drug has been stopped. It has been stated that treatment for as long as 4 days may produce deafness following parenteral administration of neomycin. Therefore, while it is justifiable to use neomycin in the presence of *Proteus* septicemia which does not respond to other drugs, the dose administered should probably not exceed 1 gm. per day.

Polymyxin. This drug is an effective agent against many gram negative organisms including with the exception of *Proteus*, many which are resistant to streptomycin. In fact organism resistance is not a major problem. Unfortunately though its nephrotoxicity limits its widespread clinical use. When it

is used, the dosage should not be in excess of 2.5 mg per kg of body weight per day for more than 5 days. It is one of the most potent drugs available against pyocyanous infections. It may be applied topically in 1 per cent concentrations, and it is markedly effective against gram-negative organisms if dead tissue is not present in abundance. Not absorbed into the circulation following oral administration, it effectively decreases the gram-negative flora of the bowel.

Bacitracin Johnson, Ankar, and Meloney²⁴ described this agent in 1945. Its antibacterial spectrum closely resembles that of penicillin, but is not destroyed by bacteria which produce penicillinase. It is used chiefly as a local agent against coccal infections. Systemic use is limited because of its markedly nephrotoxic properties and, actually, the drug has never been widely used.

Sulfonamides Sulfonamides are not considered antibiotics, but it is desirable to mention their value. The former widespread use of these agents has largely been superseded by antibiotics since, for the most part, the effect of sulfonamides is nullified by the products of tissue necrosis. Moreover, sulfonamides act merely as bacteriostatic agents. Nevertheless, sulfathalidine and sulfasuxidine are still commonly used for preoperative preparation of the intestinal tract for colon surgery, and sulfadiazine is still used in the treatment of *Shigella* infections. Gantrisin is a sulfonamide that is effective in the treatment of many urinary tract infections, renal complications are rare and its solubility is high at the usual pH range of urine.

Finally, where expense is a deciding factor, sulfonamides will frequently suffice in place of the often expensive antibiotics.

SELECTION OF AN ANTIBIOTIC Ideally, the sensitivity of the organism or organisms in purulent material should routinely be determined and the most effective available antibiotic employed (Fig. 45). In practice, however, this is not feasible in a very considerable number of circumstances, particularly those in which antibiotics are employed

outside of hospital practice. Nevertheless, it is important in serious or prolonged chronic infections to study the flora with respect to the antibiotic sensitivity of the various microorganisms and then to employ the indicated antibiotic in sufficient dosage to eradicate the organism. Selection of the proper agent is particularly important in view of the ever increasing antibiotic resistance of many strains of bacteria, for it is obviously advisable to limit the development of resistance as much as possible.

In general, the following guide would appear to be a useful one. Penicillin should be used in the treatment of acute gram-positive coccal, clostridial, and actinomycotic infections. It is cheap and virtually nontoxic. Aureomycin, Terramycin, Achromycin, and gantrisin may be used for infections of the urinary tract which are usually caused by organisms of the coliform group. Erythromycin and novobiacin, which are effective against many strains of staphylococci that are resistant to penicillin, should perhaps be reserved for use in those infections which cannot be controlled by other means. Streptomycin and drugs of the tetracycline group should be used for diseases caused by gram-negative bacilli that may be resistant to penicillin. Chloromycetin (chloramphenicol) is an effective drug for typhoid fever. Penicillin and Aureomycin are particularly effective in spirochaetal diseases. Tetracycline derivatives are the agents of choice in rickettsial disease.

Again, though, a determination of organism sensitivity decreases the delay in bringing the disease under control, it reduces the expense to the patient, and it reduces the incidence of resistant strains that result from indiscriminate antibiotic usage.

Some reasons why infections fail to respond are (1) the causative organism was not among those isolated, (2) resistant bacterial mutants are present, (3) the dosage is inadequate, (4) the original susceptible flora has been replaced by a more resistant one, and (5) there exist mechanical or anatomic barriers limiting access of the drug.

















	TUBERCLE BACILLI	GRAM POSITIVE ORGANISMS	MENINGOCOCCI DIPLOCOCCI	GRAM NEGATIVE BACILLI	HISTOPLASMA LARGE FUNGUS	AMOEBAE
BACITRACIN ERYTHROMYCIN						
PENICILLIN						
STREPTOMYCIN NEOMYCIN						
TELETRACYCLINES CHLORAMPHENICOL						
POLYMYXIN						
FUSIDIC ACID						

Fig 45 The diagram emphasizes some therapeutic indications for the various antibiotics. In addition, novobiocin, oleandomycin, ristocetin, and vancomycin are used primarily against staphylococci, and nystatin (mycostatin) is effective against *Candida albicans* (monilia). (From PULASKI, E. J. In *Physiologic Principles of Surgery*, edited by L. M. Zimmerman and R. Levine. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Company, 1957.)

to the site of infection such as in an abscess or in the valvular vegetations of subacute bacterial endocarditis.

Some Surgical Infections of Special Importance

STAPHYLOCOCCAL INFECTIONS Whereas before 1900 tuberculosis constituted a major cause of death due to infection, and whereas during the first half of the twentieth century pneumonia became in turn the major cause of death due to infection, these two diseases have now been reasonably well controlled by specific chemotherapy and other measures. Certainly pneumococcal pneumonia does not occupy anywhere near the prominent position it once did. On the other hand, it is increasingly apparent that staphylococcal infections have now claimed at least in

hospitalized patients, the major position as a cause of death due to infection. This fact was supported by a report from the Montreal General Hospital, where DeVries and Pritchard⁴ made cultures routinely of heart blood, cut surfaces of lungs, and other infected areas of all patients coming to autopsy. In a series of 213 such cases observed from October 1953 to May 1954, these cultures yielded *Micrococcus pyogenes* (*Staphylococcus aureus*) in 87 cases, *Diplococcus pneumoniae* in 4, *Klebsiella pneumoniae* in 3, and *Streptococcus pyogenes* in 1. All but 7 of the 87 staphylococcal strains were obtained from the heart blood or lungs or both. These findings were in striking contrast to those obtained in 311 autopsies done at the same hospital in 1950, when the records showed only 8 cases of bronchopneumonia

and 2 cases of septicemia due to staphylococci. However, cultures were not done routinely during that period. It was notable in the more recent series of cases that only 3 patients were admitted to the hospital with the diagnosis of staphylococcal septicemia, and that the majority of the infections were considered to be terminal infections in patients with chronic debilitating diseases, that is, the infections were acquired within the hospital. In support of this view, 61 per cent of the strains of staphylococci belonged to phage Group 3, the most common group of staphylococci found in carriers in hospital personnel.

Micrococcal pseudomembranous enterocolitis a complication of antibiotic therapy

A condition which has been termed pseudomembranous enterocolitis has recently emerged as one of the complications of antibiotic therapy, as previously mentioned. This condition, which is characterized by replacement of the mucosa of a considerable portion of the intestine by a gray fibrinous membrane, may follow extensive burns and gastrointestinal hemorrhage, it may also follow operations which do not involve the abdomen, but most often it follows gastrointestinal surgery. Finney¹⁷ apparently reported one of the earliest cases in 1893, when a fatal enterocolitis developed in a patient 10 days after a pyloric resection and gastroenterostomy for benign pyloric obstruction. In 1948 Dixon and Weismann⁵ reported from the Mayo Clinic that pseudomembranous ileocolitis had been encountered at autopsy in a wide variety of both medical and surgical conditions. The clinical picture associated with this condition was that of rapidly progressing circulatory collapse with fever, diarrhea, abdominal distention, and vomiting—characteristics of endotoxin poisoning. Profound circulatory collapse occurred suddenly and proved resistant to the usual supportive measures. Autopsy revealed the replacement of segments of the mucosa of both small and large bowel by a gray fibrinous membrane which on microscopic examination was seen to con-

sist of necrotic cellular debris, leukocytes and bacteria. The submucous layer was markedly edematous and hyperemic, and in more recent studies it has been found to contain great numbers of micrococci. In reviewing 23 cases of pseudomembranous enterocolitis as a fatal postoperative complication, Speare³⁹ emphasized that the increasing incidence of this condition in surgical patients appeared to be due to the emergence of antibiotic resistant strains of *Micrococcus pyogenes*. In most of the reports, pure cultures of strains of *M. pyogenes* resistant to penicillin, streptomycin, chlortetracycline (Aureomycin) and oxytetracycline (Terramycin) have been found in the stools and intestinal lesions of the patients, the normal intestinal bacterial flora has been either absent or diminished. Thus, the consensus appears to be that the cause of this complication is a massive invasion of the intestinal mucosa by the antibiotic resistant strains of *M. pyogenes*, the absence of the normal bacterial flora. In the patients reported by Speare, the clinical findings were quite similar in all cases. There usually occurred some abdominal pain and nausea 1 or 2 days after a successful executed operation. There followed a mild rise in temperature, associated later with moderate or profuse diarrhea. Thereafter the patient's condition rapidly deteriorated and a state of shock resistant to blood transfusion and the other usual supportive measures intervened. At autopsy, lesions involving large areas of the gastrointestinal tract were found, there being segments of yellowish gray and grayish brown diphtheritic membrane adhering to the denuded mucosa. It was considered possible that this was caused by the intense hyperemia and vascular engorgement of the underlying stroma.

The mucosa becomes necrotic, peels off, and with the cellular debris and bacteria forms a diphtheritic membrane. Of the 23 patients reviewed by Speare, 19 had died, and, of the 3 patients who survived, 2 had been treated with erythromycin, one of the few effective agents against *M. pyogenes*.

under these conditions Novobiocin is also now available for use against this organism

Use of ACTH and Cortisone in Infections

It is not the purpose to review in detail specific regional infections such as peritonitis, osteomyelitis and others, nor is it desirable here to do so. However, the use of ACTH and cortisone in conjunction with antibiotics in the management of certain infections should be mentioned. The rationale of such therapy perhaps originated with the demonstration by Kass, Ingbar, and Finland²⁰ that the fever and toxic symptoms of pneumonia were abolished by these drugs even when the blood culture remained positive for pneumococci. There was no evidence of a bactericidal effect, and the date of the appearance and the magnitude of the rise in antipneumococcal antibodies and cold agglutinins were unaffected by ACTH and cortisone. Furthermore, the rate of resolution of consolidated lobes was not accelerated.

This report created much interest in the effects of ACTH and cortisone in experimental and clinical infections, since in them an agent had been found which apparently reduced the effect of bacterial toxins on body cells, while allowing the bacteria to continue to multiply. Somewhat later Mogabgab and Thomas²¹ reported their studies concerning the effect of cortisone on experimental infection with Group A streptococci in rabbits. These workers injected Group A streptococci into the skin of rabbits some of which were treated with cortisone in doses of 50 mg. per day and others kept as controls without cortisone therapy. In the treated group a fatal septicemia developed in all animals whereas in the controls who received the same dose of bacteria but no cortisone there were no deaths.

Since these early studies so called "spontaneous" infections have been reported from time to time in patients receiving cortisone therapy. It has been suggested that such spontaneous infections are quite possibly due to a flare-up of foci which are ordinarily

suppressed by the patient's defense mechanisms, but that they may be the result of invasion by "nonpathogens" in hosts whose defense mechanisms have been impaired by the hormone. In brief cortisone may so alter the defense mechanism of inflammation that bacteria are provided with suitable circumstances under which to multiply and spread—and as has been seen, pathogenicity consists largely of the ability of the individual bacteria to multiply under the physicochemical circumstances in which they find themselves. It is not necessarily due to the specific toxin which the bacteria normally produce.

ACTH AND CORTISONE IN PERITONITIS. In view of these earlier studies, Boling and his associates³ examined the use of ACTH and cortisone in the management of generalized peritonitis. It was their thought that if in severe cases a block could be temporarily interposed between the effects of the toxins and the host then the defenses of the host might not be overwhelmed and time would be thus gained to permit large doses of antibiotics to reduce the growth of the organisms. Their observations suggested that the use of ACTH or cortisone, in conjunction with chemotherapy, might be of significant value in the preoperative and postoperative management of patients with generalized peritonitis. Nevertheless, these workers were careful to point out that the ACTH and cortisone could completely mask serious complications and, further that these agents had no inhibitory effect upon the growth of the pathogenic organisms.

Subsequent studies by others have failed to establish the clinical value of this form of therapy. Moreover, in two subacute experimental bacterial infections in mice, Jawetz²² found that even very small amounts of cortisone markedly interfered with the therapeutic effectiveness of antibiotics. The phenomenon was observed not only when the animals were pretreated with cortisone but also when the administration of both cortisone and antibiotic was started several hours after infection. The magnitude

of this effect depended upon the severity of the infection, as determined by the number of bacteria inoculated and on the dose of the antimicrobial agent. It was greatest when the result of antimicrobial therapy without cortisone was subcurative. With the administration of a large excess of antibiotic beyond the curative dose, the reduction of therapeutic effect by cortisone was no longer evident.

These hormones have aided in some cases of brucellosis.⁴²

Chemotherapy of Tuberculosis

One of the most gratifying milestones in recent years has been the relative effectiveness of chemotherapeutic agents in the management of tuberculosis. Among other things, it has made possible widespread application of resectional surgery in parenchymal pulmonary disease. Prior to the advent of streptomycin, the incidence of serious postoperative complications such as bronchopleural fistula and spread was so great that it was relatively uncommon to resect portions of the diseased lung. Happily, streptomycin, aided by the concurrent administration of *para*-aminosalicylic acid (PAS), caused the more exudative portions of the disease to regress, until isolated foci were present which could be safely excised. In the beginning a dosage of 1 gm of streptomycin and 12 gm of PAS was used daily, but later the schedule was altered to consist of 1 gm of streptomycin twice or thrice weekly and 12 gm of PAS daily. A large number of patients have now been treated both by the daily and by the twice weekly streptomycin programs, and statistical analysis has established that they are quite similar in therapeutic efficacy. There is some evidence that the development of streptomycin resistant strains is retarded by the administration of PAS. Streptomycin toxicity, particularly VIIIth nerve damage, is much reduced when the amount of the drug given (now, usually dihydrostreptomycin) is only 2 gm per week.

Isoniazid This drug became available to

the medical profession in May, 1952. Studies have shown that isoniazid is an effective agent against tuberculosis. As with streptomycin, though, the tubercle bacillus may develop resistance to the drug. The toxic effects of isoniazid involve the nervous system, the most frequent being twitching of the muscles, insomnia, and headache. These findings may disappear when the drug is withheld—and often even if it is continued—and they are rarely serious enough to interfere with therapy. Some patients exhibit changes in temperament which may be characterized by irritability or euphoria, and these subtle changes in personality may be the commonest toxic manifestations of all. The dosage of isoniazid is generally estimated on a body weight basis, and usually ranges from 0.15 gm to 0.3 gm per day. There is no question that the drug represents another important advance in effective chemotherapy against tuberculosis. Where the organism is particularly sensitive to this agent the patient may show a striking and prompt improvement that is reflected in an increased appetite, weight gain, and in general clinical condition. It not infrequently happens that the bacteria recovered at surgery following isoniazid therapy and, for that matter, at times following streptomycin therapy, fail to multiply and to exhibit pathogenicity when injected into guinea pigs.

Frequently, now, isoniazid, streptomycin, and PAS are used concurrently.

Fungous Diseases

At the present time surgery is used only sparingly in fungus infections. For example, sinuses due to actinomyces may be excised, along with the administration of heavy doses of antibiotics, particularly penicillin. Blastomycotic lesions may be excised from the skin or as isolated lesions in the lung. Histoplasmosis may produce lesions in the lungs which are sufficiently localized to be excised and which, indeed, are usually excised with the thought that they are pulmonary tuberculo-

made in the course of postoperative examination of the tissues. Even so, fungus diseases do not often present indications for surgery. Antibiotics are not particularly effective against fungi, but specific chemotherapy such as stilbamidine is proving to be relatively effective. Penicillin is frequently used against actinomycosis, but the results leave much to be desired. Also, there is available at this time no treatment that is consistently effective against histoplasmosis. Yet, therapy is improving.

There is some evidence that fungus infections are increasing as the result of antibiotic therapy, in that bacterial growth in the alimentary tract, particularly the mouth is suppressed by the broad spectrum antibiotics. Fungi such as monilia (*Candida albicans*) may be allowed to grow rapidly whereas normally the bacterial flora suppresses these organisms. Moreover, while moniliasis is usually not significant, this infection is occasionally serious, pulmonary infections may occur and fatal endocarditis has been reported.

Tetanus Infection and Management

Tetanus is a condition in which there is local spasm or general convulsive contractions of voluntary muscles due to the effect of the specific exotoxin produced by *Clostridium tetani*. The organism thrives best in an anaerobic medium and may be a frequent contaminant of dirty wounds. It is saprophytic and is commonly found in the feces of most mammals, particularly horses and cattle. In man, it is often found in the intestinal tract of individuals who have daily contact with domestic animals. Tetanus organisms may exist in the tissue for long periods of time without causing disease, but should the tissues be damaged by mechanical or chemical means or by other bacterial infection to produce a suitable medium in which tetanus bacilli may grow, the spores are activated and the bacilli multiply and produce a powerful exotoxin.

The tetanus bacilli may enter the body in a variety of ways, usually through a

wound, but entrance may follow extraction of teeth or quite trivial injuries, and it has been known to follow childbirth. The period of incubation may vary enormously and, whereas it may produce active disease within a relatively few days (it has been reported within 24 hours of the injury), it may be many weeks or even months following the initial injury before tetanus develops. Indeed, frequently one of the most difficult features in reaching a diagnosis of tetanus is the inability to find on the body a wound which appears to be a possible portal of injury, as the injury may have epithelized over. We treated a boy upon whom no site of injury was noted initially, but finally a small healed abrasion on the leg several weeks old, was found. Beneath the completely epithelized surface there was an area of necrosis, and it was assumed that this had probably been the source of the tetanus growth from which the exotoxin had been liberated.

As a rule, the symptoms develop within 1 to 2 weeks following injury, and two general types of findings are encountered. The first consists of a localized stiffening or twitching of muscles in the region of the wound and may not be recognized as caused by tetanus. The second and by far the more generally recognized variety is that which is referred to as the descending type. Here the symptoms first begin in the small muscles of the face with stiffening of the masseter muscles, which may progress until it is impossible for the patient to open his mouth, generally referred to as "lockjaw". Eventually the facial muscles may pull back at the corners of the mouth to produce the grimace of "*risus sardonius*". Later, pharyngeal muscles become involved and it may be difficult for the patient to swallow. Death may occur due to continuation of the process to involve muscles of respiration, with almost continuous spasm of the diaphragm or other accessory muscles of respiration which prevents adequate pulmonary ventilation. At times the patient may enter a deep coma, lasting for weeks, from which he may

or may not emerge. The exotoxin of the tetanus bacterium is quickly fixed by both specific nervous and other tissues.

Autopsy in fatal tetanus cases may reveal remarkably little. Patients who have had the disease over a period of weeks show considerable wasting of the musculature, as would occur with any other type of starvation.

TREATMENT OF TETANUS. Serotherapy. If the patient has not had active immunization with toxoid, from 1500 to 3000 U.S.P. units of tetanus antitoxin should be given. If symptoms of tetanus should develop 50,000 U.S.P. units should be given at once intravenously, with 10,000 units injected into the muscles in the neighborhood of the wound and 10,000 units intrathecally. This or a similar dosage is then repeated daily until the symptoms have largely subsided.

As soon as serotherapy has been initiated, the wound or any possible site of infection is thoroughly explored and all necrotic material excised. While this may liberate additional amounts of tetanus exotoxin into the blood stream for the moment (and it can), at the same time it diminishes the further production of exotoxin. The patient is placed in a quiet room and adequate amounts of sedation are given. Tracheotomy is often required to permit adequate ventilation of the lungs, and large doses of penicillin are usually given, though its value is questionable. Cortisone has of course been tried here too but has not been efficacious; nor has the use of curare proved to be of significant benefit in maintaining respiration by diminishing muscle spasm. The Drinker respirator may be of much help. A tube is introduced for feeding purposes.

Prognosis It has often been our impression that the prognosis of the individual case of tetanus had been established even before therapy was begun and that it did not make a great deal of difference what was done. Even so such an impression should in no way impede the most vigorous efforts at therapy. One is well advised to be

very cautious in offering a prognosis to a family, since patients who appear to be doing well may eventually die several days later, whereas others may improve who were not believed that they would live.

Active immunization. By all odds the most successful method of treating tetanus prophylactically is to immunize with toxoid. The administration of toxoid has, however, no value after the injury has occurred to induce active immunity with tetanus toxoid. It is a slow process that requires weeks or months, and three injections are required to produce optimal immunity. If the patient has received less than two injections of toxoid prior to an injury, he should certainly receive antitoxin. If he has previously received a full course of toxoid, a booster dose of toxoid is usually sufficient. However, if the patient has not received at least one injection of tetanus toxoid previously, antitoxin and toxoid should not be administered simultaneously. The toxoid will not interfere with the antitoxin, but the antitoxin will interfere with the toxoid. As for antitoxin, an injection of 1500 American units confers titrable immunity for from 2 to 3 weeks, 10,000 units for 6 to 10 weeks and 100,000 units for 11 weeks and possibly longer.

REFERENCES

1. ARNOLD, L.: Passage of living bacteria through the wall of the intestine and the influence of diet and climate upon intestinal auto-infection. *Am. J. Hyg.*, 8: 604, 1928
2. BERNTSEN, C. A., JR. Unaltered penicillin susceptibility of streptococci; study of a hemolytic streptococci causing endocarditis. *J.A.M.A.*, 157: 331, 1955.
3. BOLING, L., NEWKIRK, J., BAXTER, P., PARRIDGE, J., MARGEN, S., AND KINSELL, L.: The use of ACTH in the management of generalized peritonitis. *J. Clin. Endocrinol.* 12: 184, 1952
4. DEVRIES, J. A., AND PRITCHARD, J. E.: The increase in serious staphylococcal infection shown by post-mortem investigation. *Can. M. A. J.*, 73: 827, 1955.
5. DIXON, C. F., AND WEISMANN, R. E.: Acute pseudomembranous enteritis or enterocolitis as a complication following intestinal surgery. *Clin. North America* 28: 929, 1948
6. DOWLING, H. T., HIRSH, H. L., AND O'NEILL

- C B Studies on bacteria developing resistance to penicillin fractions V and G *in vitro* and in patients under treatment for bacterial endocarditis J Clin Invest., 25: 665 1946
- 7 DOWLING H F, LEPPER M H AND JACKSON G G Clinical significance of antibiotic-resistant bacteria J.A.M.A., 157: 327 1955
 - 8 DOWLING, H. F., LEPPER M H., AND JACKSON G G When should antibiotics be used in combination? J.A.M.A., 151: 813 1953
 - 9 DUGOS R J *Biochemical Determinants of Microbial Disease* Cambridge Mass Harvard University Press 1954
 - 10 DUGGAR, B M Aureomycin—a product of the continuing search for new antibiotics. Ann New York Acad Sc., 51: 175 1948
 - 11 DUGGAR, B M AND SINGLETON V I Biochemistry of antibiotics Ann. Rev Biochem., 22: 450 1953
 - 12 EITELICH J BURTZ, Q R SMITH R. M JOSLYN D A AND BURKHOLDER P R Chloromycetin a new antibiotic from a soil actinomycete Science 106: 417 1947
 - 13 EVANS C L AND ZECKWER, I T Nature of hyperglycaemic response to injections of certain killed bacteria. Brit. J Exper Path., 8: 280 1927
 - 14 FINE, J FRANK, H., SCHENKENS F JACOB S AND GORDON T The bacterial factor in traumatic shock. Ann New York Acad Sc., 55: 429 1952
 - 15 FINLAND M., PURCELL, E. M WRIGHT S S., DEL LOVE B Jr MOW T W., AND KASS E H Clinical and laboratory observations of a new antibiotic tetracycline J.A.M.A 154: 561 1954
 - 16 FINLAND M Antibiotic-resistant micrococci infections (editorial) J.A.M.A., 158: 188 1955
 - 17 FINNEY J R M Gastro-enterostomy for clearing ulcer of the pylorus Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp 4: 53 1903
 - 18 HAIGHT T H WILCOX C., AND FINLAND M Cross-resistance to antibiotics effects of repeated exposures of bacteria to streptomycin or neomycin on the resistance to both of these and to six other antibiotics J Lab & Clin. Med 39: 637 1952
 - 19 HARDY J D Relations between fever and sweating. Fed Proc 11: 64 1952
 - 20 HORDEN, T J Infective endocarditis, with an analysis of 150 cases and with special reference to the chronic form of the disease Quart. J Med., 2: 289 1900
 - 21 HOWE, C W Treatment of staphylococcal infections M Clin. North America, 37: 1461 1953
 - 22 JAWETZ E Effect of cortisone on therapeutic efficacy of antibiotics in experimental infections A M A Arch Int. Med 93: 850 1951
 - 23 JAWETZ, E AND GUNNISON J H An experimental basis of combined antibiotic action J A M A., 150: 603 1952
 - 24 JOHNSON B A ANKAR, H AND MELENT F L Bacitracin new antibiotic produced by member of *B subtilis* group Science 102: 376 1915
 - 25 KASS E H INGRAM S H AND FINLAND M Effects of adrenocorticotrophic hormone in pneumonia clinical bacteriological and serological studies Ann Int Med 33: 1081 1950
 - 26 KOTIV P Techniques and interpretation of routine blood cultures Observations in five thousand consecutive patients. J A M A., 149: 1273 1952
 - 27 LANFORD C E., AND LACY H *In vitro* response of staphylococcus to Aureomycin streptomycin and penicillin. Texas Rep Biol & Med., 7: 111 1949
 - 28 LOVELACE, J R Chemotherapy in surgery a review Am Pract. & Digest. Treat., 5: 806 1954
 - 29 LYOFF A Lysozyme Bact. Rev., 17: 299 1953
 - 30 MARTIN S P MCKINNEY G R GREEN R., AND BECKER, C Influence of glucose fructose and insulin on metabolism of leukocytes of healthy and diabetic subjects J Clin Invest 32: 1171 1953
 - 31 MORGAN W J., AND THOMAS L Effects of cortisone on bacterial infection Group A hemolytic streptococcal infection in rabbits. J Lab & Clin. Med 39: 271 1952
 - 32 MURRAY M., AND MOOSEWICK, F Incidence of bacteremia in patients with dental disease J Lab & Clin Med 26: 801 1941
 - 33 POTTI E J Intestinal antiseptics in surgery J A M A., 153: 1516 1953
 - 34 PRICE, P B BAOWN C R., KING, T C., PECK, R C AND HICKLEY L Bacterial invasion in experimental burns Surgical Forum 6: 64 1956
 - 35 REITH A F., AND SQUIER, T L Blood cultures of apparently healthy persons. J Infect. Dis 51: 336 1932
 - 36 ROMANSKY M J, FUSILLO M., CALDWELL, E., AND ROBIN E D The synergistic action and potential applications of antibiotic combinations Med. Clin. North America, 35: 535 1951
 - 37 SCHATZ, A BUGIE, E., AND WAKSMAN S A. Streptomycin, a substance exhibiting antibiotic activity against gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria Proc Soc Exper Biol. & Med., 55: 66 1944

- 38 SEIFERT, E Ueber Bakterienbefunde im Blut nach Operationen Arch klin Chir, **138**: 565, 1925
- 39 SPEARE, G S Staphylococcus pseudomembranous enterocolitis, a complication of antibiotic therapy Am J Surg, **88**: 523, 1954
- 40 SPICER, S Bacteriologic studies on newer antibiotics, effects of combined drugs on microorganisms J Lab & Clin Med, **36**: 183, 1950
- 41 SPINK, W W Clinical problems relating to the management of infections with antibiotics J A M A, **152**: 585, 1953
- 42 SPINK, W W, AND HALL, W H The influence of cortisone and adrenocorticotrophic hormone on brucellosis II Adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) in acute and chronic human brucellosis J Clin Invest, **31**: 95, 1952
- 43 THOMAS, L The physiological disturbance produced by endotoxins Ann Rev Physiol, **16**: 467, 1954
- 44 WELLS, J A, AND RALL, D P Mechanism of pyrogen induced fever Proc Soc Exp Biol & Med, **68**: 421, 1948
- 45 WINTROBE, M. M. *Clinical Hematology*, Ed Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1956
- 46 WOOD, B Studies on the cellular immunology of acute bacterial infections Harvey Lect **47**: 72, 1951-52

Chapter 6

The Pathophysiology of Thermal Burns

A severe thermal burn constitutes one of the major unsolved problems in surgical practice. The injury comprises a complex physiologic insult of the greatest magnitude, combined with the special problem of skin loss over a wide area. In effect, a burn represents an extensive open wound that cannot readily be closed, because ultimately skin must be obtained from elsewhere on the critically ill patient himself.

The more important physiologic aspects of burn trauma and management will be examined under the following headings:

- A Types of thermal injury
 - 1 Agents
 - 2 Magnitude of the burn
 - (a) Depth
 - (b) Estimation of surface area
 - 3 Prognosis in burns
- B General systemic response
 - 1 Neuroendocrine reaction
 - (a) Adrenocortical secretion
 - (b) Thyroid activity
 - (c) Adrenal medullary response
 - (d) Nitrogen excretion
 - 2 Other visceral responses
 - (a) The cardiovascular system
 - (1) Blood pressure
 - (2) Blood volume
 - (3) Cardiac output
 - (4) Capillary permeability
 - (b) The lungs
 - (c) The gastrointestinal tract
 - 3 Fluid and electrolyte metabolism
 - (a) Stages of the burn
 - (b) Fluid shifts between burned and unburned tissues

- (c) Body weight changes during therapy
 - (d) Body fluid compartment changes
 - (e) Insensible fluid loss
 - (f) Plasma chemistry values
 - (g) Renal function and urine volume
- C Principles of treatment
 - 1 General supportive measures
 - 2 The burn wounds
 - 3 Some complications of an extensive full thickness burn
 - (a) 'Metabolic decompensation' (early)
 - (b) Infection
 - (c) Chronic inanition
 - (d) Curling's ulcer
 - (e) Failure of autografts to "take"
 - 4 Emotional aspects of the burn

Types of Thermal Injury

Agents

SCALD BURN Most thermal burns are caused by one or more of three types of heat sources. The least serious of these is the scald burn by hot liquids, usually water, in the form of liquid or steam. These injuries are usually first and second degree in depth and, while often exquisitely painful, grafting is not likely to be required. The prognosis is good except in the very young and the very old, particularly the latter.

FLASH BURN A second type of lesion is the flash burn, produced by sudden flames or



Fig 46 A flame burn The right eyeball was enucleated, the wound prepared, and split thickness skin grafts applied

from gasoline explosion Although the radiant thermal intensity may be high, it is brief, and frequently even a shirt and shorts are sufficient to protect these portions of the body This burn is more serious than that resulting from scalds, but it is less serious than that due to actual flames from ignited clothing or other sources The flash burn may require grafting but much of it may not

FLAME BURN A third type of burn, a very serious one, is the flame burn (Fig 46) This usually results in deep, full-thickness (third degree) injury, and much of the wound will require grafting Ninety per cent of the patients who sought aid during the first week following the bombing of Hiroshima and Nagasaki did so because of thermal burns²³

ELECTRICAL BURN An additional type of burn is the electrical burn, which has certain



Fig 47 An electrical burn of the hand The extent of arterial and other tissue damage following electrical injury is often far more extensive than is at first apparent

highly deceptive features The source is, of course, a high tension wire, from which a heavy current passes through the grounded individual who is so unfortunate as to grasp it All too often he cannot turn it loose, since the electrical stimulus maintains the contraction of the muscles employed in the grasp Accordingly, any doubtful source of current should never be grasped, but should be touched with the back of the hand—if it is to be contacted at all, a practice which would appear most unwise to us but one which is not uncommon The electrical burn may be such as absolutely to destroy the hand, exposing the fragments of the partly disintegrated phalanges and metacarpals (Fig 47) Furthermore, the site at which the current leaves the body, where it is grounded, also frequently represents a wound of considerable proportions Perhaps the most distinguishing single feature of the electrical burn, however, is the remarkable extent of the irreversible damage extending from the point of entry This is usually impossible to delineate on admission First the hand is amputated, then the forearm and, not infrequently, finally the arm at the shoulder In other words, the extent of the vascular destruction may be revealed only after a period of days or weeks

Magnitude of the Burn

DEPTH The burn is a three dimensional injury—length, breadth, and depth That is, the severity of the burn is a function of its depth and the surface area involved It is important to appreciate that different areas of the burn may vary widely in depth, and that this will be an important factor in treatment and prognosis

The depth of the burn is classically described as follows *First degree* burn is that which is erythematous only, without blister formation or skin loss *Second degree* burn connotes blister or vesicle formation but does not ultimately require grafting *Third degree* or full-thickness burn destroys all layers of the skin and must eventually be grafted if it involves more than a minor

surface area which could be allowed to heal by scar formation. It is notoriously difficult to estimate with precision at the time of admission which portions of the injury are deep second degree and which are third degree. To excise and graft immediately is to risk excising viable tissue, rendering the over all insult greater than it needed to be, on the other hand, to delay unduly, in order to be certain that no viable tissue is excised, may permit infection and inanition so to debilitate the patient that he can neither tolerate the removal of extensive autografts nor marshal the metabolic requirements for successful takes.

Some full thickness injury is always expected following a flame burn. In the white patient, third degree injury is probable when the skin is dry and leathery or dead white and cadaveric or deep pink with thrombosed vessels which show through the parchment like skin, or presents broken blisters with a roseate pink beneath, or, of course, if it is charred. However, the fact that the surface is still covered by intact blisters does not ensure that third degree injury does not exist. Time will tell.

In the Negro many of these same findings are helpful but the color changes in the skin are usually far less pronounced. In deep second degree burn the skin pigment may be lost, and thereafter the healed skin is much lighter in color than surrounding normal skin similar to changes at the donor sites from which skin grafts were taken.

ESTIMATION OF SURFACE AREA. The body surface area involved is conveniently estimated for therapeutic if not precise scientific purposes using the familiar 'rule of nines' (Fig 48). It is highly desirable to record on the patient's chart the admission estimate of the extent of first and second degree burn as compared with a separate estimate of third degree burn. At times one may be able to discern only that the full thickness injury involves the skin, whereas underlying muscles, tendon, fascia and occasionally even bone may be involved.

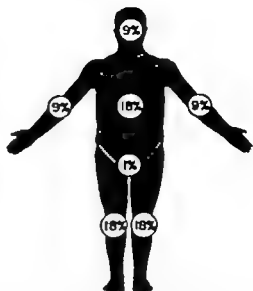


Fig 48 The rule of nines. Satisfactory approximations of the surface area burned can be achieved using this diagram.

Prognosis in Burns

Of all traumatic injuries, burns afford an opportunity to state with considerable accuracy at the outset the probable eventual result of the case. This is but an indirect way of stating that the extent of the area and depth of the initial injury and the age of the patient are the primary factors which determine prognosis, regardless of the treatment used. To be sure deaths due to early burn shock have declined as transfusional therapy has improved but many of these patients go on to die from other causes during subsequent weeks. Therefore, while the length of time burned patients live has been increased, the mortality resulting from thermal injury has not been materially reduced.²¹

The mortality from the Burn Unit of Birmingham Accident Hospital (England) was analyzed by Bull and Squire⁴ on the basis of 794 patients who required inpatient hospital treatment from 1945 through 1947. Their findings are presented in Figures 49 and 50. In the first the mortality was plotted against the per cent of surface area burned. It is seen that whereas virtually no mortality occurred following burns of less than 10 per cent, full thickness injuries of greater than 60 per cent were associated with almost 100 per cent mortality. In Figure 50 the per cent

area burned was plotted against the age in years, with mortality shown on each of the five curves. Note that what would constitute a minor burn in the younger individual results in an appreciable mortality in the patient over 70. A 70 per cent burn in an individual of 10 years is associated with a 90

per cent mortality; but a 20 per cent burn in an individual of 70 years may produce similar mortality.

The prognosis given to relatives follows any burn in an elderly individual should be guarded. In a man of 20, a 50 per cent full thickness burn would carry a 50 per cent chance of a fatal outcome, despite the most energetic management. Yet, in the individual case uncontrollable complications may subsequently offset the initial advantage of a less area burned.

General Systemic Response

Neuroendocrine Reaction¹⁰

ADRENOCORTICAL SECRETION The metabolic response to trauma was described in Chapter 1 and qualitatively this response to burns is not materially different. Quantitatively, however, the reaction to extensive full-thickness injury exceeds that of almost any other stimulus studied in our laboratory. In Figure 51 are shown the urinary excretion of corticoids and 17-ketosteroids and the total eosinophil counts in a patient who died on the thirty-ninth day with septicemia. (Certain water and electrolyte measurements in this patient are presented in Figure 52.) There was the usual vigorous increase in adrenocortical secretion, resulting in a markedly elevated excretion of corticoids; this persisted virtually to the time of death but during the last 24 hours oliguria was present. The excretion of 17-ketosteroids was initially somewhat elevated, but during the ensuing weeks of infection and inanition the excretion of these products of androgen precursors gradually declined to a low level; this is the usual finding in a seriously completing illness, but the level again rises to normal during convalescence, perhaps counting for the return in sexual interest in males at this time. In this respect, therefore, the level of excretion of 17-ketosteroids affords an index of the functional reserves of the individual and of the progress of convalescence.

The total eosinophil count in this patient

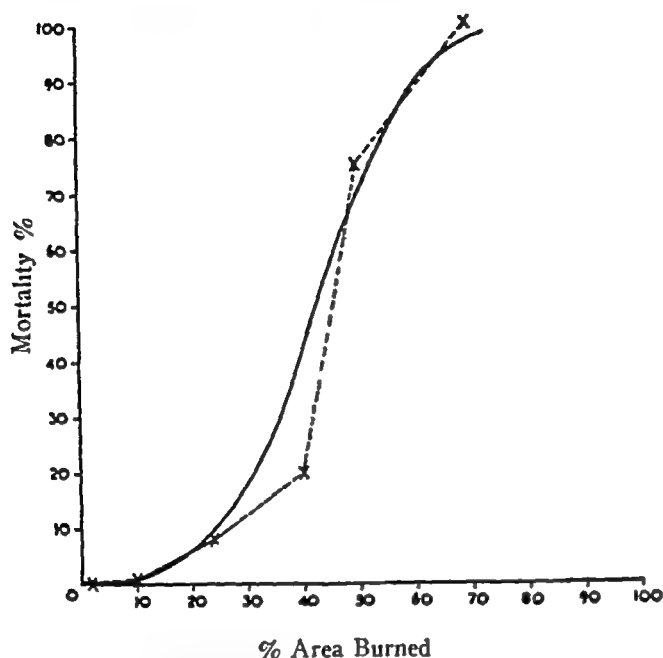


Fig 49 Relationship between extent of burn and mortality. The age of the patient and the extent of the burn are the basic factors in prognosis. (From BULL, J. P., AND SQUIRE, J. R. A study of mortality in a burns unit. *Ann Surg*, 130: 160, 1949.)

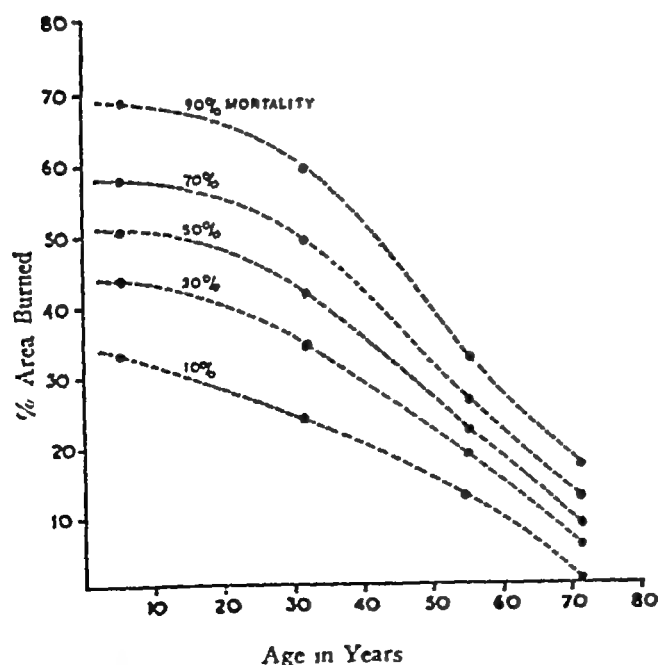


Fig 50 Relationships between extent of burn, age, and mortality. (From BULL, J. P., AND SQUIRE, J. R. A study of mortality in a burns unit. *Ann Surg*, 130: 160, 1949.)

was at zero on admission and remained essentially at zero throughout life, indicating severe and continued stress. In general, it was found that when the total eosinophil count remained at zero level the injury was a serious one and the prognosis uncertain, in contrast, when the count rose promptly from zero after the first 48 to 72 hours the injury was likely to be less extensive and hence the prognosis more favorable.

Studies of plasma corticoid levels following burns have reflected the alterations in adrenocortical activity previously described on the basis of urinary excretion studies. More than 85 per cent of the corticoid secretion by the adrenal cortex consists of hydrocortisone.

The derangements in carbohydrate metabolism observed following burns and other trauma are probably the result of increased adrenocortical secretion, with increased insulin resistance.

THYROID ACTIVITY Thyroid function before and following experimental burns was studied by Wase and Repplinger,²⁷ who found evidence that thyroid uptake of radioiodine was reduced during the first 4 hours following burning but thereafter was increased. Cope and his associates⁸ on the other hand, could find no evidence that thyroid activity was significantly altered following thermal injury. Wase, Eichel, and Repplinger²⁸ also approached this question by studying nitrogen excretion. They found that the postburn nitrogen excretion of euthyroid rats approached that of hyperthyroid rats while the nitrogen excretion of hypothyroid animals was virtually unchanged following the injury.

However one should look upon the question of whether or not thyroid activity is altered by trauma as being still unsettled, our personal suspicion is that thyroid activity is increased.

ADRENAL MEDULLARY RESPONSE. The means for studying blood levels of epinephrine and norepinephrine have only recently been practicable for clinical investigations. Therefore relatively few measurements

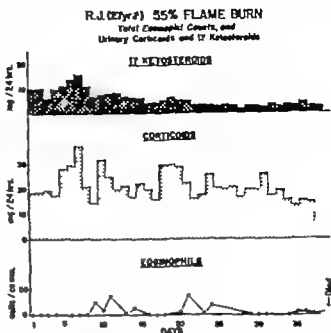


Fig 51 Adrenocortical response to a flame burn. The gradually decreasing level of 17-ketosteroid secretion reflected depletion of the patient. The elevated corticoid excretion continued to death. The total eosinophil count rarely rose above zero throughout life. (From WILSON H., LOVELACE, J R., AND HARRY J D. Adrenocortical response to extensive burns in man. *Ann Surg* 141: 175 1955.)

have been made. We have observed in a number of burned individuals an hypertensive response which persisted for a number of days.¹⁷ It is quite possible that this represented an increased sympathomimetic discharge.

NITROGEN EXCRETION As in other trauma, extensive burns are associated with a massive nitrogen loss (as well as fat), which can in part be offset by vigorous intravenous alimentation with fortified protein hydrolysate preparations and intravenous fat.² We found that the amino acid composition of this nitrogen wastage in the urine was not qualitatively different from that in other forms of trauma.⁸

Other Visceral Responses

THE CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM Blood pressure. The blood pressure is the most reliable single guide as to the adequacy of fluid therapy in the burned individual (Fig. 52). Following the injury the circulating blood volume begins to decline, unless therapy is begun. If this reduction in circulating blood

MC (65yr♀) 40% FLAME BURN

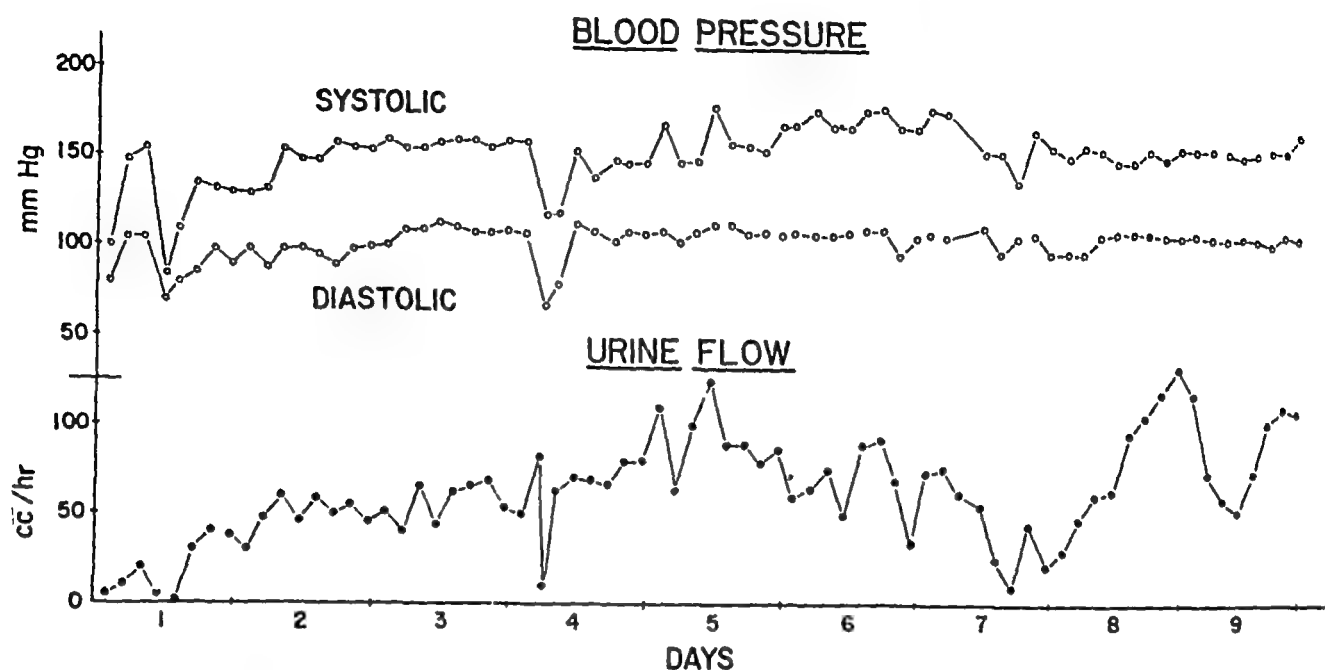


Fig 52 Relationship between blood pressure and rate of urine flow. Note that twice on the first day and once on the fourth day the urine output promptly fell when the systolic blood pressure in this normally hypertensive subject fell to around 100 mm Hg (HARRIS, J. D. Unpublished observations.)

volume is great enough, the blood pressure falls. It has been found that when the patient is given volumes of replacement therapy sufficient to restore and maintain blood volume, he almost invariably gains weight due to fluid retention. Whereas shock formerly was common in burn patients, the volumes of fluid given in therapy are now usually effective in preventing significant hypotension in most patients in whom the therapy is begun promptly after the injury.

In Figure 52 the urine flow is plotted against blood pressures for 6-hour periods in an extensively burned subject. To avoid any possibility of excessive fluid administration in this obese elderly individual, the intravenous colloid, saline, and glucose solutions were ordered only as needed to maintain an adequate blood pressure level in this normally hypertensive subject. That the fluids given were only barely sufficient was reflected in the fact that once during the first 24 hours the blood pressure fell to a shock level, at which time urine flow declined somewhat from the already minimal level. Actually, the fluid required to main-

tain a satisfactory blood pressure proved to be almost equivalent to that which had been calculated to be necessary on the basis of Evans' formula,¹¹ our usual rule of thumb; of course, it was by means of noting the volumes of colloid and other solutions required to effect satisfactory blood pressure levels and rates of urine flow that Evans developed his formula.

It was of interest that the patient exhibited a second hypotensive period on the fourth day, which again responded to intravenous therapy. Nevertheless, we have observed such episodes even as late as the tenth postburn day. The important point is that the patient may die of remediable shock at any time for a considerable period after the injury. Since oliguria may be due to a variety of factors, the therapy should be adjusted on the basis of further clinical data including blood pressure.

Blood volume. The blood volume rapidly declines in the presence of an extensive burn, as remarked above. This is due to loss of extracellular fluid into the burn areas, to an increased capillary permeability for the

plasma proteins, and to a destruction of red cells. Realization of the magnitude of this reduction in blood volume led to the more effective treatment of burn shock, which has been perhaps the most notable advance in burn therapy during the past 20 years.

Cardiac output Immediately following the burn—during the period of hemoconcentration, oligemia, and perhaps shock—the cardiac output is often subnormal. However, this responds promptly to effective fluid therapy, and thereafter the level of cardiac output rises not only to normal levels but may even exceed them (Fig 53). The re-establishment of a normal level of cardiac output usually reflects fluid therapy that is adequate, at least for the moment. In patients who survive, the cardiac output gradually subsides from the markedly elevated levels recorded during the intermediate (or subacute, or "toxicemic") period to essentially normal levels.

We performed multiple serial measurements of cardiac output in 11 extensively burned subjects.¹⁸ In only 4 was shock present at the time of the initial cardiac output measurement; in these the values ranged from 2 to 4.6 L. per minute (average normal 5 L. or more).

Capillary permeability Netsky and Leiter²² showed in 1943 that capillary permeability was increased not only in the burned area but in the nonburned areas as well. This results in an abnormal rate of loss of plasma proteins from the intravascular space. Later, citing Drinker's work, Cope and his associates^{2, 7, 20} pointed out that a definite amount of protein normally passes across capillary membranes leaving and re-entering the plasma. The lymph protein and therefore presumably that of the interstitial fluid varies from less than 1 per cent in the superficial tissues of an extremity to as much as 5 per cent in the liver. The protein content of bleb fluid has been variously recorded at 60 to 80 per cent of that in plasma; the albumin globulin (A/G) ratio in bleb fluid is much increased over that in plasma due to the greater capillary

M.C (65yr?) 40% FLAME BURN CARDIAC OUTPUT

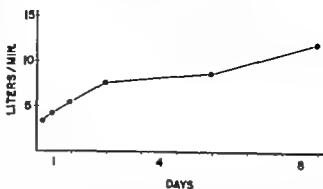


Fig 53 During the period of hypotension the initial cardiac output value (blue dye method) was 3.5 L. per minute. Thereafter the cardiac output rose progressively. This rise was characteristic of all patients studied (15); it gradually subsided in patients who did not die (HARDY J. D. Unpublished data).

permeability for the small albumin molecule than for the larger globulin.

THE LUNGS The participation of pulmonary components in the general reaction to injury was mentioned previously. This aspect of the stress response has been little studied but, unless the lungs are directly involved in the burn injury through the inhalation of gases, a deleterious effect of the burn on lung function is not especially apparent. To be sure pulmonary difficulties of some degree arise in almost any patient immobilized in bed with infected wounds and treated with large volumes of salt-containing fluids. Tracheotomy is often of material assistance and it may be a lifesaving procedure if the burns have involved the face and the tracheobronchial tree.

THE GASTROINTESTINAL TRACT One of the common requests of the patient admitted in burn shock is for water. Even so, the gastrointestinal tract of the extensively burned subject is by no means normal in function. Food is poorly tolerated because of abdominal distention and intestinal atony that are often associated with nausea and vomiting but less often with diarrhea. Despite the desirability of using the oral route for fluid administration where possible the more seriously burned subjects who need

fluids most, are least able to tolerate oral intake. Therefore, we use the intravenous route almost exclusively in severely burned subjects.

Fluid and Electrolyte Metabolism

STAGES OF THE BURN It is common practice, as well as convenient, to divide the natural history of the burn into the following stages: shock, toxemia, grafting and repair, and late convalescence. However, the burn picture, as we know it from a physiologic standpoint, continues to be modified in the light of unfolding knowledge, and we now prefer a classification of the physiologic aspects of the burn injury that is somewhat different from the classical one above. Our preference is as follows.

1 *Stage of shock (first 48 to 72 hours).*

Maximal fluid therapy

2 *Stage of sodium and water retention (from first to seventh day)* Cut back fluid therapy after shock stage passed. Treat acidosis, if present.

3 *Stage of sodium and water mobilization and diuresis (from the fifth or seventh to the twelfth to fourteenth day)* Careful attention to blood replacement and to plasma electrolytes, particularly to acid-base balance.

4 *Stage of anemia and malnutrition and, often, infection (from fifth day onward)* Transfuse and feed.

5 *Grafting completed and danger abated*

The stage of toxemia in burns appears more and more to derive its principal distinguishing characteristic—fever—from wound infection and, often, septicemia. In fact, septicemia is one of the more common causes of death in burns. The stages of shock, fluid retention, and fluid mobilization are well illustrated in Figures 53 and 55.

FLUID SHIFTS BETWEEN BURNED AND UNBURNED TISSUES Much of the progress in our knowledge of burns achieved over the past three decades has had to do with a more precise understanding of the nature and magnitude of the relatively enormous fluid shifts that occur between the burned and the

unburned tissues. One of the early and conclusive demonstrations that fluid accumulated beneath the burn wound was of Blalock³. In a delightfully direct experiment, he burned one side of an animal, permitted time for edema fluid to accumulate and then separated the two halves of the body sagittally from nose to tail. The burned half of the carcass was shown to weigh considerably more than the unburned half.

Thus, following a burn of, say, an extremity, the part swells due to the accumulation of wound edema fluid. This local shift of fluid and electrolytes into the wound and neighboring tissues proceeds most rapidly during the first 8 hours following the burning and reaches a maximum in 48 hours after which the swelling gradually subsides^{5, 7, 20, 24}.

Fox and Baer¹² devoted special attention to the shifts of water, potassium, and sodium between the burned and the unburned tissues. In brief, they reported that the sodium content of the injured tissues increased whereas the potassium content decreased. In contrast, the tissues in the "normal" areas of the body of the experimental animal contained less than the normal amount of sodium but increased amounts of potassium. It was deduced from such findings that potassium lost from the injured cells was taken up by the uninjured cells elsewhere in the body, that the loss of sodium in excess of water into the burned area produced hypotonicity of the extracellular fluid, and that this permitted water to move into the cells, even further reducing the extracellular volume and, with it, the plasma volume. They concluded that treatment with an amount of isotonic sodium solution approximating one-half the extracellular space restored extracellular volume. On this basis, the successful treatment of shock in animals (Rosenthal) with isotonic saline was considered to have been explained²⁷. Fox estimated that as much as almost one-half the extracellular sodium could be lost in the burn wound edema or into injured cells, resulting in a loss of extracellular fluid.

similar magnitude, moreover, these conclusions were supported by the fact that the infusion of a volume of saline solution equivalent to approximately one half the normal volume of the extracellular fluid might suffice to preserve blood volume, blood pressure, and urine output in experimental burns involving no more than 20 to 25 per cent of the body surface area.

BODY WEIGHT CHANGES DURING THERAPY

The extensively burned patient treated adequately to prevent shock almost invariably gains weight during the first 3 days when fluid intake is maximal but urine volume is diminished (Figs 54 and 57). This gain occurs despite fluid losses through the skin and burn wounds which vary considerably from patient to patient and in the same patient from day to day. These losses can amount to several liters.

The weight curve begins to decline on from the fourth to the seventh postburn day, and this process is usually complete by the end of the thirteenth day; this is concomitant with a decrease in fluid intake, an increase in urine volume, a negative ni-

MG(65yr) 40% FLAME BURN

BODY WEIGHT

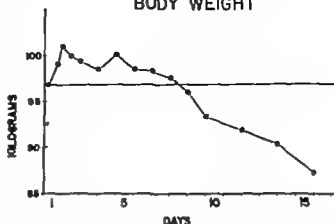


Fig 54 The initial rise in the body weight curve was due to fluid retention. The persistent decline following excretion of the retained fluid was due to the ravages of fever, infection, and starvation.

trogen balance (indicating tissue catabolism) and, at times, an apparent increase in the "insensible fluid loss" from the normal skin, the burn wounds, and the lungs.

Since the volume of fluid infused in our studies increased with the per cent surface area burned (up to 50 per cent, which was used as a maximum burn in estimating fluid requirements) it was not surprising that

RJ, 55% BURN, WEIGHT CHANGE, URINE VOLUME, AND URINE SODIUM EXCRETION

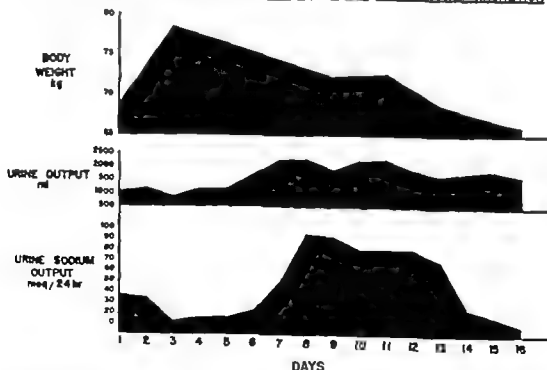


Fig 55 The water and sodium retained initially were excreted beginning on the fifth post burn day. (From HARDY J D, NEELY W A, WILSON F C, JR, MILKOW, E P, AND WILSON H. Fluid kinetics following thermal burns in man. *Surgery* 54: 457, 1963.)

there was a direct correlation between the extent of the burn and the degree of weight gain during therapy¹³ The maximum weight gain recorded was 22 + lb or 10 kg (Fig 55) Incidentally, this patient had by the end of the second week lost all the weight gained and by the end of the fourth week had lost 25 lb (11 kg) of tissue, a body weight fluctuation of almost 50 lb over a 4-week period

BODY FLUID COMPARTMENT CHANGES To determine the compartmental distribution of the relatively large volumes of fluid administered to burn patients, we determined total body water values in seven patients on admission and over the first several days of treatment¹⁴ Representative subjects are shown in Figures 56 and 57 Both body weight and thiocyanate ("extracellular") space increased in all subjects and, in general, the increase in thiocyanate space usu-

ally exceeded the increase in weight Most of the fluid given in therapy would appear to remain extracellular

✓ **INSENSIBLE FLUID LOSS** The "insensible fluid loss"—consisting of all losses from wounds, normal skin and lungs—was studied by means of weighing burn patients twice daily and carefully recording all intake and output¹⁶ As previous workers had found, the volume of insensible loss tended to bear a direct relation to the magnitude of the

M.C.(65yr.♀): 40% FLAME BURN

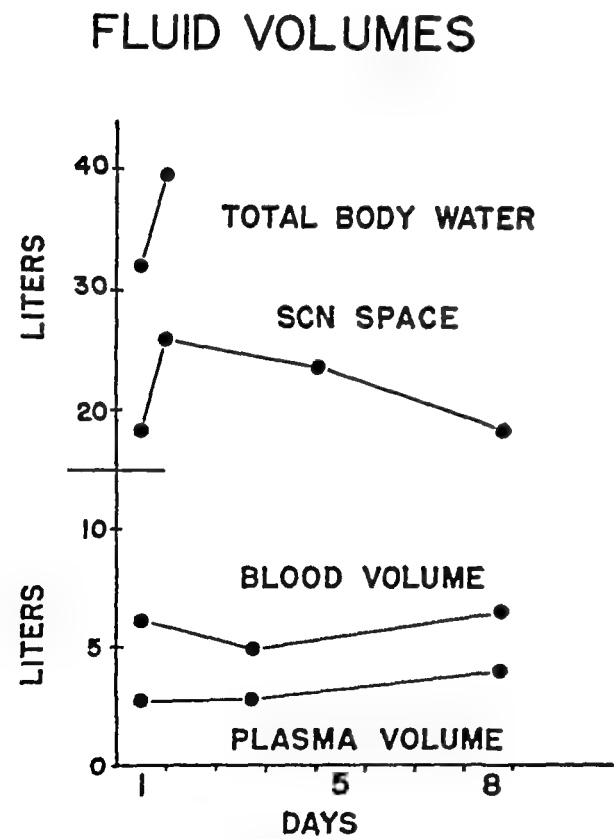


Fig 56 The increase in total body water (and body weight, see Fig 54) was due largely to an increase in the extracellular volume Note the decline in red cell mass on the third postburn day (HARRY, J D Unpublished data)

L.W (32yr♂).50% FLAME BURN

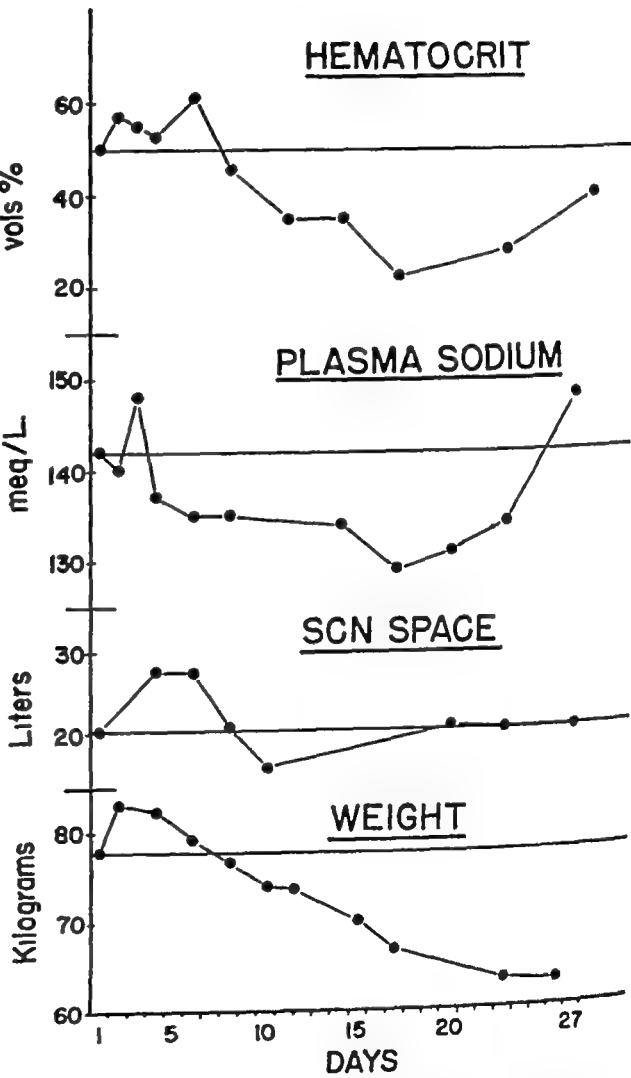


Fig 57 Relationships between hematocrit, plasma sodium level, thiocyanate space, and body weight The increase in body weight was due to fluid retained in the extracellular space The fact that the plasma sodium level declined further after the thiocyanate space had returned to normal would appear to weigh against a simple dilution effect as the only cause of the hyponatremia (HARRY, J D Unpublished data)

INSENSIBLE LOSS

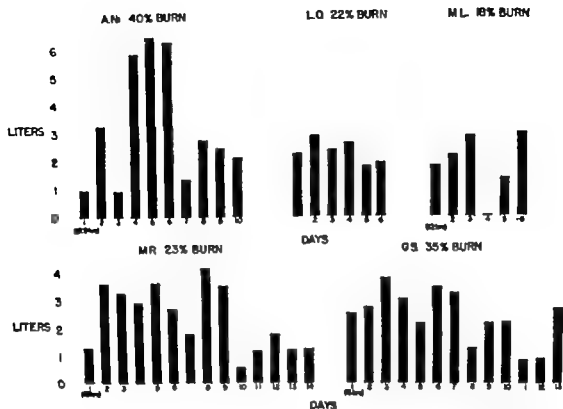


Fig 58 Insensible loss varied widely from patient to patient and in the same patient from day to day (From HARDY J D, WILSON F C, JR AND NEELY W A Thermal burns in man VII Insensible and wound fluid losses during early therapy Surgery 38: 692 1955)

injury Moreover, certain patients had relatively little insensible loss for the first few days, followed by relatively massive losses later (almost 5 L in one patient on each of two consecutive days) Perhaps the most surprising finding of all though, was the remarkable variation in insensible loss in the same patient on consecutive days (A. Ni Fig. 58)

Unquestionably the insensible loss may constitute a major factor in influencing fluid requirements in some burn patients

PLASMA CHEMISTRY VALUES Cumulative data obtained from a number of patients have been presented graphically in Figure 59 In general there was a decline in the plasma sodium level, no consistent change in the chloride level, a rise in the nonprotein nitrogen (NPN) level a subnormal plasma carbon dioxide combining power, and a gradual decline in the plasma potassium values The urine volume increased progressively from the beginning of the treatment through the ninth day

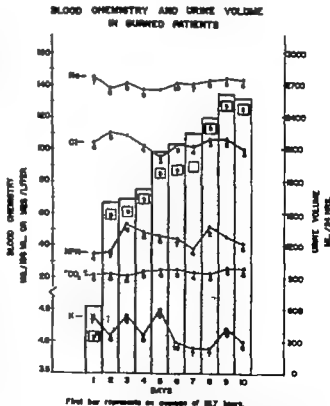


Fig 59 Averages obscure significant variations Serious acidosis occurred in several patients (HARDY J D, AND BRAMLITT E E Unpublished data)

While average values indicate probabilities, they also obscure highly significant exceptions from the general trend. Perhaps the most striking exceptions exhibited by individual patients were quite low plasma sodium and carbon dioxide combining power values. Furthermore, acidosis was treated more frequently in this group of patients than might appear to have been necessary, should the averaged values be taken completely at face value. One patient developed marked hypernatremia and hyperchloremia (Fig 60).

RENAL FUNCTION AND URINE VOLUME
Haynes and his associates¹⁸ studied renal

M.C (65yr ♀). 40% FLAME BURN SALT METABOLISM

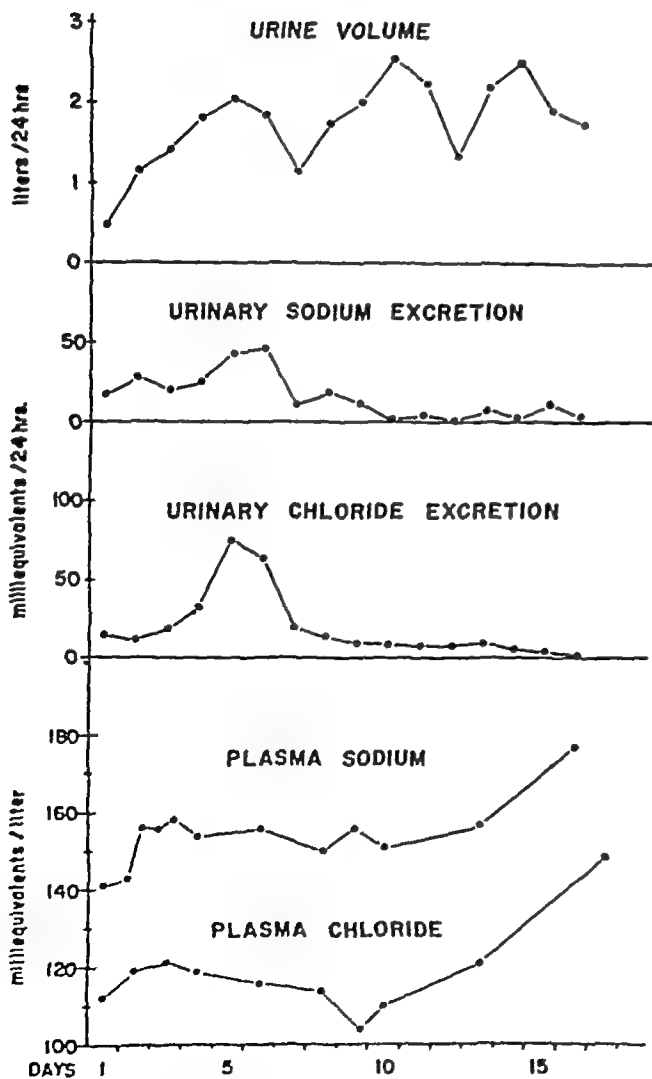


Fig 60 Hyperchloremia and hypernatremia with good urine output. Note that there was virtually no sodium or chloride in the urine (Haynes, J. D. Unpublished data.)

function in 16 severely burned patients and found a relatively constant pattern of response; it was characterized by an increase in glomerular filtration rate, a normal effective renal plasma flow, and an increased filtration fraction. This pattern was noted within the second day postburn, and the filtration rate and filtration fraction declined to reach and maintain normal values at 2½ to 3 weeks after injury. Tubular function, as measured by the maximal tubular excretory capacity, was within normal limits after injury in a group of severely burned but adequately treated patients.

In 26 patients studied by us whose burns exceeded 15 per cent (range, 15 to 85) of body surface area, only one subject (a 82-year-old female) appeared to have died primarily from renal failure *per se*. This was somewhat surprising, since it had been anticipated that the incidence of acute renal shutdown would be greater.

In the cardiac output studies, while a low cardiac output was usually associated with a low urinary output, the reverse was not necessarily true, for there were causes of oliguria in addition to that which resulted from a diminished cardiac output. There was, of course, a close correlation between blood pressure and urinary output, in that hypotension almost invariably resulted in oliguria.

Principles of Treatment

General Supportive Measures

FLUIDS USED IN THERAPY VOLUME AND COMPOSITION. Since most of the fluid loss into the burned areas occurs during the first 48 hours, a major portion of the fluid given in therapy must be given during the first 24 hours following the injury, if shock is to be effectively combatted. Actually, we give approximately one-half the first day's requirements during the first 6 hours after the burning, the rest over the next 18 hours. Moreover, it is particularly important to give a substantial portion of the estimated colloid solution requirement early.

While one can by constant attention treat

the burn patient successfully by following multiple blood pressure measurements—and these measurements are taken frequently in any case—it has proved practicable and effective to estimate the volume of colloid (blood, plasma, plasma expander), saline, and glucose solutions required for the first 24 to 48 hours on the basis of some convention or "formula." We use that described by Evans^{10, 11} and have found it most helpful if adjusted to meet the varying requirements of the individual case. For example, if the patient is quite old the volume of fluid given is kept on the low side rather than to risk excessive fluid therapy that might precipitate circulatory failure. Furthermore, if the patient is markedly obese the fluid requirements are estimated on the basis of the estimated ideal weight in conjunction with the per cent area burned, for fat contains little water, and to "calculate" fluid requirements on an exact weight basis in the very obese could result in serious over-treatment.

The fluid required in treatment is as follows¹¹

First 24 hours

✓ Blood plasma, or plasma expander multiply per cent body surface area burned by body weight in kilograms (e.g. a 40 per cent burn \times 70 kg)	2800 cc
✓ Isotonic saline (or 2 parts isotonic saline and 1 part M/6 sodium bicarbonate) Again per cent burn \times 70 kg	2800 cc ✓
Glucose solution (5 or 10 per cent)	2000 cc ✓
Total volume	7600 cc

Second 24 hours

Take one half the volume of each solution used during the first 24 hours maintaining the

2000-cc glucose solution if desired

Blood plasma or plasma expander

1400 cc

Saline solution

1400 cc

Glucose solution

1000 cc

Again these volumes frequently need to be modified somewhat in the individual case. However, the formula was derived from actual requirements recorded from a large clinical and experimental experience. It is a very convenient guide during the first 2 days when fluid requirements might otherwise be continuously underestimated and episodes of shock result. After the first 2 days the fluid therapy must be planned on the basis of the effectiveness of previous

therapy, judged from the total clinical evaluation of the patient. After 48 hours the hazard of shock rapidly diminishes.

In evaluating the clinical situation, the arterial blood pressure, the rate of urine flow, and the appearance and orientation of the patient are the most useful guides to progress. The hematocrit is usually elevated due to hemoconcentration but, while we have commonly used plasma expander to maintain the level below 60, there has been no conclusive evidence that the elevated hematocrit level is deleterious.

Anemia is a prominent feature of the extensive burn. James and his associates¹² found this due not only to red cell destruction by the injury but also to a diminished rate of hemoglobin formation. Repeated whole blood transfusion is necessary.

SEDATION IN BURNS The superficial burn may be far more painful than the deep, full thickness injury, in that the cutaneous nerve endings often have been destroyed in the latter. Therefore, morphine should not be indiscriminately administered, if the patient has no pain but does need sedation a

barbiturate is preferable in that it produces less respiratory depression than opiates.

MANAGEMENT OF ACIDOSIS The common acid base derangement in burns is an acidosis that may appear quite early. For instance one severely burned subject exhibited a plasma carbon dioxide combining power level of 16 mEq on admission 2 hours after burning. Intravenous or oral sodium bicarbonate solution is a satisfactory material for the management of this acidosis,

given as required to maintain the "CO₂" above 20 mEq/L of plasma. We do not attempt to correct the "acidosis" entirely, the depressed "CO₂" may be in part the result of a renal retention of organic and fixed acids (Fig 19). In many cases an actual pH change may not exist. For this reason, the character of the respirations should be used as an additional guide to alkali requirements.

The Burn Wounds¹

Whereas it is the wounds—their extent, their depth, whether infection develops (it usually does), whether grafting is promptly successful—that ultimately determine survival of the patient in most instances, known physiologic considerations are not paramount issues in early local management. After prolonged observation, we are not convinced that the open or exposure method has a significant advantage over the closed method—and the open method is usually abandoned as grafting of the wounds is begun. However, there is often much convenience in using the open method initially.

When the open method is to be used, we perform virtually no debridement, but simply place the patient in bed under a cradle, using "sterile" sheets so that the organisms that he brings will not be unduly increased by others. Even with the closed method debridement is minimal, for to open blisters is to lose plasma and to invite more infection. *Adequate tetanus prophylaxis on admission is mandatory.*

The early physiologic problems have to do with fluid and plasma losses from and into the burned areas. These considerations continue into the subacute and chronic periods, with blood loss also important. Moreover, the loss of a large area of functional skin renders the individual exceptionally susceptible to variations in ambient temperature. Exposure of the entire raw surface in an air-conditioned operating room under anesthesia for several hours may result in a decline in rectal temperature to levels of 95° F or lower. Conversely, in some cases

the application of bulky dressings over much of the body surface, when room temperature during the summer may be ranging to from 95 to 100° F each afternoon, may occasion serious difficulties in the dissipation of body heat.

Removal of the slough in third degree burns presents difficulties that have never been satisfactorily solved. To excise compromised tissue early is to risk removing viable tissue, since appearance is often deceiving on admission. Furthermore, the areas involved are often too extensive to be excised at one time and grafted. Yet careful attention to the wounds permits earlier closure. This desideratum of removing slough to diminish infection and to prepare for grafting led to the investigation of various enzyme preparations for this purpose to spare the patient the trauma of actual surgical excision. These efforts, while not yet conspicuously successful, are still under investigation.

Some Complications of An Extensive Full Thickness Burn

The patient with a severe burn may, of course, have any of the familiar complications of a serious and prolonged illness, such as coronary occlusion, pulmonary embolism, hemiplegia, and others. Nevertheless, there are certain complications which account for a majority of the deaths in burn patients and these should be mentioned.

✓*"METABOLIC DECOMPENSATION"* (EARLY) The injury, such as an 85 per cent flame burn, may constitute, even with essential therapy, more of an onslaught than the patient can withstand, death may occur during the first few days, though not from shock *per se*.

✓*INFECTION* Surely infection beneath the burned surfaces, often resulting in septicemia proved by repeatedly positive blood cultures, is one of the most lethal of the complications of burns. The organisms isolated from the blood stream are frequently refractory to all available antibiotics, a *Proteus* bacterium being a common finding. All too often the wounds are heavily infected,

with purulent material beneath the crusts, before debridement can be achieved to provide a healthy granulating surface for grafting.

✓ **CHRONIC EXHAUSTION** In Figure 54 it may be seen that, even after the fluid retained during early therapy has been excreted, the weight curve continues inexorably downward in the severely burned patient, reflecting not only a continued catabolism of fat and lean tissue but also the failure to achieve satisfactory food intake in these subjects. Again, food given by the gastrointestinal route often results in vomiting, distention, or diarrhea in these subjects, whereas up to the present intravenous alimentation has been quite inadequate in these patients whose requirements may be several times the normal level. With the advent of safer intravenous fat preparations, however, it is hoped that adequate nutrition can be more readily achieved. The preparations presently available require further study.

QURLING'S ULCER. This is a "stress ulcer" (probably a variant of Cushing's ulcer caused by the stimulus of intracranial injury) which may be related to increased adrenocortical activity. It usually involves the stomach or duodenum and is manifested by hematemesis, melena, and further anemia. This lesion may result in death but conservative therapy is usually employed to avoid gastric resection in an already critically ill subject.

✓ **FAILURE OF AUTOGRAFTS TO "TAKE."** Some patients exhibit a distressing failure to accept split-thickness grafts of their own skin as coverage for the burn wounds. At times this failure can be attributed to "anemia" or "malnutrition" or "inadequate preparation of the recipient surface" or to "infection." However not always can these possible explanations be invoked, and there is a genuine need for further study of the physiologic requirements involved in successful autografting in addition to the large volume of effort being devoted to finding a means of achieving successful skin homografting.

Emotional Aspects of the Burn

Thus discussion of burn management would be incomplete without mention of the tremendous psychiatric problems that are involved. On admission, the physician often examines a husky person in the prime of life who is vaguely aware that he has suffered a calamity but who is bravely prepared to meet it. Unfortunately, as the weeks of wasting pass and the pain and worry occasioned by changing of the dressings and the multiple anesthetics for skin grafting take their toll, the individual may lose his ability to cope with even minor problems. He is often reduced to a whining, shrinking creature, in whom the original person is hardly discernible.

Different, but also very real, are the emotional problems which the physician himself experiences in the treatment of these patients. It is not easy to care for the extensively burned subject, for the prognosis is usually questionable and the patient is rarely cheerful as time lengthens. Moreover, it is extremely frustrating to treat a patient for perhaps a year or more, and then to have him die abruptly from causes which one believes should have been (or one day will be) preventable by different therapy.

The following two patients are illustrative. Two girls, one 6 years old and the other 11, had been badly burned, the younger almost 2 years before and the older several months before. The parents of the younger child had long since stopped coming in regularly to see her, but she had developed a great fondness for the older child. Skin grafting had been repeatedly (but with only partial success) attempted on both, though it had been attempted far more often on the younger girl, she had maintained a courageous attitude over all the months of innumerable transfusions, tube feedings, grafting procedures and febrile periods during which it appeared she would surely die. At Christmas (1956) it was decided to allow both girls to go home by ambulance for a few days as a morale-building gesture, though it proved to be an ill-fated one.

Shortly upon their return the older girl suddenly developed an overwhelming pneumonia and died within hours. Distressing as this was, the younger child immediately turned toward the wall, refused all food or to cooperate in any way (a mode of behavior previously alien to her), and exhibited a steadily declining weight curve and general condition. A few days later she began to vomit blood, and within several more days had died. Autopsy revealed more than one gastric ulcer.

Who can say that this child's death was not in significant measure a result of the loss of the only person with whom she had established a supportive relationship?

REFERENCES

- ARTZ, C P, AND REISS, E *The Treatment of Burns* Philadelphia, W B Saunders Company, 1957
- ARTZ, C P, AND WILLIAMS, T K The protein-sparing effect of intravenous fat emulsion *Metabolism*, **6**: 682, 1957
- BLALOCK, A Experimental shock, importance of local loss of fluid in production of low blood pressure after burns *Arch Surg*, **22**: 610, 1931
- BULL, J P, AND SQUIRE, J R A study of mortality in a burns unit, standards for evaluation of alternative methods of treatment *Ann Surg*, **130**: 160, 1949
- COPE, O, AND MOORE, F D The redistribution of body water and the fluid therapy of the burned patient *Ann Surg*, **126**: 1010, 1947
- COPE, O, GRAHAM, J B, MIXTER, G, JR, AND BALL, M R Threshold of thermal trauma and influence of adrenal cortical and posterior pituitary extracts on the capillary and chemical changes, an experimental study *Arch Surg*, **59**: 1015, 1949
- COPE, O, GRAHAM, J B, MOORE, F D, AND BALL, M R The nature of the shift of plasma protein to the extravascular space following thermal trauma *Ann Surg*, **128**: 1041, 1948
- COPE, O, NARDI, G, QUIJARO, M, RAVIT, R L, STANBURY, J B, AND WRIGHT, A Metabolic rate and thyroid function following acute thermal trauma in man *Ann Surg*, **137**: 165, 1953
- EADIS, C H, JR, POLLACK, R L, AND HARDY, J D Thermal burns in man IX Urinary amino acid patterns *J Clin Invest*, **34**: 1756, 1955
- EVANS, E I, AND BUTTERFIELD, W J H The stress response in the severely burned, an interim report *Ann Surg*, **134**: 588, 1951
- EVANS, E I, PURNELL, O J, ROBINETT, P W, BATCHELOR, A, AND MARTIN, M Fluid and electrolyte requirements in severe burns *Ann Surg*, **135**: 804, 1952
- FOX, C L, AND BAER, H Redistribution of potassium, sodium and water in burns and trauma, and its relation to the phenomena of shock *Am J Physiol*, **151**: 155, 1947
- HARDY, J D, JABBOUR, E, LOVELACE, J R, NEELY, W A, AND WILSON, F C, JR Thermal burns in man IV Body weight changes during therapy *Surgery*, **38**: 685, 1955
- HARDY, J D, LOVELACE, J R, JABBOUR, E, AND BRAMLITT, E E Thermal burns in man VI Body fluid compartments during early therapy *Am Surgeon*, **21**: 969, 1955
- HARDY, J D, NEELY, W A, WILSON, F C, JR, LOVELACE, J R, AND JABBOUR, E Thermal burns in man V Cardiac output during early therapy *Surg Gynec, & Obst*, **101**: 9, 1955
- HARDY, J D, NEELY, W A, AND WILSON, F C, JR Thermal burns in man VII Insensible fluid loss *Surgery*, **38**: 692, 1955
- HARDY, J D, AND WILSON, H Thermal burn in man XI A critique of twenty-six carefully studied cases *Am Pract & Digest Treat*, **7**: 246, 1956
- HAYNES, B W, DeBAKEY, M E, AND DENMAN, F R Renal function studies of severely burned patients, a preliminary report *Ann Surg*, **134**: 617, 1951
- JAMES, G W, III, ABBOTT, L D, BROOKS, J W, AND EVANS, E I The anemia of thermal injury III Erythropoiesis and hemoglobin metabolism studied with N¹⁵-glycine in dog and man *J Clin Invest*, **33**: 150, 1954
- LANGOHR, J L, ROSENFELD, L, OWEN, C R, AND COPE, O Effect of therapeutic cold on the circulation of blood and lymph in thermal burns *Arch Surg*, **59**: 1031, 1949
- MOYER, C An assessment of the therapy of burns, a clinical study *Ann Surg*, **137**: 628, 1953
- NETSKY, M G, AND LEITER, S S Capillary permeability to horse proteins in burn-shock *Am J Physiol*, **140**: 1, 1943
- PEARSE, H E, AND KINGSLEY, H D Thermal burns from the atomic bomb *Surg Gynec & Obst*, **98**: 385, 1954
- RHINELANDER, F W, LANGOHR, J L, AND COPE, O Explorations into the physiologic basis for the therapeutic use of restrictive bandages in thermal trauma *Arch Surg*, **59**: 1056, 1949
- TABOR, H, AND ROSENTHAL, S M Experimental

mental chemotherapy of burns and shock. I
Effects of potassium administration of sodium loss, and fluid loss in tourniquet shock
Pub Health Rep., 60: 373 1915

WASE, A. W., EICHEL, H. J., AND REFFLINGER, E.
Relation of thyroid status to nitrogen

excretion following exposure to thermal radiation
Proc Soc Exper Biol. & Med., 84: 152 1953

27 WASE, A. W., AND REFFLINGER, E. The effect of thermal burns on the thyroid activity of the rat
Endocrinology 53: 451 1953

Chapter 7

Some Physiologic Considerations in Cancer— Etiology, Spread, and Control

Etiology of Cancer

Though the basic cellular change in carcinogenesis is obscure, much is known with respect to means by which cancer can be produced

✓ Hereditary Factors

TUMORS IN IDENTICAL TWINS In cancer, as with almost every other disease, the influence of heredity has always been of interest. Particular impetus was given to such studies in the cancer field by Maud Slye's investigations of the incidence and inheritability of spontaneous tumors in mice.⁷² In brief, she demonstrated that by careful inbreeding one could develop strains which were relatively resistant to the development of spontaneous tumors and other strains in which almost the entire group would develop spontaneous tumors. These studies stimulated great interest in tumors in "cancer families" and in twins. In an exhaustive study of tumors in twins made by MacFarland and Meade⁴⁵ in 1932, the frequent occurrence of "similar, simultaneous, and symmetrical" tumors in identical twins was reported, in contrast, similar tumors in non-identical twins were rare. In 1940, Macklin⁴⁶ reviewed a series of 62 pairs of identical twins, in which both were affected by tumor in 38 instances (61.3 per cent), with similar tumors occurring in 36 of the 38 pairs of the twins (94.7 per cent). The difference in age at the time of onset of symptoms in the pairs of twins averaged 1½ years. In con-

trast, in 43 pairs of nonidentical twins both were affected by tumor in 15 instances (35 per cent), with similar tumors occurring in 8 pairs (53.5 per cent). The difference in age at the time of onset of symptoms in the pairs of twins averaged 6.3 years. Interest in tumors in twins has continued.⁵⁵

HEREDITARY ASPECTS OF BREAST CANCER
MOTHER AND DAUGHTER Much study has centered around the incidence of breast cancer in mother and daughter, and the classic studies of Bittner⁸ have demonstrated that in mice several factors are required for the development of mammary cancer. The *hormones* control the growth and development of the mammary glands, without which mammary cancer would not result. In addition, however, there is an *inherited susceptibility*. The nature of this susceptibility has not been specifically determined, but may have something to do with the propagation and transmission of the mammary tumor *milk agent*. The milk agent, normally transmitted by nursing, has been found to be filterable and sedimentable, and can propagate in the living cell, thus it is classified as probably one of the filterable viruses. It is to be emphasized, nevertheless, that these factors have not been demonstrated in human beings.

Morse⁵¹ reviewed certain of the hereditary aspects of breast cancer in mother and daughter. Breast cancer was considered to be perhaps the best form of cancer in man in which to study the rôle of heredity, since

it is possible to diagnose the condition accurately because of its external location, rendering reports extending over many years reasonably reliable. Of course, it might be said that other tumors such as that of the skin or lip are also easily diagnosed, but these cancers have been shown to be under the influence of external carcinogens. For the purpose of his study, Morse selected the mother of the breast cancer patient. This was done because the sister or daughter had not usually lived through the cancer-developing age and the grandmother was often too distant for accurate recollection of facts by descendants. Reports from the literature were analyzed, and it was found that 69 per cent of the mothers of patients with breast cancer had mammary cancer, whereas in control patients only 23 per cent of the mothers had mammary cancer. In some series the incidence of breast cancer in the mothers of the cancer patients was as much as 4 times higher than that in control subjects.

A second point of importance was the age of onset in the daughters of women with breast cancer. It was found that cancer of the breast generally appeared at an earlier age in the daughter than in the mother. This has been shown to be true in tumors developing in susceptible mice also. Morse concluded from the review of his data at the Presbyterian Hospital in New York, as well as from other reports in the literature, that there is a specific hereditary tendency in cancer of the breast that cancer of the breast is more common in daughters of women with breast cancer than in the general population by about 3 to 1, and that cancer of the breast develops approximately 10 years earlier in the daughter than in the mother.

In summary, there is considerable evidence to indicate that heredity does play a part in the genesis of certain types of tumors but even in these tumors it is usually by no means the only factor.

Chronic Irritation Theory

A wide variety of conditions which cause chronic irritation have been incriminated in carcinogenesis, and that some of these are important cannot be doubted. Among the frequently encountered clinical situations are carcinomas arising in draining sinus tracts (we recently observed one in a chronically draining pilonidal sinus), in the scars of thermal burns (such a malignancy is in our hospital at the time of this writing), those following leukoplakia due to smoking, and skin cancer from excessive exposure to sunlight. In addition, there are the well known carcinogens in industry such as paraffin, shale oil, arsenic, tar and pitch, anthracene, creosote, benzene, aromatic amines, chromates, aniline dyes, beta naphthylamine, ultraviolet rays, x-ray, radium, and fissionable material. In animals it is established that carbon tetrachloride produces primary cancer of the liver, urethane produces cancer of the lung and the commonly used organic solvent diethylene glycol produces cancer of the urinary bladder. Finally farmers of lower Egypt may develop cancer of the urinary bladder secondary to schistosomiasis. Of current interest is the experimental production of carcinoma in mice with cigarette tar,¹⁴ with the all-important overtones of the possible rôle of cigarette smoking upon the increasing incidence of lung cancer in man. It is probable that cigarette smoking is a cause of lung cancer in my opinion.

In brief that certain forms of 'chronic irritation' can produce cancer is accepted by all, but precisely how this occurs is unexplained.

Hormones in Carcinogenesis¹⁵

ESTROGENS One of the earliest suggestions that important hormonal influences might obtain in cancer was the advocacy in 1889 by Schinzinger¹⁴ of oophorectomy in premenopausal women with cancer of the breast. It was believed that atrophy of the breast would follow loss of ovarian func-

environment or in the cells may give rise to neoplasms. Those resulting from the former, termed conditioned neoplasms, are known to be readily preventable and reversible, whereas the latter, named autonomous neoplasms, are not. Many autonomous growths pass through a phase of dependent growth, and the usual trend is toward a gradual acquisition of greater autonomy. Furth emphasized that the sequence of events urges greater attention to the study of normal growth-regulating mechanisms and of the very early changes in the evolution of neoplasms.

THE CONCEPTS OF INITIATING ACTION AND PROMOTING ACTION—FURTHER COMMENT. As stated above, the newer ideas concerning cancer formation were derived from observations that carcinogenesis, the process leading up to the first appearance of a tumor, appeared to be composed of two separate components with probably independent mechanisms. In 1941 Berenblum⁷ discussed these probabilities and, in examining the possible mechanism of carcinogenesis, he pointed out the significance of the co-carcinogenic action and related phenomena. Again, co-carcinogens are substances or effects which, in themselves, do not usually produce a tumor but which will produce cancer when combined with a pretreatment of the skin or some other tissue with less than the usual carcinogenic dose of a known carcinogen.

Carcinogenesis had formerly been considered a single continuous process, and the first clue of the existence of a kind of "biologic chain reaction" during the latent period of tumor development came from a study of carcinogenesis under suboptimal conditions. After such suboptimal treatment, as with even a single application of a carcinogen to the skin, which normally produced only an occasional new growth, tumors could be made to develop in considerable numbers by subjecting the "pretreated" skin to several forms of stimulation which were themselves not necessarily carcinogenic. Berenblum considered the effect of

the limited treatment with the carcinogen as constituting the conversion of a few normal cells of the epithelium into "dormant tumor cells," which remained in a sub-threshold state and required further "stimulation" for their development into progressively growing tumors. The change from the normal to the dormant tumor cell came to be known as "initiating action," whereas the awakening or stimulating of the dormant tumor cells into actively growing tumors has come to be known as "promoting action." Initiating action occurs quickly and is irreversible, persisting for at least 43 weeks in the mouse. In contrast, *promoting action* is slow-acting and to a degree is reversible. It is important to note that tumors develop when *promoting action* follows a brief period of *initiating action* but not when the sequence is reversed.

Berenblum⁶ considers that *initiating action* represents a sudden, specific, irreversible change in a normal cell, whether brought about by true somatic mutation or by a mutation-like process. What, then, are the mechanism and nature of *promoting action*? And how does the subsequent *promoting action* (following *initiating action*) bring about a change from dormancy to progressive growth? And what kind of biologic process is involved? In brief, it would appear that at least one explanation is that the *promoting action consists of a process of delaying maturation of cells so that sufficient stem cells may be piled up to reach the critical number of cells which are required to produce an independent colony of cancer cells* (Matured cells die off). It is known that certain cells—such as fibroblasts and monocytes in tissue culture, and also with the transplantation of various small inocula of tumor cells *in vivo*—fail to divide unless a critical number of the cells are present in close proximity.

If it be accepted, for the present purposes, that delayed maturation is in truth the nature of the *promoting action*, then certain clinical circumstances are made less difficult to explain, at least tentatively. For ex-

ample, if initiating action results in a sudden and permanent change in the potentiality of a normal cell, and if promoting action by delaying maturation, allows a sufficient number of undifferentiated daughter cells of the altered cell to accumulate and thus reach a colony of critical size then neither process need be dependent upon a net increase in growth rate. This is further underscored by the fact that some tumors continue to grow expansively though their mitotic index may even be lower than that of the parent normal tissue.

Tumors are relatively rare in children possibly because of the low probability of initiating action in early life. If initiating action proves to be mutational in nature then the incidence of spontaneous initiating action taking place would increase with age, as does the incidence of tumors. It is thought that when a tumor does arise in a child its evolution is rapid because of the normal expansive rate of growth characteristic of that stage of development of the individual; here the normal growth process itself serves as a promoting stimulus to the tumor. In adults initiating action probably arises spontaneously with increasing frequency as the subject ages.²² Unquestionably many dormant tumor cells never reach the critical number required for independent growth and thus are never recognized clinically during life.

DORMANT METASTASES The fact that the number of tumor cells present may be below a critical colony size and thus remain in a dormant state may explain why metastases sometimes appear in man several decades after an apparently successful radical operation for cancer.

SPONTANEOUS TUMOR REGRESSION Rare but well authenticated cases of spontaneous regression of cancers do occur. This might be explained on the basis that if the rate of maturation of the tumor cells were to overtake the rate of division then the number of undifferentiated tumor cells might fall below the critical size required for progressive growth. This could also explain the therapeutic arrest and regression of certain

cancers when the hormonal environment is changed, such as the regression of prostatic tumors following orchiectomy and/or estrogen administration.

Mechanism of Local Cancer Invasion and of Metastasis to Distant Sites (Fig. 61)

The Nature of Invasiveness

In a review of the mechanisms responsible for the origin and distribution of blood borne tumor metastasis Coman¹⁸ pointed out that two distinguishing biologic characteristics of malignant tumors are their ability to invade adjacent normal tissues and their ability to produce secondary tumors in distant parts of the body. Local tissue invasion was emphasized as a prerequisite to the formation of blood borne metastasis, for in this way tumor cells gain entrance to the vascular system initially. Therefore, an understanding of the mechanisms of metastasis begins with inquiry into the phenomenon of invasiveness.

By invasiveness is meant the ability to penetrate surrounding tissues. This capacity is not restricted to malignant cells, since leukocytes and macrophages may also enter other tissues. Nevertheless the capacity to invade other tissues is a characteristic peculiar to certain cells only, and is a biologic attribute not shared by cells of benign tumors or by most normal cells other than leukocytes and macrophages. Moreover, the invasive properties of tumors appear to reside largely or entirely in the tumor cells themselves. Coman concluded that factors such as multiplication rate, liberation of lytic substances, and loss of growth restraints need no longer be regarded as essential factors in invasiveness, since these qualities either are shared by noninvasive tumors or do not exist in malignant tumors. What then, are the properties peculiar to leukocytes, macrophages, and cancer cells which permit invasion?

It would appear that this property of invasion depends on there being present isolated single cells and on a highly developed

ameboid motility It was reported as early as 1863 by Virchow⁷¹ that cancer cells possess ameboid motility, and this has been amply confirmed by tissue culture studies in modern times By photographic means,²⁰ cells from breast cancers were shown to have an average speed of 0.7μ per minute, with a maximum rate of 2.4μ per minute Cells from a carcinoma of the kidney attained a maximum rate of 4.4μ per minute, while cells from a mouse fibrosarcoma traveled at 6.2μ per minute Of further interest was the observation that even tiny clusters of from 3 to 5 epithelial cells from a rabbit carcinoma progressed as an ameboid unit It was also demonstrated that cells of benign epithelial tumors and even non-neoplastic glandular epithelial cells (from cystic disease of the breast) may be motile in tissue culture, *provided that these cells are first forcibly detached from their companion cells*

An important capacity for local invasiveness of cancer cells, then, would appear to be their ability to progress by ameboid movement The reason that the cells of normal tissues and of benign tumors usually do not invade surrounding tissues would appear to be that they are so firmly attached to one another that they are unable to escape and begin their ameboid migration In contrast, the cells of malignant tumors are often found in the body free from the parent tumor It was shown by Coman¹⁴ that the magnitude of force required to separate a pair of normal squamous epithelial cells from each other is much greater than the force required to separate cancerous squamous cells Furthermore, it was possible more easily to dislodge individual cells of various malignant adenocarcinomas from man by a mechanical shaking of the cancerous tissues than was the case with the shaking of normal prototype tissue, from which few cells were dislodged⁴⁵

This lowered adhesiveness of cancer cells was related by Coman and his associates to a deficiency in calcium, and it was concluded that the local invasiveness is associated

with, if not due to, this deficiency Coman noted that most cell physiologists agree that calcium is located principally at the cell surface, but how it is combined there and why the cancer cell is unable to bind the normal amount of calcium are as yet unknown

RELATION OF INVASIVENESS TO METASTASIS Indirectly quoting Coman¹⁵ further, after the cancer cells have separated from one another and begun to travel by ameboid motion through the tissues, they tend to follow paths of least resistance Loose tissues such as muscle and areolar tissues are more readily invaded than hard and compact tissues such as bone and cartilage It is pointed out that cancer of the prostate infiltrates the loose tissues of the nerve sheaths in preference to the denser parts of the gland itself, and that lymphatics offer natural preformed paths of low resistance Indeed, cancer cells may even grow in lymphatics as solid cords or be carried along in the current as individual units Similarly, cancer cells in general have little difficulty in penetrating the walls of capillaries and veins (one often sees hypernephroma occluding the renal vein), whereas invasion through the muscular wall of an artery is rarely observed Once the veins and capillaries have been invaded, the blood stream may readily carry the cells to different parts of the body In fact, tumor cells can commonly be demonstrated in the venous drainage of a tumor and even, though far less frequently, in the peripheral venous blood They may be particularly well demonstrated by bone marrow biopsy (Fig 61)

Mechanisms of Blood-Borne Metastasis

Of particular importance in the spread of tumors by way of the blood stream are the factors which determine the number and anatomic distribution of the metastatic tumors produced by the primary growth The answers to these factors have to do with the site of arrest of the embolic tumor cells (the organ involved), the survival of arrested embolic cells (is the "soil theory" more valid than the vascular "distribution"

MECHANISMS OF TUMOR METASTASIS

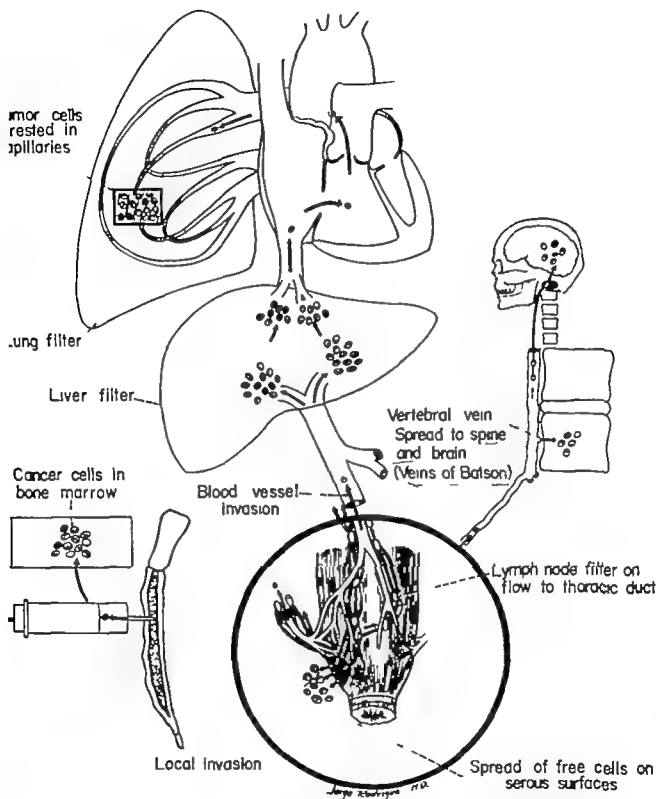


Fig 01 It is metastasis which precludes successful surgical management of a great many tumors. The factors which inhibit and those which promote metastasis are of fundamental concern.

theory?), and the subsequent growth of the new tumor.

As with the injection of bacteria into the blood stream to produce a bacteremia, the number of embolic cells is an important fac-

tor in producing a significant number of distant metastases; in fact a direct proportionality exists in this respect. Of course the mortality of embolic cells is high, and only a small percentage of those which

break away and enter the blood stream find nourishment elsewhere and produce secondary tumors

Next, what factors in the primary tumor influence the number of tumor cell emboli released into the circulation? Zeidman, McCutcheon, and Coman⁷⁶ found that the number of metastases was proportional to the duration of growth of the primary tumor. There was a poor correlation between the size of the tumor and the number of metastases, and this has a parallel in man in that it is a well established clinical and pathologic fact that the number of metastatic tumors in man bears no particular relationship to the size of the primary tumor.

Factors Affecting the Distribution of Metastatic Tumors

As noted above, there have existed two major hypotheses regarding the location of metastatic tumor emboli: the *soil theory* and the *circulation or distribution theory*. Essentially, the soil theory holds that certain organs are more conducive to the arrest and growth of embolic cells, with the production of secondary tumors, than are other organs. The proponents of this theory have pointed to the fact that the lungs, liver, and bone are frequently involved, whereas muscle and the spleen were not frequently involved. The alternative hypothesis has been that most metastases could be explained simply on the basis of the distribution of blood containing the tumor emboli.

Coman and his associates¹⁵ showed that whereas one would expect the lungs and the liver to contain a large number of secondary tumors—the portal blood draining through the liver and the systemic blood through the lungs—the fact that the bones of the spine were commonly involved by metastases from the prostate (owing to the veins described by Batson⁴) weighed heavily in favor of the distribution theory. Further to examine this phenomenon, suspension of tumor cells injected into the femoral veins of rats and rabbits were diverted into the vertebral veins, thus producing tumors in the

vertebrae.¹⁶ From these studies it was concluded that the three common foci for metastatic tumors—the lungs, liver, and the bones of the skeletal axis—are situated as might be anticipated on the basis of the “blood flow” theory.

How Are Arterial Metastases to Kidneys, Adrenals, Spleen, and Muscle Explained?

It is considered probable that, first, cell may break off as pulmonary secondary metastases and spread to these organs. Second, it was shown by Pinzmetel and his associates⁵⁰ that glass beads of a size larger than most cancer cells pass readily through the lungs, probably through arteriovenous shunts (Fig. 174). Third, it was shown that if tumor cells are injected into the left heart and thus allowed to spread to the organs not usually involved by metastasis, metastases readily occur, again emphasizing the importance of the circulation in the distribution of embolic tumor cells and the formation of secondary tumors. Apparently in conflict with the blood flow theory, some organs did not exhibit metastatic takes as readily as did certain other organs, even when approximately the same number of embolic cells reached the organs in question. However, it was noted that the cells that lodged in arterioles usually did not take root and multiply, while those that lodged in capillaries took root much more often. When the various organs were compared on the basis of the number of embolic cells found lodged in capillaries, there was a good correlation.

Nevertheless, there do appear to be some as yet unexplained differences in the incidence of tumor takes in different tissues.

Coman¹⁵ considered it possible that the fact that the lung is essentially an “air-filled sponge,” in contrast to the solid structure of other organs, may render it more difficult for tumor cells to secure blood supply and to grow readily; moreover, the lung is continually expanding and contracting. He noted that while the lung is the most frequent site of metastatic tumors, still, it must

give a relatively enormous number of coli, compared with those that reach other organs. Should only a few of these coli survive in the lungs, it would be expected that the lung would still be the organ most commonly the site of metastasis.

Other Factors in Tumor Spread and Retention

LYMPHATIC METASTASIS Various considerations of lymphatic metastasis have been reviewed by Willis²³ and by Taylor and Thomson.²⁴ The lymphatics constitute natural and preformed channels of least resistance for tumor emboli. Cells enter the peripheral channel of the first lymph node, gradually overwhelm that node, and break through to the next node in line. Occlusion of axillary nodes by metastatic breast cancer results in lymphatic back pressure rendering involvement of the internal mammary nodes more likely. In an as yet poorly explained manner the lymph nodes appear to provide not only a mechanical but also an immunologic barrier to cancer.

SPREAD OF TUMOR DURING COLON RESECTION Heile¹³ called attention to the fact that a recurrence following a colon resection may be due to the circumstance that manipulation of the tumor pushed cells backwards into the wall that was later used to perform the anastomosis with tumor cell implantation along the suture line. In addition it has been shown that the veins leading away from a carcinoma of the colon (and from most other cancers) often contain tumor cells, and it is advisable first to ligate the blood supply to the involved portion of the colon. Ligation is also tied firmly around the colon at a judicious distance above and below the tumor to prevent the mechanical dissemination of tumor cells into the bowel as it is going to be left behind.

In another connection Garlock and his associates²⁵ showed that merely to brush a sponge across the serosal surface of the bowel at the site of a carcinoma of the colon will pick up cancer cells. It is probable that

metastasis readily results throughout the peritoneal cavity in this manner.

The air borne spread of tumor was demonstrated experimentally by Furth²⁶ and, more recently by Norman and McBroom.²⁴

General Effects of Cancer upon the Patient

Malignant Cachexia

Most cancer patients do not die from the mechanical effects of the primary tumor and the metastases—they die from the *malignant cachexia* that develops. The clinical picture of malignant cachexia is only too familiar, including the wasted face, pallor and anemic complexion, the languid demeanor, weight loss, lack of energy, loss of appetite and, terminally, various infections. Yet in a syndrome which is so characteristic of advanced malignancy (or of advanced starvation and infection), it is surprising how difficult it is to pinpoint physiologic mechanisms which have been deranged and which have resulted in this state of physiologic disarray. Infection and malignancy have many similarities (Fig. 62).

There are at least two major schools of thought regarding the mechanism of malignant cachexia. The first school holds that the cachexia results from the fact that the tumor withdraws from the body some substance which is essential to good health. The



Fig 62 Infections and malignant tumors have many similarities. This patient was thought to have a pyogenic or fungus infection but biopsy revealed a sarcoma.

second school—and this is the one which appeals to us more strongly—holds that the tumor produces some substance or substances which adversely affect the more subtle functions of many of the organs of the body, in particular the liver and the processes of blood formation

Weight loss and poor nutrition are hallmarks of advanced cancer, but it is not always clear whether the weight loss is due to the loss of appetite or whether the weight loss would have occurred anyway even had the patient been force-fed. The fact is, while an increased intake may improve some individuals, many cancer patients have been force-fed and have still not been able normally to utilize the materials which were introduced into the gastrointestinal tract. Therefore, in addition to the inadequate intake that may result from loss of appetite, there exists also the additional circumstance that the food taken in is not normally utilized in the fabrication of tissue. The mechanisms of, first, the loss of appetite and, second, the loss of the ability of body cells to utilize normally the ingested foodstuffs are by no means clear.

An additional finding in advanced malignancy is that of anemia. In a series of studies, Wintrobe¹¹ found that not only is hemoglobin formation deranged in the presence of chronic infection but that the life span of the individual red cell is shortened. Patients with severe chronic infection and those with chronic cancer have many clinical findings in common, and one of these is the development of anemia of a more or less severe degree. As Wintrobe has shown for infection, others have shown for cancer. For example, Sheets and his associates⁶⁵ found that three patients with carcinoma of the cervix uteri who had normal erythrocyte levels and normal rates of red cell loss developed a random destructive mechanism for transfused cells from 7 to 10 days after x-ray therapy was begun. They exhibited various grades of oligocythemia, which were ascribed to excessive loss of erythrocytes from random destruction, despite actual ac-

celeration of the rate of erythrocyte release to the circulation. A fourth patient with the same disease was demonstrated to have a spontaneous random destruction mechanism for transfused cells, but she maintained a normal erythrocyte level by an accelerated rate of red cell release. These workers were not able to demonstrate a depression of the rate of red cell release from the bone marrow in this particular cancer.

Clinically, carcinomas of the cecum and ascending colon, more particularly the former, are notoriously apt to be associated with an anemia which is frequently difficult to explain on the basis of blood loss, particularly when virtually no bleeding has been noted and no occult blood can be demonstrated in the stools. Certainly the degree of occult blood detection is not proportional to the profound anemia which these patients may have. It is not difficult to suspect the possible presence of not only an increased rate of red cell destruction but also a depression of the bone marrow in these subjects, though such has not usually been demonstrated. Needless to say, the anemia of chronic cancer may be due in part to nutritional inadequacy and, more rarely, to bone marrow replacement by metastases.

Chemical Changes in Cancer

Despite a prodigious amount of chemical investigation in recent years, the most consistent chemical finding is that of a decreased catalase activity in the liver in the presence of a rapidly growing malignancy. The function of this enzyme is to catalyze the union of hydrogen and oxygen to form water. Lucké and his associates⁴³ showed that this capacity of a tumor to produce a reduction in the liver catalase activity crossed the parabiotic union, a finding which suggested that a cancer in one animal probably did elaborate a substance that depressed hepatic function in the liver of the other. Of course, such a preparation did not entirely exclude the possibility that the tumor removed from both rats some sub-

stance which resulted in a lowering of the liver catalase activity

Remote Effects of Certain Tumors

Elsewhere it has been mentioned that certain tumors of the lung, most particularly the localized fibrous mesothelioma of the pleura may result in osteoarthropathy. This may assume the form of attacks of chills, chilly sensations or fever, painful and sometimes migratory involvement of joints, and clubbing of fingers or toes or both.¹² Moreover, the joint manifestations usually disappear promptly, even within days, after the mesothelioma is removed. The mechanism by which these joint symptoms and signs are produced is obscure.

Physiologic Considerations in the Treatment of Cancer

The Unpredictability of the Individual Tumor

One of the most difficult matters in the standardization and the evaluation of surgical therapy—and, indeed, of all forms of therapy—of malignant tumors in man lies in the fact that human tumors vary so greatly in their natural history. This is due first to the fact that few tumors are identical, that is the setting is not the same as when one transplants in laboratory animals a standardized tumor from strain to strain and from generation to generation. The second difficulty lies in the fact that the internal environment for a particular tumor varies from one person to another. Thus the major variables of the tumor itself and of the host cannot be controlled in man. This is particularly true of certain cancers such as those of the thyroid, breast, and stomach. The bizarre behavior of thyroid cancer has recently been emphasized by Duncan Cantrel and Lund.¹³

The importance of *biologic predeterminism* in gastric carcinoma as a limiting factor of curability was emphasized by MacDonald and Kotin¹⁴ in an analysis of recent reports regarding the operability and cure

of this neoplasm. They concluded that it is biologic predeterminism, rather than the time or type of surgical treatment, which governs the end results in gastric cancer. Natural selection was the best indicator of operability and possible resectability. In general, patients with well defined symptoms of gastric dysfunction presented the most favorable tumors. Duration of symptoms bore some relation to resectability, and curability increased with duration of symptoms in resectable cases. The pathways of local and regional spread were considered to be such that total gastrectomy offered no promise of increase in curability. The only genuine "early" treatment is gastric resection for gastric ulcer which may represent carcinoma. Radical, extended surgery will be curative for some locally invasive lesions infiltrating adjacent structures without evidence of remote metastasis but the available evidence indicates that under the most ideal circumstances, less than 20 per cent of all gastric cancers are surgically curable. MacDonald and Kotin concluded that the most satisfactory procedure, by the criteria of curative and physiologic end results, is genuine subtotal gastrectomy with wide omental resection and splenectomy.

A similar line of reasoning applies to the treatment of carcinoma of the breast.

The Hormonal Therapy of Cancer

CARCINOMA OF THE PROSTATE. Before considering specific cancers, it is desirable to survey briefly the steps which have led up to the present status of endocrine therapy in cancer. As pointed out earlier oophorectomy has for more than 50 years been advocated for the control of mammary carcinoma. Furthermore, it has long been appreciated that various types of tumors of the female genital tract may be induced by the administration of estrogens, at least in laboratory animals.

The rôle of androgens in maintaining normal prostatic growth and function in dogs was first demonstrated by the classic studies of Huggins.¹⁵ Later, in 1941 he and his as

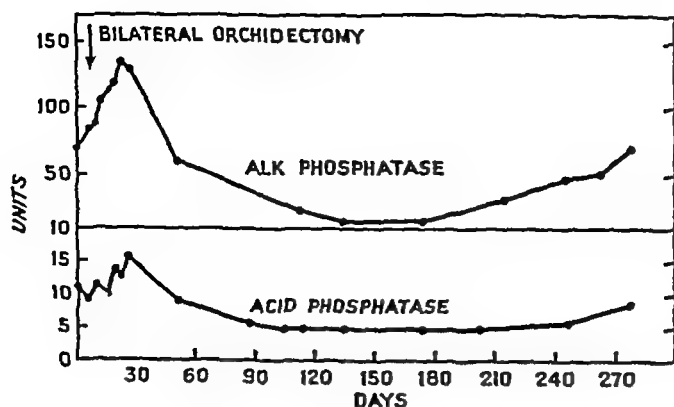


Fig 63 Effects of castration on serum alkaline phosphatase and serum acid phosphatase in case of carcinoma of prostate. Androgens are necessary for normal prostatic growth. Prostatic carcinoma often produces an elevation in the acid phosphatase level. This level usually falls following orchietomy or estrogen therapy, but can be made to rise again by giving androgens. (From HUGGINS, C. Harvey Lectures, 42: 188, 1947, as modified by Wright, S. *Applied Physiology* Ed 9 London, Oxford University Press, 1955.)

sociates³⁵ reported their studies regarding the effects of castration on advanced carcinoma of the prostate gland. In their original report of 21 cases in which castration was performed, 4 died within 8 months of operation, and in 2 the operation was too recent at the time of writing to permit evaluation, but in 15 cases prompt clinical improvement had occurred. This was evidenced by a decrease in the serum acid phosphatase level (Fig 63) in all but 2 cases, an increase in weight and a return of appetite, an increase in the red cell count of the peripheral blood, a decrease in the amount of pain from the primary or the metastatic lesions, a shrinkage in the primary lesion, an increased density of metastatic lesions visualized by roentgenogram and, in 1 case, an improvement in neurologic signs of compression of the cauda equina by metastasis. It was later shown that estrogen therapy produced similar results. The injection of an androgen such as testosterone, on the other hand, caused a recrudescence of the pain and a rise in the acid phosphatase level.

Adrenalectomy for prostatic cancer was first reported by Huggins and Scott in 1945.³⁶ The reasoning behind this procedure was that relapse in patients who had been

initially improved by orchietomy and estrogen therapy was due to the secretion of androgens by the adrenals. In a subsequent and more extensive review of such studies, Huggins and Beigenstal³² reported their observations on adrenalectomy in 7 patients with metastatic cancer of the prostate whose disease had relapsed following previous responses to antiandrogenic therapy. One patient died postoperatively, but in 4 others some of the following effects were observed: relief of intractable bone pain, a gain in body weight, and a reduction in the serum acid phosphatase level. In 2 patients there was a significant shrinkage of large nodular prostates, and in 2 patients no improvement occurred.

Other teams at various medical centers have since also investigated adrenalectomy for reactivated carcinoma of the prostate. In general, the results have been disappointing. Transient relief of pain is commonly observed in the majority of patients, but these results are usually short lived, and the progression of the tumor is affected in but few. Nevertheless, these studies have shown again that alterations in the hormonal balance can and will influence the natural history of certain malignant tumors.

Whereas the relief of pain from prostatic cancer is usually prompt following castration, that obtained with diethylstilbestrol is more gradual. A dosage of 5 mg 3 times a day may be employed, but care must be exercised to avoid excessive fluid retention lest heart failure be precipitated. The mechanisms by which castration and stilbestrol effect their improvement in advanced prostatic malignancy are still uncertain. As a practical point in prognosis, however, it is worth remembering that the serum acid phosphatase level usually varies with the course of the disease, falling at the beneficial effects of castration and estrogen therapy are realized and rising again as the efficacy of this therapy begins to wane.

CARCINOMA OF THE BLADDER. Earlier in this chapter it was stated that Schinzinger³⁷ was

the first to suggest castration for cancer of the breast and that Beatson⁶ first reported, in 1896 the castration of 2 premenopausal women who had advanced metastatic cancer of the breast. Relief of pain and regression of the malignant growths in these patients were observed. In 1936 Dresser¹⁵ reported on a series of 59 patients whose ovaries had been treated with what was supposed to be destructive doses of x-ray. Beneficial effects were reported in about one-third of the cases though subsequent reports by others did not claim quite so high a percentage of successful results. In 1949 Treves¹⁶ reported the results of castration in 13 male patients with advanced carcinoma of the breast and the results in this group were just as favorable as those in women regression of local lesions and healing of skeletal metastases being observed.

In 1939 Nathanson and Andervont³² reported that the prolonged administration of testosterone to female mice of a high mammary cancer strain resulted in a significant decrease in the number of mammary tumors that ultimately developed and only a short time later Farrow and Woodard⁴ reported the treatment of metastatic cancer of the breast with testosterone. Since then considerable palliation has been achieved in premenopausal women by the administration of androgens particularly following oophorectomy. Testosterone propionate may be given in doses of 100 mg intramuscularly 3 times a week. Adair and others^{1,2} found that an average cumulative dose of 3000 mg. was required before objective improvement in skeletal metastases was noted. They found that such therapy produced objective improvement in 19 per cent of 48 patients with skeletal metastases and 15 per cent of 54 patients with extraskeletal metastases. Temporary relief of pain was obtained in 44 of 58 patients in whom this was the initial complaint. It was particularly significant that certain patients were symptomatically improved even in the presence of progression of the disease.

In the administration of androgens care

must be taken to avoid dangerous elevations in the serum calcium level. This level may be somewhat elevated even at the time testosterone therapy is begun, but if it begins to rise under therapy the hormone should be stopped at once. In addition, excessive fluid retention caused by this therapy may result in cardiac decompensation.

Estrogen therapy in mammary carcinoma
In 1944 Haddow and his associates³¹ demonstrated a therapeutic effect of estrogens in postmenopausal women with advanced mammary carcinoma. Since that time numerous others have reported on the use of this therapy. The criteria for the administration of estrogens in advanced breast cancer are somewhat different from the indications for androgen therapy. Whereas androgens have their greatest effect on osseous metastases in premenopausal women, estrogens have their major beneficial effect on soft tissue lesions in postmenopausal women. Lesions of the skin, lymph nodes, pleura and breasts may be expected to show improvement in roughly one fourth of the patients with this type of disease. The dosage of diethylstilbestrol employed varies from 5 to 30 mg per day, with an average dose being about 15 mg by mouth. Adair and his associates² found it necessary to administer approximately 630 mg before the average patient obtained relief, which lasted from 2 to 17 months. Pain was relieved in slightly more than one-half of the patients with this complaint.

Patients treated with estrogens frequently experience a definite improvement in their general physical condition. Their sense of well being is enhanced, blood formation is increased, appetite is improved, and most of them gain weight. Unfortunately early recurrence of symptoms is the rule.

Bilateral adrenalectomy for advanced mammary cancer
Huggins³³ first advanced adrenalectomy as a treatment for metastatic disease of the breast. In brief he speculated that certain mammary cancers are dependent upon adrenal estrogens for growth. When the neoplasm is adrenal-dependent,

bilateral total adrenalectomy is often followed by regression of the metastases with recalcification of the bone defects. Symptomatic improvement with relief of pain may be marked. Metabolic studies were performed by Pearson and co-workers⁵⁸

Unfortunately, only a comparatively small percentage of mammary carcinomas appear to be adrenal-dependent, and it has not been possible to predict in advance those which will regress after adrenalectomy. Nevertheless, when the other more well established endocrine measures have been exhausted in patients with advanced metastatic mammary cancer, bilateral total adrenalectomy may produce considerable improvement in perhaps one-fifth of the cases. This therapy is of course not curative.

Use of ACTH and cortisone in treatment of terminal malignancy. Pearson and his associates⁵⁷ found that cortisone produced objective remissions in some patients with breast cancer, for short periods of time. Various workers have commented upon the use of ACTH and cortisone in terminal malignancy and the report by Raab and Geiber⁶⁰ is representative. Their experience with the use of cortisone and ACTH in the management of incurable malignancy indicated that it should be used only in those patients in whom all known modalities for cure had been abandoned and for whom only large doses of narcotics remained. In such patients cortisone and ACTH brought about an improved mental state and better nutrition, and reduced the amount of narcotics required for pain. They also often rendered it possible for a patient with a hopeless neoplasm to maintain a more normal existence for a longer period of time.

Hormonal Influences upon Other Types of Tumors

THYROID CANCER. The reports of Rawson^{61, 62} and of others emphasized that the metastases of thyroid cancer could be induced to take up more radioactive iodine by either total thyroidectomy or the adminis-

tration of thiouracil. Reporting upon 100 cancers of the thyroid, Rawson and Rall⁶³ found that 46 possessed the capacity to concentrate radioactive iodine, but that none of these tumors was capable of concentrating more than a fraction of the iodine trapped by normal thyroid tissue. However, in approximately 50 per cent of 52 patients, total thyroidectomy increased the function of previously nonfunctioning metastatic lesions, the metastases were capable of maintaining the patient in a euthyroid state and they took up radioiodine. Moreover, the administration of thyrotropic hormone (TSH) induced function in the tumors in about one-third of the cases studied. Finally, it was demonstrated in 62 per cent of a series of 42 previously totally thyroidectomized patients having skeletal or pulmonary metastases that the prolonged administration of thiouracil or of Tapazole, agents which augment the action of the thyrotropic hormone, resulted in the metastatic lesions' acquiring maximum capacity to concentrate radioactive iodine. This suggested the practicability of effectively treating the metastases with radioiodine. Unfortunately, the use of radioiodine for this purpose has been disappointing.

THE EFFECT OF ACTH AND CORTISONE UPON LYMPHOID TISSUE. Scarcely had ACTH and cortisone become available than it was apparent that these agents were strongly effective for lymphoid tissue. In 1949 Pearson and his associates⁵⁶ reported their experience in the treatment of certain lymphoid tissues with ACTH and cortisone. Frequently enlarged nodes virtually melted away in the course of 2 or 3 days, and the markedly elevated white cell count fell to within normal limits. Similar findings were reported by others. Lymphocytic leukemia was most specifically affected by such therapy, myelogenous leukemia being considerably more refractory. Nevertheless, such remissions proved to be temporary and early recurrence was the rule.

Concluding Remarks—Cancer Chemotherapy

The treatment of human cancer is the center of intense activity at the present time. It is now acknowledged that with surgery and radiation therapy alone one cannot hope to cure the majority of tumors, and that chemotherapy must be rendered more effective. While most drugs are even less effective than radiation and surgery, a prodigious clinical survey of possibly effective anticancer agents is being carried forward under governmental auspices. The hope is that effective cancer control measures need not await the ultimate explanation of the processes of carcinogenesis.

The chemotherapeutic agents which are being used against tumors may be classified in four groups:

✓1 Cytotoxic agents

2 Alkylating agents

✓a Nitrogen mustard

✓b Thio-TEPA (triethylene thio-phosphoramidate)

✓c Myleran

3 Antimetabolites

✓a Folic acid antagonists

✓b Antipurines

✓c Antipyrimidines

✓d Antiglutamic acids

4 Hormones

(Examples given above)

ALKYLATING AGENTS Particular interest at the present time centers upon further study of nitrogen mustard (HN_2) and related compounds which have a *radiomimetic* effect. That is the physiologic changes produced by these chemotherapeutic agents are similar to those produced by radiation. There is serious depression of the bone marrow, and thus dosage must be carefully controlled.

REFERENCES

- 1 ADAM, F. E. AND HEERMANN, J. B. The use of testosterone propionate in the treatment of advanced carcinoma of the breast. *Ann Surg.*, 123: 1023 1916
- 2 ADAM, F. E., et al. The use of estrogens and

androgens in advanced mammary cancer. *J.A.M.A.*, 140: 1193 1919

- 3 ALLANBY, G. R., AND OWEN, S. E. Adenocarcinoma of the breast coincidental with strenuous endocrine therapy. *J. A. M. A.* 112: 1033 1939
- 4 BATSON, O. V. The function of the vertebral veins and their rôle in the spread of metastases. *Ann Surg.* 112: 138 1940
- 5 BEATSON, G. T. On the treatment of inoperable cases of carcinoma of the mamma. Suggestions for a new method of treatment with illustrative cases. *Lancet* 2: 101 1896
- 6 BERENBLUM, I. A speculative review the probable nature of promoting action and its significance in the understanding of the mechanism of carcinogenesis. *Cancer Res.* 14: 471 1954
- 7 BERENBLUM, I. The mechanism of carcinogenesis—a study of the significance of carcinogenic action and related phenomena. *Cancer Res.* 1: 807 1911
- 8 BITTNER, J. J. The causes and control of mammary cancer in mice. *Harvey Lect.* 42: 221 1946-47
- 9 BOYER, G. M. AND ROSSON, J. M. The effects of prolonged estrogen administration upon male mice of various strains. Development of testicular tumors in the Strong strain. *J. Path. & Bact.* 51: 9 1940
- 10 BURNOWS, H. Pituitary hyperplasia in a male mouse after the administration of oestrin. *Am. J. Cancer* 28: 741 1936
- 11 CARTWRIGHT, G. E., LAURITSEN, M. A., JOYCE, P. J., MERRILL, I. M., AND WINTROBE, M. M. The anemia of infections. I. Hypoferremia, hypercupremia, and alterations in porphyrin metabolism in patients. *J. Clin. Invest.*, 25: 66 1946
- 12 CLAGETT, O. T., McDONALD, J. R., AND SCHMIDT, H. W. Localized fibrous mesothelioma of the pleura. *J. Thoracic Surg.* 24: 213 1952
- 13 COLE, W. H. AND SOUTHWICK, H. W. Carcinoma of the colon with special reference to prevention of recurrence. *J. A. M. A.*, 155: 1549 1954
- 14 COWAN, D. R. Decreased mutual adhesiveness, a property of cells from squamous cell carcinomas. *Cancer Res.*, 4: 625 1944
- 15 COWAN, D. R. Mechanisms responsible for the origin and distribution of blood-borne tumor metastases—a review. *Cancer Res.* 13: 397 1953
- 16 COWAN, D. R., AND DELONG, R. P. The rôle of the vertebral venous system in the metastasis of cancer of the spinal column. *Cancer* 4: 610 1961
- 17 DOCKERTY, M. B., AND MUSSET, E. Malignant

- lesions of the uterus associated with estrogen-producing ovarian tumors *Am J Obst & Gynec*, **61**: 147, 1951
- 18 DRESSER, R Effect of ovarian irradiation on the bone metastases of cancer of breast *Am J Roentgenol*, **35**: 384, 1936
 - 19 DUNCAN, J A, CANTRIL, S T, AND LUND, P K The bizarre behavior of thyroid cancer *Western J Surg Obstet & Gynec*, **60**: 435, 1952
 - 20 ENTERLINE, H T, AND COMAN, D R The amoeboid motility of human and animal neoplastic cells *Cancer*, **3**: 1033, 1950
 - 21 EVANS, H M, SIMPSON, M E, AND LI, C H The gigantism produced in normal rats by injection of the pituitary growth hormone I Body growth and organ changes *Growth*, **12**: 15, 1948
 - 22 FARBER, S, TOCH, R, SEARS, E M, AND PINKEL, D Advances in chemotherapy of cancer in man *Advances in Cancer Res*, **4**: 1, 1956
 - 23 FARDON, J C A reconsideration of the somatic mutation theory of cancer in the light of some recent developments *Science*, **117**: 441, 1953
 - 24 FARROW, J H, AND WOODARD, H Q Influence of androgenic and estrogenic substances on serum calcium in cases of skeletal metastases from mammary cancer *J A M A*, **118**: 339, 1942
 - 25 FURTH, J Conditioned and autonomous neoplasms, a review *Cancer Res*, **13**: 477, 1953
 - 26 FURTH, J Experiments on the spread of neoplastic cells through the respiratory passages *Am J Path*, **22**: 1101, 1946
 - 27 GARDNER, W U Studies on steroid hormones in experimental carcinogenesis *Recent Progr Hormone Research*, **1**: 217, 1947
 - 28 GARDNER, W U, SMITH, G M, ALLEN, E, AND STRONG, L C Cancer of the mammary glands induced in male mice receiving estrogenic hormone *Arch Path*, **21**: 265, 1936
 - 29 GARLOCK, J H, GINZBERG, L, AND GLASS, A Complications and causes of mortality of surgical treatment of carcinoma of colon and rectum *Surg Gynec & Obst*, **76**: 51, 1943
 - 30 GREENSTEIN, J P *Biochemistry of Cancer*, Ed 2 New York: Academic Press, 1951
 - 31 HADROW, A, WATKINSON, J M, AND PATERSON, E Influence of synthetic oestrogens upon advanced malignant disease *Brit M J*, **2**: 393, 1944
 - 32 HUGGINS, C AND BERGENSTAM, D M Inhibition of human mammary and prostatic cancers by adrenalectomy *Cancer Res*, **12**: 131, 1952
 - 33 HUGGINS, C, MASINA, M H, LICHTENBERGER, L, AND WHARTON, J D Quantitative studies of prostatic secretion I Characteristics of the normal secretion, the influence of thyroid, suprarenal, and testis extirpation and androgen substitution on the prostatic output *J Exper Med*, **70**: 543, 1939
 - 34 HUGGINS, C, AND SCOTT, W W Bilateral adrenalectomy in prostatic cancer Clinical features and urinary excretion of 17-ketosteroids and estrogen *Ann Surg*, **122**: 1031, 1945
 - 35 HUGGINS, C, STEVENS, R E, AND HODGGS, C V Studies on prostatic cancer II The effects of castration on advanced carcinoma of the prostate gland *Arch Surg*, **43**: 209, 1941
 - 36 ISHIBASHI, K Studies on number of cells necessary for transplantation of Yoshida sarcoma (transmission of tumor with single cell) *Gann*, **41**: 1, 1950 (not read)
 - 37 KENNEDY, B J, AND NATHANSON, I T Effects of intensive sex steroid hormone therapy in advanced breast cancer, report to Council on Pharmacy and Chemistry from Committee on Research *J A M A*, **152**: 1135, 1953
 - 38 LACASSAGNE, A Apparition de cancers de la mamelle chez la souris mâle, soumise à des injections de folliculine *Compt rend Acad sc*, **195**: 630, 1932 (not read)
 - 39 LINELL, F On tumourpromoting effect of single mechanical trauma, experimental study of skin tumours in tarred rabbits *Acta path et microbiol scand (suppl)*, **71**: 1, 1947 (not read)
 - 40 LIPSCHUTZ, A, AND VARGAS, L, JR Structure and origin of uterine and extragenital fibroids induced experimentally in the guinea pig by prolonged administration of estrogens *Cancer Res*, **1**: 236, 1941
 - 41 LOEB, L Internal secretion as a factor in the origin of tumours *J M Research*, **40**: 477, 1919
 - 42 LOEB, L The significance of hormones in the origin of cancer *J Nat Cancer Inst*, **1**: 169, 1941
 - 43 LUCKE, B, BERWICK, M, AND ZECKWER, J Liver catalase activity in parabiotic rats with one partner tumor-bearing *Nat Cancer Inst*, **13**: 681, 1953
 - 44 MACDONALD, I, AND KOTIN, P Biologic predeterminism in gastric carcinoma as the limiting factor of curability *Surg Gynec & Obst*, **98**: 148, 1954
 - 45 MACFARLAND, J, AND MEAD, T S The genetic origin of tumors supported by their simultaneous and symmetrical occurrence in homologous twins *Am J M Sc*, **181**: 66, 1952
 - 46 MACKLIN, M T An analysis of tumor in monozygous and dizygous twins with report of 15 unpublished cases *J Hered*, **31**: 277, 1940
 - 47 MCCUBB, J A AND HUGGINS, C C Bilateral carcinoma of male breast after estrogen therapy *J A M A*, **146**: 7, 1951
 - 48 MCCUBB, J A, COMAN, D R and MASON

- F B Studies on invasiveness of cancer Ad
heaviness of malignant cells in various hu
man adenocarcinomas *Cancer* 1: 400 1918
- 49 MOON H D, SIMMONS M E AND EVANS H M
Inhibition of methylcholanthrene carcino
genesis by hypophysectomy *Science* 116:
313 1952
 - 50 MOON H D, SIMMONS M E AND LI C H
Neoplasms in rats treated with pituitary
growth hormone VI Absence of neoplasms in
hypophysectomized rats *Cancer Res.* 11:
535 1951
 - 51 MORSE, D P The hereditary aspect of breast
cancer in mother and daughter *Cancer* 4:
745 1951
 - 52 NATHANSON I T, AND ANDERSON H B Ef
fect of testosterone propionate on develop
ment and growth of mammary carcinoma in
female mice *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.*
40: 421 1939
 - 53 NORDLING C O Evidence regarding the mul
tiple mutation theory of the cancer-inducing
mechanism *Acta genet. et stat. med.*, 5: 93
1954
 - 54 NORWAY T D AND MCBROON R D Aerial
metastasis of tumors in the lung An ex
perimental study in mice *Surgical Forum* 7:
469 1957
 - 55 PASTEL, H PHILLIPS K T AND LAPALME L
G Neoplasms in identical twins case re
ports of three pairs Connecticut M J., 17:
303, 1953
 - 56 PEARSON O H ELIEL, L P, RAWSON R W
DOERFINGER K AND RICHARDS C P ACTH and
cortisone-induced regression of lymphoid tu
mors *Cancer* 2: 943 1949
 - 57 PEARSON O H WEST C D HOLLANDER V P
AND TRIVET N E Evaluation of endocrine
therapy for advanced breast cancer *J. A.
M. A.* 154: 234 1951
 - 58 PEARSON O H WHITMORE, W F JR WEST
C D, FARROW J H AND RANDALL, H T
Clinical and metabolic studies of bilateral
adrenalectomy for advanced cancer in man
Surgery 34: 543 1953
 - 59 PRINZMETAL, M ORNITZ E M JR SIMKIN B
AND BERGMAN H C Arterio-venous anasto
moses in liver spleen and lungs. *Am J
Physiol* 152: 48, 1948
 - 60 RAAS A P AND GEMMER A Observations on
the use of cortisone and ACTH in the man
agement of terminal malignancy *New York
J. Med.*, 53: 1333 1953
 - 61 RAWSON R W The relationship of hormonal
environment to the genesis and to the in
hibition of neoplastic growth Is cancer
autonomous? *Am J. Obst. & Gynec.*, 66:
909 1953
 - 62 RAWSON R W, AND McARTHUR J W Ra
dioiodine its use as a tool in the study of
thyroid physiology *J. Clin. Endocrinol.*, 7:
235 1947
 - 63 RAWSON R W AND RALL, J E. Symposium on
endocrine and metabolic disorders phyo
logic concepts of thyroid tumors as revealed
with newer tools of study *M. Clin. North
America*, 36: 630 1952
 - 64 SCHLIZINGER A Über Carcinoma Mammæ
Verhandl. deutsch. Gesellsch. Chir., 18: 28
1880 (Cited by Furth J., *Cancer Research*
13: 477 1953)
 - 65 SHEETS R F, HAMILTON H E DeGOWEN E
L AND JANNEY C D Studies with mag
glutinable erythrocyte counts V Spontaneous
and x-ray induced hemolysis in malignancy
J. Clin. Invest., 33: 179 1954
 - 66 SROOG L C Genetic analysis of induction of
tumors by methylcholanthrene germinal mu
tations and other sudden biological changes
following subcutaneous injection of methyl
cholanthrene *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sc. U.S.*, 31:
200 1945
 - 67 SROOG L C Induction of mutations by car
cinogen *Brit. J. Cancer* 3: 97 1949
 - 68 TANVENBAUM A The rôle of nutrition in the
origin and growth of tumors In *Approaches
to Tumor Chemotherapy* p 96 Lancaster
Pa. Science Press 1947
 - 69 TAYLOR G W AND NATHANSON I T *Lymph
Node Metastases* New York, Oxford Univer
sity Press 1942
 - 70 TRIVET N E Castration as therapeutic measure
in cancer of male breast. *Cancer* 2: 191 1949
 - 71 VISCIOVA R Über bewegliche tierische
Zellen Vuchows Arch. path. Anat. 28: 237
1893 (Cited by Coman D R. *Cancer Re
search* 13: 307 1953)
 - 72 WELLS H G SLYE M AND HOLMES H F
Comparative pathology of cancer of ali
mentary canal with report of cases in mice
studies in incidence and inheritability of spon
taneous tumors in mice *Am J. Cancer* 33:
223 1938
 - 73 WILLIS R A *The Spread of Tumours in the
Human Body* p 323 London, J & A
Churchill Ltd., 1934
 - 74 WYNDER, E I GRAHAM E. A AND CROVINGER,
A B Experimental production of carcinoma
with cigarette tar *Cancer Res.* 13: 855 1953
 - 75 YOSHIDA T Studies on ascites (reticuloendo
thelial cell?) sarcoma of rat *J. Nat. Cancer
Inst.* 12: 947 1952
 - 76 ZEDMAN I McCUTCHEON M AND COMAN D
R. Factors affecting the number of tumor
metastases Experiments with a transplanta
ble mouse tumor *Cancer Res.* 10: 351 1950

Chapter 8

Radiation and Radioactive Isotopes

There are many reasons why a brief consideration of ionizing radiation *per se*—as well as the experimental, diagnostic, and therapeutic uses of radioactive isotopes—should be included in this volume. The most practical reason is, of course, that the use of these agents in surgical diagnosis and treatment comprises a major facet of surgical practice. A second reason one chooses to discuss “x-ray and isotopes” is that it affords an opportunity to illustrate that the disciplines of physics, chemistry, and biology all have a stake in the effects of ionizing radiation. The modern experimental physiologist must know something of all these sciences, and they are used daily in various spheres of surgical endeavor.

Radiation

The literature in this field is already voluminous and is increasing by leaps and bounds. The following discussion is based to a considerable extent upon the comprehensive reviews of Sparrow and Rubin¹³ (“Effects of Radiations on Biological Systems”), of Old and Stocken¹⁰ (“Biochemical Aspects of the Radiation Syndrome”), and of Patt^{11, 12} (“Protective Mechanisms in Ionizing Radiation Injury,” and “Radiation Effects on Mammalian Systems”). These several publications, reasonably complete in themselves, offer large bibliographies which may be consulted for further information in this field.

Historical Aspects

To appreciate that the science of radiation is a relative newcomer to the family of phys-

ical and other natural sciences, it need only be recalled that Wilhelm Konrad Roentgen did not discover x-rays until 1895. In the following year Henri Becquerel reported his discovery that uranium emitted a type of ray without exposure of the material to light rays. This report, when read by Marie Curie and her husband, Pierre, initiated a series of studies beginning in 1897 which culminated in a report of the probable existence of a new element, published in the Proceedings of the French Academy of Science in 1898. Forty-five months later, on July 18, 1902, Pierre and Marie Curie announced the preparation of a decigram of pure radium, estimating the atomic weight of the new substance to be 225.¹

Since these initial discoveries the use of x-ray has become a cornerstone of medical practice, and literally hundreds of both stable and radioactive isotopes have been isolated.

Types of Radiation

In Figure 64 are shown the wavelengths of the spectrum with an indication of the biologic effects which each type of wave may have upon the organism. For example, it may be seen that the Hertzian and infrared rays produce mainly thermal effects; whereas, at the extreme left of the spectrum, gamma rays produce important chemical effects which will be described in more detail below. Observe that x-rays merge with gamma rays, though gamma rays are derived from a variety of sources. Still further to the left, though not indicated here, are cosmic rays, which have the shortest

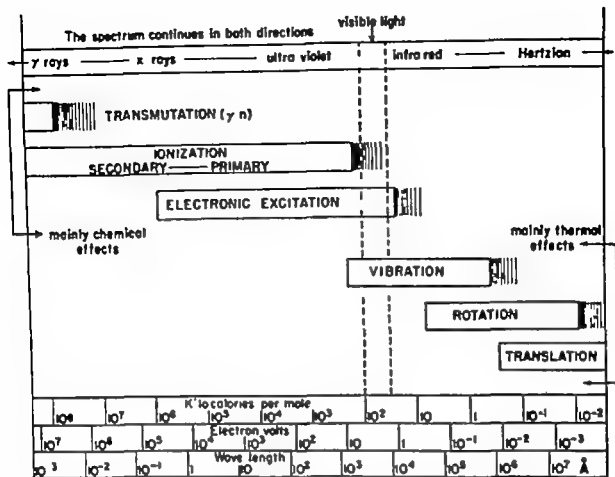


Fig 64 The spectrum and the effects produced (From SPARKS A H, AND RUBIN B A In *Survey of Biological Progress* Volume II New York Academic Press, Inc., 1952) At the right the infrared portion of the spectrum produces mainly thermal effects As ultra violet merges into x-ray ionization occurs and chemical effects are produced The wavelengths are given below Note how little of the spectrum is visible to the naked eye

wavelength of which there is knowledge There is some evidence to indicate that cosmic radiation and natural radioactivity may have effects on human mutation and this has further been noted in studies revealing the carcinogenic effects of these rays Moreover, some workers have claimed biologic effects not only from infrared but also from high frequency radio waves The effects of ultra violet rays have been extensively investigated.

Note in Figure 64 how little of the spectrum is visible to the naked eye

SOURCES OF THERAPEUTIC RADIATION The equipment available for the administration of x rays has increased enormously both in power and efficiency and by use of appropriate filters it has been possible to obtain almost monochromatic bands from x ray tubes Since the biologic effects of x rays and gamma rays are virtually identical it

is permissible to consider them together The difficulties in handling isotopes—and their short half lives, in many instances—render such sources of radiation impracticable at the present time This problem has partly been solved by the use of cobalt units, they have a long half life and provide almost monochromatic gamma radiation

ALPHA RAYS, BETA RAYS GAMMA RAYS, AND X RAYS The clinician commonly encounters discussions of ionizing radiation in which it is stated that such and such an isotope is an alpha emitter, a beta emitter or a gamma emitter—or a combination of two or more of these Since for practical purposes the gamma rays and the x rays may be considered as being approximately identical let us first define alpha and beta rays

The *alpha ray* consists of a heavy particle, that is it has a high density (Fig. 65) Since the particle has a high density or weight, it

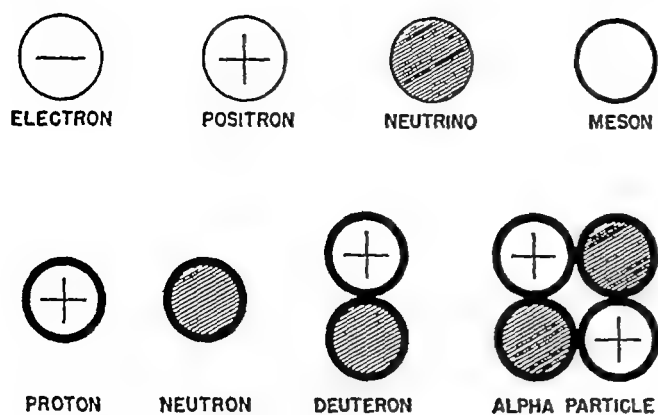


Fig 65 Schematic representation of subatomic particles and some of their combinations. Most of these particles have important biologic and therapeutic potentialities (From GLASSER, O, QUIMBY, E H, TAYLOR, L S, AND WEATHERWAX, J L *Physical Foundations of Radiology*, Ed 2 New York, Paul B Hoeber, Inc, 1952)

has a relatively low velocity. While such particles or rays may have a considerable biologic importance because of their "ionization densities," they are able to penetrate only superficially, in contrast to the lighter ions (of less mass), which travel rapidly and penetrate more deeply. Alpha particles have a positive charge and represent the helium nucleus.

Beta rays are negative electrons, and they have an intermediate position between the heavy alpha particles and gamma rays. Beta rays have been shown to simulate the effects observed with alpha particles, but for a given energy the beta particles or electrons travel at a greater velocity than do alpha particles and have much longer paths of penetration. Alpha particles, protons, and deuterons dissipate energy in straight lines of high ionization density, while beta particles scatter their energy more thinly over a tortuous path.¹³

The third major type consists of x-rays and gamma rays; they have a low ion density or weight, and produce a picture which is in marked contrast to that of the heavy alpha particles. X-rays and gamma rays have a much greater penetrating effect and travel at a higher velocity. These are electromagnetic quanta, not particles.

Thus, superficial lesions may be treated with isotopes emitting alpha or possibly

beta particles, but deep tumors must be treated with gamma emitters.

From the brief foregoing comments regarding the types of radiation which may be achieved with various wavelengths or particles in the spectrum, including combinations of these, it is clear that one can achieve a variety of effects. With the use of a single one of these, such as the x-ray, one can alter the biologic effect by varying the intensity, the total length of exposure, and the timing of the component periods of the total exposure. Some of the means by which the physical energy of the x-ray is transferred to a biologic preparation—and the means by which the biologic preparation reacts to produce chemical, physiologic, cytologic, and genetic changes—will now be examined. There is indeed a conservation of energy or mass: as the velocity and mass of the rays are dissipated, the kinetic physical energy is converted into chemical energy by producing chemical changes within the target material.

It has been seen that the energy waves which one may direct toward a biologic system cover a vast range of qualitative and quantitative possibilities; furthermore, biologic preparations vary greatly in their responses to a given energy dose. Small wonder that it is often difficult to compare data from different laboratories. To permit comparison, both the radiation and the system bombarded must be rigidly controlled, and this is still not always done. The ideal situation would be to determine the linear energy transfer in terms of ergs per gram of tissue irradiated. This is not yet possible.

Mechanisms of Radiation Energy Transfer¹³

If there are many types of radiation, there are also various types of energy transfer mechanisms. For example, radiations whose energies are below 1 electron volt, such as infrared and radiowave, rarely cause changes at a chemical level, for their energy is below that of most chemical (electron) energy states. It is difficult to prove that biologic effects which have been reported for

these radiations do not result from purely thermal effects.

Referring to Figure 64, it is seen that as one advances from the region of visible light toward the ultraviolet, chemical changes become possible and effects become more marked. When energy of the shorter wavelength radiation is absorbed by the target substance—and energy that is not absorbed has no effect—a photochemical reaction occurs in several connected stages. The first of these is the absorption of the radiation by the molecule to become an 'excited' molecule, the second stage being either the decomposition of the molecule or the re-emission of the energy by fluorescence, collision or chemical reaction, the third stage may represent continuation products of the second stage perhaps secondary reactions such as molecular rearrangements, chain reactions, polymerization, or depolymerization. Absorption of the shorter wavelengths may be increased by adding a photosensitizing substance to the absorbing medium though strong absorbing groups which render a molecule more sensitive are not necessarily the points of chemical change.

The Concept of Ionization¹³

In the simplest terms, *ionizing radiation separates the target molecule into ions or removes an ion from the molecule*. In general, while ultraviolet light (Fig. 64) is sometimes capable of ionizing the molecules of the target substance by completely ejecting an orbital electron (Fig. 66), ultraviolet light is not commonly thought of as a respectable member of the family of ionizing radiation. Even so the wavelengths of the spectrum are continuous, and the divisions between them can only be arbitrary with respect to energy transfer or penetration properties. With gamma or x rays a fraction of the energy produces *excitation*, giving rise to processes that are primarily photochemical, and these comprise an important source of certain radiochemical events. Nevertheless, the *ionizing effect* is the predominant one.

The ionizing effect of x rays is a complex process. The higher energy x rays can readily ionize a molecule by imparting to the molecule sufficient energy to eject completely an orbital electron (the photoelectric effect), more important, the energy is such that the ejected electrons are given so much momentum that they go on as independent particles to produce *secondary ionizations* (Fig. 66) that are so extensive as to outweigh the importance of the initial impact of the x ray upon the original molecule. The ejected electron travels at a speed which is determined by the impact of the original x ray, minus the power with which the electron was bound to the molecule originally.

It is apparent that when the structure of an atom has been changed by altering the electron composition, a substance of different chemical properties will have been produced. In short, the physical or x ray energy has been transformed into chemical energy.

Biochemical Aspects of Radiation Changes: Further Discussion

It is no longer enough merely to note the biochemical effects of x rays in general terms, for there is a growing body of information which demonstrates that certain specific and other somewhat less specific chemical effects are produced regularly under a given set of radiation circumstances. Several instances of this may be noted. For example when water freed of oxygen is bombarded with alpha rays a marked production of hydrogen peroxide occurs. In contrast passing x rays through the solution has no effect, that is, no hydrogen peroxide is produced. The production of these changes in water appears to be a function of the ionization density for while high energy gamma or x rays produce almost no reactants alpha rays cause a rapid evolution of oxygen and hydrogen. Beta particles generally produce intermediate amounts of the gases depending upon their energies.

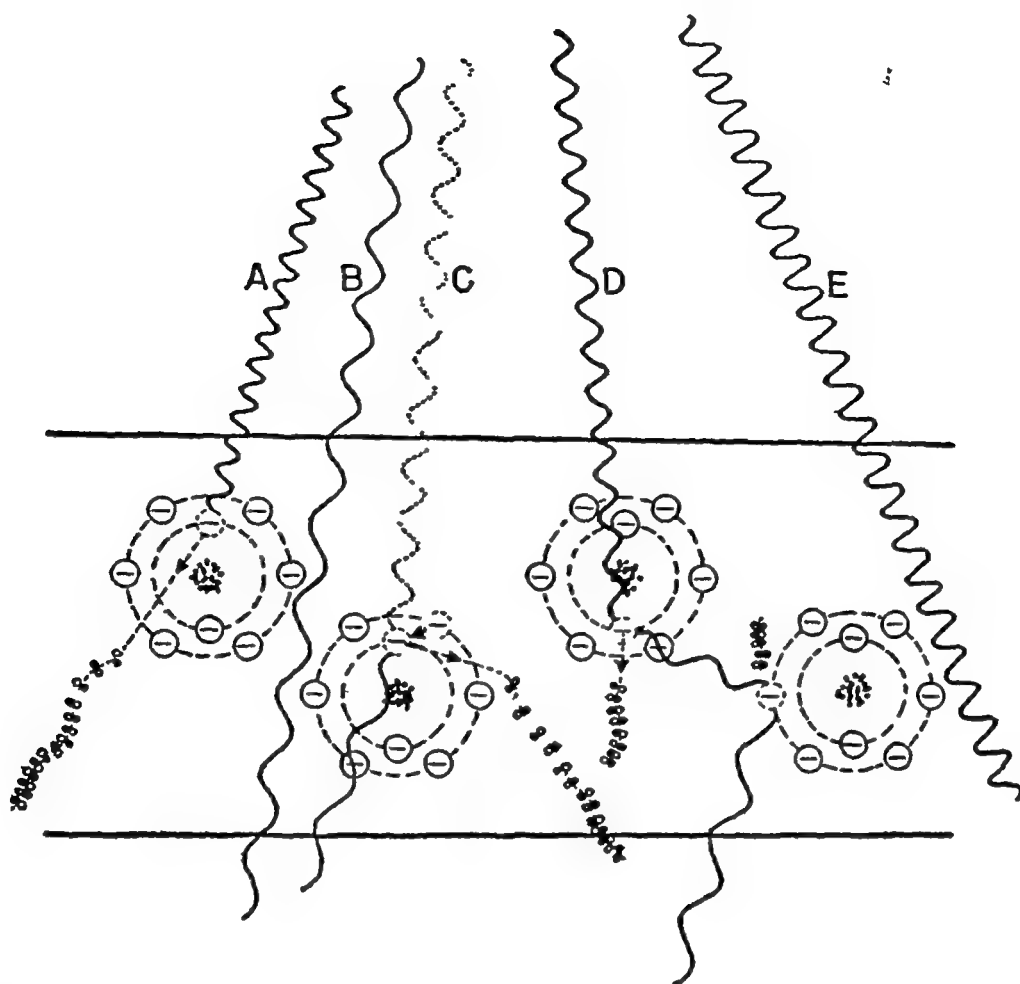


Fig 66 "Interaction of radiation and matter. Roentgen-ray photon A strikes an electron of the K-orbit of an oxygen atom, it utilizes part of its energy for the removal of the electron to the exterior of the atom and imparts the remainder of its energy to the electron, giving it a high velocity. This is a photoelectric absorption and the removed electron is a photoelectron. This photoelectron travels through the medium and produces along its path a series of ion pairs, until it is eventually stopped. Photon B traverses the medium without being altered or deflected. Photon C has acted just as photon A, knocking out a photoelectron, the empty space in the K-orbit is immediately occupied by an electron from the L-orbit, and energy is released in the form of characteristic x-rays or photons. Photon D also strikes an electron of the K-ring, but loses only part of its energy in removal and acceleration of this electron, it is scattered in this process, and travels on in another direction and with reduced energy, until it experiences another secondary scattering absorption."

This diagram indicates how radiation (physical energy) is transformed into chemical energy through its capacity for altering the chemical characteristics of the atoms and molecules of tissue cells. That is, it is now possible in many instances to explain the physiologic effects of therapeutic radiation in terms of familiar chemical reactions. Of interest, nitrogen mustard is a radiomimetic drug in that the effects produced in the mammal are similar to those produced by x-ray. (From GLASSER, O, QUIMBY, E H, TAYLOR, L S, AND WEATHERWAX, J L. *Physical Foundations of Radiology*, Ed 2 New York, Paul B Hoeber, Inc, 1952.)

To cite a second example, when acetylene is irradiated with radon a certain proportion of the molecules polymerize to solid cuprene. Still again, when an homologous series of fatty acids is irradiated, it is found that the chief chemical reaction has been decarboxylation, as the length of the carbon chain increases, the proportion of radio-

chemical energy migrating to this one bond rises to a peak and then decreases.

When amino acids are irradiated they are quite specifically deaminated, nucleic acids are usually depolymerized.

It is now possible, therefore, to describe many of the effects produced by radiation in common biochemical terms.

Effects on Enzymes

Before closing this particular phase of the discussion, the effect of radiation on enzyme systems should be mentioned, since it is possible that the effects on enzyme systems may provide the amplification of primary biochemical effects necessary to achieve the clinical results commonly observed in human tissue. It has been found that in simple dilute enzyme systems the changes produced are quite similar to those for simple aqueous solutions, such as oxygen free water. Under most conditions enzyme inactivation can be attributed to the products of the irradiation of water, an indirect effect.¹³ Of course, enzymes are not found in dilute pure solution in the living organism but even so, it is considered possible that labile enzymes are readily destroyed even in the presence of the usual complex cell constituents. Should significant alteration of enzyme systems *in vivo* be demonstrated, the mutations in genes produced by radiation effects might be more readily explained.

Radiation Effects on Microorganisms, on Cell and Chromosomal Structure, in Genetics, and in Carcinogenesis

Much work has been done concerning radiation effects at the cellular level and much is known in this area. However, as with the death of the living organism, the changes observed with the microscope are often hopelessly inadequate to explain cell death. Thus, again, one must search for more subtle cytochemical changes or achieve further definition of cell alterations by use of such methods as the electron microscope. In other words, the usual microscopic studies of irradiated cells can reveal only a fraction of the picture which must be completed by sensitive studies of cellular physiology which are not necessarily reflected in visible alterations in cellular structure.

It has been found that the physical and chemical consequences of the absorption of radiant energy by a cell occur in all parts of the cell irradiated but the final result of

the radiation exposure varies both from one cell to another and indeed within the same cell. As noted previously, the magnitude of the effect upon individual cells or upon individual components of the same cell has to do with the radiosensitivity of the particular type of cell and with the locus of the component within the cell. A particular portion of a cell irradiated, such as the nucleus, may have potentialities for damage far in excess of other portions of the cell. In general, the portions of the cell having to do with fission are more sensitive to radiation than other portions and indeed various cells may be more sensitive to radiation in one or the other of the phases of cell division, namely, prophase, metaphase, anaphase, or telophase. An extremely important effect of radiation is its effect upon chromosomes, an effect that can lead to actual physical breakdown. Breaks in chromosomes may be produced almost immediately, or potential breaks may be produced which may appear only after hours, days or weeks.

GENETIC EFFECTS Susceptibility of chromosomes to radiation effects has, of course enormous import in the field of genetics. Radiation damage to chromosomes may result in inhibition and cell death, but some cells may survive which carry chromosomal aberrations that are capable of producing permanent mutation. It is therefore not surprising that radiation has served as a particularly useful tool to geneticists, since by radiation one can achieve numerous mutations in a short period of time, to a point that such changes can be studied under a variety of circumstances. Conversely, the mutations produced afford additional insight into the mode of action of ionizing radiation.

Two reports of special interest and importance have recently been made in this field both at the fiftieth anniversary symposium of the American Society of Biological Chemists. The first by Wendell M. Stanley, was "Virus Composition and Structure—25 Years Ago and Now"¹⁴ The second, by Norman H. Horowitz, was entitled "Progress in

Developing Chemical Concepts of Genetic Phenomena"⁵ In the first of these reports the relationships between the phenomena of virus propagation, crystallization, and reconstitution were reviewed, with emphasis upon the basic importance of ribonucleic acid and desoxyribonucleic acid. It was pointed out by Stanley that component parts of protein viruses may be separated for a prolonged period of time but that, if then brought together in correct proportions, they could reconstitute the virus which would then again cause the specific disease for which it was noted. It was further found that the ribonucleic acid core of the virus contains the genetic message in causing disease by the reconstituted virus, and it is well known that nucleic acid metabolism is affected by irradiation.

In developing further the theme that the genetic mutations may be explained on the basis of a chemical lesion, Horowitz noted that radiation produces mutations, apparently by knocking out a specific enzyme, that is, a single enzymic deficiency may be produced which permanently alters the chemistry of the cell. Thus, a mutation could conceivably consist of a single biochemical lesion, and Horowitz offered the thought that the genetic message or set of instructions may consist of different arrangements of specific amino acids. Pursuing the subject further, he pointed out that the subtle nature of certain mutations could be reflected in the fact that qualitative as well as quantitative changes in protein, perhaps of enzymes, might be produced. For example, a protein substance may be rendered less stable to heat but similar to the parent protein substance (or enzyme) in all other respects. The surgeon has an important interest in genetics, for the correction of malformations constitutes an important segment of surgical practice (p 629).

CARCINOGENESIS Since various forms of radiation can produce cancer—whether due to long-acting isotopes such as strontium, or radioiodine in the thyroid of certain rats, or chronic scars following irradiation with

x-ray, or by ultraviolet light in those exposed much to the sun—it is natural that radiation should be employed as a tool in the study of cancer and that such effects should be closely related to genetic disturbances and mutations. For the cancer cell is a normal cell whose function has in some way been subtly altered to permit it to escape regulation by normal growth control mechanisms. However, it is not necessary to discuss carcinogenesis at this point. Suffice it to note that radiation is a mutagenic agent. A number of chemical carcinogens have been found to be mutagenic, but not all mutagens are carcinogenic¹³ (For another point of view, see p 173).

General Physiologic Effect in Mammals Including Man (Figs. 67 and 68)

Since irradiation affects the metabolism of nucleic acids, carbohydrates, fat, nitrogen, immunologic responses and the concentration and integrity of certain enzymes, it is to be expected that definite clinical effects are observed.

The selective irradiation of certain organs such as the adrenals, spleen, or intestine produces unusually severe reactions in experimental animals. Whole body irradiation, on the other hand, produces the so-called *radiation syndromes*, which may have particular emphasis in different areas. The more well defined of these are the *hyperacute syndrome*, in which the dose of radiation is so great that death occurs very quickly from overwhelming ionization before the more subacute or chronic changes have occurred, the *intestinal syndrome*, which in the dog is associated with diarrhea, prostration, and bacteremia and which occurs approximately 5 to 7 days following the irradiation, and the *bone marrow or hematopoietic syndrome*, coming on after several weeks and characterized by anemia, leukopenia, spontaneous hemorrhage, and spontaneous bacteremia. Years later malignant tumors and leukemia may appear.

The usual course of events in *radiation sickness* due to severe exposure is one of

nausea and vomiting which usually begin within a few hours after the exposure, followed by a latent period relatively free of symptoms. There may be considerable swelling of the part most immediately exposed. Later nausea and vomiting may recur and diarrhea appears with blood in the stools. mucous membranes become edematous. There is apparently an increased capillary fragility and a circulating heparin-like substance in the blood both of which result in hemorrhage into the tissues. Dehydration and fever may follow and eventually there is a fall in blood pressure and death which usually occurs within 2 weeks.

If the individual survives the early period changes in the peripheral blood and bone marrow begin to appear in several days, consisting chiefly of depression of the cellular elements as a result of necrotizing and anti-mitotic action of radiation on the hematopoietic tissues. In addition blood loss and other ramifications of the altered physiologic balance contribute to the changes in the peripheral blood picture. The abnormal bleeding which with depression of bone marrow elements results in the anemia is now considered to be due largely to thrombocytopenia. However, the thrombocytopenia may be due to hemorrhage. The bleeding which occurs into the tissues appears to be due as much to necrotic lesions and infection which secondarily involves the blood vessels as it is due to possible alterations in vascular permeability.

The precise cause of death in the intestinal syndrome is obscure though it is felt that the diarrhea (with the water and salt loss which occurs) contributes to the lethal effects as well as perhaps an increased rate of entry of enteric organisms into the blood stream from a damaged bowel with resulting septicemia. This bacterial invasion is also related of course to the diminished level of initial immunity and immunologic response but sepsis is not a major cause of death.

Death may occur then from an overwhelming massive dose of radiation or from

PROBABLE EFFECTS IN MAN OF VARIOUS AMOUNTS OF ACUTE PENETRATING RADIATION (FROM EFFECTS OF ATOMIC WEAPONS 1950 p. 342)

Acute Dose	Probable Early Effect
0-25 r	No obvious injury
25-50	Possible blood changes but no obvious injury
50-100	Blood-cell changes; some injury no disability
100-200	Injury possible disability
200-400	Injury and disability certain death possible
400	Fatal to 50%
600 or more	Fatal

Fig. 67 These estimations have been fairly well sustained by subsequent data obtained from accidentally irradiated subjects (From SPARROW A. H., and RUBIN B. A. In *Survey of Biological Progress* Vol. II New York Academic Press, Inc. 1952.)

APPROXIMATE LD₅₀ FOR VARIOUS MAMMALS RESULTS ARE FOR TOTAL BODY IRRADIATION USING 200 KVP X RAYS

Organism	Approximate LD ₅₀
Guinea pig	200 r
Dog	300 r
Mouse	400 r
Mouse LAF	600 r
Monkey*	500 r
Rat	500 r
Rabbit	700 r
Man	400 r

From "Tabulation of available data relative to radiation biology" NEPA 1949 except for man

* 250 kVp x rays

Approximation only

Fig. 68 X-ray tolerance differences among mammals (From SPARROW A. H., and RUBIN B. A. In *Survey of Biological Progress* Vol. II New York Academic Press, Inc. 1952.)

a somewhat smaller but still lethal dose causing depression of bone marrow elements and hemorrhage or from the particular involvement of the intestine in the form of the intestinal syndrome—all of which may begin to cause death in approximately 1 week, reaching a peak in from 3 to 4 weeks.

and then exhibiting a gradual decline. However, if the individual survives this period certain other findings may appear, as in the Japanese at Hiroshima. The more delayed effects are the formation of keloids, cataracts, insidious and chronic anemia, and some sterility and amenorrhea. It is as yet too early to determine whether additional cancers and leukemia, as well as late mutations, will be noted, but these are not unanticipated.

In concluding this survey of the more important effects of radiation in mammals, the matter of *physiologic balance* should be mentioned. It is well known that irradiation of one part of the organism may result in altered function of other parts of the organism. It is not settled whether such effects on distant parts arise from toxic materials formed in the irradiated part or, conversely, whether observed phenomena are a reflection of an effort of distant organs to come to the assistance of the damaged tissues by minimizing the radiation effects. That healthy tissues with normal function can diminish the effects of ionizing radiation has been shown by means of parabiosis (p 116). Irradiated animals joined to a normal animal exhibit a greater tolerance for lethal irradiation than do animals who are not joined to a normal animal, emphasizing that the effects of radiation are complex and are modified by many different factors.

Protection Against Ionizing Radiation Injury

The mechanisms of radiation protection have to do also with problems of radiosensitivity. It has been indicated previously that the nucleus is more sensitive to radiation damage than is the cytoplasm, though secondary effects upon the nucleus can occur from injury to the cytoplasm. As pointed out by Patt,¹¹ an indication of the importance of metabolism in its broadest sense may be the fact that the cell in mitosis is usually more susceptible to injury than is the cell at rest. Again, even in mitosis there are differences, for cells in the prophase or

metaphase are generally the most sensitive to radiation injury. Curiously, the degenerative changes are likely to occur at the time of cell division regardless of when the cell was irradiated, this suggests fundamental physiologic changes which only later become apparent microscopically. The fact that physiologically inactive or dormant cells usually suffer less damage than do their active sister cells suggests enzymic rôles, in that certain of these may be inactivated by radiation. This further emphasizes that, since most if not all cellular activities are controlled by the nucleus, radiation damage to the nucleus would be expected to produce important physiologic effects.¹³ The marked variations in sensitivity of different tissues to ionizing radiation, however, is not always readily explained. In Table 9 are given the relative sensitivities of different human tissues to radiation.

The Modification of Radiobiologic Effect In Simple Systems

From the point of view of protection of mammals from radiation injury, it is of interest to know what factors may diminish the effects of ionizing radiation. In contrast, in treating cancer one may be interested in potentiating or amplifying the effects of ionizing radiation, and such studies have engaged a number of investigators in recent years.

It has been shown that the exclusion of water and of oxygen, as well as the lowering of body temperature, all tend to diminish the effects of ionizing radiation upon simple systems. This is because the exclusion of water tends to reduce the indirect effects of radiation. While it is not the purpose here to describe in detail specific factors which may protect against the effects of radiation, several measures should be listed. These are the use of reducing compounds, desiccation of the substance to be irradiated, lowering the temperature of the target material, diminishing the blood supply to the part (which probably protects by reducing the oxygen supply), and the addi-

tion to the irradiated solution of an agent such as glutathione which afford protection of —SH enzymes that would otherwise be oxidized by the oxidants formed in the aqueous solution. Cysteine and a number of other compounds have been found to afford some protection against various effects of irradiation. The protection effect by sulfhydryl compounds is characterized by a change in the slope of survival curves of *Escherichia coli* or other preparations subjected to radiation injury. Cysteine has been shown to protect rats and mice against acute lethality, as have glutathione and British anti-lewisite (BAL). However, to be effective these substances must be given prior to irradiation.

To summarize, it has been demonstrated that certain reducing agents are effective in protecting some animals against ionizing radiation, and this again emphasizes the oxidative nature of the chemical effect involved in the production of biologic damage. Protection of the —SH group during radiation has been shown to permit later regeneration of enzyme activity.

MORE GENERAL PROTECTIVE MEASURES In mice particularly, it has been shown that shielding of the spleen affords considerable protection against radiation injury, presumably because of its hematopoietic functions. Of course, for many years the radiologists have protected with appropriate shielding the organs which they did not wish to irradiate. Transfusions tend to diminish the effects of erythropenia and leukopenia, and to offset the hemorrhagic tendencies which follow exposure to ionizing radiation. Head shielding affords much protection in dogs.

Liberal doses of antibiotics limit the infection which develops in the irradiated animal. It was found that Aureomycin may diminish the diarrhea in rats that follows irradiation. Life was prolonged for from 5 to 7 days at which time the animals then began to die with signs of hemorrhage.¹⁰

Unfortunately animal studies (Fig. 69) cannot be projected to man without qualifi-

cation, for there is much variation in species resistance to irradiation. For example while the approximate LD₅₀ for total body irradiation using 200 KVP x rays is 200 r (roentgen units) for the guinea pig, the dosage varies considerably in other animals and is approximately 400 r in man.¹²

Finally it scarcely need be said that the effects of radiation *per se* are by no means well defined and the more chronic effects, especially, are just beginning to be appreciated. It has been found that physicists exposed to chronic but small dose irradiation have gradually developed cataracts, and leukemia is known to be more prevalent among radiologists than among other physicians or among the population at large. The relative sensitivities of different organs are shown in Table 9, as indicated previously.

No effective treatment for massive radiation exposure exists at present.

Radiation Dosage Units

One of the particular difficulties in studying the effects of radiation upon living systems has been the wide dosage range used by different investigators and, all too frequently, the lack of scrupulous attention to the careful measurement of the dosage used to achieve particular effects. It is readily apparent that we must have some measurement of radiation dosage units that can be uniformly applied in treating patients. For this reason, a radiation therapy unit should be carefully standardized and calibrated by a radiation physicist before permission can be obtained for using it clinically.

What is then, the common unit of measurement of radiation? Much has been said regarding ionization, and it is this effect that is measured in determining the strength of a particular energy source. The reason for this is that the energy absorption by a biologic system in the usual radiation experiment is only sufficient to raise its temperature about 0.1 C, rendering measurement of temperature inadequate for careful calibration.¹² Furthermore, since it is difficult to measure ionization in a biologic sys-

Cumulative Mortality of 450 R X-Ray Dogs

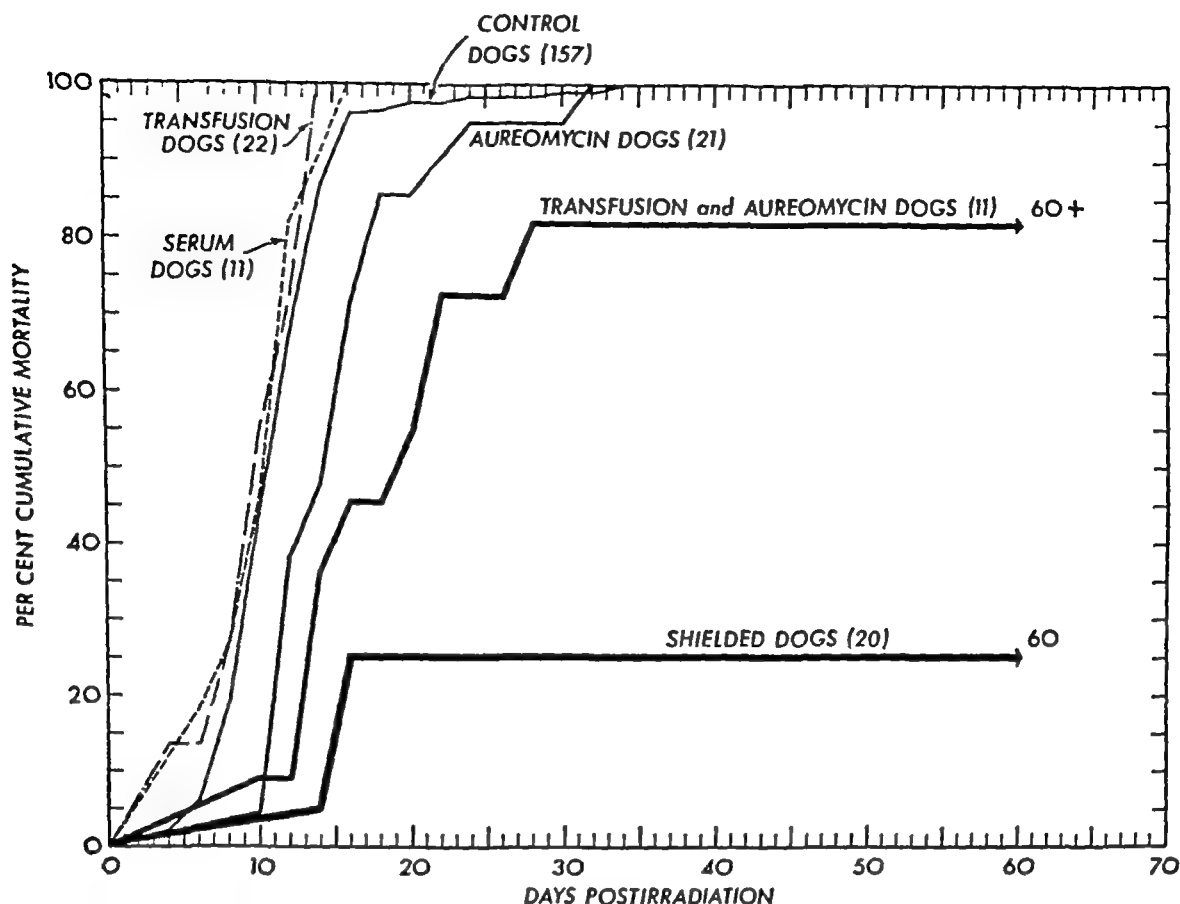


Fig 69 Failure of antibiotics and/or transfusion to reduce significantly the mortality in radiation injury. Cumulative mortality curves of dogs subjected to various types of post-radiation treatment. Included for comparison are the data obtained from head-shielding. The 450 r x-ray exposure is about 100 r above the LD_{100} for this laboratory. (From ALLEN, J G. In *Surgery—Principles and Practice*, edited by Allen, J G, Harkins, H N, Moyer, C A and Rhodes, J G. Philadelphia, J B Lippincott Company, 1957.)

tem, in practice irradiation dosage (in “1” or roentgen units) is determined from the ionization produced in some measured gas volume, usually air. Even so, it is generally agreed that this type of measurement is only relatively accurate. When the energy lost in tissue is equal to that lost in air by 1 r, the dose is spoken of as 1 roentgen-equivalent-physical (1 rep). This unit is applied to charged and uncharged particle radiations, as well as to x-rays and gamma rays.¹³

Other Clinical Considerations in Regard to Radiation Therapy

WOUND HEALING FOLLOWING IRRADIATION OF THE TISSUE. It is a common impression that an incision made through skin that has been irradiated will not readily heal. However, in experimental studies in rats Lawrence,

Nickson, and Warshaw⁷ found that standard abdominal incisions made at various times after irradiation of the wound areas healed satisfactorily, though perhaps not quite so rapidly as in animals who had not been irradiated. The final wound strength was equal to that in the control or nonirradiated animals. It was their conclusion that there was no practical advantage in delaying surgery more than 3 weeks after irradiation. Of interest was the fact that the presence or absence of irradiation-induced skin erythema, *per se*, seemed to have little effect on the rate of wound healing. In a different type of study, Gustafson and Cebul² found that the resection of a segment of ileum was well tolerated in dogs receiving 200 or 300 r of whole body irradiation 20 hours prior to surgery. The surgical wounds

TABLE 9 CLASSIFICATION OF MALIGNANT TUMORS IN RELATION TO RADIATION TREATMENT

I Sensitive tumors	
A Embryonal origin	
Seminoma	
True embryonal tumor of ovary	
Other embryonal tumors e.g. Wilms	
B Reticuloendothelial origin	
Lymphosarcoma	
Reticulosarcoma	
Thymoma	
Some endotheliomas	
Ewing's tumor	
Hodgkin's disease	
The leukemias	
C Neuroblastomas	
II Tumors of limited sensitivity in accessible sites	
Carcinoma of the mouth including tongue and lip	
Carcinoma of the skin of face and hands and elsewhere	
Carcinoma of the cervix uteri	
Carcinoma of the vagina	
Carcinoma of the anus—if of limited size	
Carcinoma of the bladder—if of limited size	
Carcinoma of the maxillary antrum	
Intrinsic carcinoma of the larynx—if limited to the cord	
Retinal glioma	
Carcinoma of the breast and in lymph nodes	
Mixed tumors of the parotid	
Benign giant cell tumor of bone	
III Tumors in which radiotherapy has a low cure value but a definite palliation value	
Carcinoma of kidney (hypernephroma)	
Carcinoma of ovary (except embryonal)	
Cerebral tumors	
Carcinoma of bladder or larynx—unless limited (see above)	
Thyroid tumors	
Salivary gland tumors (other than parotid)	
Carcinoma of esophagus	
Carcinoma of lung	
Isolated bone metastases	
Malignant mediastinal tumors	
IV Tumors where radiotherapy is rarely of value	
Osteogenic sarcoma	
Fibrosarcoma	
Other resistant sarcomas (myosarcoma liposarcoma etc.)	
Melanoma	
Carcinoma of stomach or gut	
Metastases in liver or lung	
Carcinoma of prostate	

TABLE 9—Cont d

* Modified from RALSTON 1 *The Treatment of Malignant Disease by Radium and X rays* London Edward Arnold & Co 1918

of the abdomen healed well in the operated dogs, and wound infection did not occur in those dogs having subcuticular skin closures. The most common pathologic finding in dogs dying following irradiation was a profound bacterial pneumonitis.

Despite these reports, however, we are still somewhat reluctant to operate through recently irradiated tissue.

RADIATION INJURY TO THE SMALL AND LARGE BOWEL. It is not particularly uncommon to detect irradiation effects upon the small and large bowel following treatment of uterine cancer with irradiation (Fig 70). The rectum being in closest proximity is the structure most frequently damaged, though injuries to the bladder, ureters, and small intestine may also be encountered. When the small bowel is damaged by radiation, intestinal obstruction is the usual complication which brings the patient back for further treatment. Perforations or ulcerations in the small intestine as the result of radiation injury are rare. Instances of serious hemorrhage and bloody diarrhea from the colon may develop.

In contrast to the more severe effects of hemorrhage and perforation, immediate though temporary effects of irradiation on the intestine are not unusual, beginning



Fig 70 Postirradiation fistula between right iliac artery and terminal ileum. This woman had been treated for cancer of the uterus by both radical surgery and irradiation. She was brought to the hospital weeks later with massive bleeding from the sigmoid colectomy. The lesion shown was excised (artery ligated) with complete recovery.

during the course of treatment and often subsiding several weeks following its cessation. The most common findings are nausea, diarrhea, abdominal cramps, and edema and hyperemia of the intestinal mucosa.

The *treatment* of the more severe complications, consisting of hemorrhage or perforation, is the same as were these complications caused by any other type of injury. Resection of the involved bowel or closure of perforations is indicated.

POSTRADIATION FIBROSIS OF THE LUNG This is a chronic condition of the lung which is most often caused, not by irradiation of cancer of the lung itself, but by irradiation for carcinoma of the breast. This results in fibrosis of the ipsilateral lung with, not infrequently, an harassing cough and, occasionally, hemoptysis. These symptoms may be distressing enough but, if sufficient pulmonary tissue has been irradiated, the fibrosis may be so extensive as to result in serious dyspnea. There has been an increasing tendency in recent years to resect the most diseased portion of the lung, if this is not too extensive.

DEVELOPMENT OF CANCER IN IRRADIATED AREAS It is a relatively rare complication in modern times, but formerly the removal of hair and other "cosmetic" uses of radiation resulted in the development of carcinoma of the skin. Many physicians develop skin cancer involving the hands as a result of careless exposure in the use of x-ray, especially at fluoroscopy.

Medical Uses of Isotopes: Research, Diagnosis and Therapy

HISTORICAL COMMENT The present widespread use of isotopes had its inception in isolated studies many years ago. Following the discovery and separation of pure radium by Marie and Pierre Curie in 1902, physicists everywhere became extremely interested in obtaining radioactive substances in a pure state. However, by chemical means this proved exceedingly difficult to achieve in many instances. Failure on the part of competent physicists to separate such sub-

stances led to the concept of "chemically practically identical elements." That is, while by physical means it might be possible to separate the radioactive substance from a nonradioactive substance of similar composition, the tissues of the body could not distinguish one from the other in utilizing them in cellular metabolism. This gave rise to the concept of "isotopy," somewhat the result of the formulation of "displacement laws" of atomic structure, which concept was introduced in 1913.³ At about this time von Hevesy, having journeyed from the laboratory of Lord Ernest Rutherford in England to the Institute for Radium Research of the Academy of Sciences in Vienna, actually accomplished the initial use of chemically practically identical elements as indicators. Concluding that, if radium D could not be separated from lead, it should be possible to label lead by adding to a known amount of lead chloride radium D chloride prepared from old radium emanation tubes, von Hevesy and his associate, F. A. Paneth, utilized this fact to use labeled lead and labeled bismuth as indicators in the field of inorganic chemistry and physical chemistry in 1912 and 1913.³ However, it was not until approximately 10 years later, in the laboratory of Niels Bohr at the Institute in the University of Copenhagen, that radioactive indicators were used in the study of the living organism, the uptake of lead by plants and the distribution of lead and bismuth in the animal organism were investigated.

Von Hevesy further recalls³ that the application of lead salts in cancer therapy was first suggested by Blair Bell of Liverpool in the latter portion of the twenties, and von Hevesy undertook to study the distribution of lead between normal and cancerous tissue, using radium D as a tracer. It was during the course of this work, performed in the University of Freiberg in Germany, that he asked the pathologist Aschoff to delegate one of his assistants to participate in this research. Among the persons Aschoff designated was, later in the studies, his chief chemist, Rudolf Schoenheimer. Although the

of investigations gave a negative result. Cancerous tissue accumulated approximately the same amount of lead as normal tissue, the cross fertilization between Schoenheimer and von Hevesy resulted in their becoming acquainted with the use of isotopic indicators. This had a far-reaching influence in the field of intermediary metabolism. For during the 1930's, now in the United States, Schoenheimer, in collaboration with David Rittenberg performed some of the most brilliant tracer work conceived up to that time. At that time, they demonstrated a continuous renewal of the molecules of fats and proteins in an animal organism and actually determined the speed of many of these processes. This work was published in a monograph entitled *The Dynamic State of Body Constituents* which did much to reorient scientific thought with respect to the processes of intermediary metabolism.

Following the discovery of heavy hydrogen (deuterium) by Urey in 1932, an isotope which is not radioactive but is a 'stable' isotope, further application of the isotopic technique was made possible. The first application of deuterium as a tracer was the study of the rate of interaction between the water molecules of the goldfish with those of the surrounding water. Rapid exchange occurred; nevertheless the extent of intrusion of deuterium into the fish could only be explained assuming a rapid interchange of a part of the hydrogen atoms present in the organic molecules of the fish with those of the water. Following this von Hevesy and Hofer⁴ performed their classic determination of the total body water content of a human being and the mean half time of water molecules in the human body. This was carried out by drinking the individual drink water containing a known amount of heavy water and then determining the rate of heavy water excretion in the urine. This study was subsequently fully confirmed (p. 28). The time the average molecule of water remains in the body of the normal individual who does not have excessive rates of water turnover due to febrile illness or other cause is from 10 to 13

days, with an average of approximately 11 days. Most of the heavy water is excreted by the end of approximately 30 days. There is a radioactive isotope of hydrogen, ultra-heavy hydrogen or tritium (mass 3), which is also available for use in tracer studies of water metabolism.

In concluding his survey of some of the historic milestones in the development of the now commonplace use of radioactive indicators, von Hevesy singled out the discovery of the production of artificial radioactivity by Joliot and Madame Joliot-Curie as one of the truly great advances in the field. This opened the way to the application of radioisotopes of almost all common elements as indicators, since almost any element desired could be artificially rendered radioactive and thus used as a tracer for metabolism in the body and throughout the biologic world. The preparation of such material was, of course, enormously speeded up by the development of the cyclotron by Ernest Lawrence.

Use of Isotopes in Research

The use of isotopes is so routine in investigative work throughout all branches of science that it is impossible to survey, even were it desirable, even a portion of such usage. Rather, we shall complete this particular phase of the discussion by mentioning only a few examples. Isotopes of hydrogen have been mentioned. Prior to the availability of isotopes which could readily be used in human beings, it was possible to determine the metabolic fate of, for example, nitrogen compounds only by balance studies. That is, one measured the intake of nitrogenous materials and measured the excretion of nitrogen in the urine and feces. I was considered that when the intake exceeded the output the patient was in 'positive' nitrogen balance whereas when the output exceeded the intake he was in 'negative' balance. The same type of balance studies were applied to many other organic and mineral constituents of the usual food stuffs. However, while this permitted

inference as to what was taking place with respect to the breakdown and utilization of the nitrogenous products ingested, it offered virtually no specific information regarding the metabolic pathways which this ingested nitrogen might have taken before being finally excreted as urea. With the advent of tracer substances of nitrogen, hydrogen, carbon, phosphorus and other elements, it became possible to identify in the urine, feces, blood, and tissues intermediary products of the original substance ingested. It was shown, for example, that there is a continuous turnover of fatty acids, that glucose can indeed be formed from fatty acids (which had been debated for many years), and that, in general, complex compounds in the body are actually built from basic and relatively simple structural units. That is, the body preferentially uses small building units or short chain compounds to achieve even the more complex molecules, rather

than stamping the complex molecules out of an even more complex precursor.⁸

It will thus be seen that the use of isotopes has greatly extended the range and precision of information achieved with the balance study, and such studies have in many instances demonstrated that previous concepts were erroneous.

Innumerable other examples could be cited but there will be mentioned only the use of stable and radioactive isotopes in measuring body water, extracellular water, plasma volume, red cell mass, length of life of the red cell, the uptake of radioiron by bone marrow in the production of red cells, radiosodium in the measurement of exchangeable sodium, radiopotassium in the measurement of exchangeable potassium, and the use of strontium and other elements in demonstrating a surprisingly rapid turnover in the mineral content and metabolic processes of bone itself. Until isotopes became available, bone was often considered a very static structure, a concept which has been demonstrated to be quite untenable, for bone too is in a state of constant molecular change. Radioactive calcium and radioactive gallium have also been particularly useful in the study of bone metabolism, since they, with strontium, are rapidly taken up by bones.

Diagnostic Uses of Isotopes (Table 10)

THE IMPORTANCE OF "HALF-LIFE" IN HUMAN APPLICATION. The applicability of radioisotopes in human beings has to do both with the amount of material that must be injected to permit subsequent detection in body tissues, fluids, or excreta, and with the length of time the element is reasonably radioactive, i.e., its half-life. Heavy hydrogen (deuterium), usually in the form of heavy water (deuterium oxide), is a stable isotope and is not radioactive. A radioactive isotope differs from one which is not radioactive only in the composition of the atomic nucleus usually because of an extra neutron. The additional neutron does not affect the chemical properties of the atom sufficiently to

TABLE 10 SURGICAL USES OF ISOTOPES
SOME EXAMPLES

I Diagnosis	
A	Radioiodine in hyperthyroidism
B	Radiophosphorus in localization of brain tumors
C	Thorotrast in identifying liver abscesses and metastases
D	Radioactive serum albumin (RISA) for measurement of plasma volume
E	Radioactive iron for detecting diminished life span of red cell
II Therapy	
A	Radioiodine in hyperthyroidism and in thyroid cancer
B	Radiophosphorus in polycythemia vera and metastatic solid tumors
C	Radiogold for ascites or pleural effusion
III Research	
A	D ₂ O (heavy water) for the measurement of total body water
B	Radiosodium and radiopotassium for the measurement of the body pools of these ions
C	Radiosodium for a great variety of circulatory "clearance," cardiac output and related studies
D	Radioiodine for investigation of iodine metabolism
E	Radiocarbon for metabolic investigations

nable living organisms to differentiate the isotope from its natural counterpart, in the course of usual metabolic processes. To be sure the isotopes of hydrogen exhibit differences in rates of diffusion throughout a solution but diluted isotopes can still be used satisfactorily for tracer work in metabolic studies despite such minor differences in physical properties.

The concept of half life As noted, there are differences between stable or nonradioactive isotopes and radioactive isotopes. The radioactive isotopes are in a constant state of decomposition and the rate of this decomposition is referred to as the *half life*. In Table 11 it is seen that whereas the half-life of iodine is only 8 days the half life of chlorine is more than a million years. The half lives of other isotopes commonly used in research and therapy lie between the extremes, most of them much nearer the half life of iodine. That of sodium is quite short, being 14.8 hours. The *half life* is not to be confused with the *biologic half time*. The latter refers to the average length of time that a number of simultaneously ingested atoms will remain in the body.

The rate of breakdown or disintegration of the nucleus of radioactive atoms is a measure of the nuclear stability of the isotope and can be measured for purposes of determining the half life. Naturally isotopes with a relatively short half life are safer for clinical use since the dose of radiation is limited regardless of the persistence of the element in the body. For example, if a certain amount of radioactive sodium were to be introduced into the body in 14.8 hours only one-half of the original radioactivity in the sodium would remain, in 29.6 hours only one-fourth, in 44.8 hours, only one-eighth, etc. In contrast, the radioactivity in a given amount of radioactive carbon would be unaffected by even 1 year or 10 years or 20 years since as seen in Table 11 the half life of radiocarbon is 5568 years. Obviously were the carbon given to the living organism never excreted a tremendous amount of radiation would occur over the

TABLE 11 HALF LIVES OF COMMONLY USED ISOTOPES (APPROXIMATE VALUES)

Isotopes	Half Life
Calcium ⁴⁵	163 days
Carbon ¹⁴	5568 years
Chlorine ³⁶	3.08×10^5 years
Cobalt ⁶⁰	5.27 years
Gold ¹⁹⁸	2.7 days
Iodine ¹³¹	8.08 days
Iron ⁵⁹	45.1 days
Phosphorus ³²	14.3 days
Potassium ⁴²	12.44 hours
Sodium ²⁴	14.8 hours
Strontium ⁹⁰	88 days
Strontium ⁹⁰	25 years
Yttrium ⁹¹	59.5 days
Tritium	12.46 years

life span of the organism. The fact is, however, that very minute amounts of carbon can be used in human metabolic studies. Since the amount introduced is quite small and since carbon is in a state of constant turnover and excretion, the injected radioactive material would also be turned over and a portion regularly excreted until eventually the amount in the body could scarcely be detected. Nevertheless, it is properly the short half life compounds such as phosphorus, sodium, potassium, and iodine that have been most extensively used in human study and therapy. Radioactive iron with a half life of about 45 days, has also been used for the study of rates of red cell formation and destruction and for the determination of red cell mass, but chromium has largely replaced iron for most such measurements.

RADIATIONS EMITTED BY VARIOUS RADIOACTIVE ISOTOPES. When the radioactive atom disintegrates the molecule carrying it is shattered and beta, gamma, or less frequently alpha and neutron types of emanations are emitted from the nucleus.⁹ As has been seen alpha particles are heavy doubly charged particles composed of two neutrons and two protons and are identical with the nucleus of the helium atom; they result in intense but localized damage. Beta particles are electrons with a penetrating power up to

inference as to what was taking place with respect to the breakdown and utilization of the nitrogenous products ingested, it offered virtually no specific information regarding the metabolic pathways which this ingested nitrogen might have taken before being finally excreted as urea. With the advent of tracer substances of nitrogen, hydrogen, carbon, phosphorus and other elements, it became possible to identify in the urine, feces, blood, and tissues intermediary products of the original substance ingested. It was shown, for example, that there is a continuous turnover of fatty acids, that glucose can indeed be formed from fatty acids (which had been debated for many years), and that, in general, complex compounds in the body are actually built from basic and relatively simple structural units. That is, the body preferentially uses small building units or short chain compounds to achieve even the more complex molecules, rather

than stamping the complex molecules of an even more complex precursor⁸. It will thus be seen that the use of topes has greatly extended the range of precision of information achieved with balance study, and such studies have many instances demonstrated that previous concepts were erroneous.

Innumerable other examples could be cited but there will be mentioned only use of stable and radioactive isotopes measuring body water, extracellular water, plasma volume, red cell mass, length of life of the red cell, the uptake of radionutrients in the bone marrow in the production of red cells, radiosodium in the measurement of exchangeable sodium, radiopotassium in measurement of exchangeable potassium, and the use of strontium and other elements in demonstrating a surprisingly rapid turnover in the mineral content and metabolic processes of bone itself. Until isotopes became available, bone was often considered a very static structure, a concept which has been demonstrated to be quite untenable. For bone too is in a state of constant molecular change. Radioactive calcium and radioactive gallium have also been particularly useful in the study of bone metabolism since they, with strontium, are rapidly taken up by bones.

Diagnostic Uses of Isotopes (Table 10)

THE IMPORTANCE OF "HALF-LIFE" IN HUMAN APPLICATION The applicability of radioisotopes in human beings has to do both with the amount of material that must be injected to permit subsequent detection in body tissues, fluids, or excreta, and with the length of time the element is reasonably radioactive, *i.e.*, its half-life. Heavy hydrogen (deuterium), usually in the form of heavy water (deuterium oxide), is a stable isotope and is not radioactive. A radioactive isotope differs from one which is not radioactive only in the composition of the atomic nucleus, usually because of an extra neutron. This additional neutron does not affect the chemical properties of the atom sufficiently to

TABLE 10 SURGICAL USES OF ISOTOPES
SOME EXAMPLES

I	Diagnosis
A	Radioiodine in hyperthyroidism
B	Radiophosphorus in localization of brain tumors
C	Thorotrast in identifying liver abscesses and metastases
D	Radioactive serum albumin (RISA) for measurement of plasma volume
E	Radioactive iron for detecting diminished life span of red cell
II	Therapy
A	Radioiodine in hyperthyroidism and in thyroid cancer
B	Radiophosphorus in polycythemia vera and metastatic solid tumors
C	Radiogold for ascites or pleural effusion
III	Research
A	D ₂ O (heavy water) for the measurement of total body water
B	Radiosodium and radiopotassium for the measurement of the body pools of these ions
C	Radiosodium for a great variety of circulatory "clearance," cardiac output and related studies
D	Radioiodine for investigation of iodine metabolism
E	Radiocarbon for metabolic investigations

enable living organisms to differentiate the isotope from its natural counterpart, in the course of usual metabolic processes. To be sure the isotopes of hydrogen exhibit differences in rates of diffusion throughout a solution but diluted isotopes can still be used satisfactorily for tracer work in metabolic studies despite such minor differences in physical properties.

The concept of half life As noted, there are differences between stable or nonradioactive isotopes and radioactive isotopes. The radioactive isotopes are in a constant state of decomposition and the rate of this decomposition is referred to as the *half life*. In Table 11 it is seen that whereas the half life of iodine is only 8 days the half-life of chlorine is more than a million years. The half lives of other isotopes commonly used in research and therapy lie between the extremes: most of them much nearer the half life of iodine. That of sodium is quite short being 14.8 hours. The half life is not to be confused with the *biologic half time*. The latter refers to the average length of time that a number of simultaneously ingested atoms will remain in the body.

The rate of breakdown or disintegration of the nucleus of radioactive atoms is a measure of the nuclear stability of the isotope and can be measured for purposes of determining the half life. Naturally, isotopes with a relatively short half life are safer for clinical use since the dose of irradiation is limited regardless of the persistence of the element in the body. For example, if a certain amount of radioactive sodium were to be introduced into the body in 14.8 hours only one half of the original radioactivity in the sodium would remain, in 29.6 hours only one-fourth in 44.8 hours, only one-eighth etc. In contrast the radioactivity in a given amount of radioactive carbon would be unaffected by even 1 year or 10 years or 20 years since as seen in Table 11 the half life of radiocarbon is 5568 years. Obviously, were the carbon given to the living organism never excreted a tremendous amount of radiation would occur over the

TABLE 11 HALF LIVES OF COMMONLY USED ISOTOPES (APPROXIMATE VALUES)

Isotopes	Half Life
Calcium ⁴⁵	163 days
Carbon ¹⁴	5568 years
Chlorine ³⁶	3.08×10^6 years
Cobalt ⁶⁰	5.27 years
Gold ¹⁹⁸	2.7 days
Iodine ¹³¹	8.08 days
Iron ⁵⁹	45.1 days
Phosphorus ³²	14.3 days
Potassium ⁴²	12.44 hours
Sodium ²⁴	14.8 hours
Strontium ⁹⁰	63 days
Strontium ⁹⁰	25 years
Lithium ⁷	69.6 days
Tritium	12.46 years

life span of the organism. The fact is, however, that very minute amounts of carbon can be used in human metabolic studies. Since the amount introduced is quite small and since carbon is in a state of constant turnover and excretion, the injected radioactive material would also be turned over and a portion regularly excreted until eventually the amount in the body could scarcely be detected. Nevertheless, it is properly the short half life compounds such as phosphorus, sodium, potassium, and iodine that have been most extensively used in human study and therapy. Radioactive iron with a half life of about 45 days, has also been used for the study of rates of red cell formation and destruction and for the determination of red cell mass, but chromium has largely replaced iron for most such measurements.

RADIATIONS EMITTED BY VARIOUS RADIOACTIVE ISOTOPES When the radioactive atom disintegrates the molecule carrying it is shattered and beta, gamma, or less frequently, alpha and neutron types of emanations are emitted from the nucleus. As has been seen, alpha particles are heavy doubly charged particles composed of two neutrons and two protons and are identical with the nucleus of the helium atom; they result in intense but localized damage. Beta particles are electrons with a penetrating power up to

8 mm in tissue, but their effects are primarily restricted to the immediate vicinity of the disintegration. Gamma rays, similar to x-rays, can penetrate for many centimeters, influencing the intermediate tissues. Radioisotopes which emit gamma radiation are much more hazardous to work with than are those which emit alpha and beta particles. Finally, neutrons, lacking an electrical charge, also penetrate deeply but produce local defects along the tract.

DIAGNOSTIC USAGE OF RADIOACTIVE IODINE
Radioactive iodine has been proved to be by far the most useful isotope thus far. The avidity of the thyroid for iodine has made it possible to determine thyroid activity by measuring the rate of uptake of radioiodine. In brief, the patient ingests a measured amount of radioactive iodine, usually 100 to 200 μc , in water. Twenty-four hours later a scintillation counter is placed over the thyroid gland and the proportion of the ingested dose in the thyroid is estimated, due correction being made for decomposition or decay of the ingested iodine, that is, for the natural decline in the specific radioactivity. The uptakes in euthyroid, hyperthyroid, and hypothyroid individuals have been indicated elsewhere (Fig. 225). Initially, the amount of iodine excreted in the urine was used as an indirect measure of thyroid activity, but more recently the excretion in the urine has been abandoned because of the greater simplicity of merely measuring the uptake by the thyroid gland itself. The microcurie (μc) is 1/1000th of a millicurie (mc) or 1/1,000,000th of a curie. The millicurie is defined as the amount of the isotope giving 2.2×10^9 disintegrations per minute. It is roughly equivalent to the number of disintegrations occurring in 1 mg of radium.¹³

To give an indication of the range of dosages of radioiodine used for different purposes, whereas from 100 to 300 microcuries of radioiodine may be given the patient for the purely diagnostic and nontherapeutic study of thyroid activity, from 5 to 15 or more millicuries will usually be required for

the successful treatment of hyperthyroidism. For the eradication of thyroid activity in thyroid cancer, as much as 30 millicuries may be used. Such high dosages have also been used to produce "medical thyroidectomy" in patients with heart disease.

USE OF RADIOACTIVE PHOSPHORUS IN LOCALIZATION OF BRAIN TUMORS
Only one additional use of radioisotopes in diagnosis will be mentioned, and this is the use of radioactive phosphorus in localizing brain tumors.⁹ The concentration of injected radio-phosphorus in neoplastic tissue may be perhaps five times that of the surrounding normal tissue. Whereas the isotope cannot be used effectively in the actual irradiation of such tumors, it can be useful in the localization of a tumor at the time of craniotomy when its location and extent are not clearly apparent. This is done by probing the brain in the suspected areas with a small scintillation probe that is approximately 2 mm in diameter and which is superior to the Geiger probe.

Use of Isotopes in Therapy

The therapeutic use of isotopes is still in its infancy, and the indications are changing so rapidly that it is not practicable to be too dogmatic. Nevertheless, the therapeutic use of certain isotopes is already well established. The use of radioiodine in the treatment of hyperthyroidism and in thyroid cancer has been mentioned. The high concentration of radioactive phosphorus, a strong beta emitter, in bone and bone marrow has permitted the successful use of this isotope in the treatment of polycythemia vera. A single dose may result in a remission lasting from 6 to 12 months. The isotopic treatment of leukemia has been rather less successful. Radiophosphorus has also been employed in the treatment of certain solid tumors.

The radioactive cobalt unit is now widely utilized as a powerful source of gamma irradiation for deep therapy in the management of malignant tumors. This cobalt "bomb" has the great advantage of being a

relatively inexpensive means of achieving deep radiation therapy, as compared with the more expensive high energy x ray unit. It is obtained from the pile at Oak Ridge. The effective life of the unit is approximately 5 years after which the radioactive unit can be replaced.

Radioactive gold has been introduced into body cavities particularly the thorax, in which malignant disease was diagnosed. It has also been injected directly into a tumor mass for local irradiation. According to Kealey,⁶ 99 per cent of the gold introduced is permanently fixed at the site of injection. Since the half life of Au^{198} is 2.7 days and that of Au^{199} is 2.3 days, the radiation continues for a maximum of only 2 to 3 weeks after fixation. While the results in treating malignant tumors of the pleural cavity (often metastatic tumor) with radiogold have not been spectacular, the pleural effusion is frequently diminished and some improvement is realized.

Certain skin lesions may be treated by applying radioactive isotopes directly over the lesion. Finally, there is the recently introduced technique of, at operation, introducing coils of polyethylene tubing through and through the tumor, as for example a carcinoma of the pancreas, and then bringing both ends of the polyethylene tubing out through the abdominal or other incision. The radioactive isotope can then be introduced and placed in the portion of the polyethylene tubing that is within the cancer, effecting local irradiation of a tumor that could not be readily treated with irradiation from an external source.

REFERENCES

- 1 CURIE, E. *Madame Curie*. Garden City N. Y., Doubleday & Co., Inc., 1937.
- 2 GUSTAFSON, G. E., AND CEBUL, F. A. The effect of surgery on dogs following whole body x-irradiation. *Surg Gynec & Obst.*, 98: 49 1954.
- 3 HEVETZ, G. von. Some historical remarks on the application of radioactive indicators. *Cardiol ogia*, 21: 226 1952.
- 4 von HEVETZ, G. AND HOFER, E. Die Verweilzeit des Wassers im menschlichen Körper. Untersuchungen mit Hilfe von "schwerem" Wasser als Indikator. *Klin Wchnschr*, 13: 1824 1934.
- 5 HOROWITZ, N. H. Progress in developing chemical concepts of genetic phenomena. *Fed. Proc.* 15: 818 1956.
- 6 KELLEY, F. E. Radioactive isotopes in medical research, diagnosis, and therapy. *J. A. M. A.* 146: 1131 1951.
- 7 LAWRENCE, W., JR., NICKSON, J. J., AND WARSHAW, L. M. Roentgen rays and wound healing. *Surgery*, 33: 376 1953.
- 8 LIPMANN, F. Biosynthetic mechanisms. *Harvey Lect.*, 44: 99 1948-1949.
- 9 MOORE, G. *Diagnosis and Localization of Brain Tumors. A Clinical and Experimental Study Employing Fluorescent and Radio-Active Tracer Methods*. Springfield, Ill. Charles C. Thomas, 1953.
- 10 OGDEN, M. G., AND STOCKEN, L. A. Biochemical aspects of the radiation syndrome. *Physiol. Rev.*, 33: 356 1953.
- 11 PATT, H. M. Protective mechanisms in ionizing radiation injury. *Physiol. Rev.* 33: 35 1953.
- 12 PATT, H. M. Radiation effects on mammalian systems. *Ann. Rev. Physiol.* 16: 51 1954.
- 13 SPARROW, A. H., AND RUBIN, B. A. Effects of radiations on biological systems. In *Survey on Biological Progress*, Volume 2, edited by G. S. Avery, Jr. New York, Academic Press, Inc., 1952.
- 14 STANLEY, W. M. Virus composition and structure—25 years ago and now. *Fed. Proc.* 15: 812 1956.

Chapter 9

Surgical Enzymology—The Importance of Enzymes and Their Use in Diagnosis and Treatment

Rôle of Enzymes in Biochemistry

Throughout the preceding chapters frequent reference has been made to enzymes. Most of the chemical processes which constitute life itself are catalyzed, and the overwhelming majority of catalysts are enzymes. This being the case, the importance of enzymes in human physiology becomes apparent, and the study of enzymes and their functions now constitutes a major field in biochemical research. The known enzymes number in the dozens, and will later perhaps number in the hundreds. Many disease processes have proved to be due to a specific enzymic deficiency or "enzymic lesion," and many others are suspected to be due to such lesions.

The rôle of adrenocortical, thyroidal, and other hormones in promoting successful resistance to various forms of stress has long been considered to be mediated through enzyme systems with their subsequent effects upon cellular biochemistry. It was seen in the section on cancer that perhaps the single most characteristic biochemical lesion in malignancy is a diminished liver catalase activity in the presence of a rapidly growing tumor. This of course strongly suggests that enzymic processes are deranged and that they may have to do with carcinogenesis. Earlier, mention was made of the data which serve as evidence for the development of a biochemical basis for genetic phenomena. Horowitz¹⁰ has suggested that each enzyme

may be controlled by a specific gene which results in the transfer of a single specific biochemical function. In support of such hypothesis, there are definite hereditary diseases that are caused by the absence of a single specific enzyme (*e g*, alkaptonuria). It has been seen that radiation-induced mutations may consist of the absence of a single specific enzyme, with a resulting specific biochemical abnormality in the mutant strain. In other words, there is a considerable body of evidence being marshaled to support the view that the characteristics of the father and mother are transferred to the children in a random combination of genes, that each gene controls a specific enzymic messenger, perhaps consisting of a particular arrangement of amino acids, and that this results in a particular characteristic in the progeny that is given expression through a particular chemical reaction.¹⁰

EVIDENCE THAT ENZYMES ARE CONTROLLED BY HORMONES It has been intimated above that the rôle of hormones in stress is mediated through enzymes, with a consequent effect upon cellular chemical processes. Although the evidence for this is by no means complete—and may even be considered somewhat tenuous—a basis for this assumption was suggested by the Cori's, in that the activity of hexokinase, which catalyzes an essential intermediate step in the oxidation of glucose to water and carbon dioxide, is controlled by insulin and by a pituitary an-

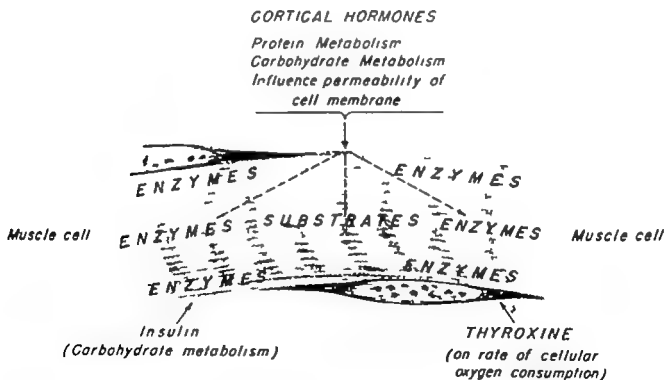
tagonist.⁴ If hexokinase cannot act, glucose is not utilized normally and the manifestations of diabetes mellitus appear. This has stimulated interest in the use of fructose in diabetes mellitus, since hexokinase is not required for the phosphorylation of this substance and thus there appears to be no block in this reaction in diabetes.¹⁶

Other examples of the role of hormones in the regulation of enzymic activity could be cited. To give one more, cytochrome C is an important respiratory enzyme concerned with the cellular utilisation of oxygen. Drabkin⁵ showed that the tissue concentration of this enzyme could be reduced by thyroidectomy or by the administration of thiouracil.

THE NATURE OF ENZYMES AND THEIR IMPLICATION IN SPECIFIC DISEASE STATES⁶ As enzymes are organic catalysts, they alter the speed of their respective chemical reactions without appearing in the final product of the reaction. Tagnon²² offers as an example

the fact that colloidal platinum, a simple catalyst, catalyzes the decomposition of hydrogen peroxide into water and oxygen. A catalyst does not of course create a chemical reaction; it merely regulates the rates of previously present reactions. Enzymes differ from some other catalysts, however, in that each enzyme catalyzes one kind of reaction only. Most if not all of the enzymes known are protein in nature with a relatively high molecular weight, are inactivated by heat, and can generally be extracted from the cells in which they are produced. In this connection, one might note that enzymes are usually intracellular and that most of them function in the cytoplasm of the cell (Fig. 71).

To implicate enzymes as specific etiologic agents in disease, additional examples may be given. The rôle of hexokinase in the genesis of diabetes mellitus was described. The abnormality of albinism, in which phenyl alanine is not converted to melanin, repre-



Possible Site of Action of Hormones

Fig 71 If the prevailing belief that hormones exert their manifold effects by influencing enzyme activity is a valid one, then the question arises as to the point at which such influence is effected (From HARRY J D *Surgery and the Endocrine System* Philadelphia W B Saunders Company 1932)

sents an enzyme deficiency Pancreatitis represents an often fatal inflammatory process in the pathogenesis of which enzymes surely play an important rôle, whether because of their activation or because of the absence of a normally present inhibitor from the blood ¹¹ Alkaptonuria, in which the excreted homogentisic acid causes the urine to turn black on standing, is another example Phenylketonuria, in which phenylalanine metabolism is deranged and a mentally defective person results, is still another example of an abnormal gene's producing abnormal enzymic activity

This brief list of illustrations might be concluded by noting that the biochemical identity of the cells of the different organs of the body is likely to result from the nature and proportion of the enzymes contained in the various cells In passing, it will be perceived that the morbid microscopic observations of the pathologist cannot, alone, presume to explain the chemical pathology of disease the subtle biochemical disturbances which threaten or even destroy life may often have taken their toll without producing visible anatomic changes However, there is reason to believe that with the tremendously increased resolving power of the electron microscope the altered biochemistry which can frequently be demonstrated in disease states can be correlated with definite alterations in the finer details of the structure of both the cell nucleus and the cytoplasm Of course, pathologists themselves are keenly aware of the limitations of gross and microscopic observation, and the pathologists in our hospital now report in two categories first, gross and microscopic findings and, second, the probable biochemical and physiologic derangements that existed during life

ENZYME INHIBITORS Since a *highly developed system of checks and balances exists in the body with respect to most biochemical phenomena*, it would be surprising indeed if such a regulating scheme were not present for enzymes, and such does exist For example, a rise in serum hyaluronidase

inhibitor usually follows the wounding of an animal Further, the mechanism involved in anaphylactic shock and other allergic phenomena is thought to be enzymic in nature, the general consensus is that histamine is liberated through the activation of proteolytic enzymes and that this histamine then prevents other enzymes from functioning normally This hypothesis stimulates the search for substances similar in structure to histamine which would act as histamine antagonists in allergy states, and compounds such as Benadryl and Pyribenzamin were found to be useful in this regard.

VITAMINS AND THEIR RÔLE AS COENZYMES

Many enzymes require a co-factor or coenzyme for their normal function Such coenzymes frequently are relatively simple compounds and need not be protein in nature Among the most important of the coenzymes are certain of the vitamins For example, thiamine is a part of the molecule of cocarboxylase, which in the brain catalyzes pyruvic acid to acetic acid When this reaction cannot proceed, beriberi results with its characteristic sensory nervous system manifestations Pantothenic acid is a part of a coenzyme concerned particularly with the formation of acetylcholine, the important chemical substance concerned with the transmission of neural impulses Riboflavin is a part of a group of "yellow" enzymes which are involved in biologic oxidation reactions Finally, *para*-aminobenzoic acid is considered to be a part of an enzyme system which is necessary for bacterial growth. The bacteriostatic action of sulfonamides is exercised through the substitution of the sulfa drug at the position in the enzyme molecule previously occupied by *para*-aminobenzoic acid, rendering the enzyme ineffective There is as yet no solid evidence that penicillin and streptomycin act in a similar way, but it is strongly suspected that they do

A NUMBER OF METALS ARE ESSENTIAL ELEMENTS OF CERTAIN ENZYME MOLECULES Cytochrome, an important respiratory enzyme, contains iron Carboxylase contains magne-

sum and cocarboxylase contains phosphorus. Both of these enzymes are concerned with carbohydrate oxidation in the brain. Copper is probably an important element in an enzyme active in the formation of hemoglobin.

Summarizing Comment on Role of Enzymes in the Physiologic Chemistry of Human Beings in Health and Disease

The foregoing brief examples of enzymic functions have been given with the purpose of emphasizing the central position occupied by enzymes in human biochemistry and physiology. In investigating the neuroendocrine response to injuries of various types, some connecting link must be found between the increased amounts of the various hormones which are secreted and their final effect upon basic chemical reactions. There is substantial evidence that the proximate explanation of this influence of hormones upon cellular chemical processes will be found in the intermediate enzymes which catalyze the specific but simple reactions in question. Furthermore, the surgeon is certain to be carried further and more deeply into the realm of enzymology during the coming years, as the explanations for ir reversible shock, burn toxemia, late intestinal obstruction, anesthesia intolerance, mechanisms of bacterial invasion, pancreatitis, and malignancy are sought.

The Use of Enzymes in Diagnosis

It would not be proper to enter into great detail here, but a few selected examples will serve as a review and prove instructive.

✓ **SERUM AMYLASE, DIASTASE, AND LIPASE VALUES IN PANCREATITIS.** Since Elman⁶ and others reported the diagnostic value of the serum amylase level in pancreatitis its use has become routine. The determination of the serum concentration of this enzyme has come to be the single most important objective criterion of the presence of the disease. The urinary excretion of amylase, as well as diastase and lipase may also be increased.

There are of course, other causes of elevated amylase levels (p. 256).

SERUM ALKALINE PHOSPHATASE LEVEL. An evaluation of the serum alkaline phosphatase level in the presence of jaundice is, in our opinion, probably the most reliable single laboratory test in differentiating "medical" from "surgical" jaundice. In complete obstruction or virtually complete obstruction due to common duct stone, carcinoma of the pancreas or common duct stricture the alkaline phosphatase level is usually well above normal. In fact if the alkaline phosphatase level is normal in the presence of jaundice, one is slow to diagnose "surgical" jaundice though it may still be present.

The alkaline phosphatase level may also be increased in conditions which affect bone metabolism such as some functioning parathyroid adenomas.

SERUM ACID PHOSPHATASE LEVEL. Huggins and his associates¹⁴ first reported that the acid phosphatase level may be elevated in metastatic prostatic carcinoma, and this relationship has since been used as a routine aid in diagnosis (Fig. 63). Fishman, Lerner, and Homburger⁷ have proposed a chemical separation of the acid phosphatase of normal serum into one part originating from the prostate and another originating from non-prostatic sources, with the purpose of increasing the diagnostic sensitivity of the acid phosphatase test in patients with cancer of the prostate. However, while the serum acid phosphatase level may be normal in the presence of carcinoma of the prostate, a significant elevation in this value is virtually diagnostic of carcinoma of the prostate, usually with bone involvement.

FIBRINOLYSIN IN PROSTATIC CANCER AND OTHER CONDITIONS.²² Another enzymic derangement that has recently been emphasized in connection with carcinoma of the prostate—and with no other known malignancy—is that of the effect of prostatic fibrinolysin in a small proportion of patients with metastatic carcinoma of this organ. The substrate for prostatic fibrinolysin ap-

pears to consist of fibrinogen, fibrin, prothrombin, accelerator globulin, and probably other proteins of plasma. Moreover, whereas the presence of acid phosphatase in the serum has no purpose which is apparent at this time, the presence of the prostatic fibrinolysin in blood has important consequences because this prostatic enzyme is able to digest and to destroy several of the factors required by the blood-coagulation mechanism. In patients who exhibit elevated fibrinolytic levels, a pronounced decrease in the serum levels of fibrinogen, prothrombin, and accelerator globulin may lead to an hemorrhagic diathesis. Interestingly enough, the level of prostatic fibrinolysin in such individuals has been shown to be influenced by the administration of estrogenic and androgenic hormones. The administration of testosterone to a patient with carcinoma of the prostate can be shown to promote fibrinolysis and induce a rapid fall in the level of plasma fibrinogen, prothrombin, and accelerator globulin, and spontaneous hemorrhages may appear. Conversely, the administration of estrogen produces a disappearance of fibrinolysis in the blood, and the blood-clotting factors return to a normal level.

Increased fibrinolysis with diminished plasma fibrinogen has been reported in shock associated with uterine hemorrhage, and with other shock states. In contrast, it will be recalled that certain patients with malignancy, particularly those with pancreatic malignancy, may exhibit an increased tendency to intravascular clotting.

TRANSAMINASE LEVELS FOLLOWING INJURY
During recent years there has arisen considerable interest in using measurements of the serum transaminase level as an index of tissue damage, after both myocardial infarction and various surgical operations. The enzyme was first discovered by Braunstein and Kritzman,² in 1938, in pigeon breast muscle. In general, the magnitude of the rise following myocardial infarction appears to correlate fairly well with the magnitude of muscular necrosis. The same cor-
relation has been found following surgery, as

regards the rise in the serum transaminase level and the magnitude of the operation.¹ Nevertheless, the correlations referred to involve averages, in the individual patient the transaminase level is less predictable after various forms of injury.

Finally, the level of this enzyme may be elevated in a wide variety of other circumstances which produce tissue necrosis, in cancer, liver disease, pancreatitis, and in lung conditions.

MISCELLANEOUS OTHER ENZYME LEVELS USED IN DIAGNOSIS A diminished pancreatic enzyme content in the succus entericus constitutes evidence of pancreatic disease, and recently the measurement of the cholinesterase level in serum has been used in the diagnosis of liver disease.²⁰

Use of Enzymes in Treatment

The use of enzymes in surgical therapy is only in its infancy, and a number of difficulties must be solved before widespread realization of the theoretical advantages of such treatment can be realized. To begin with, enzymes are protein in nature and thus are antigenic, the administration of some enzymes may result in severe anaphylactic reactions. In this connection, complete purification of the enzyme preparation is desirable to remove some antigenic materials which may have no therapeutic effect. A second difficulty in enzyme therapy arises from the fact that most enzymes are intracellular, and their site of action is within the cell. Thus, enzymes administered parenterally would need to cross the cell membrane, and yet, the large molecular size of most enzymes makes passage through the cell membrane difficult. Third, since gastric and intestinal juices can destroy many enzymes, it would presumably be necessary to administer most enzymes parenterally, rather than orally, although with an increased risk of anaphylactic shock. A fourth theoretical objection is that, even were it possible to inject the enzyme parenterally and for it to cross the cell membrane, there

is grave doubt as to whether or not the enzyme would localize in that specific portion of the cell in which it might be utilized.²² For example, it is known that certain important enzymes, such as those associated with cellular respiration are found in the particulate component of the cytoplasm, in contrast to certain enzymes responsible for glycolysis, which are readily extractable in water solution. Further, many of the intracellular enzymes are to be found in the mitochondria, especially those having to do with electron transport and oxygen activation. A sixth consideration is that many enzymes require the co-factors or coenzymes mentioned above, it would presumably be important to be certain that when an excess of an enzyme is being administered parenterally an excess of the coenzyme is also administered.

Even so, a number of enzymes are already employed therapeutically and the use of certain of these will now be reviewed.

Hyaluronidase

This enzyme was first described as a "spreading factor" present in testicular extracts, and it was later shown to be one of a group of enzymes which depolymerize hyaluronic acid and related substances. Representatives of these enzymes occur naturally in the venom of poisonous snakes and insects and as the products of various pathogenic bacteria.

Hyaluronidase causes rapid diffusion of subcutaneously injected fluids by temporarily destroying the normal interstitial barrier commonly referred to as cement substance ground substance or mesenchymal interfibrillar substance (p 104). It accomplishes this chiefly by virtue of its action upon hyaluronic acid and chondroitin sulfates, which provide the gelatinous consistency of the normal intercellular substance. Hyaluronic acid and the chondroitin sulfates are acid polysaccharides of giant molecular size. In essence hyaluronidase depolymerizes hyaluronic acid and liquefies any barrier containing appreciable amounts

of this acid.²³ This reaction occurs rapidly, and the diffusion of fluid injected by hypodermoclysis is accelerated. It has been observed that after a single injection of the enzyme, from 24 to 48 hr are required for complete local reconstitution of the cement substance by mesenchymal cells. The processes of the natural production of hyaluronidase are not fully understood.

Commercially available hyaluronidase is in the form of a vacuum dried powdered extract of bull testis which is free from pyrogens, is destroyed by heating at 100° C for 5 minutes or by storage in alkaline media, and is stable indefinitely in a dry state at room temperature.²⁴ Potency of the enzyme is expressed in turbidity reducing units, abbreviated to T.R.U. or viscosity, according to the method of the manufacturer. Early commercial preparations contained impurities which occasionally produced foreign protein reactions, but with progressive purification of the enzyme such reactions have been reduced to a negligible incidence. Should inadvertent intravenous injection occur when the material is injected subcutaneously, the hyaluronidase inhibitors in the circulating blood rapidly neutralize or destroy the enzyme.

In addition to its use in hypodermoclysis, the enzyme has also been used to increase the effectiveness of regional block anesthesia by making the distribution of the injected material more uniform.

HYALURONIDASE AS AID IN SURGICAL DISSECTION Streuter²¹ used this enzyme as an aid in the development of planes of cleavage in different surgical procedures, particularly when accurate anatomic demonstration was difficult to obtain in the operative field because of close adherence to adjacent vital structures. He pointed out that dissection in the portal triad, lung hilum, or behind the thyroid gland may be fraught with considerable danger in the presence of fibrosis, and he stated that the injection of hyaluronidase assisted materially with the dissection. The enzyme had no appreciable effect on intact pleural or peritoneal surfaces, but it

did facilitate operative procedure when it was applied directly to exposed tissues

HYALURONIDASE IN THE TREATMENT OF PARAPHIMOSIS Rathliff¹⁸ found injections of hyaluronidase useful in this condition. In fact, improvement occurred in 2 minutes following an injection of 150 turbidity units (dissolved in 1 ml of isotonic sodium chloride solution) at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions. At the end of 12 minutes the swelling of both the edematous ring and the frenum had completely disappeared, and the prepuce was reduced with ease and without pain. Four patients had been treated at the time of his report, all with good results.

Streptokinase and Streptodornase (SK-SD)

Among the enzymes most valuable therapeutically are streptokinase and streptodornase, used in combination. Tillett and Garner²⁵ discovered that cultures of hemolytic streptococci had the capacity to promote the rapid lysis of the fibrin clot of normal human blood. In later describing these early studies, Tillett²⁴ recalled that

"In the first experiment, 0.5 cc of a culture of a strain of hemolytic streptococcus freshly derived from a patient with acute meningitis had been added to and mixed with a few tenths of a cc of oxalated normal human plasma. An amount of CaCl_2 sufficient to precipitate the oxalate was introduced. Coagulation of the plasma developed in the normal manner. However, when the tube was subsequently inspected before discarding, the contents were found to be liquid. When by repetition of the experiment, mistakes in ingredients and artifacts had been excluded as accounting for the reaction, it was apparent that this strain of streptococcus possesses not only its lytic property active against red blood cells, the hemolysin, but an additional one giving rise to rapid fibrinolysis."

PREPARATION FOR USE Streptokinase and streptodornase are stable for many months in the desiccated form at temperatures of from 2 to 10° C. At this temperature, solu-

tions of a mixture of the two enzymes remain stable for seven or more days. When it is desired to inject the material, from 10 to 20 ml of sterile physiologic saline solution are introduced into the vial containing the mixture of approximately 100,000 units of streptokinase and 25,000 units of streptodornase. The most commonly used preparation is Varidase, produced by Lederle Laboratories, and vials containing varying amounts of the desiccated enzymes may be obtained. The enzyme is used to liquefy clotted material in closed spaces (e.g., clotted hemothorax), for the enzymatic debridement of wounds, and for other purposes that are outlined below.

TREATMENT OF INTRAPLEURAL COLLECTIONS OF PUS OR BLOOD Without doubt, a most widespread use of streptokinase-streptodornase has been in the liquefaction of collections of pus or blood in the thorax, so that they could be aspirated and the lung re-expanded. The injection of 100,000 units of streptokinase and 25,000 units of streptodornase in approximately 20 ml of solution will within 24 hr frequently permit the aspiration of a considerable volume of material which has been liquefied by the enzymes when no material could be aspirated previously. The patient usually has a febrile reaction and is "sick" to a variable degree. Although anaphylactoid reactions with near fatality have been reported,¹⁹ the benefits gained by avoiding open thoracotomy for the purposes of removing clotted pus or blood usually outweigh the danger of a serious reaction to the enzymes.

The injections may need to be repeated a number of times. Frequently the enzymatic liquefaction is not adequate, and open thoracotomy must still be performed. Nevertheless, with perseverance an operation can be avoided in some cases.

Complications In addition to systemic reactions, a word of caution is necessary regarding the use of these enzymes in the chest to liquefy hemorrhage which has followed resection of all or part of a lung. Bronchopleural fistulas have been reported to fol-

low enzymic debridement in this situation, presumably because a fibrin clot over the stump of the closed bronchus was also liquefied. These enzymes do not affect healthy living tissue, but presumably permit opening of the bronchus by the means just described. Thus, one should exercise caution in using these enzymes after pneumonectomy and, to a lesser extent, lobectomy.

At times it may be desirable to use SK-SD in conjunction with closed thoracotomy, the larger size of the drainage tube permitting better egress of the liquefied exudate from the chest than might be the case by aspiration with a syringe and needle.

OTHER USES OF STREPTOKINASE-STREPTODORNASE The beneficial use of SK-SD in the management of contaminated or potentially contaminated wounds has been studied. Immediate closure may be accompanied by a reduced incidence of infection when SK-SD is used than might otherwise be the case.

Streptokinase-streptodornase has also been used to diminish the residual exudate and clot in the perineal wound following abdominoperineal resection.

Clots in the urinary bladder which cannot be successfully removed by usual methods of irrigation may be successfully liquefied by means of streptokinase-streptodornase installed through a catheter. Following injection of the enzymes the catheter is clamped for from 15 minutes to 4 hours to permit enzymatic lysis. It is then opened and the bladder again irrigated. When the enzymes are used immediately after prostatectomy, gentle traction on the Foley catheter may prevent them from coming into contact with actively bleeding vessels to cause further hemorrhage.

Clots occurring in drainage tubes have also been liquefied by means of installation of these enzymes, as for example, a clot in the common duct T tube.²⁰

The treatment of the wound with SK-SD following excision of a pilonidal sinus was reported to be beneficial in diminishing the dead space and in the dissolution of blood clots and other debris.¹⁵ Unquestionably a

common cause of breakdown of the wound following excision of these sinuses is that the dead space is not entirely eliminated, retained blood or other exudate becomes infected through the inevitable bacterial contamination.

Finally, SK-SD is used for the debridement of a variety of surface lesions which present exudate or necrotic tissue. However, this particular use of these enzymes is declining, in favor of the more recent proteolytic enzymes of the trypsin type. Streptokinase and streptodornase have been used intrathecally to diminish adhesions and to reduce the incidence of hydrocephalus following various forms of meningitis, particularly tuberculous meningitis. This use has not been outstandingly effective. For prolonged effect, SK-SD may be applied in the form of a jelly in the case of surface lesions.

BASIC REACTION The basic action of these enzymes is that of activating the proteolytic enzyme of plasma from its inactive state (proplasmin) into the active proteolytic enzyme, plasmin. The enzyme which accomplishes this is streptokinase. The enzyme plasmin can digest fibrin and certain other proteins and transform these into soluble products.

The function of streptodornase (desoxyribonuclease) is to act upon desoxyribonucleoprotein. Thick purulent exudates in pleural or pericardial cavities, and in certain abscesses, consist principally of fibrin and desoxyribonucleoprotein, as well as of blood cells and other tissue degradation products. The two enzymes thus act together but on different substrates to achieve liquefaction of exudates.

Other Proteolytic Enzymes Used Therapeutically

In addition to streptokinase and streptodornase a number of other enzymes have been prepared which can act upon proteic substances to produce lysis. Among the more important of these are trypsin and certain dialyzates obtained from cultures of clostridial coliform, and pseudomonas type or-

ganisms The use of proteinase and collagenase isolated from *Clostridium histolyticum* is still in the experimental stage

Therapeutic Uses of Trypsin

One of the intriguing therapeutic enzymes is trypsin, for the favorable reports of distant effects of parenterally injected enzyme (intramuscular) have become so numerous as to render it difficult entirely to disregard the possibility of such effects.

Purified crystalline trypsin¹⁷ is a proteolytic enzyme derived from mammalian pancreas Used topically, it digests fibrin clots and dead tissue, yielding peptides and some individual amino acids Trypsin digests the slimy and viscid coating of the desoxyribonucleoprotein of the purulent exudate and then attacks dead tissue in the lesion As the exudate thins, glucosidic assistance by means of phagocytosis is increased Bacteria in surface wounds decrease in number and, since trypsin is not bactericidal, the disappearance of bacteria would appear to be the result of a strengthening of the humoral elements of defense and a clearing of debris, which further denies a suitable culture medium to the bacteria.

TRYPSIN AEROSOL Another route of trypsin administration has been by means of aerosol for the enzymatic lysis of respiratory secretions Pulmonary secretions appear to be more viscid in the postoperative period, and this may contribute to the varying degrees of atelectasis which are often observed In an attempt to diminish the viscosity of such secretions and thus to improve drainage, Limber, Reiser, Roettig and Curtis¹⁴ administered trypsin by aerosol to experimental animals and to a number of patients with medical pulmonary conditions of various types Twenty-three subjects were treated with aerosol trypsin, among them patients with tuberculosis, tuberculosis with bronchiectasis, bronchiectasis with complications, postoperative atelectasis, unresolved pneumonia, nonspecific pneumonitis and bronchitis, and certain other conditions Sputum volume and viscosity were usually

diminished, with general improvement However, this particular use of trypsin has not had a general trial

PARENTERAL TRYPSIN. Despite the enthusiastic report by Innerfield¹³ and others of beneficial results in a wide variety of conditions, including thrombophlebitis, the detailed reports of Tagnon²² and of Taylor, Overman, and Wright²³ prompt one to maintain a skeptical attitude regarding the benefits of trypsin until further work has been done For many years it has been known that parenteral administration of trypsin in small doses results in intravascular clotting and in large doses results in a shock-like state associated with a reduction in the ability of the blood to clot, chiefly due to fibrinolysis Carefully controlled experimental studies still would appear to support such observations and, indeed, most of the favorable reports have resulted from clinical studies on patients which obviously could not be carefully controlled Innerfield and his associates¹³ claim that a rapid regression of a wide variety of inflammatory processes can be produced by the parenteral administration of trypsin, though even these workers do not claim for these enzymes the prompt lysis of intravascular clots Golden¹ also reported favorable results

Concluding Remarks

The foregoing discussion has represented a somewhat arbitrary selection of certain examples from the prodigiously growing field of enzymology There is no question but that enzymes—whether serving by increasing our knowledge of disease, or in diagnosis, or in treatment—will assume an ever more important place in surgical practice

REFERENCES

- 1 ALLBRITTEN, F F, JR, AND NICKELL, W K Serum transaminase values related to tissue injury *Surgery*, 42: 240, 1957
- 2 BRAUNSTEIN, A E, AND KRITZMAN, M G Cited by F G Conrad, *New England J Med*, 256: 602, 1957
- 3 BRITTON, R C, AND HABIF, D V Clinical uses of hyaluronidase *Surgery*, 33: 917, 1953

- 1 CORI C F., AND CORI G T Carbohydrate metabolism *Ann Rev Biochem.*, **15**: 193 1946
- 5 DRABKIN D L. The effect of thyroidectomy and thiouracil on cytochrome C metabolism and liver regeneration *Fed Proc.*, **7**: 151 1948
- 8 ELMAN R. R., ARNESEN N., AND GRAHAM E. A Value of blood amylase estimations in the diagnosis of pancreatic disease *Arch Surg.*, **19**: 943 1929
- 7 FISHERMAN W H LEENER, S AND HOMBURGER, F Studies on prostatic cancer employing methods for estimating serum acid phosphatase of prostatic origin *Proc. Am A Cancer Res* **1**: 17 1953
- 8 GOLDEN H T Intramuscular trypsin Its effect in 84 patients with acute inflammatory disorders *Delaware M J* **26**: 267 1954.
- 9 HARDY J D The importance of enzymes in surgery *Mechanisms of survival Surgery* **31**: 765 1952
- 10 HOSOWITZ, N H Progress in developing chemical concepts of genetic phenomena *Fed Proc.*, **15**: 818 1956
- 11 HOWES E. L. Use of enzymes in surgery *S Clin North America* **36**: 497 1956
- 12 HUGGINS C., STEVENSON R E., AND HODGES C V Studies on prostatic cancer II The effects of castration on advanced carcinoma of the prostate gland *Arch Surg.*, **43**: 200 1941
- 13 INVERFIELD I., ANONIST A AND SCHWARTZ, A Parenteral administration of trypsin Clinical effect in 538 patients *J A M A.*, **152**: 597 1953
- 14 LINBER C R REIMER, H G ROETTIG L C AND CURTIS G M Enzymatic lyses of respiratory secretions by aerosol trypsin *J A M A* **149**: 816 1952
- 15 MILLER, J M GROSSBERG, M LIPIN R J., AND LOVO P H Streptokinase and streptodornase in the treatment of pilonidal cysts *U S Armed Forces M J* **2**: 1423 1951
- 16 MILLER, M., DRUCKER W R., OWENS, J E., CRAIG, J W., AND WOODWARD H., JR Comparison of metabolic effects of fructose and glucose administered intravenously to normal and diabetic subjects *J Lab & Clin. Med.*, **38**: 931 1951
- 17 NORTROP J H., KUNITZ, M AND HERRIOTT R. M *Crystalline Enzymes* Ed 2 New York Columbia University Press, 1948 p 23
- 18 RATLIFF R K Hyaluronidase in the treatment of paraphimosis *J A M A.*, **155**: 746 1954
- 19 SHANDS W C AND JOHNSTON J H Anaphylactic shock from intrapleural streptokinase-streptodornase *J Thoracic Surg.*, **31**: 320 1956
- 20 ST JAMES A CONNELL, J F JR., AND ROUSSELOT L M Use of streptokinase-streptodornase (Vardase) to lyse clotted blood obstructing biliary drainage *A M A Arch Surg* **64**: 741 1952
- 21 STRAUZER, M A Hyaluronidase as an aid in surgical dissection *Surgery* **34**: 28 1953
- 22 TAGINOV H J Enzymes in clinical medicine *New England J Med.*, **249**: 650 1963
- 23 TAYLOR, A., OVERMAN R. S AND WRIGHT I B Studies with crystalline trypsin. Results and hazards of intravenous administration and its postulated role in blood coagulation *J A M A.*, **155**: 347 1954
- 24 TILLET W S Studies on the enzymatic lyses of fibrin and inflammatory exudates by products of hemolytic streptococci *Harvey Lectures*, **45**: 149 1949-1950
- 25 TILLET W S AND GARNER, R L The fibrinolytic activity of hemolytic streptococci. *J Exper Med.*, **58**: 485 1933
- 26 WILSON A CALBERT R J AND GREGGIEGAN H. Plasma cholinesterase activity in liver disease Its value as diagnostic test of liver function compared with flocculation tests and plasma protein determinations. *J Clin. Invest.*, **31**: 815 1952

Chapter 10

The Biology of Aging—A Few Notes

What is Aging?

Aging is a process—or many processes—that are in a general way correlated with the passage of time.⁴ Viewed from one standpoint, it is the phenomenon of “wearing out” that we so naturally expect of most animate and inanimate objects. Yet, inanimate objects have, by and large, a life span of usefulness that is shorter than that of the more complex “living” organic systems, plant or animal. Thus, one might expect that living organic systems must possess some distinctive property which permits replacement of damaged or otherwise unserviceable component parts. This “essential property of the living system is its ability to maintain itself, to repair and reconstitute itself. This capacity for self-synthesis sets off the living from the nonliving. If then the living organism can and does reconstitute itself continuously, how can it wear out? It is necessary to postulate that the wearing out or aging process involves a decrease in efficiency of the mechanisms for reconstitution.”³

The process of aging begins at birth in some organs (e.g., aorta) and at varying ages in other organs, moreover, the aging in a given organ progresses more rapidly in some persons than in others. Above all, while the manifestations of the aging process that occur in an average large group at a given age can be fairly well predicted (Fig 72), the changes in the individual persons exhibit wide variations. And therein lies much of

the challenge and the promise of intensive study of the aging process—for reasons will surely be found to explain the widely different rates of aging in different individuals.

Aging appears when growth stops and must invariably terminate in the death of the organism whether it be the bacterium, the mouse, the elephant (about 70 years), man, the giant redwood tree (3000 years) or the swamp cypress (4000 years). Even the single-cell bacterium can repair selected portions of its cytoplasm, as can the other animals and plants just listed replace or repair some parts. Yet, inevitably the vigor of the replacement or reconstitution process declines and organic dissolution ensues to complete the nitrogen cycle.

There is fragmentary evidence to support the proposition that the proximate explanation of the aging process must ultimately be found in the aging of intracellular enzyme systems. That is, enzyme molecules may also have a limited life span. If so, must we not inquire beyond the molecule to the atomic structure of the molecule? In this connection, it is of interest to refer to the genetic aspects of carcinogenesis, particularly as regards the genetic determination of enzyme progeny (p 193).

The Scope of the Problem

The various facets of the problem of aging are likely to be more clearly discernible the closer one approaches them personally. Nonetheless, the physician is privileged to

see much of the extent of the problem from the time he begins his clinical training, and he gradually becomes aware that much of his practice will be concerned with the older age group of the population, with their infirmities which increase in number apace with the years.

Relatively few physicians are acquainted with the large amount of related work that has been published by sociologists, psychologists, social service workers, and even political leaders.¹ Though research into aging is still in its early stages, by careful utilization of information already available a longer productive and therefore happier life can be salvaged for many of the persons who have acquired the know how and wisdom of a lifetime. It has been emphasized that the "psychology of aging" is not to be misconstrued as the "psychology of the elderly" it is the relative pace or unrelieved intensity of a job that seems first to toll upon an aging man not the processes of the work itself, so long as the pace is adjusted to the reduced physiologic capacities.

The entire policy of automatic idleness at age 65 may require critical reappraisal if the total productive capacity of a nation is to be realized. The job must fit the man and *vice versa*. Admittedly, more care is required in the selection of both at advanced ages. Yet so many individuals are now living to retirement age that the able of these must assist younger persons in the productive support of the total population.

Some Methods of Study

A wide spectrum of investigative endeavor has been focused upon various aspects of the problem of aging. Comparative *chemical analyses* have been done. Innumerable *pathologic studies* have been published with respect to both gross and microscopic findings. The characteristics of single-cell organisms, simple and complex plants, lower vertebrates, and different mammals have been compared. Genetic determination of life span has long interested investigators while there is some truth in the adage that to live

PATHOPHYSIOLOGIC CHANGES WITH AGING

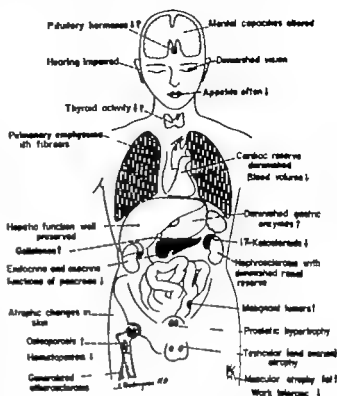


Fig 72 Most of the changes noted are often accepted as inevitable. Yet the fact that any given individual may escape almost any particular one of these changes suggests that the physiologic alterations of senescence are not necessarily inevitable. Therefore causes should be sought and methods of prevention developed.

long one must choose long lived parents, this is by no means the only or even the dominant factor. The effect of diet has been studied, as has the effect of climate. *Parabiosis* and the *lyophilization of tissues* with subsequent reimplantation have been employed. *Cellular permeability* has been shown to decrease with age, possibly because of the deposition of calcium in this connection many aging tissues exhibit increased amounts of calcium. *Isotopes* have been used variously to demonstrate a decrease in physiologic activity with aging. The *functional reserve* of the different organs and capacities is reassessed again with the advent of each new technique.

The Aging Process in Different Organs

A moment's reflection will remind one that certain organs or systems are far more dramatically affected by aging than are others.

Chapter 11

The Liver, Gallbladder and Biliary Tract

The Liver

The liver is an exceedingly complex physiologic unit and is essential for life. The seat of a surprisingly large volume of metabolic activity, its functional reserve with respect to most of its multiple rôles is so great that hepatic disease may be far advanced before clinical signs and symptoms lead the patient to seek medical advice. It has repeatedly been shown that not only can a relatively large portion of the organ be excised without serious impairment of functional capacity but also that regeneration of the excised portions is rapid. While it has proved tedious to work out many of the problems associated with liver function, the tremendous amount of research that has been devoted to identifying the various facets of hepatic activity has established a firm body of information in this field.

Perhaps the most striking feature of "liver function" is the great variety of functions which the organ performs, rendering it impossible to measure even the several most important of these functions with a single test. Thus, an ever growing "battery" of tests is employed in evaluating the status of liver function.

Functional Anatomy of the Liver

The gross functions of the liver are shown in Figure 73 and the schematic presentation of a liver lobule is shown in Figure 74. Note that the hepatic artery and the portal vein both approach the lobule at its periphery, from whence also flows the bile, these three structures—hepatic artery, portal vein, and

bile duct—are referred to as the portal triad. In contrast, the central vein collects the blood and carries it to the hepatic vein. As will be seen later, portal venous hypertension may occur from obstruction to blood flow through the hepatic vein (suprahepatic) or from obstruction within the liver (intrahepatic, usually from cirrhosis), or from infrahepatic causes such as portal vein thrombosis (Fig. 75).

Each lobule, then, contains elements of the three primary systems of the liver: the vascular system, the parenchyma, and the bile collecting system. Vascular disorders associated with hepatic blood flow have to do chiefly with the blockage of total venous flow, and will be considered further in connection with cirrhosis. Parenchymatous disorders, resulting from involvement of the liver cells themselves, may result from anoxia, viral infection, nutritional deficiencies, and other causes. Bile duct system disorders frequently require surgical intervention, in fact, they constitute the largest of the three groups, as far as surgical management is concerned.

Liver Functions

Various of the physiologic activities of this organ have been touched upon in previous pages, but certain of the more prominent ones may be listed.

1. METABOLISM OF FOODSTUFFS

a. Carbohydrate Through the formation of glycogen the liver provides a readily mobilizable fuel. Hypoglycemia is a major feature of hepatic insufficiency.

LIVER FUNCTIONS

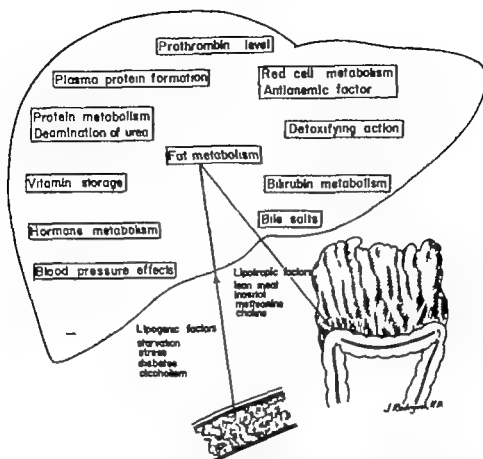


Fig 73 The liver is the center of a major segment of the metabolic activity of the body. It has a tremendous functional reserve and a striking capacity to regenerate. Yet, when hepatic function is reduced below a critical level, death ensues at times due to hypoglycemia.

b Protein The liver forms urea by deaminising amino acids. Following hepatectomy the blood urea nitrogen (BUN) falls and the amino acid concentration rises.

c. Fats The rôle of the liver in fat metabolism is less clear cut. However, fat mobilised from the depots in adipose tissue passes to the liver, where the neutral fat is processed for use. *Lipogenic factors* (e.g., starvation, diabetes) increase the movement from fat depots to the liver. *Lipotropic factors* (e.g., choline, methionine, protein) promote transport of fat from the liver to depots (Fig 73).

2 STORAGE The liver stores certain materials such as glycogen and vitamin A.

3 SYNTHESIS The liver is the principal or only source of certain important substances, as for example plasma proteins (albumin, globulin, fibrinogen) and prothrombin. The

latter is essential for normal blood coagulation.

4. DETOXYFIFYING ACTIVITIES The liver acts upon a variety of compounds to assist the body in minimising toxic effects. This activity consists in three types of chemical activity. First, the liver may actually metabolize (oxidize) or destroy certain drugs such as strychnine and sodium pentobarbital. Second, the liver may combine the toxic or "active" (in the case of free hydrocortisone) substance with a second substance, the resulting conjugate being no longer active metabolically. Third, the conjugation process may not render the "toxic" compound less toxic to the body, but it may render it more rapidly excreted in the urine, perhaps by increasing its water solubility. The liver is particularly important in the metabolism of various hormones.

5 BILE FORMATION (Fig 76) Following

HEPATIC BLOOD FLOW

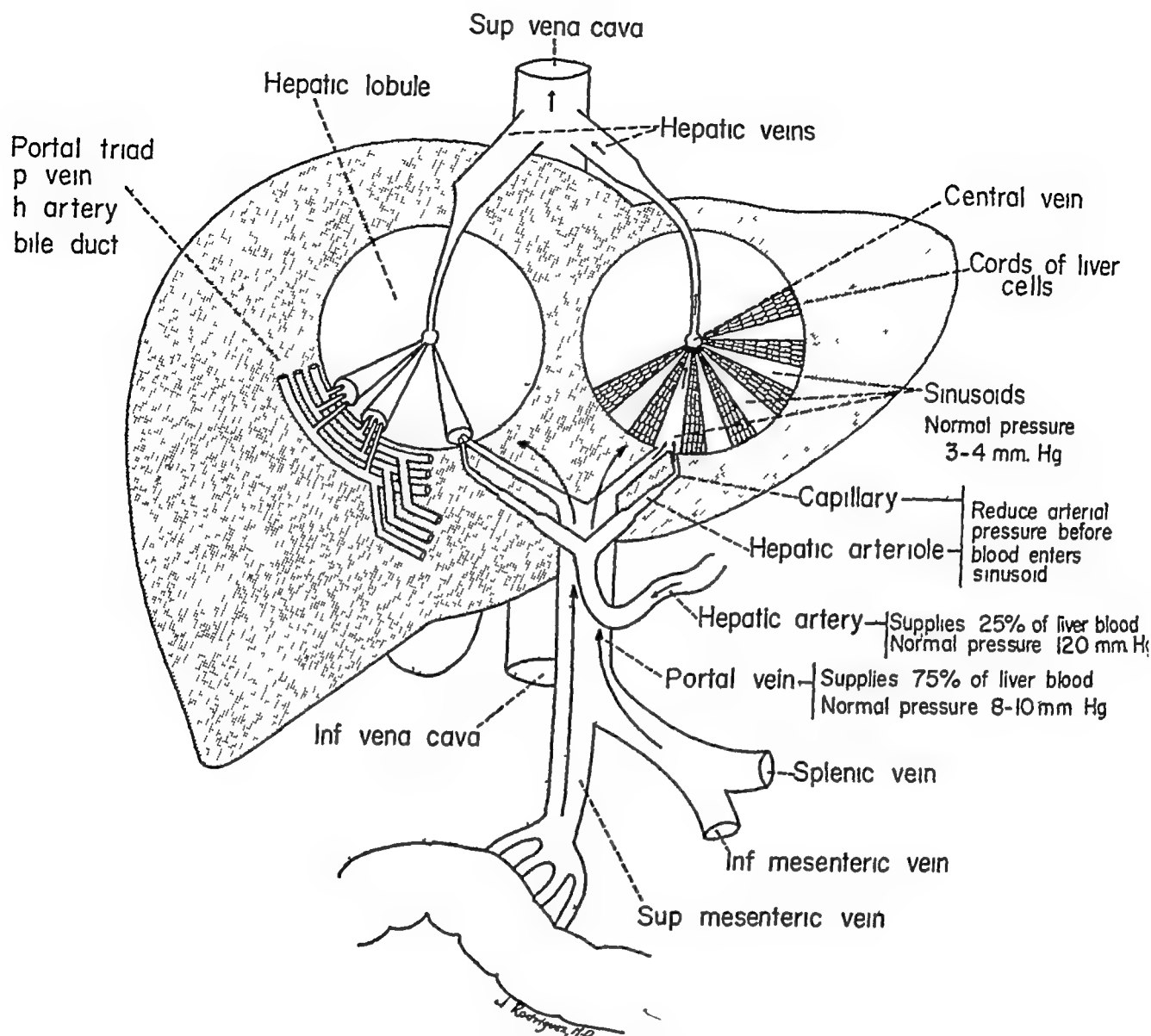


Fig 74 The contributions of the several tributaries to the hepatic blood flow are indicated. Hepatic circulation and, consequently, hepatic function are influenced by many diseases.

hepatectomy the animal becomes jaundiced within a matter of hours. Whereas bilirubin can be formed outside the liver, only this organ is normally concerned with its excretion. Bile is alkaline in reaction and may range in daily volume from 500 cc to 1500 cc (average about 800 cc), as may be ascertained by T-tube drainage when the distal common duct is occluded. The more important constituents of bile are *bile pigments* (derived from bilirubin), *bile salts* (important in fat digestion), and *cholesterol*. The bile pigments are derived from the breakdown of red cells elsewhere in the body and brought to the liver for excretion. The

bile acids and their bile salts are not excreted from the body but are passed with the bile into the intestinal tract, from which they are reabsorbed into the blood stream and returned to the liver. The bile salts are considered to be important in maintaining cholesterol in solution, cholesterol being precipitated when the normal ratio of bile salts to cholesterol in bile is reduced. Bile salts enhance the activity of pancreatic digestive enzymes, promote the absorption of fat products and vitamin K, and act as a secretagogue to increase bile formation. When bile salts fail to enter the bowel, a significant part of ingested fat is not ab-

PORTAL HYPERTENSION

CAUSES AND OPERATIONS

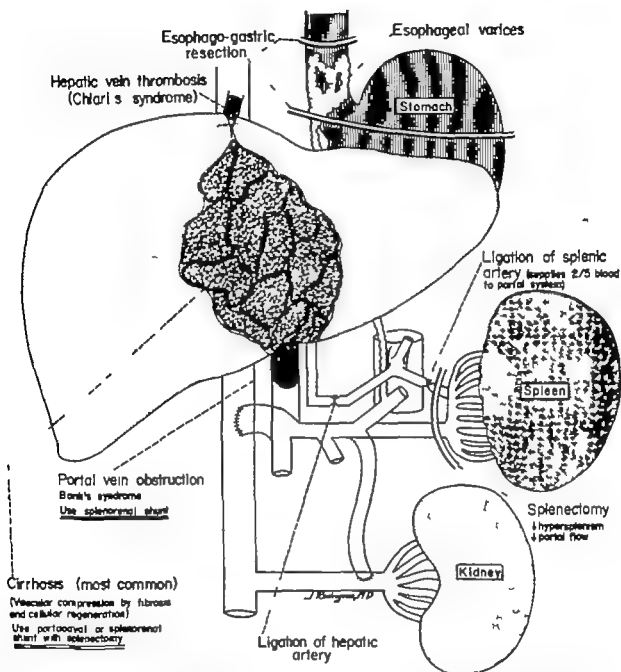


Fig 76 The variety of operations proposed for the management of bleeding esophageal varices in portal hypertension attests the unpredictability of a given operation in a given patient.

sorbed and is lost in the feces. So far as is known bile salts are produced, concentrated, and destroyed only in the liver. Cholesterol is normally present in blood and bile. Its endogenous source has not been definitely defined nor has its rôle in general metabolism. It is believed by many that the cholesterol ring is a precursor of ster-

oids, but Lapmann¹⁸ has pointed out that in synthesizing even complicated compounds the body usually prefers to employ relatively simple structural units.

The functions of the bile, with its bile salts, are described elsewhere in this volume. ✓6 MISCELLANEOUS OTHER ACTIVITIES Hepatic function is important also for the

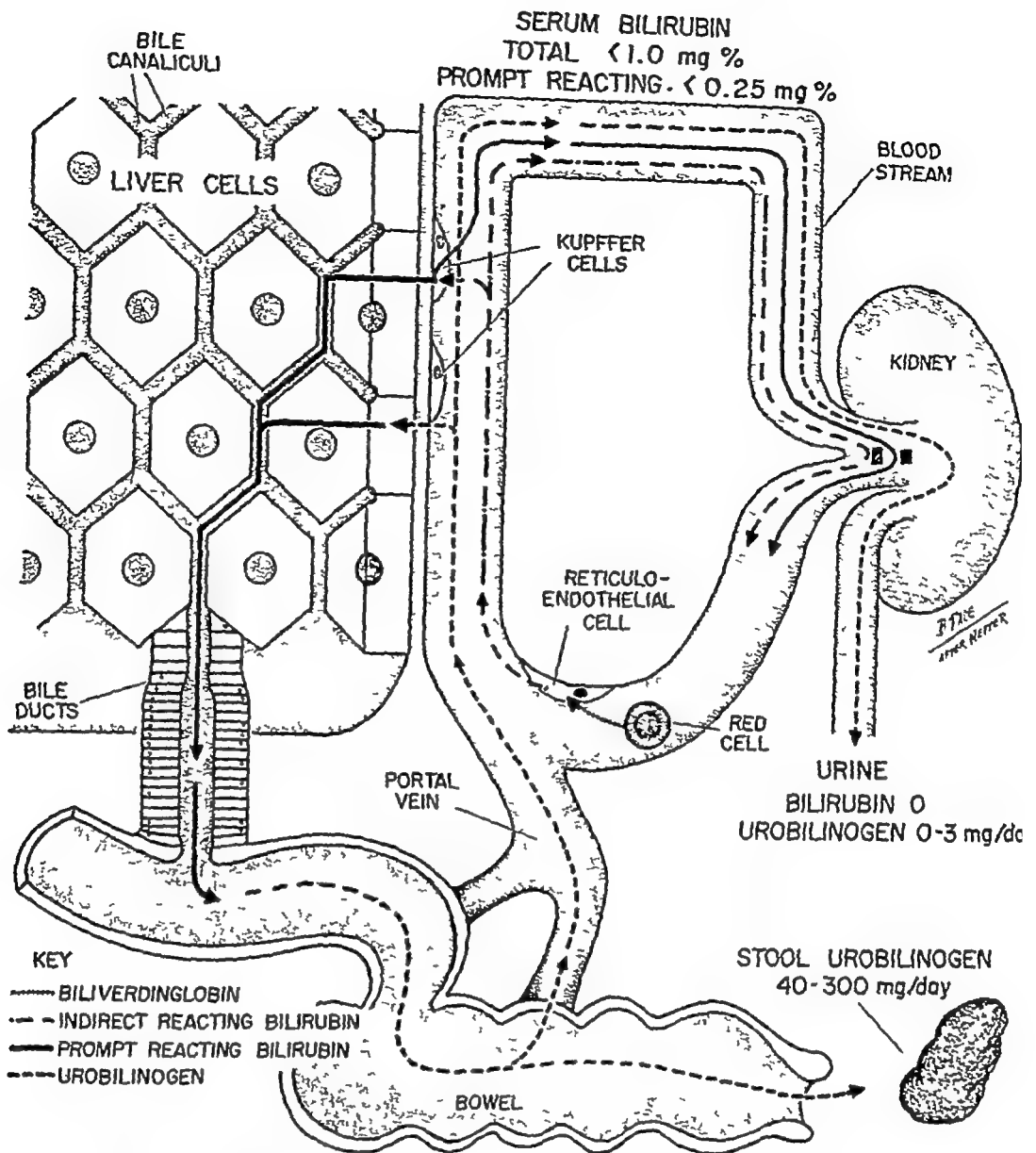


Fig 76 Normal circulation of bile pigment Urobilinogen is present, and the stool pigmented (Modified from NETTER, F H *The Ciba Collection of Medical Illustrations* Part III, Vol 3, Summit, N J Ciba Pharmaceutical Products, Inc, 1957)

maintenance of a normal blood pressure, antibody function, red cell metabolism, and numerous other metabolic purposes (Fig 73).

✓ Liver Function Tests

The following measurements reflect the efficiency of several different liver activities

HISTORY AND PHYSICAL EXAMINATION Of course, the clinical evaluation of the patient does not constitute a "function test" in the narrow sense of the term, but in practice it is frequently the most useful test available, especially where tests are being relied upon to distinguish "medical" from "surgical" jaundice

SERUM PROTEIN LEVEL AND ALBUMIN (A/G) RATIO Since the liver synthesizes these proteins, the total serum protein is frequently depressed in liver disease. The A/G ratio is reversed. This reversal is due to the fact that whereas the albumin declines, the globulin concentration is preserved or even elevated. The serum albumin concentration is approximately 4 to 5 gm per 100 cc and globulin 2.5 to 3.5 gm, with a total protein level of from 7 to 8.5 gm.

SERUM BILIRUBIN LEVEL Total serum bilirubin is determined by treating the serum with diazo reagent in the presence of sufficient alcohol to catalyze the reaction

not precipitating protein. Direct bilirubin is determined by the same method but alcohol is omitted. Readings are made exactly 1 minute after addition of the reagents, direct bilirubin so measured being termed the "one minute" direct reading.

Normal values for total bilirubin are 0.1 to 1.3 mg. per 100 cc. of serum. The direct bilirubin level should usually be less than 0.25 mg. per 100 cc., and the direct bilirubin level is a somewhat more sensitive indicator of liver disease than is the total bilirubin level. An elevated total bilirubin level may of course reflect increased red cell destruction, as well as disease of the hepatobiliary tract.

When the serum bilirubin level exceeds 2.0 mg. per 100 cc., the jaundice of the sclerae may usually be detected when the patient is viewed in natural light. The lesser grades of jaundice are notoriously difficult to discern in artificial light.

3. The conjugation of bilirubin to a glucuronide by liver cells is being found to represent an important aspect of the metabolism of this pigment. Bilirubin appears to be transported (on albumin?) to the liver, where it is rendered more water soluble by the conjugation process. Thus, in obstructive jaundice the chief pigment in the plasma is a water soluble bilirubin conjugate which gives the "direct" van den Bergh reaction. These relationships have recently been re-examined (Billing, B. H., and Lathe, G. H. Bilirubin metabolism in jaundice. *Am J Med*, 24: 111, 1958).

4. SERUM CHOLESTEROL CONTENT. Obstruction of the common duct may be associated with a high total cholesterol, but with a normal ratio of esterified to total cholesterol. Hepatitis may be associated with a normal or low total cholesterol, with a decreased ratio of esterified to total cholesterol. However the ratio may fall considerably in obstructive jaundice also.

5. BRONCEULPHALEIN TEST. For this test 5 mg. per kg. of body weight of this substance is injected intravenously, and blood is collected at 30 or 45 minutes from the opposite

arm. The serum is treated with alkali, which brings out the color of the dye, and the color density is measured in a comparator or photocolormeter. More than 10 per cent retention at 30 minutes or more than 5 per cent at 45 minutes is considered abnormal. This is among the more sensitive and reliable tests of liver function, and it is particularly helpful in the absence of hyperbilirubinemia.

6. UROBILINOGEN IN URINE. In the biliary tract bilirubin is oxidized to biliverdin and, in the bowel, bilirubin is reduced to urobilinogen. Normally the pigment is partially reabsorbed from the bowel and again excreted in the bile only a small amount appearing in the urine, however, in hemolytic jaundice the large amounts of urobilinogen formed in the bowel from the flow of excessive bile pigment may so increase the amount of urobilinogen reabsorbed into the blood that the liver cannot re-excrete rapidly enough to prevent an increased excretion in the urine. In contrast, if jaundice is associated with an absence of urobilinogen in the urine, obstruction of the biliary tract must be considered likely—since bilirubin cannot reach the bowel to yield urobilinogen (Figs 77 to 79).

7. SERUM PROTHROMBIN LEVEL. Since the liver synthesizes prothrombin from vitamin K, the prothrombin level is often diminished in liver disease, as reflected in a reduced coagulability of the blood. The prothrombin values are expressed on the basis of the time required for clotting or on the basis of the percentage of the normal (control) prothrombin level. The standard must be checked and maintained by each hospital.

If the prothrombin level is found to be low but responds promptly to the administration of vitamin K, liver functional reserve is probably fairly good; if response to this therapy is slight or absent, serious liver disease must be suspected. Accordingly, a low prothrombin level associated with purely extrahepatic biliary obstruction frequently rises promptly after a few days of vitamin K therapy, for common duct obstruction

does not produce severe liver damage until after weeks or months have elapsed. In contrast, severe liver damage associated with viral hepatitis or cirrhosis may preclude adequate response of the prothrombin level to treatment. Massive carcinomatosis of the liver may also be associated with a refractory low prothrombin level (and increased biomsulphalein retention), at times with essentially normal flocculation studies.

FLOCCULATION TESTS (CEPHALIN AND THYMOL) These tests are empiric and are used to distinguish jaundice due to liver cell damage, as in hepatitis, from jaundice due to obstruction (of the larger bile ducts), which does not immediately cause cellular damage. The tests depend upon an increase in globulin (and, in particular, gamma globulin) and a fall in serum albumin. If these tests are strongly positive soon after jaundice appears, hepatitis is suggested, if the tests are negative initially but thereafter gradually become positive after several weeks of jaundice, mechanical biliary obstruction, perhaps by common duct stone or carcinoma of the pancreas, is suggested—for gradually the back pressure dilates the bile ducts and may eventually produce extensive pressure necrosis or atrophy of the parenchyma. Even so, the tests are usually far more positive in hepatitis than in obstructive jaundice of even long duration.

Unfortunately, all too often the flocculation (and turbidity) tests are neither strongly positive nor definitely negative and, while the intermediate degrees may suggest some liver damage, they may not materially assist in differentiating medical jaundice from surgical jaundice.

SERUM ALKALINE PHOSPHATASE LEVEL. The normal serum alkaline phosphatase level is from 1 to 4 Bodansky units in adults and from 5 to 14 units in children. This is often the single most helpful laboratory test, (history and physical examination are superior to any tests) in differentiating hepatitis from obstructive jaundice. If the serum phosphatase level is elevated, we consider obstructive jaundice more likely than

hepatitis, or, to state this differently, we have misgivings about operating upon a jaundiced patient if the alkaline phosphatase level is normal, lest the patient prove to have hepatitis and do poorly postoperatively. Still, this test is not infallible.

The serum alkaline phosphatase level may also be elevated in conditions other than liver disease (e.g., hyperparathyroidism).

SERUM MUCOPROTEIN LEVEL This test was proposed by Greenspan and Dreiling¹² as a measure for differentiating hepatogenic from obstructive jaundice. The term *serum mucoprotein* designates a carbohydrate-rich protein fraction which comprises approximately 1 per cent of the total serum proteins in the normal state. The average serum mucoprotein concentration is from 48 to 75 mg per 100 cc in normal men and from 40 to 70 mg per 100 cc in women. A reduction in the serum mucoprotein level was observed in approximately 80 per cent of 180 patients with infectious hepatitis, homologous serum hepatitis, or portal cirrhosis, but in only 2 per cent of 125 patients with various forms of obstructive biliary tract disease. Approximately 90 per cent of 100 patients with metastatic hepatomegaly had an increased mucoprotein level.

The mucoprotein level was not interpreted as a specific or reliable index of liver function, but the diagnostic value of a single determination compared favorably with that of the A/G ratio, cephalin flocculation, thymol turbidity, alkaline phosphatase, and prothrombin time.

Comment on liver function studies As one might conclude from the number of tests used to measure hepatic function, no one test measures all functions. In fact, all available tests often are inadequate to permit an accurate diagnosis preoperatively. Again, the liver damage must often be marked before functional impairment is demonstrable, so great is the physiologic reserve of this organ. Yet, this is not to imply that liver function studies are not helpful, for they are.

Acute Liver Failure ("Hepatic Insufficiency")

Complete failure of hepatic function is seen in the experimental animal following complete extirpation of the liver, and it is occasionally met clinically as acute hepatic failure or hepatic decompensation following prolonged disease. When the liver is removed in animals there is a progressive fall in the blood sugar level and the hypoglycemia may reach 40 mg. per 100 cc or less. In the dog there is muscular weakness, followed by convulsions, coma and death. Jaundice occurs if the animal lives for 6 hours or more. The administration of glucose intravenously may render a dog alert where a few minutes previously he was in coma.²⁸ Immediately following the injection the blood sugar reaches a high level but it then decreases rapidly and the symptoms of hypoglycemia reappear. Thus, the liver is the central organ for maintaining a normal level of blood sugar. There is seen a progressive fall in the blood urea because of the fact that the liver is the chief site of deamination of amino acids, and it is apparently the only organ in which urea is formed. As the hours pass following experimental hepatectomy, the coagulability of the blood is depressed, owing mainly to a marked decrease in the concentration of plasma prothrombin and perhaps also to a decrease in plasma fibrinogen. Finally—even if the blood sugar is kept normal by the continuous infusion of glucose—restlessness, dyspnea and vomiting occur the animal becomes ataxic and anuria is followed by death often quite suddenly.

In patients the initial symptoms of acute hepatic failure are somewhat indefinite. The individual feels ill and complains of anorexia and nausea. A drowsy state and apathy are associated with extreme weakness. Vomiting may be persistent and jaundice becomes severe. The serum bilirubin level may rise to from 20 to 30 mg. per 100 cc. The blood prothrombin level falls markedly and bleeding may occur into the skin and mucous

surfaces. The blood urea level is at times low (less than 8 mg. per 100 cc). The pulse rate, temperature and respiration are unaffected until late in the disease, when the pulse accelerates and the temperature rises. Late in the disease the blood pressure frequently falls and, though the patient may often appear to be quite alert, a persistently lowered blood pressure with a systolic level in the neighborhood of 70 mm Hg is often a sign of irreversible liver failure. Anuria commonly occurs and in some cases the so called hepatorenal syndrome is frankly present, there is a diminished volume of urine, a retention of nitrogenous substances in the blood, and finally even complete anuria. In our limited experience, the treatment of renal failure associated with hepatic insufficiency by means of the artificial kidney has achieved little.

Obviously liver failure presents biochemical and clinical phenomena of great diversity, for not only are the functions of the liver deranged but those of other organs are also profoundly affected by the hepatic disease. Accordingly, the usual manifestations of severe liver disease—such as ascites, hemorrhage and jaundice—may be accompanied by violent symptoms of extrahepatic origin, among these are convulsions and delirium often terminating in coma. Pulmonary congestion or circulatory collapse may reflect cardiac or peripheral vascular failure and the body temperature may reach 106 F.

THE PRECIPITATION OF HEPATIC COMA. Acute hepatic decompensation will be considered again in connection with the management of cirrhosis, but it may be remarked here that the ingestion of large amounts of animal protein (meat intoxication) may precipitate hepatic coma in cirrhotic or other individuals who have borderline hepatic compensation (Table 12). It has been found that the cerebral manifestations are due to a defect in the brain metabolism of the increased amounts of ammonium ion entering the circulation.

TABLE 12 SOME FACTS ABOUT AMMONIA
INTOXICATION IN MAN

-
- I Ammonia is normally present in the following concentrations (per 100 cc) (a) Peripheral vein, 50 gamma, (b) Portal vein blood, 250 gamma, (c) Hepatic vein blood, 80 gamma, (d) Renal vein blood, 100 gamma. The liver removes ammonia from the blood, and the kidney contributes ammonia to the blood. The major sources of ammonia are deamination in protein metabolism, formation from glutamine in the kidney, and absorption into the portal system of ammonia formed by gastrointestinal urease activity. The synthesis of urea in the liver is the final pathway for excretion of ammonia, and thus the liver protects against the high ammonia levels found in the portal vein.
- II Disordered consciousness and coma, accompanied by electroencephalogram (EEG) changes, result from excessively elevated peripheral blood ammonia levels.
- III Hepatic insufficiency predisposes to ammonia intoxication because the protective urea formation is impaired. Meat ingestion, gastrointestinal bleeding, or ammonium chloride administration may produce severe neurologic manifestations and even coma. Oral antibiotics may reduce the intestinal flora and diminish the ammonia formation in the intestine, a matter of importance in patients with borderline hepatic function. This is especially pertinent following portacaval shunt where not only may liver reserve be impaired but also the "filtering" effect of the liver lost as the portal blood enters the vena cava and passes to the brain. (From McDermott, W V Jr, Adams, R D, Riddle, A G. Ammonia metabolism in man. *Ann Surg*, 140: 539, 1954)
-

Some Pathologic Changes in Hepatic Disease: Further Discussion

PARENCHYMATOUS DISORDERS HEPATITIS AND CIRRHOSIS Injury to the liver parenchyma is usually caused by infectious agents, anoxia, toxic chemicals, metabolic disorders, and nutritional deficiencies. Furthermore, more than one etiologic agent may be active in the same disease process. For example, a liver depleted of protein but increased in fat, due to an inadequate die-

tary intake, may be particularly susceptible to damage by toxic or other agents.

It is not easy to distinguish which agent caused the cellular changes observed at microscopic examination of the diseased liver and, incidentally, there may be a marked disparity between what is found at liver punch biopsy during life and what is found at postmortem examination. There is always the possibility, moreover, that microscopic changes ascribed to various aspects of liver disease may represent only artifacts.

Ingelfinger¹⁵ noted that one of the most important factors that determines the amount of damage sustained by the liver in any particular assault is the degree of acuteness of the disorder rather than the nature of the disorder. When there has been injury to the hepatic parenchyma one finds cellular damage, edema, leukocytic infiltration, and hemorrhagic phenomena of variable intensity. If an attack is particularly severe, the liver cells cannot survive and they undergo complete destruction. In fact, in the more fulminant forms of viral hepatitis the stroma may be swept clear of parenchymal cells, which are replaced by hemorrhages in the center of each lobule and by densely packed inflammatory cells at the periphery. The liver may be relatively normal in gross size, but the consistency is flabby and the cut surface represents a "nutmeg" appearance. In a less acute process, parenchymatous destruction may be incomplete and the patient may not die immediately, in fact, he usually survives. If the patient does survive, however, excessive fibrotic changes may occur and present a hard, small and irregular or knotty liver.

There remains some question as to whether diffuse parenchymatous hepatitis progresses to a portal cirrhosis, but certain evidence indicates that it may do so. However, the average case of portal cirrhosis does not follow acute hepatitis or any other obvious hepatitis. Instead, the onset of the disease is insidious and progresses slowly. Very commonly there is a history of an in-

adequate dietary intake, often associated with, and perhaps the result of, chronic alcoholism. At an early stage there is fatty infiltration which produces a large liver of relatively normal shape and consistency. Later on there is some loss of hepatic cells, and fibrosis develops throughout the liver in massive strands. Attempts at repair are disorderly. Cellular infiltration, pigment deposits, and bile duct perforation are common. The essential feature of the whole process is complete derangement of the normal hepatic architecture. The neat lobules with their symmetrically placed central veins give way to interlacing bands of connective tissue containing irregular strands of parenchyma with a haphazard blood supply. Eventually the fatty infiltration and fibrosis combine to produce, if sufficiently prolonged, a large, hard and diffusely nodular liver. The liver may thereafter remain large, or it may shrink in size as the dense connective tissue contracts, resulting in a small, hard atrophic form of portal cirrhosis.

The relationship of the dietary intake to hepatic structural changes was discussed briefly in the section on nutrition. Under various conditions in which fat is mobilized and deposited in the liver the lipid content of the liver increases, hepatic function may be altered, and fibrotic changes may ensue. Again the degree of fat deposition in the liver can be diminished—or fat more rapidly mobilized from the liver—by the administration of dietary lipotropic agents such as choline, methionine, and inositol. A deficiency of such lipotropic factors in the diet of experimental animals results in a diffuse fibrosis which in some important respects resembles portal cirrhosis in man. This usually follows an initial fatty infiltration of the liver. For this reason it is reasonable to accept fatty infiltration as an important feature of dietary cirrhosis in both man and the laboratory animal, though the relationships among cellular damage, fatty infiltration, and fibrosis must await further study.

Biliary Ductal Disorders: Obstruction (Fig. 83)

PARENCHYMAL CHANGES IN BILIARY OBSTRUCTION. Obstruction to the biliary outflow, as might be caused by a common duct stone, stricture of the common bile duct, or carcinoma of the head of the pancreas is followed gradually by various degrees of atrophy of the liver. Furthermore, the changes which take place will depend upon whether or not ascending infection is present. Normally, the pressure in the common bile duct and biliary tree ranges from a low of approximately 10 cm. H₂O when the sphincter of Oddi is relaxed by cholecystkinin following a meal to approximately 20 cm. H₂O as the gallbladder fills with bile during fasting. In complete biliary obstruction this pressure rises to approximately 30 cm. H₂O, following which the secretory pressure of the liver cells is exceeded and bile output diminishes and finally ceases. However, if the normally distensible gallbladder is present to remove water and thus to concentrate the bile, the rise in pressure is less acute.

In common bile duct obstruction the parenchymal cells lining the bile capillaries are subjected to pressure from the distended bile channels. This pressure concomitantly diminishes cellular oxygenation and nutrition, due to the fact that the inflow from the portal vein is also somewhat diminished by the pressure exerted by the bile in the biliary tree. If obstruction is prolonged, the parenchymal cells undergo varying degrees of atrophy, this may be observed when the obstructed common duct is opened at operation, for the escape of a large volume of "white bile" may result in a visible reduction in liver size. This extensive replacement of parenchyma by diffuse ductal enlargement may be demonstrated at autopsy by filling the biliary tree with a radiopaque medium and making roentgenograms. Under these circumstances the liver will usually be enlarged and firm but not hard. Atrophy of

the liver parenchyma in the presence of long-standing complete or almost complete biliary obstruction is similar to the atrophy of the cerebrum which occurs in the presence of internal hydrocephalus

While parenchymal damage can result from simple pressure without infection, cholestasis is frequently associated with cholangitis, often manifested by chills and fever. In our experience, such infection is more frequently a result of incomplete obstruction caused by a common duct structure or stone rather than of complete obstruction due to tumor. The cholangitis affects not only the common bile duct, but it frequently extends into the finer biliary channels of the liver itself, producing intrahepatic suppuration. This may result in further bile blockage by inspissated material in the bile canaliculi, even after the common duct obstruction has been relieved. It has been pointed out that such inspissated bile may result in late jaundice following an attack of hepatitis, and may give the impression of a relapse when in fact it amounts to a purely mechanical or obstructive jaundice. Adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) and hydrocortisone have been used to clear these plugs.

Unless infection is overwhelming, chronic obstruction of the common bile duct results in biliary cirrhosis. The liver is likely to be large and firm, since parenchymal destruction is limited, and new bile ducts, cellular infiltration, and fibrosis contribute to the hepatic mass. In contradistinction to portal cirrhosis, the parenchymal cells are not primarily affected in biliary cirrhosis. Thus, the structure of the liver, though distorted, is not completely destroyed, and the intrahepatic circulation preserves some of its original configuration. Eventually, however, the sinusoidal circulation may be sufficiently impaired to expose the parenchymal cells to undernutrition and anoxia. Under these conditions the structural abnormalities of portal cirrhosis may gradually be superimposed upon those of biliary cirrhosis.

Differential Diagnosis of Jaundice (Figs. 77 to 79)

From the clinical standpoint, the most important consideration is that of differentiating obstructive jaundice, which may be successfully managed by surgical intervention, from nonobstructive or hepatocellular jaundice, in which surgery is contraindicated and at times may even be fatal. For this reason, the problem is frequently spoken of as that of differentiating "surgical" from "medical" jaundice. This is not to state that it is not also important, for prognostic purposes, to proceed further and to identify the precise cause of either medical or surgical jaundice. Nevertheless, in planning management, the decision as to whether or not laparotomy is indicated is often the crucial one.

THE HISTORY AND PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

There can be no question that the most important aid in distinguishing medical from surgical jaundice is the clinical evaluation of the total patient. The history is frequently more helpful than is the physical examination. Laboratory data are apt to be only "compatible with" or confirmatory of the diagnosis reached on the basis of clinical data.

Medical jaundice is most frequently the result of infectious hepatitis, homologous serum jaundice, hemolytic anemia, or cirrhosis. Nevertheless, certain drugs (e.g., chlorpromazine), and conditions such as hypoxia, leptospiral infection, schistosomiasis, or other conditions may account for the occasional case. In medical jaundice there is usually some bile in the stools, though this is not always true, particularly during a portion of the natural course of infectious hepatitis. Inquiry should be made regarding transfusions, needle punctures, or exposure to known cases of hepatitis. The stigmata of cirrhosis are also sought for (Fig. 80).

One frequently makes the diagnosis of medical jaundice chiefly by excluding possible causes of surgical jaundice. In other words, if one cannot find a definite indication for surgery, then the diagnosis becomes,

*Circulation of Bile Pigment
in Complete Extrahepatic Obstruction*

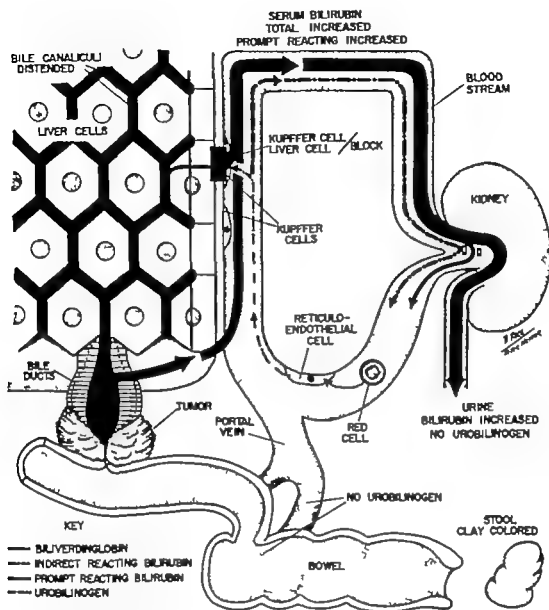


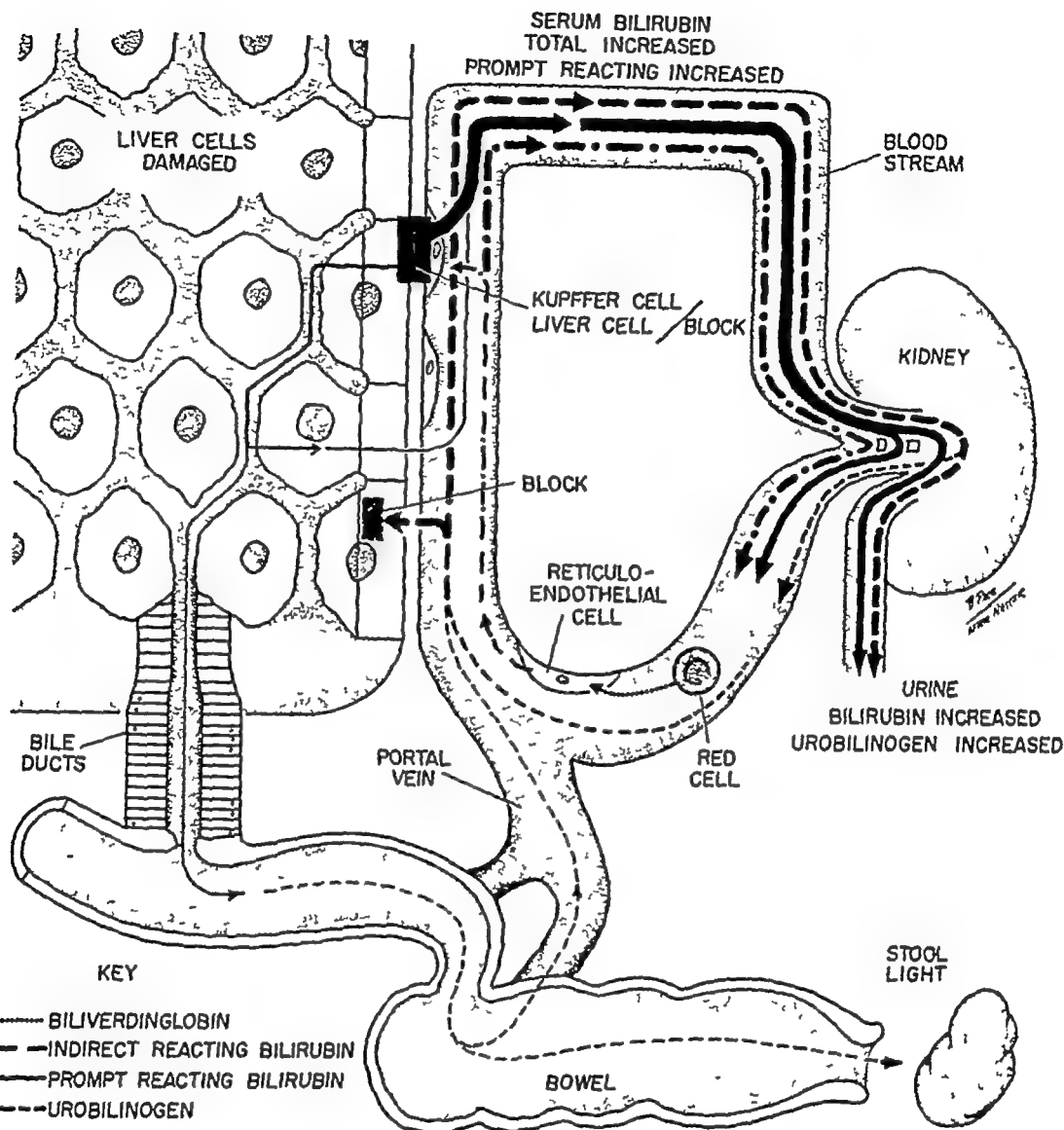
Fig 77 Urobilinogen is absent and the stool is acholic (Modified from NETTER, F H. *The Ciba Collection of Medical Illustrations* Part III Vol. 3 Summit, New Jersey: Ciba Pharmaceutical Products Inc 1957)

by exclusion medical jaundice at least for the moment.

By and large the cases of *surgical jaundice* will be due to a common duct stone to an intrinsic or extrinsic tumor involving the extrahepatic biliary tree, to postoperative or other structure of the common duct or, occasionally to fibrosis in the region of the sphincter of Oddi perhaps secondary to pancreatitis (Fig. 92) The common duct stone will frequently be accompanied by a history

of previous attacks of cholecystitis, though this is not always true and the silent common duct stone causing jaundice is well known. The probability of common duct stone is increased if the jaundice is intermittent if it is associated with chills and fever and if the gallbladder is not much enlarged. If there was a previous operation (usually cholecystectomy), the history of profuse bile drainage from the wound beginning shortly after operation, followed by

Circulation of Bile Pigment in Hepatocellular Degeneration



*Fig 78 Urobilinogen formation decreased but urine content often increased Stool pigmentation decreased (Modified from NETTER, F H, *The Ciba Collection of Medical Illustrations*, Part III, Vol 3, Summit, New Jersey Ciba Pharmaceutical Products, Inc, 1957)*

an increasing jaundice as bile flow diminished, constitutes evidence of common duct injury with resulting stricture. Of course, the color of the stools is dependent upon the amount of bile flowing into the bowel, if the external fistula is complete, neither will the patient be jaundiced nor will there be bile in the stool. It is only when the common duct becomes strictured by fibrosis and the defect in it closed that bile is no longer lost through the wound or stool, and the patient becomes jaundiced. (It was seen in Chapter 2 that

the continued loss of the entire bile flow through a biliary fistula may seriously deplete the patient of extracellular electrolytes unless precautions are taken.) Carcinoma of the head of the pancreas may be suggested by the insidious development of jaundice in an elderly subject, though some cases are associated with pain and some patients are relatively young. Since stones often have not been present to cause scarring with attendant inability of the diseased gallbladder to distend, this organ may exhibit marked, rela-

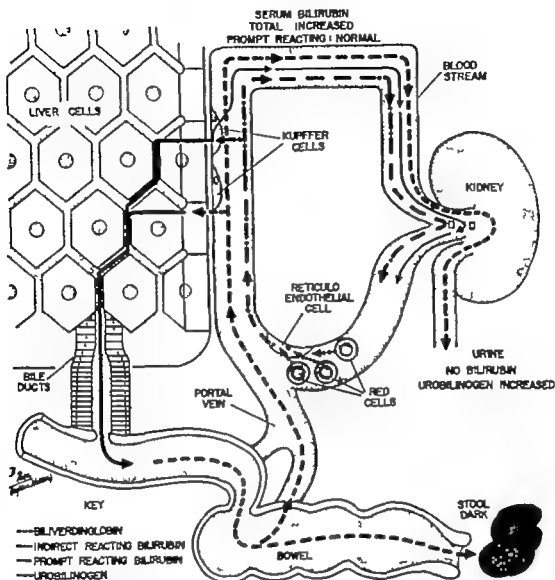
Circulation of Bile Pigment in Hemolytic Jaundice

Fig 78 In hemolytic jaundice there is no bile in the urine the stools contain abundant pigmentation and the alkaline phosphatase level is usually not elevated. (Modified from NERES, F. H., *The Ciba Collection of Medical Illustrations* Part III Vol. 3 Summit, New Jersey Ciba Pharmaceutical Products, Inc 1957)

ely painless enlargement (Courvoisier's sign)

LABORATORY DATA. After all possible information has been gleaned from clinically obtainable findings and a tentative impression of the probable diagnosis arrived at, laboratory data may be of much assistance—for whereas neither the clinical duration nor the laboratory reports may be conclusive separately together they may complement each other to provide an accurate profile of the changes produced by the

disease process and yield valid diagnostic conclusions.

✓ THE DIAGNOSTIC VALUE OF PROLONGED OBSERVATION OF THE JAUNDICED PATIENT IN DOUBTFUL CASES Jaundice rarely constitutes an emergency, and if the diagnosis is in doubt it is usually wise to complete a careful initial evaluation of the case, including liver function studies, and then to observe the patient over a period of days. A few days delay in operation upon the patient who has surgical jaundice entails little risk for it

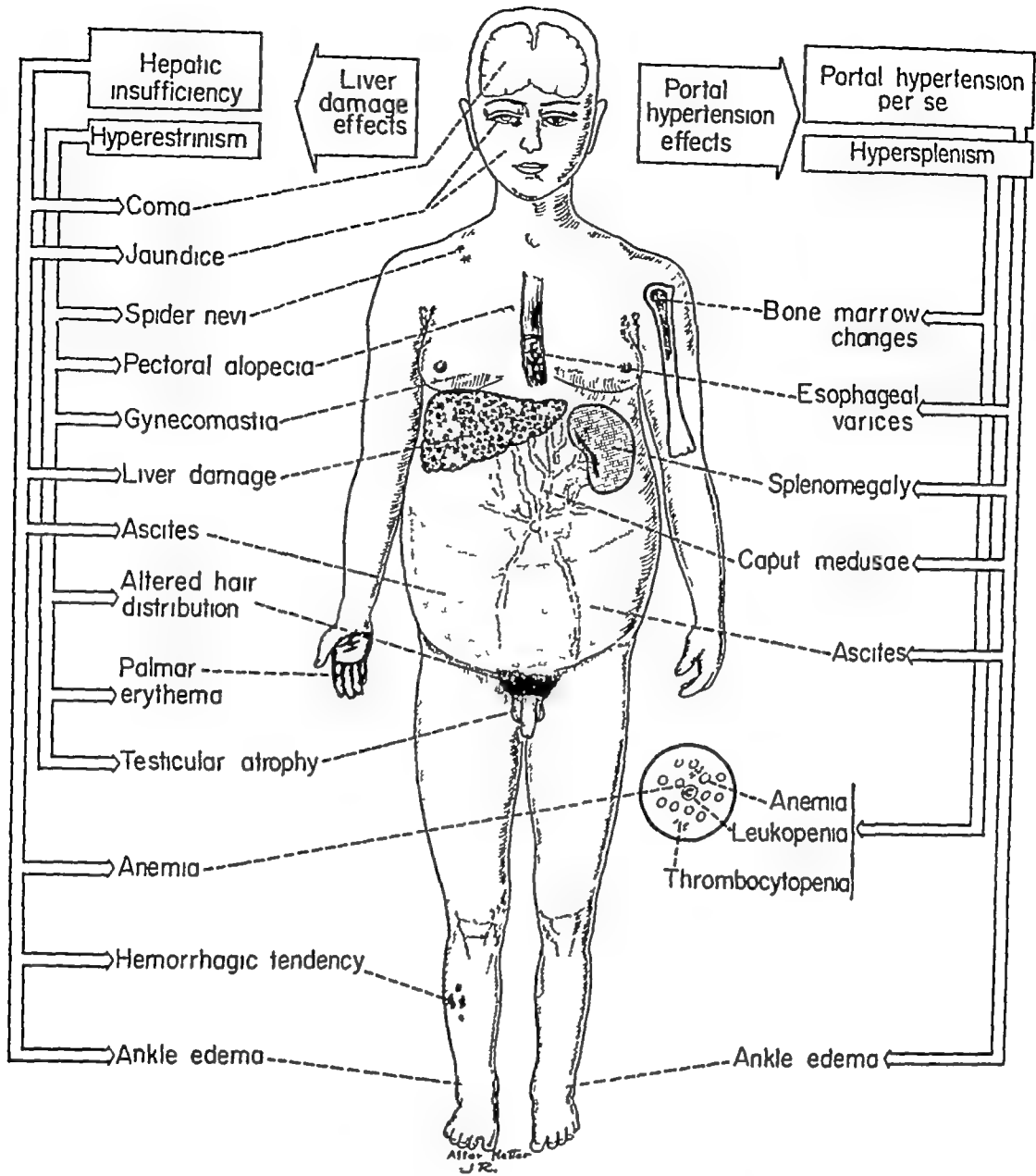


Fig 80 Pathophysiology of portal cirrhosis This informative diagram constructed by Netter clearly describes the manifold physiologic effects produced by hepatic cirrhosis (From Netter, F H, *The Ciba Collection of Medical Illustrations*, Part III, Vol 3, Summit, N J Ciba Pharmaceutical Products, Inc, 1957)

was noted previously that the liver parenchyma tolerates complete common duct obstruction for several weeks without significant impairment in liver function, in contrast, the insult of anesthesia-operation in the patient with severe hepatocellular injury may prove fatal

The stools should be inspected daily The total serum bilirubin level should be rechecked every 3 or 4 days and the other liver function tests repeated weekly. If some bile was initially present in the stools but then is consistently absent, the first impres-

sion in the elderly patient might be tumor (Fig 77) and the second, common duct stone—unless collateral evidence indicates otherwise. Again, whereas hepatitis may be associated with acholic stools, the stools are rarely completely acholic (grayish white) consistently (Fig 78). With common duct stone there may be intermittent escape of bile past the stone, with some degree of intermittent color in the stool, of course, in some patients with stone the biliary metabolism is normal between attacks, jaundice is absent, and the stools are normal in color

Intermittent appearance of bile in the stools is rare in patients whose obstruction is the result of malignancy

✓ *Punch biopsy of the liver* may be helpful in diagnosis and, considering the frequency with which the procedure is performed, complications are few

✓ *Diagnostic laparotomy* may be necessary to exclude surgical jaundice in the occasional patient in whom a satisfactorily definite diagnosis cannot be achieved by other means. However, with proper care and judicious delay for a week or so, such cases need not be too frequent. Moreover, by waiting a suitable period the more fulminating cases of hepatitis will be excluded, patients with other types of medical jaundice do not constitute such formidable operative risks. If no extrahepatic biliary obstruction is found at exploratory laparotomy, including operative cholangiography where indicated, an adequate liver biopsy should be taken.

Bile Peritonitis

Since even in acute cholecystitis no microorganisms may be cultured from the bile, the escape of bile into the free peritoneal cavity produces a primarily chemical rather than bacterial peritonitis, at least initially. The attendant ascites due to chemical inflammation may seriously deplete the extracellular space of water and electrolytes. Later infection may play an increasingly important rôle in this condition. The absorption of bile from the peritoneal cavity results in jaundice. Unless drainage is established to the outside, the resulting "toxemia" may prove fatal. Fortunately, in many instances the site of gallbladder perforation is promptly sealed off by omentum.

That instances of gallbladder rupture and bile peritonitis need not be fatal is well exemplified by patients who at operation exhibit multiple gallstones immobilized in widely scattered areas of the omentum by mature fibrous tissue in addition to clusters of stones lying in the immediate vicinity of the chronically diseased—but not currently perforated—organ (Fig. 84)

Portal Hypertension: Surgical Problem in a Medical Disease

Elevation of portal venous pressure may be due to suprahepatic causes (constrictive pericarditis, tricuspid valve incompetence, and thrombosis of the hepatic veins or Chiari's syndrome), intrahepatic causes (principally various forms of cirrhosis), and infrahepatic causes (portal vein thrombosis). Chiari's syndrome and the intrahepatic and infrahepatic causes are managed by intra-abdominal anastomoses between elements of the portal and caval venous systems

MECHANISM OF PORTAL HYPERTENSION *Normal hepatic blood flow* The blood flow through the normal human liver has been estimated by measurement to average approximately 1500 cc. per minute, with a range of 1000 to 2000 cc per minute. About 75 per cent of this blood reaches the liver through the portal vein and the other 25 per cent is supplied by the hepatic artery (Fig. 74). However, the arterial blood may carry as much as 50 per cent of the oxygen supply. Both clinical and experimental evidence indicates that the portal blood is not homogeneously mixed but that it is channeled in streams. Blood from the splenic, gastric and inferior mesenteric veins is carried principally to the left hepatic lobe whereas blood from the small bowel (containing absorption products) and the right colon flows through the superior mesenteric vein to be delivered preponderantly to the right hepatic lobe. This channeling of the blood may account for the fact that amebic abscess is more frequent in the right than in the left lobe of the liver, the cecum being a source of these parasites. The distribution of metastases from the splanchnic organs is somewhat affected by venous channeling but hepatic metastases are often so profuse that any slight difference pertaining to the right and left hepatic lobes is obscured

The splenic artery contributes approximately one fourth to two-fifths of the portal flow through the liver (Fig. 75) via the portal vein

ics and intravenous serum albumin are helpful in some patients

Portacaval shunt has been employed in the treatment of ascites in the occasional patient, as has splenectomy, but by and large these and other surgical measures ("rectus wick" procedure, omentopexy, etc.) have been of little benefit. Actually, the presence of significant ascites is often taken as a contraindication to portacaval shunt, even following bleeding from esophageal varices.

Hypersplenism In addition to the vascular alterations (or, more specifically, as a result of these) the spleen becomes engorged and the condition referred to as secondary (to portal hypertension) hypersplenism may develop. It is manifested by a reduction in platelets, neutrophils, and red cells, alone or in combination. Although the specific mechanism of this condition is obscure, it has been suggested that blood stasis in the spleen permits longer contact with the splenic sinusoids, and that the normal processes of blood cell regulation are allowed to destroy excessive numbers of cells. Following splenectomy the condition may improve.

PORTACAVAL SHUNT FOR PORTAL HYPERTENSION In 1945 Whipple²⁵ reviewed the problem of portal hypertension and bleeding esophageal varices, and presented his experience with portacaval and splenorenal shunts in the management of this condition. He noted that the Russian physiologist Eck had published his report on "The Ligation of the Portal Vein" as early as 1877 and had even then suggested that the fistula might be used to sidetrack obstruction of the portal vein. Nevertheless, it was not until the early 1900's that successful operations were reported in man. Since Whipple's initial report of his clinical experiences with portacaval shunt the procedure has had a wide clinical trial.

When to use a venous shunting procedure One is forced at least to consider a shunting operation when a patient suspected of having portal hypertension exhibits hematemesis or melena. The individual may or may

not have previously been known to have liver disease. However, the possibility of esophageal bleeding should be entertained in all patients who exhibit hematemesis, especially if hemorrhoids and other stigmata of portal hypertension are present. Once esophageal varices are thought of, the radiologist is asked to search for these lesions. Esophagoscopy may be required in some instances. In brief, while upper gastrointestinal hemorrhage may be due to esophageal varices, the mere presence of such varices does not establish that they are the source of hemorrhage, for a peptic ulcer may be bleeding. Still, in 200 patients with Laennec's cirrhosis reviewed by Famer and Halsted,¹⁰ 38 per cent exhibited hemorrhage from the upper alimentary tract. Esophageal and gastric varices were the source of bleeding in 59.2 and 2.6 per cent respectively, and peptic ulcer and gastric erosion were the source of bleeding in 18.4 and 1.5 per cent respectively. In 22 patients (or 11 per cent of those in whom hemorrhage occurred) two or more lesions of the upper alimentary tract were demonstrated, both peptic ulcer and esophageal varices were present in 12 of these 22 patients. In a series of 12 consecutive autopsies, peptic ulcer was present in a significantly greater number of patients with cirrhosis than in patients without cirrhosis.

Obviously, then, as always, it is advisable to establish an accurate diagnosis preoperatively, where possible.

One might caution against so-called "emergency portacaval shunt" in patients in whom the bleeding continues uncontrolled with one of the various esophageal hydrostatic bags. Our experience with such patients has been limited, but the results have been quite poor. We currently believe that the chance for survival in such an individual is as good with continued esophageal tamponade and transfusion as it is with an emergency shunt procedure. In contrast, the transesophageal suture of bleeding varices is a much simpler and far more rapid emer-

genev procedure Yet it too can be cheap pointing

Which shunt procedure should be employed? Let us assume that the presence of portal hypertension has been reasonably well established on the basis of a palpable spleen and venous enlargement (esophageal hemorrhoidal, epigastric and other vessels) Moreover, depressed liver function values and other collateral evidence may also suggest that cirrhosis is causing the intrahepatic block (If liver tests are normal extrahepatic block is suggested) What operation should be done (Fig 75)?

The operation selected will depend upon the level of the venous obstruction Again intrahepatic block may be due to portal cirrhosis or to thrombosis of the hepatic veins (Chiaris syndrome) Extrahepatic block may be congenital or the result of thrombosis of the portal vein or of one or more of its tributaries Or a combination of the two main types may occur If obstruction is intrahepatic diversion of flow from the portal vein or any of its tributaries may be satisfactory but if the obstruction is extrahepatic it will be necessary to select a member of the splenoportal system whose junction with the splenoportal vein is distal to the point of obstruction Here a splenorenal anastomosis may be required

Percutaneous splenic portal venograms have proved to be safe and most helpful Whereas formerly one might spend literally hours at laparotomy searching for a suitable branch of the portal vein with which to perform the anastomosis now it is possible to demonstrate preoperatively the presence or absence of portal vein obstruction by injecting a radiopaque medium (Urokon, for example) into the spleen and recording with roentgenography the movement of the material from the splenic pulp through the portal venous system An example is presented in Figure 81 marked dilatation of the vessels of the portal system including esophageal collaterals was demonstrated

At operation one usually finds that an end of portal vein to side of vena cava anas-

tomosis is more easily and safely achieved than is side-to-side anastomosis of these two large vessels The dilated portal vein may be almost an inch in diameter as it enters the liver and considerable tension may be required to effect side-to-side apposition of these vessels

While the splenorenal shunt does not lower the portal pressure as satisfactorily as does the portacaval shunt—and while the former fistula is more likely to thrombose than the latter—the splenorenal shunt may represent a judicious compromise in patients with borderline hepatic reserve Patients with a portacaval shunt are more susceptible to postoperative liver failure than are those with the lesser shunt

At the time a shunt is performed the spleen should be removed This would naturally be done in the course of the splenorenal shunt but it probably should also be done in association with portacaval shunt In one case the portacaval shunt effected a lowering of the portal venous pressure from an initial level of almost 400 mm. H₂O to 300 mm H₂O, but splenectomy reduced the pressure still further to approximately 200 mm. H₂O

Results of portacaval and splenorenal shunts There has been considerable contradiction in the literature regarding the long range value of these operations To begin with the underlying hepatic disease is usually not improved by the procedure in fact, liver function tests may show further impairment Therefore, the operation is a purely palliative one employed to control hemorrhage that threatens exsanguination It is on this basis that its value must be assessed

Linton and his associates* reported their results in 129 patients operated upon over a period of 10 years, all but 8 of whom had bled massively from esophageal varices Portal hypertension was on the basis of cirrhosis in 100 patients and secondary to extrahepatic portal bed block (so-called Banti's syndrome) in 29 There were 83 splenore-



Fig 81 Above Splenoportogram in portal hypertension. The contrast medium was injected percutaneously into the spleen (by Dr Robert D Sloan). At operation 2 hours later the point of entry of the needle into the spleen could not be identified. *Below* The cirrhotic liver is seen in the left foreground and, beyond the stomach, the large lobulated spleen in the background. This 19-year-old girl had hypersplenism secondary to portal hypertension. Splenectomy reduced the portal pressure and improved the peripheral blood picture. She had had no esophageal bleeding or ascites. The cause of the cirrhosis was not determined.

shift" shunts, and there were 16 unsuccessful attempts to construct a shunt. Serious operative or postoperative complications directly related to the liver occurred in 27 (19 per cent) of the operations. Frank liver failure developed in 22 patients, 8 of whom died. Five patients died during surgery of uncon-

trollable venous and capillary bleeding. All 5 of these occurred in the first 5 years of the study (1945 to 1949) before the use of fresh blood became routine during shunt surgery. A preoperative Bromsulphalein retention of 10 per cent or less gave a virtual guarantee from postoperative liver complications.

Conversely, a low serum albumin level preoperatively (below 3.0 gm per 100 ml) was associated with a prohibitively high (66 per cent) rate of hepatic complications. The choice of operation was an important factor in the outcome, for postoperative liver failure occurred twice as often after a portacaval shunt than after splenorenal anastomosis. The overall mortality was approximately 30 per cent, and the operative mortality was approximately 10 per cent.

Linton and his associates believe that shunt surgery can be performed in patients with serious liver disease at a reasonable risk, and that such surgery can relieve portal hypertension and markedly reduce the occurrence of bleeding from esophageal varices thereby lengthening the survival of these patients and in the majority improving the state of health. Liver function as measured by the usual tests, is not materially improved in most patients but the hazard of esophageal hemorrhage is diminished.

These results are reasonably typical of the "favorable" series reported, including those of Blakemore.² In contrast, adverse reports are becoming more frequent, derived from a variety of approaches. Following a review of the reported experience in conjunction with an analysis of the cases of cirrhosis encountered at the San Francisco Hospital, Cohn³ concluded that (1) many cirrhotics who bleed do not bleed from esophageal varices, (2) close scrutiny of the results reported in the literature makes it reasonable to question whether the operations advocated are really responsible for the good results obtained, (3) operative treatment is justified in only a highly selected group of cirrhotics.

Ripstein²² in reviewing 30 cases, concluded that portacaval shunts appear to be of doubtful value and produce at best a temporary benefit. He considered that even partial deviation of the portal flow may impair liver function.

Preshaw and his co-workers²⁰ obtained evidence in dogs that portacaval shunt di-

minished liver tolerance for carbon tetrachloride poisoning as reflected in changes in bromsulphalein retention. Not unexpectedly, Bradley and his associates⁴ found that portacaval anastomosis reduced hepatic blood flow.

Finally, Palmer¹⁰ measured esophageal venous pressure at esophagoscopy and found no good correlation between the size of the esophageal varices and venous pressure. It has been suggested that, in addition to increased intraluminal pressure, hemorrhage from esophageal varices may be the result of trauma or of mucosal ulceration.

✓ HEPATIC ARTERY LIGATION FOR PORTAL HYPERTENSION. This procedure enjoyed a brief notoriety, but has now been virtually abandoned.

The Gallbladder and Biliary Tract

Functions of the Gallbladder

The human gallbladder normally has a capacity of approximately 50 cc of bile but, owing to the concentrating powers of this organ, this amount of bile may represent the organic material from as much as 300 to 500 cc of liver bile. This reservoir function permits storage of the active bile components during fasting to be discharged into the duodenum to aid digestion when food material in the duodenum stimulates the release of the motor hormonal substance *cholecystokinin*. This concentrating power of the gallbladder, that of water absorption is the basis of gallbladder visualization on cholecystogram.

✓ MOTOR FUNCTIONS OF THE GALLBLADDER. The gallbladder appears to be subject to two types of contractions, one is a rather weak type of contraction at irregular intervals, and the other is a strong type of tonic contraction of the organ as a whole. The motor activity of this organ is affected by both chemical and nervous influences. During the fasting period the tone of the sphincter of Oddi rises so that it can resist the pressure of approximately 300 mm. of bile. The liver continues to secrete bile during the fasting period, and when the pressure in the distending bile duct rises to about 70 mm. of

H₂O the bile begins to flow into the gallbladder, where it is concentrated. Following a meal, however, the sphincter of Oddi presents less resistance and now allows bile to flow through at a pressure of about 100 mm of bile. If the meal contains a considerable amount of fat, the elaboration of cholecystokinin in the mucosa of the duodenum is especially stimulated. This hormonal substance exerts a marked effect upon the musculature of the gallbladder, and the organ may be rapidly emptied of its contents at a pressure of some 200 mm of bile.

If the pressure in the bile passages rises to a point much above 300 mm of bile, as it eventually does in complete common duct obstruction, the secretion of bile by the liver will cease and the patient becomes jaundiced. That is to say, the secretory pressure of the liver cells is approximately 300 mm of water, as noted previously.

THE CHOLECYSTOGRAM The ability of the gallbladder to concentrate bile is the basis of the Graham-Cole test, the cholecystogram. When a suitable compound containing iodine is given by mouth or intravenously, it is excreted by the liver cells and passes into the gallbladder, where the dye is concentrated by the absorption of water, rendering the filled gallbladder opaque on roentgen examination. It is now often possible, even in the absence of the gallbladder with its concentrating power, to visualize the bile ducts by means of the intravenous injection of Cholografin.¹¹

If one can be certain that the patient took and retained the iodine-containing compound used for cholecystogram—and if he did, some of the unabsorbed material can usually be visualized in the bowel—various conclusions may be drawn, depending upon the findings. First, translucent stones may be visualized as filling defects in the opaque medium filled gallbladder. Second, the gallbladder may not be visualized, usually an indication that cystic duct obstruction exists, presumably due to stones, if a second study confirms this result, exploration is justified, if otherwise indicated. Third, the

wall of the gallbladder may be so diseased that only slight concentration occurs but, even so, any stones present are usually visualized. If the gallbladder satisfactorily concentrates the medium and then empties promptly upon the ingestion of cream or some other fat, and if no stones are seen, the organ is assumed to be essentially normal. Of course, gallstones may be radiopaque and demonstrable on a plain film of the abdomen in from 10 to 15 per cent cases.

DUODENAL DRAINAGE Another function test that may indicate the presence of gallstones is that of the microscopic examination of duodenal drainage material for cholesterol or calcium bilirubinate crystals. A tube is passed through the stomach and into the duodenum opposite the papilla of Vater and bile is collected which at first will be a light yellow color, referred to as "A" bile, the portion comes from the liver. Olive oil or magnesium sulfate is then injected through the tube, and this acts to stimulate the formation and release of cholecystokinin, which causes a vigorous contraction of the gallbladder and forces gallbladder bile through the common duct and into the duodenum. This bile from the gallbladder is greenish in color and more viscid, and is called "B" bile. In either of the specimens, but particularly in the "B" bile, cholesterol or calcium bilirubinate crystals may be seen microscopically. The presence of such crystals is considered to represent strong evidence of the presence of gallstones. However, while this test is helpful, most gallstones are now more easily diagnosed by the use of the history and the cholecystogram, and duodenal drainage is little used.

DRUGS AND THE SPHINCTER OF ODDI It has long been appreciated that amyl nitrite and nitroglycerine may relieve gallbladder colic. This is due to the fact that they relieve the spasm of the sphincter, while atropine and pilocarpine do not. Morphine and other opiates cause spasm of the sphincter, reflected in various clinical measurements of bile duct pressures and in the rise in serum amylase

that is often observed. Denervation of the sphincter region has been advocated to relieve spasm, but various autonomic studies have not clearly demonstrated a consistent nervous influence over the sphincter in man.

ETIOLOGY OF GALLSTONES The mechanism by which the various types of gallstones are formed is still not settled. The ratio of bile salts to cholesterol has always been considered to be important in the genesis of stones since the presence of bile salts increases the concentration of cholesterol which can be present in gallbladder bile without precipitation. The small dark stones that form even in children in hemolytic anemia indicate that increased amounts of pigment may play a rôle in such instances. The relation of the diet to the formation of gallstones has not been clarified in human beings. A high cholesterol intake which leads to an increase in its concentration in the bile may explain the frequency with which obese patients have cholesterol gallstones. Pregnancy²³ appears to be a predisposing factor. Pure calcium gallstones or calcium enclosed cholesterol stones are usually associated with a history of inflammation.

Cholesterol and calcium bilirubinate stones comprise the majority of calculi but others consist of calcium carbonate and calcium oxalate.

Acute Cholecystitis

Acute cholecystitis usually represents an acute flare up of chronic calculous cholecystitis. The mechanism of the intermittent recrudescence of this chronic condition is often that of acute cystic duct obstruction by an impacted stone. The inflammation associated with the acute exacerbation is due to chemical rather than bacterial agents since cultures taken from even severely inflamed organs rarely reveal significant bacteria. However this is not to say that infection may not in time be superimposed upon the chemical cholecystitis.

The mechanism of many attacks of cholecystitis is presented in Figure 82. The colic associated with the acute attack is due to

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY OF GALLBLADDER DISEASE

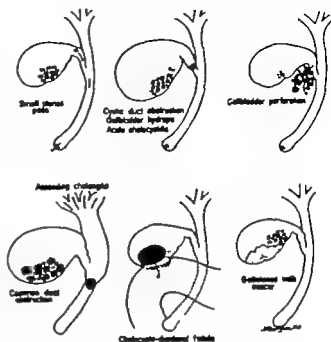


Fig 82 The mechanisms of gallstone formation are debated, but many contributing factors are known (see text). Acute cholecystitis is caused by chemical inflammation rather than by bacteria. Gallstone colic is usually produced by intermittent obstruction of the cystic duct.

obstruction of the neck of the cystic duct with consequent and painful distention of the gallbladder or to spasmodic contraction of the organ and particularly the infundibular region. Obstruction of the cystic duct may result in much enlargement of the gallbladder due to both edema fluid and mucus from the lining cells. The mucosal cells normally secrete approximately 20 cc each 24 hours, and one need not postulate a ball valve effect with bile entering the organ but not being discharged to account for the hydrops or 'empyema'.

The obstructing stone may, in addition to colic and surrounding inflammatory edema produce actual pressure necrosis of a portion of the wall of the organ resulting in perforation (Fig 82). Fortunately, the site of impending rupture is usually sealed off promptly by omentum. The dislodgement of the obstructing stone forward or backward often relieves the attack.

PAIN DISTRIBUTION IN GALLBLADDER COLIC The pain of biliary colic whether from the gallbladder or from the common bile duct,

is typically referred to the right upper quadrant and, less frequently, posteriorly to a point between the scapulae. Cole⁶ found that of 211 consecutive patients having cholecystectomy, 45.6 per cent had pain only in the right upper quadrant. Pain was located in the epigastrium alone in 27.2 per cent and in the epigastrium as well as the right upper quadrant in 18.9 per cent. In 5.3 per cent of the subjects the pain was located elsewhere, including the left upper abdominal quadrant and the precordium. It was emphasized that while the pain of cholecystitis could be referred to areas other than the upper right quadrant, this happens only occasionally, and that the clinician must be cautious in blaming the gallbladder for such symptoms. Although at autopsy approximately 32 per cent of women and 16 per cent of men past the age of 40 have gallstones,²³ less than one-third of patients with gallstones have symptoms. This further underscores the need for careful evaluation of the patient for further lesions even though biliary calculi have been demonstrated on roentgenogram.

The pain of gallbladder disease may be intermittent or it may be sustained for days. Generally it is of a short duration and may last less than 1 hour in about 50 per cent of the patients. Characteristically the pain occurs in attacks, and does not continue as a constant distress over a period of several days unless empyema or some other complication has occurred. One finding which is fairly common is that the patient will have residual tenderness in the right upper quadrant for from 24 to 48 hours following the actual pain of the gallbladder attack.

Very occasionally the pain of gallbladder colic will be referred to the precordium and even rarely may extend down the left arm. In such a case it is much wiser to take the conservative view that such pain, even in the presence of gallstones, is due to myocardial ischemia. Nevertheless, when proper caution has been exercised, an evaluation of the total case may suggest removal of the gallstones anyway, which may at times re-

lieve the "anginal" pain. It has been shown that distention of the gallbladder or of the common bile duct can cause precordial pain in persons who have no demonstrable cardiac disease. However, Hodge and his associates¹³ studied animals and found that distention of the biliary tract failed to produce significant changes in the electrocardiogram without a pre-existing lesion of the myocardium, when one or more of the coronary arteries had been ligated, distention of the biliary tract in dogs did produce an abnormal electrocardiogram.

INNERVATION OF THE GALLBLADDER
RÔLE IN CHOLECYSTITIS The pain of cholecystitis is mediated largely by the sympathetics (Fig. 258). Patients who have bilateral thoracolumbar sympathectomy may experience acute cholecystitis which goes on to perforation without having at any time, less commonly this may occur following right sympathectomy only. Lack of sensation of course constitutes a genuine hazard following extensive sympathectomy.

While aware of the importance of mechanical and chemical factors in the etiology of acute cholecystitis—involving as they do the obstruction of the cystic duct and changes in bile constituents—Howard, Milford, and De Bakey¹⁴ examined the significance of the nervous mechanism in the pathogenesis and progression of this disease. Previously, Eastwood and Womack⁸ had indicated the extent to which the nerve supply of the gallbladder might be involved in inflammatory lesions of this organ, as did Bonnet³ earlier. The pain of acute cholecystitis had been successfully treated by splanchnic block on the right side or, when necessary, bilaterally. Howard and his associates studied the effect of sympathectomy on the pathogenesis of cholecystitis in dogs and they concluded that sympathetic innervation of the gallbladder and the biliary tract in the dog had a significant effect upon the inflammatory process in experimental acute cholecystitis produced by ligation of the cystic duct and the introduction of bacteria.

salts into the gallbladder Whereas in the control series only 15 per cent of the animals had a normal gallbladder following this procedure, in the animals having a simultaneous right sympathetic denervation this figure was 57 per cent and in those with bilateral denervation it was 75 per cent. It was suggested that the blocking of impulses arising from the stimulating action of the chemical distortion of the bile upon the nerve endings, along with the abolition of the autonomic reflexes had produced a beneficial effect upon smooth muscle spasm and vasoconstriction this retarded the progression of the inflammatory process itself The relationship of gallbladder innervation to acute cholecystitis in the patient is of course open to speculation but these studies do emphasize the intimate relationship which the innervation bears to certain aspects of this disease For one thing if right-sided thoracolumbar sympathectomy is to be performed it is advisable to examine the gallbladder and to remove any stones that are found at that time or perhaps better, to remove the organ

The rôle of *vagal* or *parasympathetic* innervation of the gallbladder is less definitely established. The effect of double vagotomy on the motor activity of the human gallbladder was studied by Johnson and Boyden¹⁶ and satisfactory cholecystograms were obtained in 11 out of 13 male patients studied over a 3-year period before and after vagotomy for peptic ulcer In one group, consisting of 5 patients in whom vagotomy was incomplete as revealed by the Hollander insulin gastric secretion test, there was a continued rapid evacuation of the gallbladder which is said to be characteristic of peptic ulcer patients In the second group, consisting of 6 patients in whom the vagotomy was initially complete, the rate of emptying of the gallbladder was significantly retarded but the rate was not less than that of normal individuals of corresponding sex and age It was concluded that the vagi are not essential to the evacuation of the human gallbladder (in contrast to the

findings in laboratory animals) and that emptying of the gallbladder is regulated primarily through the hormonal mechanism involving cholecystokinin It was noted, however, that in the 11 patients in whom the vagotomies were complete, the fasting volume of the gallbladder was approximately doubled after vagotomy It was believed that this was due to the loss of vagal fibers which normally maintain the tonus of the gallbladder during interdigestive periods This tonus failing, the gallbladder was unable to resist the influx of liver bile as efficiently as before and hence progressively enlarged Johnson and Boyden raised the question as to whether such enlargement might not lead to gallbladder pathology

MANAGEMENT OF ACUTE CHOLECYSTITIS
Whereas 20 years ago many surgeons preferred merely to remove the stones and to drain the acutely inflamed gallbladder, where surgery was felt to be absolutely necessary during the acute attack (any operation being postponed where possible), the trend in the last decade has been to perform a cholecystectomy far more frequently as an emergency procedure Certainly these patients do well postoperatively following successful surgery If the structures are not amenable to careful dissection, because of a dense inflammatory process, then cholecystectomy should be postponed and the gallbladder simply evacuated and drained. Indeed, in some elderly patients a single large stone may be removed and no further surgery required. In summary the single most important consideration which should settle the issue between cholecystectomy and cholecystostomy in the presence of acute inflammation is the question of whether or not accurate dissection in the area of the common duct can be accomplished, for without this exposure the risk of a life-shortening common duct injury is too great

If the attack of acute cholecystitis or of acute recrudescence of chronic cholecystitis is not severe one may well proceed with conservative management and operate electively after diagnostic studies On the other

LESIONS OF BILE PASSAGES

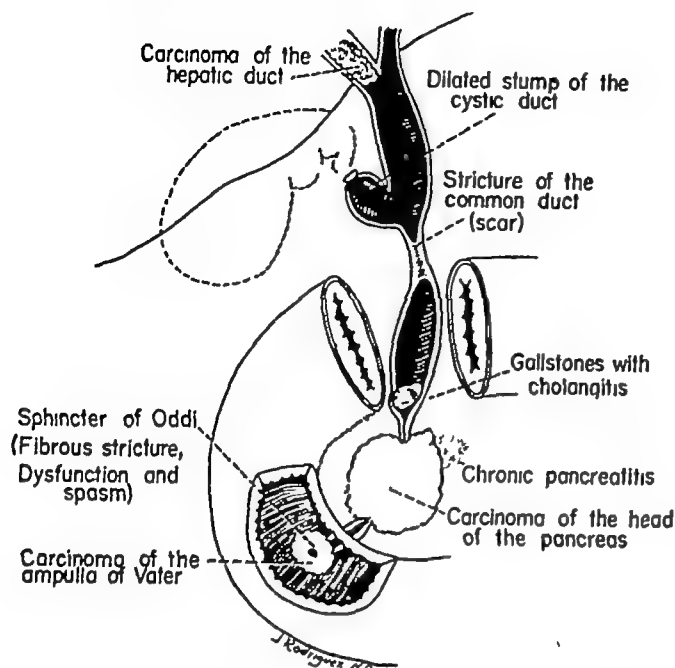


Fig 83 The total clinical examination of the patient is far superior to laboratory tests in the diagnosis of lesions of the bile passages. However, judiciously used tests materially supplement the information gained through clinical means.

hand, if the patient is becoming worse, operation may be imperative. As a rule of thumb, purely for guidance, it is our practice to operate if the white cell count rises above 15,000, or if the pulse rate is above 100, or if the oral temperature is above 102°, or if right upper quadrant pain and tenderness persists unduly or grows more severe—and always if the over-all clinical picture does not progress satisfactorily. Again, it is to be remembered that gallbladder attacks are relatively brief in duration unless some complication has occurred. Among the complications that may be anticipated are hydrops or empyema of the organ, perforation, jaundice due to encroachment of the inflammatory pressure on the common duct, cholecystoenteric fistula and pancreatitis.

Carcinoma of the gallbladder is usually associated with stones (Fig 84).

Common Bile Duct Obstruction

Several causes of common duct obstruction are shown in Figure 83. Of these, by far the most important are common duct stone, carcinoma of the head of the pancreas

or the ampulla, and postoperative stricture. Chronic or even acute pancreatitis may also produce obstructive jaundice, as may type of hepatitis at certain stages.

The differential diagnosis among these several conditions is made on the basis of history and physical examination, roentgen studies (not often very helpful), and liver function studies—where a definite diagnosis can be made preoperatively, which is by no means always possible. This has been discussed previously (p 230). The primary problem is to determine whether the jaundice is medical or surgical in nature, that is, whether it is due to hepatitis in which no operation is indicated or to actual mechanical obstruction which will be relieved only by surgery in most instances.

WHITE BILE This is the name applied to the material found in the gallbladder after prolonged cystic duct obstruction, or in the common bile duct in the presence of longstanding common duct obstruction. In the case of the gallbladder, this material consists largely of mucus. In common duct obstruction, however, its significance lies in the fact that the liver has ceased secreting bile pigment, and that the patient is suffering from almost or complete hepatic secretory suppression. In such a case the colorless contents of the ducts are largely derived from the ductal mucosa, and it is surprising the extent to which the biliary tree may be dilated and filled with such material. The author recalls one instance in which, when in the presence of longstanding postoperative stricture of the common bile duct the greatly dilated common hepatic duct was opened, such a quantity of white bile poured forth that the dilated intrahepatic ducts were permitted to collapse and the liver diminished visibly in size. This marked dilatation of the intrahepatic ducts can reduce considerably the volume of functional liver tissue, as noted previously.

Regardless of the precise origin of the white bile, whether from the mucosa or by some increment of secretion by the liver of a bile with a low pigment content, or both,



Fig 84 Above Gallstones in the omentum from previous gallbladder rupture. The stones had been surrounded by thin fibrous adhesions. Below: Associated gallbladder carcinoma and gallstones in the patient shown above. Although gallstones are common whereas gallbladder carcinoma is not, the latter is found associated with gallstones in a high percentage of cases.

the presence of white bile usually denotes prolonged obstruction of the extrahepatic biliary tree.

Ravdin and his associates²¹ found that there was a marked reduction in concentration or even an absence of bile salts in common duct drainage after the release of common duct obstruction. The interval between the release of obstruction and the reappearance of the bile salts was proportional to the degree of cholangitis associated with the rate of return of normal liver activity. In biliary fistulas with diversion of bile from the intestinal tract the loss of bile salts may be more important than the loss of base or chloride.

Biliary Dyskinesia—the Postcholecystectomy Syndrome

Postcholecystectomy colic or biliary dyskinesia is a poorly defined syndrome which tends to occur in nervous and hypersensitive persons and which can be diagnosed only by the exclusion of organic disease. The cause of the dyskinesia in most cases has not been clearly established, but it is thought that spasm of the sphincter of Oddi plays a part in the production of these symptoms. Actually, failure of cholecystectomy to abolish all symptoms or the occurrence of a different type of pain and discomfort following cholecystectomy, may be due to a variety of causes, as shown in Figure 83. Among these are a dilated stump of the

cystic duct, a stricture of the common bile duct, a residual stone in the common bile duct, chronic pancreatitis with scarring, and disease of the sphincter of Oddi and ampullary region. The disease of the sphincter may be a functional or neurogenic process, or it may consist of fibrosis with fibrotic narrowing of the opening of the ampulla. Of course, one must also exclude the possibility that disease outside the biliary tract may be the cause of the symptoms, among such conditions being peptic ulcer, hiatal hernia, pancreatitis, overlooked malignancy, or psychoneurosis from any cause. Cole⁶ suggested that paravertebral sympathetic nerve injection with procaine be compared with the relief afforded by isotonic saline injection, in differentiating "psychogenic" from "organic" pain.

We do not feel qualified to offer a suggestion as to how often disease of the sphincter is present, but we did encounter dense fibrotic stricture of the sphincter in one patient with relapsing pancreatitis.

Without question, sphincterotomy (Fig 92) is being rather frequently employed by many American surgeons, and its value in "biliary dyskinesia" and pancreatitis will ultimately be decided. Incidentally, Cole and Grove⁷ found that chronic pancreatitis was the cause of benign stricture of the common duct in 86 per cent of 92 patients with common duct stricture reported by them.

✓ **STRICTURE OF THE COMMON BILE DUCT. FURTHER COMMENT** This condition has been referred to only briefly, but it is one of the most serious complications affecting the hepatobiliary system. Although occasional cases are due to pancreatitis or to infection rather than to operative damage, the overwhelming majority of cases of acquired stricture of the common duct are the result of injury at operation.

Jaundice is the principal finding. This may occur almost immediately or it may not appear for months. Injury to the common duct may be associated with a profuse flow of bile from the wound in the immediate post-operative period, followed by jaundice when

and if the flow of bile diminishes. Of course, if there is a T-tube in the common duct above the site of injury, then the patient will not become jaundiced until the T-tube is removed. The difficult diagnostic problem is particularly when there has not been profuse bile drainage following operation, in differentiating the common duct injury from a common duct stone. The recent availability of Cholografin, with which the common duct may be outlined by the intravenous injection of proper amounts, may make this difficult diagnosis less difficult. Actually, however, the history of the events at operation and the patient's subsequent course make the diagnosis of probable common duct injury an easy one to establish in most cases.

If the obstruction is not relieved, the persistent jaundice, usually associated with varying degrees of cholangitis, will produce progressive liver damage. Whatever the operation used, it must be accepted that in most instances the lifespan of the patient will be shortened, for on admission most of the individuals have had already a series of various types of operations in an effort to restore and maintain continuity of the hepatointestinal connection. The restoration of end-to-end continuity of the common duct offers the best chance of lasting success. Fortunately, permanently successful reconstructions are far less frequent than reported results would lead one to believe.

REFERENCES

- 1 BERMAN, J. K., AND HULL, J. E. Circulation in the normal and cirrhotic liver. *Ann. Surg.* **137**: 424, 1953.
- 2 BLAKEMORE, A. H. Portacaval shunt for portal hypertension. Follow-up results in cases of cirrhosis of the liver. *J. A. M. A.*, **145**: 1, 1951.
- 3 BONNET, G. F. L'infiltration du splanchnique droit, traitement d'urgence des syndromes vésiculaires hypéralgiques. *Presse med.*, **1**: 680, 1945.
- 4 BRADLEY, S. E., SMYTH, C. M., FITZPATRICK, F., AND BLAKEMORE, A. H. The effect of portacaval shunt on estimated hepatic blood flow and oxygen uptake in cirrhosis. *J. Clin. Invest.*, **32**: 526, 1953.
- 5 COHN, R. A skeptical evaluation of portacaval

- anastomosis for gastrointestinal hemorrhage in cirrhosis of the liver *Stanford M Bull* 9: 231 1951
- 6 COLE, W H Recent trends in gallbladder surgery *J A M A*, 150: 631 1952
 - 7 COLE, W H, AND GROVE, W J Persistence of symptoms following cholecystectomy with special reference to anomalies of the ampulla of Vater *Ann. Surg* 136: 73 1952
 - 8 EASTWOOD D AND WOMACK N A Sympathetic nerve block in early acute cholecystitis *A M A Arch Surg* 63: 128 1951
 - 9 ESSLING, W C, BUNKER, J P, ELLIS, D S, FRENCH A B, LINTON R R, AND JONES C M Management of patients with portal hypertension undergoing venous-shunt surgery *New England J Med* 254: 141 1956
 - 10 FAYER D C, AND HALTED J A Sources of upper alimentary tract hemorrhage in cirrhosis of the liver *J A M A* 157: 413 1953
 - 11 GLENN F, EVANS J, HILL, M, AND Mc CLELLAN J Intravenous cholangiography *Ann. Surg* 140: 600 1954
 - 12 GREENSPAN E M, AND DREILING D A Serum mucoprotein level in differentiation of hepatogenic from obstructive jaundice *A M A Arch Int. Med.* 91: 474 1953
 - 13 HODGE, G H, MESSER A L AND HILL, H C Effect of distention of the biliary tract on the electrocardiogram Experimental study *Arch Surg* 55: 710 1947
 - 14 HOWARD J M, MILFORD M T AND DEBARRY M E Significance of the sympathetic nervous system in acute cholecystitis *Surgery* 32: 251 1952
 - 15 INGLEWICK, F J The Liver *Sodeman, W A Pathologic Physiology* Ed II p 624 Philadelphia W B Saunders Company 1956
 - 16 JOHNSON F F, AND BOYDEN E A The effect of double vagotomy on the motor activity of the human gallbladder *Surgery* 32: 591 1952
 - 17 KELLY R H, BROCKSTROM A H, AND BUTT H R The relation of the regenerated hepatic nodule to the vascular bed in cirrhosis. *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 25: 17 1950
 - 18 LIPMAN F Biosynthetic mechanisms *Harvey Lect* 44: 99 1948-1949
 - 19 PALMER, E D On correlations between portal venous pressure and the size and extent of esophageal varices in portal cirrhosis. *Ann Surg* 138: 741 1953
 - 20 PERSHAW D F, LARGE, A AND JOHNSON A F Effect of portacaval venous shunt on sulfobromophthalein (Bromsulphalein®) retention *A M A Arch Surg* 62: 801 1951
 - 21 RADVY I S, RIEDEL, C, JOHNSTON C G, AND MORRISON P J Studies in biliary tract disease *J A M A* 103: 1504 1934
 - 22 RIPSTEIN C B Experiences with portacaval anastomosis in the treatment of portal hypertension. *Surgery* 34: 570 1953
 - 23 ROBERTSON H E, AND DOCHAT G R Pregnancy and gallstones (Collective Rev) *Internat Abstr Surg.* 78: 193 1944
 - 24 TURNER, M D Extra-hepatic conjugation of hydrocortisone *Fed Proc.* 15: 190 1956
 - 25 WHIPPLE A O The problem of portal hypertension in relation to the hepatosplenopaths. *Ann Surg* 122: 449 1945
 - 26 WRIGHT S *Applied Physiology* Ed II London Oxford University Press 1952

Chapter 12

The Pancreas

Surgical Anatomy

The anatomic relationships of the pancreas are shown in Figure 85, and at operation the positions of the duodenum, common bile duct, pancreatic ducts, and mesenteric vessels are of particular importance. The splenic artery courses just beneath the superior margin of the pancreas, and this can afford an important approach to controlling hemorrhage at splenectomy. The left adrenal gland lies beneath the tail of the pancreas, and is readily approached by incising the peritoneum along the inferior border of the pancreas and retracting this organ anteriorly and superiorly (Fig 10). Pancreatic injury may occur in operations upon the stomach or the other surrounding organs. Pancreatitis may result in jejunal obstruction at the ligament of Treitz.

Functionally, the fact that the main pancreatic duct and the common bile duct enter the duodenum through a common channel (the ampulla) in approximately two-thirds of the cases has provided the most durable theory regarding the etiology of pancreatitis, namely, that the bile regurgitates into the pancreatic ducts and activates pancreatic enzymes which digest surrounding tissues. However, this concept is being modified.

The *blood supply* of the pancreas is derived from the superior and inferior pancreaticoduodenal arteries, the splenic artery, and branches of the hepatic artery. The lymphatic drainage is rich and enters the pancreaticoduodenal, preaortic, and celiac nodes. There may also be lymphatic

connections with the gallbladder, stomach and spleen.

The *nerve supply of the pancreas* is shown in Figure 86. The sensory or afferent nerve supply appears to reside largely in the sympathetic system, the pain from pancreatic can usually be relieved by division or block of the splanchnic nerves on the right, though a bilateral procedure is necessary in some patients. In clinical observations, Bliss and associates² found that pain originating from the head of the pancreas localized in the epigastrium to the right of the midline was mediated by the right splanchnic through the right thoracic sympathetic ganglia 6-11, and that it could be relieved by the interruption of these afferent pathways. Pain arising from the body of the pancreas localized in the mid-epigastrium was mediated by the splanchnics through the thoracic sympathetic ganglia 6-11 bilaterally, and could be abolished by bilateral interruption of these afferent pathways. Pain from the tail of the pancreas was localized in the epigastrium, was mediated by the left splanchnics through the sympathetic ganglia T-6 through L-1, and could be relieved by interruption of these afferent pathways. There were occasional exceptions to the above findings, however, and it was suggested that bilateral sympathectomy may be necessary to obtain permanent relief from segmental involvement of the pancreas in some patients. Pancreatic pain radiates also to the back.

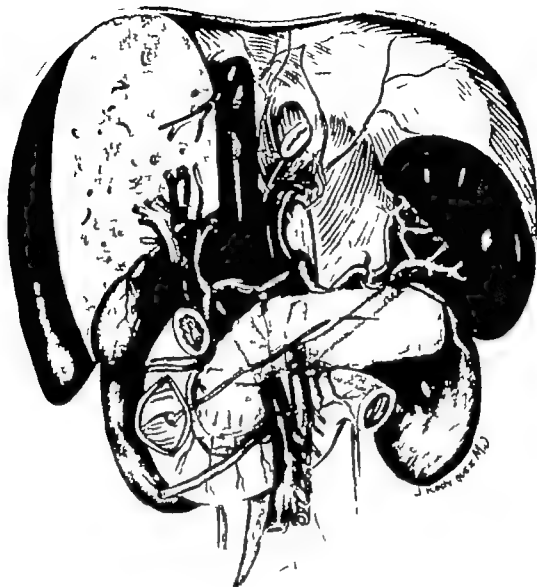


Fig 86 The topography of the pancreas. The management of surgical lesions of the pancreas is rendered difficult because of the anatomic, physiologic and roentgenologic inaccessibility of the organ. (From HARDY J D AND BOWLER J W. Some complications of pancreatic disease. Illustrative cases with notes on management. *Ann Surg* 145: 848 1957.)

The External (Exocrine) Secretion of the Pancreas and Its Nervous and Humoral Control

Pancreatic Juice Composition

The pancreas secretes from 1 to 2 L of alkaline fluid per 24 hours and the ionic constituents of this material are shown in Figure 28. Note that the sodium bicarbonate content is relatively high. The principal enzymes of the pancreatic juice are trypsin

which is a powerful proteolytic enzyme, lipase, which splits neutral fats, and amylase which splits starch to maltose. The activity of lipase in splitting neutral fats into diglycerides, monoglycerides, and free fatty acids and glycerol is markedly increased by the activity of bile. Trypsin breaks down polypeptides and may even eventually produce amino acids. The juice collected directly from the pancreatic duct without allowing contact with the duodenum

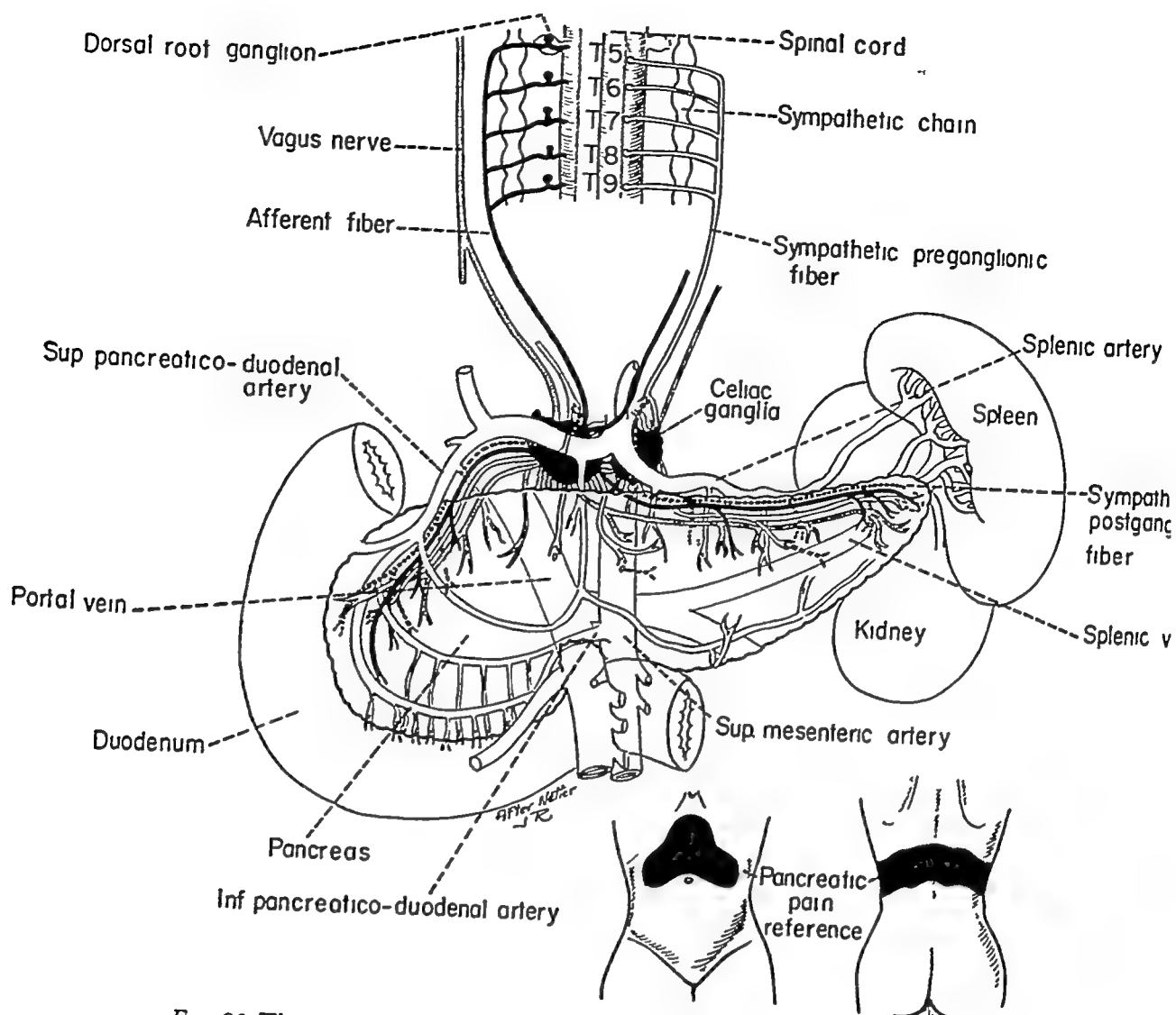


Fig 86 The pancreatic nerve supply is extensive and the blood supply diffuse

denal mucosa is inactive and contains not trypsin but its precursor trypsinogen. The latter is activated by enterokinase, a constituent of intestinal juice (*succus entericus*)⁴²

Regulation of Pancreatic Secretion

NERVOUS CONTROL The volume and the composition of the pancreatic secretion vary markedly under different conditions. There is a small continuous secretion of pancreatic juice in the fasting animal and, although the mediation of this portion of the total secretion is unknown, the hypophysis may have an influence (*see below*). Be this as it may, food ingestion constitutes perhaps the most effective stimulus, and within a few minutes after the taking of food the flow of pancreatic juice is increased. This response appears to depend on reflex stimulation of the vagi, for stimulation of the

peripheral end of the cut vagus results in a flow of enzyme-rich juice. This activity is accompanied by shrinkage of the gland cell and disappearance of intracellular granules. Stimulation of the sympathetic supply to the pancreas results in a diminished volume of flow and a reduced enzyme content.

THE HORMONAL REGULATION OF PANCREATIC SECRETION When fluid enters the duodenum—particularly acid, fat, or bile—the elaboration of a hormonal substance *secretin* is stimulated, and this substance is a powerful instigator of pancreatic secretion. It is apparently liberated from the intestinal mucosa, and there is a qualitative difference in the pancreatic secretion produced by vagal stimulation as compared with that induced by secretin, the former being less in volume but richer in enzymes than the latter. The relative importance in man of the vagal regulation of pancreatic secretion, as com-

pared with that of the hormonal stimulation by secretin, is not yet known

The most powerful effect from secretin is obtained when this material is given intravenously. Given subcutaneously, it has a more prolonged but more variable action, it is ineffective by mouth. In addition to secretin, there appears to be at least one other humoral agent (*pancreozymin*) that is liberated from the intestinal mucosa and which stimulates pancreatic flow; this secretion being similar to that produced by vagal stimulation, the action of this hormone is not abolished by atropine, as is the vagal effect. However, both the *pancreozymin* and vagal effects can be imitated in man by the injection of a slowly acting acetylcholine-like substance such as mechoyl. Injection of mechoyl which acts at the vagal terminals has a slight effect on the volume of duodenal fluid, but produces a marked and prolonged increase in the output and concentration of all the pancreatic enzymes.⁴²

INFLUENCE OF DIET, DRUGS, ALCOHOL, AND VAGOTOMY ON PANCREATIC SECRETION. In animals meat elicits a large volume of pancreatic juice that is rich in alkali and poor in enzyme concentration. Fat or milk produces a moderate volume of juice with a low alkali and high enzyme concentration, and bread produces an intermediate response.⁴³ In man, McCaughan and his associates²⁰ found that the pancreatic flow was continuous but at a low level between meals, it was markedly increased for about 3 hours by taking food whether the food was rich in protein, fat, or carbohydrate.

In a patient studied by Howard and his associates¹² the administration of secretin in a dosage of 80 units intravenously produced a 350 per cent increase in hourly volume of pancreatic secretion. Moreover the secretory response initiated by the ingestion of food in their patient would appear to have constituted the chief basis for the greater volume of pancreatic secretion observed during the day as compared to the night. Hildee, Ferguson, and Bartlett¹¹ also

noted that starvation caused a decrease in the rate of pancreatic secretion. In an effort to localize anatomically the site where food or acid causes the release of secretin in the human being, Howard and his associates guided a Miller Abbott tube fluoroscopically into the upper jejunum. The hourly volume of pancreatic secretion measured 3 ml. A test meal consisting of 240 ml of acidified malted milk was then instilled by way of the tube into the jejunum. The resulting increment in pancreatic secretion was small, being 4 ml per hour as compared to the fasting level of 3 ml. Next, the tube was withdrawn into the duodenum and the test meal again instilled. This resulted in a 400 per cent increase in pancreatic secretion. The tube was then removed and an oral meal was found to increase the flow 900 per cent. A test meal of fat, protein, and carbohydrate given by Miller Abbott tube directly into the duodenum caused no change in pancreatic secretion but the same test meal when given through the tube into the stomach resulted in an increase of 125 per cent in the volume of secretion. Atropine sulfate given intramuscularly decreased the hourly volume, but when this dosage and secretin were given simultaneously an increase in pancreatic secretion to 500 per cent was found. Similar results were obtained using banthine. It was found that banthine would delay or prevent the secretory response to a test meal but that when banthine and secretin were given intravenously and simultaneously a typical secretin response occurred. They concluded that these studies indicated that neither atropine nor banthine could directly block the humoral response once the secretin had been released. Because of the high incidence of acute pancreatitis in alcoholics, the effect of alcohol on the secretin mechanism was also studied. Whisky (60 ml by mouth) was followed by a 50 per cent reduction in the volume of secretion. 50 ml of ethyl alcohol given intravenously in glucose solution caused no change in secretion.

In a similar study of a patient with an

essentially complete external pancreatic fistula, Mahaffey and Haynes¹⁸ found that approximately two-thirds of the pancreatic juice was secreted during the day and approximately one-third during the night. Pancreatic secretion was continuous, but the volume of secretion varied from hour to hour and from day to day. They made the point that to evaluate the response of pancreatic secretion to drugs by comparing a single one-hour volume of secretion as a control with a single one-hour volume of secretion following administration of a drug assumes a constancy of secretin formation which was not supported by their data. Secretin, splanchnic block, and whisky each produced increases in the volume of pancreatic secretion, whereas banthine produced a moderate decrease during one test and an increase in another. These findings were, of course, somewhat different from those reported by Howard *et al*.¹²

Shingleton, Fawcett, and Vetter³⁰ found that the resting volume of duodenal secretion (reflecting pancreatic flow) was greater (5 l) in vagotomized than in normal subjects. A vagal blocking agent (banthine) had an inhibitory effect on the response of the pancreas to the intravenous injection of secretin, again in contrast to the findings of Howard and his co-workers.

From these several and at times conflicting reports, it is clear that additional study is required before the relative importance of neural, humoral, dietary, and other factors in the qualitative and quantitative aspects of pancreatic secretion can be defined.

HYPOPHYSIAL REGULATION OF SECRETIN The concept that the gastrointestinal hormonal mechanisms are self-regulating entities, entirely independent of one another and of other hormonal structures, may require revision in view of the report of Dorcaster and Haist⁵ regarding the effects of hypophysectomy on the secretin content of the rat intestine. After developing a sensitive and reliable assay procedure, these workers determined the effect of body size

and of hypophysectomy on the secretin content of the rat gut. In regard to the effect of body size, it was found that there was no significant difference in the total amount of secretin extractable from the intestine of small and large rats, but that the concentration of secretin per gram of intestine diminished significantly as the animal grew larger. It was not determined whether the decreased concentration was due to failure of growth of the structures elaborating secretin, or to a reduced concentration of secretin per unit of secretory structure. Comparisons between normal animals and animals subjected to hypophysectomy (receiving the same caloric intake) show significant reduction of extractable secretin in the animals that had undergone hypophysectomy in terms of total activity per gram of dried intestine, activity per unit of body weight. Furthermore, the reduction in secretin was in proportion to any difference in intestine weight. However, since the secretin-secreting cells of the intestine have not been identified, it is not known whether the reduction in secretin following hypophysectomy is due to atrophy of the secretin-producing structure or to a reduced production or decreased excretion of secretin. Finally, it has not been determined whether the atrophy of the pancreas that occurs following hypophysectomy is secondary to changes in secretin production.

Effects of Total Pancreatectomy

The excision of the entire pancreas, carcinoma, or for otherwise uncontrollable hypoglycemia due to hyperinsulinism, for chronic relapsing pancreatitis, has been performed in a number of instances and the effects studied. Although diabetes mellitus has been discussed elsewhere, it may be noted here that the diabetes which follows total pancreatectomy is surprisingly mild in degree. However, the absence of the external pancreatic secretion produces important digestive disturbances, and large amounts of fat and organic nitrogenous substances are lost.

in the stool. The feces are bulky, light in color, soft occasionally loose or watery and sometimes foul smelling, the weight of the fecal solids is about 80 to 120 gm per day approximately 3 times the normal value. On a daily fat intake of 100 gm, from 5 to 7 gm are normally lost in the feces, in contrast following total pancreatectomy one patient on a daily fat intake of 70 to 100 gm. lost 30 to 48 gm. in the feces.⁴ (Incidentally it has been demonstrated with isotopes that fecal fat does not necessarily represent only fat that has not been assimilated a portion of the fecal fat is "secreted" into the bowel.) The fat digestion that does continue in the absence of pancreatic lipase is due to the action of gastric and intestinal lipase. Considerable fat is split even in the absence of pancreatic juice but this appears to be due largely to the lipolytic action of bacteria in the colon. Little fat is absorbed in the large intestine.

The normal daily fecal nitrogen excretion is about 1.5 gm corresponding to about 10 gm. of protein though much of this represents the protein of the fecal bacteria. Following pancreatectomy in one patient on a daily protein intake of 100 gm from 4 to 8 gm of nitrogen were lost daily, corresponding to from 25 to 50 gm. of protein. Pancreatic proteolytic enzymes can then, be partially but not wholly replaced by gastric pepsin and intestinal trypsin.

Total pancreatectomy has little effect upon the digestion and absorption of carbohydrate indicating that pancreatic amylase can be wholly replaced by intestinal enzymes. (This phase of carbohydrate breakdown is of course not to be confused with the defective utilization of glucose which results from a lack of insulin.) The imperfect digestion and absorption of fat and protein may lead to a loss of from 20 to 35 per cent of the ingested calories, but the administration of pancreatic digestive extracts by mouth may materially reduce the loss of foodstuffs in the feces. Priestley and his associates²⁷ described a patient who survived total pancreatectomy for islet-cell

adenoma and whose subsequent insulin requirement was from 20 to 30 units daily. Her defective fat absorption was not improved by pancreatin, but a substantial decrease in fecal nitrogen followed its administration. Whitfield and his associates⁴¹ described the metabolic effects of total pancreatectomy in a man who survived total pancreatectomy for over two years. In their subject the gross defect in fat absorption was greatly reduced by large doses of pancreatin, but the nitrogen balance was not improved by such therapy. The insulin requirement in this patient was usually about 50 units per day or less.

These and other reports indicate a considerable variability in the metabolic effects of total pancreatectomy in different patients.

The rôle of the pancreatic enzymes in digestion and particularly in fat digestion, is still the subject of continued investigation. For example while it has been held by many that bile is indispensable for fat absorption a considerable amount of fat can be absorbed in dogs with biliary fistulae. Cohen and Annegers⁴ found that in dogs lacking pancreatic juice only about 40 per cent of dietary horse meat nitrogen, 30 per cent of casein nitrogen, and little or no casein hydrolysate nitrogen were lost. Nearly 40 per cent of dietary lard as well as oleic acid was lost in the feces of dogs lacking pancreatic juice. However, the administration of sodium bicarbonate to partially depancreatized dogs (by means of indwelling duodenal cannulas) reduced the fecal loss of dietary oleic acid to that observed in normal dogs. The bicarbonate in pancreatic juice seemed to account for the ability of normal dogs to absorb substantial amounts of fatty acid more completely than do dogs lacking pancreatic juice.

With the conclusions of Annegers and co-workers in mind, Pessoa, Kim and Ivy²⁵ studied fat absorption in the absence of bile and pancreatic juice in dogs. The main objective of their study was to test the hydrolytic aqueous solution hypothesis of

fat absorption by comparing the absorption of neutral fat and its constituent free fatty acids in normal, biliary-fistula, and pancreatic-duct-ligated dogs. They found that normal dogs absorbed triglycerides and fatty acids better than dogs deprived of bile or pancreatic juice. However, a considerable amount (70 per cent) of neutral fat, as corn oil, and of fatty acid (55 to 75 per cent) as corn-oil-fatty-acids and oleic acid, was absorbed in the absence of bile or pancreatic juice, this showed that neither bile nor pancreatic juice was indispensable for the absorption of any of the fats and fatty acids studied.

Use of Labeled Fat and Fatty Acid in the Study of Pancreatic Disease

Labeled fat is being used successfully in the study of pancreatic disease.³³ Reasoning that the over-all process of intestinal fat absorption could be divided arbitrarily into two phases, *enzymatic digestion* and *absorption*, Reemtsma, Malm, and Barker²⁸ utilized I¹³¹-labeled neutral fat (olive oil) and fatty acid (oleic acid) to separate these two phases of fat assimilation. Patients with "pure" pancreatic deficiency (surgical removal of the pancreas, obstruction of the pancreatic duct, or fibrous replacement of the pancreas) showed marked impairment of fat absorption but normal fatty acid absorption, that is, pancreatic enzymes were not available to split neutral fat to fatty acids, but when fatty acids themselves were fed absorption proceeded normally. In contrast, patients with malabsorption due to causes other than pancreatic deficiency demonstrated marked impairment of both neutral fat and fatty acid absorption.

Pancreatic Function Tests

The pancreatic function tests are not so specific as the clinician might wish them to be. Some of them will be reviewed.

SERUM AMYLASE LEVEL. In 1929 Elman and his associates⁹ demonstrated the diagnostic importance of an elevated serum amylase level in acute pancreatitis, and since that

time this has come to be relied upon as the principal laboratory evidence of acute pancreatitis. The normal serum amylase level in our hospital ranges from 70 to 300 Somogyi units per 100 ml of plasma. In acute pancreatitis this level may rise to 1000 units or even to 1500 units. It usually increases rapidly during the first 48 hours, persists for a variable number of days, and then gradually falls to normal. When the serum amylase level is markedly elevated and other clinical findings are compatible with pancreatitis, the diagnosis of pancreatitis is highly likely. Nevertheless, it is now appreciated that the serum amylase level may be—and commonly is—increased in the presence of a ruptured peptic ulcer. The administration of morphine sulfate may, by causing spasm of the sphincter of Oddi, produce a rise in the serum amylase level, as will abdominal trauma. Indeed, almost any acute condition within the abdomen may be associated with a rise in the serum amylase level, though the rise in conditions other than pancreatitis is rarely of the degree seen in this disease.

In contrast to acute obstruction, in chronic conditions which result in the obstruction of the pancreatic duct, such as tumors, cysts, and chronic pancreatitis, the serum amylase level may be normal. Here the presence or absence of a rise in the pancreatic amylase level in response to secretin injection may be more helpful. Sanchez-Ubeda and Rousselot³⁴ reported that the serum amylase level was significantly elevated in only 1 of 31 "normal" patients given secretin and methacholine (mécholyl), whereas 5 of 7 patients with chronic pancreatic disease showed a significant elevation. On the other hand, Shingleton and his associates¹⁸ did not find the serum amylase of diagnostic value after stimulation by secretin alone, or after urecholine and secretin, in patients with chronic pancreatic disease.

SERUM LIPASE. The serum lipase level is also increased in pancreatitis. It becomes elevated early in the attack and remains at a high level for several days longer than does

the amylase level. Although some consider the serum lipase level more useful than the amylase level in the diagnosis of pancreatitis, the former is more tedious to measure and thus is of less value clinically in deciding whether or not the individual has the disease. The serum amylase level can be determined within an hour or so.

URINARY DIASTASE. Diastase (starch-splitting enzyme) is absorbed from the alimentary tract into the blood stream and is excreted by the kidneys. In acute pancreatitis the urinary diastase level is usually increased.

DUODENAL DRAINAGE AND ANALYSIS OF PANCREATIC SECRETION. The use of an intubating duodenal tube for aspiration of the pancreatic secretion has been widely employed since the work of Lagerlof³⁰ was published in 1942. Using secretin as a stimulus, samples of duodenal juice were obtained through the tube. The control analyses included measurement of the volume of secretion, bicarbonate content and the pancreatic enzymes amylase, trypsin and lipase.

Even though values obtained by duodenal aspiration vary widely in normal individuals, significantly low values are often observed in patients with proved pancreatic disease. Accordingly the absence of these enzymes in the duodenal secretion is indicative of decreased pancreatic function and occurs in such diseases as chronic pancreatitis.

It has been stated that cytologic studies of aspirated duodenal contents may help in the diagnosis of carcinoma of the pancreas but we have had no experience with this technique.

Shingleton and his associates³¹ studied the duodenal secretion in 75 patients employing secretin as a stimulus (1 unit per kg., Lilly). Twenty six of these tests were in patients with suspected pancreatic disease but the results were excluded because the diagnoses were not definitely proved. Additional tests were done in 18 patients without disease: 9 with chronic relapsing pancreatitis, 4 with carcinoma of the pancreas, 7 patients

who had undergone transthoracic sympathectomy with splanchnicectomy for hypertension and 6 patients who were under the influence of a vagal blocking drug. Vagotomized and sympathectomized patients were tested 3 to 5 years postoperatively and the diagnosis in all patients suspected of having chronic pancreatitis and pancreatic carcinoma was proved by operation. A special 4 lumen tube was positioned under fluoroscopic control in the duodenum, and a 30 minute sample of duodenal juice was obtained before and after the intravenous injection of secretin. A significant reduction in volume, amylase concentration, and total amylase output were found after secretin injection in the patients with chronic pancreatitis and pancreatic carcinoma, and in vagotomized patients and those under the influence of the vagal blocking drug.

Although the duodenal suction method of study is admittedly time-consuming, uncomfortable to the patient, and may fail to show early derangement in pancreatic function, it is a useful tool in the further development of our knowledge of pancreatic physiology.

PANCREATIC FUNCTION AND BLOOD CLOTTING. That a relationship exists between pancreatic function and blood clotting has been long suspected, and the literature regarding this subject was reviewed by Storer and Kasdan.⁴⁰ They noted that multiple venous thrombi may be more frequently associated with carcinoma of the body or tail of the pancreas than with other types of carcinoma and, further, that a hemorrhagic tendency (consisting of both bleeding and perhaps an increased red cell fragility) is a characteristic finding in acute pancreatitis. They correlated the prothrombin time with the serum amylase and serum trypsin levels in cases of acute pancreatitis, and concluded that alterations in the serum trypsin levels might be responsible for the increased clotting tendency associated with carcinoma of the pancreas and for the bleeding tendency observed in acute pancreatitis. It is known that the immediate effect of the intr

injection of trypsin is a temporary decrease in plasma antithrombin, therefore, an increased production of trypsin such as is seen in acute pancreatitis might lead to venous thrombosis. Moreover, the secondary sustained elevation of the antithrombin factor, which occurs after an increase in trypsin levels, could conceivably lead to peripheral hemorrhagic tendencies.

Shingleton, Anlyan, and Hart³⁸ found by using a sensitized clotting test before and after the administration of pancreatic stimulant that a change in blood coagulability could be demonstrated in a significant number of patients with chronic relapsing pancreatitis and pancreatic carcinoma. These authors considered that in chronic pancreatic disease there exists some obstruction to the free flow of pancreatic enzymes during stimulation and that trypsin, entering the circulating blood, is responsible for the observed changes in coagulability. It appeared also that the removal of the pancreatic external secretion prolonged the blood clotting time. On the basis of their studies, plus reports from the literature, Shingleton and his associates suggested the following tentative hypothesis regarding the effects of trypsin and trypsin antagonists on blood coagulation: small amounts of trypsin will promote the coagulation of blood by the conversion of prothrombin to thrombin, whereas larger amounts produce shock with pro-

longation of clotting time due to the consumption of prothrombin and fibrinogen secondary to massive intravascular clotting.

Acute Pancreatitis

In the past, acute pancreatitis has usually been classified into two types, the *acute edematous* and *acute hemorrhagic* (necrotizing) forms. Yet, more and more it seems likely that the two may represent varying degrees of the same process. Of course, edema from surrounding inflammation, such as that associated with ruptured peptic ulcer, may also involve the pancreas.

Etiology of Acute Pancreatitis

① The "common channel" theory has long had many adherents, and it has about it an appealing simplicity. In essence, this hypothesis holds that fusion of the bile and pancreatic ducts into a common channel at the ampulla of Vater allows bile to activate pancreatic digestive enzymes, which then destroy pancreatic tissue. As early as 1901 Opie²⁴ proposed that a gallstone impacted at the sphincter of Oddi was essential in the pathogenesis of acute pancreatitis, but, since studies failed to confirm this finding in a significant percentage of cases, spasm of the sphincter was later proposed as an alternative factor in the production of "common channel" pancreatitis (Fig 87). Obstruction

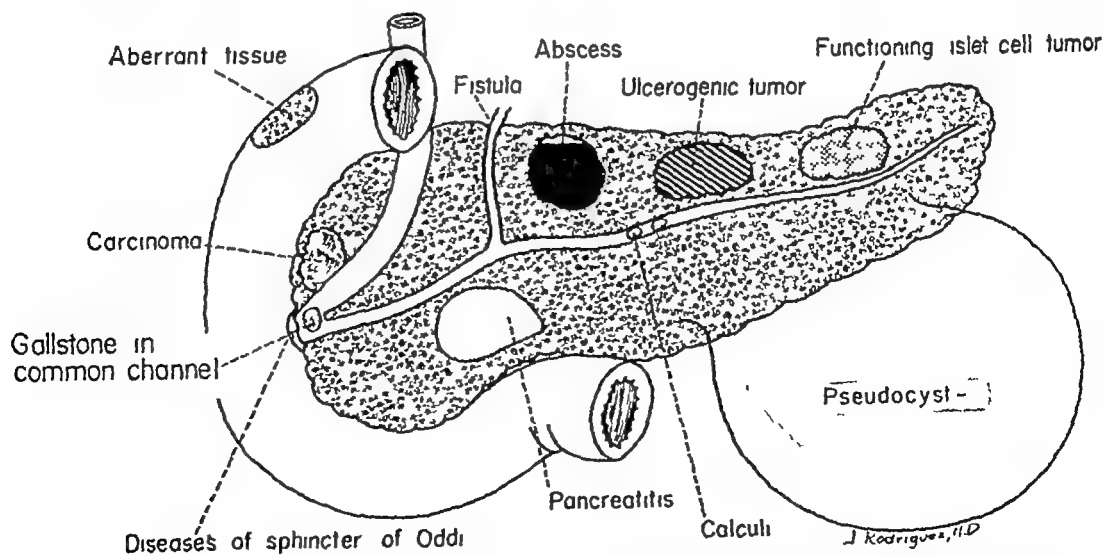


Fig 87 Diseases of the pancreas. Pancreatic exocrine hypofunction leads to meconium ileus in infants and sprue in adults. Endocrine insufficiency results in diabetes mellitus.

of the main or lesser pancreatic ducts—whether by calculus, inflammation, or epithelial metaplasia—also has been advocated as an important factor. Pancreatitis may be produced in dogs by injecting bile into the pancreatic duct under pressure.

Regardless of the conflict between different theories, *there is evolving a perhaps general belief that the important initial defect in the genesis of pancreatitis is that the organ is attacked by the ever present trypsin*—"whether because its inhibitor has been destroyed in the presence of an altered blood supply or because the old enzyme has a new unusual activity, or because a new enzyme is present with an additional effect."¹³

That a common channel does exist in a considerable number of patients has been verified by numerous studies. First in approximately 65 per cent of normal individuals it can be shown by anatomic studies at autopsy that the main pancreatic duct and the common bile duct enter a common channel before being discharged into the duodenum at the ampulla of Vater. Second, cholangiography performed through a T tube frequently shows a reflux of the injected radiopaque medium from the common duct into the main pancreatic duct in normal individuals and in an even greater proportion of individuals with pancreatitis. In patients having a common channel demonstrated by cholangiography various workers have found that many will exhibit a distinct rise in blood amylase following reflux of the dye into the pancreatic duct. Third, Popper²⁸ demonstrated pancreatic enzymes in gallbladder bile in 20 of 200 people without pancreatitis and in 16 of 18 people with the disease.

For the sake of objectivity, however one should cite some of the evidence that casts doubt upon the validity of the common channel factor as being the only or even the major cause of acute pancreatitis. First the reflux of bile into the main pancreatic duct is demonstrated in many patients who show no clinical evidence of pancreatitis and of the 65 per cent of normal individuals who

can be shown at autopsy to have a common channel, relatively few have had evidence of pancreatitis during life. Second, the pressure necessary to produce pancreatitis experimentally, by the injection of bile into the pancreatic ducts, is greater than can be physiologically developed by the gallbladder and liver.

As for obstruction of the ampulla by a calculus, Schmeiden and Sebening³⁰ found only 57 cases of ampullary stones in 1278 cases of pancreatitis. Rousselot³² emphasized that whereas spasm of the sphincter of Oddi is postulated as a cause of obstruction, such spasm has not been demonstrated experimentally. It is generally agreed that rupture of the pancreatic radicles is necessary if pancreatitis is to be produced by injection of bile into the pancreatic duct, yet, it is difficult to conceive of a pressure gradient sufficient to rupture the acini that could be generated under clinical conditions in a common biliary pancreatic system. Fine²⁷ found that the injection of bile at a pressure of 460 to 600 mm. Hg ruptured the pancreatic ductules and produced hemorrhagic pancreatitis, but under clinical circumstances spasm of the sphincter of Oddi would probably give way before such pressure was achieved. Doubilet and Mulholland⁸ found the normal sphincteric resistance to be about 150 mm. H₂O, which rose to about 300 mm. after spasm induced by morphine. Finally, further attacks of pancreatitis may occur when the common bile duct has been anastomosed to a defunctionalized Roux Y loop where there is no possibility for an admixture of bile and pancreatic juice in the pancreas.

It is apparent, therefore, that while the common channel theory is an extremely attractive hypothesis, it does not fit all circumstances.

SOME FURTHER FACTORS WHICH MOST PATIENTS WITH PANCREATITIS HAVE IN COMMON. Over 50 per cent of patients with pancreatitis have gallstones, and cholelithiasis has been found to be 11 times more common in autopsies on patients with pancreatitis than

in a control group of autopsies on patients without pancreatic disease.¹ Nevertheless, the majority of patients with cholelithiasis do not have pancreatitis, and cholecystectomy and common duct drainage for pancreatitis do not always prevent further attacks of the disease. On the other side of this argument, however, is the fact that removal of the gallbladder and adequate exploration and drainage of the common duct frequently do end the attacks of pancreatitis.

An additional factor is that of *alcoholism*. A very considerable percentage of patients with pancreatitis are *chronic drinkers*. Here again, though, the way in which alcohol enhances the probabilities of pancreatitis remains to be explained. It is known that alcohol in small amounts may stimulate both hydrochloric acid and pancreatic secretion. Richman and Colp²⁰ found that alcohol *per se* in contact with the duodenal mucosa produced large amounts of secretin. In higher concentrations this agent is inhibitory to both hydrochloric acid and pancreatic secretions. It causes marked irritation of the gastric and duodenal mucosa, and some have suggested that duodenitis is produced by alcohol and may cause occlusion of the ampulla, resulting in pancreatitis when a common channel is present.

Increased vagal tonus may also be important in the etiology of pancreatitis. As has been seen, overactivity of the vagus nerves results in an enzyme-rich secretion. A second way in which the increased vagal tone may influence pancreatic function is by increasing the gastric secretion of hydrochloric acid, this acts on the duodenal mucosa to stimulate the elaboration of secretin, the main stimulator of pancreatic flow. Ripstein and Thompson³¹ reported a study in dogs in which the mortality in experimental pancreatitis was reduced from 75 per cent in one group to 24 per cent in a second group protected by vagotomy. Similar results were obtained by Schaffarzick and his associates.³⁵

Finally, still other causes of pancreatitis

include trauma, systemic disease, bacterial infection, penetrating duodenal ulcer, and vascular accidents.

The Clinical Attack of Pancreatitis⁴⁴

Acute pancreatitis usually occurs in middle-aged patients and most typically in the obese and overindulgent male. It occurs also at times in young and otherwise healthy adults. There is frequently a history of gallbladder disease and perhaps of previous acute attacks of pain similar to the current one. Often the episode follows a heavy meal or alcoholic intake. The radiation of the pain has been described. In brief, the onset is acute and the distress is most marked in the epigastric region, perhaps extending to either the right or the left subcostal region or to the left subscapular, left lumbar, or left shoulder region. The pain is more or less constant and boring in nature, and is usually severe.

In severe cases of hemorrhagic or necrotizing pancreatitis, the patient exhibits a rapid pulse, cold clammy skin, cyanosis, and hypotension. This shock is initially due largely to intra-abdominal blood and fluid extravasation with resulting oligemia, this is reversible, but eventually the more obscure irreversible shock may develop. The fundamental cause of the irreversible shock of necrotizing pancreatitis is disputed. Some observers favor bacterial effects, and others favor products of tissue digestion. In any event, vomiting is often severe and persistent, associated with upper abdominal tenderness and rigidity which may become diffuse as the pancreatic enzymes spread.

While these are among the clinical findings in the more severe cases of pancreatitis, the findings in acute edematous pancreatitis may consist of little more than moderate pain and the patient is not critically ill. In fact, unless the serum amylase level is requested in all patients with upper abdominal pain, many mild cases of pancreatitis will be missed.

While a sharply elevated serum amylase level is the aid which establishes the diag-

nosis in most cases, this level may decline to below diagnostic levels within 48 to 72 hours after the onset of the disease. To extend the period of the time during which amylase determinations may be of diagnostic value Keith, Zollinger, and McCleery¹⁴ studied the amylase level in fluid obtained by paracentesis. In pancreatitis this fluid contains pancreatic enzymes in a high concentration and Keith and his associates found that with the patient in the sitting position sufficient peritoneal fluid could be obtained by careful paracentesis to perform the amylase test. As little as 0.2 ml. could be diluted 10 times and a satisfactory determination obtained by the Somogyi method. Inasmuch as the peritoneal fluid amylase level may remain elevated for from 2 to 3 days following a return to normal levels of the serum amylase concentration, this test extended in their hands the length of time in which amylase determinations were of diagnostic aid in pancreatitis. An incidental additional finding was the fact that by analyzing the peritoneal fluid for bile and by titrating for total acidity, in addition to determination of the amylase value the peritoneal tap could be of differential diagnostic aid in identifying cases of perforated peptic ulcer. The total serum bilirubin level is usually elevated, as is the leukocyte count.

The serum calcium level may be sharply depressed due to the incorporation of large amounts of calcium with the so called fat necrosis, which actually represents the formation of calcium soaps. In fact the amount of calcium that may be recovered from the pancreas in fatal cases can be far more than can be accounted for on the basis of losses from the extracellular fluid. Moyer²² has called attention to a possible etiologic relationship between calcium metabolism and pancreatitis, and we encountered acute pancreatitis in an elderly man who died of pneumonitis-emphysema pulmonary insufficiency approximately nine days following removal of a huge parathyroid adenoma (p. 562).

Röntgen examination may exhibit the

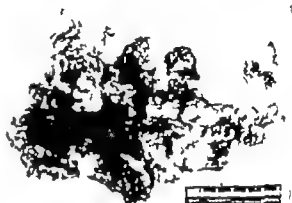
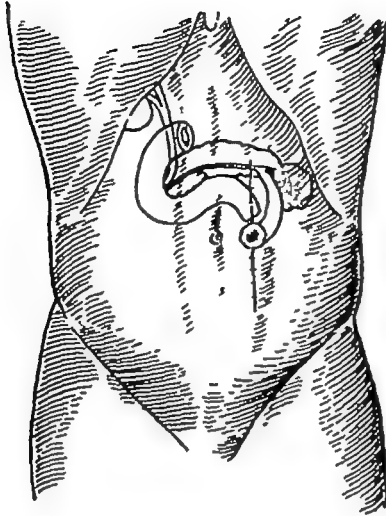


Fig. 88 Necrotizing pancreatitis. Above: Wide-spread fat necrosis. Note incidental leiomyoma of small bowel. Below: Necrosis of entire pancreas and surrounding tissue.

bowel patterns of paralytic ileus, widening of the duodenal loop on the barium study, gallstones and possibly pancreatic calcification if the acute attack is but a recurrence of chronic pancreatitis.

The gross pathologic finding is an enlarged and usually soft and friable organ. There is marked edema and often much hemorrhage and necrosis of pancreatic tissue depending upon the severity of the disease (Fig. 88). The findings may be confined to one portion of the pancreas, such as the head or tail, or may involve the entire organ. Most characteristic and helpful in the morphologic diagnosis are yellowish white spots in the surrounding fat, representing 'fat necrosis' (Fig. 88). As noted above this does not actually constitute fat necrosis but is the result of the chemical change produced by pancreatic lipase which splits neutral fat into glycerol and fatty acids. The fatty acids combine with ionizable calcium to

Persistent fistula following marsupialization
of pseudocyst



Anastomosis of mobilized
fistulous tract
to Roux-Y loop

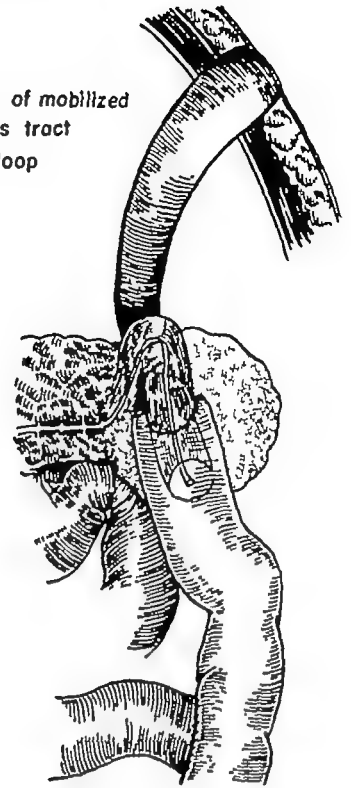


Fig 91 Left This patient had developed a chronic pancreatic fistula. Note abscess at tail of organ. Right: Fistulous tract implanted in isolated Roux-Y loop of jejunum when abscess rendered excision impracticable (From HARDY, J. D., AND BOWLIN, J. W. Some complications of pancreatic disease. Illustrative cases with notes on management. *Ann Surg*, 145: 848, 1957.)

tous compression of the intrapancreatic portion of the common bile duct, but if it is due to a common duct stone or fibrous stricture of the sphincter operative correction will be in order. *Diabetes mellitus* of varying degrees of severity may be observed from time to time. Lastly, one of the most sinister complications of acute pancreatitis is the development of *chronic relapsing pancreatitis*.

Chronic Relapsing Pancreatitis

There are those who consider chronic relapsing pancreatitis a disease in itself, but most observers believe that chronic pancreatitis results from repeated attacks of acute pancreatitis, gradually progressing in severity. Treatment is distressingly unsatisfactory. Rousselot³² reviewed the various treatments for chronic relapsing pancreatitis and concluded that the lack of consistency of results was due in considerable measure to the lack of care with which the diagnosis of chronic pancreatitis had been established. He advocated the following rigid criteria for the diagnosis of this condition. First,

there must have been repeated bouts of abdominal pain, accompanied by a significant elevation of amylase and lipase content of serum or urine or both. (He emphasized that one episode of pancreatitis does not signify that chronic relapsing pancreatitis is present, and more than one such attack must occur before this condition can be said to exist. It is well known that a considerable number of initial attacks of acute pancreatitis are followed by no sequelae, or at least are followed by prolonged asymptomatic periods. This is particularly likely when the pancreatitis accompanies cholecystitis with cholelithiasis and adequate gallbladder surgery is carried out.) Second, there should be biopsy evidence at operation of fat necrosis, edema of the gland, cyst formation, and acute or chronic inflammation. Third, symptoms accompanied by one or more of the following manifestations must point to the diagnosis of chronic atrophic pancreatitis, even in the absence of elevated serum enzymes: alteration in carbohydrate metabolism or in fat

digestion, demonstration of pancreatic calcification by x ray, and repeated—and significantly low—pancreatic secretion as demonstrated by duodenal drainage Rous et al emphasized that it is unlikely that massive pancreatic damage or repeated injury to the pancreas of any degree will not leave some residual anatomic stigmata that can and should be diagnosed by biopsy and microscopic examination of the tissue Failure to do this will result in reports from various clinics that cannot be compared

Physiologic Considerations in the Management of Chronic Relapsing Pancreatitis

Since no uniformly successful method of treatment currently exists for the management of chronic relapsing pancreatitis it was to be expected that many different types of management would be proposed A number of these will be presented briefly along with the physiologic rationale advanced to support the procedure

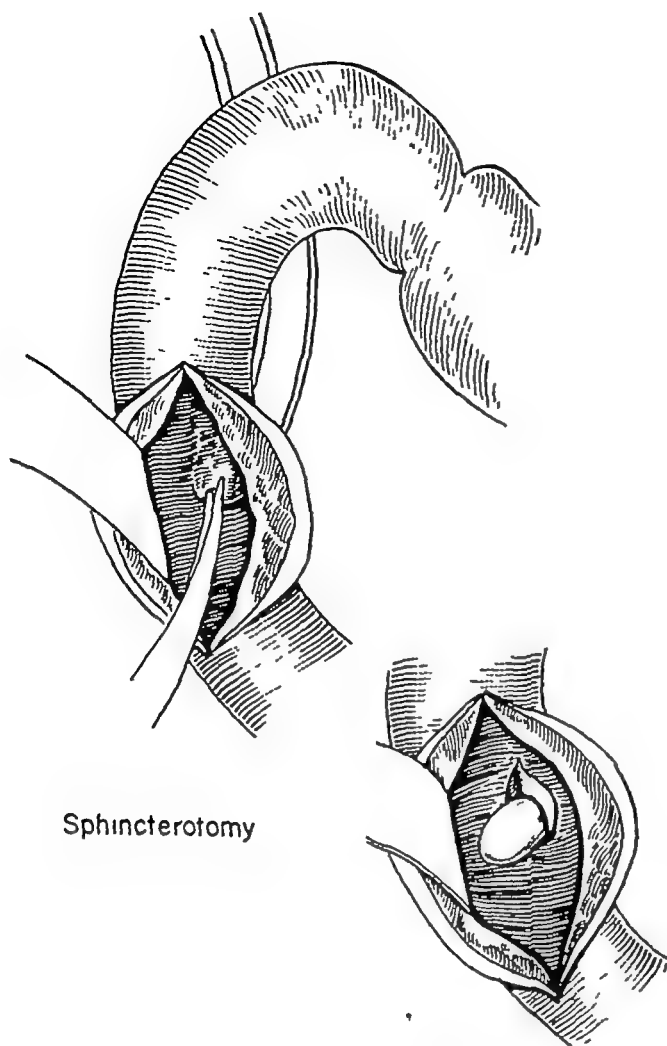
✓ **CHOLECYSTECTOMY AND CHOLEDOCHOSTOMY FOR REMOVAL OF GALLBLADDER AND COMMON DUCT STONES, WITH PROLONGED DRAINAGE OF THE COMMON BILE DUCT** This operation has much to recommend it since gallstones are associated with pancreatitis in a large proportion of cases Moreover symptoms commonly disappear permanently when adequate gallbladder and common duct surgery has been performed The precise relationship which exists between gallstones and pancreatitis has never been explained for the circumstance of gallstones blocking the ampulla of Vater with resulting reflux of bile into the pancreatic ducts is a relatively rare finding. However definitive gallbladder and common duct surgery should be performed as soon as the acute attack of pancreatitis has become quiescent

✓ **SPHINCTEROTOMY** This operation has been sponsored enthusiastically by Doubilet and Mulholland.^{6, 7} The rationale upon which it is based is that increased resistance at the sphincter of Oddi results in a reflux of bile into the pancreatic ducts The sphincter is

divided at one point either by the use of a sphincterotome passed down the common duct or under direct vision through a duodenal incision Not all authors are agreed as to the value of the operation, but an increasing number of surgeons are performing it There remains no question in our mind that stenosis of the sphincter does occasionally occur In one woman who had had repeated attacks of pancreatitis associated with mild jaundice the common bile duct was explored and when no catheter or Bakes dilator could be passed through the sphincter into the duodenum, the duodenum was opened and the papilla inspected The papilla and the immediate surrounding tissues were quite hard and fibrous, and renewed flushing of the common duct with saline under pressure revealed a pin point opening in the papilla, with only a small trickle of saline emerging The papilla and the sphincter were incised radially at one point on the circumference (Fig 92) During an 18-month follow up she had had no recurrence of abdominal pain or jaundice Yet the possibility of further fibrosis in a divided sphincter is perhaps a real one Moreover, the cholecystectomy that was performed in our patient may also have been beneficial Regardless of any other considerations, though this individual did have a fibrous stenosis of the sphincter of Oddi

VAGOTOMY McCleery, Kesterson, and Schaffarzick²¹ treated recurrent acute pancreatitis by vagotomy on the basis that neurogenic stimuli had an important role in the etiology of recurrent pancreatitis Vagotomy was performed in 11 patients and resulted in definite improvement in all It will be recalled that Ripstein²¹ was able to reduce the mortality in acute experimental pancreatitis in dogs by prior vagotomy Nevertheless this operation has not enjoyed wide use in the management of chronic relapsing pancreatitis

GASTRIC RESECTION The rationale of this procedure in the control of chronic relapsing pancreatitis is that the food and gastric acid are diverted from the duodenum and thus



Sphincterotomy

Fig 92 This patient had a definite fibrous stricture of the sphincter of Oddi, a rare finding in our experience (From HARDY, J D, AND BOWLIN, J W. Some complications of pancreatic disease. Illustrative cases with notes on management. *Ann Surg*, 145. 848, 1957)

secretin formation should be diminished. Relatively few cases have been treated in this manner. The combination of gastric resection and vagotomy has also been employed in a few cases.

CHOLEDOCHOJEJUNOSTOMY This procedure was proposed by Bowers and Greenfield.² The operative technique consists of boldly dividing the common bile duct, ligating the distal end, and anastomosing the proximal end to a Roux-Y loop of jejunum. At the time of their report five patients had been operated upon and had responded favorably. However, the follow-up period had been too short to permit definitive conclusions regarding this means of therapy in a disease in which remissions are common and most therapeutic measures unreliable.

SYMPATHECTOMY In 1947, Remhof and Baker³⁰ performed transthoracic sympathectomy and vagectomy as a means of treatment for chronic relapsing pancreatitis. They felt that the treatment was successful in their patients, and suggested that it be given additional trial. Actually, Mallet-Guy and de Beaujeu¹⁹ had treated chronic pancreatitis by unilateral splanchnicectomy several years earlier.

While the pain can be, and frequently is, relieved by nerve section, the progressive nature of the disease is not halted by this treatment, and dietary disturbances, abscess formation, pseudocysts, jaundice and other complications are likely to continue.

PANCREATIC RESECTION In a few instances resection of all or a part of the pancreas has been resorted to for the relief of jaundice, pain, or both. Yet this is a formidable undertaking at best and is not to be lightly entered into. If no jaundice is present and only pancreatic stones with associated pain need be managed, splanchnicectomy may be adequate.

Summarizing Comment

At the present time there is no generally effective means of management for chronic relapsing pancreatitis. Far too many of these pitiable individuals become opiate addicts as the months and years of distress pass by. Needless to say, the possibility of coexisting pancreatitis and carcinoma should be excluded by liberal pancreatic biopsy, for if cancer is found no further effort need be made to avoid adequate opiate dosage. Cancer is often overlooked initially.

Fibrocystic Disease of the Pancreas

Fibrocystic disease of the pancreas is a disease of infants and children and is characterized by widespread fibrocystic changes not only in the pancreas but in other organs such as the lungs, liver, and kidneys. There is virtually complete loss of external (exocrine) pancreatic secretion due to malformation of the ducts, a deficiency which gives rise to the disease known as meconium ileus.

In this condition the intestine is obstructed by masses of inspissated meconium, usually in the distal ileum, and removal of the sticky meconium presents a difficult problem. Olim²² found that a dilute solution of hydrogen peroxide facilitated cleansing at operation by effecting separation of the meconium from the bowel wall. This technique has not had a wide trial as yet. Gross¹⁰ has performed a double-barreled ileostomy, irrigating the distal loop postoperatively. Later the bowel continuity is restored. Koop¹⁵ also has used ileostomy for this purpose.

Tumors of the Pancreas

Islet-Cell Tumors

INSULIN SECRETING (BETA-CELL) TUMORS Hyperinsulinism is discussed under 'Surgical Endocrinology' (p. 586).

"ULCEROGENIC" TUMORS Zollinger and Ellison¹² have emphasized the role which certain tumors of the delta (?) cells of the islets of Langerhans may have in the pathogenesis of an extremely vicious type of peptic ulceration, associated with markedly elevated levels of acid and total volume of gastric secretion. Unless the tumor is found and removed, the surgical procedures usually employed for the management of the ulcer diathesis are likely to be followed by prompt ulcer recurrence. The mechanism by which these tumors cause peptic ulceration is obscure, since no humoral secretion by them has been identified. Occasionally they may be associated with hyperinsulinism but this is not usually the case. The tumors are frequently malignant. A patient with "malignant" acid secretion was reported by Machella, Rhoads and Hobler in 1949.¹⁷ This man may have represented a case of ulcerogenic tumor of the pancreas though such tumors had not been described at that time.

Pancreatic Carcinoma

Pancreaticoduodenal resection for carcinoma of the head of the pancreas or of the ampulla is hazardous mainly because com-

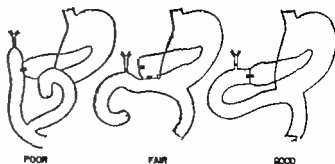


Fig 93 Methods of reconstruction following pancreaticoduodenectomy. The incidence of complications following pancreaticoduodenectomy is considerable and those associated with the management of the pancreatic duct are the most formidable. (Modified from RHODES J. E. In *Surgery—Principles and Practice* edited by Allen J. G. Harlan, H. V. Moyer, C. V. and Rhoads J. E., Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott 1957.)

plications are severe. In Figure 93 it may be seen that anastomoses involve the common bile duct, the jejunum and stomach and the pancreatic duct. The most common and the most serious of these complications is pancreatic fistula and this often ends fatally. The number of patients living and free of metastases at the end of five years is probably less than 5 per cent.

REFERENCES

1. BELL, E. T. Relation of cholelithiasis to acute hemorrhagic pancreatitis. *Arch. Path.* 41: 17 1916.
2. BLISS, W. R., BURCH, B., MARTIN, M. D., and ZOLLINGER, R. M. Localization of referred pancreatic pain induced by electric stimulation. *Gastroenterology* 16: 317 1950.
3. BOWERS, R. F. and GREENFIELD, J. Choledochojejunostomy. Its role in the treatment of chronic pancreatitis. *Ann. Surg.* 134: 99 1951.
4. COHEN, B. J., and ANNEVIER, J. H. Fecal loss of various dietary nutrients in dogs lacking pancreatic juice. *Gastroenterology* 25: 87 1953.
5. DONCASTER, J. E. C., and HALET, R. E. A method of secretin assay. *J. Physiol.* 118: 182 1932.
6. DOUBILET, H., and MULHOLLAND, J. H. Surgical treatment of calcification of the pancreas. *Ann. Surg.* 132: 786 1950.
7. DOUBILET, H. and MULHOLLAND, J. H. The surgical treatment of pancreatitis. *S. Clin. North America* 29: 339-359 1910.
8. DOUBILET, H. and MULHOLLAND, J. H. The

- surgical treatment of recurrent acute pancreatitis by endocholedochal sphincterotomy Surg, Gynec & Obst, **86**: 295, 1948
- 9 ELMAN, R. R., ARNESON, N., AND GRAHAM, E. A. Value of blood amylase estimations in the diagnosis of pancreatic disease Arch Surg, **19**: 943, 1929
 - 10 GROSS, R. E. *The Surgery of Infancy and Childhood* Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Company, 1953
 - 11 HILDES, J. A., FERGUSON, M. H., AND BARTLETT, L. C. The water and electrolyte excretion of the human pancreas Gastroenterology, **21**: 64, 1952
 - 12 HOWARD, J. M., JAMES, C. L., AND EVANS, S. S. Physiological studies on the external pancreatic secretion in man S Forum, **2**: 577, 1952
 - 13 HOWES, E. L. Use of enzymes in surgery S Clin North America, **36**: 497, 1956
 - 14 KEITH, L. M., JR., ZOLLINGER, R. M., AND McCLEERY, R. S. Peritoneal fluid amylase determinations as an aid in diagnosis of acute pancreatitis Arch Surg, **61**: 930, 1950
 - 15 KOOP, C. E. Personal communication
 - 16 LAGERLOF, H. Pancreatic function and pancreatic disease studied by means of secretin Acta med Scandinav, Supp **128**: 1-289, 1942
 - 17 MACHELLA, T. E., RHOADS, J. E., AND HOBLE, R. E. Gastric hyperchlorhydria with three primary jejunal ulcers and hypoproteinemia. Report of case relieved by total gastrectomy after subtotal gastric resection had proved inadequate Gastroenterology, **13**: 357, 1949
 - 18 MAHAFFEY, J. H., AND HAYNES, B. W. Observations of pancreatic juice in a case of external pancreatic fistula in man Am Surgeon, **19**: 174, 1953
 - 19 MALLET-GUI, P., AND DE BEAUJEU, M. J. Treatment of chronic pancreatitis by unilateral splanchnicectomy Arch Surg, **60**: 233, 1950
 - 20 McCALGHAN, J. M., SINER, B. L., AND SULLIVAN, C. J. The external secretory function of the human pancreas Physiologic observations Arch Int Med, **61**: 739, 1938
 - 21 McCLEERY, R. S., KESTERSON, J. E., AND SCHAFFARZICK, W. R. A clinical study of the effect of vagotomy on recurrent acute pancreatitis Surgery, **30**: 130, 1951
 - 22 MOYER, C. A. Personal communication
 - 23 OLIM, C. B., AND CIUTI, A. Meconium ileus. New method of relieving obstruction Ann Surg, **140**: 736, 1954
 - 24 OPF, E. L. The etiology of acute hemorrhagic pancreatitis Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp, **12**: 182, 1901
 - 25 PESSOA, V. C., KIM, K. S., AND IVY, A. Absorption in absence of bile and pancreatic juice Am J Physiol, **174**: 209, 1955
 - 26 POPPER, H. L. Etiology of acute pancreatitis Am J Digest Dis, **9**: 186, 1942
 - 27 PRIESTLEY, J. T., COMFORT, M. W., AND CLIFFE, J. Total pancreatectomy for insulinism due to islet-cell adenoma and cure at 16 months after operation. Evaluation of metabolic studies Ann Surg, **119**: 211, 1944
 - 28 REEMTSMA, K., MALM, J. R., AND BARKER, L. The comparative absorption of lactose and fatty acid in the study of pancreatic disease Surgery, **42**: 22, 1957
 - 29 RICHMAN, A., AND COLP, R. Chronic recurrent pancreatitis treatment by subtotal pancreatectomy and vagotomy Ann Surg, **133**: 1950
 - 30 RIENHOFF, W. F., JR., AND BAKER, B. M. Cholelithiasis and chronic pancreatitis. Preliminary report of a case of apparently successful treatment by transthoracic laparotomy and vagotomy J A Surg, **134**: 20, 1947
 - 31 RIPSTEIN, C. B., AND THOMPSON, A. G. Chronic pancreatitis. The influence of the autonomic nervous system on the course of experimental pancreatitis S Forum, **1**: 161, 1951
 - 32 ROUSSELOT, L. M., SANCHEZ-UBEDA, R., AND GIANNELLI, S. Choledechoenterostomy in chronic relapsing pancreatitis New England J Med, **250**: 267, 1954
 - 33 RUFFIN, J. M., SHINGLETON, W. W., BAKER, G. J., HYMAN, J. C., ISLEY, J. K., SANCHEZ, A. P., AND SCHNER, M. F., JR. I¹³¹I-labeled fat in the study of intestinal absorption England J Med, **255**: 594, 1956
 - 34 SANCHEZ-UBEDA, R., AND ROUSSELOT, L. M. Serum enzymatic response (diastase, lipase) after stimulation of external pancreatic secretion with secretin and methacholine. A preliminary report Surg, Gynec & Obst, **93**: 283, 1951
 - 35 SCHAFFARZICK, W. R., FERRAN, H. H., AND McCLEERY, R. S. A study of the effect of vagotomy on experimental pancreatitis Surg, Gynec & Obst, **93**: 9, 1951
 - 36 SCHWIMMER, V., AND SERENING, W. Surgery of the pancreas with especial consideration of pancreatic necrosis Surg, Gynec & Obst, **46**: 735, 1928
 - 37 SCHWIMMER, F., JACOB, S., PLESKY, L., AND FINE, J. Further studies on the role of bacteria in death from acute pancreatitis in the rat Surg, **33**: 367, 1953
 - 38 SHINGLETON, W. W., ANDERSON, W. G., AND FINE, J.

- D The diagnosis of pancreatic disorders by certain laboratory procedures. *Ann Surg.* **136**: 578, 1932
- 39 SHINGLETON W W., FAWCETT B., AND VETTER, J S. *Pancreatic secretion and response to secretin after vagotomy and sympathectomy* *S Forum* **1**: 155 1931
- 40 STOKER J AND KAZDAN P. The relation of the pancreas to blood coagulation *Surgery* **33**: 683 1953
- 41 WHITFIELD A G W., GOUREVITCH A., AND THOMAS G. Metabolic effects of total pancreatectomy in man *Lancet* **262**: 180 1952
- 42 WRIGHT S. *Applied Physiology* Ed. 9 London Oxford University Press 1955
- 43 ZOLLINGER R M AND ELLISON E H. Primary peptic ulcerations of the jejunum associated with islet cells of the pancreas *Ann Surg.* **142**: 709 1955
- 44 ZOLLINGER R M, KEITH L M JR AND ELLISON E H. *Pancreatitis* New England J Med **251**: 497 1954

Blood Transfusion Problems, Bloodclotting and Coagulation Defects, and Splenic Dysfunction

Blood Transfusion Problems²³

Blood Groups: A Few Fundamentals

THE ABO SYSTEM The importance of blood groups in blood transfusion is so well known that they need only be mentioned here. In 1901 Landsteiner¹¹ demonstrated that human beings could be divided into four groups depending upon whether the red cells contained one (A) or another (B) agglutino-gen, or both (AB), or neither (O). With this knowledge transfusion was made relatively safe, but reactions were still frequent.

THE MN GROUPS Landsteiner and Levine¹² demonstrated the entirely different M, N, and MN groupings. While these did not often cause hemolytic reactions, it was concluded that upon occasion, and particularly after repeated transfusions, they could do so.

THE Rh SYSTEM In 1940 Landsteiner and Wiener¹³ discovered the Rh system, using sera prepared by the sensitization of various animals to the red cells of the Rhesus monkey. They found that the red cells of about 85 per cent of white persons were agglutinated by anti-Rhesus (anti-Rh) serum, the other 15 per cent failed to react in this way. The reactors were termed Rh positive and the nonreactors Rh negative. Since the original description of these groupings, the Rh problem has been made far more complex through the identification of subgroupings of Rh antigens. Nevertheless, in general the

practical importance of the Rh factors lies essentially in avoiding the administration of Rh positive blood to an Rh negative recipient. The first such transfusion does not usually result in a reaction, but it serves as an antigen to begin sensitization of the recipient to subsequent transfusions of Rh positive blood. Further, it is particularly important to avoid transfusing fertile Rh negative women with Rh positive blood. Levine, Katzin, and Burnham¹⁴ first demonstrated an abnormal hemagglutinin in the serum of mothers of infants with erythroblastosis fetalis, an hemagglutinin which agglutinated the red cells of the infants as well as of the fathers. It was subsequently shown that erythroblastosis fetalis is the result of immunization of the mother to the Rh positive cells of the fetus; thereafter, the Rh agglutinin so produced in the mother passes into the circulation of the infant and destroys its red cells. A severe hemolytic anemia develops and is manifested by jaundice, anemia, and pigment deposition. The disease usually does not manifest itself until the end of a second or third pregnancy, just as the first transfusion of Rh positive blood to an Rh negative recipient does not produce a reaction. However, it is believed that an Rh positive transfusion can sensitize an Rh negative girl for life, thus predisposing to trouble even with her first pregnancy.

Other blood groupings are known and

these are especially useful in medicolegal problems. For example, it is estimated that in paternity suits a falsely accused man can be exonerated in more than 50 per cent of cases if the ABO, MN, and Rh tests are all known for child, mother, and accused man. With certain other known groupings this figure can be increased to 60 per cent.²³

Complications of Blood Transfusion

Considering the enormous amount of blood transfused each year in most large hospitals, it is perhaps surprising that serious or fatal reactions do not occur more frequently. That such does not occur is a tribute to the elaborate safeguards that blood banks have established. And yet usually due to carelessness there still occur enough serious reactions to dispel any tendency to complacency. These reactions range from mild febrile episodes to the hemolytic phenomena that lead to renal shutdown (Fig. 94).

The greater the care with which cross matching is carried out, the fewer serious reactions there will be. The red cells of the

donor should be mixed with the serum of the recipient and those of the recipient with the serum of the donor. If no agglutination of the cells of either is seen under the low power of the microscope, the blood is usually safe for transfusion—though this may not be so after repeated transfusions, pregnancies, or in patients with blood dyscrasias.

1. FEVER WITH OR WITHOUT CHILLS. The commonest reaction to transfusion consists of varying degrees of fever. The more marked elevations are likely to follow a chill. The cause of such reactions is not always apparent, though it has been shown that careful cleansing of equipment reduces the incidence of these phenomena. The more serious ones are those which follow the infusion of contaminated blood—a special danger if blood has been allowed to remain out of the refrigerator for more than a short while before transfusion. The transfusion of blood heavily contaminated with bacteria can result in a chill and high fever that are followed by shock and death.

Additional causes of minor reactions are listed in Figure 94.

TRANSFUSION REACTIONS

Type	Cause	Frequency
		<i>Per Cent</i>
Pyrogenic	Bacterial pyrogens, etc.	1.8-2.0
Urticarial	Sensitivity to (?)	0.8-1.1
Hemolytic	Mismatched blood	0.1-0.5
Iso sensitization	Sensitization through repeated transfusions and in pregnancy	Not rare
Circulatory overload	Injudicious augmentation of blood volume	Not rare
'Cold reaction'	Cold agglutinins (?)	Not rare
Transmission of disease	Homologous serum jaundice Syphilis, malaria, etc.	0.45-1.0—rare
Plasma sensitivity	Heat labile plasma factor	Especially in paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (PNH)
Infections	Grossly contaminated blood	Rare
Air embolism	Entry of air into veins	Rare
Fat embolism	Transfusion via bone marrow	Rare
Hypocalcemia	Exchange transfusions	Not rare
Hemorrhagic diathesis	Massive transfusions, etc.	Rare (?)

Fig. 94. Many minor transfusion reactions are never satisfactorily explained, but these become less frequent as knowledge of blood factors continues to unfold. (From WINTROBE, *M. M. Clinical Hematology*, Ed. 4, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1956.)

MASSIVE TRANSFUSION AND OVERTRANSFUSION. It is remarkable how much well-matched blood can be transfused, when required, without detectable ill effect. It is not at all unusual to use upwards of 15 pints during resuscitation of a patient or during operation for aneurysm; and if significant shock is prevented such patients do well—despite the fact that the total circulating blood volume may have been replaced several times. This is not to say, of course, that untoward effects do not occur in some patients following massive transfusion. When complications do arise following massive transfusions of well-matched blood they are apt to represent *coagulation defects* and *overtransfusion*.

Overtransfusion can readily occur in children, and it can readily occur in adults following pneumonectomy or heart surgery. In the absence of an accurate measurement of actual blood loss the use of the blood pressure level as a guide to blood requirements is usually reliable in preventing overtransfusion. Nevertheless, a considerable volume of blood loss must occur before the blood pressure declines and the pulse rate quickens. Thus to use a fall in blood pressure as the guide to transfusional requirements is not entirely satisfactory either. However, by and large, the blood pressure level is the indicator most often used clinically. We use it ourselves, though with the additional aid of a graduated suction trap bottle in which most of the lost blood is collected. Excessive transfusion leading to pulmonary edema or heart failure is further discussed on page 349.

REACTIONS DUE TO INCOMPATIBLE BLOOD. These are the most serious reactions and they are often fatal. They usually occur due to carelessness, and hence are rarely excusable: The nurse or intern on the ward fails to read the card; the anesthetist puts up a new bottle of blood with fatal haste when massive blood loss is occurring; the technician fails to label blood for cross-matching immediately after it is drawn—all these circumstances may result in the

transfusion of incompatible blood. Incredible as it might seem, the writer once was present at a discussion of the technique and hazards of blood transfusion when, at the close of the hour, incompatible blood was started accidentally as a demonstration. The nurse present had been given the blood by another nurse, and neither the instructor nor the nurse present had checked the blood against the patient's identity. The wrong blood was begun. Fortunately scarcely more than 50 cc had gone in before the patient began to have various pains and developed a chill—at just about the time another nurse came running with the correct blood. The needle was yanked out and, fortunately, the patient soon became afebrile and had no serious sequelae such as oliguria or anuria. *Carelessness is the commonest cause of transfusion reactions.*

Even 50 cc of mismatched blood can produce a violent reaction that is followed by *hemoglobinemia*, *hemoglobinuria*, and renal shutdown. These phenomena are usually preceded by restlessness, anxiety, flushing of the face, precordial oppression, tachycardia, and pain in the back and thighs. If the patient is under general anesthesia, the shivering will of course be absent; however, there may be a *fall in blood pressure and excessive oozing*. The latter may be due in some cases to thrombocytopenia, associated with a degree of hypoprothrombinemia and hypofibrinogenemia. However, the rôle of shock in reducing the contractility of peripheral vessels is perhaps more important. The initial leukopenia is followed by leukocytosis.

The hemolytic effects of the patient's serum against the infused mismatched cells is quickly apparent as the free hemoglobin level in the serum of the recipient rises and hemoglobin is passed in the urine. If the degree of incompatibility has been limited to the minor factors or if only a small amount of the mismatched blood has been given the entire clinical picture may subside in 24 hours; on the other hand it may proceed to uremia and eventual death. The

mechanism involved in the production of lower nephron nephrosis appears to be that of a disruption of the renal tubule due to focal renal cortical ischemia hemoglobine mia *per se* is not a primary factor in producing the renal damage

Management of transfusion reactions due to incompatible blood The general management of renal shutdown was discussed on p 76 and need not be repeated here However certain specific points should be noted First, a transfusion should be stopped when the patient begins having a reaction—except perhaps in the highly exceptional circumstance when a degree of reaction is expected in the patient with a blood dyscrasia who has had multiple transfusions even here it is usually better to be safe than sorry Second, the remaining blood is returned to the laboratory promptly for rechecking and for culture to be certain that neither mismatched nor contaminated blood was given Third improperly stored blood may have contained excessive amounts of free hemoglobin or potassium, due to red cell hemolysis Fourth the probability of a degree of renal damage and oliguria should be anticipated and fluid intake adjusted accordingly The individual should be weighed and baseline plasma chemistry values should be obtained

Alkalinization of the urine has not been noticeably beneficial and has been generally discarded As stated above it is now believed that hemoglobin precipitation in the tubules is not a major factor in producing oliguria and the excess sodium given for alkalinization may render fluid control more difficult during the period of oliguria A rigid intake-output record should be started just as soon as a serious transfusion reaction is suspected and the free hemoglobin levels of plasma should be followed over the next few hours.

Other Considerations in Transfusional Therapy

There has been the tendency to give more and more blood for more and more operations Of course if blood is actually re-

quired to treat oligemia it must be used On the other hand, the unnecessary use of transfusion subjects the patient to hazards that are not justified The routine cholecystectomy or thyroidectomy does not require a blood transfusion, and there is no point in exposing the patient to the possibility of a transfusion reaction or to homologous serum hepatitis Judiciously employed, blood transfusion is, in contrast, a cornerstone of modern surgical practice, and thoracic surgery and many abdominal operations would be impossible without it

The use of universal Type O blood is not without distinct hazards, as seen in Figure 95 This patient exhibited severe hemolysis,

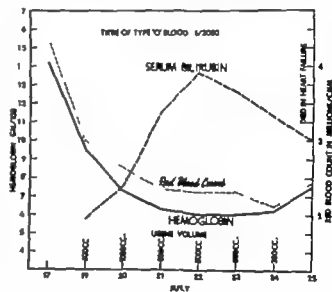


Fig 95 The use of universal Type O blood should be restricted to absolute emergencies

Hazards of using universal Type O blood. (D C., aged 73 385410 Wt. 77.4 kg. Type A Rh+) The rare but distinct risk of Group O blood administered to a patient of another blood group when the iso-agglutinin titer of Group O is excessive as illustrated graphically by the acute decline in the red cell count and hemoglobin concentration with concurrent development of icterus This is the so-called "minor" field or crossmatch wherein the incompatibility is that of the donor's serum for the patient's cells Note that in spite of the severe degree of hemolysis the daily urine volume was moderately good This is in contrast with the oliguric or anuric states which follow reactions wherein the cells of the donor are incompatible with the serum of the recipient. (From ALLEN J G In *Surgery—Principles and Practice* edited by Allen, J G., Harkins, H N., Moyer C A., and Rhoads, J E Philadelphia, J B Lippincott Company 1957)

but did not develop serious renal complications—in sharp contrast to the oliguria or anuria that usually follows the transfusion of blood wherein the cells of the donor are incompatible with the serum of the recipient. Type O blood should be given to patients whose blood groups are A, B, or AB only when an emergency exists—as it not infrequently does.

Blood Clotting and Coagulation Defects

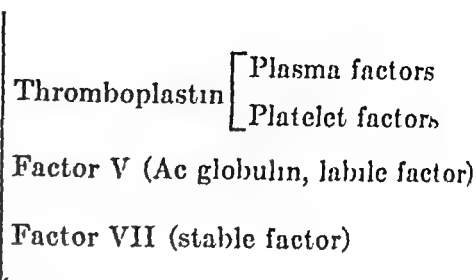
Mechanism of Coagulation

The physiology of blood clotting is complex,⁹ and the situation has not been improved by the large number of often conflicting publications that have appeared in recent years. Too, the endocrine organs are being increasingly implicated in these processes.^{3, 5} Fortunately, however, the essential features of the classic concept of coagulation still hold. The newer advances have had to do with subfactors which promote the basic processes of the conversion of prothrombin to thrombin, and of fibrinogen to fibrin.⁶

The following discussion will skirt the conflicts which rage among the coagulationists, in other words, this discussion is for those who are not specialists in the coagula-

tion field. Repetition and frequent cross reference are used to clarify. A skeleton outline of coagulation is as follows:²

1 Prothrombin



Thrombin

2 Fibrinogen

Thrombin

Fibrin

3 Clot Retraction

4 Fibrinolysis

In the above scheme, coagulation is initiated by contact of the blood with a "rough" surface. Such contact triggers clotting by causing disintegration of platelets and release of the platelet lipoid thromboplastic factor; it also activates plasma thromboplastin component (PTC) as well as Factor VII, both of which circulate in an inactive form (Fig 96). Tissue injury yields thromboplastin directly. The thromboplastin made available from these three sources now combines with Factor VII—stable factor, serum prothrombin conversion accelerator (SPCA)—to form a minimal amount of thrombin. This initially formed thrombin then triggers the accelerator system. Factor V (accelerator globulin, Ac globulin) is now activated, and Factors V and VII interact in the presence of calcium to form "prothrombinase." According to Wintrobe²¹ this last substance, which also requires the presence of calcium, accelerates the conversion of prothrombin to thrombin. Thus, thrombin is now present in sufficient quantity to convert fibrinogen to fibrin.

This theory of the clotting mechanism is based largely upon the views of Owen and

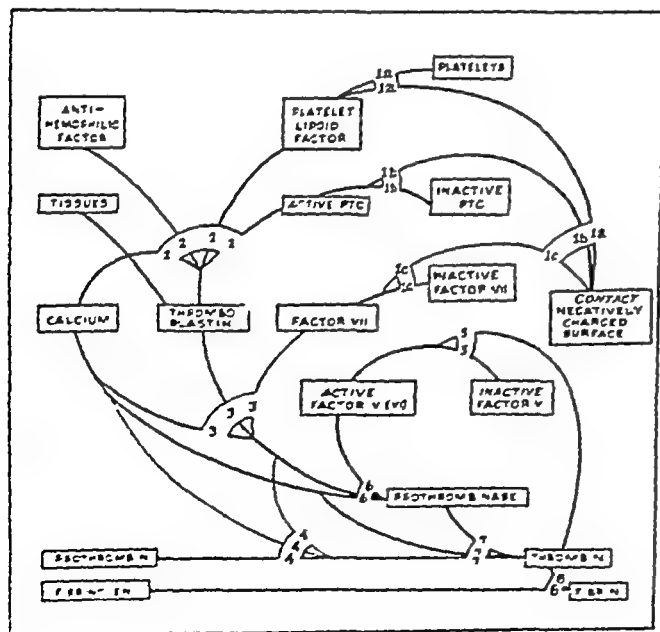


Fig 96 Owen's scheme of blood coagulation, is modified slightly by Wintrobe (see text) (From WINTROBE, M. M. *Clinical Hematology*, Ed. 1 Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1956)

his associates¹⁷ and the steps are illustrated more elaborately in Figure 96. There are of course several other current theories, but it would serve no useful purpose to give them all. Let it be clearly understood that *all theories of blood clotting are tentative, at least in part*.

Since the classic factors—prothrombin, thromboplastin, calcium, and fibrinogen—remain valid, it will be apparent that the newer knowledge of coagulation centers around the factors that, with thromboplastin are responsible for the conversion of prothrombin to thrombin among these are Factor V (Ac globulin, accelerator globulin, labile factor), Factor VII (stable factor, SPCA proconvertin convertin), and anti-hemophilic globulin (AHG). Further clarification of the rôle of these factors in the clotting process may be achieved by inspection of the following scheme of Wintrobe²³

First phase

AHG + platelets $\xrightarrow{\text{PTC}}$ Intermediate product

Intermediate product +

Factor V $\xrightarrow{\text{Factor VII}}$ thromboplastin

Second phase

Prothrombin $\xrightarrow{\text{thromboplastin}}$ thrombin

Third phase

Fibrinogen $\xrightarrow{\text{thrombin}}$ fibrin

This conceptual outline was based upon the report of Biggs, Douglas, and Macfarlane (Biggs, R. Douglas A. S., and Macfarlane R. G. The formation of thromboplastin in human blood *J. Physiol.* 119: 89, 1953).

While there is disagreement concerning the need of platelets for initiation of the clotting process, platelets ultimately contribute an important thromboplastin factor. In addition, the platelets are responsible for normal clot retraction.

AHG and Factor V are consumed during

normal clotting; their consumption preceding that of prothrombin which is also almost completely utilized.

Physical and Chemical Properties of the Clotting Factors²

✓Prothrombin has the characteristics of a globulin and is contained in Cohn's Fraction III 2. Its molecular weight is about 140,000 and gradually disappears during storage in citrated plasma at +5°C.

✓Thrombin is a protein with the characteristics of an albumin and has a molecular weight of about half that of prothrombin.

✓Fibrinogen is of course a protein, with a molecular weight of about 400,000. It is contained in Cohn's Fraction I 2.

✓Factor I (Ac globulin, labile factor) is very sensitive to storage at room temperature or at +5°C, and under such conditions a great portion of its activity rapidly disappears.

✓Factor III (SPCA, proconvertin-convertin) decreases during treatment with Dicumarol, as may prothrombin. Factor V does not. Factor VII is quite stable during storage, whereas Factor V is not. For example, Factor VII remains practically unaltered for 4 days at +25 to 37°C in stored serum. Therefore, since prothrombin and Ac globulin (Factor V) gradually disappear from the serum, it is possible to obtain a serum in which these two factors have been eliminated. This is a useful point both in elucidating the deficient factor in clinical coagulation problems and in clinical therapy. Prothrombin and Factor VII deficiencies can usually be corrected by administration of vitamin K₁ oxide. Factor V does not respond as well to vitamin K₁ therapy, but it can be supplied on a temporary basis by freshly drawn blood (less than 4 days old).

✓Thromboplastin factors can be deficient, and hemophilia has been found to be due to a deficiency of a globulin that has since been called AHG (antihemophilic globulin). The addition of a small amount of this globulin to the blood of the hemophiliac temporarily returns the clotting time to normal. There

are other alleged factors (Fig 96), but it is desirable to preserve simplicity here in the pursuit of clarity

✓ Calcium is important in several phases of the clotting process. While varying the calcium concentration in the *in vitro* experiments can alter clotting significantly, we have never seen abnormal bleeding that was clearly due to hypocalcemia; in fact, one doubts that during life the serum calcium level ever falls so low as to preclude clotting

Natural Inhibitors of Blood Coagulation

Throughout this volume the elaborate system of checks and balances which exists in the body has been emphasized. It would be surprising indeed if there were not present anticlotting factors which oppose those that promote clotting. That is, *failure of the blood to clot may be due either to a deficiency of a substance required for coagulation (e.g., thromboplastin components, prothrombin, Factor V, Factor VII) or to an excess of a circulating anticoagulant substance*. Such a substance might resemble heparin and would oppose various of the coagulation factors. Such substances do occur.

If a coagulation defect is due to a deficiency of AHG, for example, it is correctible by the use of fresh normal plasma, if it is due to a natural circulating anticoagulant, on the other hand, the clotting time is not readily corrected by the addition of normal plasma in small amounts.

Clot Retraction

It was noted earlier that normal clot retraction is dependent upon an adequate number of platelets. If these are deficient the clot retraction is impaired, as seen in idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura where capillary fragility and the bleeding time are also increased.

Fibrinolysis

Fibrinolysis is an important aspect of the total coagulation mechanism, although acting on the final product, fibrin. Fibrinolysin is contained in Cohn's Fraction III-3. In certain diseases, as with some prostatic can-

cers, the amount of circulating fibrinolysin is increased and serious bleeding may occur. This is even more serious if an associated fibrinogen deficiency exists.

Diagnosis and Treatment of Coagulation Defects in Surgical Patients

During most operations blood clotting is adequate and the surgeon hardly gives it a thought. In some circumstances, however, defective clotting may occur: (1) antecedent liver disease may have lowered the prothrombin level and the level of Factor VII (and Factor V), (2) Dicumarol therapy may have lowered the level of Factor VII (and prothrombin), (3) heparin therapy may have increased antithrombic activity, (4) mismatched blood may cause diffuse oozing (due to thrombocytopenia, hypoprothrombinemia, and hypofibrinogenemia²), (5) a history of "bleeding" may suggest a hemophilic type of individual (AHG deficiency), or (6) the need for massive transfusion may have lowered the platelet count to a critical level. Should any of these circumstances exist, the surgeon should be alert to the possibility of excessive bleeding. If anticoagulant therapy is indicated in a patient who may later require surgery, heparin is both more effective²² and its effect more readily reversed than is that of Dicumarol.

Unfortunately, the most serious complications due to coagulation defects are likely to be encountered unexpectedly during surgery, and under these circumstances the surgeon is often at a loss to explain the cause of the hemorrhagic diathesis. Nevertheless, with the proper tests the defect can usually be identified, and reasonably effective therapy employed.⁷ A few of these tests will now be reviewed, but for the finer details the reader is referred to the monographs noted in the bibliography. That of De Nicola² is especially helpful, and various parts of this discussion have been gathered from it.

STEPS IN IDENTIFYING A COAGULATION DEFECT. First, the whole blood clotting time should be performed. The most common causes of a prolonged clotting time are: (1)

hemophilic syndromes (e.g., AHG or PTC deficiency) (2)—endogenous circulating anticoagulants (e.g. antithrombin or anti thromboplastin) —(3)—exogenous anticoagulants (e.g. heparin) and (4) hypofibrinogenemias (e.g., during difficult or complicated labor, various operations) ^{18 19}

The steps that may be followed in identifying which of these various possibilities is actually the cause of the prolonged whole blood clotting time are shown in Figure 97. Suffice it to state again that small amounts of fresh normal plasma can decrease the clotting time of an hemophilic plasma but not the clotting time of a plasma containing anticoagulants. Further tests are required to identify specific offenders in these groups. The laboratory methods used in identifying deficiencies of the other factors in Figure 98 need not be detailed here.

The *apparently normal clotting time* is a relatively new concept, but it is now accepted that the whole blood clotting time can be normal or only slightly prolonged when in fact, a definite coagulation defect does exist (Fig. 98).

In general, as pointed out earlier coagulation defects are due either to a *deficiency* of one or more factors required for clotting or to an *inhibition* of one or more such factors. Thus, there may be deficiencies of the following:

✓1 *Thromboplastin* (a) Platelet thromboplastin deficiency due to *thrombocytopenia* or to qualitatively abnormal platelets (*thrombocytopathies*). (b) AHG as in hemophilia. This is a plasma thromboplastin factor in contrast to platelet thromboplastin factor.

✓2 *Prothrombin Factor V and Factor VII*. These deficiencies are especially apt to be encountered in liver disease and in congenital hypoprothrombinemia.

✓3 *Fibrinogen Afibrinogenemia* or hypofibrinogenemia may be met in the presence of obstetrical complication or following surgery especially operations upon the lungs, pancreas and prostate. The defect is manifested by a failure of blood to clot or to clot satisfactorily. The application of topical

thrombin will produce clotting in the blood specimen if fibrinogen is present.

- *Inhibitors of clotting* are, as noted above, the circulating anticoagulants which oppose various of the clotting factors. In addition, alterations in fibrinolysis are important, for numerous reports have appeared in recent years to indicate the importance of increased fibrinolytic activity in producing an hemorrhagic diathesis.

Diggs⁴ has stressed the importance of the prothrombin time (Quick's one stage method) in the rapid screening of hemorrhagic diseases. Whereas this test is normal in the hemophilic diseases, it is prolonged in deficiencies of prothrombin, Factor V, and fibrinogen, and where excess anticoagulants are present in the blood. More selective studies are required to identify the defect more precisely.

Management of Postoperative Bleeding

✓1 Exclude unligated vessels. *The most common cause of a postoperative bleeding diathesis is that of inadequate technical hemostasis at surgery.* If the blood clots and the platelet count is normal, suspect inadequate technical hemostasis.

✓2 *Massive blood transfusion may produce marked thrombocytopenia* ¹⁰. Further blood transfusion may only aggravate the condition. Plasma transfusion can be used to sustain blood volume allowing the platelet count to rise. A transfusion of platelets if available is helpful ²⁰. Fresh blood is useful.

✓3 Deficiencies of prothrombin and Factor VII are usually corrected by vitamin K₁ oxide if adequate liver function remains. A deficiency of Factor V will not be affected by vitamin K₁ but will be improved by fresh plasma or blood transfusion (less than 4 days old). Dicumarol effects are reversed by K₁ oxide ¹.

✓4 *Plasma thromboplastin deficiency*⁸ (in contradistinction to platelet thromboplastin) can be improved by whole blood or plasma transfusion or by the administration of a plasma concentrate containing AHG if available (Fig. 99).

CAUSES OF ALTERATIONS IN THE VARIOUS MEASURES OF COAGULATION

Laboratory Finding	Condition	Mechanism and Pathogenesis
I <i>Coagulation time</i> prolonged	A Hemophilia	Deficiency of anti-hemophilic globulin (AHG)
	B PTC deficiency	Deficiency of plasma thromboplastin component
	C PTA deficiency	Deficiency of plasma thromboplastin antecedent
	D Hyperheparinemia	Excess heparin or heparinoid substances (heparin therapy, anaphylactic and peptone shock)
	E Idiopathic	Excess anticoagulants of unknown type
	F Afibrinogenemia and hypofibrinogenemia	Deficiency of fibrinogen, various causes, congenital and acquired
	G "Hypoprothrombinemia"	When "prothrombin" is less than 10 per cent of normal May be due to lack of prothrombin, factor V or factor VII
II <i>Prothrombin time</i> (one-stage) prolonged	A Excess Dicumarol or related therapeutic agent	Deficiency of prothrombin and factor VII
	B "Parahemophilia"	Factor V deficiency
	C SPCA deficiency	Factor VII deficiency
	D Vitamin K deficiency	In newborn (hemorrhagic disease of the newborn) and whenever absorption of vitamin K is impaired
	E Liver disease	Impaired formation of prothrombin and factors V and VII
III <i>Prothrombin consumption</i> reduced	A AHG, PTC, or PTA deficiency	Impaired thromboplastin formation
	B Thrombocytopenia	Impaired thromboplastin formation
	C "Thrombasthenia"	Impaired thromboplastin formation
	D Circulating antithromboplastin	Impaired thromboplastin formation
IV <i>Bleeding time</i> prolonged	A Thrombocytopenic purpura	Platelet deficiency
	B Any of the causes under I or II if sufficiently severe	Extreme poverty of blood and tissues in coagulation factors
	C von Willebrand's disease	Abnormality of capillaries of skin and mucous membranes amenable to capillary endothelium
V <i>Tourniquet test</i> positive	A	lets too few to support pressure ular co-

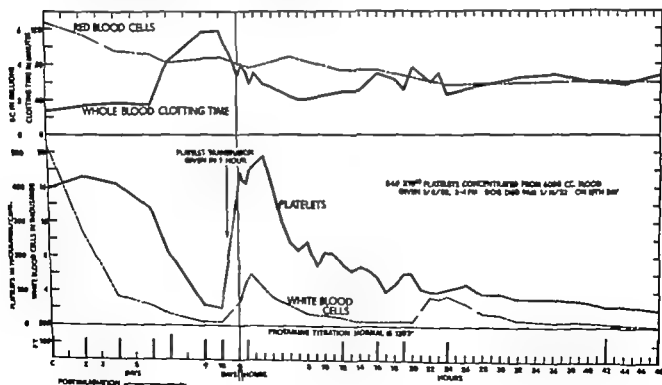
VI *Thrombocytopenia*

VII *Clot retraction* poor

17
be m
Win

Apparently normal whole blood clotting time	Prothrombin time	{ Hypoprothrombinemias Factor VII deficiency Ac-Globulin deficiency
	Clotting time in siliconed test tubes	{ Hypoprothrombinemias Factor VII deficiency ? Ac Globulin deficiency ? Antithromboplastinemia
	Fibrinogen determination	{ Fibrinogenopenias
	Platelet count	{ Thrombocytopenias Thrombocytopathies
	Prothrombin utilization	{ Mild hemophilia Hemophilia after transfusions Thrombocytopenias Thrombocytopathies Ac-Globulin deficiency
	Heparin tolerance <i>in vitro</i>	{ Mild hemophilia Hemophilia after transfusions Thrombocytopenias Thrombocytopathies Hypoprothrombinemias Factor VII deficiency Ac Globulin deficiency

Fig 88 Tests for identifying coagulation defect when whole blood clotting time is apparently normal or only slightly prolonged (as NICOLA P. *The Laboratory Diagnosis of Coagulation Defects*. Springfield Ill., Charles C Thomas, 1956)



Platelet transfusion. Illustrating the rapid declines in platelet count after platelet transfusions. Animals were rendered thrombocytopenic by total body radiation.

Fig 89 Platelet transfusion. This technic is now available for clinical use. Platelets furnish a thromboplastic factor and are responsible for clot retraction (From ALLEN J G. *In Surgery—Principles and Practice*, edited by J G Allen, H N Harkins, C A. Meyer and J E. Rhoads, Philadelphia J B Lippincott Company 1957)

-5. Bleeding due to "heparin-like" substances may respond to protamine sulfate injection (as does bleeding due to injected heparin) and whole blood transfusion

-6. Hypofibrinogenemia is best treated with intravenous fibrinogen and whole blood transfusion Treatment must be vigorous, and many liters of blood may be required

-7. Bleeding from exposed surfaces may respond to topical thrombin application if sufficient fibrinogen is present. Conversely, if the addition of thrombin does not produce clotting there is probably a fibrinogen deficiency.

-8 Calcium is rarely required. Patients in prolonged shock may hemorrhage not only because of various deficiencies but also because of circulating anticoagulants

Splenic Dysfunction

Functions of the Normal Spleen

For many years the functions of the spleen were an enigma despite the fact that splenectomy was known to be followed by certain characteristic changes in the peripheral

blood picture of normal subjects Even at the present time the functions of this organ are obscure, but knowledge has progressed to a point that permits a somewhat more physiologic approach to therapy.

The spleen has been termed an enormous lymph node interposed between an artery and a vein¹ The splenic artery is the largest branch of the coeliac axis, and the splenic vein is the largest tributary to the portal system The organ varies much in size and, by virtue of its muscle elements, it contracts promptly upon the injection of epinephrine or stimulation of the sympathetic nervous system. Red cells are stored in the spleen, to an extent, and older cells or spherocytes concentrate there and become destroyed, their hemoglobin is converted to bilirubin by the reticuloendothelial cells

Splenectomy results in an increase in the number of red cells white cells, and platelets in the peripheral blood (Fig 100). For example, splenectomy performed because of accidental splenic trauma may result in a rise in the red cell count of 0.5 million, a leukocytosis of 12,000 and a platelet count rise from the normal level of approximately 400,000 to 1,000,000 Indeed, some surgeons give anticoagulants if the platelet count rises above 800,000 in the days following splenectomy—the stated purpose being to prevent thrombotic phenomena Another phenomenon of interest is that following a "clean splenectomy many patients run a fever for from 7 to 10 days. This has never been explained to our satisfaction but many have assumed that it is due to a 'propagating thrombosis in the ligated splenic vein'

Dameshek and Welch¹ concluded, from data obtained following splenectomy that the spleen not only assists in the regulation of the peripheral blood picture by acting upon the cells that enter its confines but that the spleen also elaborates humoral factors or "hormones" that control the growth, maturation, and rate of release of the blood elements in bone marrow and lymphoid tissue They emphasized the relation of other endocrine elements—hypothalamo-pituitary apparatus, adrenal cortex, thyroid and sex

PHYSIOLOGY

EFFECTS OF SPLENECTOMY

A good way to study an organ's function is to note effects of its removal Splenectomy causes many changes in the blood cells:

<u>BLOOD COUNTS</u>			<u>CONCLUSIONS</u>
<u>SPLENECTOMY</u> BEFORE AFTER RBC : 50 M 55 M WBC : 7000 15000 Platelets : 400000 1000000			Spleen controls to some extent the growth and emission of the bone marrow blood cells
<u>RED CELLS</u>			
1. Target cells (leptocytes) thin Increased hyaline resistance 2. Howell-Jolly bodies Occasional nucleated red cells 3. Diminished red cell destruction hemolytic index diminished			Spleen makes red cells thicker Controls their denaturation May modify their life span Partakes in hemoglobin destruction
<u>WHITE CELLS</u>			
<u>SPLENECTOMY</u> BEFORE AFTER WBC : 7000 15000 Polys. : some 70% } 50-60% } 5000 } 2500-9000 } Lymphs. : 20% } 40-50% } 1400 } 6000-7000 }			Spleen regulates Granulocytopenia and Lymphocytopenia
<u>PLATELETS</u>			
BEFORE AFTER Plts : 400000 1000000			Spleen controls or regulates platelet production by megakaryocytes
<u>GENERAL CONCLUSION</u> Spleen probably produces humoral factors acting upon bone marrow and lymphoid tissue			

Fig. 100. Splenectomy is often followed by definite fever for several days (From DAMESHEK, K. and WELCH, C. S. *Hypersplenism and Surgery of the Spleen* New York, Grune & Stratton, Inc. 1953)

hormones—to bone marrow and lymphoid tissue function. In addition to the evidence derived from splenectomy, the fact that x-ray destruction of the bone marrow in rats is diminished by shielding the spleen with lead has also been offered as evidence that the spleen contains an humoral factor that protects bone marrow.

In abnormal splenic conditions affecting the peripheral blood—as may occur naturally in human beings or may be produced experimentally by ligation of the splenic vein—one of two processes, or both, may come into play. Either the spleen may harbor larger numbers of cells that are then destroyed, or, some splenic hormone may inhibit the bone marrow.

✓ Hypersplenism²⁴

There are numerous indications for splenectomy. Among these are traumatic rupture, accidental tear of the splenic capsule

during gastric resection, or its removal during *en bloc* dissection for gastric, colonic, or pancreatic cancer. Nevertheless we are interested here in the diseases that are associated with an increased splenic function or activity. Such diseases are manifested by thrombocytopenia, anemia, neutropenia or pancytopenia (Fig 101). It was seen above that this may result from either an increased destruction of blood elements within the spleen or from the elaboration of an humoral substance by the spleen that inhibits bone marrow hematopoiesis.

PRIMARY VERSUS SECONDARY HYPERSPLENISM. Before individual diseases are considered it is useful to distinguish between the terms primary and secondary hypersplenism. The term primary hypersplenism designates hypersplenism that appears to be due to disease that originates in the spleen itself, or perhaps in conjunction with abnormal bone marrow red cell formation as in

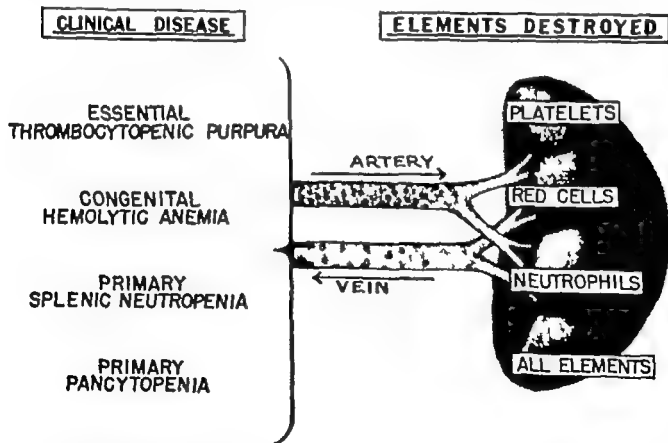


Fig 101 Schematic representation of one mechanism of hypersplenism (primary). The clinical syndrome is dependent on the blood element or elements destroyed. There are those who believe that the spleen secretes a hormone which depresses the bone marrow in addition to possible increased cellular disintegration in the spleen itself. (From ZOLLINGER, R. M. MARTIN, M. M. AND WILLIAMS, R. D. Surgical aspects of hypersplenism. J. A. M. A. 149: 24, 1952.)

congenital hemolytic anemia The term *secondary hypersplenism* refers to derangements in the peripheral blood picture that result from *splenic congestion* secondary to a variety of systemic diseases In primary hypersplenism the spleen may at times be essentially normal in size In secondary hypersplenism the spleen is characteristically enlarged, and it is assumed that at least a major factor in the destruction of various blood cells is the cells' prolonged contact with the sinusoids of the large spleen Finally, in some patients the differentiation between primary and secondary hypersplenism is not easily made

FURTHER CAUSES OF HYPERSPLENISM It has been emphasized that many conditions that result in an enlarged spleen may produce a secondary hypersplenism A most common offender is *portal hypertension*, but *sarcoidosis*, *tuberculosis*, *Gaucher's disease*, *Hodgkins' disease*, and *leukemia*, if they involve the spleen, may also produce one or more of the manifestations of hypersplenism, including thrombocytopenia In contrast, there are several "splenic" diseases in which the histologic picture of the spleen may be that of hyperplasia In one of these, *idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura*, the spleen is rarely enlarged The other "diseases" are *congenital hemolytic anemia*, *neutropenia*, and *pancytopenia* Splenectomy is often performed for these conditions, usually with clinical cure

*Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura*¹⁰ This condition is usually encountered in young girls and in young adult women There is often a history of repeated episodes of spontaneous bleeding and subcutaneous ecchymoses To be sure, some patients have transient attacks of thrombocytopenic purpura, in some instances due to demonstrable allergy or infection, which are followed by complete and permanent remissions of the thrombocytopenia Adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) or corticosteroid therapy is often useful in such patients, it may also be helpful in the acute attacks of patients who have the chronic disease, or

in preparing these individuals for splenectomy However, when the disease has become chronic, splenectomy is the treatment of choice, and steroid therapy is of only temporary benefit

The *diagnosis* is established by the history of repeated bleeding and ecchymoses, a positive tourniquet test indicating increased capillary fragility, and a clot that is friable and retracts poorly (It will be recalled that normal capillary fragility and clot retraction require normal numbers of blood platelets) The platelet count is low The whole blood clotting time is usually normal by the more gross tests, but a coagulation defect can be demonstrated by the more stringent tests of whole blood clotting time or by the prothrombin consumption test (Figs 97 and 98) The bleeding time (in contrast to the gross clotting time) is prolonged The leukocytes are usually normal in number and in appearance

Although the platelet count is usually substantially reduced, in some circumstances the platelets may be normal in number but abnormal in behavior (thrombocytopathy), producing a coagulation defect This is not rare but it need not further concern us here The level of the platelet count at which spontaneous bleeding occurs varies considerably from patient to patient As a rule, though, bleeding will occur if the platelet count falls below 60,000 per cu mm (platelet counts notoriously have a considerable range of error in most hospital laboratories)

Bone marrow studies are essential in all blood dyscrasias to rule out primary disease of the marrow¹⁵ In thrombocytopenia, for example, it is important to exclude primary or hypoplastic anemia, leukemia, metastatic carcinoma, and other conditions If active bone marrow thrombocytopoiesis is reflected in normal or increased numbers of megakaryocytes, then one can more confidently assume that hypersplenism is the cause of the thrombocytopenia (by suppressing megakaryocyte maturation)¹ Also, one can more confidently predict that the patient will be improved by splenectomy.

Results of splenectomy —If other demonstrable causes of thrombocytopenia have been excluded, leaving the residue of "idiopathic" thrombocytopenic purpura cases, these will be benefited by splenectomy in the majority of instances. Whereas it is often necessary to transfuse the patient with *fresh* blood to supply platelets for adequate coagulation until the splenic artery can be clamped, once this vessel is occluded the platelet count in the peripheral blood begins to rise almost immediately. Subsequent spontaneous bleeding is not often a problem, though occasionally further transfusions to supply platelets are needed in the immediate postoperative period.

Typically, the platelet count may rise postoperatively from a preoperative level of perhaps 60,000 to perhaps 600,000—but usually able to above 1,000,000, as often happens following removal of a normal spleen at gastric resection. Thereafter the platelet count gradually declines to a normal level of perhaps from 300,000 to 500,000 (normal 400,000) and further hemorrhage does not occur. The following case study illustrates many of these points.

Patient D R a 21 year-old white woman (Fig. 102), was admitted to the University Hospital on March 19, 1956 with the chief complaint of "spitting up blood." Questioning revealed that she had first bled from her nose and mouth when she was 8 years old, the free and visible bleeding being accompanied by many "bruise marks" over her body. The following year this had recurred and again when she was 10. At one time she had been given transfusions for nose bleed, but these had caused such "shaking spells" of her body that further transfusions were avoided. Surprisingly enough, after menstruation had begun at about the age of 11 the number and severity of the bleeding episodes had diminished markedly according to her mother. In fact, after the menarche there had been no further serious blood loss even when teeth were pulled until the current attack. One day prior to admission she had begun to bleed from her gums and

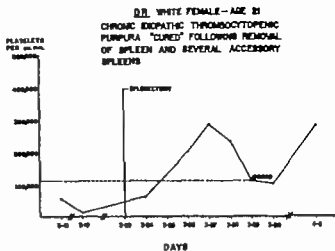


Fig. 103 Patient had had episodes of spontaneous hemorrhage and ecchymoses since age 11 (but ameliorated by menarche). She had no further objective findings post-splenectomy. However the platelet count was still subnormal. Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura is more common in young females than in males. Graph shows platelet counts before and following splenectomy (see text).

noticed that numerous ecchymoses were appearing over the body. There was no history of infections or drugs that might have served as precipitating factors.

Past history disclosed that she had delivered two normal children without incident, one now 4 years and one 12 months of age. This was of particular interest because the mortality among pregnant women who have idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura has been reported to be relatively high.

Physical examination revealed many petechiae, widespread purpuric spots, and a positive tourniquet test. Neither the liver nor the spleen was palpable as was to be expected if the presumptive diagnosis of idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura was correct.

Hematology, consultation and studies showed an *abnormal coagulogram*. The platelet count was 54,000 per cu. mm. with no prothrombin consumption or clot retraction. The one-stage prothrombin time was prolonged due to a reduction in Factor VII. It was pointed out that a reduced Factor VII is a common finding during active bleeding.

The *iliac bone marrow* was readily aspirated, and revealed a normal cellularity. The megakaryocytes were numerous but

about 80 per cent were immature. Both red and white cells were plentiful and were maturing normally. Thus, primary bone marrow hypoplasia was eliminated as the cause of the thrombocytopenia, focusing attention upon the spleen. The opinion of the hematologist was that "this would appear to be a classical case of idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (spleen not palpable). This is her fourth attack since the age of 8 years. Although it is impossible to prove that the other episodes were due to thrombocytopenia, I think we should classify her as chronic. Treatment would seem to lie between corticoids or splenectomy. I personally would favor the latter course as this would be more likely to produce a permanent cure."

At operation on March 23, 1956, following ACTH therapy of 24 hours' duration, a spleen of normal size and several accessory spleens were removed uneventfully.

The postoperative platelet counts are shown in Figure 102. From a level of 26,000 two days prior to operation the count rose

progressively to 280,000 on the fourth postoperative day, followed by a gradual decline to 100,000 on the seventh postoperative day. In follow-up clinic on April 6, 1956 (thirteenth postoperative day) the platelet count was 277,000. She has remained well since.

Congenital hemolytic anemia. This disease has also been variously termed hereditary spherocytic anemia, chronic acholuric (no bile in urine) jaundice, familial hemolytic icterus, and hereditary globe cell anemia. This variety of names characterizes five major manifestations of the condition: (1) the hereditary trait which usually causes the disease to be present early in life, (2) hemolysis, (3) jaundice without bile in the urine, (4) the increased numbers of spherocytes, and (5) anemia.

The severity of the disease varies greatly. One patient may suffer repeated and serious hemolytic crises whereas another may be "more yellow than sick." Multiple small black gallstones develop in more than half the patients. In fact, the youngest patient upon whom the writer ever performed cholecystectomy (after prior splenectomy) was a girl 7 years old who had gallstones due to congenital hemolytic anemia. The spleen is usually enlarged.

Laboratory data reveal the characteristic increase in spherocytes in the peripheral blood, and these cells show increased fragility to hypotonic solutions and mechanical trauma (Fig 103). The reticulocyte count is usually increased, falling to normal levels following splenectomy. The bone marrow reveals normal or increased erythropoietic activity.

The diagnosis is established on the basis of the history, splenomegaly, laboratory data, and the exclusion of other conditions with which the disease might be confused, such as other causes of jaundice, anemia, or splenomegaly.

Splenectomy is the treatment of choice. In most patients the anemia and the jaundice disappear, but the spherocytosis and the consequent increased fragility persist. That is, the underlying hereditary marrow

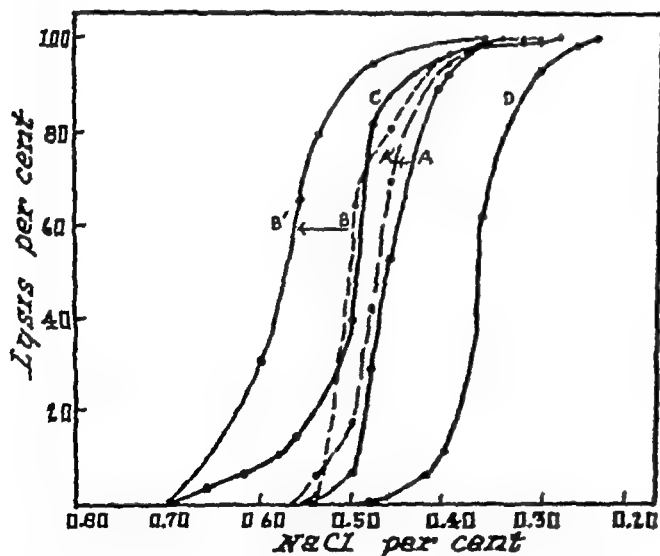


Fig 103 Note variations in red cell fragility in different blood dyscrasias. Normal and abnormal osmotic fragility curves. A, Normal curve, A', the moderate increase in osmotic fragility on incubation. B, Hereditary spherocytosis, B', greatly increased osmotic fragility following incubation. C, "Acquired" hemolytic anemia. D, Increased resistance of red corpuscles from a case of Thalassemia minor. (From WINTROB, M. M. *Clinical Hematology*, Ed. 4. Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1956.)

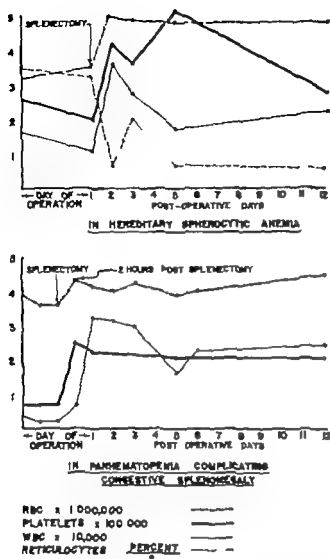


Fig 104 Hematologic effects of splenectomy. In hereditary spherocytic anemia (congenital hemolytic anemia) the platelet, leukocyte and red cell counts rose after splenectomy the reticulocyte count fell. In pancytopenia secondary to congestive splenomegaly the platelet, leukocyte and red cell counts all rose after splenectomy. (After MacKENzie, D W Jr., and LOWENSTEIN L. In *Moseley's Textbook of Surgery* Ed 1 St. Louis, C V Mosby Company, 1952.)

defect which results in excessive numbers of spherocytes is not changed by splenectomy, but the dissolution of these cells in the spleen is abolished.

Immediately after splenectomy the red cell count begins to rise and the reticulocyte count begins to fall (Fig. 104). As with splenectomy in other circumstances the leukocyte and platelet counts rise also, but they gradually subside to the normal level present preoperatively.

Neutropenia and pancytopenia These

conditions are encountered in both primary and secondary hypersplenism. Following splenectomy the anemia, neutropenia, and thrombocytopenia of primary hypersplenism may be considerably improved (Fig. 104). The results are often less satisfactory in secondary hypersplenism, usually because of the underlying hepatic cirrhosis or other conditions.

Splenic anemia due to chronic congestive splenomegaly (Banti's syndrome) is but another name for secondary hypersplenism due to portal hypertension.

SPLENECTOMY IN OTHER CONDITIONS. Upon occasion splenectomy may be helpful in selected cases of Hodgkins' disease, leukemia, lymphosarcoma or other conditions in which splenomegaly is contributing to the genesis of anemia. The operation cannot cure the underlying disease, but it may diminish the number of transfusions required—a matter of considerable importance when a patient with a chronic blood dyscrasia has begun to exhibit reactions to blood from any donor. Yet splenectomy should be resorted to with the full realization that it may not even diminish the blood requirements.

REFERENCES

1. DAMEBER W and WELCH C S. *Hypersplenism and Surgery of the Spleen*. New York: Grune & Stratton Inc., 1951.
2. DE NICOLA P. *Coagulation Defects*. Springfield Ill., Charles C Thomas, 1956.
3. DE TAKATS G., and MURTHALL M H. The response of the clotting equilibrium to post operative stress. *Surgery* 31: 13 1952.
4. DIXON L. W. Prediction of the tendency to abnormal bleeding during or following surgical procedures. *J Tennessee M A* 48: 4 1955.
5. DOUGHERTY T F and DOUGHERTY J H. Blood formed elements. *Ann. Rev. Physiol* 15: 195 1953.
6. FLYNN J E., and COOK R. W. Fundamentals of blood clotting. *Ann. Rev. Physiol*, 14: 205 1952.
7. HAYES D W. The mechanism and differential diagnosis of abnormal bleeding. *J Louisiana M Soc* 108: 36 1956.
8. HENRY E. L., ROSENTHAL, R L., and HOFFMAN I. Spontaneous hemorrhages caused

- by plasma-thromboplastin-antecedent deficiency J A M A , **162**: 727, 1956
- 9 JAQUES, L B Blood clotting and hemostasis Ann Rev Physiol , **16**: 175, 1954
 - 10 KREVANS, J R, AND JACKSON, D P Hemorrhagic disorder following massive whole blood transfusions J A M A , **159**: 171, 1955
 - 11 LANDSTEINER, K Uber Agglutinationserscheinungen normalen menschlichen Blutes Wien Klin Wschr , **14**: 1132, 1901 Cited by RACE, R R, AND SANGER, R *Blood Groups in Man*, Ed 2 p 16 Springfield, Ill, Charles C Thomas, 1954
 - 12 LANDSTEINER, K, AND LEVINE, P The MNSs blood groups Cited by WINTROBE, M M *Clinical Hematology*, p 329 Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1956
 - 13 LANDSTEINER, K, AND WIENER, A S Studies on an agglutinin (Rh) in human blood reacting with anti-Rhesus sera and with human isoantibodies J Exper Med , **74**: 309, 1941
 - 14 LEVINE, P, KATZIN, E M, AND BURNHAM, L Isoimmunization in pregnancy, its possible bearing on etiology of erythroblastosis fetalis J A M A , **116**: 825, 1941
 - 15 LOEB, V, JR, MOORE, C V, AND DUBACH, R The physiologic evaluation and management of chronic bone marrow failure Am J Med , **15**: 499, 1953
 - 16 LOZNER, E L Differential diagnosis and treatment of the thrombocytopenic purpuras Am J Med , **14**: 459, 1953
 - 17 OWREN, P A, RAPAPORT, S I, HJORT, P, AND AAS, K The biochemistry of thromboplastin, its formation and action Sang , **25**: 752, 1954
 - 18 PHILLIPS, L L, ROWLEY, P T, AND HABIF, D V Hypofibrinogenemia in surgical patients Surg , Gynec & Obst , **103** 443, 1956
 - 19 REID, D E, ROBY, C C, AND WEINER, A E Coagulation defects in severe intrapartum and postpartum hemorrhage J A M A , **161**: 1244, 1956
 - 20 Transfusion of platelets (editorial) J A M A , **152** 1434, 1953
 - 21 VAN ITALLIE, T B, GEYER, R P, AND STARE, F J Vitamin K emulsions in bishydroxycoumarin emergencies, results of intravenous administration J A M A , **147**: 1652, 1951
 - 22 WESSLER, S Studies in intravascular coagulation II A comparison of the effect of dicumarol and heparin on clot formation in isolated venous segments J Clin Invest , **32**: 650, 1953
 - 23 WINTROBE, M M *Clinical Hematology* Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1956
 - 24 ZOLLINGER, R M, MARTIN, M M, AND WILLIAMS, R D Surgical aspects of hypersplenism J A M A , **149**: 24, 1952

Chapter 14

The Alimentary Tract

The Salivary Glands

The salivary glands are important because of the saliva they secrete and because of the fact that they may be subject to inflammatory changes, injuries, tumors or to the formation of calculi (Fig. 105)

NERVOUS INFLUENCES The salivary glands—parotid, submaxillary, and sublingual—are under the control of both the sympathetic and the parasympathetic nervous systems (Fig. 258) The stimulation of either nerve supply alters the secretion of the organ stimulation of the sympathetic supply produces saliva which is thick and scanty, whereas stimulation of the parasympathetic supply results in a watery but copious flow As with the stimulation of the nerve supply to the pancreas (which structure may also be involved in mumps and which also secretes amylase) the effect of sympathetic stimulation probably is mediated largely through vasoconstriction, and one would thus expect that the volume of the secretion would be diminished. Although the flow of saliva is regulated largely by nervous impulses many different types of stimuli may bring about salivation among these are the taste sight thought or smell of food mechanical manipulation within the mouth cerebral seizures and other factors

The function of the saliva has largely to do with mechanical and digestive processes The liquid aids in the mastication and swallowing of food. It helps to cool hot food and to dilute irritants. Moreover as most public speakers are aware it facilitates speech for it is difficult to enunciate clearly

when the mouth is dry In addition, the enzymes of saliva initiate the digestive process, as in the partial hydrolysis of starch by ptyalin However, the digestive action of saliva is not great and is readily dispensed with

VOLUME OF SALIVA. The daily volume of saliva is approximately 1500 ml, and the secretion can present a problem of some magnitude when a salivary duct is severed by trauma, or blocked by stone, inflammation or fibrous stricture or when the patient cannot swallow the saliva, as following oral cancer surgery or in the presence of esophageal obstruction by tumor or stricture or congenital atresia or when a large tracheo-esophageal fistula permits flow of swallowed saliva into the lungs to produce pneumonitis The duration and prognosis of salivary drooling will depend upon the lesion lip defects can be closed, but the paralysis caused by bulbar brain lesions will usually be permanent

A most troublesome salivary fistula is that which follows a major laceration of Stenson's duct (Fig. 105) Whereas smaller parotid fistulas will usually close with external pressure and patience, drainage from a severed main duct may continue until the duct is repaired, or until the proximal end is implanted into the oral cavity, or, as a last resort, until the gland is resected A submaxillary gland is, of course, easily excised

Atropine or Banthine may be used to reduce the volume of saliva temporarily, but this therapy is not satisfactory over a long period of time

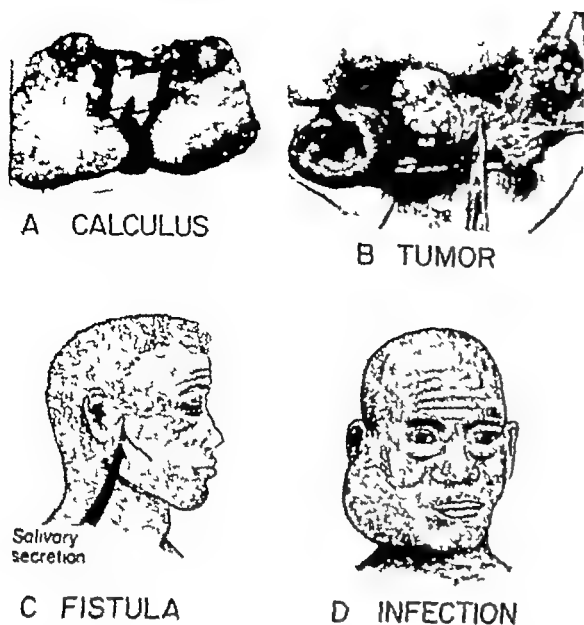


Fig 105 Diseases of the salivary glands A Excised submaxillary gland showing calculi The patient had lost weight simply because food stimulated the gland to secrete with resulting pain The submaxillary gland was easily removed Note chronic scarring surrounding the calculi in the ductal system B Parotid tumor and facial nerve The facial nerve has been exposed below and in front of the ear and it extends forward beneath the encapsulated tumor The hemostat has been passed beneath the nerve as it courses between the superficial half (retracted by rake) and the deep half (represented by tumor) of the parotid gland Total parotidectomy was performed with preservation of the nerve C Traumatic parotid duct fistula These lesions usually close in time If not, repair or excisional surgery is indicated D Infection Infections of the lower portion of the parotid gland are often difficult to differentiate from various tumors or tooth infections

Salivary calculi (sialolithiasis) are most frequently encountered in the ducts of a submaxillary gland, in our experience, and occasion discomfort chiefly by obstructing the flow of saliva at mealtime A common complaint is that of painful enlargement of the involved gland at the approach of food Indeed, so sharp may be the pain that the individual avoids food and may thus lose weight (Fig 105), between meals there is usually little discomfort

The calcium stones are usually visible on roentgen examination, and since infection and fibrosis often attend or occasion the stone formation, the most expeditious treat-

ment is to excise the involved submaxillary gland, if this is the gland involved Care is taken to avoid injury to the lingual nerve and to the mandibular branch of the facial nerve In the case of parotid duct calculi the stone is removed without excision of the gland, if possible Roentgen therapy has been suggested to diminish salivary secretion in the presence of obstruction, but we have not used it

The Esophagus

General Remarks

The principal function of the esophagus is to carry food from the pharynx to the stomach, and the act of swallowing is the most important single kinetic function of this organ It is not surprising, therefore, that *dysphagia*—pain or other difficulty on swallowing—is the major symptom of esophageal disease The initiation of swallowing is under voluntary control, but thereafter the propagation of the bolus is involuntary Before food or fluid can enter the stomach the *cardiac sphincter* must be relaxed Though the mechanism by which the sphincter is opened is not clearly understood, most observers consider it to be under autonomic nervous system control, at least in part

The wall of the esophagus consists of three layers—the mucosa, the submucosa, and the outer (muscle) layer Unlike other parts of the alimentary canal, the esophagus has no serosal covering, moreover, its strongest layer is the mucosa, in contrast to the seromuscular layer of the intestine It is lined with stratified squamous epithelium, and esophageal carcinoma is of the squamous type, while that of the stomach and intestine is of the glandular type The blood supply of the esophagus has a segmental character, and only limited mobilization of the organ is possible without serious risk of necrosis and leakage at the line of anastomosis

SENSATION The mucosa of the normal esophagus is sensitive to heat and cold, but is insensitive to tactile stimuli In the

esophagus proper, pain is dependent upon tension of the muscular wall by either distention or spasm. The pain may be burning in type when the stimulus acts continuously, and gripping when it is intermittent and intense. Moreover, the patient can often identify the approximate location of the esophageal obstruction by reference to the point on the thorax at which he feels pain. The mechanism of pain in esophageal peptic ulceration is considered to be similar to that of gastric and duodenal ulcer (see below), and the points of reference on the body surface to which pain from the esophagus is referred are innervated by branches from the IIIrd cervical to the VIIth or VIIIth dorsal spinal segments. The sympathetic nerves provide the chief sensory pathways and although the vagi may contain some sensory fibers conclusive proof of this is lacking. The distress produced by esophageal spasm or the pain of hiatal hernia may radiate from the substernal area into the left shoulder and arm and thus simulate anginal pain. The sensation of pain caused by a hiatal hernia probably is transmitted over the phrenic nerve or the nerves of the lower part of the thorax. Heartburn is usually caused by a reflux of gastric juice into the esophagus and may be particularly distressing when the cardiac sphincter has been resected as for carcinoma of the lower third of the esophagus. However the sensation may also be produced by distention of the lower esophagus or by stimulation of the mucosa of the cardiac portion of the stomach.⁷

Esophageal Diverticulum

In the composite presented in Figure 106 a cervical esophageal diverticulum is depicted. This outpouching occurs at the juncture of the lower pharynx and the cervical esophagus usually on the left. Diverticula may also develop in the mid esophagus at the level of the carina or just above the diaphragm. The condition is rarely encountered before middle age.

As the diverticulum gradually enlarges

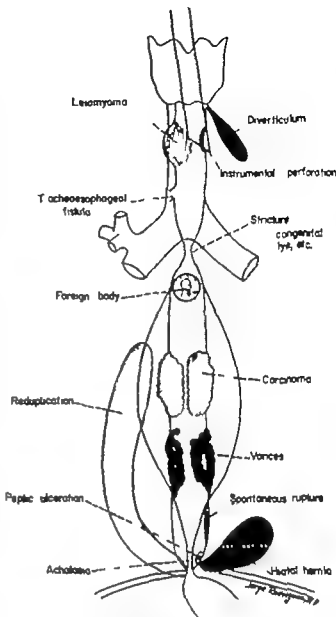


Fig 106 Esophageal lesions. The efficiency of normal esophageal function is best appreciated when it has been lost. When saliva cannot be swallowed and food cannot be ingested the patient seeks relief.¹

and forms a dependent sac when the patient is upright ingested materials tend to enter the defect and to become stagnant and putrid. This gives rise to a most offensive odor which together with loudly audible gas gurgles often leads the sensitive patient to avoid social contact. Even so at this stage the most serious problem associated with the diverticulum is the inability of the individual to lie down without strangling from the fluid that flows out of the diverticulum and into the trachea. This aspiration produces chronic pneumonitis that is

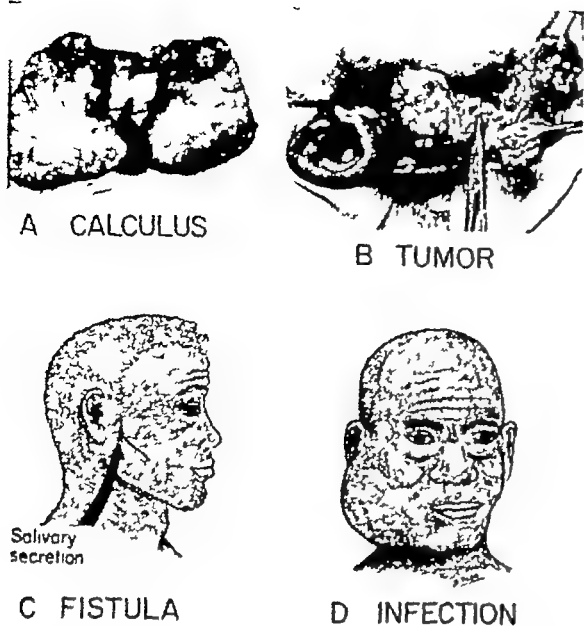


Fig 105 Diseases of the salivary glands **A** Excised submaxillary gland showing calculi. The patient had lost weight simply because food stimulated the gland to secrete with resulting pain. The submaxillary gland was easily removed. Note chronic scarring surrounding the calculi in the ductal system. **B** Parotid tumor and facial nerve. The facial nerve has been exposed below and in front of the ear and it extends forward beneath the encapsulated tumor. The hemostat has been passed beneath the nerve as it courses between the superficial half (retracted by rake) and the deep half (represented by tumor) of the parotid gland. Total parotidectomy was performed with preservation of the nerve. **C** Traumatic parotid duct fistula. These lesions usually close in time. If not, repair or excisional surgery is indicated. **D** Infection. Infections of the lower portion of the parotid gland are often difficult to differentiate from various tumors or tooth infections.

Salivary calculi (sialolithiasis) are most frequently encountered in the ducts of a submaxillary gland, in our experience, and occasion discomfort chiefly by obstructing the flow of saliva at mealtime. A common complaint is that of painful enlargement of the involved gland at the approach of food. Indeed, so sharp may be the pain that the individual avoids food and may thus lose weight (Fig 105), between meals there is usually little discomfort.

The calcium stones are usually visible on roentgen examination, and since infection and fibrosis often attend on occasion the stone formation, the most expeditious treat-

ment is to excise the involved submaxillary gland, if this is the gland involved. Care is taken to avoid injury to the lingual nerve and to the mandibular branch of the facial nerve. In the case of parotid duct calculi the stone is removed without excision of the gland, if possible. Roentgen therapy has been suggested to diminish salivary secretion in the presence of obstruction, but we have not used it.

The Esophagus

General Remarks

The principal function of the esophagus is to carry food from the pharynx to the stomach, and the act of swallowing is the most important single kinetic function of this organ. It is not surprising, therefore, that *dysphagia*—pain or other difficulty on swallowing—is the major symptom of esophageal disease. The initiation of swallowing is under voluntary control, but thereafter the propagation of the bolus is involuntary. Before food or fluid can enter the stomach the *cardiac sphincter* must be relaxed. Though the mechanism by which the sphincter is opened is not clearly understood, most observers consider it to be under autonomic nervous system control, at least in part.

The wall of the esophagus consists of three layers—the mucosa, the submucosa, and the outer (muscle) layer. Unlike other parts of the alimentary canal, the esophagus has no serosal covering, moreover, its strongest layer is the mucosa, in contrast to the seromuscular layer of the intestine. It is lined with stratified squamous epithelium, and esophageal carcinoma is of the squamous type, while that of the stomach and intestine is of the glandular type. The blood supply of the esophagus has a segmental character, and only limited mobilization of the organ is possible without serious risk of necrosis and leakage at the line of anastomosis.

SENSATION The mucosa of the normal esophagus is sensitive to heat and cold, but is insensitive to tactile stimuli. In the

esophagus proper, pain is dependent upon tension of the muscular wall by either distention or spasm. The pain may be burning in type when the stimulus acts continuously and gripping when it is intermittent and intense. Moreover, the patient can often identify the approximate location of the esophageal obstruction by reference to the point on the thorax at which he feels pain. The mechanism of pain in esophageal peptic ulceration is considered to be similar to that of gastric and duodenal ulcer (*see below*) and the points of reference on the body surface to which pain from the esophagus is referred are innervated by branches from the IIIrd cervical to the VIIth or VIIIth dorsal spinal segments. The sympathetic nerves provide the chief sensory pathways, and although the vagi may contain some sensory fibers, conclusive proof of this is lacking. The distress produced by esophageal spasm or the pain of hiatal hernia may radiate from the substernal area into the left shoulder and arm and thus simulate anginal pain. The sensation of pain caused by a hiatal hernia probably is transmitted over the phrenic nerve or the nerves of the lower part of the thorax. Heartburn is usually caused by a reflux of gastric juice into the esophagus and may be particularly distressing when the cardiac sphincter has been resected as for carcinoma of the lower third of the esophagus. However, the sensation may also be produced by distention of the lower esophagus or by stimulation of the mucosa of the cardiac portion of the stomach.[†]

Esophageal Diverticulum

In the composite presented in Figure 106 a cervical esophageal diverticulum is depicted. This outpouching occurs at the juncture of the lower pharynx and the cervical esophagus usually on the left. Diverticula may also develop in the mid esophagus at the level of the carina or just above the diaphragm. The condition is rarely encountered before middle age.

As the diverticulum gradually enlarges

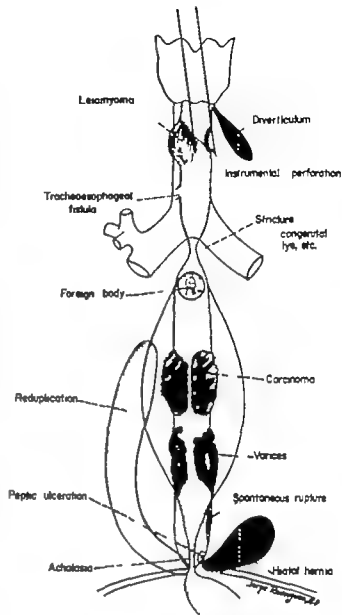


Fig 106 Esophageal lesions. The efficiency of normal esophageal function is best appreciated when it has been lost. When saliva cannot be swallowed and food cannot be ingested the patient seeks relief.

and forms a dependent sac when the patient is upright, ingested materials tend to enter the defect and to become stagnant and putrid. This gives rise to a most offensive odor which, together with loudly audible gas gurgles, often leads the sensitive patient to avoid social contact. Even so at this stage the most serious problem associated with the diverticulum is the inability of the individual to lie down without strangling from the fluid that flows out of the diverticulum and into the trachea. This aspiration produces chronic pneumonia that

readily visible on roentgenogram, and many of these subjects learn to sleep in a semi-erect position

Eventually the diverticulum may become so large, contain so much material, and so distort the esophagus as to render it impossible for the patient to ingest adequate amounts of food. Chronic starvation ensues, and these subjects may be among the most emaciated that one will encounter in practice, if individuals with incurable disease be excluded

Treatment consists of improving the nutritional status with blood transfusion, intravenous alimentation, and, if possible, by means of a polyethylene tube passed at esophagoscopy. Abrupt hyperalimentation is to be avoided, for it may result in sudden death. We repair the diverticulum in one stage, frequently under local anesthesia if it is in the neck

Caustic Stricture

The ingestion of very hot or caustic materials produces a violent inflammatory reaction of the mouth, pharynx, and cervical esophagus, and at times it may extend almost to the stomach. During the first two weeks the mucosa and underlying tissues are friable and edematous, but thereafter fibrous stricture of the esophagus often develops. We feel that cautious esophageal dilatation should be initiated at the end of from 10 to 14 days, aided by a gastrostomy for feeding purposes. But whatever the therapy, these patients may have a long and difficult course ahead of them, and often for life. Various forms of esophageal substitutes have been attempted—stomach, small bowel, large bowel, skin flaps, and synthetic prostheses—but almost every successful such case has been considered reportable, reflecting the relative rarity with which corrective surgery is truly successful

Tracheoesophageal Fistulas

Communications between the trachea or a major bronchus and the esophagus are usually congenital, neoplastic, traumatic,

or, less commonly, infectious in origin. In all instances the immediate problem is to diminish the flow of saliva and other material from the esophagus through the fistula and into the lungs. In general, the repair of congenital fistulas in the newborn is usually attended by less than 50 per cent mortality. Traumatic fistulas, if small, will often heal with adequate drainage and supportive management. Direct surgical attack may not be successful, but it should be attempted if prolonged conservatism is not to avail. Neoplastic fistulas usually require far advanced esophageal or pulmonary carcinoma, and only palliative medication and tube feeding are indicated

Pneumonitis is a major complication of tracheoesophageal fistula

Esophageal Tumors

Leiomyomas and lipomas of the esophagus are encountered, but the usual tumor is carcinoma. We resect cancer of the upper one-half of the esophagus, as a primary esophagogastric anastomosis is used. In cancer of the lower one-half of the esophagus, the complications, mortality, and low cure rate have led us to refer patients with these lesions for radiation therapy

Peptic esophagitis may follow an esophagogastric anastomosis if a portion of the acid-bearing portion of the stomach is removed, despite the fact that vagotomy is effected by the procedure. Regurgitation and reflux is common

Esophageal Varices with Hemorrhage

The subject of esophageal varices is usually considered in connection with cirrhosis of the liver, but a few facts may be reviewed. To begin with, the bleeding associated with esophageal varices does not always correlate with a good correlation with the degree of portal hypertension in the portal venous system.⁶¹ Too, in a series of 44 patients with bleeding esophageal varices reported by Wagenknecht and associates,⁶² 19 (or 43.1 per cent) showed ulceration of the esophageal mucosa involving the varices. These ulcerations

felt to be the lesions responsible for the hemorrhage, rather than increased pressure in the portal system, and in one case the evidence pointed to a mechanical break in an esophageal varix. These workers concluded that the acid peptic activity of the gastric juice on the esophageal mucosa was an important factor in the initiation of bleeding in esophageal varices.

In a similar study, Chiles and his associates⁸ examined the esophagus at necropsy in 91 cases of bleeding esophageal varices. In 11 cases no source of hemorrhage could be found. In 39 per cent of the remaining 80 cases ulceration was present in sufficient degree to have been a primary cause of rupture of the varix.

Regardless of what the cause of the bleeding from the esophageal varices may be, the practical requirement is to control the bleeding and many different approaches to this problem have been made. Among these have been (1) intraesophageal tamponade (2) mediastinal packing (3) transesophageal ligation of the bleeding varices in the emergency, (4) the injection of sclerosing solutions through the esophagoscope (5) esophagogastric resection, (6) splenectomy (7) ligation of the splenic artery (8) omentopexy (9) hepatic artery ligation and (10) (the most effective) portacaval shunt or splenorenal shunt with splenectomy (Fig 75).

Cardiospasm—Achalasia of the Esophagus, Megaesophagus, or Esophageal Dys tonia

Cardiospasm is characterized by a variable degree of dilatation of the esophagus associated with an undilated segment adjacent to the stomach which varies in length from one to several centimeters. Since there is usually no evidence of stricture or hypertrophy of the muscle in the undilated segment the obstruction is usually considered to be a functional one. Achalasia is thought by many to be due to autonomic nervous system dysfunction but this has never been definitely proved. Moreover,

Cross¹⁴ has stated that while, grossly, certain similarities do exist between megaesophagus and congenital megacolon, the two conditions differ microscopically. In megacolon the ganglion cells are missing only in the narrowed segment of the colon and are found in normal numbers in the dilated colon, in megaesophagus the ganglion cells may be missing from all levels of the esophagus.

Kay¹⁴ concluded that spasm or hypertrophy of the inferior esophageal constrictor may cause functional stenosis and be an important factor in functional dysphagia, the Plummer-Vinson syndrome, esophagospasm, pulsion diverticula of the thoracic esophagus and idiopathic strictures of the terminal esophagus. The etiology of this spasm or hypertrophy was not clear from his studies, but he considered it to be due to spasm similar to that of circular muscle in other smooth muscle sphincters of the body, probably the result of a preponderance of sympathetic control.

Olsen and his associates¹⁵ stressed that particular effort must be made to distinguish cardiospasm from other types of esophageal spasm. In their opinion, diffuse spasm of the esophagus which they considered to be a distinct clinical entity, does not respond to treatment in the same manner as does cardiospasm and the hydrostatic dilator should not be used in cases of nonsphincteric spasm.

Esophageal spasm may, of course be associated with other lesions of the esophagus or gastrointestinal tract such as esophageal diverticula, hiatal hernia, peptic ulceration, neoplasms or benign stricture. Achalasia may at times simulate disease of the gallbladder.

PHYSIOLOGIC ASPECTS OF TREATMENT The appearance of the defect drawn schematically is shown in Figure 107. In the upper diagram the constriction is being treated medically by dilatation for a majority of the earlier cases of esophageal spasm do indeed have great and often lasting relief from dilatation. In many patients however dilatation may not be adequate. Of 452

TREATMENT OF ACHALASIA

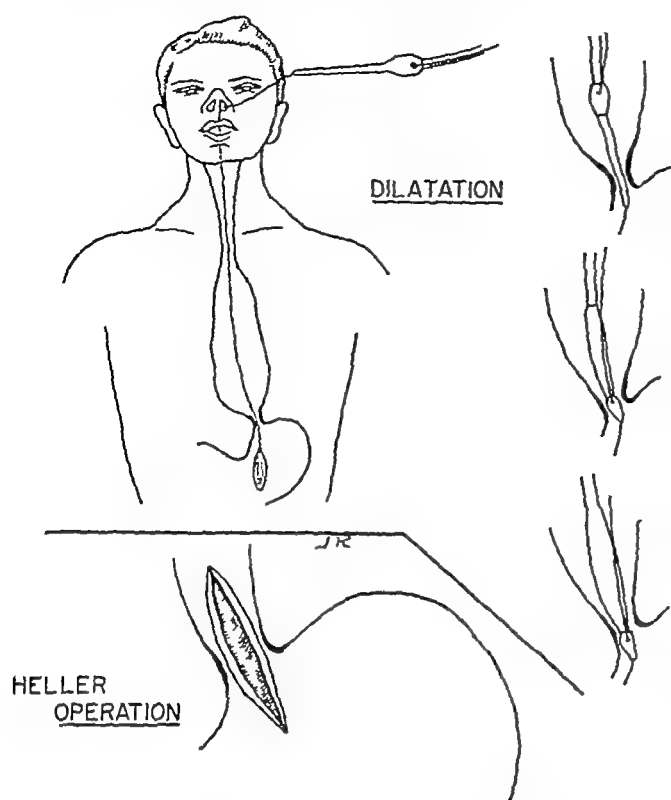


Fig 107 Achalasia is satisfactorily relieved in many patients by esophageal dilatation. When operation is required, the Heller procedure, which preserves some degree of sphincteric action, is much superior to resection of the esophagogastric junction with loss of sphincteric effect. The disability due to peptic esophagitis that occurs when the sphincter is sacrificed may exceed the disability due to the previous achalasia.

patients so treated by Olsen and his associates,⁵⁰ 272 (60.2 per cent) were relieved of dysphagia for periods of from 4 to 16 years and were considered to have obtained satisfactory results. In the remaining 180 dysphagia recurred in less than 4 years, and the results were considered to be unsatisfactory. These workers found that patients who did not respond satisfactorily to the initial course of dilatation were less likely to obtain good results following a second course or from any number of additional courses of treatment. In their series, 313 (62.9 per cent) of the 452 patients who could be adequately followed obtained satisfactory and lasting results. All in all, these workers concluded that if they had the opportunity to treat all patients as they desired, approximately 80 per cent would obtain satisfactory results from hydrostatic

dilatation and the remaining 20 per cent would (presumably) require surgery. Only two fatalities occurred in all the dilatations performed, and these were both due to rupture of the esophagus just above the cardia. Both these fatalities had occurred before penicillin was generally available, and during the last 11 years covered by the report there had been no deaths. Should the esophagus be perforated, it is imperative to operate promptly to provide surgical drainage and, if possible, to close the defect—though some small leaks do close without surgery. Antibiotics and blood transfusion are important adjuncts in therapy.

PHYSIOLOGIC CONSIDERATIONS IN THE SURGICAL TREATMENT OF CARDIOSPASM Surgery should not be performed until dilatation has been given a reasonable trial (Fig 107), but operation should not be inordinately delayed.

Numerous procedures have been utilized to produce an adequate lumen between the dilated esophagus and the stomach. Few of them have been satisfactory, but among these operations are (1) esophagogastrotomy, as advocated by Heyrovsky, in which a side-to-side anastomosis is performed between the dilated portion of the esophagus and the fundus of the stomach, (2) cardioplasty, advocated by Wendel, which consists of a longitudinal incision extending from the dilated lower esophagus through the constriction and onto the cardiac portion of the stomach, the defect then being closed transversely to enlarge the opening between the lower esophagus and the stomach, (3) a combination of esophagogastrotomy and cardioplasty, as advocated by Grondahl, in which an anastomosis is made between the lower part of the esophagus and the cardiac end of the stomach, after a U-shaped incision has been made through the constricted region of the esophagus and cardia, (4) extramucosal esophagocardiomyotomy, as advocated by Heller, this consists of an incision down to the mucosa, extending from the dilated esophagus through the constricted sphincter region and well down onto

the stomach (similar to the familiar Ramstedt pyloromyotomy performed at the opposite end of the stomach for congenital hypertrophic pyloric stenosis) (5) cardiectomy and resection of the lower part of the esophagus, with esophagogastric anastomosis, (6) resection of not only the lower esophagus but also the major portion of the acid bearing area of the stomach with esophagogastric anastomosis.

It is now generally accepted that destruction of the cardiac sphincter mechanism without removing the acid bearing portion of the stomach is all too likely to result in peptic esophagitis and ulceration complications which are apt to nullify any beneficial effect which may have been obtained by the operative procedure. Therefore of all the operations listed above only the Heller procedure and the resection of the acid bearing portion of the stomach with re-establishment of continuity are likely to be satisfactory. Of these two procedures the Heller operation (Fig 107) certainly is the most innocuous and currently the most successful. This is because it preserves the sphincter. First proposed by Heller³⁴ in 1913 the procedure then fell into disuse for many years perhaps because formerly the incision was not carried far enough upward upon the esophagus and downward upon the stomach to span completely the diseased segment. We prefer actually to form a gastrotomy lateral to the anticipated abdominal extension of the esophagogastric incision for the myotomy and to cut down upon the finger lying within the esophagus as advocated by others. An advantage of the abdominal approach lies in the fact that duodenal stenosis from peptic ulceration may be present and indicated pyloroplasty more easily performed. However we ourselves have been much more satisfied with the thoracic or thoraco abdominal than with the purely abdominal approach. If there is chronic scarring around the lower esophagus one can easily perforate the stomach or esophagus at the site of stenosis. Meticulous dissection is advisable.

As noted above, all operations which sacrifice the cardiocophageal sphincter entail the risk of subsequent *peptic esophagitis* a complication the incidence of which is somewhat reduced by the resection of a liberal portion of stomach. A few weeks or months following operation the patient's difficulties may return in a most severe form and are associated with roentgenographic and esophagoscopy evidence of inflammation, ulceration and stricture in the lower esophagus. The esophagitis results, of course, from the action of the acid pepsin ferment of the gastric juice which in the absence of the cardiac sphincter has free and liberal access to the susceptible esophageal mucosa. Indeed, sacrifice of the sphincter may merely convert achalasia to peptic esophagitis, the symptoms of which may be more severe and disabling than those of the original disease. For example, we know of one patient who following an esophagogastrostomy for esophageal stricture developed peptic esophagitis with eventual erosion into the aorta and fatal hemorrhage into the alimentary tract.

*Peptic Esophagitis with and without Ulceration*³⁵

It was predicted by Chevalier Jackson³⁶ in 1929 that when the time shall have come when every patient with the slightest discomfort or abnormality in swallowing, every patient with regurgitation 'heartburn' or water brash is examined esophagoscopically, peptic ulcer of the esophagus will be found less rare than it is now thought to be, though it is probably not a common disease.

In 1935, Winkelstein³⁷ reported on a group of patients with unusual and distinctive esophageal findings. The symptoms were those of substernal pain, heartburn, sour regurgitation and hyperchlorhydria, symptoms that recalled the clinical picture of peptic ulcer of the esophagus as described by Jackson. Esophagoscopy in Winkelstein's cases revealed a diffuse inflammation of the esophagus without a definite ulcer. The

symptoms, due to esophagitis, were relieved by antacid and other conservative measures usually employed for the treatment of peptic ulcer

Peptic esophagitis is frequently associated with hiatal hernia. Allison¹ reported on 204 patients with diaphragmatic hiatal hernia and pointed out the significance of paraesophageal hiatal hernia in the occurrence of reflux esophagitis. Moreover, peptic esophagitis, with or without ulceration, is frequently associated with duodenal ulceration, both lesions being in part a result of the digestive effect of the gastric acid-pepsin factor

The final stage of chronic peptic esophagitis is likely to be the formation of a benign fibrous stricture of the lower esophagus. Although most strictures can be controlled by esophageal dilatation and other conservative measures, some cases require resection of the lower esophagus (which incidentally effects vagotomy) and proximal stomach, with esophagogastrostomy. Of 20 cases with peptic esophagitis reported by Winkelstein and his associates,⁹⁰ 15 were associated with simultaneous duodenal ulcer and 2 with gastric ulcer

To summarize, peptic esophagitis is a common disease of this organ. An important consideration in doing a surgical procedure for stricture and/or ulceration of the esophagus is to be certain that there is not also a stenosing ulcer of the duodenum which, if not dealt with simultaneously, may cause gastric retention (especially following vagotomy) and negate the beneficial results which might have resulted from the operation upon the cardia. Moreover, a considerable amount of the acid-bearing portion of the stomach must be removed. In reviewing 65 patients who had resection of the cardiac sphincter mechanism with esophagogastrostomy, Kirklin and his associates⁶⁹ found that 29 subsequently had positive signs and 12 had presumptive signs of peptic esophagitis and stricture formation. To minimize such complications, where resection of the sphinc-

ter cannot be avoided, the acid-pepsin factor must be reduced

Spontaneous Rupture of the Esophagus

While spontaneous perforation of the "normal" esophagus is relatively rare, a considerable number of cases have now been reported, and almost all surgical centers have had experience with this condition. The case first reported was in 1724 by Herman Boerhaave⁵ of Holland

Characteristically, the rupture occurs when a patient, who often has been drinking heavily, vomits violently and raises the pressure in the esophagus abruptly (Fig. 108). The lower esophagus tears in a longitudinal direction (usually on the left) and the patient is seized with severe pain in the lower substernal region, the epigastrium and/or the left lower thoracic portion of the spine. A shocklike state ensues, with cold and clammy skin and a rapid pulse. Roentgen examination may reveal air and fluid in the mediastinum or in the left pleural space

Mackler⁵² studied the possible etiology and mechanism of this condition in cadaver and reported three clinical cases. His findings appeared to confirm the general impression that spontaneous rupture of the esophagus is an accident which may follow a sudden rise in intra-abdominal pressure. Vomiting is the usual cause but other acts which have resulted in rupture are straining at defecation, lifting a heavy weight, a convulsive seizure of grand mal epilepsy, and the labor of childbirth. The triad of vomiting, low thoracic pain, and emphysema of the neck is diagnostic and constitutes sufficient evidence to warrant a left thoracotomy. If the physician even considers the possibility of esophageal rupture, the diagnosis will usually be made. Mackler found that the evidence supported the conclusion that rupture may occur in a previously normal, healthy esophagus as a result of increased intraesophageal pressure, transmitted from the stomach. The rupture uni-

formly occurred at the lower extremity of the esophagus. That this was, in fact, the weakest part of the organ was confirmed by experimentally inflating and bursting the esophagi of 60 fresh human cadavers. The site and configuration of the resulting rupture duplicated exactly the clinical lesions found.

Spontaneous rupture of the esophagus was uniformly fatal before the adoption of left thoracotomy with suture of the rent and adequate drainage. Antibiotics are given in large doses along with adequate supportive therapy in the form of blood transfusions and other measures.

Diaphragmatic Hernia

TYPES A diaphragmatic hernia is a protrusion of certain or most of the abdominal viscera into one or the other hemithorax through a normal or an abnormal opening in the diaphragm. It may result from imperfect development of the diaphragm during embryonic life, anatomic weakness, traumatic injuries or inflammatory processes (Fig. 109). The majority are actually false hernias in that they are not enclosed in a sac of peritoneum. Diaphragmatic hernias occur more often on the left and this is probably due to the protective position of the liver on the right.

Herniation through the aortic and vena caval apertures must be very rare. The retrosternal hernia traversing the foramen of Morgagni is occasionally encountered as a mass presenting in the anterior mediastinum; in this position it is often confused with mediastinal tumors such as pericardial cyst, dermoid lipoma and the like.

Traumatic diaphragmatic hernias may occur in any anatomic location. The symptoms are chiefly respiratory or gastrointestinal, resulting from pulmonary compression or alimentary obstruction; moreover, symptoms may be absent, mild or severe. The defect may remain innocuous for years, only to end in disaster. We recall a patient, stabbed in the left chest, who initially was

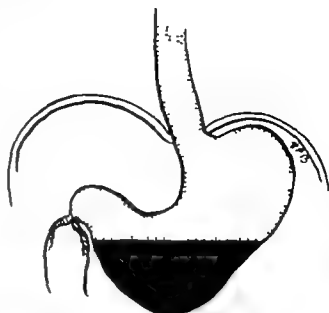


Fig. 108 Mechanism of esophageal rupture in severe vomiting. Diagrammatic representation of the mechanism of vomiting (Top). Inhibition of tone and flaccid relation of the cardiac pouch and sphincter of the stomach. Bottom: Sharp contraction of the diaphragm and abdominal muscles with resultant compression of the stomach and forcible ejection of its contents into the esophagus. (From MACKLER: *N. A. Spontaneous rupture of the esophagus*, *Surg. Gynec. & Obst.*, 95: 345, 1952.)

The longitudinal tear almost always occurs in the left side of the organ just above the diaphragm (Fig. 106). The diagnosis is made on the basis of the history of vomiting (often in an alcoholic), severe sudden pain beneath the sternum and roentgen evidence of mediastinal emphysema or effusion. Shock commonly develops.

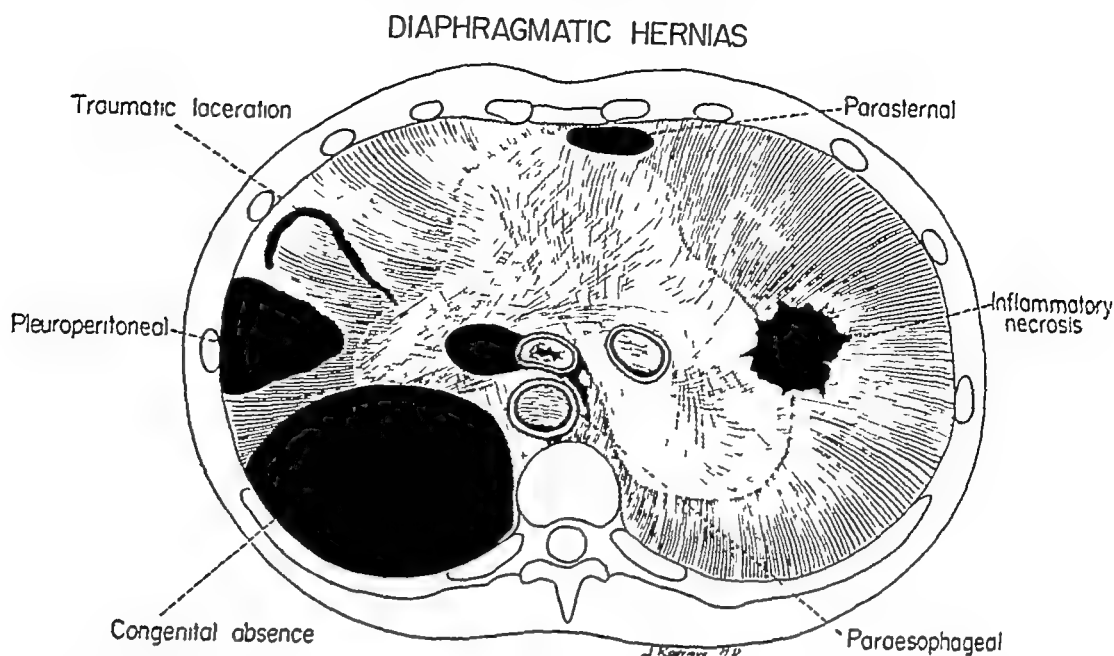


Fig 109 Diaphragmatic hernias in adults are usually more satisfactorily repaired from above, in our experience

managed conservatively. However, empyema developed in the residual hemothorax. This was drained by rib resection and he recovered uneventfully. The possibility of diaphragmatic injury was considered at the time, but the matter was not further pursued in view of the fact that he had no suggestive symptoms. Six years later, while hoisting a large container of garbage onto a garbage truck, he was stricken with sudden, excruciating pain in the lower left chest, followed by cramping abdominal pain. He delayed coming to the hospital and there was further delay after admission since, while the possibility of intestinal obstruction was thought of, it did not sufficiently impress the resident to prompt immediate exploration. The following day the abdomen was explored. A left diaphragmatic hernia was found and the left hemithorax contained several feet of gangrenous jejunum. The patient died.

Traumatic hernias should be repaired.

DIAPHRAGMATIC DEFECTS FROM INFECTIONS
Perforations of diaphragm may occur from subdiaphragmatic collections of purulent material, and especially prone to penetrate this barrier are amebic parasites and the fungus *Actinomyces bovis*. Either of these organisms may result in a bronchopleural

fistula, and the offending agents may be identified in the sputum.

✓ DIAPHRAGMATIC HERNIA IN THE NEWBORN

The complete absence of a diaphragmatic leaf (actually a misnomer, since careful search will usually disclose at least a rudimentary leaf) is rare but does occur. The most common and important hernia in the newborn is that extending through the pleuroperitoneal foramen (Bochdalek), usually on the left. The respiratory distress, cyanosis, perhaps vomiting, and the auscultatory findings of bowel sounds in the chest, along with collateral roentgen evidence, establish the diagnosis.

Severe symptoms may necessitate immediate operation to diminish cardiopulmonary embarrassment, and reduction of the hernia is readily effected through an abdominal incision. On the other hand, occasionally the hernia may remain asymptomatic throughout life. We recall a patient in his thirties, a member of a "tuberculous family," who was admitted for a tuberculosis work-up after a routine county health unit film had revealed "pleural thickening and opacification" of the right hemithorax. Further studies and eventual operation disclosed complete displacement of the liver into the right chest, with an atrophic right lung compressed into the apex. After con-

siderable effort it was possible to return the liver to the abdomen and close the defect. Possibly this hernia would have remained quiescent throughout life, but in general congenital hernias should be repaired when discovered to avoid emergency operation for serious complications.

ESOPHAGEAL HIATAL HERNIA (THE COMMON "DIAPHRAGMATIC HERNIA" OF THE ADULT) The hiatal hernia results when pressure within the abdomen forces the fundus of the stomach and adjacent peritoneum through the diaphragm. The esophagogastric junction may or may not remain fixed in the normal position. The herniation occurs because the hiatal opening is too large but there is considerable variation in the size of this space normally. This hernia occurs more frequently in women whereas traumatic hernias are far more common in men.

Finally there is the *congenitally short esophagus*, in which situation the stomach extends upward through the hiatal opening.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY OF HIATAL HERNIAS (FIG 110) The symptomatology of hiatal hernias varies greatly. Complete asymptomatic hernias are often discovered incidentally when patients are being examined for other conditions but other individuals may have incapacitating distress.

Pain is the symptom which usually brings the patient to operation. Sweet⁶ analyzed 130 cases treated surgically and found that the principal indications for surgery were pain and dyspeptic disturbances. This pain was felt primarily in front sometimes in the upper abdomen and sometimes over the lower thoracic area. When felt in the abdominal region it was usually in the mid-epigastric area. Twelve patients noted pain in the left upper quadrant and five others spoke of it as being in the right upper quadrant. Gallbladder disease, coronary occlusion and angina were among the conditions which frequently had to be ruled out. One individual felt pain only in the mid-dorsal region of the back. Although with one exception the initial reference of pain was to the front of either the abdomen or the tho-

HIATAL HERNIA

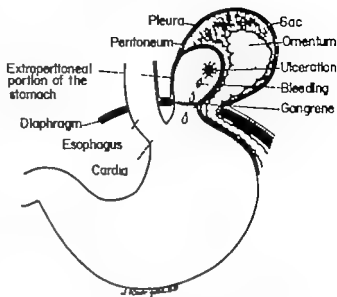


Fig 110 It is often difficult to determine whether a patient's symptoms are actually due to the hiatal hernia. Some complications of this lesion are shown.

rax 20 patients experienced a sense of radiation of the pain to the back, 14 to the neck, and 18 to the shoulders, arms, or wrists. Relief of pain by a change in posture from the supine to the erect position was experienced by 39 patients, while in 3 the supine position was the more comfortable one.

A particular problem in the management of some patients was that at times it was impossible to be certain as to the rôle played by the hernia in causing the pain. In this group Sweet felt that useful diagnostic information was obtained by inflating a balloon at various levels of the esophagus. Moreover such studies were found by Jones and Chapman⁴² to be of much value in excluding from surgical consideration the patient with both coronary disease and a hiatal hernia. In such a patient failure to reproduce the pain by distending the balloon should cause the physician to concentrate on the treatment of the cardiac condition alone unless the hernia is thought to represent a so-called 'trigger point' from which stimuli might arise that would bring about anginal attacks in a reflex manner. However hiatal hernias may themselves at times produce electro-

cardiographic effects similar to those which may be associated with attacks of gall-bladder colic

Another characteristic of hiatal hernia pain in some subjects is that the ingestion of only a few mouthfuls of a meal may precipitate marked distress. This may be relieved by arising and walking around for a few moments, after which the meal can be continued in comfort.

Instead of pain, the patient with hiatal hernia may merely have a feeling of fullness in the upper gastric or lower thoracic region, eructations of "gas", or a feeling of burning or oppression beneath the sternum. These symptoms are referred to the same anatomic sites as is actual pain when present.

Fifty patients in Sweet's series had the above symptoms. Nausea was not a prominent symptom and, although occasional vomiting was experienced by 26 patients, in the majority of these it was self-induced in an effort to relieve a feeling of fullness or distress of a dyspeptic nature. When severe vomiting was present (19 patients) it was indicative of some obstruction, usually occurring when the hernia was exceptionally large with partial volvulus of the stomach. Complete obstruction requiring emergency surgery was experienced in only 2 patients. In 1 of these the stomach was incarcerated, with early ischemic changes from an occluded blood supply.

Bleeding was observed in 40 patients (30 per cent), and this bleeding was considered to come from the herniated portion of the stomach. In 29 the bleeding was episodic, with sudden relatively massive hemorrhages usually manifested by the passage of tarry stools, occasionally by hematemesis. In 11 instances blood loss was slight but continuous, resulting in hypochromic anemia.

Narrowing or compression of the esophago-gastric junction may interfere with normal passage of food into the stomach. Resulting dysphagia and regurgitation are frequently made worse by exertion or by change of position. Compression of the herniated portion of the stomach by the dia-

phragm may prevent normal venous drainage and thereby may produce marked hyperemia of the gastric mucosa. This congested mucosa is often traumatized and superficial erosions or ulcerations develop. The slow but persistent loss of blood may lead to the anemia mentioned above, but it is to be remembered that in some cases the alimentary bleeding may arise in a concomitant duodenal ulcer.

* **SOME ADDITIONAL CONSIDERATIONS IN REPAIR OF DIAPHRAGMATIC HERNIAS.** Certain of the physiologic implications are implicit in the previous discussion of various types of hernias and their symptoms and pathology. For example, it may be quite difficult to return all of the abdominal organs to the peritoneal cavity in an infant in whom most or a large part of the abdominal viscera are found in the thorax, and various types of alimentary and cardiorespiratory dysfunction may occur. Recurrence of diaphragmatic hernia is not a rare complication, and occasionally symptoms persist following the repair. It is especially important to exclude other intra-abdominal pathology before repairing the hernia, since the symptoms may be due to malignancy.

Physiologic Basis of Gastric Surgery

Modern gastric surgery is based upon a knowledge of gastric secretory physiology. This has been developed over the past two centuries since Réaumur (1752) isolated the gastric juice of birds and demonstrated its solvent effect upon foods.⁶⁸ These observations were confirmed and extended by others during the succeeding decades, but the next truly major advance, particularly as it affected human physiology, was Beaumont's classic study of the gastric fistula of Alexis St. Martin in 1833.⁶⁹ His observations resulted in the formulation of the broad concepts of the processes of gastric secretion as they are known today. The importance of the cephalic phase was demonstrated by Pavlov⁷⁰ in 1910, when he established the concept of the conditioned reflex.

ANATOMY The regional anatomy of the stomach is shown in Figure 111. The stomach may be thought of as consisting of the cardia, body, and pylorus, but it is helpful to subdivide the cardiac portion into the fundus and the region adjacent to the esophageal opening and to subdivide the lower stomach (pyloric portion) into the pyloric antrum, the pyloric canal, and the muscular pylorus itself.

Physiology of Gastric Secretion

The main gastric glands are situated in the fundus, body, and part of the pyloric region of the stomach. These glands are lined by two types of cells, the chief or peptic cells which secrete pepsin (from an inactive precursor, pepsinogen) and the parietal cells which secrete hydrochloric acid. The surface lining of the stomach consists of columnar epithelial cells between which lie many mucus-secreting goblet cells. There are also many goblet cells in the necks of the glands. The pyloric glands secrete an alkaline fluid which is rich in mucus and has considerable neutralizing power but is poor in chloride and digestive enzymes.²⁴

The gastric juice contains the strongly acid solution from the parietal cells. The strong hydrochloric acid is essential for peptic digestion and it has some antiseptic action. The chief cells as noted secrete pepsin which in the presence of hydrochloric acid breaks down proteins to peptones. It is possible that the chief cells also secrete rennin and lipase. Rennin curdles milk by acting on its caseinogen which in the presence of ionic calcium precipitates an insoluble calcium caseinate.

The three phases of gastric secretion may be referred to as the nervous or cephalic, the gastric or humoral, and the intestinal phases.^{18, 20-23} (Fig. 112). These terms refer to the fact that secretion by the gastric glands in the body and fundus of the stomach may be stimulated by impulses in the vagus nerve aroused reflexly by the sight, odor, or taste of food and certain emotions (cephalic phase) and by the presence of

TOPOGRAPHICAL ANATOMY OF THE STOMACH

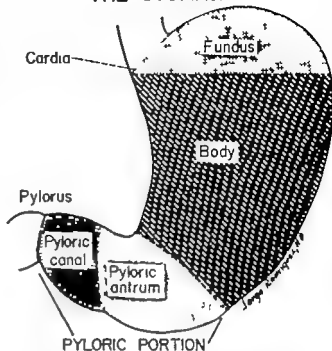


Fig. 111 The antral secretion is alkaline and here gastrin is formed. The acid-secreting cells are in the body and fundus. The cardiac sphincter is vital to the protection of the esophagus from erosion by the acid-pepsin factor.

food within the stomach (gastric phase) or intestine (intestinal phase). Dragstedt and his associates²⁰ investigated the relative importance of the three phases and found that in normal dogs the nervous phase of secretion accounted for approximately 45 per cent of the gastric juice secreted in a 24-hour period, the gastric phase for about 45 per cent, and the intestinal phase 10 per cent or less. However, these were only estimates since there appeared to be a definite interrelationship between at least the nervous and gastric phases of secretion. For example, the removal of the nervous phase of secretion by complete vagotomy likewise materially reduced the gastric phase of secretion and the elimination of the gastric phase of secretion in turn reduced the effectiveness of the nervous phase. The gastric phase of secretion was found to be mediated exclusively by the mucous membrane of the antrum of the stomach which functions as an endocrine organ for the manufacture of the gastric secretory stimulant gastrin; the antral mucosa is stimulated to form gastrin when food comes

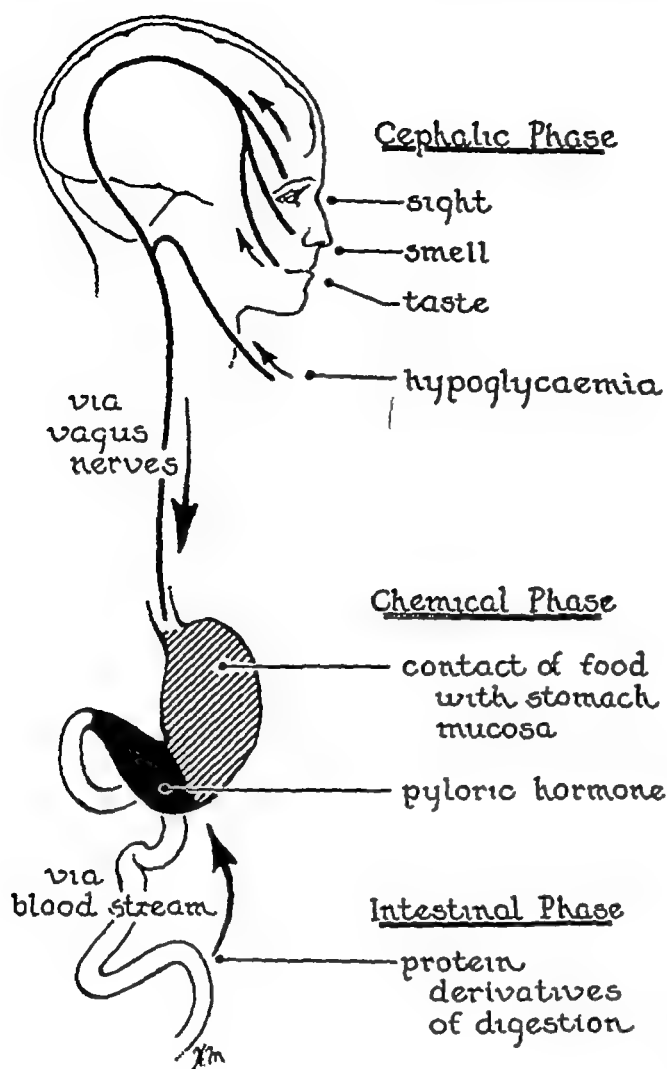


Fig 112 Mechanism of the stimulation of gastric juice secretion. The cephalic phase and the gastric (chemical) phase are the most important. The cephalic phase is abolished by vagotomy, the gastric phase is reduced by subtotal gastrectomy (WEBSTER, D. R. In *Textbook of Surgery*, Ed 2, edited by H. F. Moseley. St. Louis, C. V. Mosby Company, 1955.)

into contact with it or when the antrum is moderately distended. Removal of the antrum in Pavlov pouch dogs, or transplantation of the antrum so that it did not come into contact with food, abolished the gastric phase of secretion.¹¹ When both the nervous and the gastric phases of secretion were eliminated, as by complete vagotomy and removal of the antrum, the secretion of gastric juice by the body and fundus of the stomach was reduced to a negligible amount, indicating that the intestinal phase of secretion is relatively unimportant.

As stated, the antrum of the stomach was found to be the sole source of the gastric

secretory excitant, *gastrin*, and to function as an endocrine organ, transplantation of the antrum of the stomach into the colon caused a greater secretion of gastric juice than was produced when the antrum was in its normal location. This secretory stimulus continued even though the regional blood supply to the antrum was divided, allowing it to be nourished by newly formed blood vessels from the colon. In the absence of other factors, the development of pressure within the isolated colon containing the antrum transplant as a result of peristalsis was a profound stimulus for antral function. This finding suggests a possible explanation for the increase in gastric secretion which accompanies pyloric stenosis in man, namely, that unrelieved gastric distention affords a continuous stimulus for antral elaboration of gastrin.

TESTS FOR GASTRIC ACID SECRETION Tests for gastric secretory activity are performed in several ways.

Fractional test meal The usual test of gastric secretion is performed in the following manner. A nasogastric tube is introduced into the stomach before breakfast, with no food having been eaten since the previous evening. The resting contents of the stomach are aspirated and used for the first specimen. The stomach is then irrigated with distilled water and this is withdrawn. Next, approximately a pint of gruel is swallowed and 10 ml of gastric contents are aspirated at intervals of 15 minutes until the stomach is empty. Each sample is titrated with sodium hydroxide to determine the amount of free hydrochloric acid and the total acidity. A sample curve is shown in Figure 113. The resting specimen amounts to an average of 30 ml of fluid, and free hydrochloric acid can usually be demonstrated. The ingestion of the gruel usually lowers the free acid almost to zero level. This is due to dilution of the gastric juice, its neutralization by swallowed saliva, and its combination with organic substances in the test meal. The acidity of the gastric contents usually then slowly rises, and after 1½ hours reaches perhaps

0.1 per cent hydrochloric acid, equivalent to 30 ml of 0.1 N NaOH per 100 ml of gastric contents. The presence of the food and water in the stomach has thus called forth a second flow of gastric juice, the gastric phase, and as this secretion is added to the stomach contents the acidity slowly rises.²⁴

As might be suspected, the response to the test meal shows considerable variation in different subjects—depending upon the quantity of acid secreted in response to the meal, the rate at which the test meal leaves the stomach, the amount of intestinal contents regurgitated into the stomach to neutralize partially the gastric acid and other factors. Actually the fractional test meal has fallen into considerable disrepute, and it is not nearly so widely used as formerly.

✓ *The histamine test of gastric secretion*²⁵ Histamine is a powerful stimulant to the secretion of gastric juice and for a time it was considered to be identical with gastrin. However it has now been established that gastrin and histamine are not identical. Histamine acts mainly on the parietal cells and causes an increased volume of highly acid gastric juice with a low pepsin content. Incidentally this is in contrast to the effect of the administration of insulin, which considerably increases peptic activity as well. The insulin stimulus is mediated over the vagus nerves.¹

The *histamine test* is performed as follows. First the resting gastric contents are aspirated through the nasogastric tube and the stomach washed out. Then 0.5 mg. of histamine is injected subcutaneously. The gastric contents are aspirated intermittently and the volume and acidity of each 10 minute sample are determined. On the average the highest level of acidity obtained is 102 ml of 0.1 N hydrochloric acid. The volume of 0.1 N acid secreted in 1 hour is on the average 182 ml. The volume of juice in 1 hour is approximately 200 ml.

The histamine stimulus tests almost specifically the functional state of the parietal cells and in this respect it resembles the action of gastrin.

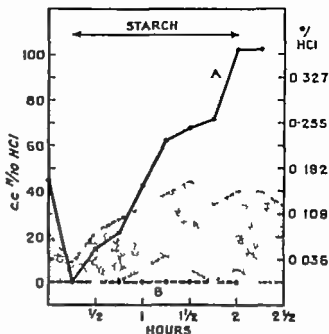


Fig 113 Fractional test meal (Bennett and Ryle) Ordinate cc of N/10 HCl (left) or gm of HCl (right) in 100 cc of aspirated gastric contents. Shaded area represents the limits of free HCl in 80 per cent of healthy males after a test meal. A = "climbing" type of curve B = achylia gastrica. The emptying time of stomach is measured by the disappearance of starch (in this figure after 2 hours).

The gastric analysis still affords the surgeon valuable information. If the patient with pyloric obstruction has a high level of gastric acidity, the resection of a liberal amount of stomach may be indicated. If there is little or no acidity a simple gastroenterostomy may be judicious in an elderly poor risk patient. (From Wainwright's *Applied Physiology*, Ed 9 London Oxford University Press 1955)

*Insulin test of gastric function*²⁵ The injection of insulin (20 units regular) is followed in man by a marked secretion of gastric juice resembling that produced by vagal stimulation in that it is rich in both hydrochloric acid and pepsin. The response begins after a latent period of about 40 minutes, and its onset coincides with a considerable fall in the blood sugar to levels of perhaps 70 mg per 100 ml, accompanied by the usual prodromal signs of hypoglycemia such as dizziness or drowsiness. The insulin does not act directly upon the gastric secretory mechanisms but produces its effects solely by virtue of resulting hypoglycemia. It has been shown in cross-circulation experiments

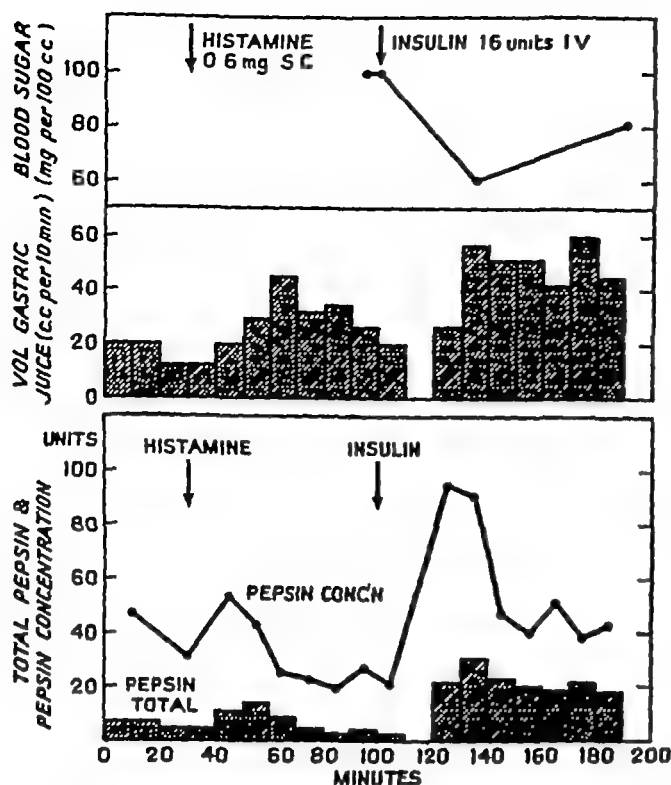


Fig 114 Comparison of action of histamine and insulin on gastric secretion in man. Histamine stimulates the gastric secretory cells directly. Insulin stimulates indirectly by lowering the blood sugar, this causes the hypothalamus to initiate vagal impulses that increase gastric secretion. Therefore, the effect of insulin on gastric secretion is abolished by vagotomy, and the presence or absence of an insulin effect upon gastric secretion is used as evidence of the completeness of vagotomy (From WRIGHT, S. *Applied Physiology*, Ed 9 London, Oxford University Press, 1955)

that the hypoglycemia acts on the central nervous system and causes increased activity over the vagal secretory supply to the stomach. (There is evidence that adrenocortical hormones may also play a part in this response to hypoglycemia.) The gastric response to hypoglycemia is virtually abolished by double vagotomy or by suitably large doses of atropine, and this is of course the basis for the commonly used insulin test to determine the completeness of vagotomy.

A combined insulin-histamine test stimulates the maximum secretory capacity of the gastric mucosa. The two are compared in Figure 114.

QUANTITATIVE METHODS FOR THE STUDY OF THE SECRETION OF GASTRIC JUICE Dragstedt and his associates²¹ have emphasized that quantitative methods of studying gastric se-

cretion are usually necessary to demonstrate certain types of deranged function, and for this reason should replace determinations of the free acid concentration and fractional samples of the gastric content, the latter give little or no information concerning the actual amount of hydrochloric acid manufactured by the stomach throughout the day and night. If quantitative methods of collection are applied, data obtained from gastric analysis are of definite value in the diagnosis of duodenal ulcer and, more especially, in forecasting the success of certain medical measures of management and the probable necessity for eventual surgical therapy. These workers reported two patients who secreted 330 and 337 mEq hydrochloric acid in the 12-hour night period, as compared with the normal average of 18 mEq. It was considered unlikely that this large secretion of acid could be controlled satisfactorily by any type of medical management; the patients could long tolerate, and that surgical measures to reduce the secretion would have to be used.

Dragstedt and his associates place the nasogastric tube in the lower portion of the stomach under fluoroscopic control and maintain constant suction from 9 o'clock in the evening until 9 o'clock the following morning. During this 12-hour period the patient is shielded from the sight, odor and taste of foods and, since all food has been removed from the stomach by a preliminary gastric lavage as well as by the period of fasting, the usual physiologic stimuli for gastric secretion are absent. Some portion of the gastric secretion inevitably escapes through the pylorus and thus the collection is often incomplete. In fact, when hypermotility of the stomach is present, as occurs during the insulin test, the amount of gastric secretion recovered may actually be relatively small as compared with the total amount secreted and may render the determination of little value in such patients. Even so, the indwelling tube may be utilized to measure in a more quantitative fashion the secretory response of the stomach to

such stimuli as histamine and insulin hypoglycemia, such tests being performed while the nasogastric tube is still in place following collection of the night secretion. One milligram of histamine acid phosphate may be given subcutaneously and the gastric secretion collected by continuous aspiration for a period of 60 minutes. A similar technique may be employed to determine the gastric secretory response to insulin hypoglycemia, in which case one injects 20 units of regular insulin and makes a 3 hour collection of gastric secretion. Determinations of the blood sugar levels are done to ascertain the degree of hypoglycemia produced. Here too a variable volume of the secretion may leave the stomach via the pylorus and be lost to suction.

THE TUBELESS METHOD FOR DETERMINATION OF GASTRIC ACIDITY In an effort to improve methods of gastric analysis Shay, Ostrove, and Siplet⁷⁸ re-examined the possibilities for such measurements. They found that the inadequacy of the usual gastric analysis was perhaps even greater if the method was used to evaluate the effect of subtotal gastrectomy on the secretion of the remaining gastric pouch. From their studies the determination of hydrogen ion concentration (pH) of the gastric contents was found to be the most precise method for establishing the true status of gastric acidity when no titratable free acid was present. It was considered vital for the ulcer patient who had had a subtotal gastric resection to develop relative anacidity in the remaining gastric pouch if he was to be safeguarded against the development of new ulcers. It was recommended that the gastric secretion in such patients be measured shortly following operation and at frequent intervals thereafter until a satisfactory gastric anacidity was established. They noted that the low or level of gastric secretion might not be realized for from 4 to 6 months following the subtotal gastric resection and it was advised that all patients be continued on a strict medical regime until the acid secretion of the remaining pouch of the stomach had stabilized at the lowest level

which it could attain. The explanation for the delay in the fall of the acidity in the remaining gastric remnant was not clear.

Shay and his associates re-evaluated the tubeless method reported by Segal, Miller, and Morton⁷⁹ who employed this technique as a test for determining the presence or absence of free hydrochloric acid in the stomach without subjecting the patient to intubation. The principle of the test lies in the use of a cation exchange resin to which is attached a special indicator cation that can be readily identified when it is released from the compound by an ion exchange reaction. Clinical trials were based on administration of a quininium exchange indicator compound prepared by subjecting an acid-conditioned cation exchange resin to a solution of quinine hydrochloride. By this treatment quinine replaces the hydrogen cations of the carboxylic acid groups present in the resin. If free hydrochloric acid is present in the stomach, the quinine will be replaced by hydrogen ions and the liberated quinine will be absorbed into the blood stream and can soon be detected in the urine. The greater the amount of acid in the stomach the greater the urinary excretion of quinine.

Small amounts of quininium cations may be displaced by the cations present in the secretions of the small intestine, but these quininium cations can be differentiated from those displaced by the hydrogen ions in gastric juice by the time of their appearance and the amount of quininium cations in the urine. It has been suggested that the simplicity of the tubeless test of gastric acidity may render it useful as a screening measure for the selection of achlorhydric subjects in the gastric cancer age group for further investigative studies.

Unfortunately, Shay and his associates⁷⁸ concluded that the tubeless method for determining the presence of free hydrochloric acid in the remaining pouch following gastric resection was not reliable probably as a result of the fact that the rapid emptying of the remaining pouch allowed insufficient time for the quinine to be displaced by hy-

diogen The determination of the pH of gastric contents during an adequate fractional gastric analysis appeared to be the best method for studying gastric acidity after subtotal gastric resection

Abnormal Gastric Acid Values

An elevated secretion of hydrochloric acid is a predisposing factor in duodenal ulceration It is frequently associated with emotional stress, but certain nonfunctioning tumors of the islets of Langerhans have recently been reported to be associated with increased gastric acid production, the so-called ulcerogenic tumors of the pancreas⁹⁵

Gastric acid is decreased or absent in patients with pernicious anemia, is usually absent in the presence of gastric cancer, and normally tends to decline with advancing age It may also be subnormal in diabetes mellitus, hyperthyroidism, and Addison's disease

Secretion of Pepsin and Peptic Activity in the Stomach

The administration of histamine does not increase pepsin secretion by the chief cells of the stomach, but the administration of insulin does induce an increase in the secretion of pepsin by virtue of the effect of the hypoglycemia on the central nervous system to stimulate vagal activity Ferguson²⁷ found that the pepsin output in dogs was decreased by over 50 per cent after vagotomy The humoral phase of gastric pepsin secretion appeared to be of little importance Janowitz and Hollander³⁰ examined gastric pepsin content and found a high degree of positive correlation between the basal secretion of pepsin and of acid, suggesting that in the basal state the chief and the parietal cells were responding to some common influence, possibly of vagal origin The basal secretion of pepsin and acid was measured for periods of 3 hours in 61 individuals who presented wide variations in clinical diagnosis and in secretory activity Twenty-one duodenal ulcer patients secreted, on the average, 3 times as much pepsin per hour as did the 26 individuals of the control group

without gastrointestinal lesions The patients with duodenal ulcer also secreted more acid in the basal state than did the controls A small group of 4 gastric ulcer patients and 5 gastric carcinoma patients fell within the normal range of secretory behavior

Blood pepsin levels and the urinary excretion of this enzyme have also been studied In brief, it has been shown that the pepsinogen or propepsin is absorbed into the circulation and excreted in the urine as uropepsin This excretion may be increased in peptic ulcer patients, especially during exacerbations of ulcer activity; similarly, blood pepsin levels may be elevated in these subjects Nevertheless, thus far our own experience with blood pepsin and uropepsin measurements has not led us to believe that the correlation between duodenal ulcer and an increased pepsin secretion is nearly so consistent as between duodenal ulcer and increased acid secretion Moreover, there are wide variations in the blood pepsin levels obtained among "normal" patients and in the same patient at different times⁵⁴

Effect of Foodstuffs on Gastric Secretion

Meat and protein extracts are strong stimulants of gastric secretion, while carbohydrates have little effect Fats promote a secretion of gastric juice while in the stomach, but after passing into the duodenum they stimulate the formation of a substance which causes marked inhibition of gastric secretion This substance has been termed "enterogastrone"

Gastric Motility

The stomach exhibits both tone and peristalsis, and its motility appears to have an important relationship to the pain associated with peptic ulcer Gastrointestinal motor activity in human beings may be studied with the aid of intubing balloons

Peptic Ulcer

Etiology and Pathogenesis

GASTRIC SECRETION AND ITS RÔLE IN ULCER FORMATION The basic mechanism which

finally results in actual ulceration of the stomach or duodenum is not yet known, but there is general agreement that certain predisposing factors are quite important (Table 13). The most significant of these are those which influence the amount of hydrochloric acid and, to a lesser extent, of pepsin secreted by the stomach. The dictum "no acid, no ulcer" still remains a valid practical summary of the ulcer problem, from the surgical point of view. The chief objective of both medical and surgical forms of treatment is to reduce the acidity of the stomach (and the upper duodenum) to below the optimum level for the digestive action of pepsin. Active duodenal ulcers in the presence of gastric achlorhydria are rare.

While the presence of an increased gastric acidity is important in the formation of duodenal ulcer, it need not follow that the increased acidity in itself is responsible for the ulcer; many individuals exhibit hyperacidity without ulcer. Moreover, the duodenal ulcer can heal and recur spontaneously with no significant variation in the degree or quantity of acid present. Clearly, then, hyperacidity and hypersecretion alone are not responsible for the development of ulcer, and there must therefore be other factors which render the mucosa susceptible to the digestive action of acid pepsin. These other factors may, moreover, be exceedingly important. For example, the mucus secreted provides a protective influence in both the stomach and duodenum, and it may play a prominent rôle in the local defense mechanism against ulceration.

2. **THE PSYCHOGENIC FACTOR.** The emotional aspect is considered separately from gastric secretion *per se* chiefly for emphasis. The observations of various persons regarding emotional turmoil have shown that there is hypersecretion of hydrochloric acid and pepsin during anger and resentment, while fear or insecurity are likely to have an opposite effect. The frequency with which striving and emotional crises are associated with the development of an active duodenal ulcer, or the reactivation of an established ulcer is too great to be merely coincidental. Of

TABLE 13 PATHOLOGIC FACTORS IN SOME PEPTIC ULCERS

- 1 Emotional stress—vagal mediation?
- 2 Severe trauma such as a burn (Curling's ulcer)—adrenocortical mediation?
- 3 Brain (hypothalamic) injury—Cushing's ulcer
- 4 Cushing's disease (adrenocortical hyperplasia or adenoma)
- 5 Parathyroid adenoma
- 6 Pheochromocytoma
- 7 Ulcerogenic tumor of pancreas
- 8 Polycythemia

course, such psychogenic stress acts largely through vagal stimulation of gastric secretion, but endocrine and other as yet undiscovered effects of psychic stress may be operative (Fig. 115).

2. **CONSTITUTIONAL FACTORS.** It has always been a matter of interest that one person

SCHEMA FOR THE ACTION OF STRESS ON GASTRIC SECRETION

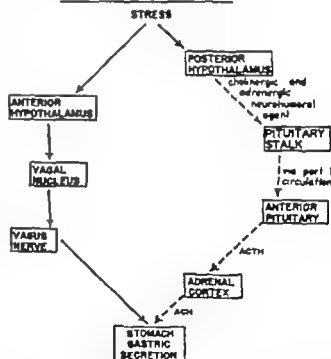


Fig. 115 A diagrammatic representation of two types of hypothalamic stress stimulation of gastric secretion (Cushing's type on the reader's left and Curling's type to the right). This schema indicates the alternate pathways for the mediation of impulses that result in stress ulcers. (From Shay H. Stress and gastric secretion. *Gastroenterology* 26: 316, 1954, as modified by HARKINS, H. N. In *Surgery—Principles and Practice*, edited by J. G. Allen, H. N. Harkins, C. A. Meyer and J. E. Rhoads. Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1957.)

may develop an ulcer under a particular type of stress, whereas another person under the same stress does not develop ulcer. Certain constitutional types of individuals have throughout literature been looked upon as those likely to predispose to the development of an ulcer, and persons with these personality traits and body build are referred to as representing the "ulcer type."

It is this predisposition to ulcer formation, by virtue of personality make-up, that constitutes the basic difficulty in most patients with ulcer—for life stress and the patient's reaction to it can be modified but not abolished, surgery or no surgery. *Duodenal ulcer is a constitutional disease*

THE MOTILITY FACTOR It has been suggested that hypermotility of the stomach and duodenum may act to interfere with local blood supply, resulting in devitalization of tissue and subsequent ulceration. While gastric tone may be of importance in the pathogenesis of peptic ulcer, one doubts that it is a major factor in this connection.

ISCHEMIA It is not possible readily to produce typical peptic ulcers by interference with either the arterial or the venous blood supply alone. Yet, there are certain types of ischemia, such as that in polycythemia, which may result in the production of an ulcer. Therefore, lowered tissue resistance resulting from ischemia may be important in the production of some ulcers.

ENDOCRINE INFLUENCES WITH SPECIAL REFERENCE TO ACTH AND CORTISONE Various types of endocrine dysfunction may predispose to the development of peptic ulcer, and patients with Cushing's disease may exhibit peptic ulceration. Furthermore, in severe stress reactions, such as that associated with thermal burns, an ulcer of the duodenum or stomach may develop (Curling's Ulcer), and it has been repeatedly found that the administration of cortisone and/or ACTH may result in peptic ulceration. It was stated by Gray and his associates³¹ that these hormones result in a pronounced increase in both acid and pepsin secretion. How this effect is mediated is not apparent, for it has

been reported that cortisone has no local effect on secretion by gastric cells *in vitro*.¹⁵ Regardless of the mechanism, however, the increased secretion of acid and pepsin following hormonal therapy is not necessarily the cause of the ulcer.

The presence of a pheochromocytoma may be first manifested by peptic ulceration and hemorrhage, presumably due to the systemic effects of the increased blood level of epinephrine and norepinephrine. Peptic ulceration has been reported in association with functioning parathyroid tumors and with tumors of the pancreatic isles of Langerhans, as has been mentioned above. The mechanisms of these relationships have not been defined.

Mechanism of Ulcer Pain

There exists a difference of opinion as to the cause of the pain associated with peptic ulcer. One theory is that the pain is due to chemical irritation of exposed sensory fibers in an ulcer crater by hydrochloric acid, the acid evokes a chemical inflammation and thereby lowers the pain threshold of the nerve endings that are present in large numbers in the base and in the edges of the ulcer. The pain arises only when the gastric contents are acid. Even so, the concentration of the acid at the time of distress may not be abnormal, nor need it be greater than that present in the same stomach without pain when the ulcer is healed or in a healing phase. Furthermore, the threshold of acidity necessary to evoke pain varies greatly from one patient to another and in the same patient from time to time.

In contrast, an opposing theory is that the pain of ulcer is produced by increased muscular activity or spasm at the ulcer site (Fig 116). In 150 consecutive patients studied by Ruffin and Carter⁷¹ with an acid barium mixture at pH 1, only 50 (33 per cent) had pain following ingestion of the acid mixture. In addition, the development of pain was associated invariably with altered motility, consisting of incoordination of the gastric evacuation mechanism with or

without localized spasm. In 17 patients having a duodenal ulcer no acid barium could be demonstrated in the ulcer crater in many patients who experienced no pain at the time and in some patients having ulcer distress the ingestion of acid barium was followed by immediate relief. Finally, relief of pain regularly followed the intravenous administration of a potent anticholinergic drug. This coincided exactly with cessation of gastric motility as observed fluoroscopically, despite the fact that the pH of the gastric contents remained unchanged. It was concluded that for the production and perception of ulcer pain there must be (1) a stimulus, either hydrochloric acid or others less well understood, (2) an intact motor nerve supply to the stomach and duodenum (3) altered gastroduodenal motility, and (4) an intact sensory pathway to the cerebral cortex.

The acid-factor and the-motility factor are probably both important in the production of ulcer pain.

TRANSMISSION AND CHARACTER OF ULCER PAIN. Nerve impulses from the duodenum and gastric region are transmitted over the parasympathetic (vagus), the sympathetic (splanchnic), and the intercostal (somatic) nerves (Fig 117). The vagus nerve is concerned primarily with gastrointestinal motility and secretion, and it is not concerned with carrying sensory impulses of a painful nature. This has been shown by stimulating the proximal end of the vagus nerve and causing no sensation in the conscious patient and it is further supported by the fact that after complete vagotomy the pain of gallbladder colic or recurrent peptic ulcer is unchanged. In contrast, interruption of the sympathetics abolishes the visceral pain that is produced by distention or spasm of the hollow viscus or by traction upon the mesentery.

The pain of an uncomplicated ulcer is located almost always in the epigastrium and is usually limited to an area a few centimeters in diameter. A duodenal ulcer that is located on the posterior wall may at times

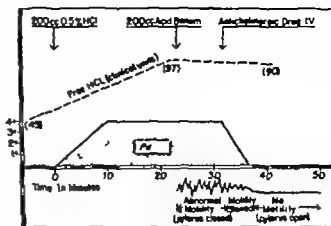


Fig 116 Relationship of acidity motility and anticholinergic drugs and pain. It is indicated that the pain of the peptic ulcer was abolished by an anticholinergic drug even though the induced gastric acidity remained high. Nevertheless, there is disagreement among gastroenterologists as to whether ulcer pain is due to gastric acidity or to gastric motility. Probably both are important. (From RUFFIN, J. M. AND CARTER, D. D. Peptic ulcer Disease. A Month, Aug. 1955 Year Book Publishers, Inc., Chicago.)

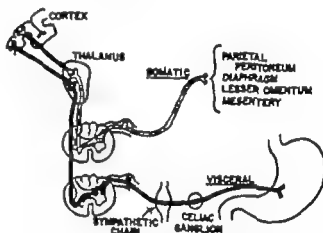


Fig 117 The pain of peptic ulcer (mediated by sympathetics) is abolished by sympathectomy unless the partial peritoneum (pain mediated by somatic nerves) is irritated. (RUFFIN, J. M., AND CARTER, D. D. Peptic ulcer Disease. A Month Aug., 1955 Year Book Publishers, Inc., Chicago.)

be associated with pain referred to the back, particularly if it is a penetrating ulcer. Ulcer distress arising from lesions not penetrating to the serosa may have a cutaneous reference, and this indicates that visceral nerves are capable of mediating referred pain. Pain from marginal ulcer occurring at the gastrojejunostomy stoma following gastric resection may also be referred to the back and may be confused with symptoms arising from pancreatitis or biliary disease.

The clinical picture of an uncomplicated duodenal ulcer is so characteristic that the history is a very important aid in diagnosis. The pain usually appears some 2 or 3 hours after a meal, and is relieved by the taking of food or alkali. If the ulcer is situated in the pyloric canal (a "channel" ulcer), however, it may give rise to a bizarre syndrome that is quite different from the above picture. In an analysis of 100 consecutive patients having channel ulcer, confirmed by x-ray studies or by operation, Ruffin and associates⁷² found nausea and vomiting the most common symptoms, occurring in 83 per cent of the cases.

Gastric vs. Duodenal Ulcer

There has been much discussion regarding whether duodenal ulcer and gastric ulcer, so similar in many important respects, are not, however, fundamentally different diseases. In patients with duodenal ulcer there is usually an elevated gastric acidity, while

many gastric ulcers are associated with a normal or subnormal gastric acidity. The patient with duodenal ulcer is usually beset by emotional strain, this is not conspicuous in the subject who has gastric ulcer. The duodenal ulcer is almost never the site of malignancy, the gastric ulcer is frequently the site of malignancy. In fact, it is estimated that from 5 to 10 per cent of gastric ulcers (Fig 118) represent malignancy.

The local factors which fail to withstand the destructive action of acid-pepsin gastric juice would appear to be especially important in the production of gastric ulcers, for here the acid concentration may be normal or even subnormal.

In summary, duodenal ulcer is usually associated with an increased gastric acidity, as are many gastric ulcers, however, other gastric ulcers are not associated with an increased acidity and may be due to a fundamentally different etiology.



Fig 118 Gastric ulcer. This benign lesion was excised *en bloc* with omentum and spleen when malignancy could not be excluded on frozen section. The acid-pepsin factor is admittedly important in the genesis of most duodenal ulcers, but many patients with gastric ulcer have a normal or low gastric acidity. Hence, gastric ulcer and duodenal ulcer must be considered separately, especially as the former is often malignant and the latter almost never so.

Physiologic Principles of Peptic Ulcer Management

Treatment is aimed at reducing the gastric acidity (Since anxiety and mental stress increase the acid pepsin concentration in the stomach, every effort is made to put the individual at emotional rest to diminish the cephalic (nervous) phase of acid secretion. Even by hospitalizing the patient this can usually be accomplished only in part by rest and additional measures are commonly required. Moreover, it has been seen that the cephalic phase normally represents only 45 per cent of the secretion, while the gastric phase also represents 45 per cent, and the intestinal phase, 10 per cent—though the cephalic segment may be the most important in ulcer patients. The additional conservative measures consist chiefly of an "ulcer" diet with frequent feedings, alkaline compounds, mild sedatives, and atropine-like drugs.

The diet should be bland in character. Three main meals with 'interval' feedings constitute the usual regimen. The most important feature is to keep the gastric acid neutralized continuously by sufficiently frequent feedings or alkalinizing medication, preventing the stomach from becoming empty and exposing the ulcer to a bath of highly acid gastric juice. In some instances, especially in patients with night pain, feedings may have to be administered around the clock and it is the practice of some physicians to insert an indwelling nasogastric tube and continuously to drip some neutralizing material into the stomach in severe cases. One former teacher often stated that so long as something was maintained in the stomach constantly even if it were alfalfa, most ulcers would heal—an overstatement, perhaps but one that underscores the basic therapeutic requirement. Actually the feedings should contain, when practical, a fair proportion of fat so as to take advantage of its depressant effect upon gastric secretion as well as upon gastric motility. Potent stimulators of gastric secretion such as meat

extracts should be avoided in the acute phase, and alcohol should be avoided in definitely.

Antacids (and food) are employed to raise the pH of the gastric contents above the level necessary for peptic digestion. Pepsin acts best at pH 1.5 to 2.2. Antacids are not necessary in many cases but they can be used instead of interval feedings if excessive caloric intake results in undue weight gain and at bedtime in individuals having night pain. When an antacid is used, it should be relatively insoluble and cause neither constipation, diarrhea, or acid rebound.¹¹

THE USE OF BELLADONNA AND SIMILAR DRUGS
Banthine and Pro-Banthine are atropine-like compounds with an anticholinergic action similar to that of atropine but with fewer of the undesirable side effects. It has been noted elsewhere that Banthine will diminish pancreatic secretion. It will also diminish the nervous phase of gastric secretion. There are other compounds which may be used, but Banthine (methantheline bromide) and Pro-Banthine (propantheline bromide) are representative of this group. These drugs interfere with the cholinergic transmission of nerve impulses, and they differ from the atropine group in that they are effective not only at the effector site but also at the parasympathetic ganglia. This blockade of parasympathetic impulses results in a so-called medical 'vagotomy,' with inhibition of both secretory and motor activity of the stomach. In addition to these effects Wolff¹² observed a decrease in the engorgement of the gastric mucous membrane after their administration. Although certain of the undesirable side effects are less severe with Banthine than with atropine these symptoms are still present in varying degrees and they include the atropine-like visual and salivary disturbances, tachycardia, difficulty in urination, abdominal distention, constipation and an ill-defined feeling of lassitude or fatigue.

It is generally agreed that the anticho-

linergic drugs inhibit gastric secretory activity, with a reduction of both volume and acidity. However, the response following oral administration is both variable and unpredictable, and anacidity is not often attained with currently available drugs unless high doses are employed. After parenteral administration anacidity occurs somewhat more frequently but, unlike vagotomy, these drugs have little effect on the cephalic phase of acid secretion.

The effect of Banthine on gastrointestinal motor activity is generally more pronounced and less variable than is the effect of Banthine on gastric secretion.⁴⁷ In the normal person there is no demonstrable effect on the motility of the esophagus as determined by roentgenography, but balloon studies have shown a reduction in spontaneous motility of the esophagus after Banthine was given intravenously. This agent does not relax the cardiac sphincter, and the administration of these drugs in patients with cardiospasm aggravates the condition, as does vagotomy.⁷³ The most striking clinical effect of these agents has been the relief of ulcer pain, an effect that is frequently dramatic after parenteral administration. This relief of pain may be synchronous with the cessation of gastric motility despite artificially high acid values.⁴⁰ Nevertheless, the abolition of pain is not necessarily indicative of healing, for ulcer craters have been observed to persist for weeks or months under treatment even though the patient was symptom-free. Few data are available regarding the effect of these drugs on the healing time of ulcers.

Actually, Banthine and P10-Banthine have been disappointing in the long-term management of ulcer. Recurrences have not been prevented and the incidence of complications or the need for surgery have not been significantly altered by prolonged administration. These drugs are not often required in the management of the simple uncomplicated ulcer.

A commonly used dosage of Banthine is from 50 to 100 mg every 6 hours.

Complications of Peptic Ulcer

Surgery should be reserved for the management of the complications of duodenal ulcer, since this ulceration is primarily a nonsurgical disease.

✓ FAILURE TO RESPOND TO MEDICAL TREATMENT Some patients with peptic ulcer remain unsatisfactorily managed even after a carefully controlled and prolonged period of medical therapy, and in such individuals (whose incidence is inversely proportional to the quality of medical treatment) surgery may be required to control the acid-pepsin secretion. Surgery does not abolish the personality structure which predisposes to peptic ulceration, however.

✓ PYLORIC OR DUODENAL OBSTRUCTION A second complication which requires surgery is that of obstruction caused by the chronic inflammation which finally leads to fibrous stenosis of the gastric outlet. In this instance the primary purpose of surgery is to relieve obstruction, but if the previous ulcer is not "burnt out" and significant acid formation continues, then measures must also be taken to reduce the acid-pepsin factor to lower the probability of further ulceration. For example, simple gastroenterostomy may be followed by stomal (marginal) ulceration; vagotomy or subtotal gastric resection must be employed to reduce gastric acidity, if indicated on the basis of the preoperative gastric analysis. In younger individuals such additional procedures will usually be necessary but in elderly patients, whose gastric acidity usually has declined, they may not be.

✓ HEMORRHAGE Duodenal ulcers that bleed are usually situated on the posterior or medial walls, since it is here that major vessels enter and may be eroded, the superior pancreaticoduodenal artery being most important. In contrast, ulcers which perforate are usually located on the anterior surface of the stomach or duodenum, since here there are no coapted tissues which limit free leakage.

✓ Gastroduodenal hemorrhage and hepatic blood flow Massive hemorrhage from the

upper gastrointestinal tract may have an especially serious effect on liver function, in addition to the other ever present deleterious effects of significant bleeding. Le Veen Mulder, and Prokop⁴⁸ showed that bleeding from the gastroduodenal artery (a branch of which is the usual source of bleeding in duodenal ulcer) caused the pressure in the hepatic artery to fall much more rapidly than did an identical amount of hemorrhage from a femoral artery. Thus *selective reduction of hepatic blood flow in gastroduodenal hemorrhage* was greatest when the systemic blood pressure reached levels below 100 mm. Hg. With one cannula tied into the dog's gastroduodenal artery and another in the left femoral artery, these workers produced rapid bleeding from both of these vessels, meanwhile measuring the blood pressure and blood flow in both arteries. When the bleeding was from the gastroduodenal artery the hepatic arterial pressure dropped to 50 mm Hg while that in the femoral artery was maintained at 75 mm Hg. This differential was not noted when the bleeding was from the femoral artery. Upon measuring blood flow instead of the blood pressure, the difference was even more striking. During rapid gastroduodenal bleeding at a time when the hepatic flow had completely ceased the femoral arterial blood flow was reduced by only one-third. The hepatic blood flow ceased entirely when the hepatic arterial blood pressure was approximately 60 mm. Hg.

Mortality associated with gastric vs duodenal bleeding Saltsstein and his associates⁷⁴ reviewed 402 cases of massive upper abdominal hemorrhage, which comprised 5 years' experience at Harper Hospital. There were 343 cases of peptic ulcer (69 per cent duodenal, 13 per cent gastric, 18 per cent marginal) and 59 cases (15 per cent) of undiagnosed upper gastrointestinal bleeding. Hemorrhage accounted for 25 per cent of all admissions for peptic ulcer and of these 10 per cent were severe shock being prevented only by the administration of at least 500 ml of blood every 12 hours. Of the 343 pa-

tients with peptic ulcer, 80 per cent were treated medically and the remaining 20 per cent surgically. Of those treated surgically, 80 per cent were mild bleeders and many of them had bled previously. There were 4 (5.9 per cent) surgical deaths. The medical mortality was 5.1 per cent, half of these deaths occurred in mild bleeders, and since several of them had had associated cardiovascular conditions it was considered possible that the anoxia of gastrointestinal hemorrhage may have precipitated cardiovascular accidents. Three of the 14 patients who died while under medical management died in shock due to uncontrolled hemorrhage. Two of the total 18 deaths occurred in patients aged 45 or under. Of the total 402 patients (343 with peptic ulcer) 50 per cent had hematemesis and 50 per cent had melena alone. Yet, of the 18 who died, 14 (78 per cent) had hematemesis and only 4 (22 per cent) had melena alone. Thus, hematemesis appeared to indicate a more serious prognosis than melena alone. Only 5 of the 343 patients had associated perforation, but in some reported series the incidence of associated perforation has been considerably higher.

Deaths from bleeding gastric ulcer were 3 times as frequent as those from duodenal ulcer and about half the fatalities occurred during the first episode of bleeding. Saltsstein and his co-workers emphasized the need for vigorous transfusional therapy to prevent anoxia of the liver, primarily, but also of the myocardium and the brain.

PERFORATION OF PEPTIC ULCER. Still another complication of peptic ulcer is that of perforation. This results in a chemical and to an extent, a bacteriologic peritonitis. As we have seen soiling of the free peritoneal cavity is particularly likely to occur when the ulcer involves the anterior surface of the stomach or duodenum since these areas are not covered with surrounding tissue unless the omentum adheres. Penetrating ulcers on the posterior surfaces are more prone to be sealed off by the peritoneum of the lesser peritoneal sac or the pancreas respectively.

In free perforation the clinical findings are usually those of severe upper abdominal pain. This distress often prostrates the individual, and results in marked involuntary spasm or rigidity of the upper abdominal musculature. Presently the pain and tenderness may spread downward, as the escaping gastric contents flow into the right gutter, and this may simulate the pain of appendicitis. In fact, it is not rare that, having first made a McBurney incision on the presumptive diagnosis of acute appendicitis, the surgeon encounters gastric fluid (or palpates an acutely inflamed gallbladder). He must then extend the incision upward or, preferably in our view, close the McBurney incision and make a separate incision above.

At times there may be pain in the shoulder due to irritation of a leaf of the diaphragm by the gastric fluid, and properly taken roentgenograms will reveal free air in the peritoneal cavity in more than 50 per cent of the cases.

✓ *Serum amylase in perforated ulcer* Numerous observations have now confirmed the fact that the serum amylase concentration is frequently elevated in the presence of an acutely perforated peptic ulcer.

✓ *The sequelae of perforation* In a review of 136 cases of perforated peptic ulcer (34 gastric, 97 duodenal, and 5 marginal) treated at the King County Hospital (Seattle) during a 5-year period from 1948 to 1952, Schmitz and his associates⁷⁵ found that a large proportion of these patients were chronic alcoholics with other serious pathologic conditions. Perforation of a gastric ulcer was a much more serious condition than was perforation of a duodenal ulcer, the mortality in surgical cases being 16.6 per cent and 2.7 per cent, respectively. Since recurrence or persistent ulceration was frequently found in their patients, it was felt that elective subtotal gastrectomy within 8 weeks after perforation was advisable in selected cases. Moreover, these findings were in accord with those reported by Stabins,⁸⁰ who found that major sequelae developed in 65.1 per cent of 167 cases of perforated duo-

denal ulcer, definitive surgery became necessary in 36.5 per cent of these.

Management of perforated ulcer The traditional method of treatment for perforated ulcer was simple surgical closure, this was highly successful. In recent years, however, two new trends have developed, in opposite directions. On the one hand, increasing numbers of physicians are managing perforated ulcer conservatively, with antibiotics, intravenous fluids, and continuous nasogastric suction—and most of these patients recover. On the other hand, some surgeons now prefer to do emergency gastric resection instead of merely closing the site of the perforation.

We hold definite views concerning both trends. Regarding the conservative management of perforation, it is possible that the *mortality* associated with medical management may not be substantially greater than that with surgical management, but we believe that the *morbidity* has also to be reckoned with—and certainly more extensive peritonitis and a greater number of residual abscesses will follow conservative management. Therefore, my personal opinion is that, where adequate surgical facilities exist, operative closure of the perforation should be performed, at least at the present time. This opinion was considerably stiffened by the course of a patient who, because of numerous other complicating factors, I elected to treat conservatively. Perforation occurred while he was being studied for high fever associated with an extensive necrotizing lesion of the mouth and pharynx, and he had long been treated for opiate addiction and alcoholism. There was a typical clinical picture of perforation, and free air was present under the diaphragm. Nasogastric suction and other supportive measures were instituted and his condition steadily improved, so much so that on the fifth day following perforation the gastric tube was removed and oral intake of fluids was begun. This was followed by renewed pain and, though all conservative measures were renewed and intensified, he died several days later. At autopsy a perforation was found on the an-

terior surface of the duodenum and another on the posterior surface of the stomach. Both communicated freely with the greater peritoneal cavity and lesser sac, respectively, and there was no evidence of healing or of closure by omental migration. While admittedly this patient, who had a striking septic fever without leukocytosis, represented an unusual problem, I shall not soon again employ conservatism in the management of perforated peptic ulcer. Where the condition of the patient is considered to be too critical for general or spinal anesthesia local anesthesia can be used to close the perforation.

MANAGEMENT OF GASTRIC ULCER. *Malignant degeneration of gastric ulcer.* One further complication is that of malignant degeneration of gastric ulcer. It is still a moot question, in our opinion, whether a gastric ulcer 'degenerates' into carcinoma or was malignant from its inception, yet, there is evidence to suggest that occasionally cancer can develop in a chronic gastric ulcer, as it can in chronic ulcers on the body surface. In any event if the gastric ulcer does not heal promptly (4 weeks for example) under medical therapy we believe it should be resected, particularly in patients over fifty. Smith, Boles, and Jordan⁷⁹ analyzed 1000 cases of gastric ulcer treated at the Lahey Clinic and concluded that a period of one month or less of intensive medical management was justified since the operative mortality following gastric resection for benign ulcer was perhaps greater than the mortality that resulted from undiagnosed malignant ulcer.

Operations for Peptic Ulcer—Physiologic Pros and Cons

Some of the common procedures that are employed in the surgical management of peptic ulcer are shown in Figure 119. Others of historic interest are shown in Figure 120.

GASTROENTEROSTOMY.⁸¹ The first gastrojejunostomy for peptic ulcer is said to have been performed by Wolfer of Prague in 1881. However it was Lord Moynihan who

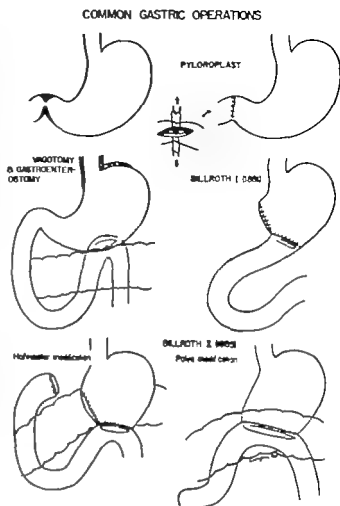


Fig 119 Pyloroplasty is used alone only for the correction of pyloric stenosis and where the reduction of gastric acid secretion is not an objective. Vagotomy-gastroenterostomy is the surgical treatment of choice for peptic ulcer in some clinics. The Billroth I operation has recently been revived. Some modification of the Billroth II is the choice of a majority of surgeons in the United States.

brought this operation into world prominence as a means of partially diverting the acid stream from the duodenal ulcer and of altering gastroduodenal motility. Unfortunately ulceration at the gastrojejunal stoma occurred with such frequency that gradually the operation lost favor until now it is rarely employed except in patients whose gastric acidity is low. Furthermore, persistence of the duodenal ulcer and the development of gastrojejunocolic fistula secondary to the stomal ulcer, constituted undesirable aspects of simple gastrojejunostomy as the sole means of duodenal ulcer management.

SUBTOTAL GASTRIC RESECTION. This procedure, first performed by Theodor Billroth⁸² in 1881, was based upon the physiologic

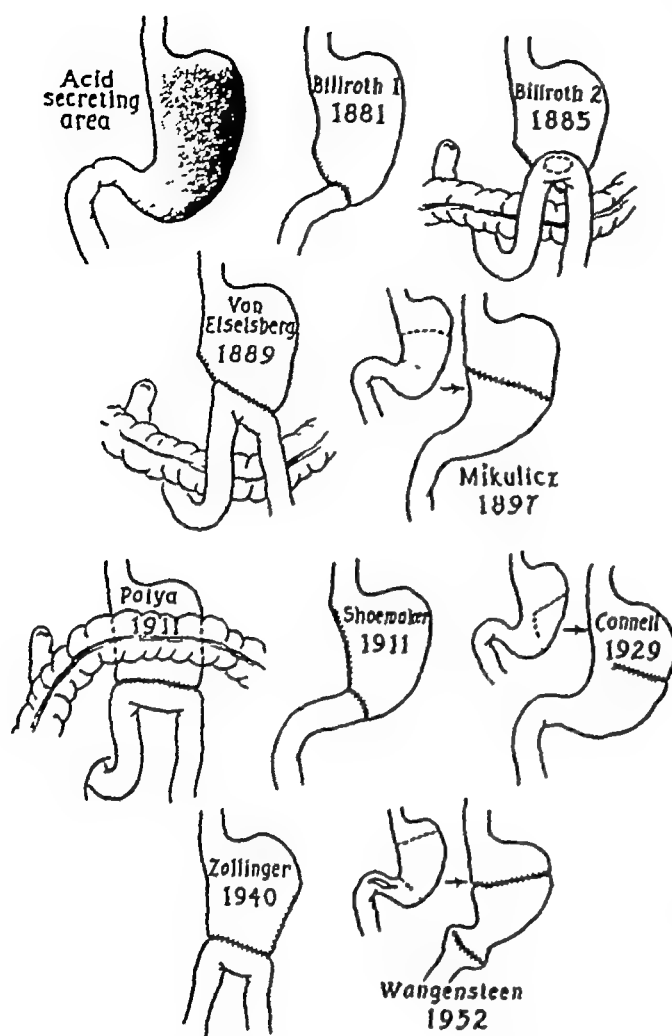


Fig 120 Location of acid-secreting cells in stomach and methods of subtotal gastric resection. The rich and dependable vascularity of the stomach has permitted many innovations (From NAGEL, G. W. Subtotal gastric resection for peptic ulcer. *Calif Med*, 78: 190, 1953)

facts that hydrochloric acid is secreted by the cells of the fundus and body of the stomach and that an important stimulus to their function is the passage of food across the antrum. Early gastric resection consisted chiefly of excision of the pylorus with antrectomy, since it was considered that if the hormone gastrin were removed the secretion of acid and pepsin by cells of the body of the stomach would be diminished. As with gastrojejunostomy, however, clinical experience soon showed that the removal of only the lower third of the stomach did not result in a sufficient reduction of the acid-pepsin secretion to manage the ulcer diathesis successfully in most cases. It is now known, of course, that this removal of only the hor-

monal phase of gastric secretion left the nervous and the intestinal phases still intact (Fig 112).

During the early 1940's there was a progressive tendency to remove more and more stomach, often from 70 to 90 per cent, and this did satisfactorily reduce the amount of acid secreted. However, it was eventually evident that the removal of from three-fourths to four-fifths of the stomach frequently resulted in most undesirable sequelae, such as the dumping syndrome and an inability of the patient to regain or even to maintain his weight. For this reason some further approach was sought, and in 1943 Dragstedt re-introduced vagotomy to control the cephalic phase of gastric secretion, a phase which had heretofore been treated with atropine and similar drugs.

✓ VAGOTOMY, WITH OR WITHOUT GASTROENTEROSTOMY OR PYLOROPLASTY Vagotomy (division of the vagus nerves) may be performed transthoracically or transabdominally. Though exposure is more difficult, the abdominal route has the advantage of permitting simultaneous gastroenterostomy or pyloroplasty—which most now agree is necessary if gastric stasis is to be avoided. The stasis is due to diminished gastroduodenal tone and to various degrees of organic stenosis from ulceration and scarring.

Vagotomy relieves ulcer pain almost at once, probably because of decreased gastroduodenal motility—for it was pointed out previously that artificial elevation of gastric acidity will often not cause pain recurrence following vagotomy. If pain is not relieved, the completeness of the vagotomy should be checked with the insulin test. Some "dumping" does occur following the operation of vagotomy plus a drainage procedure, but it is perhaps less common than following the Billroth II gastric resection with gastrojejunostomy.

At first vagotomy was widely employed in the management of duodenal ulcer, but at the present time its rôle in American surgery is confined largely to the management of the marginal ulcer following gastric re-

section, to the management of poor risk patients, and to instances where gastric resection would be technically hazardous, perhaps to the common bile duct. Yet, some very competent surgeons employ vagotomy-gastroenterostomy as the primary surgical procedure for duodenal ulcers in almost all patients. In actively bleeding ulcers gastric resection may be required to control the hemorrhage and some type of resection is always indicated for gastric ulcers.

VAGOTOMY WITH GASTROENTEROSTOMY—OTHER CONSIDERATIONS. The several types of gastric resection will be considered further presently but at this point it is desirable to take further cognizance of the continuing dispute regarding whether or not vagotomy with gastroenterostomy (or pyloroplasty) or subtotal gastric resection is the better method of treating duodenal ulcer surgically (aside from the special indications for vagotomy given above). After the operation of vagotomy with gastroenterostomy had been thoroughly studied in various surgical centers for approximately 5 years, a special committee was appointed by the American Gastroenterological Association to compare the result of subtotal gastric resection with vagotomy-gastrojejunostomy, and to present a critical analysis of the two procedures in the surgical management of peptic ulcer. The results of vagotomy alone, gastroenterostomy with and without vagotomy, and subtotal gastric resection with and without vagotomy were compared with respect to the value of each in the treatment of duodenal and gastrojejunal ulcer.⁴² The report was based upon 4076 cases of peptic ulcer. The final conclusion was that gastric resection for duodenal ulcer has an advantage over vagotomy and gastroenterostomy only if there is an estimated resection of more than 70 per cent of the stomach.

There is no question that vagotomy-gastrojejunostomy is attended by a lower mortality rate than is gastric resection.

Everson and co-workers⁴³ made a comparative nutritional follow up study of 318

patients subjected to partial gastrectomy (Billroth II) and 118 patients subjected to vagotomy with gastroenterostomy. Although weight loss tended to occur more frequently and more severely after partial gastrectomy, the differences in the percentage of patients who lost an appreciable amount of weight after partial gastrectomy and after vagotomy with gastroenterostomy were not great. The data confirmed the frequently expressed clinical impression that the incidence and severity of loss of weight increase directly with the extensiveness of the gastric resection. Patients who preoperatively were below "ideal" weight tended to have less deficit in weight after vagotomy with gastroenterostomy than after partial gastrectomy.

An extensive experience with vagotomy was reported by Grimson and his associates.⁴² They found that the beneficial effects of vagotomy in their patients usually persisted and that insulin tests performed from 3 to 7 years after vagotomy produced no free acid or less free acid than control patients in 25 of the 28 vagotomized patients tested. This would tend to cast doubt upon the common impression that the sectioned vagus nerves regenerate. It was further emphasized that patients treated by vagotomy-gastroenterostomy maintained their weight far better than those treated by the Billroth II gastric resection. (However, it will be seen below that patients having the Billroth I gastric resection maintain their weight better than those having the Billroth II operation and perhaps as well as those having vagotomy-gastroenterostomy.)

The incidence of persistent diarrhea is approximately 2 per cent for both gastric resection and vagotomy-gastroenterostomy, and the incidence of dumping is also approximately equal with the two procedures.

TYPES OF GASTRIC RESECTION. In deciding upon the particular type of operation to be performed the surgeon must take into consideration (1) the site of the ulcer (adjacent to the common bile duct? in the stomach?) (2) the character of the pathologic lesion

(if malignant, extensive resection), (3) the associated *mechanical disturbances* (pyloric obstruction?), (4) the resultant *metabolic disturbances* (repair water and sodium chloride depletion, potassium deficiency, and metabolic alkalosis), and (5) the *age* of the patient (the physiologic margin of safety in the elderly is thin)

Since it became apparent that gastric resection was to be preferred to simple gastroenterostomy, a considerable variety of different types and degrees of gastric resection have been proposed and employed clinically (Fig 120). However, it is not the purpose here to debate the merits of many different procedures. Rather, we shall limit the present discussion to the Billroth I and modifications of the Billroth II subtotal gastric resection. References to other techniques are given in the bibliography. A standard method for testing the efficacy of new operations is to study their protective effect against histamine-in-beeswax-induced ulcers in dogs.¹¹

The relative merits of the Polya modification of the Billroth II as compared with the Hofmeister modification of the Billroth II (Fig 119). In our opinion, there is no great difference between the results achieved with the Hofmeister as compared with the Polya modification of the Billroth II. While the Polya procedure does involve anastomosing the entire width of the divided stomach to the jejunum, whereas the Hofmeister procedure employs only that portion (3–4 cm) adjacent to the greater curvature (the remainder of the severed stomach adjacent to the lesser curvature being closed separately), to a considerable extent it is the width of the jejunal lumen which limits the rate at which gastric chyme enters the small bowel. Some observers have thought that dumping is definitely more frequent following the Polya anastomosis, but one doubts if the difference in incidence is marked. Gastric retention has also been reported to be slightly more common following the Polya operation than the Hofmeister, due to the "neurogenic syndrome" of the distal loop (p 320). Apropos

of this question, Glenn and Harrison¹⁰ reported their experience with 100 cases of gastric resection performed for ulcer during 1948, and 14 instances of "gastric retention" were found. The retention was described as occurring from 1 to 14 days following operation in 11 of the 14 cases, in the other 3 cases the latest time was 30 days. Of the 100 cases discussed, the Polya type operation was used in 73, the Hofmeister in 20, and other methods in the remaining 7 cases. All of the 14 patients who had retention had had the Polya type of anastomosis.

Billroth I vs Billroth II. During recent years there has been a marked resurgence of interest in the Billroth I operation. Essentially, this procedure usually consists of partial gastric resection, partial closure of the divided stomach adjacent to the lesser curvature, and anastomosis of the remaining gastric stoma to the duodenum (Fig 119).

What are some of the arguments pro and con of the Billroth I vs. the Billroth II operation? The following points will be considered: (1) *simplicity of operative procedure*, (2) *mortality and complications*, (3) *the control of the ulcer diathesis*, and (4) *the nutritional status* of the individual following resection.

Simplicity of the operative procedure. There is no question that, particularly in patients whose duodenum is suitable, the Billroth I procedure is somewhat more easily and rapidly performed than the Billroth II. No sooner is the first portion of the duodenum freed-up, and the ulcer and a sufficient amount of stomach resected, than one is ready partially to close the transected stomach and to anastomose the remaining aperture to the duodenum—and in a majority of duodenal ulcers and virtually all gastric ulcers this can be done. The duodenal "stump" problem is avoided, and the time usually employed in closing the duodenum is conserved.

Mortality. The mortality following the Billroth I operation has often been reported to be slightly less than that following the Billroth II. Wallensten and Gotthman¹⁶ re-

corded an operative mortality of 2.2 per cent in 364 cases having the Billroth I procedure (1.2 per cent for duodenal ulcer and 4.9 per cent for gastric ulcer) the incidence of recurrent ulceration was 3.7 per cent for duodenal ulcer. In a series reported by Harkins and his associates,²⁶ the mortality in the Billroth I series was 3.8 per cent (100 patients operated upon) and that in the Billroth II group 7.4 per cent (135 total patients). This mortality for the Billroth II operation is a bit higher than usual, though many of their patients were in poor condition preoperatively.

While it is too soon to assess accurately what the comparable mortality following the two procedures will be, when applied consecutively in similar groups of patients, it would appear that the mortality following the Billroth I procedure is lower, possibly because a gastrojejunal anastomosis with potential kinking and obstruction is not present to increase the risk of duodenal stump "blow out." This complication has always constituted a major source of mortality after Billroth II procedure. Incidentally prominent sources of duodenal stump complications are inadequate remaining blood supply, closure using inflammatory or devitalized tissue, inadequate tension or other technical deficiency, and obstruction at the proximal gastric stoma.

Recurrence of ulcer. In Harkins' series there were as yet no known recurrent ulcers in the Billroth I group, but there were three known and two possible recurrent ulcerations in the Billroth II group.

There appears to be general agreement that gastrojejunal ulceration occurs in from 1 to 5 per cent of cases following subtotal gastrectomy. The reason that ulceration apparently has not occurred in as large a number of cases following the Billroth I procedure may be due to the fact that, as shown experimentally, the presence of acid (and fat) in the duodenum exerts an inhibitory effect on the secretion of acid by the stomach; it also stimulates the duodenal mucosa to elaborate secretin, which produces the se-

cretion of the alkaline pancreatic juice. Another factor in the (reported) rather low incidence of ulceration following the Billroth I procedure may be the fact that the duodenal mucosa has been shown to be more resistant to acid pepsin digestive activity than is the jejunal mucosa.¹⁷ Finally, the Billroth I operation places the stoma of the anastomosis nearer the alkaline bile and, as noted, the alkaline pancreatic juice.

Even so, one should for the present reserve judgment regarding the relative incidence of ulcer recurrence following the Billroth I and the Billroth II operations. In time, additional patients who had the Billroth I operation may exhibit this complication.

Incidence of "dumping." It is agreed that the incidence of dumping is approximately the same for the Billroth I and II procedures, ranging from 15 to 25 per cent following greater than 70 per cent resection.

Comparison of nutritional disturbances following the Billroth I and Billroth II procedures. A number of careful studies have now been reported regarding the nutritional disturbances which follow gastric resection, and recently there has been an opportunity to compare the derangements following Billroth II with those following the Billroth I procedure. The general consensus is that the Billroth I procedure causes somewhat less derangement in normal digestive processes than does the Billroth II. It is well known that one of the major causes of dissatisfaction with the Billroth II operation is that so many patients have difficulty maintaining their weight. In contrast, after the Billroth I procedure patients are not so likely to lose weight and, in fact, many regain weight. This difference was shown by Wolfaeger²⁷ to be related to the fecal loss of fat and nitrogen. He found that in 8 patients who had had the Billroth I procedure an average of 12.3 gm. of fat was excreted in the feces per day, as compared with an average of 19.9 gm. of fat in 10 patients who had had the Billroth II operation. Such a difference may be due to the fact that normal gastrointestinal continuity promotes the

proper mixing of the food with bile and pancreatic juice in the duodenum. Moreover, it has been shown that pancreatic secretion is diminished following Billroth II subtotal gastrectomy in dogs. Therefore, greater pancreatic secretion might be anticipated after a subtotal gastrectomy in which the food passes into the duodenum (Billroth I and segmental types) than after one in which the food passes into the jejunum, the production of secretin in the duodenum is greater than in the jejunum.

In a review of the literature, Everson²⁵ found that in 43 metabolism studies of 35 patients after a Billroth II type of subtotal gastrectomy there was impairment of fat assimilation in 23 of the 35 patients. Likewise, following the Billroth II operation there was impairment of protein assimilation in 11 of 36 collected patients. According to Ivy, Grossman, and Bachrach,³⁷ who collected 864 cases from the literature, 42 per cent of the patients having subtotal gastric resection (Billroth II) for peptic ulcer had a late postoperative weight that was less than the normal preoperative weight. In contrast, Wallensten and Gothman³⁸ found that only 14 per cent of 364 patients having the Billroth I operation failed to maintain their weight.

An additional type of evidence to support the Billroth I operation has been advanced by Perman.³⁶ In 25 patients in whom there were nutritional and other disturbances following the Billroth II procedure, he reoperated and converted the anastomosis to the Billroth I type, 23 had excellent results, 1 had a poor result, and 1 death occurred following secondary operation.

The experimental study of Everson²⁵ was further revealing. He conducted a careful comparison of protein and fat assimilation after the Billroth II, Billroth I, and segmental types of subtotal gastric resection. The dogs having the Billroth II type of subtotal gastrectomy (75 to 80 per cent of the stomach) excreted in the feces an average of 24.4 per cent of the ingested nitrogen, as compared with 19.3 per cent in 10 dogs sub-

jected to Billroth I gastrectomy, 12.6 per cent in 10 dogs subjected to segmental gastrectomy, and 14.9 per cent in normal animals. An average of 27.7 per cent of the ingested fat was excreted in the feces of 10 dogs subjected to the Billroth II type of subtotal gastrectomy, as compared with 10.6 per cent in 10 dogs subjected to Billroth I gastrectomy, 6.4 per cent in 10 dogs subjected to segmental gastrectomy, and 4.9 per cent in normal animals. The majority of animals subjected to the Billroth II operation lost weight on an *ad libitum* diet, while the majority of animals subjected to Billroth I and segmental types of subtotal gastrectomy gained weight or maintained their weight on a similar diet. In general, the nutritional status of animals subjected to the Billroth II type of subtotal gastrectomy was markedly inferior to that of animals subjected to Billroth I and segmental types of subtotal gastrectomy. Nutritional status after the segmental type of subtotal gastrectomy was essentially normal, and whereas the nutritional status after Billroth I type of subtotal gastrectomy was somewhat inferior to that following the segmental type, the differences noted were not great. In a supplementary study, Javid⁴⁰ found that vagotomy-gastroenterostomy was superior to the Billroth II Polya operation, in so far as fat and nitrogen intake-excretion studies were concerned.

Billroth I, vagotomy-gastrojejunostomy, and Billroth II—concluding comment. As will be seen, then, there is much evidence to indicate that in many respects either the Billroth I or vagotomy-gastrojejunostomy is superior to the Billroth II. Yet, the majority of surgeons continue to use the last almost routinely. Why is this so? It is because surgeons found, after disillusionment with simple gastroenterostomy, that the orthodox Billroth II subtotal gastric resection was an operation which provided an effective means of controlling the ulcer diathesis in most patients. It will not be superseded until another procedure has been proved superior by the same demanding test.

COMPLICATIONS OF GASTRIC RESECTION. The

complications which may follow gastric resection are numerous and a number of them (some of which have been discussed previously) may be listed

A. General

- 1 Dumping syndrome (including vasomotor symptoms, distention, vomiting, or diarrhea)
- 2 Failure to maintain or to regain weight

B Failure of proximal loop or gastric remnant to empty properly following the Billroth II operation

- 3 Proximal loop obstruction at proximal stoma (pain, nausea in intermittent vomiting of copious amounts of bile)
- 4 Obstruction of distal stoma (due to technic, kinking, or edema)
- 5 Suturing of the transverse mesocolon to the jejunum instead of the stomach in a posterior anastomosis
- 6 'Neurogenic syndrome of distal loop
- 7 Adhesions involving upper jejunum
- 8 Herniation of small bowel beneath jejunal loop in anterior anastomosis
- 9 Intussusception of distal jejunal loop
- 10 Abscess surrounding the anastomosis
- 11 Pancreatitis
- C Blowout of Duodenal Stump
- D Marginal ulceration with bleeding, perforation, or gastrojejunal fistula

The dumping syndrome The incidence of this complication has been given but it is pertinent to consider here the nature of this condition. Typically, shortly after a meal the susceptible patient may experience profuse sweating nausea and weakness, and may be forced to lie down. Such symptoms may persist for months and then be replaced by diarrhea. The symptoms can be reproduced in the susceptible individual by in-

stilling a hypertonic solution of sucrose or magnesium sulfate into the upper small bowel

Fluid drawn in from the bowel wall Peristalsis moves the ingested food through the bowel so rapidly that there is not time for large volumes of fluid to be drawn into the bowel from the extracellular space

The precise cause of the symptoms of the dumping syndrome is still uncertain, though we are inclined to favor the explanation offered by Randall and his associates,⁷⁰ they demonstrated a sharp fall in plasma volume during the period of most intense symptoms and certainly most of the symptomatology is compatible with incipient oligemic shock. Other explanations that have been offered are hypokalemia (which can be demonstrated) and hypoglycemia. Webber, Bender, and Moore⁷¹ reviewed the evidence available, including studies of their own. They concluded that it was "unlikely that either the fall in plasma volume or the hypokalemia is a significant factor in the etiology of the dumping syndrome, but that both represent physiologic phenomena occurring as a result of the altered anatomy attendant upon gastrectomy."

Weight loss following gastric resection Patients who are excessively thin before gastric resection should probably have either the Billroth I operation or vagotomy gastroenterostomy for a majority lose further weight after the Billroth II procedure

The proximal loop We have observed two cases of proximal loop obstruction that were most instructive. The first patient was a woman who had had an extensive resection for a large ulcer high on the lesser curvature. She developed a left subdiaphragmatic abscess extending behind the anastomosis displacing the proximal loop anteriorly and kinking it on the small remaining gastric remnant. Roentgen studies with barium revealed a greatly distended proximal loop which at laparotomy was decompressed and anastomosed to a loop of upper jejunum without event. Incidentally she was readmitted months later with a jejunal fistula and eventually died after

a lengthy series of various complications which included thrombosis of the inferior vena cava. She had been a known morphine addict for years.

The second patient was a man who had had a gastric resection followed by a temporary pancreatic fistula, as indicated by a high amylase level in the stab wound drainage. He was discharged without further event, though, and was well for about four months, at which time he was rather suddenly seized one day with severe pain in the upper abdomen, associated with the rapid development of a mass readily visible through the thin wall of the epigastrium. The nature of the mass was uncertain but, since it did not pulsate, it was judged to be in some way secondary to the previous gastric resection. At laparotomy the mass proved to be a tightly distended proximal loop. The operator considered that adhesions had caused the obstruction, and these were lysed. However, even then he had some doubt that the adhesions visualized constituted the sole cause of the obstruction, and subsequent events amply confirmed the justification for such misgivings. Nevertheless, the abdomen was closed at the time, and the patient's progress carefully followed; after all, the loop had promptly decompressed following division of the adhesions. Unfortunately, the patient did not recover so readily as was hoped for, and approximately 10 days following operation he was seized with sudden excruciating pain in the upper abdomen. Emergency exploration revealed that the wall of the proximal loop was gangrenous and had perforated at multiple points, producing peritonitis. The patient died within 24 hours.

This case but again demonstrates that seriously distended bowel must be surely decompressed. At the first operation the proximal loop should have been anastomosed to a jejunal loop distal to the stomach, or else the entire gastrojejunal anastomosis should have been taken down.

Loeber and Shay⁴⁹ made a afferent loop following Billroth₂

using a tube through which barium was instilled. Among the lesions demonstrated were persistence of a duodenal ulcer that had not been resected at operation, duodenitis, and a stomal ulcer.

Gastric retention following resection. Most of the causes of poor gastric emptying listed above are essentially self-explanatory and require only brief comment. If the distal stoma is critically narrowed by the inversion of excessive tissue at the time of operation, then little edema of the bowel wall is required to occlude the stoma completely.

Another serious defect in technic is that of suturing the mesocolon to the jejunal loop instead of to the stomach in a posterior anastomosis. The degree of obstruction which may result is just enough to produce gastric retention with inadequate nutrition. Moreover, the etiology of the obstruction may be particularly difficult to establish, since barium may pass through the distal stoma. These patients may exhibit extreme malnutrition, since some fluid does pass through to achieve a degree of hydration over a prolonged period (Fig. 121). The physiology of bowel compression here is not unlike that encountered in congenital malrotation where the lateral peritoneal attachments of an undescended cecum partially obstruct the duodenum.

Herniation of the small bowel beneath the jejunal loop is a rare but definite complication, and intussusception of the upper jejunum may occur, as may adhesions, of course.

The "neurogenic" syndrome of the distal loop is a particularly intriguing derangement. We first encountered it some years ago in a nurse who had had an anterior Polya resection for duodenal ulcer. Following operation the stomach did not empty for four weeks, despite the fact that some barium did pass into the distal loop. Finally, it was felt he must re-explore the abdomen, but no defect was demonstrated—and the distal stoma was removed. However, postoperatively, the stomach never functioned.

and at a third operation some weeks later the anastomosis was resected and another established, again, however, no anatomic defect was found. The patient eventually died and still no organic explanation for bowel dysfunction was revealed at autopsy.

At that time this was all quite mystifying, but in recent years several reports have indicated that the neuromuscular activity of the bowel may be disturbed by an anastomosis and particularly by the Polya anastomosis. Golden³⁰ reviewed the evidence for this functional obstruction of the efferent loop of jejunum following partial gastrectomy and demonstrated spasm of this loop radiologically. The symptoms in the patients he studied were epigastric fullness, nausea, and vomiting beginning during the second postoperative week in the great majority of cases. These findings usually disappeared spontaneously in a few days but occasionally persisted for several weeks. X-ray examination disclosed spasm of the efferent loop of jejunum when the symptoms were present, with delay in emptying of the gastric pouch. It appeared that the disorder occurred less frequently with the shorter jejunal incision used with the Hofmeister operation than with the longer one used for the Polya operation.

This syndrome may be more common than has previously been realized. Incidentally Urecholine given in 5 to 10 mg doses orally before meals is at times helpful in improving gastric motility and emptying.

Blowout of duodenal stump It was stated previously that the most frequent causes of this very serious complication are inadequate technical closure of the duodenum at surgery and obstruction of the proximal loop at the stomach. Peritonitis from duodenal leakage is a major cause of mortality following gastric resection.

Gastrojejunal colic fistula This formidable complication is characterized by loose stools (often containing unchanged food ingested only a few moments previously) by foul eructations, and occasionally by the vomiting or regurgitation of frankly fecal material



Fig 181 A result of poor gastric emptying. This man had already regained 10 lb when this photograph was taken. In the course of a gastric resection and posterior gastrojejunostomy 2 months previously the transverse mesocolon had been sutured to the collapsible jejunal loop rather than to the more rigid stomach. Since compression rather than complete mechanical block existed just enough fluid passed to preserve life while permitting slow starvation. Barium could be made to pass out of the stomach promptly. The mesocolon was detached and sutured to the wall of the stomach and he had no further vomiting and gained 30 lb. There are many reasons why the stomach may not empty following gastric resection (p. 319).

(from the colon). Severe weight loss, anemia and hypoproteinemia develop due to both anorexia and the loss of small bowel absorptive surface through the gastrocolic by-pass.

The defect usually has resulted from marginal ulceration secondary to a gastroenterostomy (Fig. 119), though at the time of exploration no active ulcer may be found. We prefer to achieve the best possible

preoperative preparation and then to resect the fistula at one stage—re-establishing colon and jejunal continuity, removing additional stomach, and performing gastro-jejunal anastomosis distal to the site of jejunal closure where the fistulous portion was excised

*Acute gastric dilatation*¹⁹ is no longer common, but it does occur and can prove fatal

TOTAL GASTRECTOMY Anemia An anemia of varying severity is usual Paulson and Harvey⁶³ studied the effects of total gastrectomy on erythropoiesis in 27 patients at varying intervals over a decade, and found the following evolutionary sequences First, an iron deficiency anemia resulted shortly after operation, because blood was lost from ulcerated areas at the anastomotic site (Owren⁶⁰ believes that this anemia is more likely due to the fact that under normal conditions the absorption of iron takes place in the duodenum and upper part of the jejunum, which is not permitted in the presence of abnormally rapid passage of ingested material through the upper part of the jejunum following gastric resection) The administration of ferrous salts orally would correct this iron deficiency anemia Next, Paulson and Harvey noted microcytosis of red blood cells, occurring within 1 to 2 years after operation, if the patients lived long enough this invariably was followed by anemia and, still later, by the development of megaloblasts in the bone marrow In patients in whom this macrocytic-megaloblastic type of anemia developed, beneficial response was obtained from parenteral therapy with vitamin B₁₂ In this connection it is of interest that studies with cobalt-labeled B₁₂ have shown that the function of the intrinsic factor of gastric juice has to do with promoting intestinal absorption of this vitamin⁴¹

Dietary disturbances and weight loss Following total gastric resection relatively large amounts of fat and nitrogen are lost in the stools, and this is the result of too frequent stools, if not actual diarrhea Ever-

son²⁴ studied the effect of pancreatin in reducing fecal nitrogen and fecal fat loss following total gastrectomy in 12 dogs Pancreatin in adequate dosage was effective in appreciably reducing fecal nitrogen loss, it did not restore the value to the level of normal dogs This substance had little effect upon the fecal fat loss

Patients almost invariably lose substantial amounts of weight following total removal of the stomach

Esophagoscopic observation of the esagoenteric anastomoses In view of the importance of the acid-pepsin factor in causing peptic ulcer, the esophagoscopic observations of Paulson⁶² following total gastrectomy are of interest He studied the appearance of the duodenum or jejunum (according to type of anastomosis used) in a series of more than 50 patients over a period of seven years, and in none was marginal ulcer or other peptic-like erosion encountered

Pathologic Physiology of the Small and Large Bowel

Survey of Normal Secretory, Absorptive and Motor Functions of the Small Bowel

SECRETION AND ABSORPTION The secretions and other fluids that are poured into the small bowel are derived from the stomach, pancreas, liver, and the intestinal glands In the duodenum are the distinctive Brunner's glands which secrete an alkaline juice rich in mucus, resembling that formed by the structurally similar pyloric gland In experimental studies, stimulation of the vagus nerve, injection of secretin, or perfusion of the duodenal lumen with a dilute solution of hydrochloric acid stimulates the secretion of these glands The *succus entericus* (intestinal juice), then, arises from the glands of the mucosa of the small bowel and is an alkaline fluid containing mucus and the enzymes enterokinase, amylase, and erepsin, the last being a mixture of several specific enzymes which act principally and rapidly on the peptones and polypeptides converting them into amino acids Carbohydrates are acted upon by invertase (which

converts cane sugar into glucose and fructose) and lactase (which converts lactose into galactose and glucose) Enterokinase, which is found mainly in duodenal juice, activates pancreatic trypsinogen. Moreover, certain constituents of intestinal juice are said to increase the activity of pancreatic amylase and lipase. Finally, there is secreted in the succus entericus a lipase which acts on fats and fatty acids. Mechanical stimulation of the intestinal mucous membrane increases the volume and total enzyme output. Intestinal obstruction or mucosal irritation may increase the volume of secretion. It will be recalled that pyloric obstruction results in an increased volume of gastric secretions.

Absorption in the intestine Normally, almost complete absorption of the products of digestion and of other materials such as water, salt, and vitamins occurs in the small intestine. Apparently ileal absorption is even more important than jejunal absorption. The mechanism of absorption of the different substances is quite complicated and is often very specific for the substance in question. For example, although some sugar is absorbed from the intestine by simple diffusion, a more important mechanism is that of active intervention of the living intestinal cells. The process involves phosphorylation of the sugar concerned, that is the union of the sugar with phosphate. This occurs only with the "physiologic" hexoses—glucose, galactose, and fructose. It does not occur with nonphysiologic hexoses such as mannose or the pentoses. If the intestinal mucous membrane is destroyed, depressed by cooling to a low temperature or poisoned with phloridzin, 'active' absorption ceases and simple diffusion alone takes place. The rate of absorption of a substance is related, of course, to the state of the intestinal membrane at the time and upon the length of time that the substance is in contact with the membrane. As is known, the local conditions necessary for the absorption of some substances such as certain vitamins, are highly specific. Moreover, in diarrhea or

following massive resection of small bowel, the food substance may not remain in contact with intestinal absorptive surface long enough to permit proper absorption. Certain endocrines (the thyroid, for example) affect the rate of glucose absorption from the bowel. Thyroxine stimulates the mucosa of the intestine to absorb more rapidly whereas glucose absorption may be depressed in adrenal cortical deficiency. Again, the processes of absorption of other substances such as fats, proteins, and vitamins are equally specialized.

MOTILITY OF THE SMALL INTESTINE It would appear that material which has passed into the first portion of the duodenum is retained there until its acidity has been neutralized and is then carried rapidly into the jejunum. There is normally some antiperistalsis in the duodenal cap, but beyond this point slow peristaltic waves pass down the small intestine as a whole at intervals ranging from a few seconds to a few minutes. By means of these waves the chyme is moved along so as to reach the cecum about 3½ hours after it leaves the stomach. Segmentation movements of the small intestine occur, churning the chyme, mixing it intimately with the digestive secretions, and exposing it to the absorptive surface of the mucosa. The rate of rhythmic segmentation of the intestine is progressively slower in successively lower levels of the bowel. The segmentation or mixing movements are distinct from the longitudinal or propulsive movements.

The nervous control of the small intestine has not yet been clearly worked out. In general the vagus nerves increase the tone and motility of the small bowel, and the sympathetic nervous system has the opposite effect. However, even after both sympathectomy and vagotomy the intrinsic innervation of the small bowel permits virtually normal peristalsis. The normal intestinal movements would therefore appear to be controlled by local mechanical and chemical stimuli which affect the mucosa and cause contraction above and

relaxation below the site of stimulation, probably through the medium of Auerbach's plexus

It has been shown that when a length of intestine is reversed and anastomosed in the opposite direction, chyme may pass through it if the segment is not too long. Moreover, it was shown by Wangenstein⁸⁷ that if progressive segments were reversed at different operations a surprisingly large amount of the small bowel might be reversed without lethal effects, though the passage of the material through it was slowed. Nevertheless, it would appear that a segment not much longer than 12 in. can be reversed at any given time. This is an important consideration when doing the Roux "Y" type of anastomosis in establishing a "defunctionalized" loop, perhaps for common duct drainage. Since in animal experiments it has been found that regurgitation of chyme can occur for a distance of 12 in., the optimum length for the antiperistaltic limb would appear to be at least 12 in.

The effect of spinal anesthesia on intestinal motility varies somewhat in different subjects. The sympathetic nerve supply is blocked by the spinal anesthesia, leaving the vagal action unopposed. Dennis and his associates¹⁶ performed vagotomy on 11 patients suffering from idiopathic ulcerative colitis. By this procedure the time required for the passage of barium through the small intestine was increased from 3.5 hr preoperatively to 7.5 hr postoperatively, the passage of barium through the colon was increased from 3.1 hr preoperatively to 11.3 hr postoperatively. It also seemed that vagotomy reduced the mucosal vascular response to emotional tension and relieved enteric spasm. However, vagotomy as a means of managing chronic ulcerative colitis has not received wide acceptance.

There is evidence also that hormones affect intestinal motility, as they do virtually every other function of the body. The loose stools of thyrotoxicosis are well known, and the patient with hypothyroidism is apt

to be constipated. The injection of Pitressin causes gut contraction, and is of some aid in combating distention

Small Bowel Insufficiency

As with the lungs and kidneys, a considerable amount of the small intestine can be excised before digestion is appreciably affected. Nevertheless, disability will occur if the amount of bowel resected at operation is great enough. Extensive or "massive" resections are most often done for gangrene due to superior mesenteric arterial occlusion, volvulus, or, in the past, regional enteritis. Occasionally, intestinal obstruction due to some inflammatory condition such as tuberculous peritonitis may require small bowel resection or by-passing of a type which results in small bowel insufficiency. Absorptive insufficiency may also occur in the presence of a gastrojejunal fistula following gastric resection, whereby the food enters the stomach and then immediately enters the colon, by-passing the absorptive surface of the small bowel, this same physiologic defect is occasionally produced unwittingly by the surgeon, when at gastric resection the stomach is anastomosed to the ileum instead of to the jejunum in performing the gastroenterostomy. The possibility of such an error should always be considered when the patient begins to have multiple loose or diarrheal stools immediately following surgery.

As early as 1881 Kocher⁴⁵ removed 208 cm of small bowel, and in 1888 Senn⁷⁷ suggested, on the basis of experimental observations, that at least one-third to one-half of the small bowel must be resected to produce intestinal insufficiency. In 1935 Hammond³³ collected and analyzed 257 cases, and a most important finding was that the amount of intestine which could be sacrificed without morbidity varied considerably in different patients. This was due in part to different bowel dimensions. Flint²⁸ emphasized that *the metabolic disturbances are proportional to the amount of intestine re-*

maining and not to the amount resected. In a study of 160 adults, Bryant⁸ showed that the length of the intestine varied from 10 ft. to 28 ft., 4 in. Haymond concluded in his summary that 33 per cent of the small intestine can be removed without any serious metabolic alterations, but that if 50 per cent is resected one can expect definite instances of nutritional disturbance.

Berman and his associates⁹ reported a 6-year follow up study of a patient who had had extensive bowel resection for mesenteric thrombosis: the cecum, ascending colon (10 cm.), and the small bowel (539 cm.), except for the duodenum and 45.7 cm. of jejunum, were resected. A macrocytic anemia developed very slowly, producing weakness, atrophic glossitis and proctitis, and paresthesias of the hands and feet. This responded to the administration of vitamin B₁₂.

The study of another patient who had had a major portion of the small bowel resected was reported by Christensen and his associates.⁹ The jejunum was divided approximately 2½ ft. from the duodenojejunal junction and the proximal jejunum was anastomosed to the transverse colon, the rest of the bowel being excised. Twenty-one months later the postoperative diarrhea gradually lessened to only 4 movements per day. He had not gained weight but neither had he lost weight, the value ranging from 120 to 125 lb.

EFFECT OF SMALL BOWEL RESECTION ON NORMAL GROWTH: To examine the effect of extensive small bowel resection upon the growth of young animals, Clatworthy and his associates¹⁰ performed extensive small bowel resections in young dogs. 40 to 80 per cent of the small intestine distal to the ligament of Treitz was resected in 19 puppies without impairment of their growth and development. The mechanism of compensation was considered to be due to an increase in absorptive surface and a decrease in the motility of the remaining small bowel. It has been found that from 50 to 60 per

cent of the intestine can be removed in children and still allow an individual to survive and to enjoy good health, however, if from 80 to 90 per cent of the bowel is removed, the outlook is poor.

The principal metabolic disturbances that occur following massive bowel resection are due largely to diminished absorptive surface, with rapid transit of ingested food. Intrac table diarrhea results in marked weight loss due to excessive loss of fat and proteins in the stool. Approximately 45 per cent of the ingested fats and 25 per cent of the ingested proteins may be lost in such cases, in contrast, carbohydrate absorption and utilization may be almost normal. The fat loss is due less to defective breakdown of fatty acids (digestion) than to poor absorption. Calcium loss may produce tetany, at times abetted by alkalosis. Acidosis may develop.

In addition to the above nutritional deficiencies, serious water and salt derangements must be anticipated and treated if they occur.

ILEOPROCTOSTOMY: It is at times desirable to resect the colon and then to re-establish bowel continuity by means of ileorectal anastomosis, thus preserving sphincter function. I have done this operation in several patients for multiple polyposis of the colon, and have been particularly careful to follow the number and character of the bowel movements thereafter. At first there may be from 10 to 15 loose stools per day, which are likely to result in at times severe perianal irritation and excoriation. However, the use of powders, zinc oxide ointment and other materials usually controls this discomfort fairly well and, as the weeks pass the number of stools gradually declines to from 4 to 6 per day and they become somewhat more firm in consistency. The perianal irritation often disappears, and the individual can return to work without the constant apprehension that an abrupt rush of watery ileal material will result in social embarrassment. There is no doubt in my mind that most patients are better satisfied with the



Fig 122 Small bowel fistula. Note the excoriation and erosion of the surrounding skin, despite the use of aluminum paste. The abdominal surface is best protected by constant and efficient suction at the opening. Several liters may be collected in the trap bottle daily, and accurate fluid replacement is thus facilitated. Small bowel loss is usually a balanced electrolyte loss, neither acidosis nor alkalosis is likely, but a low salt syndrome can readily develop.

eventual result of ileoproctostomy than with ileostomy.

Small Bowel Fistula (Fig. 122)

This lesion has been considered in the discussion of fluid therapy (p 73) and but a few points need repeating here. The principal physiologic problem is that which results from water and salt loss, though gradually deteriorating nutritional status and infection eventually contribute significantly. As many as 6 L may be lost from the drainage tract of a high jejunal fistula over a period of 24 hr. The salt loss is a more or less balanced one, however, and neither acidosis nor alkalosis is typically encountered. In time the salt loss may exceed the water loss, resulting in hypotonicity of the extracellular fluid. Potassium and even calcium deficits may eventually develop.

The *prognosis* of small bowel fistulas is generally good, if hydration and a degree of nutrition are maintained, time is gained for the fistula to close, usually in a week or two. Occasionally, a tube for feeding can be got past a high intestinal defect, which is most helpful. If the lesion does not close, the in-

creasing tendency is to reoperate, attack the fistula directly by resection of the involved bowel, or by anastomosing around it. That a fistula actually exists can be established by having the patient swallow indigo carmine or methylene blue, the level of the defect can be established by roentgen examination following ingestion of barium. Fistulas of the jejunum or ileum are more readily repaired surgically than are duodenal fistulas. While it has been shown that experimental duodenal side fistulas in dogs can be closed successfully in a great majority of the animals,⁸¹ in patients it will sometimes be preferable to perform a subtotal gastric resection as management for a persistent duodenal side fistula, draining the duodenal area widely. This converts a side fistula to the less serious end fistula, gastric secretions are no longer lost, and the patient can be fed. If a duodenal fistula follows gastric resection, the underlying cause may be obstruction of the proximal loop.

A jejunal fistula may be by-passed by making an incision at a distance from the opening on the abdominal wall, avoiding the infected area. Following entero-enterostomy the flow to the outside is usually much diminished, permitting rapid improvement in the patient's general condition. The fistulous loop can be resected later as an elective procedure. To aid in identification of the proximal and distal bowel at operation, one can pass a Miller-Abbott tube through the nose preoperatively and allow it to progress until it has reached the site of the fistula. If the fistulous loop of bowel is superficial and the wound is partially separated, the tip of the Miller-Abbott tube may actually protrude onto the abdominal wall. If the tube reaches the fistula preoperatively, one can assume at operation that any loop of bowel that contains Miller-Abbott tube is proximal bowel and that any loop of bowel that does not contain Miller-Abbott tube is distal bowel, the anastomosis is performed accordingly, as noted elsewhere.

Ileal fistulas are not usually associated with unmanageable fluid and nutritional

losses and thus a longer period of conservative management is feasible

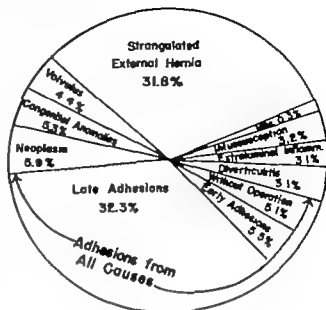
Intestinal Obstruction

The *etiology* of intestinal obstruction in 1287 admissions, including both children and adults, is shown in Figure 123

PATHOGENESIS AND PHYSIOLOGIC CHANGES

Not only the clinical picture but also the physiologic derangements encountered will depend upon the level and the mechanism of the obstruction. For example, chronic in complete colon obstruction may result in weight loss and anemia before colic finally impels the patient to seek medical advice. Yet if the incomplete or partial obstruction suddenly becomes complete in the presence of a competent ileocecal valve, abdominal pain develops quickly due to what amounts to a closed loop obstruction and, should surgical relief not be forthcoming gangrene of the bowel wall with perforation may prove fatal. A somewhat similar problem presents with low small bowel obstruction. In both instances fluid loss to the outside by vomiting is not usually excessive but the threat of ischemic necrosis of the bowel wall is great. In contrast high small bowel obstruction results in prompt vomiting and marked fluid loss to the outside; however since the obstructed bowel is decompressed by vomiting the danger of gangrene from distention is much less. Basically, then death in low obstruction is more commonly due to strangulation or ischemic necrosis of the wall of the distended bowel while death in untreated high small bowel obstruction is apt to be due to fluid loss. Of course, these pictures overlap to varying degrees but it is far safer to treat high obstruction conservatively than low obstruction. The surgical mortality in simple (nonstrangulating) obstruction is less than 10 per cent but in patients who have necrotic bowel that must be resected the mortality is approximately 25 per cent.

A closed loop obstruction is quite serious no matter what the level, since even if it is



CAUSES OF INTESTINAL OBSTRUCTION IN 1,287 ADMISSIONS

Fig 123 In large series of cases from different clinics the percentage of cases falling into each of the categories is remarkably similar to the figures given above (From BRAMLEY E E, HARDY J D., AND WILSON H. Intestinal Obstruction. II Analysis of 1287 admissions over a ten year period. *Am Surgeon* 21: 1001 1955)

high the loop cannot be decompressed by regurgitation

SOURCE OF THE FLUID AND GAS IN SMALL BOWEL OBSTRUCTION In Figure 22 it is shown that the volume of secretions normally poured into the upper intestine—the succus entericus, bile, pancreatic juice, gastric juice, and saliva—amounts to more than 7 L per day. In addition, obstruction of a portion of the alimentary tract may lead to an increased rate of secretion as in pyloric and (probably) small bowel obstruction. For example in 1922 the Dragstedts¹⁹ observed an increased secretion of gastric juice, pancreatic juice and bile following intravenous injection of obstructed loop content from other dogs. They postulated that distention of the obstructed loop produced a secretagogue. Finally, a transudate from the blood increases the fluid in the bowel lumen, as increasing intraluminal pressure compresses the venous outflow while arterial inflow continues. Eventually not only transudate but

also considerable plasma and blood may be lost in this way

The gas which distends the bowel in obstruction is derived from three sources⁸⁷ By far the greatest portion (70 per cent) is derived from swallowed air The importance of this source was demonstrated by producing small bowel obstruction in the presence of an esophageal fistula Distention was markedly less and the animals survived longer Thus, the nasogastric tube not only aspirates gas already present but guards against the entrance of further air into the bowel Less important volumes of intestinal gas are derived from gases contained in the blood (20 per cent) and from bacterial metabolism in the intestine (10 per cent)

INTRALUMINAL PRESSURE IN STRANGULATION OBSTRUCTION To comprehend the mechanical factors in the genesis of strangulation obstruction, the rôle of intraluminal pressure must be understood As a point of departure, let it be noted that many barium enemas are performed with a pressure that is higher than that found in intestinal obstruction with strangulation Why, then, does not the barium enema perforate the bowel, except in the very occasional case? It does not do so because the high pressure transmitted to the colon wall is not long sustained Therefore, not only is the absolute level of the pressure important, but the duration over which the pressure is maintained is also quite important A moderately increased pressure that persists over a prolonged period may prove more disastrous than a markedly elevated pressure that persists only a short while The mechanism of bowel perforation in the presence of long continued distention is not unlike that of skin necrosis overlying a bony prominence in the debilitated patient Once the skin has become slick and shiny and erythematous, very little additional pressure is required to produce a decubitus ulcer or "pressure sore" *Distention of the bowel must not be allowed to persist too long, and this is the major factor which limits the time that can safely*

be devoted to the conservative management of obstruction

In 1907, Van Zwalenburg⁸⁴ studied the effect of distention of the bowel upon blood flow through the wall It was noted that capillary stasis occurred at 30 mm. Hg pressure, venous stasis at 60 mm., partial arterial arrest at 90 mm., and finally complete arrest of the circulation at 130 mm In 1929 Draestedt, Lang, and Millet¹⁸ made similar observations at different levels of the alimentary canal and found that the circulation of the duodenum was more profoundly affected by increased intraluminal pressure than was that of any other portion of the bowel As might be expected, the burst tension of experimentally obstructed loops is less than that for normal bowel

Wangensteen⁸⁷ showed that acute rapid overdilatation of the gut results in elongation of the bowel, as measured in excised segments and *in vivo* However, when the bowel has been exposed to sustained distention over a period of hours, contraction of the longitudinal muscle may result in shortening of the bowel length, though in chronic obstruction lengthening of the bowel is not unusual Nemir and his associates⁸⁷ reported much lengthening of experimentally strangulated intestinal segments in dogs

PRESSURE MEASUREMENTS A considerable number of measurements of intra-enteric pressures in the obstructed small and large bowel were made by Wangenstein⁸⁷ In experimental animals the pressure in the obstructed small bowel was an average sustained value of 9 cm H₂O, with a range of from 4 to 19 cm In clinical measurements the sustained pressures in four cases of clinical obstruction of mechanical origin of from 48 to 96 hr duration varied from 4 to 14 cm H₂O, with occasional pressures of from 20 to 30 cm H₂O during peristaltic activity Pressures were also obtained at operation when colostomy was performed for the relief of distention in five cases of acute colonic obstruction due to malignancy. The sustained pressures varied in these five cases from 12

to 52 cm H₂O. In four of the cases pressures above 23 cm. H₂O were recorded, much higher values than were observed in small bowel obstruction—for colon obstruction is likely to represent closed loop obstruction, with gas continuing to enter through the ileocecal valve but prevented from escaping by the same avenue in approximately 60 per cent of cases. The duration of obstruction in these four cases ranged from 3 to 10 days.

Thus, in large bowel obstruction intra luminal pressures of from 10 to 25 cm. H₂O are the usual findings, and are observed even when a tube is in the duodenum with continuous aspiration prior to operation. This again underscores the difference between small bowel obstruction and obstruction of the colon in the presence of a competent ileocecal valve. The relatively high pressures developed in colon obstruction shorten the time that conservative management may be tried.

LOW SMALL BOWEL OBSTRUCTION AND COLON OBSTRUCTION—CHANGES IN THE BOWEL WALL. The infusion of large amounts of saline solution which is so effective in improving the overall condition of the patient with simple high intestinal obstruction, is not nearly so effective in achieving general improvement in the status of the patient who has low intestinal obstruction. Low obstruction therefore produces a more sinister pathologic situation, and the results of therapy are often disappointing. In the following paragraphs obstruction of the colon will be considered along with obstruction of the low small bowel though it is to be remembered that obstruction of the colon frequently represents a closed loop obstruction because of the competency of the ileocecal valve in somewhat more than one-half of the patients.

Prolonged distention impairs the integrity of the bowel wall. In studies of the effect of sustained pressures upon the anatomic viability and permeability of the bowel wall Wangenstein⁵⁷ found that poisonous

substances introduced into the bowel did not pass through the bowel wall into the peritoneal cavity and become absorbed so long as the gut wall was viable. Whereas an intra-enteric pressure of 10 cm. continuously sustained for 27 or 28 hr. caused petechial hemorrhage in the bowel wall, it was still viable and not abnormally permeable. Similarly an intra-enteric pressure of 20 cm. H₂O sustained for from 10 to 22 hr. caused congestion of the bowel, but it was still viable. However, pressures of 20 cm. maintained for from 28 to 32 hr. caused necrotic patches to appear in the gut, the bowel was no longer viable and permitted the diffusion of the potassium ferrocyanide through its wall. Pressures of 40 cm. H₂O were tolerated as long as 11 hr. but when continued thereafter necrosis of the gut wall with abnormal transperitoneal diffusion occurred. The obstructed bowel did not absorb water normally. An 18 in. loop of lower ileum absorbed in an hour 87 per cent of the water necessary to fill it, whereas in similar but previously obstructed loops only 9 per cent was absorbed. This accounts for the fact that large amounts of fluid may be trapped in clinically obstructed bowel, this fluid is not available to the circulation and extracellular volume because it is poorly reabsorbed.

BLOOD LOSS IN STRANGULATION OBSTRUCTION. One of the most commonly observed findings when the peritoneum is opened in the presence of a strangulated loop of bowel is the dark bloody fluid, the color of which is derived from hemoglobin. There is often considerable hemorrhage into the bowel lumen, and this may later cross the impaired wall and enter the peritoneal cavity. The important clinical point here is that blood transfusion is strongly indicated in the presence of strangulation obstruction.

CAUSE OF DEATH IN STRANGULATION OBSTRUCTION. There continues to be much debate regarding the ultimate cause of death in strangulation obstruction but virtually everyone agrees that, whatever the cause it

comes into effect and produces clinical signs only after the viability of the intestinal wall has been impaired. Therefore, the serious consequences of bowel necrosis appear to be due to the passage of some substance from the intestinal lumen into the peritoneal cavity and its subsequent absorption into the blood stream—with the profound toxic effects which include prostration and irreversible shock (see Case Study, p 1). This substance may represent bacterial toxins *per se*, perhaps from clostridia, or it may be due to substances which are formed by chemical processes within the bowel lumen but which are not primarily bacterial toxins. Nemir and his associates⁵⁷ concluded that the offending substance may be ferritin, but probably a majority of workers are inclined to favor the bacterial toxin hypothesis. In any event, the dark fluid in the peritoneal cavity in experimental obstruction is highly lethal for other dogs when given intraperitoneally or intravenously.

DIAGNOSIS OF INTESTINAL OBSTRUCTION The presence and possible etiology of intestinal obstruction are usually established by a careful history and physical examination, and are confirmed by appropriate roentgenograms. Vomiting that is associated with cramping or colicky abdominal pain and failure to pass gas, particularly if distention andborborygmi are present, should always render bowel obstruction a leading diagnostic possibility. The history of a previous operation, or the presence of a hernia, or the history of weight loss suggesting a malignancy are all important points in the cause and probable level of obstruction. Yet, even though the diagnosis of intestinal obstruction might appear simple in the telling, the failure to appreciate the problem promptly and to act appropriately still results in the loss of a large number of lives each year. The fact is, intestinal obstruction can present extremely difficult diagnostic and therapeutic problems, and few other conditions require greater clinical judgment for consistently successful management.

PRINCIPLES OF MANAGEMENT IN OBSTRUCTION
(FIG 124) *General considerations* It is a

good plan to hospitalize immediately any patient who exhibits signs and symptoms which suggest intestinal obstruction, since only if continuous close observation is maintained can impending gangrene be anticipated and surgery performed promptly. In general, patients with high small bowel obstruction that is likely due to postoperative adhesions deserve a reasonable period of conservative management with tube suction, intravenous fluids, and, if desired, antibiotics. The reason for choosing conservative management in these patients is not only that the obstruction may subside but also that operation might result in even more adhesions. Needless to say, closed loop obstruction should not be treated conservatively if it is complete and is recognized. High small bowel obstruction presents, as noted, chiefly the problem of fluid and nutritional maintenance, since decompression is achieved by vomiting or tube suction, strangulation is unlikely.

Low small bowel obstruction, on the other hand, is managed conservatively at considerable risk unless a long tube passes down the bowel promptly to effect decompression. If pain is not soon relieved, if the pulse rate remains above 100, if the temperature begins to rise, if there is a tender mass, if signs of peritoneal irritation are developing and leukocytosis is increasing, if the blood pressure declines, or if the patient's general appearance is unsatisfactory—if any or all of these circumstances develop—operation should probably be performed without further delay. To repeat, the mortality increases sharply when gangrene necessitates bowel resection. Incidentally, should the pain cease but the patient's general condition be worse, bowel gangrene should be suspected. As successful suction and intravenous fluid therapy are initiated, a previously rapid pulse rate should slow, if it does not, one should be alert to possible strangulation.

Colon obstruction, if complete, demands immediate operation.

Continuous suction Regardless of whether operative intervention or conservative therapy is to be utilized initially, the upper

PHYSIOLOGIC DERANGEMENTS IN ALIMENTARY OBSTRUCTION

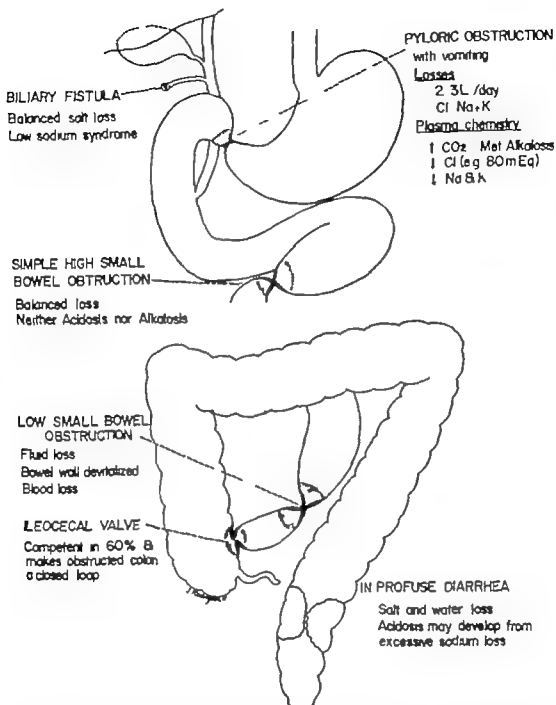


Fig 124 This diagram emphasizes the fluid losses in alimentary obstruction at successive levels, with biliary fistula and diarrhea included for comparison. The hazard in pyloric or high small bowel obstruction is that of fluid loss and shock. Fluid (and blood) losses are also important in low small bowel obstruction, but here the sinister effects of strangulation obstruction with devitalization of the bowel wall and peritoneal contamination predominate. Thus, with adequate fluid replacement one can safely temporize with high obstruction, but strangulation is an ever present danger in low obstruction—regardless of fluid requirements. Small bowel obstruction only rarely produces marked alkalosis or acidosis.

reaches of the gastrointestinal tract should be promptly decompressed by continuous suction. In the event conservative therapy is used the suction will minimize vomiting

and will diminish distention of the proximal bowel. If surgery is contemplated suction should still be employed preoperatively, for it will remove the major portion of the fluid

from the stomach and duodenum and will thus diminish the possibility of aspiration by the patient during anesthesia—in addition to relieving the deleterious effects of the gastric distention which may have reflex effects upon the blood pressure as well as compression effects upon the liver and vena cava.

In 1934 the Miller-Abbott tube⁵⁵ was described for decompression of the lower reaches of the gastrointestinal tract. Essentially, it was shown that, by inflation of a balloon after the tip of the tube was in the duodenum, peristalsis would advance this balloon (and with it the tube) and that the tip often would progress to the anus. As the tube was only about 11 ft in length, it was apparent that the bowel had been telescoped or "reefed" on the tube. Since to withdraw the tube from the nose under such circumstances subjected the bowel to considerable traction with the possibility of intussusception (not to mention esthetic considerations) it was found expedient to remove the Y-shaped proximal tip at the nose and to pull the tube through per anus. Obviously the tube should not be released at the nose until it has been secured below, or else laparotomy might conceivably be required to retrieve the tube. Incidentally, one may take advantage of the decompression and reefing effect of the long tube to minimize bowel interference during resection of the abdominal aorta.

There has been much argument concerning whether or not a simple Levin tube, introduced into the stomach and if possible into the duodenum, is as effective in decompressing the gastrointestinal tract as is one of the various types of long tubes. We believe that it is preferable, even when operation is to be performed, to introduce a long tube initially. While the tube may not have left the stomach at the time of laparotomy, the surgeon can push the tip of the tube through the pylorus and duodenum, much after the fashion of the reinsertion of a pajama string attached to a safety pin by reefing the cloth upon the safety pin in suc-

cessive advances. Once the tube is in the jejunum the balloon may be inflated, permitting the tube to advance postoperatively, decompressing as it goes. For, even if the obstruction has been relieved by operation, it is of considerable value to decompress the bowel as rapidly as possible, and the long tube more speedily accomplishes this.

At times the large volume of secretions which flow into the upper gastrointestinal tract may cause pooling in the stomach after the long tube has passed well down into the intestine, too far to empty the atonic upper bowel. Under these circumstances it may be desirable to insert a Levin tube through the other nostril and to decompress the stomach, either continuously or intermittently.

Were it not for the fact that one can reach the lower bowel with the long tube, it would probably be preferable to insert a short Levin tube into the stomach, since gastric aspiration *per se* is more effectively accomplished with one of the short tubes than with the long tubes, owing to the greater friction along the latter and to the greater likelihood that the smaller lumen of the long tube will become plugged with mucus and other detritus.

Unfortunately, it is often in the patient who is in the greatest need of effective decompression that the most difficulty is encountered in passing the long tube into the small bowel. In the early days of the Miller-Abbott tube usage in Philadelphia, one usually employed a long wire stylet to propel the tip of the thus stiffened tube into the duodenum, using fluoroscopic guidance. The balloon was then inflated and the wire stylet withdrawn. Even with the stylet, however, failures were common in markedly distended patients, and at the present time we no longer attempt to use the stylet. If the tube cannot be maneuvered into the small bowel in a reasonable period of time and adequate decompression achieved, we operate upon the patient.

How long should conservative management be continued? It is always a matter of

fine clinical judgment as to how long to continue conservative therapy, and no single rule can be laid down. However, three guides may be mentioned. First, the abdominal distention should begin to subside and the pain should be relieved. Secondly, serial roentgenograms of the abdomen should show a decline in the degree of bowel distention and certainly should not show progressive distention. Third, the general condition of the patient and his response to the over all plan of conservative management must be satisfactory. This includes his general appearance, pulse rate, blood pressure, abdominal tenderness and rigidity, absence of persistently tender masses, character of suction material, and whether or not passage of flatus resumes. The commonest error in the management of intestinal obstruction consists of continuing conservative management too long and permitting gangrene to occur.

Fluid replacement The physiologic principles of fluid replacement therapy have been outlined in Chapter 2, and only a few points need be repeated here. While it has been emphasized that large amounts of salt-containing fluid may be lost to the outside by vomiting in high obstruction, large amounts of salt-containing fluid are lost into the bowel in low small bowel obstruction (Fig. 124). This loss into the bowel, which cannot absorb fluid at a normal rate, may just as effectively dehydrate the patient as if the fluid had been lost by vomiting. Adequate fluid replacement is necessary in all types of obstruction.

To review the precise therapy required in any given instance of water and salt depletion will depend upon the character of the losses. It has been seen that in pyloric obstruction a preponderant loss of chloride and potassium usually results in hypochloremia and in metabolic alkalosis that is reflected in an increase in the carbon dioxide combining power of the extracellular fluid (plasma). As one proceeds down the small bowel however the loss usually becomes a more balanced one and neither acidosis nor alkalosis of a serious degree is commonly en-

countered in small bowel obstruction. The mainstay of therapy will be isotonic sodium chloride solution, or a balanced solution comprised of one-third M/6 sodium bicarbonate solution and two thirds isotonic sodium chloride solution. There may have been a preponderant salt loss, as compared with water loss, and initially it may be advisable to give hypertonic saline solution (500 ml to 1 L of 3 per cent) to overcome the osmolar deficit. This may be followed with a volume of isotonic saline in glucose solution equal to 8 per cent of the patient's body weight, if signs of marked dehydration are present. Since the markedly dehydrated individual has frequently lost from 8 to 10 per cent of his body weight as water the replacement of 8 per cent of 70 kg results in a volume of fluid of approximately 5600 ml or roughly 6 L. This is the amount of fluid which is required to replace the deficit existing at the time of admission. But if 2 L. of fluid are aspirated from the stomach during the first hour or so of suction, then one must add this volume as well as any continuing losses in the form of urine, further suction material and sweating to the initial requirement if normal hydration of the individual is to be regained. However, one will not wish to infuse 8 L. of fluid over a very short period of time, and this points up the fact that fluid losses which have occurred over a period of several days should not—cannot—be corrected precisely in 2 or 3 hr. A definite plan of orderly but expeditious restoration of the fluid deficits should be initiated with probably no more than 5 L. of fluid being given in the first 12 hr. At the end of each 12 hr or less the total picture is re-evaluated and over all therapy altered according to the findings.

If emergency operation is indicated we usually give from 2 to 3 L. of saline solution, often with an infusion of 500 ml of whole blood and continue fluid therapy after the surgery. At operation as much blood as used as is required to maintain a satisfactory blood pressure and liberal transfusion is an important aspect of treatment. These indi-

viduals often come to operation with a blood volume which may be from 1 to 1.5 liters low because of dehydration, perhaps from anemia due to a malignant tumor and from loss of blood into the bowel wall, the intestinal lumen and, in severe cases, into the peritoneal cavity. The use of adequate amounts of blood will materially diminish the operative mortality in patients coming to surgery for intestinal obstruction.

Antibiotics Although antibiotics have not greatly diminished the over-all mortality rate in intestinal obstruction, it was shown by Cohn¹² and by Poth⁶⁷ that a loop of bowel whose blood supply had been impaired would often survive without perforation in experimental strangulation if large amounts of antibiotics were given, in control animals the rate of perforation with peritonitis and death was much higher. Therefore, regardless of the statistical analyses, there would appear to be sound indication for giving liberal amounts of antibiotics to some patients with intestinal obstruction, if for no other reason than to diminish the severity of peritonitis should the viability of the intestinal wall become impaired during conservative management. Penicillin and streptomycin, in combination, constitute satisfactory therapy for this purpose.

OPERATIVE INTERVENTION Operation is usually resorted to after conservative management has been considered and perhaps given a trial, but has not been sufficiently effective.

Anesthesia and incision The anesthetic used is less important than the competence of the anesthetist using it. If a general anesthetic is to be employed, an endotracheal tube should be inserted to prevent pulmonary aspiration should the patient vomit beneath the mask. Spinal anesthesia is satisfactory, and local anesthesia can be used in the occasional critically ill patient.

By and large, either a suitably placed transverse or a vertical incision will afford satisfactory exposure, though an adequate paramedian incision is our usual choice. Naturally, if obstruction is due to a hernia the appropriate herniorrhaphy incision is

made. Once the peritoneum is incised color and the odor of free fluid are noted. Dark bloody fluid indicates strangulation and a foul odor usually indicates peritonitis. Where possible, it is advisable to identify collapsed bowel and to follow it upward to the level of obstruction, rather than to deliver the entire obstructed bowel through the abdominal wall and proceed downward. Nevertheless, in some adults and in many infants evisceration is required.

The management of distention at operation One of the most vexing technical problems at operation upon patients with intestinal obstruction may prove to be the returning of the distended bowel to the peritoneal cavity at the time of closure. This constitutes a further argument against need for complete evisceration, since distention of eviscerated loops often increases with time and it may be most difficult to return the distended loops of bowel to the peritoneal cavity later.

We have experienced no complications from aspirating and decompressing a distended bowel by various means, and certainly closure is facilitated, not to mention the general desirability of diminishing further ischemia of the bowel wall.

Bowel that is not clearly viable after a suitable period of observation should be resected, usually with end-to-end anastomosis. In contrast to the management of colon obstruction with a colostomy, small bowel continuity should almost always be re-established following resection. To construct a double-barreled small bowel fistula product of a serious problem. Side-to-side anastomoses are usually satisfactory, but rarely the blind cul-de-sac may enlarge (Fig. 125).

Operations for colon obstruction In many instances colon obstruction is best managed in the emergency by a decompressing procedure, deferring resection of a malignant lesion until later. Of course, volvulus may force resection and anastomosis, but here, too, if reduction of the volvulus results in return of satisfactory bowel color, resection is best postponed until a later date. The re-

son for this is that the greatly distended and hence thinned colon wall is easily torn and, should leakage at a line of anastomosis occur following primary resection, death would usually ensue. Again, the seriousness of peritoneal contamination by alimentary contents increases progressively from the stomach to the anus. It was seen in Chapter 5 that acidity is inimical to bacterial growth, and gastric acidity is no exception, gastric contents have a mild bacterial flora.

Therefore, for lesions beyond the cecum a cecostomy or, much better, a decompressing colostomy is performed as a primary procedure. If the obstruction is in the cecum, then the distal colon has not been distended, under these circumstances the right colon may be resected with end-to-end or end-to-side ileotransverse colostomy. However, if the patient's condition is poor a simple bypassing ileocolostomy should be performed initially leaving resection of the lesion for a second operation. If a colostomy is, for various reasons, to be a permanent one, the more distal it is located the more easily can the less liquid movements be managed by the patient and his relatives.

Use of long tube as a postoperative splint
It may be necessary at times to operate in the subacute postoperative periods for adhesions both fibrinous and fibrous. Yet there is no assurance that they may not reform and require a third operation. Under these conditions a useful maneuver consists of advancing a Miller Abbott tube through the duodenum and into the upper jejunum manually while the abdomen is open. The balloon is then inflated and the tip of the tube is allowed to progress rapidly to the sigmoid colon while the bowel is not obstructed. The balloon is then deflated and the tube left undisturbed until the patient is ambulatory having bowel movements and eating a full diet. By this time the loops of bowel may have become encased in new fibrinous adhesions but sharp kinking has been prevented and a patent bowel lumen has been maintained. The Y-connection at the nose is then removed and the tube drawn

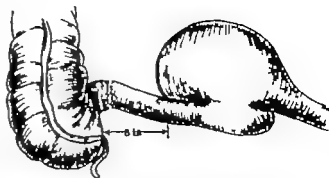


Fig 125 Enlargement of the blind stump in side-to-side anastomosis (From CLAWSON D H. Side-to-side intestinal anastomosis complicated by ulceration, dilatation and anemia. A physiologically unsound procedure. *Surgery* 34: 254 1953). In our experience this condition has not constituted a common complication. While end-to-end anastomoses are preferred, side-to-side procedures are usually satisfactory.

through from below. As noted elsewhere, the entire Miller Abbott tube approximately 11 ft. in length may readily traverse the bowel from the nose to the anus, since the bowel "gathers" upon it. Again, the lower end of the tube must be secured before it is freed at the nose. While such a warning might appear superfluous the writer was once associated with just such a circumstance; fortunately, it was possible with a sigmoidoscope to reach the distal tip of the tube and to pull it on through without having to resort to operation.

Paralytic Ileus

In addition to *simple mechanical obstruction* (in which the primary defect is fluid loss) and *strangulating obstruction* (in which the bowel blood supply is compromised and may lead to gangrene), there is the third common cause of intestinal propulsion dysfunction, *adynamic* ('*afunctional* or *paralytic*) *ileus*. In this condition no mechanical obstruction exists but effective motor activity of the bowel is lost. This is a major cause of morbidity on surgical wards, and it has a wide spectrum of causes. Operations upon the bowel itself or within the abdomen produce a majority of the instances encountered, but intracranial, intrathoracic, or other procedures also result in paralytic ileus. In fact bowel function is ab-

normal in stress of many types Peritonitis, renal calculus, uremia, retroperitoneal hemorrhage, spinal injury, and hypopotassemia represent additional circumstances under which paralytic ileus may develop

The management of ileus is frequently unsatisfactory, until the precipitating condition has run its course Nasogastric suction is used, and oral intake avoided A rectal tube may facilitate the passage of colon gas, assisted with indeterminate success by injections of Pitressin, Prostigmin, or enemas Potassium deficits should be corrected Bowel perforation due to distention associated with ileus is rare

Regional Enteritis (Ileitis, Crohn's Disease)

In 1932 Crohn, Ginzburg, and Oppenheimer¹³ described a granulomatous lesion of

LOWER INTESTINAL BLEEDING

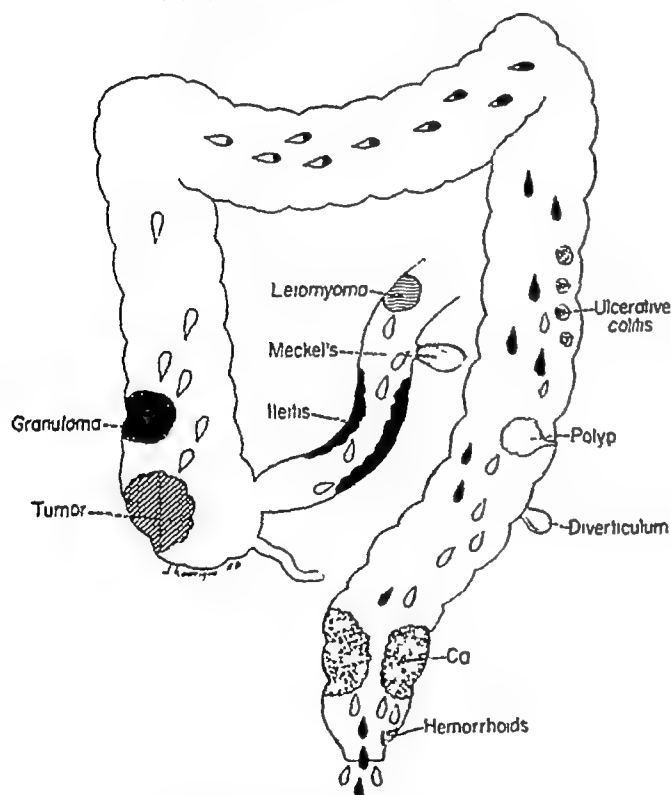


Fig 126 The passage of bright blood usually indicates a lesion in the lower small bowel or colon Nevertheless, intestinal motility varies greatly in different subjects, by injecting blood into the duodenum by tube it has been demonstrated that in some subjects the blood can appear in the rectum within minutes, virtually unchanged Too, bowel length varies from one person to another Even vigorous duodenal bleeding may fail to regurgitate into the stomach

the terminal ileum which was given the name terminal ileitis However, it has since been appreciated that this subacute or chronic cicatrizing inflammatory process may involve almost any segment of the small bowel, often at multiple sites with uninvolved segments of bowel between The name now most used is regional enteritis (Fig 126)

Operation is required for several complications due to this process, the etiology of which is unknown First, the acute process may simulate acute appendicitis, and at surgery a fiery red, granular, edematous, and friable appearance of the terminal ileum and, often, the cecum is encountered If the base of the appendix is involved it is usually best not to perform appendectomy, lest a fecal fistula result Under these circumstances we usually do no further surgery, but close the abdomen and adopt a conservative program—for unquestionably many instances of the acute disease subside without further difficulty Second, the subacute condition may be associated with abdominal pain and tenderness, diarrhea, weight loss, leukocytosis, anemia, and fever, often with the formation of enteric fistulas Roentgen barium study may reveal multiple sites of abnormal mucosal patterns, with or without narrowing of the bowel lumen for considerable distances ("string sign") Operation at this stage of the disease reveals much evidence of inflammation, but it is less acute Characteristic of this and later stages is a tendency for the mesentery to become quite thickened and to tend to extend toward the antimesenteric border on either side—that is, to encircle the bowel To resect all the obviously diseased small bowel in extensive cases may be to risk intestinal insufficiency, or at least loose stools Therefore, operation is best avoided at this stage, where possible Finally, the third or quiescent stage of the disease may bring the patient to laparotomy for small bowel obstruction due to fibrosing stenosis The obstruction may at first seem to have occurred quite suddenly and without antecedent disease—there being no hernia previous operation, or suggestive evidence of tumor in the adult patient Nevertheless

a careful history will often reveal that the patient once had bouts of unexplained diarrhea, perhaps years before, and that in recent months he has had 'gas pains' or cramps upon occasion. What happened, of course was that a chronically stenosed portion of the small bowel, through which the liquid contents of the small bowel could still pass, had suddenly become completely blocked perhaps by undigested food particles.

Microscopically, the picture is that of a chronic granuloma which contains giant cells and in some respects resembles tuberculosis. However again, no definite etiologic agent has ever been proved. Psychogenic factors appear to be far less important in this disease than in ulcerative colitis. Furthermore the beneficial effects of ACTH and cortisone that are often realized in ulcerative colitis are virtually absent in regional enteritis.

The *prognosis* of regional enteritis can be most unsatisfactory. The patient whose acute disease was disclosed unexpectedly at laparotomy performed for 'appendicitis' may anticipate remission with some confidence. Where the subacute disease is limited to a short or relatively short total length of bowel resection of this bowel may at times be justified. And yet any resection should be performed with the full realization that subsequent involvement of remaining bowel may produce complications that could impel further resection in the future. Certainly one is well advised to be most conservative in resecting bowel for this condition operating chiefly for the complications of obstruction and fistula formation. In time the inflammatory process tends to subside and a permanent remission may be hoped for. Meanwhile supportive measures such as transfusion, aggressive alimentation, indicated antibiotics and continuous encouragement are imperative. Antispasmodics are of assistance in the management of some individuals. Cortisone therapy has not been notably beneficial and opiates are best avoided, as they are best avoided in most chronic diseases.

Mesenteric Vascular Occlusion

Occlusion of the superior mesenteric artery usually results in gangrene extending from the first portion of the jejunum to the transverse colon approximately. The source of the arterial embolus may be a mural thrombus secondary to myocardial infarction, but more often it is from the left atrium in patients with atrial fibrillation. Local thrombosis of the artery may also occur secondary to thromboangitis obliterans, polycythemia vera, or atheromatous changes.

Two patients may be cited to illustrate thrombosis since embolism is so much more common that most are familiar with it. The first patient was a middle-aged white woman who was admitted with moderate abdominal distention and marked tenderness plus *mental disorientation*. It was considered by several examiners that the most likely diagnosis, in this woman who had been sick for several days, was peritonitis and beginning abscess formation secondary to a perforated appendix. The writer concurred. Conservative management was begun with antibiotics, nasogastric suction, and intravenous fluids. Transfusion was not given because the admission hemoglobin level was 17 gm. and the hematocrit 55 per cent. Since she did not exhibit an apparent degree of dehydration that might have produced this elevated hematocrit level the hematologists were requested to consider the possibility of polycythemia vera which was confirmed. However, at the end of 24 hr of conservative therapy she had not improved and it was decided to explore the abdomen—the mental condition remaining unchanged. At laparotomy a loop of gangrenous bowel was successfully resected. Pathologic examination of the specimen revealed widespread acute, subacute and chronic thromboses of the smaller mesenteric vessels. She died several months later having never exhibited normal mentality. Autopsy revealed extensive thrombosis in the vessels of the remaining bowel, but the main superior mesenteric artery and sufficient smaller vessels remained patent to allow

continued bowel viability. Moreover, extensive thromboses were found in other organs, including the brain. The patient's husband recalled that for the past several years she had had intermittent episodes of abdominal pain, and there had been the progressive mental deterioration.

The second patient, a white man in his fifties, had undergone successful and uneventful resection of the aorta from just below the renal arteries to the femoral arteries for chronic thrombotic occlusion. All was well until 6 a.m. on the morning following surgery when he was seized with abdominal pain. At first there was no change in the vital signs, but after an hour or so the blood pressure fell and the pulse rate increased. Naturally, some complication of the anastomosis or of the plastic prosthesis was considered the most likely source of the difficulty and, while the femoral pulses remained good and there was no definite evidence of blood loss, the abdomen was explored in the early afternoon. Necrotic bowel was evident as the peritoneum was reopened, and it was soon apparent from the distribution of the gangrene (duodenum to transverse colon) that the superior mesenteric artery was occluded. This bowel was resected, the first 3 in. of jejunum being anastomosed end-to-end to colon. The patient died within 24 hr. from the irreversible shock that had been present at the time of operation due to the gangrenous bowel with passage of toxic materials through its wall. Even so, he could not have survived in any event, because inadequate gut absorptive surface remained. At autopsy it was found that thrombosis had begun on the site of an atheromatous "ulcer," and had gradually occluded the superior mesenteric artery at its origin. The vascular clamp had been placed across the aorta below this level, but retraction or other manipulation may have produced structural change in the calcified intima, with clotting and fatal issue in what had been a straightforward elective operation.

Diverticula of the Intestine

Beginning with the diverticulum of the cervical esophagus previously described, diverticula may be encountered at most levels of the alimentary canal.

The true *duodenal diverticulum* emerges along the mesenteric border, but it may subsequently extend posterior to the duodenum and appear to arise from the antimesenteric border. These sacs may become quite large and some, at least, may be responsible for the vague and indeterminate symptomatology that has been ascribed to them. In general, though, duodenal diverticula are asymptomatic, and because of their thin wall and proximity to the common bile duct they are best left alone. When excision is decided upon, the diverticulum may be excised and its neck inverted into the lumen of the duodenum from the outside, or, the inversion may be performed (more satisfactorily, we feel) with the aid of longitudinal duodenotomy that is subsequently closed transversely.

Another duodenal defect is the so-called pseudodiverticulum which may occur in association with a chronic duodenal ulcer.

Diverticula may involve any part of the jejunum or ileum, but *Meckel's diverticulum* in the distal ileum is the most common of these and is said to persist in from 2 to 4 per cent of infants. During early embryonic life it represents the vitello-intestinal duct between the mid-gut and the yolk sac. Described by Meckel in 1815, the persistence of this duct in postnatal life may give rise to a variety of pathologic changes. (1) it may contain gastric mucosa which can ulcerate, bleed, or perforate, (2) it may become inflamed and even become gangrenous, usually being found at operation for suspected appendicitis, (3) it may invert as the leading point of an intussusception, (4) it may encircle the bowel and produce obstruction, (5) various segments may remain, attached either to the distal ileum, the umbilicus, or both, and form cysts, (6) finally, it may persist as a fistula from the bowel to

the abdominal wall. Incidentally, the diverticulum may vary in size because of the contraction of muscle in its wall.

Treatment consists of placing a clamp transversely across the base of the diverticulum, excising it, and inverting the stump (Fig 274).

Diverticula of the colon are far more common than in other portions of the bowel, and they increase in incidence both with distance from the cecum and with age (incidence 5 per cent above age 40). *Diverticulosis* is the term used for the mere existence of the diverticula, whereas *diverticulitis* denotes actual inflammation of one or more of the defects.

The main clinical features of these diverticula are the complications attending inflammation and hemorrhage. If the defect has a wide mouth and drainage is free, inflammation and perforation are less likely to occur. Bleeding usually occurs because of erosion of the arteries to the diverticulum as they course through its narrow neck.²² Such hemorrhages may occur in the absence of the usual symptoms and signs of "left-sided appendicitis." Chronic inflammation and suppuration may lead to the formation of fistulous communications with contiguous organs including the urinary bladder, small bowel, or another part of the colon.

The treatment of the several complications of diverticulosis of the colon will depend upon the condition encountered. The initial attack of diverticulitis is usually treated conservatively, or with proximal colostomy if perforation (or obstruction) has already occurred when the patient is seen. Recurrent attacks usually lead to surgical resection of the involved loop of bowel, particularly as it may be impossible to rule out carcinoma on barium enema alone. A fistulous communication with the bladder wall is excised; this is frequently preceded by a diverting colostomy which is later closed. Whereas, in the past resection of the involved bowel was rarely performed without the protection of a proximal colostomy,

primary resection has been increasingly employed in recent years.

That bleeding in a given case of massive gastrointestinal hemorrhage is arising from a diverticulum of the colon may be exceedingly difficult to establish. Decision may be rendered particularly difficult when barium enema reveals that the entire colon contains such defects. Each case must be decided on its own merits.

Intestinal Neoplasms

Tumors of the small bowel are relatively rare but tumors of the colon are common.

Small intestinal neoplasms may be composed of the various cellular elements of the bowel wall, as well as ectopic tissue such as pancreas. Among these tumors are carcinoma, leiomyoma, leiomyosarcoma, lymphoma, fibroma, neurofibroma, lipoma, and simple adenomatous polyp. In general, tumors cause obstruction, intussusception, or hemorrhage. The carcinoid tumor may also give rise at times to "serotonin crisis." Multiple polyposis of the alimentary tract may represent a familial manifestation associated with brownish pigmentation of the mucosal surfaces, palms and soles. This syndrome was first described by Peutz in 1921.²³

Tumors of the colon include those listed for the small bowel. Adenomatous polyps are common, and many believe that carcinoma of the colon is derived from such lesions in most instances. Multiple congenital polyposis represents an hereditary condition in which the colon may exhibit literally hundreds of polyps. Reluctant as the surgeon might ordinarily be to resect all or almost all the colon in the instance of multiple familial polyposis he can assure the patient that the chances of his having developed a malignancy of the colon by the age of 65 are almost 85 per cent. Therefore, either colectomy or ileoproctostomy must be done. We prefer to compromise slightly and perform an anastomosis of the ileum to the large bowel as deep as possible below the

pelvic floor. Residual polyps are then fulgurated through the proctoscope at 3-month intervals. This has proved satisfactory so far, and the patients are much more satisfied with this than with ileostomy, especially if the early postoperative diarrhea subsides to from 3 to 6 loose stools per day.

Characteristically, malignancies of the right half of the colon are associated with anemia and weight loss, perhaps in addition to pain and a palpable mass. In contrast, tumors of the left colon far more often cause obstructive phenomena, since by the time the fecal stream has reached this level it is less liquid. Nevertheless, the clinical findings in tumors at the extremes of the colon may overlap considerably from case to case.

While there can be no doubt that a patient with a satisfactory ileostomy can be largely rehabilitated, it certainly could not be stated that he is a normal person either emotionally or physiologically (which are, of course, mutually interdependent—for the patient is not normal physiologically if he is abnormal emotionally, and *vice versa*).

"Ileostomy: Problem or Solution?"⁵³

An ileostomy may be subject not only to the usual complications of the other attempt at an abdominal anus (colostomy) but has certain complications all its own. It may prolapse, retract, obstruct, stenose by skin stricture, or be the avenue for hernia formation, as may colostomy. In addition, the ileostomy may pour a large volume of liquid into the receiving bag, producing a serious problem in fluid maintenance. Perhaps most annoying of all, though, is the frequency with which fistulas and sinuses form just at or beneath the skin, with attendant infection and skin excoriation. Of course, skin excoriation may occur apart from fistula formation. Regional enteritis has been reported to develop adjacent to the ileostomy in some cases. Finally, emotional problems are large in these patients, and such upsets are often reflected promptly in increased difficulty in managing the ileostomy.

In reviewing their experiences with ileos-

tomy in 145 patients, Lyons and Garlock found 47 (32 per cent) major complication and during a 15-yr period 20 per cent of a ileostomies required reoperation for complications. They expressed the prevailing consensus, namely, that ileostomy (and colectomy) should not be considered the primary form of therapy for ulcerative colitis, but that when used to salvage invalids or to save life, the operation permits restoration of most normal social, sexual, and economic activities.

Anatomy and Physiology of the Colon—Further Considerations

A number of facets of colon pathophysiology have already been touched upon. The bowel is approximately 5 ft in length and its parts are the cecum, appendix, ascending colon, hepatic flexure, transverse colon, splenic flexure, descending colon, sigmoid, rectum, and anal canal. In general, the diameter of the colon is greatest at the cecum and diminishes as it progresses toward the rectum. The ascending colon and the transverse colon are supplied by branches of the superior mesenteric artery, whereas the left colon is supplied by the inferior mesenteric artery. However, so extensive is the marginal circulation of the left colon, from branches of the middle colic to anastomoses with the middle hemorrhoids, that the inferior mesenteric artery can be ligated (as it usually is in resections of the lower aorta for aneurysm or occlusive disease) without causing gangrene of the colon.

The chief physiologic function of the colon is its rôle in reclaiming water from the liquid ileal stream and its reservoir function at the rectum. There is little evidence that other absorptive activities are significant.

The colon has both sympathetic and parasympathetic innervation (Fig. 259), in addition to its intrinsic ganglia. By and large, sympathetic fibers are inhibitory, whereas parasympathetic fibers increase motor and secretory activity. The innervation of the colon is of particular pertinence in ulcerative colitis and congenital megacolon.

Appendicitis

ETIOLOGY In contrast to acute cholecystitis or pancreatitis, acute appendicitis is essentially a bacterial infection which may involve all portions of the organ. Unquestionably simple acute appendicitis may occur repeatedly without perforation of this organ. Rupture of the appendix is likely to occur, however, when a fecalith obstructs the mouth of the blind tube and cannot be expelled by appendiceal peristalsis. This represents closed loop obstruction and, even if pressure necrosis adjacent to the fecalith does not occur, swelling at the base of the organ may occlude the blood supply to such an extent that with the additional ischemic effect of infection, perforation of the wall occurs.⁶⁴ One reason that a greatly distended salpinx does not rupture so readily as does the appendix is that the former derives its arterial blood supply from both ends, while the appendix receives its blood supply from only one end.

When the appendix ruptures it introduces into the surrounding peritoneal cavity a highly contaminated material, containing streptococci, colon bacilli, staphylococci, anaerobes and other bacteria. Often the omentum and surrounding organs wall off the material to form a localized abscess, but in some adults and many children this is not accomplished, and spreading peritonitis develops. When this occurs it may prove fatal because of bacterial toxemia, renal failure, hepatic abscesses or intestinal obstruction. Yet a surprisingly large number of patients who are admitted more than 24 hr following perforation are able with supportive therapy (nasogastric suction, penicillin, streptomycin, intravenous fluids and blood plus suitable sedation), to localize the peritonitis with abscess formation. They are readmitted in from 6 to 12 weeks for interval appendectomy. In one large municipal charity hospital in which I worked, most of the patients admitted with appendicitis had already suffered perforation from one to several days previously; these individuals were almost all managed conservatively and

the overwhelming majority recovered, to return for appendectomy at a later date.

SYSTEMIC REACTION The clinical findings in acute appendicitis are those produced by any acute suppurative process, with certain additional overtones derived from its anatomic location and the fact that it involves bowel. The pain, tenderness, and rigidity in the right lower abdomen are associated with tachycardia, fever, leukocytosis, and anorexia with or without nausea and vomiting. The patient who is hungry rarely has acute appendicitis. Colic pain may be due to appendiceal peristalsis when the mouth of the organ is occluded.

The differential diagnosis of appendicitis involves at one time or another the exclusion of many other possibilities. Moreover, the diagnosis of appendicitis may prove most difficult at the extremes of life. The elderly patient may exhibit few signs and symptoms prior to perforation, which he is poorly equipped to survive. Abdominal examination in infants is not always easy.

The treatment of appendicitis consists of appendectomy, if the organ has not perforated or has probably been perforated for 12 hr or less, that is if gross bowel distention is not already present. It is in the patients with early perforation that most disagreement will be encountered among different surgeons regarding whether or not to operate. Patients with obvious peritonitis and abdominal distention should be managed conservatively, in our opinion, unless individual circumstances dictate otherwise. We retain an open mind concerning operation in children with early peritonitis. We once were under the impression that because of a short omentum children had a limited capacity to localize the infection, but our subsequent experience has convinced us that children have a considerable ability to do this.

Chronic Idiopathic Ulcerative Colitis (Fig 126)

DEFINITION Ulcerative colitis is a condition in which shallow ulcers are found in various parts of the colon or throughout it.

colon, and occasionally even in the distal ileum. This process may continue with various remissions and recurrences until it finally reaches a stage that is generally referred to as chronic ulcerative colitis. There are, of course, many specific types of ulcerations of the colon, such as amebiasis, carcinoma, bacillary dysentery, and certain granulomatous lesions. Nevertheless, so-called idiopathic chronic ulcerative colitis is, as the term implies, a condition for which no definite etiologic factor has ever been established. The bacterial theory has now given way to a growing realization that if emotional conflict is not the principal cause, it certainly is a prominent factor in the pathogenesis of this disease. It tends to occur in individuals of a particular temperament, it is often improved when their environment can be made less frustrating, and sudden emotional upsets may produce a relapse within 24 hr—undoing the beneficial effects of weeks of hospital care.

Following the demonstration that lysozyme, which destroys the protective mucous coating of the bowel, was often much increased in patients with ulcerative colitis, it was considered possible that this was the initiating factor which exposed the mucosa to bacterial invasion. More recently, though, it has been the consensus that the increase in lysozyme is more likely an additional effect of the process rather than its cause. The disease remains idiopathic.

GROSS APPEARANCE OF COLON In a majority of cases the process begins in the sigmoid or rectum as a superficial infection. On proctoscopic examination one sees a markedly hyperemic, friable mucosa, with many small hemorrhagic ulcerations which may later coalesce. Almost any point that the sigmoidoscope touches bleeds readily, and the examination is likely to be quite painful to the patient. Later the infection involves the submucosa and eventually all layers of the bowel, resulting in a scarred, narrowed, and shortened colon which loses its haustral markings, as seen on barium enema.

In the later stages, fistulas may form be-

tween the colon and the bladder or between loops of bowel, and there may be sinuses around the anus. Pseudopolyposis is characteristic of the subacute and chronic phases of the process, and the reported incidence of carcinoma in such polyposis has ranged from approximately 5 to 15 per cent, though the latter figure has seemed excessive to us.

SYMPTOMS The symptoms are those of an infectious process and include fever, malaise, weakness, prostration, weight loss, and later anemia. Tenesmus and bloody diarrheal stools mixed with mucus and pus are characteristic of the periods of active disease. These subside during remissions.

PHYSIOLOGIC BASIS OF THERAPY Medical treatment, including mental rest, physical rest, and general hygienic measures should be given a most thorough trial. Psychotherapy is helpful in some cases, but few indeed are truly rehabilitated by psychiatric guidance. Diet, transfusions, antibiotics, cortisone, and ACTH may be utilized. Satisfactory permanent remissions are not uncommon.

Surgery, usually consisting of ileostomy and total colectomy, is reserved for fulminating acute cases which threaten to overwhelm the individual and for complications such as intestinal obstruction, perforation, abscess formation, fistula, bleeding, malignancy, or intractability to conservative management.

Congenital Megacolon (Hirschsprung's Disease)

This condition appears in two forms. The first is that of chronic constipation on a habit or psychologic basis, and this should be treated conservatively. The second, or true megacolon, is due to a relative paucity or absence of autonomic ganglia in a portion of the colon through which fecal material is not propelled normally. This spastic or narrowed segment of distal colon, involving the rectum and variable lengths of the colon proximally, must be entirely excised to achieve uniformly good colon function postoperatively. This is ensured by means of

frozen section control at operation, the line of resection being carried proximally until ganglia are demonstrated microscopically. The colon containing ganglia is then brought down and anastomosed by the "pull-through" technic to the rectal pouch distally.

The "pull through" for megacolon was advocated by Swenson,⁵³ and his experience has been extensive and gratifying. In 108 patients so managed through 1953, there had been only one recurrence, this one was due to incomplete resection before frozen section control of the line of resection became routine. Moreover, operations in adult male patients have not resulted in impotence. In 47 per cent of the patients the defective colon did not extend above the pelvic peritoneum. Swenson found that following adequate resection and pull through anastomosis there were 1 to 2 bowel movements a day and that no special diet, laxatives, or enemas were required. The abdominal distention gradually disappeared, and the abdominal contour was normal one year after operation. Barium enema examinations demonstrated that the dilated bowel returned to essentially normal size and the colon developed the capacity to empty itself completely.

One hazard attending attempts at colon cleansing in youngsters with congenital megacolon is that of water intoxication due to the excessive retention of enema water. The use of saline enema fluid or the monitoring of plasma electrolyte levels is indicated.

REFERENCES

- 1 ALLISON P R. Reflux esophagitis sliding hiatal hernia and the anatomy of repair. *Surg Gynec & Obst.* 92: 419 1951
- 2 BEAUMONT W. Experiments and observations on the gastric juice and the physiology of digestion. Facsimile of the original edition of 1833. Thirteenth International Physiological Congress, Boston 1929
- 3 BERNAN J K., HARRISON, E D AND BILLINGS E. Massive resection of the small intestine. A six year follow-up study. *Am. J. Digest. Dis.* 20: 152, 1953
- 4 BILLROTH T. Offenes schreiben an Herrn Dr. L. Wittelsbörfer. *Wien med. Wchnschr.*, 31: 162 1881 (Cited by NADEL, G W. *California Med* 78: 189 1953)
- 5 BOCKHAUSEN H. *Atroces nec descriptis prius, morbi historia. Secundum medicas Artis Leges Conscripta*. Laidg. Bat., Boutesteniana 1724 (Cited by FRIE. *Am J M Sc.*, 1877)
- 6 BRYANT J. Observations upon the growth and length of the human intestine. *Am J M Sc.*, 167: 499 1924.
- 7 CHAPMAN W P., HERRERA, R., AND JONES C M. A comparison of pain produced experimentally in lower esophagus, common bile duct, and upper small intestine with pain experienced by patients with diseases of biliary tract and pancreas. *Surg., Gynec. & Obst.* 89: 573 1949
- 8 CHILES N H, BLOOMENFELD A. H BUTT H R AND OLSEN A M. Esophageal varices. Comparative incidence of ulceration and spontaneous rupture as a cause of fatal hemorrhage. *Gastroenterology* 25: 566 1953
- 9 CHRISTENSEN N A., MUSEBROEK, J E AND WOLLAEGER, E E. Extensive resection of the bowel for occlusion of the superior mesenteric artery. Report of a case with postoperative studies of function of the gastrointestinal tract. *Proc Staff Meet. Mayo Clinic* 25: 449 1950
- 10 CLATWORTHY H W, SALLESBY R., AND LOVEN OOOO C. Extensive small bowel resection in young dogs. Its effect on growth and development. *Surgery* 32: 841 1952
- 11 COBB, C F., AND VARCO R L. Chronic histamine action. *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 44: 475 1940
- 12 COHN I, GELB A., AND HAWTHORNE, H R. Strangulation obstruction—the effect of pre- and postoperative antibacterial agents. *Ann. Surg.*, 138: 748 1953
- 13 CROHN B B., GINSBURG L AND OPPENHEIMER, G D. Regional ileitis. Pathologic and clinical entity. *J.A.M.A.*, 99: 1323 1932
- 14 CROSS F S. Pathologic changes in megaesophagus (esophageal dystonia). *Surgery* 31: 647 1952
- 15 DAVENPORT H W AND CHAVRÉ, V J. The lack of effect of the adrenal hormones upon gastric acid secretion. *Endocrinology* 47: 193 1950
- 16 DENNIS C., EDDY F D., FRYKMAN H M, McCARTHY A M AND WESTOVER D. The response to vagotomy in idiopathic ulcerative colitis and regional enteritis. *Ann. Surg.* 128: 479 1948
- 17 DILLARD D H AND MERENDINO K. A. Experiences with the interposed jejunal segment operation combined with adjunct pro-

- cedures in the prevention of esophagitis S Forum, **5**: 323, 1955
- 18 DRAGSTEDT, C A, LANG, V F, AND MILLET, R F The relative effects of distention on different portions of the intestine Arch Surg, **18**: 2257, 1929
 - 19 DRAGSTEDT, L R, AND DRAGSTEDT, C A Acute dilatation of the stomach J A M A, **79**: 612, 1922
 - 20 DRAGSTEDT, L R, OBERHELMAN, H A, JR, AND SMITH, C A Experimental hyperfunction of the gastric antrum with ulcer formation Ann Surg, **134**: 332, 1951
 - 21 DRAGSTEDT, L R, OBERHELMAN, H A, JR, AND WOODWARD, E R Physiology of gastric secretion and its relation to the ulcer problem J A M A, **147**: 1615, 1951
 - 22 DRAGSTEDT, L R, OBERHELMAN, H A, JR, ZUBIRAN, J M, AND WOODWARD, E R Antrum motility as a stimulus for gastric secretion Gastroenterology, **24**: 71, 1953
 - 23 DRAGSTEDT, L R, WOODWARD, E R, STORER, E H, OBERHELMAN, H A, JR, AND SMITH, C A Quantitative studies on mechanism of gastric secretion in health and disease Ann Surg, **132**: 626, 1950
 - 24 EVERSON, T C An experimental evaluation of the effectiveness of pancreatin in reducing fecal nitrogen and fat loss following total gastrectomy Ann Surg, **135**: 406, 1952
 - 25 EVERSON, T C Experimental comparison of protein and fat assimilation after Billroth II, Billroth I, and segmental types of subtotal gastrectomy Surgery, **36**: 525, 1954
 - 26 EVERSON, T C, HUTCHINGS, V Z, EISEN, J E, AND WITANOWSKI, M F A comparative evaluation of changes in weight after partial gastrectomy and after vagotomy with gastroenterostomy Ann Surg, **145**: 223, 1957
 - 27 FERGUSON, D J The antial phase of gastric secretion before and after vagotomy—experiments on gastric pouch dogs Surgery, **33**: 352, 1953
 - 28 FLINT, J M The effect of extensive resections of the small intestine Johns Hopkins Hosp Bull, **23**: 127, 1912
 - 29 GLFNN, F, AND HARRISON, C S The surgical treatment of peptic ulcer Ann Surg, **132**: 36, 1950
 - 30 GOLDEN, R Functional obstruction of efferent loop of jejunum following partial gastrectomy J A M A, **148**: 721, 1952
 - 31 GRAY, S J, RAMSLEY, C, REIFENSTEIN, R W, AND BENSON, J A, JR The significance of hormonal factors in the pathogenesis of peptic ulcer Gastroenterology, **25**: 156, 1953
 - 32 GRIMSON, K S, ROWE, C R, JR, AND TAYLOR, H M Results of vagotomy during seven years Ann Surg, **135**: 621, 1952
 - 33 HAYMOND, H E Massive resection of the small intestine Collection of 257 cases Surg, Gynec & Obst, **61**: 693, 1935
 - 34 HELLER, E Extramuköse Cardioplastik bei chronischen Cardiospasmus mit Dilatation des Oesophagus, Mitt Grenzgeb Med Chir, **27**: 141, 1913 (not read)
 - 35 HOLLANDER, F Laboratory procedures in the study of vagotomy (with particular reference to the insulin test) Gastroenterology, **11**: 149, 1948
 - 36 Intestinal polyposis with melanin spots of the mucosa, lips, and fingers (Editorial) J A M A, **155**: 1063, 1954
 - 37 IVY, A C, GROSSMAN, M I, AND BACHRACH, W H Peptic Ulcer Philadelphia, Blakiston Company, 1950
 - 38 JACKSON, C Peptic ulcer of the esophagus J A M A, **92**: 369, 1929
 - 39 JANOWITZ, H D, AND HOLLANDER, F The basal secretion of pepsin by the human stomach J Clin Invest, **31**: 338, 1952
 - 40 JAVID, H Nutrition in gastric surgery with particular reference to nitrogen and fat assimilation Surgery, **38**: 641, 1955
 - 41 JONES, C M The Shattuck Lecture—changing concepts and practices in the approach to diseases of the digestive tract New England J Med, **254**: 1197, 1956
 - 42 JONES, C M, AND CHAPMAN, W P Studies on the mechanism of pain of angina pectoris with particular relation to hiatus hernia The American Physicians, **57**: 139, 1942
 - 43 JORDAN, S M, RUFFIN, J M, HOLLANDER, F, MOORE, F D, AARON, A H, WALTERS, W, WINKLESTEIN, A, THOMAS, J E, BROOKS, F P, AND LORGE, I Report of the committee on surgical procedures of the national committee on peptic ulcer of the American Gastroenterological Association on study of vagotomy, study of gastric resection, and comparative study of vagotomy and gastric resection Gastroenterology, **22**: 303, 1952
 - 44 KAY, E B The inferior esophageal constrictor in relation to lower esophageal disease J Thoracic Surg, **25**: 1, 1953
 - 45 KOCHER, E T Bull Acad nat méd, No 4, 1881 (Cited by ELLIOTT, J W Operative relief of gangrene of the intestine due to occlusion of mesenteric vessels Ann Surg, **21**: 9, 1895)
 - 46 LEGERTON, C W, JR, TRUTTER, E C, JR, AND RUFFIN, J M The mechanism of relief of pain in peptic ulcer by Banthine South M J, **45**: 310, 1952
 - 47 LEPORE, M J, GOLDMAN, R, AND FLOOD, C A

- Oral Banthine, an effective depressor of gastrointestinal motility *Gastroenterology* 17: 551 1951
- 48 LEVINE H. H., MULDER, A. G. AND PROKOP F. The physiological mechanism for death in massively bleeding peptic ulcer *Surg Gynec & Obst* 94: 433, 1952
 - 49 LORBER H. H. AND SHAY H. Afferent loop studies after subtotal gastric resection *Am J M Sc* 222: 544 1951
 - 50 LYONS A. B. AND GARLOCK J. H. The complications of ileostomy *Surgery* 36: 784 1954
 - 51 MACHELLA T. E. The diagnosis and management of benign and malignant lesions of the stomach *Delaware M J.* 22: 91 1950
 - 52 MACKLER, S. A. Spontaneous rupture of the esophagus *Surg Gynec & Obst* 95: 345 1952
 - 53 MCKITTRICK, L. E. AND MOORE, F. D. Ulcer stave colitis. Neostomy problem or solution? *J.A.M.A.* 159: 201 1949
 - 54 MEENA A. L., COVEY J. H., NAUMANN H., AND HARDY J. D. Pepsin in gastric physiology. Effect of ulcer diathesis, ACTH histamine anesthesia-operation Banthine pilocarpine epinephrine and sedation upon blood and urine pepsin levels and upon gastric acidity *B Forum* 7: 306 1957
 - 55 MILLER, T. G., AND ARNOTT W. O. Intestinal intubation. A practical technique *Am J M Sc* 187: 595 1934
 - 56 MOORE, H. G. SCHLOSSER, R. J. STEVENSON J. K., HARKINS H. N., AND OLSON H. H. Clinical analysis of Billroth I and Billroth II subtotal gastric resections. *A M A Arch Surg.* 67: 4 1953
 - 57 NEAL, P. JR., HAWTHORNE, H. R., COHEN L. JR., AND DRABKIN D. L. The cause of death in strangulation obstruction. An experimental study I. Clinical course chemical bacteriologic and spectrophotometric studies. *Ann Surg* 150: 857 1949
 - 58 NORD, R. DEER, J. W. AND JOHNSON C. G. The circulation of the small intestine. An evaluation of its revascularizing potential *Ann Surg* 150: 608, 1949
 - 59 OLSEN A. M., HARRINGTON S. W., MOERSCH H. J. AND ANDERSEN H. A. The treatment of cardiospasm. Analysis of a twelve-year experience *J Thoracic Surg* 22: 164 1951
 - 60 OWSEN P. A. The pathogenesis and treatment of iron deficiency anemia after partial gastrectomy *Acta chir scandinav.* 104: 206 1952
 - 61 PALMER E. D. AND BRICK I. B. Sources of upper gastrointestinal hemorrhage in cirrhotic patients with esophageal varices *New England J Med* 248: 1057 1953
 - 62 PAULSON M. Peroral jejunoscopy and duodenoscopy. Endoscopy of the uppermost small intestine after total gastrectomy *Gastroenterology* 23: 593 1953
 - 63 PAULSON M. AND HARVEY J. C. Hematological alterations after total gastrectomy: evolution and sequences over a decade *J A M A.* 156: 1556 1954
 - 64 PAVLOV I. P. *The Work of the Digestive Glands* Ed 2 London Charles Griffin and Co 1910 (Translated by W. H. Thompson.)
 - 65 Peptic Esophagitis (Editorial) *J A. M. A.* 156: 893 1954
 - 66 PERMAN E. The so-called dumping syndrome after gastrectomy *Acta med. scandinav.* 128: 361 1947
 - 67 POTTS E. J. AND MCCLURE, J. N., JR. Intestinal obstruction. *Ann. Surg.* 151: 159 1950
 - 68 REAMON (Cited by JONES C. M. The Shattuck Lecture—Changing concepts and practices in the approach to diseases of the digestive tract. *New England J Med* 254: 1107 1956)
 - 69 RIPLEY H. R., OLSEN A. M., AND FINKELIN J. W. Esophagitis after esophagogastric anastomosis *Surgery* 52: 1 1952
 - 70 ROBERTS K. E. RANDALL, H. T., AND FARR, H. W. Acute alterations in blood volume plasma electrolytes and electrocardiogram produced by oral administration of hypertonic solution to gastrectomized patients *B Forum* 4: 301 1954
 - 71 RUFFIN J. M., AND CARTER, D. D. *Peptic Ulcer (DM series)* Chicago The Year Book Publishers Inc 1955
 - 72 RUFFIN J. M. JOHNSON D. H., CARTER, D. D., AND BATLIN G. J. Clinical picture of pyloric channel ulcer. Analysis of 100 consecutive cases. *J A M A* 159: 668 1955
 - 73 RUFFIN J. M., TEXTER, E. C. JR., CARTER, D. D., AND BATLIN G. J. Role of anticholinergic drugs in treatment of peptic ulcer *J A M A.* 153: 1159 1953
 - 74 SALTZSTEIN H. C., MAHLEY M. S. AND SCHWENBERG S. R. Bleeding peptic ulcer *A M A Arch Surg.* 67: 29 1953
 - 75 SCHMIDT, E. J., HARKINS H. N., OLSON H. H., MOORE, H. G. JR., AND MEHENDING K. A. Perforated peptic ulcer. A study of 136 cases in a county hospital. *Ann Surg* 158: 689 1953
 - 76 SEGAL, H. L. MILLER L. L., AND MORTON J. J. Determination of gastric acidity without intubation by use of cation exchange indicator compounds *Proc Soc Exper Biol. & Med.* 74: 218 1950
 - 77 SKINN V. An experimental contribution to intestinal surgery with special reference to

- the treatment of intestinal obstruction *Ann Surg*, 7: 1888
- 78 SHAY, H, OSTROVE, R, AND SIPLET, H · Study of tubeless method for determining gastric acidity and pH values *J A M A*, 156: 224, 1954
 - 79 SMITH, F H, BOLES, R S, JR, AND JORDAN, S M Problem of gastric ulcer reviewed Study of 1000 cases *J A M A*, 153: 1505, 1953
 - 80 STABINS, S J. The aftermath of perforated duodenal ulcer *Surgery*, 34: 614, 1953
 - 81 SWEAT, A W, AND HARDY, J D. Unpublished observations
 - 82 SWEET, R H Analysis of 130 cases of hiatus hernia treated surgically *J A M A*, 151: 376, 1953
 - 83 SWENSON, O, AND BILL, A H, JR Resection of rectum and rectosigmoid with preservation of sphincter for benign spastic lesions producing megacolon An experimental study *Surgery*, 24: 212, 1948
 - 84 VAN ZWALENBURG, C Strangulation resulting from strangulation of hollow viscera, its bearing upon appendicitis, strangulated hernia and gallbladder disease *Ann Surg*, 46: 780, 1907
 - 85 WAGENKNECHT, T W, NOBLE, J F, AND BARONOFFSKY, I D · Nature of bleeding in esophageal varices *Surgery*, 33: 869, 1953
 - 86 WALLENSTEIN, S, AND GOTHMAN, L An evaluation of the Billroth I operation for peptic ulcer *Surgery*, 33: 1, 1953
 - 87 WANGENSTEEN, O H *Intestinal Obstructions* Ed 3, Springfield, Charles C Thomas, 1955
 - 88 WEBBER, B M, BENDER, M A., AND MOORE, G E Dumping syndrome An evaluation of some current etiologic concepts *New England J Med.*, 256: 285, 1957
 - 89 WINKELSTEIN, A Peptic esophagitis A new clinical entity *J A M A*, 104: 906, 1935
 - 90 WINKELSTEIN, A, WOLF, B S, SOM, M L, AND MARSHAK, R H Peptic esophagitis with duodenal or gastric ulcer *J A M A*, 154: 885, 1954
 - 91 WOLFF, H G *Stress and Disease* Springfield, Charles C Thomas, 1953
 - 92 WOLLAEGER, E E Disturbances in gastrointestinal function following partial gastrectomy *Postgrad M J*, 8: 251, 1950
 - 93 WOODWARD, E R, BIGELOW, R R, AND DRAGSTEDT, L R Effect of resection of antrum of stomach on gastric secretion in Pavlov pouch dogs *Am J Physiol*, 162: 99, 1950
 - 94 WRIGHT, S *Applied Physiology* Ed 9, London, Oxford University Press, 1955
 - 95 ZOLLINGER, R M, AND ELLISON, E H Primary peptic ulcerations of the jejunum associated with islet cells of the pancreas *Ann Surg*, 142: 709, 1955

Chapter 15

The Circulatory System

Included in this chapter will be the following topics: the general circulation, body temperature regulation, the heart and great vessels of the thorax, and the peripheral vessels.

The General Circulation (Fig. 127)

Factors in Normal Blood Pressure Maintenance

Basically, the maintenance of a normal blood pressure rests upon the triad of effective heart action (the pump), an adequate circulating blood volume (something to pump), and peripheral resistance (something to pump against). That is, to maintain a pressure above simple hydrostatic levels in a closed system which is physiologically the situation in the vascular bed, an effective pumping mechanism must be combined with fluid to pump and resistance to pump against. A significant defect in any one of these three essential elements will result in arterial hypotension which, in most clinical circumstances, will represent shock. With this general thesis in mind, then let us now consider causes and effects of the failure of separate members of the triad.

THE HEART An adequate volume of cardiac output is essential for the maintenance of a normal blood pressure. Accordingly, when diminished venous return or heart disease results in a diminished cardiac output, the blood pressure falls and shock is said to exist.

Causes of inadequate cardiac function
The general surgeon is usually concerned with whether or not the heart can support

the patient through the anticipated surgery, rather than with heart disease as such. Yet, as will be seen later, the cardiac surgeon and the internist now have a mutual interest in almost every heart lesion, though surgical management in some forms of heart disease is far more successful than in others. Numerous types of heart disease will be considered later, but for the purpose here several general statements will suffice.

Valvular heart disease is detected on physical examination and if the individual is not and has not been in failure, the necessary surgery will usually be withstood satisfactorily. If there is serious doubt regarding compensation, usually digitalis and mercurial diuretics should be employed to prepare the patient for surgery.

Coronary insufficiency may be suggested by a history of anginal attacks, and it can often be diagnosed with an electrocardiogram (ECG). If significant myocardial ischemia is reflected in the tracing, great care should be exercised in recommending elective surgery, for the patients with coronary insufficiency are apt to tolerate surgery less readily than patients with only valvular disease, particularly those with mitral regurgitation. Aortic valvular disease of a severe grade represents an apparent exception but coronary insufficiency may constitute an important part of the total clinical picture in aortic valvular disease. Mitral stenosis of a severe grade is of course a contraindication to elective surgery until valvulotomy has been performed.

It is a good practice to perform an ECG prior to elective surgery on any patient

NORMAL PRESSURES THROUGHOUT THE CIRCULATION (mm Hg)

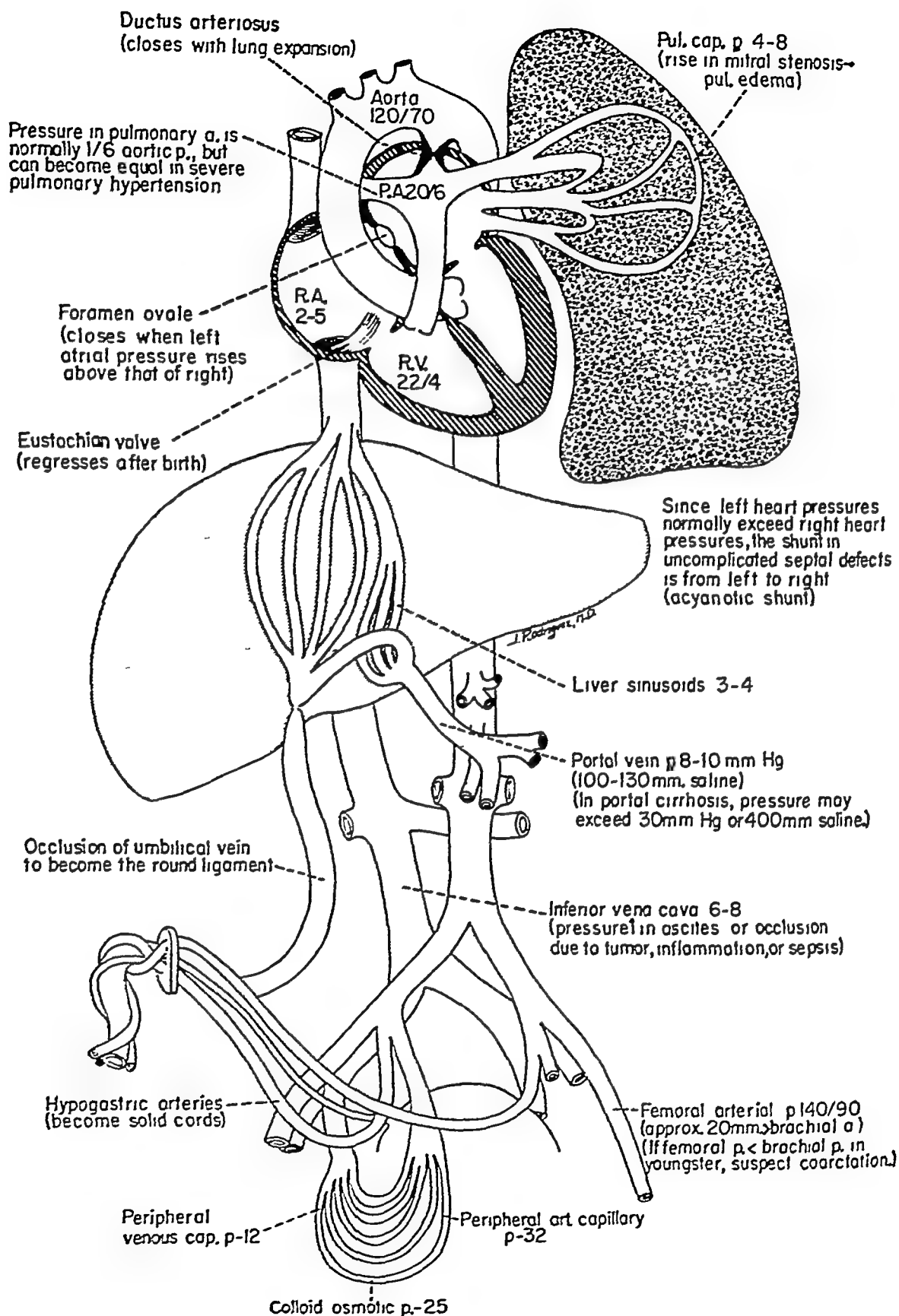


Fig 127 The purpose of this diagram is to make available in one place many of the different normal pressures that the clinician needs to know at one time or another. Opportunity is also taken to indicate what happens to some elements of the fetal circulation at birth. For instance, there is evidence that closure of the patent ductus arteriosus is effected by means of the altered hemodynamics produced by expansion of the lungs.

over 50 years of age. Should previous myocardial infarction be revealed, the entire plan of surgical management may need revision. Moreover, the tracing may be invaluable as a "control" later.

Blood volume changes have much to do with cardiac function in surgical practice. The effects of an inadequate blood volume have been considered in various sections of this volume and will be further analyzed below. Therefore, the deleterious effects of excessive blood volume need only be mentioned here. Excessive blood transfusion can so overload the heart as to precipitate clinical evidence of failure and this hazard is particularly great following pneumonectomy. In fact, excessive transfusion is only slightly less hazardous than inadequate transfusion, especially in children. The following case is illustrative.

Case study—A girl 6 years of age fell from a swing and struck her left flank against a wooden stake. Although the skin was not broken, gross hematuria suggested injury to the left kidney, and this was confirmed by demonstrating perinephric extravasation of the radiopaque medium on intravenous pyelogram. Since the hematocrit continued to fall, she was operated upon and the still bleeding fracture of the kidney was sutured. She had received 500 cc of blood the day prior to operation and 2000 cc during the procedure. Although blood loss was not measured, bleeding was at times brisk. Unfortunately, at the close of operation pulmonary edema was manifested by rales and frothy pink tracheal secretions. Tracheotomy, positive pressure ventilation, venous tourniquets and finally phlebotomy saved the day but death was barely averted. This child weighed perhaps 60 lb or 27 kg. and the normal blood volume was probably less than 90 cc per kg., or approximately 2500 cc. She was unquestionably given a marked excess of blood and almost died because of it.

Comment on heart failure due to heart disease—The presence of cardiac insufficiency is reflected in dyspnea and cyanosis

abnormal fluid collections in dependent portions of the body, increased central venous pressure, reduced exercise tolerance, and all the other familiar clinical manifestations. Yet, there has been much disagreement regarding the mechanisms by which the clinical signs of heart failure are produced. Since so many different lesions may produce cardiac insufficiency (e.g., aortic valvular disease, mitral stenosis, constrictive pericarditis, myocardial infarction, etc.) it should not be surprising that superficial differences are encountered in the various conditions. Nevertheless, it would seem reasonable to view the signs of heart failure as being derived primarily from failure of the heart itself, regardless of what the secondary effects are. Moreover, heart failure represents the end result of a circumstance in which the cardiac output is inadequate for the physiologic requirements, whatever these may be at the time. For example, in hyperthyroidism so called "high output" failure may be encountered, where the heart fails even though the cardiac output is far above a normal level, here too, however, the cardiac output is inadequate to meet the metabolic demands. A second instance of high output failure is that caused by anemia.

Secondary to the impaired cardiac output, due to disease of the heart itself, is deranged renal function. As a result perhaps of both diminished glomerular filtration and increased tubular reabsorption salt and water are retained as edema, pleural effusion, and ascites. Altered liver metabolism of adrenocortical and posterior pituitary hormones, as well as variations in the rates of secretion of these substances may also represent factors in the altered fluid metabolism.

Patients in cardiac failure can usually withstand essential surgery, but they should be brought to operation only after meticulous preparation by increasing cardiac reserve with full digitalization (where indicated) and with mobilization of abnormal fluid deposits with diuretics and other measures.

✓ **Measurement of cardiac output** The first

tion of the heart is to eject blood, and the cardiac output per minute reflects the work it performs. Cardiac output (CO) may be measured by a variety of methods, but only three will be described. These are the direct Fick, the blue dye, and the ballistocardiographic methods.

The direct Fick method —In 1870 Fick⁵³ proposed the principle that the rate of blood flow through an organ could be determined by measuring the arteriovenous difference of a metabolite and by measuring the amount of the metabolite consumed over a definite period of time. Gréhant and Quinquaud⁶⁵ later applied the Fick principle to the measurement of cardiac output in dogs. In 1928 Forssmann,⁵⁶ in a series of experiments on himself, was able to catheterize the right heart, and in later years Cournand and Richards^{39, 74} developed this technic to an extent which rendered the direct Fick method widely applicable in man. For the development of this technic Forssmann, Cournand, and Richards were awarded the Nobel prize in 1956.

In brief, a cardiac catheter (Fig 128) is passed through an antecubital vein, through the right heart, and into the pulmonary

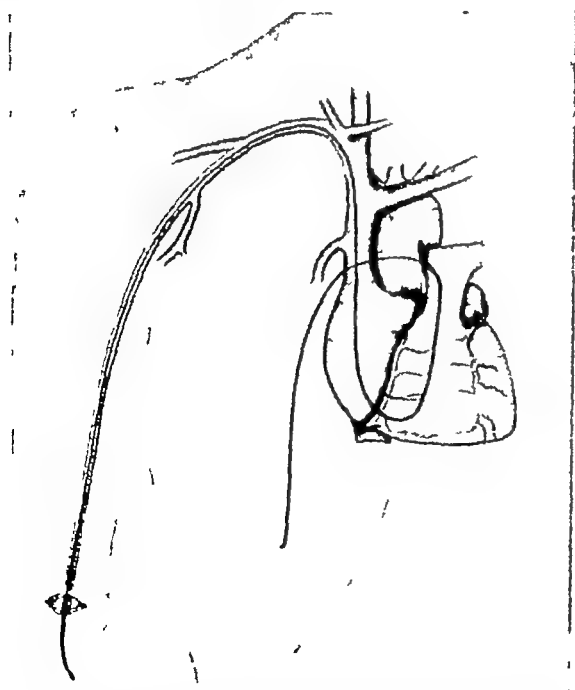


Fig 128 To data obtained by right heart catheterization can now be added those obtained by left heart puncture

artery. Mixed venous blood samples are drawn through the catheter for oxygen analyses, and a peripheral blood sample is taken from a femoral artery; the oxygen consumed per minute is determined by some means such as the use of the usual basal metabolic rate (BMR) machine. The cubic centimeters of oxygen consumed per minute, divided by the arteriovenous oxygen difference in volumes per cent, gives the number of 100 cc volumes ejected by the heart per minute; this figure, multiplied by 100, gives cardiac output in cubic centimeters per minute. For example, let it be assumed that the arterial oxygen content was 20 vol per cent and venous oxygen content was 14 vol per cent, and that oxygen consumption was 300 cc per minute. Then, $300 \text{ cc} / (20 - 14) = 300 / 6 = 50$ separate 100-cc vol of blood per minute. Then, $50 \times 100 \text{ cc} = 5000 \text{ cc}$ or 5 L, the cardiac output per minute.

The direct Fick method, while very frequently used, suffers from certain disadvantages. First, the measurement of cardiac output by this technic requires a venous cut-down in the antecubital fossa. This limits the number of separate catheterizations that can be accomplished in any one patient. Second, there are occasions when the catheterization is unsuccessful and other occasions when it is decidedly inconvenient, if not clinically inadvisable, to move a seriously ill patient to the fluoroscopic room for the catheterization procedure. Therefore, although the direct Fick is often accepted as possibly the most accurate method available, it does have limitations.

The blue dye method —In 1897 Stewart¹⁴⁰ perceived that cardiac output could be measured if a substance were infused at a constant rate into a vein so that a concentration plateau could be achieved in the peripheral blood. He realized that the measurements had to be made before significant recirculation had taken place. In 1928 Hamilton and his associates,⁷³ while studying circulation times by the single injection method, concluded that the mean concen-

tration of the injected substance in arterial blood was inversely related to cardiac output. Later Kinsman and co workers⁵² demonstrated that following a single injection of a substance it was possible to correct for the recirculation by plotting the concentrations of timed arterial samples on semilogarithmic paper, and this is essentially the method that is in use today. To apply the dye injection principle, one can use either the kymographic method of Hamilton and associates⁷⁴ or a more elaborate automatic recording device such as that described by Friedlich, Heimbecker, and Bing.⁵⁹ With the kymograph method a measured amount of Evans blue dye is rapidly injected through an antecubital vein, and blood samples are obtained from a femoral artery at timed intervals as the drum upon which the tubes are mounted revolves. Cardiac output is computed by constructing a curve from the concentrations of dye in the various tubes, plotted against filing times from the instant of dye injection. From the contour of the curve (Fig. 129) and the amount of dye injected, cardiac output is computed.

One advantage of the dye method is that the measurements may be performed on the sick patient without the necessity of moving the subject to the fluoroscopic room, and a second advantage is that multiple measurements of cardiac output can be made. A disadvantage is that it is not always possible to obtain suitable serial samples from the femoral artery.

The ballistocardiographic method—As early as 1905 Henderson⁸⁰ noted that the ballistic impulses of the human body were somehow related to cardiac output, for he had observed that breath holding reduced the magnitude of the impulses recorded by his machine. In 1939 Starr and associates¹¹⁵ developed the ballistocardiograph to a point of clinical usefulness and derived a formula relating the magnitude of the impulses to stroke volume. With this instrument the downward recoil of the body caused by the ejection of blood from the heart and the upward recoil caused by the

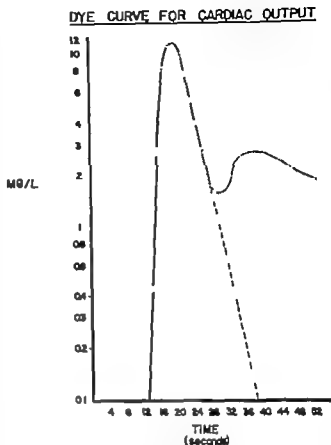


Fig. 129 The curve is constructed from multiple timed arterial blood samples following rapid intravenous injection of the blue dye. The secondary peak is caused by recirculation. (From WILSON F. C. JR., NEELY W. A., AND HARDY J. D. The blue dye method for the measurement of cardiac output. *Surgical Forum* 4: 88, 1954.)

blood's striking the aortic arch, are magnified and recorded on paper which resembles that of the ECG. The magnitude of the excursion is, with certain qualifications, proportional to the stroke volume. Since the pulse rate is also measured with a suitable timer, the stroke volume can be multiplied by the pulse rate and an approximation for the cardiac output per minute obtained.

Comment on methods for measuring cardiac output.—We undertook a clinical comparison of the dye, Fick, and ballistocardiographic methods in 22 normal subjects, and found reasonably good correlation between them under normal conditions.¹¹⁷ However, the ballistocardiographic method was frequently not applicable in critically ill subjects, since the ballistocardiographic complexes were so abnormal as to preclude accurate interpretation. The dye method was

most useful in a study of cardiac output in burn patients (Incidentally, cardiac output may be measured by the dilution of an injected isotope as well as by dye dilution). While the dye method has much to recommend it, the direct Fick method will probably continue to enjoy the prestige accorded a reference method until a more generally satisfactory method has been advanced. The Fick is particularly applicable in cardiac patients, since the catheterization permits pressure and oxygen analyses in various portions of the right heart, pulmonary arteries, and vena cavae, depending upon the requirements.

The ballistocardiograph may prove to have its greatest usefulness in the early detection of individuals with myocardial diseases and impaired functional reserve. Starr¹⁴⁴ found, in a series of normal persons followed for many years, that the ballistocardiograph gave evidence of myocardial hypofunction years before actual coronary occlusion or angina appeared. Furthermore, it has been shown that the normal person does not exhibit changes in the ballistocardiograph following smoking, whereas the person with borderline myocardial ischemia often shows marked changes following smoking. Cardiac metabolism has been studied under various circumstances by means of coronary sinus catheterization.²⁴

BLOOD VOLUME The maintenance of an adequate blood volume in the surgical patient is vitally important. Indeed, few advances have been more responsible for increased operative safety than has the improved understanding of blood replacement needs during surgery. Let us therefore examine some of the factors which influence and regulate the volume of blood under normal circumstances, to be followed by a consideration of the causes of an inadequate blood volume which result in shock.

The measurement of blood volume Among the first studies of blood volume were those employing exsanguination. Valentin¹⁵⁵ used animals, but Haller⁷² used two criminals in 1854. Present methods of blood volume measurement are commonly based upon the dilution of some substance introduced into the blood stream, usually a dye or an isotope. The substance should, of course, remain largely confined to the vascular space for a period sufficient to permit measurement. Most often the plasma volume (Fig 130) has been determined by the use of Evans blue dye (T-1824), and the total blood volume has been measured using the venous hematocrit. The plasma volume may also be measured with radioactive serum albumin (RISA), and the red cell mass may also be directly measured using red cells tagged with radioactive phosphorus, radioactive chromium, or radioactive neon.

Since the blue dye method is the one most widely employed clinically (and is as accurate as most), a few words concerning its use are appropriate. This dye, for practical purposes, remains within the vascular compartment long enough to permit the measurement of its volume of dilution. One may inject 2 cc of the dye intravenously and allow time for mixing. Blood samples are

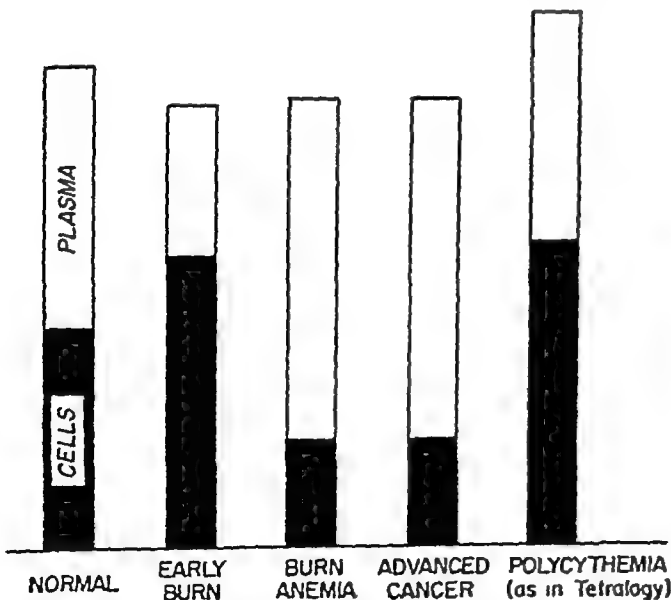


Fig 130 Some variations in hematocrit levels and in total blood volume. The proportion of red cell mass to plasma varies in different circumstances, as does total blood volume. Moreover, the mass of red cells in 100 cc of blood (the hematocrit) does not indicate the total blood volume—or even the total red cell mass, of course.

drawn at 10 minutes (and subsequently), heparinized and centrifuged. The concentration of the dye in the plasma is read in a suitable spectrophotometer or Klett-Sumner colorimeter. By knowing the concentration of the dye in the circulating plasma after equilibration—and knowing the concentration of the dye (milligrams) in the 3 cc. which were injected—one can compute the volume of plasma in which the dye was diluted (concentration injected \times volume injected = measured concentration in plasma \times volume of plasma the unknown). This is the familiar $C_1V_1 = C_2V_2$ relationship (Fig. 12). The venous blood hematocrit is then substituted in the following formula to obtain the total blood volume: blood volume = plasma volume / $1 - \text{hct}$.

Normal blood volume Blood volume has been correlated with body weight, body height, body surface area, and with a combination of certain of these. The correlation with height or with body surface area is better than the correlation with body weight. The correlation in normal subjects between plasma volume and total body water was examined by Hardy, Sen, and Drabkin.⁷⁸ Subjects were selected to cover a wide range of obesity, and it was found that the plasma volume ranged from 2.5 per cent of body weight in the fattest subjects to 5.6 per cent in the leanest subjects, with a mean of 4.2 per cent and an average deviation of 22 per cent. However, when the plasma volume was expressed as a percentage of the total body water in these subjects who differed so widely in degrees of obesity, it ranged from 7.8 per cent in the leanest to 6.2 per cent in the fattest, with a mean of 6.9 per cent and an average deviation of 7 per cent. Thus it is apparent that plasma (and blood) volume is correlated more closely with total body water (and with the lean body mass) than with body weight, particularly where wide variations in body fat content exist. Whereas in the very obese subject the blood volume may amount to no more than 60 cc.

of blood per kg of body weight (as fat contains little blood) in the very lean but healthy subject the blood volume may amount to more than 100 cc per kg of body weight. Disregarding the extremes of body weight, in the healthy subject of average nutrition (being neither skinny nor fat) the normal blood volume would range from 75 to 85 cc per kg of body weight; this figure can be utilized in the very lean and in the very obese individuals by employing standard optimal weight tables.

Physiologic variations in blood volume The blood volume varies somewhat with respect to age and sex. For example, while the blood volume and total hemoglobin do not change significantly after the 20's, the body weight of an average group of men and women increases with age, owing to an increase in body fat; this results in a reduced blood volume per kilogram of body weight.

Nevertheless, age variations in blood volume are not due entirely to variations in body fat content. According to Sjöstrand,¹⁴¹ in women the total hemoglobin diminishes in relation not only to kilograms of body weight but also to height.

Immobilization in bed results in a definite decrease in the total blood volume. The cause of this decrease is not known, but the normal volume is quickly regained when the individual resumes normal activity. (The calcium balance becomes negative due to increased excretion when a patient is placed at bed rest or is immobilized in a cast; this may explain the increased incidence of renal calculi in bedridden subjects.)

Intensive physical training produces an increase in both men and women, and the volume of increase appears to be dependent upon the degree of physical conditioning. In a group of especially well-trained athletes the increase in relation to body weight was 41 per cent; in another group who exercised regularly but not for competition the increase was only 26 per cent. Since the increase in blood volume and total hemoglobin in these athletes was also demonstrable when

considered in relation to height and calculated basal metabolism, as well as to weight, the increase would not appear to have been due primarily to an increase in muscle mass *per se*¹⁴¹

Pregnancy is associated with a physiologic increase in blood volume which appears to follow a fairly linear relationship up to the ninth month, after which it diminishes somewhat; it returns very rapidly to normal after delivery. However, the total hemoglobin content does not parallel the increase in blood volume, and the relative hemoglobin concentration consequently declines, resulting in the so-called physiologic anemia of pregnancy.

Seasonal variations in blood volume occur, though these are usually not great, the level being somewhat higher in the spring than in the fall. Bazett¹¹ called attention years ago to the cardiovascular adjustments which attend changes in temperature. He noted that hypertensive individuals appeared to be more likely to go into heart failure during the onset of hot weather in the spring or with the sudden appearance of cold weather

in the fall. He considered it likely that these changes in the clinical condition of these individuals reflected alterations in blood volume and other circulatory adjustments which were necessitated by the changes in environmental temperature. The person with incipient heart failure was less able to adjust with required dilatation or constriction of the superficial and deep veins than was the normal individual.

PERIPHERAL RESISTANCE Having discussed the heart and blood volume, it remains to consider the third member of the triad for blood pressure maintenance, peripheral resistance (Fig 131). Normally the peripheral vessels, particularly the arterioles but to a lesser extent the capillaries and venules, are maintained in various degrees of tonic constriction by the sympathetic nervous system and perhaps other factors. If this tonus or constriction of the vessels is excessive and prolonged, actual necrosis of the tissues supplied may occur (see Raynaud's phenomenon, p 421). On the other hand, if the tonus is inadequate, widespread dilatation of the small peripheral vessels may render the vascular bed too large for the amount of blood available to fill it, in this way shock may be precipitated even though the total blood volume is normal. Common clinical examples in which hypotension is due to inadequate peripheral resistance (rather than to diminished blood volume or heart disease) are spinal anesthesia, extensive sympathectomy, and autonomic blocking agents. Shock due to these causes is readily reversible through the use of vasopressor drugs.

The rôle of vascular reflexes in maintaining adequate peripheral resistance upon standing or in other circumstances is quickly apparent when reflex action is faulty. Postural hypotension may be idiopathic, or it may follow illness or extensive sympathectomy, on abruptly assuming the upright position the subject may faint from the fall in blood pressure and resulting cerebral ischemia. Ordinary fainting, as from emotional stress or fright, also occurs as a result

PATHOGENESIS OF IRREVERSIBLE SHOCK

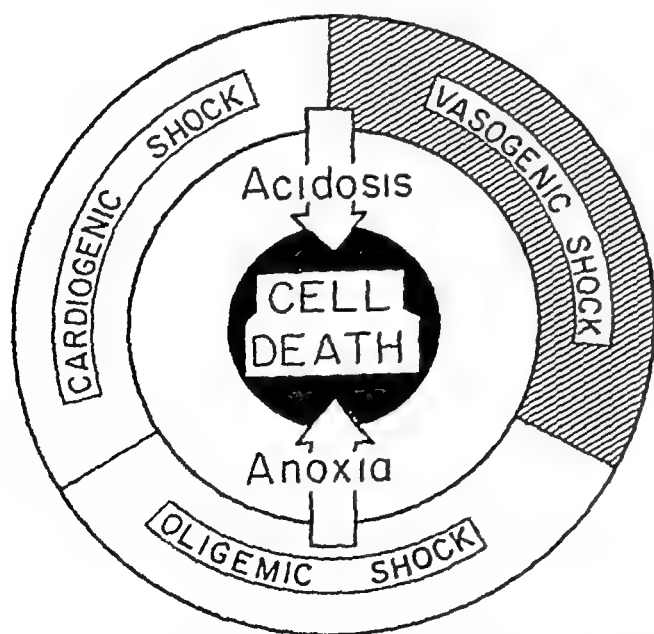


Fig. 131 Anoxia and acidosis are not long tolerated by cells

both of marked slowing of the heart by vagal impulses and of depression of the vasomotor center

The **carotid sinus syndrome** represents a well known clinical condition which is manifested by fainting when pressure is applied to an abnormally sensitive carotid sinus. Normally the two carotid sinuses have important functions in the regulation of blood pressure (Fig. 132). When their stretch receptors are stimulated by an increased blood pressure or by external means, afferent impulses travel to the vagal center to result in reflex slowing of the heart and to the vasomotor center to produce vasodilatation; the blood pressure declines. Conversely lowering of the blood pressure results in afferent reflexes from these sinuses to produce cardiac acceleration and vasoconstriction. A type of sustained hypertension can be produced in rabbits by denervation of the carotid and aortic sinuses. Very occasionally the carotid sinus is hypersensitive and external pressure—as from a stiff collar, particularly on turning the head—may activate the sinus impulses and produce reflex hypotension and fainting. Treatment consists of surgical denervation of the carotid bifurcation the adventitia being stripped for approximately 1 inch both below and above the bifurcation on the involved side or on both sides.

The **aortic and carotid bodies** are sensitive to changes in blood pH, O_2 , CO_2 , certain drugs and to a minor extent, changes in blood pressure. These organs are primarily important in the control of respiration but, like the corresponding sinuses they may have some rôle in both respiration and blood pressure regulation (Fig. 133)

Shock

CAUSES For practical clinical purposes, arterial hypotension is the most dependable objective criterion of surgical shock (though metabolic changes may not yet have occurred). Furthermore, it has already been seen that a great many etiologic factors may

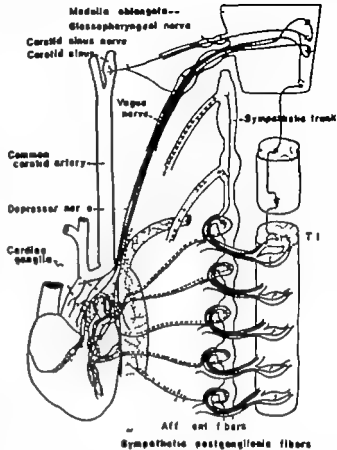


Fig. 133 The carotid sinuses and the region of the aortic arch have receptors that are important in regulating blood pressure and heart rate (From KURTZ, A., *Visceral Innervation and Its Relation to Personality* Springfield Ill., Charles C Thomas, 1951)

produce or contribute to arterial hypotension. Again, it is useful to classify the causes of shock according to which of the triad—heart, blood volume, or peripheral resistance—is or are involved (Fig. 131). Hemorrhage with reduced blood volume is by far the most common factor in surgical shock, and this is fortunate, for timely blood replacement is gratifyingly effective. External bleeding is readily detected, though the volume of loss may not be known, in contrast blood loss into a serous cavity, into the tissues around a fracture or into the bowel may not be promptly detected. Aside from actual blood loss, shock may be due to fluid losses from the extracellular space either into 'third spaces' within the body or externally. Bacterial endotoxins and anoxia constitute additional hypotensive influences. Various

etiologic factors in shock are given in Tables 14 and 15 (p 361)

Shock which develops during operation is most often due to inadequate effective blood volume. Even if no significant volume has been lost, the blood pressure may decline because of vasodilatation produced by the anesthetic, especially if the blood volume was subnormal preoperatively. Moreover, in addition to the blood loss (Fig 134) there are other very important sources of hypotension during operation. These are an excessive amount of the anesthetic agent, defective pulmonary ventilation, noxious reflexes, inadvertent compression of the inferior vena cava, mismatched blood transfusion, coronary occlusion, and pulmonary embolus, among others.

CLINICAL FINDINGS IN SHOCK The cardinal finding in shock is arterial hypotension, and this is usually accompanied by additional signs and symptoms. The individual exhibits pallor, cyanosis, sweating, coldness of the extremities, thirst, restlessness, apprehension and, usually, a rapid pulse. Such findings

should always prompt a blood pressure measurement.

The level of blood pressure required for effective renal function varies under different circumstances. The chronically starved individual may "normally" exhibit a blood pressure ranging from 80 to 90 mm Hg systolic, a value which ordinarily would represent mild shock. Also, a level of 100 mm Hg systolic in a previously hypertensive subject may be inadequate for effective renal filtration.

METABOLIC CHANGES IN SHOCK If arterial hypotension is allowed to persist long enough, it will become irreversible. By definition, *irreversible shock* is that condition which exists when by no amount of transfusion or other therapy can the blood pressure be restored to a normal level and the patient dies. As knowledge unfolds, it is increasingly apparent that many instances of what might appear to be irreversible shock will, in fact, respond to massive blood transfusion or, occasionally, the administration of vasopressor agents such as norepinephrine. Yet, if no treatment is effective, irreversible or fatal shock ensues. What are some of the metabolic changes that occur to render the shock irreversible?

The metabolic changes that occur during shock were examined by Engel,^{5,2} and it would appear that the various metabolic aberrations are ultimately the result of anoxia. The progressive anoxia due to circulatory failure must of necessity lead to cellular and enzymatic disorganization and death. Nevertheless, the earliest metabolic responses of shock-inducing stimuli noted by Engel were those common to the response to injury in general, and in these early findings anoxia *per se* played only a small specific rôle. As circulatory failure progressed, however, another set of metabolic phenomena began to appear.

An early change in *nitrogen metabolism* was the rise in the blood amino acid nitrogen concentration for, as anoxia and shock progressed, a steady and often sharp increase in plasma amino acid nitrogen occurred.

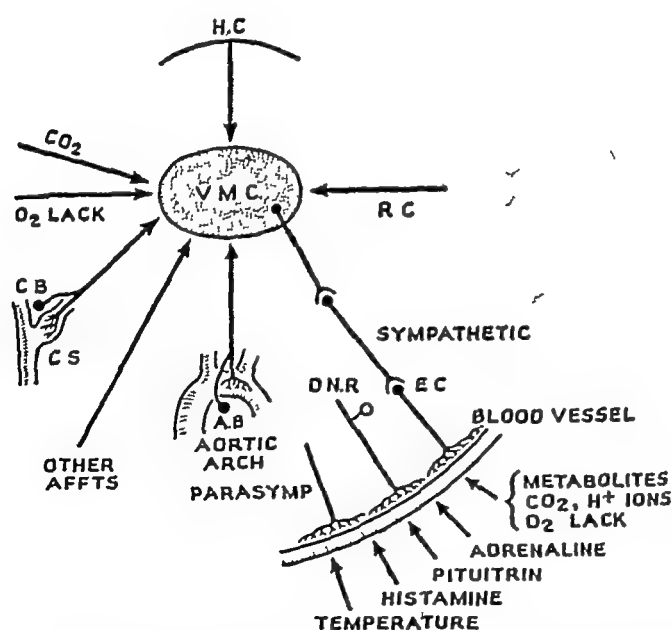


Fig 133 Factors which regulate arterial tone. H.C. = higher centers (cerebral cortex and hypothalamus). R.C. = irradiation from respiratory center. V.M.C. = vasomotor center. C.B. and C.S. = carotid body and carotid sinus. D.N.R. = dorsal nerve root fibers. (From WRIGHT, S. *Applied Physiology*, Ed 9. London, Oxford University Press, 1955.)

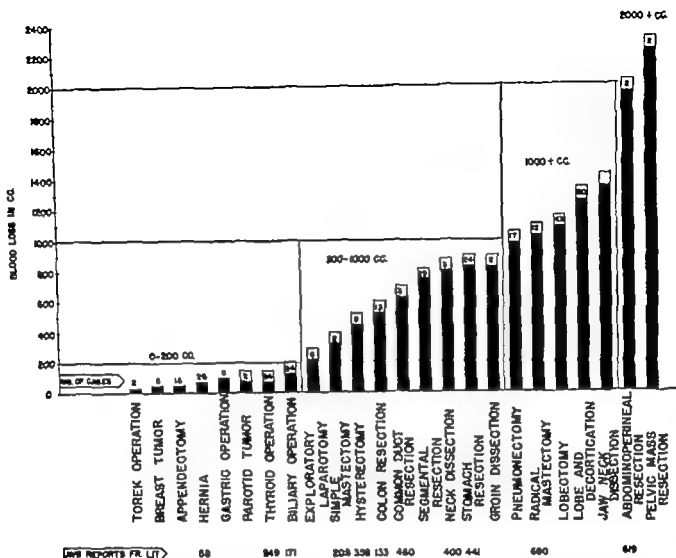


Fig 134 Blood losses at common operations. The loss at any given operation may be much greater than the average and losses at heart-aorta operations are not even included. The total volume of blood loss is dependent upon rate of loss and length of operation. (Redrawn from SALTSTEIN, H. C. AND LINTNER, L. M. J. A. M. A., 149: 722 1952 and from COLE, F. H. AND LOUGHEED, J. C. J. Thoracic Surgery 27: 402, 1954.)

Since the catabolism of amino acids occurs predominately in the liver the rise in amino acid nitrogen concentration in shock drew early attention to the possible rôle of the liver in hypotension. A high blood amino acid nitrogen level and a low portal vein oxygen content were associated with an increased mortality in hemorrhage shock. This was consistent with the earlier demonstration of the dependence of the liver on the portal vein for a part of its oxygen supply and of the failure of this supply during shock. Early in shock the liver is capable of meeting the increased demands for deamination and urea formation but later this activity declines and the blood amino acid nitrogen and ammonia levels rise.

The effects of shock on carbohydrate metabolism are essentially what one might predict from current knowledge of the anaerobic metabolism of these compounds. The blood sugar rises at first during shock and may remain elevated for a considerable period of time. As the glycogen content of the liver becomes depleted however and glucose utilization at the periphery increases without compensatory gluconeogenesis or glycogenolysis the blood sugar begins to fall. Late in shock there may be considerable hypoglycemia. Blood lactate levels rise late in shock, while muscle glycogen levels decline.

Information regarding fat metabolism in shock is meager.

Unfortunately, these few lines concerning metabolism have been entirely descriptive, not interpretive, for the ultimate chemical changes which transpire to produce irreversible shock remain obscure

RÔLE OF THE LIVER IN IRREVERSIBLE SHOCK. As noted, all evidence indicates that the liver has an important rôle in the genesis of irreversible shock. This is not surprising, in view of its central position in normal metabolism, and certain aberrations in nitrogen and carbohydrate metabolism have been given

Among the more thought provoking contributions to the literature on irreversible shock were those of Shorr, Zweifach, and Furchgott¹³⁷. These workers postulated and presented supporting evidence for two opposing humoral factors which affected blood pressure. One was the vaso-excitor material (VEM), derived principally from the kidneys and similar to or identical with the renin-angiotonin system. The opposing physiologic principle was vasodepressor material (VDM), produced by the liver, which opposed the hypertensive or pressor effects of VEM. They believed that VDM of hepatic origin fulfilled, in respect to its action on the terminal vascular bed, the requirements of an antagonist to the renal vaso-excitor principle. Shorr and his associates felt that the competition between these two principles for control of the terminal vascular bed was seen during the progression of the shock syndrome, particularly in the transition from the hyper- to the hyporeactive phase. During this transitional phase both principles were thought to be present in the blood stream, but their concentrations were such as to balance one another, thus permitting the vascular bed briefly to resume a normal type of reactivity. It was the hypothesis of these workers that a critical feature of the progressive deterioration of the peripheral circulation during the shock syndrome is a profound impairment in the functional integrity of the vascular bed, especially in the splanchnic area. In substance, then, it was proposed that VEM and VDM

(considered to be ferritin) are components of an homeostatic mechanism which, under certain conditions, participates in the regulation of peripheral blood flow. During the initial phase of the shock syndrome VEM is elaborated by the anoxic kidney and appears in the blood stream. In addition to this renal factor, the adrenal medulla and the sympathetic nervous system also contribute to the compensatory response of the peripheral vascular bed. The compensatory phase is thus a composite of the activity of renal, adrenal, and neurogenic homeostatic mechanisms, superimposed upon the intrinsic tone of the blood vessels themselves. In the latter stages of shock, the terminal vascular bed continues to manifest decompensatory vascular changes and the blood stream exhibits a progressively increased titer of VDM. It was considered that this was referable to damage to the hepatic inactivation mechanism which, under normal aerobic circumstances, rapidly transformed sulphydryl ferritin to its inactive bisulfide form. (The liver of shocked animals during the decompensatory phase of the syndrome showed a considerable impairment of the capacity to inactivate ferritin.) As VDM accumulates, the eventual collapse of the systemic circulation is said to be associated with an accumulation of blood within the liver and the splanchnic area. Finally, the progressive deterioration of the circulation, after a state of shock has been established, would appear to be related to the profound reduction of blood flow in the terminal vascular bed of different tissues.

These conclusions regarding VEM and VDM appeared to be further supported by collateral data published by Seligman and his associates¹⁴⁵. They showed that if the liver of the shocked animal could be independently perfused with oxygenated blood, then shock which was usually irreversible could be reversed and the animal saved. Later studies by Fine and his associates¹⁴⁴ emphasized the importance of bacteria in producing irreversible shock. Using antibiotics, they found evidence which indi-

cated that the removal of the local infection within the gut prevented the development of irreversibility following a standardized shock procedure

It should be pointed out that the VEM-VDM theory of irreversible shock has many aspects that are difficult to prove

Actually, despite the fact that the adrenal cortex and various other organs have been indicted at one time or another, the reason for the irreversibility of terminal shock remains unknown. There is renewed interest in the possibility that heart failure *per se*, rather than peripheral collapse, may be a primary factor in irreversible shock. The rôle of the heart in the genesis of irreversible shock was reviewed by Wiggers¹⁶⁰ in 1947. He himself had demonstrated that myocardial depression does occur in shock and is probably intensified during spontaneous circulatory failure but he concluded that myocardial depression was not the dominant factor responsible for the progressive reduction in cardiac output, the decline of arterial pressure and the deterioration of pulse pressure patterns. After simple hemorrhage a progressive reduction in venous return appeared to be the paramount factor. However the coexistence of myocardial depression was considered certainly to be an unfavorable circumstance for it reduced the capacity of the ventricles to expel their diminished blood volume as effectively as after simple bleeding. Consequently, myocardial depression plays an important rôle in the rapid downward trend of blood pressure and is possibly the ultimate cause of death.

This increased awareness of heart failure *per se* may reflect a healthy reorientation in the approach to the shock problem.

THERAPEUTIC CONSIDERATIONS IN SHOCK
THE PREVENTION OF TISSUE ANOXIA. The management of hypotension consists of antishocking and avoiding or of actively treating physiologic threats to circulatory stability. The patient should be brought to operation in the best possible general health. Since such conditions as liver disease, pulmonary disease, heart disease, severe malnutrition

or acute or chronic infection may contribute to circumstances which predispose to shock, these and other defects should be corrected preoperatively insofar as possible. In addition to these factors that afford a physiologic setting in which shock may readily develop, there are more direct and immediate requirements which must be met in the prophylaxis and therapy of shock in the patient who does not have significant disease of important supportive organs. Some of these requirements were listed above, but they will be amplified here in certain respects.

Preoperative shock. In most patients coming to operation the important causes of shock are deficiencies of water and salt and of blood. The correction of dehydration was outlined in Chapter 2. Chronic blood loss or chronic malnutrition may have produced a serious blood volume deficit particularly in the essential oxygen carrying red cells (Fig. 130) even though various forms of compensation have maintained a normal blood pressure. This deficit in red cells may be corrected satisfactorily preoperatively, from a practical point of view, by transfusing the patient over a period of several days until the hematocrit level has risen almost to a normal value. Of course the hematocrit level may not reflect the total blood volume deficit in acute hemorrhage for here the hematocrit level may be normal even though the total blood volume may be markedly reduced in chronic blood loss, however, the reduction in the red cell mass (which is often more marked than the reduction in plasma volume or in total blood volume) is usually reflected in a diminished hematocrit level. The hemoglobin determination is also of value in the management of these subjects.

The transfusion of say, 2 L. of blood in the chronically anemic patient (whose total blood volume may not be greatly reduced) does not necessarily result in a 2 L. increase in total blood volume; the red cell mass is augmented by the volume of red cells introduced but the plasma infused tends to leave the circulation. The result is then, that the

transfusion of 2 L of blood may augment the total blood volume by little more than 1 L. This is a fortunate circumstance, for thus the red cell mass can be increased without overloading the circulation.

When the patient is in shock from acute blood loss—whether external, into soft tissues, or into a serous cavity—he has usually lost more than 1 L. If the blood pressure is essentially normal in the supine position but falls precipitously when the individual is made to stand, the blood loss is probably more than 1 L but less than 2 L. If the blood pressure in an individual of average size remains at very low levels or is unobtainable in the supine position, a blood volume deficit of at least 2 L exists. Furthermore, while the blood pressure may rise to an essentially normal level with the replacement of only 1 L of the deficit, this represents marginal compensation and any blood loss at surgery will be poorly tolerated.

The use of blood volume measurements to estimate the volume of blood that may have been lost in an acute hemorrhage is not very helpful, there is rarely available a control measurement performed prior to the hemorrhage, and the normal blood volume varies considerably in different patients. In our experience, it is in the patient who may have lost blood into the peritoneal cavity following surgery—or whose blood loss was not closely followed and replaced at surgery—that a blood volume measurement may be most useful. If the low blood pressure has not responded to what would appear to represent more than adequate blood transfusion, a blood volume determination may be of considerable assistance in eliminating a serious blood volume deficit as the chief etiologic factor in the shock state.

By and large, however, the volume of blood that needs to be replaced in shock due to simple blood loss is that volume which raises the blood pressure. Moreover, a prompt rise in blood pressure following blood transfusion is a favorable prognostic sign. Hematocrit values do not decline for

hours following an acute hemorrhage; they are particularly of value only in the management of continuing hemorrhage, such as occurs in bleeding peptic ulcer.

Finally, shock in patients coming to operation for the management of trauma may be due to any of the injuries shown in Figure 1. Again, the fundamental defects in shock are tissue anoxia, and anway obstruction, head injury, or tension pneumothorax; each may cause shock in the absence of significant blood loss.

Shock during operation. Modern surgery is possible because of an increased awareness of the amounts of blood that may be lost at operation, and the replacement of this blood as it occurs. In Figure 134 are shown average losses at various types of operation, but obviously these values do not represent the maximum loss that may occur in any given case where excessive hemorrhage is encountered. Therefore, in long abdominal procedures where blood loss is not massive but is continuous, and in thoracic procedures where massive sudden loss may occur, it is highly desirable to maintain an estimate of the continuing blood loss. If sponges are used, they should be weighed before and after use; if to be used dry and then weighed after use with blood, the use of suction in lieu of sponges, where possible, permits continuous observation of the volume of blood collected in a graduated suction bottle. If blood is being lost and the anesthesia appears satisfactory, hypotension usually indicates the need for additional blood transfusion. Patients who sustain massive blood loss at operation may have their total blood volume replaced several times over (in one of our patients, 28 pints) without ill effect, so long as shock is avoided.

While blood volume deficits lead the list of important additional causes of shock, they are not the principal ones having to do with anesthesia. Spinal anesthesia diminishes the capacity of the patient to make compensatory reflex vascular adjustments to changes in blood volume; furthermore, the loss of vascular tone and consequent vasodilatation in the lower portion of the body at

splanchnic area may so enlarge the vascular bed that the normal blood volume is now inadequate to fill the available space and a fall in blood pressure occurs. Of course, defective spinal anesthesia may extend so high as to arrest respiration.

General anesthesia has its own hazards. Vasodilatation is not so likely to result in a precipitous fall in blood pressure, though there may be a more gradual decline. The special hazards of general anesthesia are inadequate pulmonary ventilation with the proper gas mixtures, and excessive amounts of the anesthetic agent. Anoxia may result from an inadequate volume of gas exchange, or from defective pulmonary function *per se*, or, occasionally from a low oxygen concentration in the gas mixture delivered to the patient. Hypercapnia (excessive CO_2) may be caused by insufficient ventilation to remove the carbon dioxide of metabolism, or by defective pulmonary function, or by inefficient removal of the CO_2 by the soda lime canister in the closed system. Different brands of soda lime preparations vary markedly in the efficiency with which they remove CO_2 from the gas flowing through, and the capacity of even the best material is rapidly depleted and must be replaced.

In addition to blood volume deficits and defective anesthesia, the leading causes of shock during surgery a great many other factors may result in hypotension in the occasional case. A number of these have been listed in Table 14. To recognize the cause of the hypotension is usually to institute the proper corrective measures. Cardiac arrest must always be anticipated.^{22 23}

Shock during the early postoperative period Here again postoperative shock is frequently due to inadequate blood replacement during operation, perhaps aggravated by minor but continuing blood loss from the wound or into a body cavity (Table 15). Too complications of anesthesia may extend into the postoperative period. However assuming that blood volume deficits have been corrected and that the anesthesia has been satisfactory there are other important con-

TABLE 14 CAUSES OF SHOCK DURING OPERATION

- 1 Blood loss or antecedent blood deficit
- 2 Defective anesthesia—cardiac arrest
 - a Too much of the anesthetic agent
 - b Inadequate ventilation with hypercapnia
 - c Inadequate oxygenation
- 3 Transfusion reaction or excessive transfusion
- 4 Heart failure from heart disease
- 5 Others pulmonary embolus coronary occlusion hemiplegia reflexes interference with venous return pheochromocytoma adreno cortical failure and other metabolic decompensation

TABLE 15 CAUSES OF SHOCK IN THE POSTOPERATIVE PERIOD

- 1 Postanesthetic shock (various factors)
- 2 Further hemorrhage or unreplaced deficit
- 3 Pulmonary atelectasis
- 4 Pulmonary embolus
- 5 Coronary occlusion
- 6 Infection
- 7 Adrenal failure
- 8 Liver failure
- 9 Morphine in elderly patients
- 10 Translocation of fluids

siderations which occasionally arise, though most of these may also occur in a patient who has not been operated upon. Among these are excessive opiate dosage in the elderly subject, cerebrovascular accidents massive atelectasis, pulmonary embolism, myocardial infarction, adrenocortical failure, septicemia, hepatic decompensation, and mesenteric occlusion with gangrenous bowel, to mention a few. Moreover, some patients develop refractory shock where no adequate explanation is forthcoming, even at autopsy ("metabolic decompensation").

Adrenocortical failure deserves special comment. This condition is rare in nonadrenalectomized patients. When it does occur it is likely to follow prior adrenocortical therapy for some condition such as arthritis resulting in atrophy of the patient's own adrenals or, failure may develop due to involvement of the adrenals with metastatic tumor or rarely, tuberculosis. Acute adrenocortical failure that occurs within 24 hours of operation does not permit time for change

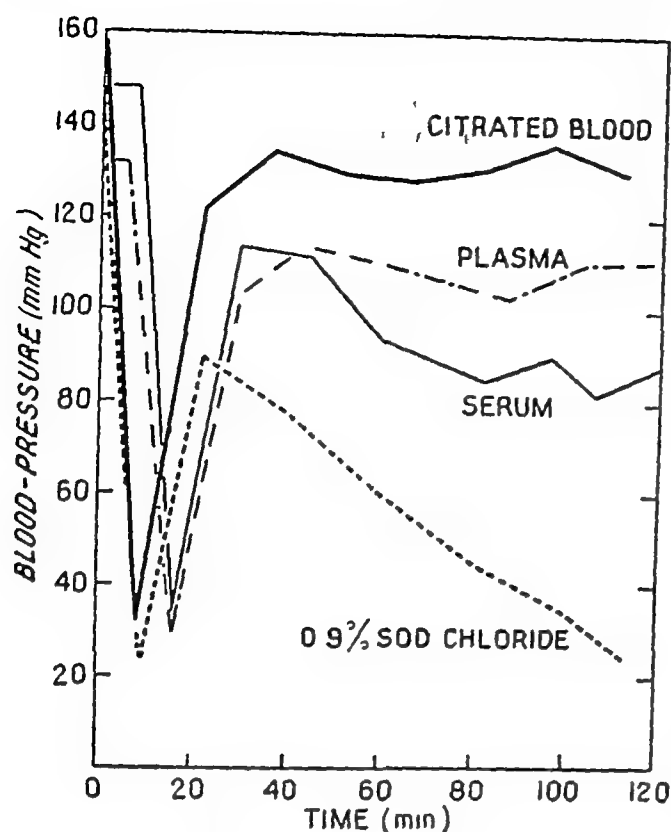


Fig 135 Blood is the best solution to use in replacing blood loss. Plasma and serum are helpful. Saline is momentarily beneficial, but the effect of the noncolloid (crystalloid) solution is soon dissipated (From BUTTLE, G. A. H., KEKWICK, A., AND SCHWEITZER, A. Blood substitutes in treatment of acute hemorrhage *Lancet*, 239: 509, 1940)

in blood chemistry values to occur. Characteristically, a fall in blood pressure is accompanied by a marked elevation in body temperature, a rapid pulse, and disorientation leading to coma. Thus, in acute post-operative adrenocortical failure it is the clinical picture, not laboratory tests, that must prompt and guide replacement therapy. Intravenous hydrocortisone is the treatment of choice, given at a rate of 100 mg per 6 hours.

As further causes of metabolic crisis, undiagnosed thyrotoxicosis and pheochromocytoma may be mentioned.

Rôle of plasma expanders in the management of shock. When blood is not available, even a saline infusion (crystalloid solution) is of some benefit (Fig 135). Far more efficacious, however, is the use of a colloid solution as represented by the various plasma expanders. The most commonly

used of these are bovine gelatin, polyvinylpyrrolidone (PVP), and dextran. Of these, we prefer dextran, which is largely excreted in the urine or metabolized. PVP is stored by the phagocytic cells of the body, and gelatin, while quite satisfactory in most respects, is likely to be too viscous for rapid infusion unless it is first warmed. We rarely use more than 2 or at most 3 L of one of the plasma expanders, but they serve admirably until blood can be made available. There is no substitute for whole blood or, more specifically, for the red blood cells which must transport the oxygen.

Rôle of norepinephrine in the management of shock. While our opinion regarding the ultimate place of norepinephrine and other pressor agents has not yet crystallized, there is no question but that some patients in shock are saved by these materials. We have in mind the individual who has lost no appreciable amount of blood, and in whom generous blood transfusion has had little or no effect. Perhaps hydrocortisone has also been tried. Here, occasionally, an intravenous drip of norepinephrine will maintain a blood pressure level compatible with life until some obscure type of "metabolic compensation" takes place over a matter of many hours, following which the drug can be slowly withdrawn (Fig 136). Therefore, when blood transfusion and other obviously necessary measures have failed to elevate the blood pressure in apparently irreversible shock, the use of norepinephrine may achieve survival of the patient. It is administered at a rate that will maintain the systolic blood pressure level above 90 mm Hg.

One hazard of the use of norepinephrine, especially when infused in high concentrations, is that necrosis and slough of the tissues surrounding the site of intravenous infusion may occur, even when no extravasation is detectable. Despite the increased probability of tissue necrosis when the higher concentrations of the drug are employed, this risk may be unavoidable when the drip must be maintained for prolonged

BLOOD PRESSURE RESPONSE TO NOREPINEPHRINE

C.E. - # 21030
42 year old colored male
Abdominal gunshot wound

N - Norepinephrine
D - Plasma expander
B - Blood (500 cc. units)

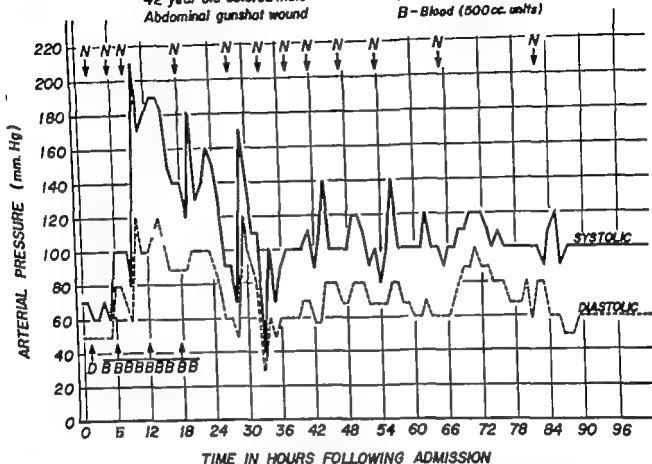


Fig 198 Only with norepinephrine in substantial dosage was it possible to maintain the blood pressure above shock levels until "metabolic compensation" had been achieved at 84 hours following admission. Laparotomy was performed during the first 8 hours. It is very likely that norepinephrine saved this patient's life. It has a definite place in the management of nonhemorrhagic shock.

periods, otherwise an excessive volume of fluid might be infused in a patient whose kidneys are not able to excrete the water load.

Controlled Hypotension during Anesthesia

During recent years controlled hypotension has been widely used in the management of hemorrhage in certain types of operation, especially in neurosurgery. The particular objective has been to reduce the rate of hemorrhage that can be so profuse as to threaten the life of the patient despite all therapy, as may occur in the resection of highly vascular tumors or in the management of an intracranial aneurysm. Induced

hypotension has also been used to reduce persistent hemorrhage due to a diffuse oozes over a relatively large surface. Most surgeons do not believe that hypotensive anesthesia is justified in essentially routine procedures where bleeding can be controlled by conventional means.

TECHNIQUES. Controlled hypotension has been produced in three ways (1) arteriotomy, (2) total spinal block, and (3) ganglionic blockade.

Arteriotomy or arterial bloodletting at operation was advocated by Gardner and Hale¹⁰. Essentially, from 500 to 3000 cc. of blood was removed from an artery, as required to induce the desired level of hypotension during neurosurgery. This was not

ing other than ordinary hemorrhagic shock, with all its inherent metabolic risks, and this means of inducing hypotension was not widely embraced

Total spinal block was employed by Griffiths and Gillies⁶⁸ in 1948. They reduced the blood pressure to 70 mm Hg or below by the use of spinal anesthesia to achieve paralysis of the entire efferent sympathetic outflow, with lesser degrees of sensory and motor blockade, so that the muscles of respiration and the medullary centers remained relatively unaffected. It was believed that the arteriolar dilatation so produced guaranteed normal oxygenation of the tissue cells, and that the decreased cardiac output inherent in the technic was compensated for by the decreased peripheral resistance and, therefore, by the decreased work of the heart.¹⁰⁷ Proper posturing and positioning of the patient were considered important also. Venous ooze was reduced when the operating field was above the level of the right heart and increased when it was below the right heart.

Ganglionic blockade was established as a reasonably safe and effective method of inducing hypotension when in 1948 the safely injectable methonium compounds became available. The most frequently used of these have been hexamethonium and pentamethonium, which can readily produce blood pressure levels of from 50 to 60 mm Hg. Subsequently Arfonad, a thiolium compound, has also enjoyed extensive use.

PHYSIOLOGIC EFFECTS OF INDUCED HYPOTENSION There is now the general impression that physiologic processes are far more normal when hypotension is induced by autonomic blockade, the blood volume remaining normal, than when the hypotension represents oligemic shock, as produced by arteriotomy.

Little¹⁰⁷ reviewed the subject of controlled hypotension, including physiologic effects, complications (fatal and nonfatal), indications, and contraindications. While definite proof of anticipated brain damage was not obtained by questionnaires and other

means, liver and kidney damage certainly did occur in some patients. Moreover, he found that the over-all "complication rate following the use of 'controlled hypotension' is amazingly high." In Great Britain and Ireland the rate was 1 in every 32 cases, and in the United States 1 in every 27 cases. The most common complication was *reactionary hemorrhage*—excessive oozing after operation. The second most common complication was that of a *delayed awakening time* after operation and anesthesia had been terminated. *Blurred vision* was third in incidence and *anuria* or *oliguria* was fourth. *Arterial thromboses* were fifth, having affected such essential vessels as those to the brain, heart, retina, and bowel. *Cardiac arrest* and *cardiovascular collapse* were encountered more often than under ordinary anesthesia.

The fatal complications included most of those given above. Renal failure, cerebral thrombosis or anoxia, reactionary hemorrhage, and other cardiovascular problems contributed the greatest number of deaths.

SUMMARY "Controlled hypotension" represents a highly specialized technic for lowering the blood pressure to avoid what might prove to be uncontrollable hemorrhage. By no criterion is the hypotension "physiologic," and it should be induced only when the hazard of exsanguination or of impossible operating conditions without it outweigh the hazards of the induced hypotension. An advantage of Arfonad is that its effect is very transient, administered by intravenous drip, moment-to-moment control is possible and when the drug is stopped the blood pressure rises to its previous level. With some of the other drugs, vasopressor agents may be required to restore the normal blood pressure.

Arterial Hypertension

While surgical management is called for in the correction of hypertension due to coarctation of the aorta, adrenocortical tumors or hyperplasia causing Cushing's syndrome, pheochromocytoma, thyrotoxicosis, or occasional unilateral renal damage, the use of

surgery in the control of essential hypertension is diminishing. Moreover the overwhelming majority of cases of hypertension fall into the "essential" category. Although the cause of essential hypertension is unknown, the consensus is that psychosomatic stress acts in some way upon renal and peripheral arterioles to increase peripheral resistance through the effect of the humoral substance renin that is apparently elaborated by the ischemic kidney. In other words, essential hypertension appears to result from alterations in the neural and humoral control of arteriolar tonus.

Surgical sympathectomy has been replaced by medical therapy employing drugs which lower the blood pressure by acting at various neural levels between the cerebral cortex and the end organs in the arteriolar wall. Commonly used examples of such drugs are Bistrium (hexamethonium) and Apresoline (hydralazine), and the alkaloids of veratrum and rauwolfia. Subtotal and total adrenalectomy have likewise been given an adequate trial as a means of controlling severe essential hypertension, and have not afforded success commensurate with the seriousness of the procedure. Furthermore the necessity for maintaining the lowest tolerated level of adrenocortical function to produce a normal blood pressure—or one that is at least lower than that present preoperatively—results in the constant risk of adrenocortical insufficiency.

Body Temperature Regulation: Normal Physiology, Fever, and Hypothermia

Hyperpyrexia and its causes have always been of concern to the surgeon, but the widespread use of hypothermia for extending the safe period of ischemia, particularly during open heart surgery, has greatly stimulated interest in the mechanisms which influence body temperature under normal and abnormal conditions.

Normal Physiology^{47 136}

AN ANALOGY The mechanism for the maintenance of a normal body temperature has

been compared to the central heating equipment used in many homes. There is a *thermostat*, a *conduction system* of pipes, and a *furnace* to produce heat. For cooling in the summer the same equipment may be used, with the exception that, instead of a furnace a cooling mechanism is turned on.

The body thermostat Ranson and his associates^{33 123 126} demonstrated that the hypothalamus contains a body heat-regulating center. Heat production was increased (usually by shivering), and heat loss was diminished when the animal was exposed to cold; in contrast, heat production was reduced and heat loss increased when the animal was exposed to heat.

Aside from the fact that there appears to be a fairly definite center for increasing heat production when needed and another for increasing heat loss by vasodilatation and sweating when this is required, with considerable overlapping between the two, one need not enter into the conflicting evidence concerning the precise location of these centers within the hypothalamus.

The furnace The heating unit of the body consists of the metabolic processes of the cells, particularly those of the muscles whose combustion of carbohydrate, fat, and protein liberates heat. When additional heat is required the tone of the muscles is increased and, presently, if the exposure to cold is prolonged, visible shivering occurs which increases muscle activity and sharply increases heat production.

The conduction system The conduit system of the body temperature regulating mechanism consists of the blood vessels, the blood volume and, to a lesser extent, body water other than that contained in plasma. Heat from the interior of the body is carried to the surface by the blood for elimination and, conversely, cooling of the blood flowing through the surface vessels lowers the central temperature of the body.

INTEGRATION OF THE THERMOREGULATORY CENTER, HEAT PRODUCTION, AND HEAT DISSIPATION In essence body temperature represents the net balance of body heat

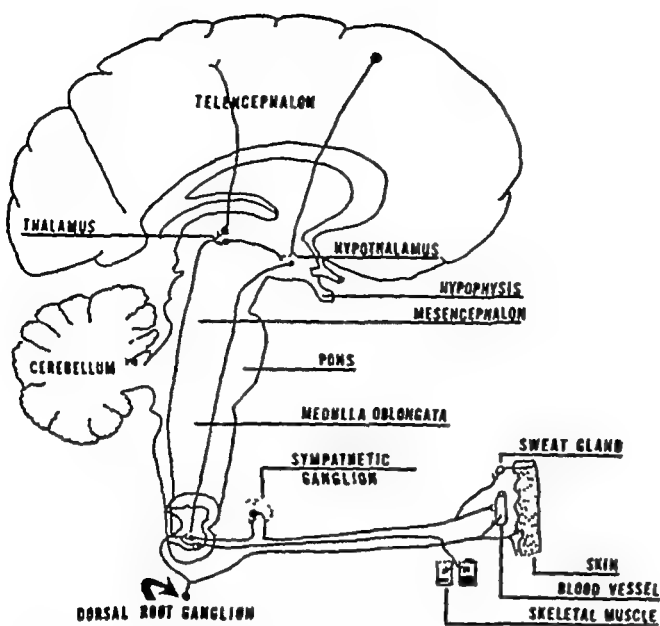


Fig 137 Sketches prepared by Dr Joseph C Hinsey showing the relationship of the nervous system to the control of temperature (From DuBois, E F *Fever and the Regulation of Body Temperature* Springfield, Ill, Charles C Thomas, 1948)

production or absorption, as against heat loss. An increased body heat production or absorption, without a proportionately increased heat loss, will result in a rise in body temperature (fever). Similarly, an increase in heat loss which is not balanced by an increase in heat production will result in a fall in body temperature (hypothermia). The neural mechanisms which control body heat regulation are shown in Figure 137. Represented are the hypothalamic connections, the musculature for the production of the largest portion of endogenous heat, and the skin, blood vessels, and sweat glands, which are responsible for the distribution of heat and for the elimination or absorption of heat. When environmental temperatures reach 95°F , heat dissipation is achieved largely by sweating, with the cooling effect of vaporization of this sweat.

Experimentally, when a dog with an intact heat regulating center is exposed to a lowered environmental temperature, shivering begins and continues throughout the duration of the exposure to the lowered environmental temperature. When an intact dog is exposed to an increased environmental temperature, panting continues

throughout most of the time that the dog is exposed to this increased environmental temperature. However, when the heat regulating centers are destroyed, the dog no longer responds to cold by shivering. Rectal temperature may fall from 38°C to perhaps 28°C , rising again when the dog is returned to room temperature. The converse may also be demonstrated, that when the intact dog is exposed to increased environmental temperature, only a moderate rise in body temperature occurs, whereas in the dog whose heat regulating centers have been destroyed there is no effort to compensate for the increased heat absorption from the surrounding air, and rectal temperature rises markedly.¹⁵¹

Body temperature gradients¹⁵² It has long been known that temperatures are different in different parts of the body. For example, the rectal temperature is usually approximately 1°F above oral temperature. However, if oral temperature be taken over a much longer period of time, such as 15 minutes, it more nearly approximates the rectal temperature.

Body temperature gradients were fully studied by Horvath and co-workers. The temperature of blood returning from the brain and the liver was found to be approximately the same as that obtained from the rectum, but blood in the right ventricle and, in particular, the superior vena cava and the subclavian vein exhibited a lower temperature. These examples serve to emphasize the fact that there exist significant variations between different parts of the body with respect to temperature. Therefore, probably, heat production. Therefore, the rectal temperature generally affords a fairly reliable guide as to the distribution of body temperature. Further work is needed to evaluate the complex system of thermal gradients found in a normal person and in febrile states. For example, in afebrile patients the average difference between rectal temperature and that of the right side of the heart is 0.25°C but in febrile patients differ-

as great as 0.8 C were noted, the differences being even greater in patients with higher fevers.

Basal heat production The basal heat production is considered to represent the heat produced by metabolism in the individual who is resting both mentally and physically, and who is in the post-absorptive state. The basal metabolic rate is usually measured, more or less satisfactorily, with the clinical BMR machine. Actually, of course, this represents an indirect measurement of heat production since it utilizes only the oxygen consumed. To measure heat production with accuracy, the individual can be placed in a Sage respiration calorimeter. DuBois, Ebaugh, and Hardy¹⁸ performed 76 experiments in the Sage respiration calorimeter on 13 normal young women at environmental temperatures ranging between 22 and 35 C. The measurements in hourly periods included heat production, respiratory quotient, rectal temperature, average surface temperature, total heat loss, conductance and the percentages of heat loss by radiation, convection, and vaporization. Careful note was made of muscle tensing, shivering, and sensations of cold, warmth and comfort. The average basal metabolism of the 13 women was 31.2 cal. per m.² per hour. It was noted that this was so much lower than the heat production of men (per unit of surface area) that women have an advantage over men in the warm zones and do not need to sweat as much. In the cold zone some women but not all, lose heat less rapidly than men and are thus also more comfortable in a cold room.

In the cold zone, the women studied lost about 67 per cent of their heat by radiation and this percentage dropped in linear fashion to zero when the calorimeter temperature was the same as skin temperature. Vaporization accounted for only 16 to 18 per cent of the total heat loss at the coldest temperatures and reached the conventional values of 24 to 26 per cent only at environments of from 27 to 28 C.

DuBois and his associates found that the

comfort or neutral zone for women—naked and in strict basal conditions—extended from about 26 to 30.9 C. In this zone the average skin temperature was 33.9 C, and in the upper part of the zone heat production closely approximated heat elimination. Of the 10 women studied at temperatures of 28 C and below 6 showed an increase in metabolism greater than the amount which could be ascribed to muscle tension or restlessness. This was considered evidence that some but not all women are subject to the "chemical regulation" of metabolism, though the amount of heat involved is small. In the cold zone these workers found that the peripheral tissues lost so much heat that the average temperature of the body dropped 2.8 C before the onset of shivering. The metabolism of the peripheral tissues would also fall with lower temperatures, therefore, since the total metabolism remained either constant or rose, it was concluded that there was an increase in the metabolism of the core of the body which compensated for the decrease at the periphery.

Basal heat production varies with age, sex, height, weight, race, disease and/or state of nutrition. Although basal heat production has been better correlated with body surface area than with other indices, there is increasing evidence that the lowered metabolic rate of fat as compared with lean tissue helps explain the surprisingly "low" metabolic rates of obese individuals, where surface area is used for a yardstick.

Ways of increasing basal heat production (Fig. 138) Basal heat production can be increased in a great variety of ways. Among these are food intake with the specific dynamic action of foodstuffs and in particular protein, exercise, anxiety, hormonal imbalance as in thyrotoxicosis and pheochromocytoma, an increase in the environmental temperature, trauma and pyrogens. Moreover, an increased body temperature may of itself further increase body heat production simply by the fact that heat increases the rate of most chemical reactions.

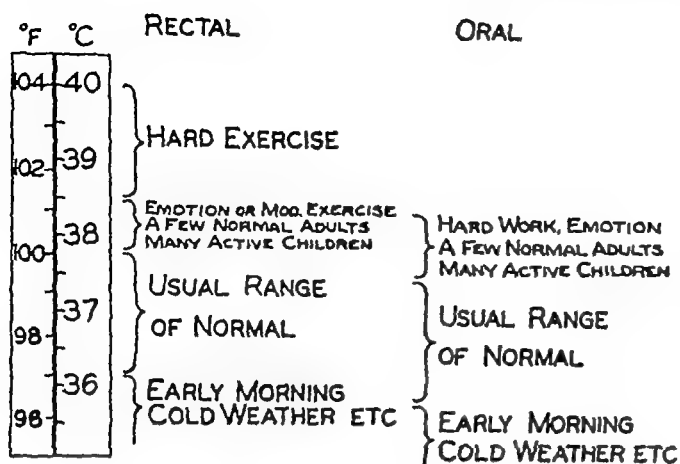


Fig 138 An estimate of the ranges of body temperature found in normal persons (From DuBois, E F *Fever and the Regulation of Body Temperature* Springfield, Ill, Charles C Thomas, 1948)

Mechanism of acclimatization It is of interest to consider the changes by which newcomers become better able to tolerate the heat of the tropics. Extensive experiments during World War II revealed that the total blood volume of the individual tends to increase in warm climates and that the number of actively functioning sweat glands is increased. A second type of ad-

justment is that the individual learns to wear proper clothing and to exercise with proper caution in the tropics. It has not been found that the diet of persons in the tropics needs to vary greatly from that consumed elsewhere, though the intake of protein with its high specific dynamic action should probably be somewhat reduced.

Fever

CLINICAL TEMPERATURE MEASUREMENTS
Errors in clinical temperature measurements are often due to defective thermometers and to defective use thereof. Dimond and Andrews⁴³ analyzed 465 clinical thermometers and found that a large percentage gave inaccurate readings at a standard temperature and that the error ranged from 0.5 to 3.3° F. A second common cause of abnormal temperatures lies in the fact that the patient's temperature is taken by mouth after the consumption of hot or cold beverages, or after mouth breathing has cooled the oral cavity. Rectal temperature

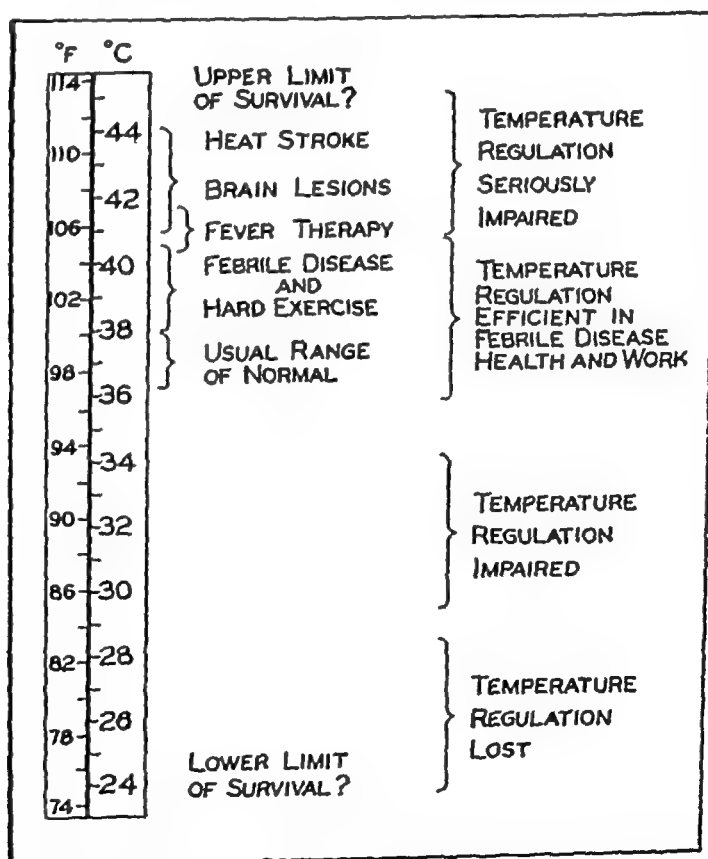


Fig 139 Extremes of human body temperature with an attempt to define the zones of temperature regulation (From DuBois, E F *Fever and the Regulation of Body Temperature* Springfield, Ill, Charles C Thomas, 1948)

measurements are more accurate than oral measurements. The occasional malingerer or practical joker may place the thermometer in hot liquid or upon the radiator and where such is suspected the nurse should remain at the patient's bedside for the entire time that the temperature is being taken. In shock, the oral temperature may be subnormal when the rectal value is high.

SOME CLINICAL FEVERILE STATES AND THE MECHANISM OF THEIR PRODUCTION In Figure 139 are shown the ranges of body temperatures found in normal persons and the extremes of human body temperature, with an attempt to define the zones of temperature regulation. There may be a considerable range in the normal temperature of apparently healthy adults and in particular, children. Thus, a body temperature of 99° F in the surgical patient may or may not represent a low grade wound infection, thrombophlebitis, atelectasis of a pulmonary segment, or urinary tract infection. Moreover, it has been pointed out that a small rise in body temperature is a part of the usual reaction to operation.

Given below is a classification of different causes of fever which one may encounter in surgical patients, with an indication of the possible mechanism of the fever in each case. Since the processes of heat production and heat loss are closely integrated the mechanisms are probably never as simple as the following listings might indicate.

A. Fever due to increased heat production

- 1 Psychogenic fever. This is due to emotional stress in children and, to a lesser extent, in adults (Fig. 140).
- 2 Bacterial endotoxins and other pyrogens. It has been shown that this fever is due, at least in part, to diminished heat loss as well as to increased heat production.
- 3 Thyrotoxicosis. The fever is due to an increased metabolic rate.
- 4 Pheochromocytoma. Epinephrine and norepinephrine have a calorogenic effect.
- 5 Certain tumors. Large goiters, hy-

pernephromas, adrenocortical carcinomas, and tumors of the colon, among others, often produce fever, probably because of the liberation of necrotic material into the blood stream. "Sterile abscesses" may be encountered in the center of the mass.

B. Fever due to increased heat absorption

- 1 Increased environmental temperature. This is particularly effective in a stressed individual who sweats less readily.

C. Fever due to diminished capacity for heat loss

- 1 Trauma and stress with a diminished capacity for sweating. This is in part the cause of the common mild increase in body temperature following operation and anesthesia.
- 2 Adrenocortical insufficiency. The fever here is probably due to diminished circulatory efficiency.
- 3 Dehydration fever. This cause of fever has been exaggerated, but when it does occur, especially in infants, it is probably due to diminished circulatory efficiency.
- 4 Heat stroke or heat exhaustion. This condition may be due not only to diminished circulatory efficiency but also to exhaustion of the sweat glands with resulting inability to dissipate heat normally by vaporization. However this condition is uncommon where increased heat absorption is not also present.
- 5 Terminal shock. The fever is probably due to collapse of vascular conduction mechanisms.
- 6 Cranial trauma. This probably affects the thermoregulatory center with its component reflex vascular mechanisms.
- 7 Liver failure. Here the body temperature increase is probably due to diminished circulatory efficiency.
- 8 Extensive sympathectomy. This reduces sweating, as do autonom-

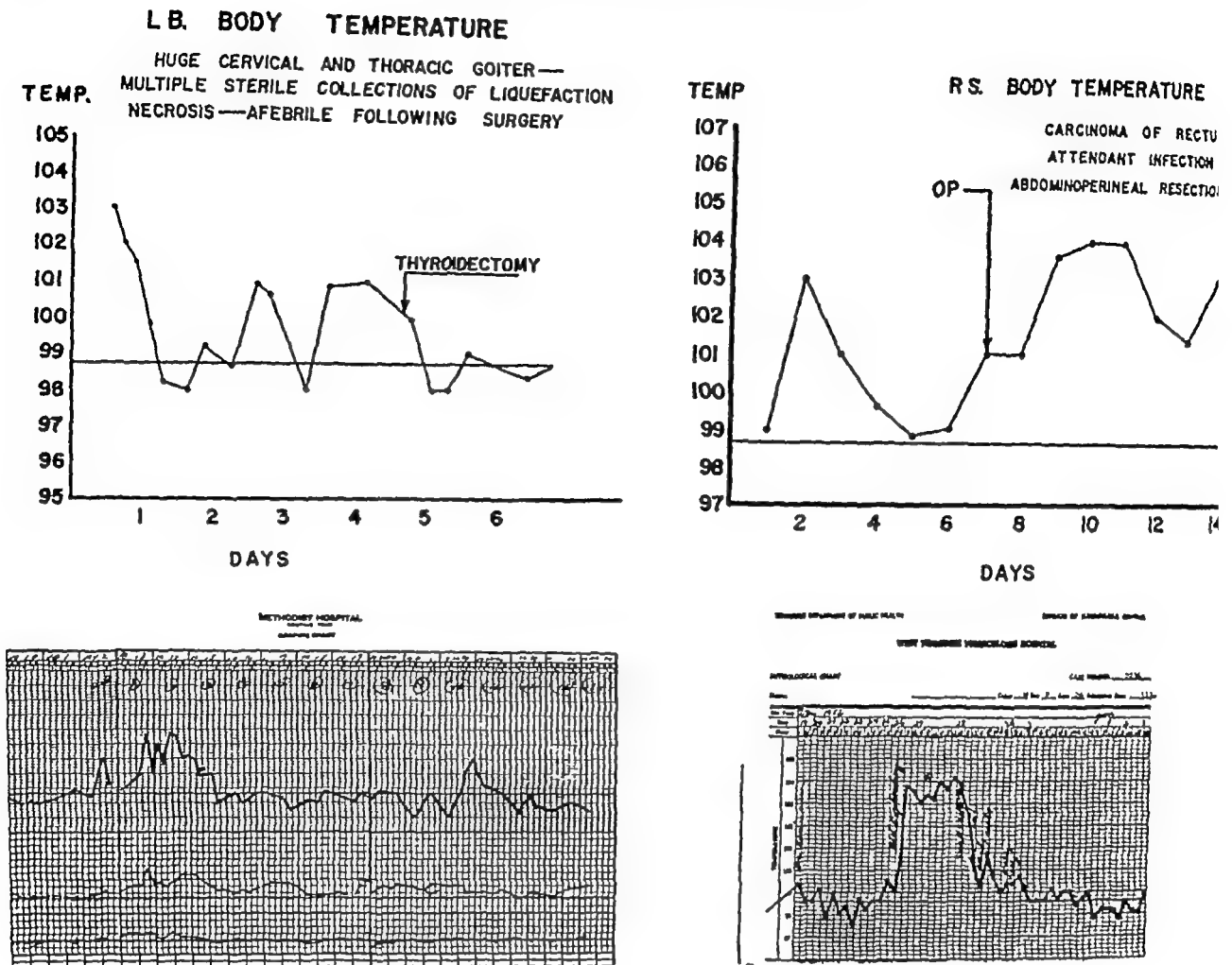


Fig 140 Upper left Fever due to absorption products of necrotic goiter Upper right. Fever due to infection and tumor necrosis The postoperative fever was not readily explained It persisted for several weeks Lower left Initial febrile episode was due to the stress of surgery for resection of coarctation of the aorta in this enormously obese young housewife The late spike was caused by anger when no one came to assist her back to bed Emotional crises may produce an elevated basal metabolic rate (BMR) that persists for several days Lower right Fever following resection of huge functioning right adrenocortical carcinoma The febrile reaction probably represented borderline adrenocortical crisis

blocking agents Exposure to excessive heat where sweating is the principal means of body heat dissipation may precipitate dangerous hyperpyrexia

9 Congenital absence of sweat glands Heat dissipation is defective

GENERAL DISCUSSION Although the above classification is brief and is offered only as a tentative guide, it is apparent that fever may result not only from an increased heat production due to increased body metabolism but also from a diminished heat loss This is particularly true in patients following trauma, for involved are psychic, neural, and chemical stimuli In a study of the alterations in sweat volume and electrolyte

content in postoperative patients, we found that it was more difficult to obtain sweat in a rubber glove after operation than before operation It appeared probable that at least a part of the postoperative increase in body temperature in patients who did not have obvious infection or tissue breakdown was due to a diminished capacity to sweat and thus to dissipate heat Similar results had previously been obtained in animals by Wells and Rall,¹⁵⁰ who studied the mechanism of the increased body temperature following pyrogen-induced fever Even after shivering and otherwise increased muscle tone had been abolished by curarization, the injection of the pyrogenic material still produced an increase in the body temperature

of the animals, indicating that the fever was due at least in part to a diminished rate of heat loss. Moreover, it was considered possible that the increased metabolism which resulted might be due in considerable measure to the retained heat which increased the rate of chemical reactions, rather than to the liberation of hormonal agents *per se*. Whereas epinephrine has a calorigenic action, the adrenocortical steroids tend to have an antipyretic action.

CASE STUDIES OF FEVER: STRESS OF SURGERY, PSYCHOGENIC, MALIGNANT TUMOR AND ADRENOCORTICAL INSUFFICIENCY. In Figure 140 are shown the temperature curves of 4 patients. The first subject (lower left), who weighed almost 300 lb. had undergone resection of a coarctation of the aorta. There are seen two temperature spikes. The first episode occurred immediately after operation and was doubtless due to the stress of the procedure. The second spike, on the ninth day, occurred when the patient had been lifted out of bed into a chair but could then not get nursing assistance to get back to bed. She became quite upset emotionally and the febrile episode was recorded during this time. Thus, the effect of operative stress is shown in addition to the development of psychogenic fever, the development of which was probably facilitated by the previous operative stress.

The second patient (Fig. 140 upper right) had a carcinoma of the rectum which had caused several minor episodes of fever prior to resection of the neoplasm. The use of a hot drink and hot water bottles to produce sweating for sweat analyses resulted in a sharp rise in body temperature. Moreover, he later exhibited a much more marked febrile response to the operation than does the usual patient, perhaps because the additional stress was imposed upon an already stressed individual. This case exemplified the fever that may be associated with a tumor, the effect of operative stress and the diminished capacity of the stressed subject to adjust to external heat so as to prevent a rise in body temperature.

The third patient (Fig. 140, lower right) exhibited the hyperpyrexia that may result from adrenocortical insufficiency. An enormous functioning right adrenocortical carcinoma was resected and within hours the temperature was markedly elevated, due no doubt to inadequate replacement therapy, though she survived.

The fourth patient (Fig. 140, upper left) had fever due to sterile collections of necrotic tissue in a huge goiter.

Of course, the commonest cause of significant fever in the surgical patient is bacterial infection whether in the wound or elsewhere. Hyperpyrexia may also occur during anesthesia in the summer when the room is not air-conditioned, especially when the drapes are excessive. Conversely, when the patient under general anesthesia is exposed to low environmental temperature in an air conditioned room—as in the grafting of burn wounds—hypothermia may result. We have encountered rectal temperatures of 94 and 95 F in patients whose extensive granulating leg wounds had been uncovered for prolonged periods in an air conditioned room.

HYPERTHERMIA AND SURVIVAL. It is of both theoretic and practical interest to consider the extremes of body temperature that the patient can survive. DuBois noted that in hospitals there are relatively few temperatures recorded which are above 106 F. However, he and others have on occasion recorded much higher temperatures with survival of the patient, a recent one being the report by Fracchia and Brunschwig²⁷ of a woman who survived a brief period during which the rectal temperature was 114 F.

Hyperthermia has long been used for certain therapeutic purposes. It may be induced by heating cabinets, diathermy, by the use of pyrogens such as killed typhoid bacilli or in other ways. Such treatment was formerly used in the treatment of neurosyphilis since the patient could withstand the marked increase in body temperature but the spirochetes could not.

~~4~~ Hypothermia

ACCIDENTAL HYPOTHERMIA At least one nonfatal instance of a rectal temperature of 64.4° F (18.1° C) has been reported.⁹⁷ The patient was found comatose in an alley during freezing weather. On admission to the hospital the apical pulse rate ranged from 12 to 20 per minute, and the respirations were not at first detectable, though eventually a rate of from 3 to 5 per minute was noted. The blood pressure was not obtainable in either arm at the time of admission. The patient survived, but all four extremities had to be amputated.

THERAPEUTIC HYPOTHERMIA⁴⁶ *The background* Although the clinical use of hypothermia has only recently been widely accepted, Smith and Fay¹⁴² first introduced the technic in 1939 as a treatment for neoplasms. Relief of pain promptly followed "refrigeration" of the area involved or induced states of "hypothermia" in which the patient was maintained at rectal temperature levels of 81 to 90° F for as long as 5 days. In 1949 McQuiston¹¹¹ pointed out the dangers of hyperthermia in "blue babies," and in 1950 Bigelow²³ reported his important early studies in dogs which indicated that hypothermia might have wide application in clinical surgery. For example, if by lowering the body temperature the oxygen requirements could be lowered significantly, exclusion of bloodless organs from the circulation for variable lengths of time would be possible. It was demonstrated that when a dog's body temperature was reduced from 38° C to 20° C metabolism and oxygen requirements were reduced to approximately 18 per cent of their normal values. Dogs under hypothermia survived occlusion of both venae cavae for 15 minutes, without brain damage. Cooling produced a gradual fall in blood pressure, heart rate, and cardiac output to very low levels, with a reversal of these changes on rewarming. Ventricular fibrillation was the most common serious complication and usually caused death at between 16 and 22° C.

Parallel with these studies in Canada, important work was going forward in France, Great Britain, and the United States. Laborit and Huguenard⁹⁸ employed their "lytic cocktail" (promethazine, chlorpromazine, and meperidine) intravenously to block the autonomic nervous system prior to surgery. This "artificial hibernation" was induced to diminish the body's reaction to the trauma of surgery, permitting survival in poor risk patients. It was felt that the incidence of shock was diminished. Churchill-Davidson and his associates³⁷ concluded from their investigations that surface cooling was the simplest means available, general anesthesia being employed to reduce the reaction of the body temperature regulating mechanisms to the cooling process. Swan^{148, 149} and Lewis^{100, 101} and their associates also conducted careful studies of the physiologic effects and clinical applications of hypothermia.

The three technics most frequently employed for producing hypothermia have been various forms of surface cooling; extracorporeal circulation of the blood through cooling coils, and "artificial hibernation" by means of central autonomic blocking agents as advocated by Laborit. Surface cooling is the method used clinically in most instances.

Clinical comment Prior to cooling it is important, as stated, to achieve a level of anesthesia that will inactivate the temperature regulating center, to prevent the development of compensatory mechanisms such as increased muscle tonus and shivering which would increase oxygen requirements. The principal risk of the induction of hypothermia is the incidence of *ventricular fibrillation*, especially after the heart has been exposed. Hyperventilation to produce respiratory alkalosis and the injection of the sinoauricular node or of the auriculo-ventricular node with procaine have been used to reduce the incidence of ventricular fibrillation, with considerable success. *Post-operative bleeding* is another serious complication, due to a reduction in platelets and probably to an interference with the enzy-

probably to an interference with the enzymic reactions required in the clotting process (Table 16)

Hypothermia has now been used in the management of a wide variety of clinical problems, but the most striking benefits have been in connection with surgery of the heart and aorta. Unquestionably, the further development of extracorporeal circulatory apparatus will diminish the use of hypothermia in cardiac surgery, since even with hypothermia the surgeon has a limited time in which to explore the opened heart and to repair defects, the pump-oxygenator will permit more leisurely and, hence, more meticulous corrective surgery for intracardiac lesions.

The Heart and Great Vessels of the Thorax

One could write a full length monograph on almost any of the multiple facets of the physiology of the heart and great vessels. In this review of the more immediately applicable material the objective has been to steer a middle course between information so new as to await a reasonable degree of confirmation, on the one hand, and that which has long been a part of established physiologic knowledge on the other. Furthermore repetition of the commonplace data available in any standard textbook of physiology has been kept to a minimum compatible with clarity. As in other sections, the purpose has been to present principles that are useful in clinical practice.

Nervous and Chemical Influences upon the Heart

INTRINSIC INNERVATION AND CONDUCTION
The chief nervous elements which regulate the heart beat and, in particular, synchronize the action of the atria and ventricles are shown in Figure 141. The heart (like the bowel) has important intrinsic nervous structures which are 'concerned with the initiation and propagation of the heart beat'. The more important of these are the *sinoauricular (S-A) node*, the *atrioventricular (A-V) node* and the *bundle of His*.

TABLE 16 **SOME PHYSIOLOGIC EFFECTS OF HYPOTHERMIA**

- 1 General metabolism and oxygen consumption —By hypothermia the oxygen requirements of a given tissue or of the entire body can be greatly reduced. blood and tissue pH decline during hypothermia but this can be largely offset by hyperventilation of the patient.
- 2 Respiratory system —Hypothermia leads to an increased anatomic dead space through bronchodilatation. Spontaneous respiratory efforts are reduced in hypothermia but it is often difficult to determine the extent to which this is due to anesthesia. Some manual or mechanical assistance is usually desirable during hypothermia.
- 3 Endocrine system —Hormonal factors are of obvious importance in building up the fat which permits prolonged hibernation in animals. The hypothalamus and its neuroendocrine connections appear to have a major rôle in controlling the onset and waking phases of hibernation. In animals and in man hypothermia temporarily diminishes the release of adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) by the pituitary, the secretion of corticoids by the adrenal cortex, and epinephrine and norepinephrine by the adrenal medulla.
- 4 Cardiovascular system —The blood pressure and pulse rate consistently decline in a fashion that roughly parallels the decline in the rectal temperature curve. Systolic blood pressure levels of 80 mm. Hg and pulse rates of 40 beats per minute are common at rectal temperatures of 28° C. Myocardial irritability increases as the body temperature falls. At rectal temperatures below 28° C ventricular fibrillation is a serious hazard. If it occurs, a normal rhythm may be difficult or impossible to achieve without rewarming the heart. It is generally agreed that by maintaining the rectal temperature between 23 and 30° C the maximum benefit is derived from reduced oxygen requirements while avoiding undue risk of intractable ventricular fibrillation during cardiac surgery. The circulatory changes observed during the induction of hypothermia are reversed in the course of rewarming.
- 5 Blood coagulation —Serious coagulation defects are not infrequently encountered following hypothermia. This may be due in part to the reduction in the number of platelets that occurs but doubtless other coagulation elements are defective also.

CARDIAC CONDUCTION MECHANISM

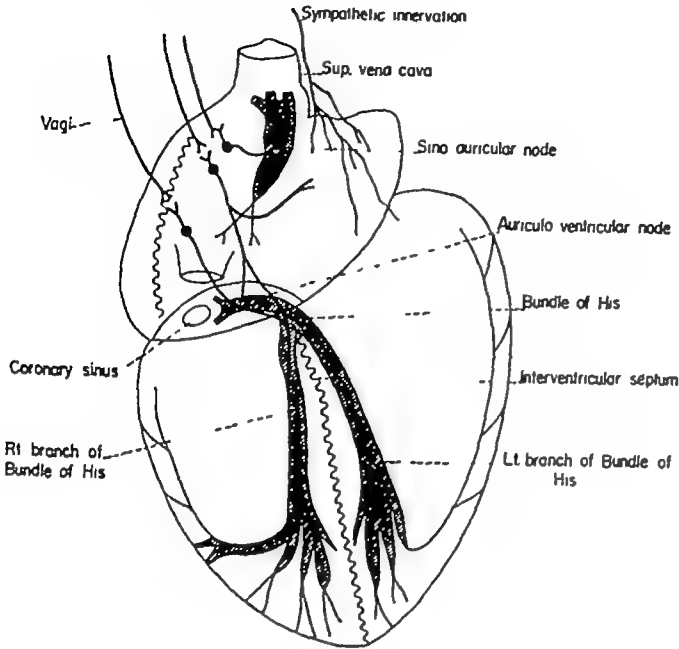


Fig 141 The cardiac conduction mechanism is readily injured in the closure of interatrial septal defects, especially the ostium primum types. It is questionable whether the vagi extend to the ventricles.

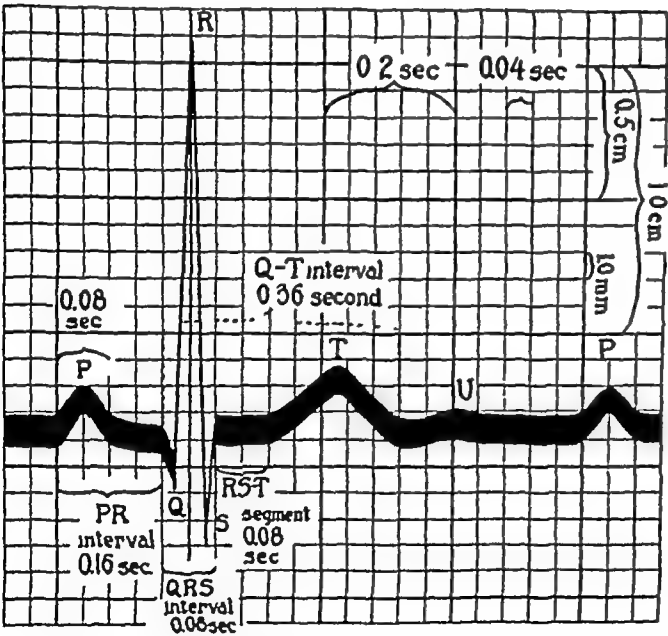


Fig 142 The normal electrocardiogram (From ASHMAN, R, AND HULL, E. *Essentials of Electrocardiography*, Ed 2 New York, The Macmillan Company, 1941)

with its two major branches which descend on either side of the interventricular septum. The normal ECG is shown in Figure 142.

The S-A node, located at the point where the superior vena cava joins the free border

of the right auricular appendage, initiates the heart beat and thus is called the *cardiac pacemaker*. It can be influenced by both the vagal and sympathetic impulses, of which the former are clinically much more important. The practical clinical fact of current importance is that the likelihood of ventricular fibrillation can be reduced by blocking the S-A node with procaine,¹²⁸ a finding of particular value in hypothermia and open heart surgery.

The A-V node is situated at the posterior and right border of the interatrial septum near the mouth of the coronary sinus. The position of this structure places it in jeopardy when an interatrial septal defect is being closed surgically by suture. If the A-V node is injured, a serious and perhaps total arrhythmia may result. Webb¹ showed that if the A-V node were injected with procaine or divided, production of ventricular fibrillation was almost impossible.

The bundle of His runs upward to the posterior margin of the membranous portion of the interventricular septum and then divides into the right and left branch bundle (Fig 141). Damage to the several components of this conduction mechanism is reflected in characteristic alterations in the electrocardiogram.

Cardiac arrhythmias which are of special and immediate importance to the surgeon are atrial fibrillation and ventricular fibrillation. The former may be secondary to mitral stenosis, thyrotoxicosis, or hypertensive-arteriosclerotic heart disease, or, no antecedent disease may be apparent. Atrial fibrillation *per se* reduces the efficiency of the heart, but much worse than this are the embolic complications of the arrhythmia, among these are cerebral, mesenteric, and other arterial occlusions.

Ventricular fibrillation is of course incompatible with life, for the ineffective and incessant uncoordinated movements of the ventricular muscle bundles produce no significant cardiac output. This arrhythmia may occur following myocardial infarction or experimental ligation of a coronary artery.

during hypothermia, or when low blood oxygen or high blood CO_2 levels are permitted to occur during anesthesia. The management of this complication is considered in Chapter 17

EXTRINSIC NERVOUS AND CHEMICAL INFLUENCES *The vagus nerve* It has previously been stated that the vagal influence upon the heart is more important than the sympathetic influence. The vagal impulses exert a continuous modifying influence upon the heart rate, keeping the pace slower than if the intrinsic pacemaker—the S-A node—were unrestrained. This may be demonstrated by the administration of atropine

Acceleration of the heart rate in clinical circumstances is commonly due to an inhibition of vagal tone. For example, when the blood pressure falls the impulses arising in the carotid sinus (Fig 132) immediately travel to the vagal center in the medulla to suppress the vagal impulses and allow the cardiac rate to increase. Clinically, a large variety of stimuli may by way of the cerebral cortex and the vagal center, result in an acceleration of the heart rate. The heart rate may be increased directly, aside from vagal inhibition by the administration of epinephrine or stimulation of the sympathetic nervous system.

The *Bainbridge reflex* is also considered important in regulating the rate of the heart beat. In brief, this reflex is activated when the venous inflow through the great veins to the heart is excessive and distention of the right atrium results. Nerve impulses are transmitted to the vagal center by way of an afferent limb of the vagus itself. Efferent vagal impulses are diminished and a more rapid heart rate is produced.

The sympathetic nerve fibers These fibers are less important in controlling the heart rate than is the vagus. It is difficult clinically to separate the increased heart rate resulting from sympathetic nerve fiber stimulation from that caused by the simultaneous stimulation of the adrenal medulla which increases the production of epinephrine. As with the vagus the center of sympathetic efferent nerve fibers is in the me-

dulla oblongata. Of course, the sympathetic nerve fibers which accelerate the heart rate may be stimulated by a great variety of stimuli, among them being sight, sound, and other modalities.

Pain sensation from the heart is mediated largely, if not entirely, by the sympathetics, and the warning pain of angina is usually abolished by sympathectomy

There is believed to be a *cardiac center* in the floor of the fourth ventricle in the region of the vagal nucleus¹⁶¹

SOME CHEMICAL FACTORS INFLUENCING HEART RATE AND FORCE. Various chemical agents profoundly influence cardiac action. Although most of these have long been known it is only recently that they have come into clinical prominence due to the increased amount of cardiac surgery now being performed. The more important of these will be considered

Oxygen and states of oxygen lack Oxygen is essential to life and nowhere else is this fact better illustrated than in connection with cardiac function. Hypoxia has a profound depressant effect on cardiac contractions and eventually, cardiac rate. In the presence of oxygen lack, effective heart action is shortly replaced by cardiac arrest, either in standstill or ventricular fibrillation. *Defective oxygenation of the myocardium, often combined with hypercapnia, is the paramount cause of cardiac arrest during operation especially in the absence of serious heart disease.* This complication almost always reflects inadequate pulmonary ventilation—in the absence of shock due to blood loss or other physiologic deficiency

Carbon dioxide Young and his associates¹⁶² published work to support their belief that hypercapnia (excessive concentration of CO_2) is probably a factor of considerable importance in initiating cardiac arrest during open chest operations. The increased CO_2 concentration was thought to increase the sensitivity of the heart to vagal stimulation with resulting cardiac arrest. Rather than representing a specific effect of the CO_2 molecule, the influence may be due to a reduction in the

blood pH. In any event, one has merely to observe the decreasing rate and force of the heart beat in patients who are being poorly ventilated during open chest operations to develop a positive opinion regarding the rôle of hypoxia and hypercapnia in producing cardiac arrest.

Potassium The potassium ion has an inhibitory effect upon the heart, and in sufficient concentration it will eventually cause cardiac arrest in diastole. In general it is considered dangerous to allow the plasma potassium level to rise above 7 mEq per L, though the precise level at which serious cardiac depression will occur is influenced by the concentrations of other ions in the body fluids, particularly sodium, calcium, and probably magnesium. Hyperpotassemia (hyperkalemia) produces characteristic changes in the ECG, and hypopotassemia produces other characteristic changes in the ECG. However, the changes that have been produced by an elevated plasma potassium level may be alleviated if not abolished by the administration of sodium ion. Thus, there exists a reciprocal relationship between the sodium ion and the potassium ion with respect to cardiac activity, as well as in many other physiologic circumstances.

The fact that a sufficient concentration of potassium ion will produce cardiac arrest in diastole was utilized by Swan and associates^{148, 149} in the treatment of clinical ventricular fibrillation. Essentially, the aorta was clamped just distal to the coronary orifices, and a solution of potassium chloride was injected just proximal to the clamp and massaged into the coronary vessels to perfuse the myocardium. We ourselves have used this ion in a 2 per cent solution experimentally, and it has produced cardiac arrest which could then be converted to a normal rhythm. However, we have not used it clinically, preferring to use the defibrillating electric current. The more potassium injected, the longer the heart will remain atonic before the potassium concentration in the myocardium has been diluted

sufficiently to permit normal cardiac activity. Deliberate potassium arrest is used in open heart surgery.

The clinical management of sodium ion excess or deficiency was discussed in Chapter 2.

Sodium An adequate concentration of sodium ion is necessary for normal function. This may be due in large part to the osmotic effect of sodium, which is the major osmolar effect in extracellular fluid, but it also may be due to a direct action of sodium ion, for there is evidence that the various inorganic ions have quite specific activities in relation to their neutralizing and osmolar functions. It has been noted in a previous paper that the sodium ion has an antagonistic effect to the influence of the potassium ion on cardiac activity, and that the deleterious effects of hyperkalemia can be diminished by sodium infusions.

Calcium Whereas the administration of excess amounts of potassium ion will have an inhibitory effect upon the heart and cause cardiac arrest in diastole, the administration of calcium ions promotes increased strength of contraction of the heart muscle and may eventually produce cardiac arrest in systole. The clinical application of this fact is that upon occasion the strength of an extremely weakened heart beat may be increased, in the course of cardiac resuscitation, by the injection of calcium solution directly into the left ventricle or into the aorta just proximal to the occluding clamp which will permit the escape of the injected calcium into the coronary arteries.

The Physiology of Conditions which Surgery May Be Performed

Acquired Heart Lesions

ACUTE PERICARDIAL TAMPONADE ¹⁵ The common cause of pericardial tamponade is a stab wound of the heart with resultant hemopericardium which produces compression of the great veins as they enter the

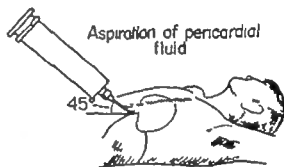
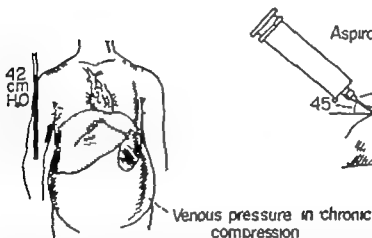
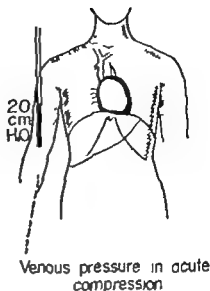
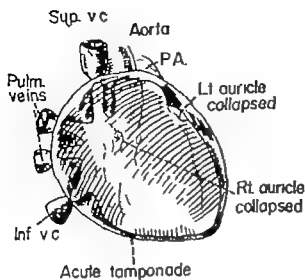


Fig 143 Acute pericardial tamponade and chronic constrictive pericarditis. The atria and great vessels can withstand much higher intrapericardial pressures if these pressures develop slowly than if they develop acutely. The pericardium is only slightly distensible in acute tamponade but it can distend markedly in chronic effusions. Pericardiocentesis is easily performed and may be lifesaving. (After Beck.)

cardium. Normally the pressures within the venae cavae and right atrium are somewhat less than atmospheric pressure. This negative pressure within the mediastinum is produced in the same manner as is the negative intrapleural pressure; it ranges from -5 to -8 cm of water. In chronic pericardial compression the venous pressure may be considerably higher than it is in acute compression before the same degree of disability is produced. Under acute conditions, however, serious reduction of cardiac output may occur when the pericardial pressure is between 10 and 15 cm. of saline solution. In other words, if the pressure

upon the venae cavae and right atrium is increased by only a few centimeters of water, these structures are temporarily collapsed (Fig 143). The blood is dammed back in the great veins until sufficient pressure is built up to force the blood through the barrier of pressure caused by intra-pericardial compression of the pulmonary veins and venae cavae. This compensatory increase in the venous pressure in the pulmonary and systemic veins has limitations, however, and eventually the venous return to the right heart will be so inadequate that fatal shock will ensue. According to Beck, the venous pressure within the right atrium

and venae cavae can rise to approximately 16 cm of water, but this can be considered the approximate fatal level for intrapericardial pressure developing acutely. On the other hand, if the pressure develops slowly over a period of days or weeks, the venous pressure may rise to greater heights, even to perhaps 42 cm of water. That is, as noted, over a period of time a high venous pressure can be built up that will serve as a protection against compression of the atria and great veins.

The patient with acute pericardial tamponade due to a penetrating or perforating wound of the heart exhibits distended neck veins and a high venous pressure. Beck¹⁴ described the triad for acute compression of the heart as consisting of (1) a quiet heart, (2) a rising venous pressure, and (3) a falling arterial pressure. It is also characterized by the presence of a paradoxical pulse. Though the heart itself is smaller than normal because of compression by the blood in the pericardium, the cardiac silhouette is somewhat enlarged (though the fibrous pericardium is not readily distended acutely). Fluoroscopy reveals diminished cardiac excursions and shock may develop. Furthermore, the patient may be alert one moment and in coma the next. Conservative management with pericardial aspiration is virtually always indicated initially, not only as an at times lifesaving measure but also because it usually proves adequate.

Case study A 39-year-old man was admitted in shock 2 hours following a penetrating knife wound in the left upper thorax anteriorly. He was fully rational and the blood pressure was 90/70. An intravenous infusion of dextran was started, and he was taken quickly from the emergency room to the adjacent x-ray department for a film of the chest and cardiac fluoroscopy. The cardiac silhouette was only moderately enlarged, but the cardiac pulsations were much diminished on fluoroscopy. There was no evidence of fluid in the left chest. By this time, however, the blood pressure had

fallen to 60/40, and the patient was complaining urgently of a "smothering" sensation. The neck veins had now become visibly distended, and the radial pulse was very weak. Such an eventuality had, of course, been anticipated, and equipment had been secured to perform pericardial aspiration using a long 17-gauge needle and a 50-cc syringe (Fig 143). The needle was directed upward at a 45-degree angle just to the left of the xiphoid with the patient in the supine position. No more than 30 cc of blood had been aspirated from the pericardial sac when the patient heaved a deep sigh and stated that he felt much better. The distention of the neck veins disappeared as more blood was aspirated, and the arterial blood pressure rose promptly to essentially normal levels. Meanwhile, a blood transfusion had been started and other blood held in readiness, should the pericardial aspiration prove inadequate and thoracotomy be required. Actually, the tamponade did recur once and the pericardial aspiration was repeated several hours later. Following this second tap there was no further difficulty, and the patient was allowed to go home after approximately 1 week.

Comment The majority of patients with hemopericardium and tamponade can be satisfactorily treated conservatively by aspiration, repeated as necessary. In the occasional case thoracotomy and myocardial suture must be resorted to, but this is rare, since patients with large heart wounds usually do not live to reach the hospital. One possible complication of conservative management is that occasionally intrapericardial clotting will occur, and the resulting inflammation and fibrosis may eventuate in constrictive pericarditis. Moreover, late re-filling of the pericardium with blood and reaction fluid may cause rather acute compression after the patient has gone home. For this reason it is important to follow these patients carefully for several weeks, including a chest x-ray and fluoroscopy immediately prior to discharge.

CHRONIC CONSTRICTIVE PERICARDITIS *Etiology* A variety of pathologic conditions may produce the inflammatory changes in the pericardium and over the epicardium which result in chronic compression of the heart. Among these conditions are tuberculosis, pericardial empyema, hemopericardium, and uremia. In many cases no definite etiologic agent can be identified but, of the last 5 patients that we have operated upon for this condition, 1 had proven tuberculosis, 1 suppurative pericarditis following pneumonia, 1 chronic hemopericardium following a knife wound, 1 constrictive pericarditis of undetermined etiology, and 1 only a dilated heart due to heart disease (mistaken diagnosis). In subacute disease, the greatly thickened pericardium may contain a viscid exudate from which a fibrinous separate layer is deposited upon the epicardium. Not only the thickened pericardium but also the dense second "peel" overlying the epicardium must be removed at operation else the compressed heart will not be liberated (Fig. 144).



Fig 144 Patient S M. Constrictive pericarditis following left lobar pneumonia and empyema. Shown above is the heart from which both the thickened pericardium and the second dense inflammatory layer adherent to the epicardium itself have been excised. Impassated pus was contained in the pericardial sac. If the pericardium and epicardium have not fused to form a single constricting layer the surgeon may conclude that excision of the pericardium is sufficient. However, not until the epicardial fat and coronary vessels have been identified is the heart adequately freed. In fact the heart usually bulges through the window as it is progressively released.

Diagnosis The chronic cardiac compression with chronically elevated venous pressure results in hepatomegaly, ascites, and edema. The basic cause of the very obvious 'heart failure' may not be immediately appreciated despite marked evidence of cardiac embarrassment.

Since the condition has developed slowly, the pericardium has had time to enlarge. The fluoroscopic examination usually reveals diminished cardiac pulsations. Calcium is frequently visible in the pericardium. The ECG exhibits a diminished amplitude. The pulse pressure usually measures around 20 mm. Hg; the systolic blood pressure ranges from 90 to 100 mm., and the pulse is paradoxical.

The treatment for constrictive pericarditis is radical pericardiectomy. Our preference is first to make a left thoracotomy incision through which the diagnosis can be verified and the left ventricle and a portion of the right ventricle freed. If all is going well at this point the inci-

sion is carried boldly across the sternum to achieve better exposure of the right ventricle, to attempt to remove the constricting material from a portion of the heart that is not well exposed is to court disaster from sudden and uncontrollable hemorrhage. Again the fat of the epicardium should be exposed before the operator concludes that the decortication is adequate in depth, for the heart will literally bulge through when at last a window has been made in the constricting material. Of 26 cases reviewed by Holman and Willett²² 4 died though none from technical accident, 14 were considered to have nontuberculous pericardial thickening, 8 patients had tuberculous pericarditis, and 1 patient did not have constrictive pericarditis but had a myocardial infarction. It was concluded that, to be effective, pericardiectomy must be radical and, in order that all critical areas may be liberated the decortication must extend beyond the left border, the right border, and the lower border with

release of both the inferior and the superior venae cavae at the base of the heart

We agree that an extensive resection is the desideratum, but much benefit can be achieved with a more limited operation, where required. We were forced to terminate the procedure in one patient because of marked ventricular arrhythmia (monitored by cardioscope). Both ventricles had been adequately freed, but little had been accomplished over the base of the heart. Yet, the patient appeared to be completely relieved postoperatively, whereas preoperatively he had progressed to almost fatal "heart failure" before the diagnosis of constrictive pericarditis was established.

It is well to require a prolonged period of limited exercise postoperatively, before vigorous exertion is permitted. The immediate success of pericardiectomy is best determined by the effect of the operation on venous pressure, and on the disappearance of edema and ascites when present. The late results are best determined by the degree of rehabilitation of the patient.

ISCHEMIA OF THE MYOCARDIUM Disease of the coronary arteries due to atherosclerosis constitutes perhaps the greatest health problem in the United States at this time. Chronic narrowing of the lumen of these vessels may result, at first, in a diminished blood supply to the myocardium that is reflected in the symptoms of angina pectoris.¹¹¹ If under these circumstances there should be superimposed upon the atherosclerotic narrowing an intraluminal clot or a subendothelial hemorrhage, the vessel may be closed completely, resulting in myocardial infarction of varying degrees (I 145). Coronary occlusion often occurs the first centimeter or so of the coronary artery, just after it arises from the aorta, and ECG changes are characteristically diagnostic. While the immediate changes in the ECG may not be remarkable, the late changes usually appear in the form of the following common findings: (1) ST-T segment with

T-waves. The Q-waves may be large. Serial ECG's are of value not only in establishing the diagnosis initially but also in following the rate of healing, with the prognostic implications involved. An ECG should of course be taken in any person suspected of having had a myocardial infarction, but it should always be remembered that "indigestion" and other symptoms of upper abdominal disease may in fact be due to coronary occlusion.

Rôle of diet in coronary atherosclerosis There can be little question that there is a significant positive correlation between the fat content of the diet of a population and the incidence of coronary atherosclerosis. It has been found that among certain African tribes and among the Japanese, where the proportion of fat to total calories in the diet is low, coronary disease is uncommon. In contrast, in the United States, where the relative fat content of the diet is one of the highest in the world, the incidence of coronary disease is also one of the highest in the world. It was formerly thought that the specific cholesterol content of the diet was the more important factor, rather than the total fat content, but this hypothesis is beginning to be abandoned in favor of the view that it is the total fat and calorie intake which predisposes to coronary atherosclerosis.

Prior to the menopause, the incidence of coronary disease in women is much less than it is in men, but thereafter the incidence between the two sexes is more nearly equal. Still further, it appears to be a function of occupation, for persons whose occupations are more sedentary are more likely to have coronary disease than those who are more active. In the United States, the incidence of myocardial infarction is higher among the white population than among the colored population, and among the white population it is higher among those who are more educated than among those who are less educated.

DEVELOPMENT AND DISTRIBUTION OF CORONARY ATHEROSCLEROSIS

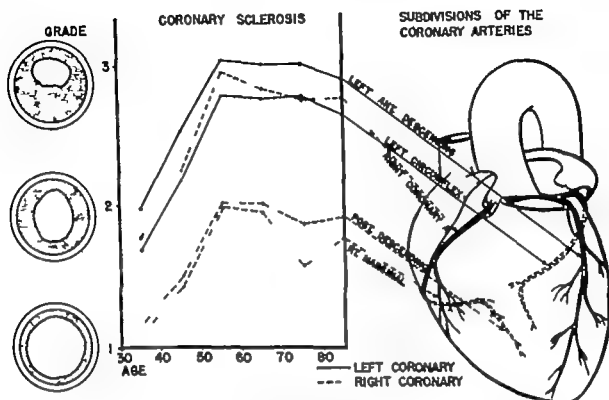


Fig 145 The most severe atherosclerotic lesions in each subdivision of the coronary arteries were determined in 100 consecutive postmortem examinations on men in each decade from 30 through 80 years. The average grade of the most severe lesion was plotted for each decade of life in each segment of the arterial tree. Similar degrees of atherosclerotic changes were noted in the right main coronary artery and in the anterior descending and circumflex branches of the left coronary artery. Smaller branches of the right coronary artery had less severe lesions. Disease of the coronary arteries presents one of the major unsolved problems in cardiac therapy. (From WHITE, N. K., EDWARDS, J. E. AND DAY, T. J. The relationship of the degree of coronary atherosclerosis with age in men. *Circulation* 1: 645 1950 as modified by RUTLAND, R. F. *Cardiac Diagnosis: A Physiologic Approach*. Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Company 1956.)

able that the impact of such surveys will eventually influence the composition of the American diet. However this is of no immediate help in the management of these problems. The prophylactic use of estrogen therapy in men who have had one episode of myocardial infarction must be considered entirely experimental at this time.

Operations for myocardial ischemia Direct surgery on the occluded coronary — Since arterial embolectomy or endarterectomy has been variously successful in other areas of the body it was natural to consider means of re-establishing blood flow through the occluded vessel, particularly since the

occlusion very often occurs within a centimeter or so of the aorta. Bailey⁴ has performed this operation in man but it must be considered highly exploratory thus far.

Procedures to increase the vascularity of the myocardium — The several operations currently being used clinically and/or experimentally to improve myocardial blood supply are based upon the established fact that cross anastomoses between coronary vessels do occur (Fig. 146). Thus, the surgical procedures designed to enhance the blood supply of the ischemic area of the myocardium have as their physiologic basis the fact that a degree of retrograde flow

release of both the inferior and the superior venae cavae at the base of the heart

We agree that an extensive resection is the desideratum, but much benefit can be achieved with a more limited operation, where required. We were forced to terminate the procedure in one patient because of marked ventricular arrhythmia (monitored by cardioscope). Both ventricles had been adequately freed, but little had been accomplished over the base of the heart. Yet, the patient appeared to be completely relieved postoperatively, whereas preoperatively he had progressed to almost fatal "heart failure" before the diagnosis of constrictive pericarditis was established.

It is well to require a prolonged period of limited exercise postoperatively, before vigorous exertion is permitted. The immediate success of pericardiectomy is best determined by the effect of the operation on venous pressure, and on the disappearance of edema and ascites when present. The late results are best determined by the degree of rehabilitation of the patient.

ISCHEMIA OF THE MYOCARDIUM Disease of the coronary arteries due to atherosclerosis constitutes perhaps the greatest health problem in the United States at this time. Chronic narrowing of the lumen of these vessels may result, at first, in a diminished blood supply to the myocardium that is reflected in the symptoms of angina pectoris.¹³¹ If under these circumstances there should be superimposed upon the atherosclerotic narrowing an intraluminal clot or a subendothelial hemorrhage, the vessel may be closed completely, resulting in myocardial infarction of varying degrees (Fig 145). Coronary occlusion often occurs in the first centimeter or so of the coronary artery, just after it arises from the aorta, and ECG changes are frequently diagnostic. While the immediate changes in the ECG may not be remarkable, definite findings usually appear in serial tracings. The most common findings are an elevation in the RS-T segment with progressively inverted

T-waves. The Q-waves may be large. Serial ECG's are of value not only in establishing the diagnosis initially but also in following the rate of healing, with the prognostic implications involved. An ECG should of course be taken in any person suspected of having had a myocardial infarction, but it should always be remembered that "indigestion" and other symptoms of upper abdominal disease may in fact be due to coronary occlusion.

Rôle of diet in coronary atherosclerosis There can be little question that there is a significant positive correlation between the fat content of the diet of a population and the incidence of coronary atherosclerosis. It has been found that among certain African tribes and among the Japanese, where the proportion of fat to total calories in the diet is low, coronary disease is uncommon. In contrast, in the United States, where the relative fat content of the diet is one of the highest in the world, the incidence of coronary disease is also one of the highest in the world. It was formerly thought that the specific cholesterol content of the diet was the more important factor, rather than the total fat content, but this hypothesis is beginning to be abandoned in favor of the view that it is the total fat and caloric intake which predisposes to coronary atherosclerosis.

Prior to the menopause, the incidence of coronary disease in women is much less than it is in men, but thereafter the incidence between the two sexes is more nearly equal. Still further, there appears to be a difference in the incidence of coronary disease in persons of different occupations, those whose occupation places them under continuous mental stress are more likely to develop coronary disease than those who do manual labor with comparatively little mental strain. Unquestionably, many other factors are of importance and these will be further revealed during the coming decades. Meanwhile, certain large scale nutritional surveys are being continued, and it is pos-

DEVELOPMENT AND DISTRIBUTION OF CORONARY ATHEROSCLEROSIS

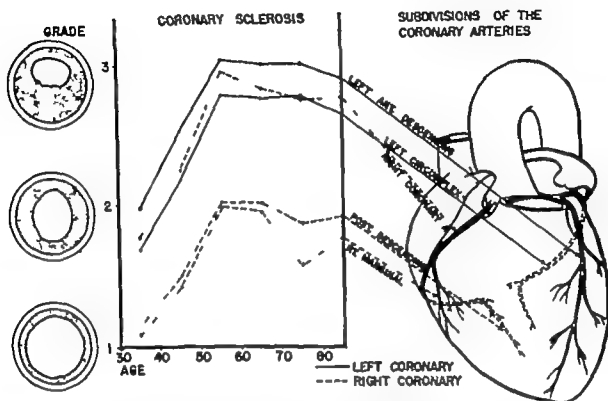


Fig 145 The most severe atherosclerotic lesions in each subdivision of the coronary arteries were determined in 100 consecutive postmortem examinations on men in each decade from 30 through 80 years. The average grade of the most severe lesion was plotted for each decade of life in each segment of the arterial tree. Similar degrees of atherosclerotic changes were noted in the right main coronary artery, and in the anterior descending and circumflex branches of the left coronary artery. Smaller branches of the right coronary artery had less severe lesions. Disease of the coronary arteries presents one of the major unsolved problems in cardiac therapy (From WHITE, N. K. EDWARDS, J. E., and DAY, T. J. The relationship of the degree of coronary atherosclerosis with age in men. *Circulation* 1: 645 1950 as modified by RUSSELL, R. F. *Cardiac Diagnosis: A Physiologic Approach* Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Company, 1956.)

able that the impact of such surveys will eventually influence the composition of the American diet. However this is of no immediate help in the management of these problems. The prophylactic use of estrogen therapy in men who have had one episode of myocardial infarction must be considered entirely experimental at this time.

Operations for myocardial ischemia. Direct surgery on the occluded coronary — Since arterial embolectomy or endarterectomy has been variously successful in other areas of the body, it was natural to consider means of re-establishing blood flow through the occluded vessel, particularly since the

occlusion very often occurs within a centimeter or so of the aorta. Bailey⁴ has performed this operation in man, but it must be considered highly exploratory thus far.

Procedures to increase the vascularity of the myocardium — The several operations currently being used clinically and/or experimentally to improve myocardial blood supply are based upon the established fact that cross anastomoses between coronary vessels do occur (Fig. 146). Thus the surgical procedures designed to enhance the blood supply of the ischemic area of the myocardium have as their physiologic basis the fact that a degree of retrograde flow

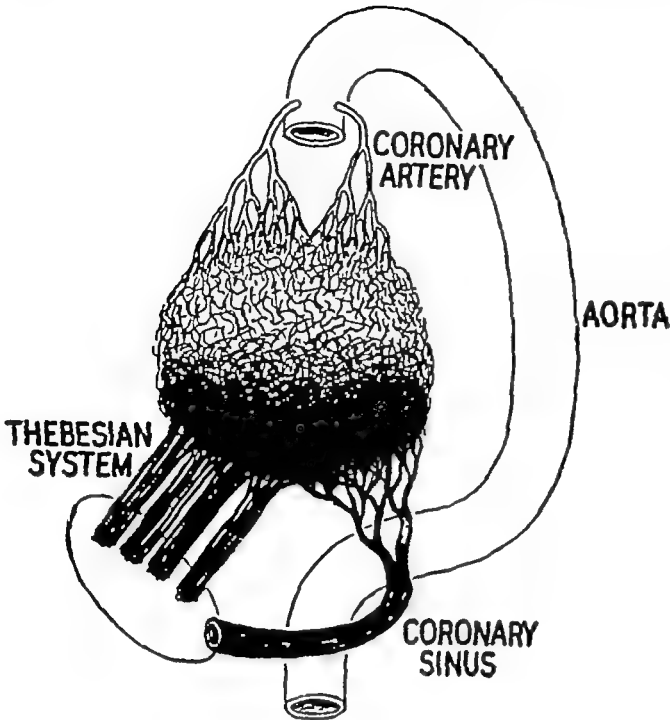


Fig 146 Concept of normal coronary circulation Shaded area represents capillary blood depleted of oxygen Efforts at myocardial revascularization are aimed at increasing the blood flow through coronary networks The Thebesian veins are usually less prominent than indicated above (From BAILEY, C P, GECKELER, G D, TRUEX, R C, LIKOFF, W, ANTONIUS, N A, ANGULE, A W, REDONDO-RAMIREZ, H P, AND NEPTUNE, W Arterialization of the coronary sinus J A M A, 151: 441, 1953)

can occur among the coronary vessels While in normal young hearts less than 10 per cent of individuals have such anastomoses (the coronary arteries being, in effect, end-arteries) under various stimuli some anastomoses will develop to compensate for the relative insufficiency of oxygen, this is more likely to have already occurred in elderly individuals, where it was needed, than in younger persons In line with this is the belief that in the younger age group the prognosis following coronary occlusion is worse than in the older age groups, presumably since in the latter collateral channels have had an opportunity to develop (Fig 146).

As early as 1936 it was demonstrated by Beck and his associates¹⁵⁻¹⁸ and by O'Shaughnessy¹¹⁸ that arterialization by the extracoronary methods could be accomplished Some of the tissues since used for *cardioplexy* have been muscle, fat, peri-

cardium, lung, omentum, and the denuded seromuscular layer of the jejunum and of the stomach Thompson and Raisbeck¹² have had a particular interest in producing irritation within the pericardium by the instillation of iodinated tale (*poudrage*), with the objective of producing cross-anastomoses between the pericardium and the myocardium The success reported by different clinics using this method has varied widely, but at least it has the merit of both simplicity and a low operative mortality

Arterialization of the coronary sinus is perhaps the most difficult operation advanced for revascularization of the ischemic

METHODS FOR REVASCULARIZATION OF THE MYOCARDIUM

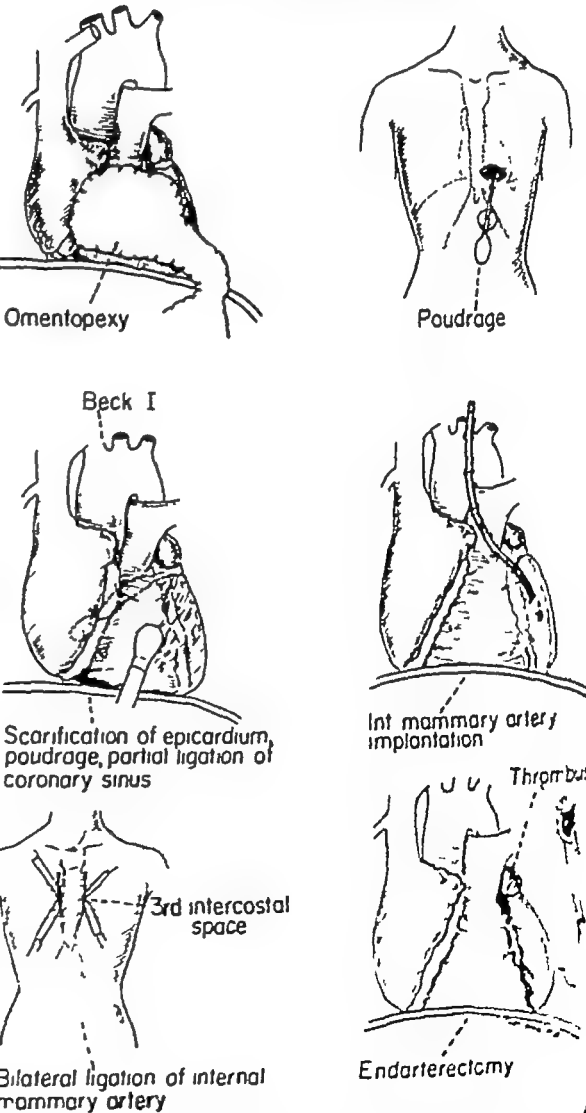


Fig 147 No consistently effective means of myocardial revascularization currently exist Poudrage is the simplest procedure, and for this reason it is most often used

myocardium. Proposed by Beck¹⁷ and extended by Bailey,⁷ it consisted of a series of steps by which a homograft was used to conduct aortic blood to the coronary sinus. This procedure gained few adherents and, as I have not used it, I do not feel qualified to evaluate it fairly.

Systemic artery implantation was proposed by Vineberg¹⁸ in 1946. Using the internal mammary artery, which was simply drawn into a tunnel in the myocardium without ligation, he and subsequently others demonstrated that buds from the implanted artery did anastomose with the coronary vessels. However, despite various refinements of technique, the clinical value of the procedure has yet to be securely established.

General comment on revascularization procedures. It must be admitted that none of the different operations mentioned above can claim consistent and unquestioned benefit in patients with coronary insufficiency. The field remains wide open though with further use and refinement one or the other of the present techniques may in the future prove more dependable than at present (Fig. 147).

✓**DISEASES OF THE MITRAL VALVE.** *Mitral stenosis.* Pathophysiology.—The physiologic events attendant upon mitral stenosis result from increasing stricture of the mitral orifice over a period of years. If the stenosis of the valve be corrected early enough irreversible changes in the myocardium and the pulmonary vascular bed will not have occurred and the patient can be largely rehabilitated. On the other hand, if the disease is allowed to pursue its relentless course, a definite train of events may be observed at a variable rate of occurrence. This train of events is approximately as follows:⁴¹ The obstructive lesion between the left atrium and ventricle has at least two major effects: (1) it reduces the cardiac output and (2) it produces a rise in pressure in the system proximally—in the left atrium, pulmonary veins, pulmonary capillaries, pulmonary artery and right ventricle (Fig. 148). Normally the

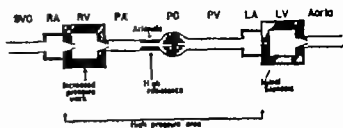


Fig. 148 Diagram of the central circulation, showing the pathologic physiology of mitral stenosis. The pulmonary capillaries enjoy a wide differential between mean hydrostatic pressure (7 mm Hg) and colloid osmotic pressure (25 mm Hg). However if back pressure from the left atrium in mitral stenosis is sufficiently severe the capillary hydrostatic pressure may exceed colloid osmotic pressure and pulmonary edema then occurs. Perhaps as a protective device mitral stenosis results in thickening of the walls of the pulmonary arterioles and increased arteriolar resistance. This does protect the pulmonary capillaries, but it also increases the work load of the right ventricle and the pulmonary hypertension may produce cor pulmonale with eventual right heart failure. (From DICERNA, L. Physiologic changes in mitral stenosis. *New England J Med* 254: 829 1956.)

area of the mitral orifice is about 5 cm.², the pressure into the left atrium 5 mm. Hg and the cardiac output about 5.5 or 6.0 L. per minute. As the years pass, following one or more attacks of rheumatic fever, the size of the orifice diminishes, and critical narrowing occurs when the size reaches 1.0 cm.², a size at which all patients are symptomatic. Paralleling the reduction in the size of the mitral orifice, the pressure in the left atrium has risen to a resting level of perhaps 25 mm. Hg at a valve size of 1.0 cm.² and the cardiac output has declined to perhaps 4.0 to 4.5 L. per minute. The point of least resistance in the circuit is the pulmonary capillary, and the margin of physiologic safety before serious pulmonary edema develops is provided by the 25 mm. Hg pressure represented by the colloid osmotic pressure of the plasma proteins. Therefore as the hydrostatic pressure in the right atrium (and pulmonary capillaries) approaches 25 mm Hg the margin becomes so thin that the slightest emotion or exertion which increases the hydrostatic pressure in the pulmonary vessels may cause

ETIOLOGY OF RESPIRATORY SYMPTOMS FROM PULMONARY HYPERTENSION

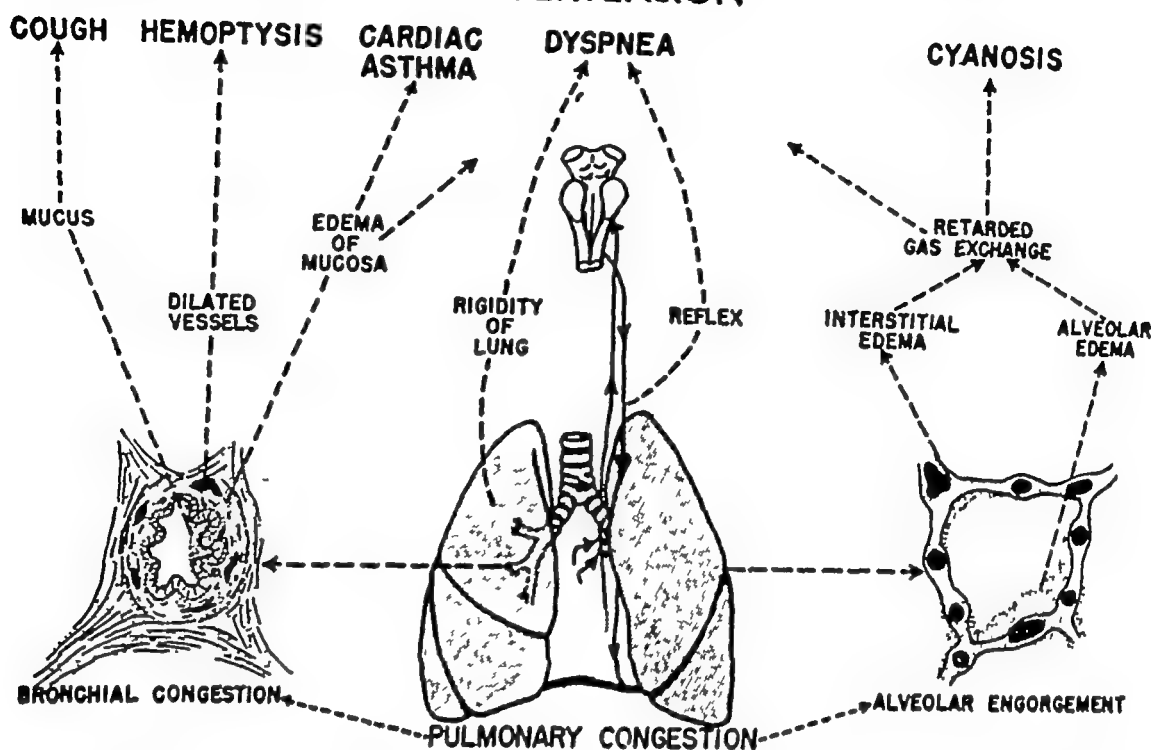


Fig 149 Since most bronchial capillaries drain by way of the pulmonary veins, congestion develops simultaneously in alveolar and bronchial vascular networks. Bronchial congestion tends to stimulate production of mucus, leading to a productive cough. The distended bronchial capillaries may rupture so that the patient has blood-tinged sputum (hemoptysis). Edema of the bronchial mucosa increases resistance to air flow, producing respiratory distress similar to asthma. Dyspnea results primarily from reflexes initiated by vascular distention, but it may be aggravated by increased rigidity of the lungs and by impaired gas exchange resulting from interstitial edema and accumulation of fluid in alveolar sacs. Cyanosis is not consistently observed even in patients with severe pulmonary edema. Many mechanisms by which dyspnea is produced are still obscure. (From RUSHMER, R. F. *Cardiac Diagnosis: A Physiologic Approach*. Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Company, 1956.)

transudation of fluid out of the vessels, evidenced by microscopic or gross pulmonary edema. For this reason, dyspnea is a prominent symptom of mitral stenosis with pulmonary edema (Fig 149).

Pulmonary vascular changes occur late in the disease when the size of the mitral orifice is considerably reduced. There is the thickening of the wall of the pulmonary arterioles, adding a second point of obstruction in the pulmonary circuit. Dexter⁴¹ has emphasized that it is the pulmonary hypertension which results from the increased arteriolar resistance (rather than hypertension due to stenosis of the mitral orifice) which produces enlargement of the pulmonary artery and right ventricle. Teleologically, one might assume that the arteriolar thickening and increased vascular resis-

tance, however produced, has the purpose of protecting the pulmonary vascular bed. With the resistance in the lungs added to that at the mitral valve, a great burden is placed upon the right ventricle. The pulmonary artery enlarges and the pulmonary arterial pressure, normally 25/9 mm Hg, may rise to or exceed that in the systemic circuit, pressures as high as 140 systolic and 75 diastolic have been recorded in the pulmonary artery. The right ventricular pressure must exceed the pressure in the pulmonary artery, and the right ventricle will eventually fail (cor pulmonale). The cardiac output may fall to as low as 3 L. or less per minute. The left ventricle may diminish even below normal size, since the work it must perform is progressively reduced. Again, if corrective mitral surgery

is performed early enough, most of these organic changes, including pulmonary arteriolar thickening, may be expected to regress.

Clinical findings—The first symptoms which occur are usually related either to *dyspnea* or to an increasing functional incapacity related to *easy fatigability*. This may progress until even the slightest activity such as eating, dressing or going to the bathroom cannot be carried out by the patient without severe dyspnea and exhaustion. Later, atrial fibrillation perhaps embolic episodes pulmonary congestion and *hemoptysis*, and episodes of nocturnal paroxysmal dyspnea due to pulmonary edema may appear and eventually right heart failure may develop, with hepatic enlargement, ascites and dependent edema. In one series¹²⁷ heart failure of one type or another accounted for 44 per cent of deaths, acute events in the peripheral circulation (mainly embolic) for 33 per cent and pulmonary infarctions for 11 per cent—the other deaths being due to miscellaneous causes.

Diagnostic features of well developed mitral stenosis include the history of rheumatic fever, when obtainable plus the other symptoms outlined above. There are usually the typical apical diastolic murmur, and perhaps atrial fibrillation, pulmonary congestion and cardiac enlargement. *Röntgen examination* reveals increased pulmonary vascular markings pulmonary congestion and enlargement of the left atrium, the right ventricle, and the pulmonary artery. We particularly like to see the sharply defined backward displacement of the esophagus by the enlarged left atrium, which is well demonstrated by barium swallow in a lateral view. Left ventricular enlargement should be absent when present the probability of significant mitral regurgitation or aortic disease must be taken into account. The ECG frequently shows right ventricular strain. *Cardiac catheterization* while not required in the routine case, will show increased pulmonary arterial and capil-

lary" or "wedge" pressures (the cardiac catheter being "wedged" into a small ramification of the pulmonary artery). Arterial oxygen saturation is usually normal at rest but may fall with exercise, as pulmonary blood flow and cardiac output fail to increase to meet the new demands. Representative data are shown in Table 17.

Indications for operation—A number of classifications of the degree of physical incapacity in mitral stenosis have been offered, but a general one which we use, is as follows. Group I, asymptomatic, Group II, definite symptoms, but exercise tolerance not seriously diminished. Group III, serious physical limitation precluding many accustomed activities, Group IV, severe limitation, marked evidence of cardiovascular failure and a bed patient, Group V, totally incapacitated and unsuitable for surgical treatment.

We reject for surgery those patients who merely have a mitral diastolic murmur but who have no symptoms of mitral stenotic disease. We do accept for operation those patients who have definite symptoms of mitral stenosis even though these may not be marked, since experience has shown that gradually most of these patients will develop additional symptoms and that meanwhile pulmonary vascular changes leading to pulmonary hypertension are occurring, not to mention the changes in the musculature of the overworked right ventricle. The longer that the patient has had symptoms of mitral stenosis, the greater the organic defects which have occurred and the less favorable the outcome following mitral valve surgery. Finally, we are now unwilling to operate upon patients who are all but moribund (Group V), for while the mitral obstruction may be relieved at operation, the operative mortality is high and the ultimate salvage is small. The operative mortality in Groups II and III should be less than 5 per cent.

Contraindications to surgery are active rheumatic carditis bacterial endocarditis, a significant degree of mitral insufficiency,

TABLE 17 CARDIAC CATHETERIZATION DATA IN MITRAL STENOSIS
(PATIENT C B —♂—12 YEARS)

Site	REST				EXERCISE			
	Pressure (mm Hg)		Oxygen		Pressure (mm Hg)		Oxygen	
	S/D	M	Vol %	% Sat.	S/D	M	Vol %	% Sat.
Superior vena cava	—	—	11 81	57 53	—	—	—	—
Right atrium	—	±0	11 82	57 54	—	—	—	—
Right ventricle	64/9	19	12 16	59 22	—	—	—	—
Pulmonary artery	64/24	36	13 30	64 75	94/60	—	9 19	44 76
Pulmonary "capillary"	—	15	—	—	—	26	—	—
Brachial artery, right	127/83	93	19 24	93 70	—	—	19 32	94 10
Capacity	—	—	20 53	100 00	—	—	—	—

Discussion The end diastolic pressure in the right ventricle varied during the procedure from 2 to 9. The figure of 9 recorded above was the highest observed and is interpreted under the circumstances as evidence of no more than borderline right ventricular failure. The pulmonary "capillary" pressure at rest is minimally elevated but rises sharply with exercise (and the exercise was not very vigorous). Pulmonary artery pressure is moderately high at rest. The curve recorded during exercise was technically unsatisfactory so that its systolic level is uncertain, but the rise in diastolic level is marked.

Conclusion There is moderate pulmonary arterial hypertension at rest and this increases with mild exercise. While not diagnostic, the findings at catheterization fit well with the clinical diagnosis of mitral stenosis.

This patient was greatly improved by valvulotomy. An 0.8-cm (diameter) orifice was enlarged to from 2.0 to 2.5 cm. (Catheterization data and critique supplied by Dr. Thomas M. Blake.)

and intractable right heart failure (Group V). Serious aortic disease also complicates the picture, since the results of surgery for both aortic stenosis and aortic insufficiency leave much to be desired. Aortic stenosis may be corrected at the time of mitral valvulotomy or at a separate operation.

Each patient must be selected for operation on the basis of the total profile of his case. Age *per se* is not a contraindication to operation, though generally many factors which militate against a good operative result will be present. The oldest patient that I have operated upon personally was 52 years of age, and this patient was rehabilitated to the extent that, no longer bedridden on all drugs available, she was able to putter about in the flower garden, to drive her car, and to do light housework. She was by no means completely normal, however. Vigorous exertion produced dyspnea, and the atrial fibrillation could not be converted to normal rhythm with even massive doses of quinidine. Yet there were no embolic

phenomena, and she was delighted with the results achieved by her operation.

A very large number of operations for mitral stenosis have now been performed throughout the world, and the procedure (Fig. 150) is securely established as a feasible and valuable source of relief for many patients who need it.

Management of acute pulmonary edema.—At the time of the induction of anesthesia the critically ill patient may suddenly develop fulminant pulmonary edema. This is manifested first by pulmonary râles and increased tracheobronchial secretions. However, this relatively benign situation may suddenly develop into severe pulmonary edema, with cyanosis, hypotension, and the frothy pink fluid which boils out of the endotracheal tube. Unless treated expeditiously, this may terminate fatally. Effective measures include elevation of the trunk, positive pressure oxygen breathing, and venous tourniquets on all four extremities. If the patient is not already digitalized, this is ad-

visible. Intravenous aminophylline may be helpful. Successful treatment produces a regression of the picture in reverse order: the frothy pink fluid is replaced by a watery material and gradually the pulmonary râles recede.

Preoperative, operative and postoperative emboli.—One of the more distressing features of mitral stenosis with atrial fibrillation is the dislodgment of thrombi from the left auricular appendage, which pass into the systemic arterial circulation to occlude major arteries. While this is a particular hazard at the time of operation when thrombi in the left auricular appendage may be mobilized as the finger is inserted, embolization may occur any time. As has been seen, most arterial emboli arise from the heart either as a mural thrombus secondary to myocardial infarction or from the left atrium in the presence of atrial fibrillation. If the embolus involves the aortic bifurcation or an artery of the leg, embolectomy can be performed. Yet, while embolectomy may be initially successful, it is discouraging how few patients are truly rehabilitated. The reason for this is that, first, embolization has occurred in a patient who already had a serious disease. Second, additional emboli often occur, even in the early period following removal of the initial embolus. Therefore, while theoretically embolectomy should prove to be a very satisfactory operation, either the patient or the leg is often lost.

Postcommisurotomy syndrome.⁴⁵—Following surgery for mitral stenosis a variable number of patients have precordial chest pain, fever and sometimes cough with or without evidence of pleurisy and pericarditis. The pain, which is the most prominent feature, may cause much disability. This condition has come to be known as the 'post-commisurotomy syndrome.' The time of onset of the condition ranges from a few days to months following operation, and after persisting for from 10 to 30 days it gradually subsides. The syndrome has been

FINGER FRACTURE

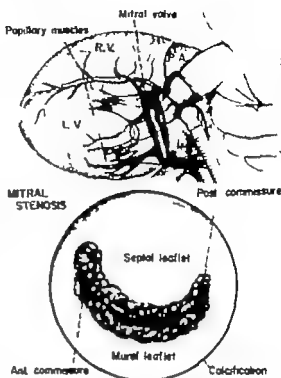


Fig 150 The stenotic mitral orifice does not have to be greatly enlarged to provide marked relief though it should be opened adequately

variously attributed to reactivation of the rheumatic process, to traumatic pericarditis, or other causes. The symptomatology gradually subsides spontaneously, but the use of salicylates and/or cortisone has seemed to provide symptomatic relief.

Hemorrhage at operation.—I have twice encountered severe hemorrhage at the time of valvulotomy. In the first instance the hemorrhage occurred when, as the assistant drew up firmly on the purse-string suture, the atrial appendage tore just proximal to the purse-string suture at the base posteriorly. One hesitated to place a deep mattress suture lest the pulmonary venous return or the left coronary artery be occluded. However, after considerable blood loss (and exasperatingly ineffective effort) the atrial appendage was turned down and sutured over the defect in the groove and to all appearances, the bleeding was controlled. Accordingly, the chest was closed. Unfortunately, as the patient emerged from the anesthetic he became violent and pre-

ently, the water in the closed drainage bottle began to turn pink from fresh hemorrhage, and after several transfusions it was judged essential to re-explore the pericardial cavity. As anticipated, a slow but steady stream of blood was flowing from the sulcus between the atrial appendage and the left ventricle. The previous tear was exposed, but at this point cardiac arrest occurred. Between periods of cardiac massage the defect was boldly sutured securely with two mattress sutures but, though heart action was restored, the strength of contraction was not good and the patient died an hour or so later.

The second instance of hemorrhage was readily controlled on the basis of the experience gained with the first. In the second case hemorrhage occurred when, while pressing against the anterolateral commissure perhaps too firmly, in an effort to fracture it in the presence of considerable calcification, a calcified plaque appeared to act as a bayonet, stabbing a hole in the lateral wall of the atrium just above the atrioventricular groove. This time, however, the finger was kept in the atrium and the tear was occluded *from the inside*, by simply bringing the distal phalanx against the lateral atrial wall. This simple maneuver virtually stopped the bleeding, and closure of the defect over the finger was readily accomplished under direct vision.

While undoubtedly most experienced surgeons will have decided upon their own measures for the control of such unfortunate accidents, I consider it highly desirable to keep the finger in the auricular appendage or to reinsert it promptly to assist in controlling the hemorrhage by gentle compression from the inside, permitting direct inspection and suture of the laceration. If it is in deep in the sulcus between the atrial appendage and the atrium, the atrial appendage can be sutured as a flap for tamponade. If the defect is between the atrium and the ventricle, the atrial appendage can be brought down and sutured to the wall of the ventricle as a flap. Since the pressure

within the atrium is relatively low, such measures will usually control the hemorrhage. Above all, the most important single feature is for the surgeon not to become panicky and to avoid injudicious haste in inserting deep sutures. If a suture is not so placed as to occlude the circumflex coronary artery or the pulmonary veins, adequate blood transfusion and care in meticulously controlling the hemorrhage will usually allow the surgeon to recover from this otherwise catastrophic predicament.

Finally, gentleness is so very important in the approach to the mitral valve. Poise and precision are achieved here, as in other surgery, only through experience.

Mitral insufficiency Pathophysiology of mitral regurgitation —Mitral insufficiency results from two principal defects: (1) an absolute loss of substance and (2) a relative loss of substance.² The *absolute loss* of valvular tissue comprises the basic form of regurgitation wherein the disease process (usually rheumatic) has attacked the leaflets directly and the resulting contracture prevents their closing in systole. A *relative loss of substance* occurs either as a result of rheumatic carditis which attacks the valve annulus directly or because of generalized left ventricular dilatation secondary to myocardial disease and failure. As the annulus enlarges, the valve leaflets, otherwise adequate in length, fail to approximate and regurgitation results. This type of regurgitation includes those forms of incompetence often referred to as "functional insufficiency." Shortening of the papillary muscles and chordae tendineae also precludes ideal elevation of the leaflet margins to permit perfect closure during systole. Also, by improper valvulotomy the mitral leaflet may be detached from its chordae tendineae and papillary muscle support and flap to and fro with the blood current in systole and diastole. Or, the mitral leaflet may be divided in the center rather than at the commissure, as was deliberately done in the early attempts at surgery for mitral stenosis many years ago. Nevertheless, this

is an artificial type of mitral insufficiency, and is not the pattern observed in the naturally occurring disease. As stated, the most common type of mitral regurgitation undoubtedly occurs due to the inflammatory reaction of rheumatic carditis which results in scarring, shortening, and contracture of leaflets and chordae tendineae, thus making it impossible for the valve margins to approximate.

Cardiodynamics in mitral regurgitation are such as to increase the work of the left ventricle. With each systole a considerable volume of blood, which varies in amount with the degree of valvular incompetency, is regurgitated into the left atrium, in addition to the ejection of blood into the aorta. This has been beautifully demonstrated with cine-roentgenography. As left ventricular hypertrophy occurs to compensate for the effort wasted by the backflow of a variable amount of blood into the left atrium with each systole, there is a further enlargement of the mitral valve ring with further incompetency, due to a relative deficiency in the amount of valve leaflet surface available for covering the now further enlarged mitral area. Thus a vicious cycle is produced which must eventually lead to heart failure if sufficiently severe.

Diagnosis of mitral regurgitation — While there is as yet no satisfactory surgical method of treating mitral regurgitation it is of much practical importance to be able to diagnose mitral regurgitation, since the presence of significant mitral insufficiency may render operation for mitral stenosis inadvisable. Patently, if a marked degree of regurgitation exists, stenosis can not be great. Abelmann, Ellis and Harken² studied 64 patients with a view to establishing dependable criteria for the diagnosis of mitral regurgitation. Particular note was made of the following: the apical systolic murmur, the symptom of easy fatigability, enlargement of the left ventricle, absence of the electrocardiographic pattern of right ventricular enlargement or right bundle branch block, marked enlargement of the left

atrium, systolic expansion of the left atrium as assessed by fluoroscopy, the atrial esophagogram, the atrial border electrokymogram, and the phonocardiogram. They found that the most dependable criteria for the diagnosis of marked mitral regurgitation were the presence of a loud apical systolic murmur, marked left atrial enlargement, left ventricular enlargement, and systolic expansion of the left atrium by fluoroscopy. Their findings with regard to the value of apical murmurs were particularly enlightening, especially as it has been appreciated for some time that a diagnosis based purely on murmurs is likely to be erroneous in a certain number of cases. They found that of 14 patients with systolic apical murmurs of Grade 3 or louder, 8 showed severe regurgitation at operation, 4 showed mild to moderate regurgitation, and 4 showed no regurgitation. On the other hand, of 23 patients without systolic murmurs, there was no regurgitation in 15, it was questionable in 7, and it was moderate in one. With respect to left atrial enlargement of 9 patients with marked regurgitation, 6 had markedly enlarged left atria and 3 had moderate enlargement only. Of 45 patients with slight or moderate enlargement, 29 had pure stenosis, 13 had questionable to moderate regurgitation, and only 3 had marked regurgitation. Abelmann and his associates² found that fatigability overshadowed dyspnea as a principal symptom in mitral regurgitation, in contrast to the dyspnea usually associated with mitral stenosis. It was concluded that no single criterion presently available is adequate for the absolute preoperative diagnosis of the degree of mitral regurgitation in patients who also have mitral stenosis. Direct left atrial puncture²⁷ and cinefluoroscopy will probably be rendered more practicable and informative procedures. Yet, as noted, it was possible to determine with considerable accuracy clinically the probable pathology, which was later verified at operation. The presence of a systolic murmur of Grade 2 or less, a left atrium moderately enlarged

in the posterior direction only, evidence of right ventricular enlargement on roentgenogram or ECG without evidence of left ventricular enlargement, and the finding of definite but slight systolic posterior expansion of the left atrium by fluoroscopy, kymogram, or esophagram suggest that mitral insufficiency of a degree to contraindicate cardiac surgery is not present. On the other hand, definite evidence of left ventricular enlargement associated with other presumptive signs of mitral regurgitation—such as a loud systolic murmur, marked left atrial enlargement with systolic expansion, and fatigability rather than dyspnea—is suggestive of mitral insufficiency advanced to the point as to render exploratory cardiectomy inadvisable.

Operations for mitral insufficiency—As previously noted, no satisfactory operation for mitral insufficiency exists at the present time. Various workers have investigated the use of a heavy purse-string suture introduced around the annulus but not entering the atrium, but this and other procedures for mitral insufficiency must be considered experimental. Repair under direct vision may become practicable and is being explored.

Aortic stenosis Pathophysiology—Of all the valvular defects, aortic stenosis is one of the most intractable to conservative management. Bergeron and co-workers²¹ studied 100 patients with aortic stenosis who had come to autopsy. They found that left ventricular failure and atrial fibrillation were grave signs and that, particularly when these were followed by cardiac pain or syncope, death usually occurred within weeks or months. Of 34 patients to whom surgery was recommended but was not accepted, 30 were dead within 6 months.

Aortic stenosis is usually due to rheumatic disease but may occasionally be of congenital origin or due to arteriosclerosis in elderly persons. It results in obstruction to the outflow of blood from the left ventricle, with consequent hypertrophy of the left ventricle and eventual heart failure. Bailey and his associates⁵ believed that the reason

for the poor response of aortic stenosis to medical therapy—as compared with the response of other lesions—was to be explained on the basis of the mechanism of coronary artery filling and flow, coronary filling often impaired in the presence of a valvular disease. Moreover, the greatly increased bulk of the overworked left ventricle also limits the success of conservative therapy. And the progressive narrowing of the stenotic orifice further imposes additional limitations upon the advantages gained from medical management. Finally, many of the patients with aortic stenosis are in the older age group beyond 45 years of age, in whom changes in the myocardium and the coronary vessels would be expected to occur more frequently. Nevertheless, aortic stenosis due to rheumatic changes may occur in much younger persons, with the same relentless progression to death.

Surgical correction of aortic stenosis—The first attempt at operative correction of a valvular lesion in a human being was made upon a stenotic aortic valve by Lister¹⁵⁴ in 1913, when he successfully digitally dilated a stenotic aortic valve by invaginating the anterior flaccid aortic wall. In this way he was able to avoid a direct operation into the lumen of the cardiovascular system.

In current efforts toward the relief of aortic stenosis a variety of attacks are being examined. Bailey and his associates⁵ reported a relatively large experience with this condition, including approaches through both the aorta in a retrograde fashion (preferred) and through the wall of the left ventricle. By the aortic approach, splitting of one or more of the fused commissures by simple finger pressure was possible in almost one-half the patients, whereas instrumental aid was required in the rest. More recently, various workers have utilized hypothermia and attacked the stenosed valve under direct vision. The pump-oxygenator is also being utilized to permit leisurely and yet more precise reparative surgery under direct vision.

The results of aortic valvulotomy have

been far less favorable than those following mitral valvulotomy, though with further experience and diminishing mortality rates *this disparity may be reduced.*

Aortic insufficiency Pathophysiology
—The basic pathology of aortic regurgitation consists of damage to one or more of the aortic cusps by rheumatic endocarditis, lues, trauma, congenital defects or bacterial endocarditis. The volume of regurgitation varies widely between patients and this is an important consideration in evaluating the prognosis in the individual case. The patient with aortic insufficiency may, of course, have other valvular lesions, one of the more common being mitral stenosis.

The patient with pure aortic insufficiency may die from cardiac decompensation secondary to the increased work imposed upon the left ventricle in delivering the required amount of blood to the tissues since much effort is wasted as a portion of the blood flows back into the ventricle through the incompetent aortic valve during each diastole. Or, the patient may die very suddenly from ventricular fibrillation caused by inadequate coronary flow. Many of the patients will have evidence of angina pectoris, and in a large number there is a loud systolic murmur at the apex (in addition to the basal diastolic murmur) which may be suggestive of mitral insufficiency. When Hufnagel⁶⁴ had an opportunity to examine at autopsy patients who had had a loud systolic murmur in the presence of aortic insufficiency it was usually found that there was enlargement of the mitral valve ring secondary to enlargement of the left ventricle.

Gorlin and Goodale⁶⁴ emphasized the value of serial blood pressure recordings in the detection of incipient heart failure in aortic insufficiency. The appearance of a narrowing pulse pressure was considered the alert for intensification of all therapeutic possibilities in view of the grave prognosis once congestive heart failure becomes established in aortic insufficiency.

Operations for aortic insufficiency —Of

HUFNAGEL VALVE FOR AORTIC INSUFFICIENCY

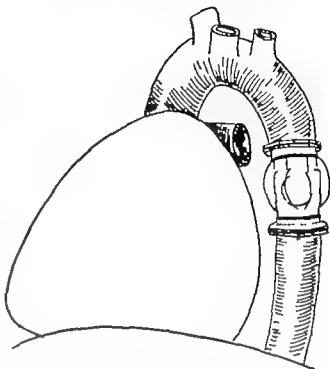


Fig 151 The Hufnagel valve has proved to be of much benefit in some patients who otherwise would have died within months.

the several operations which have been attempted for the relief of aortic insufficiency, among them the insertion of an aortic homograft the only one which has enjoyed even reasonable success has been the insertion of the aortic valvular prosthesis of Hufnagel. In brief this procedure consists of inserting into the upper descending aorta a plastic tube containing a ball valve. The force of the systolic rush opens the valve, and the diastolic backflow along the thoracic aorta closes the valve (Fig. 151).

Physiologic effects of the Hufnagel valve¹³⁰—The therapeutic objective of the Hufnagel operation is to reduce the volume of blood regurgitated into the left ventricle which would of course diminish its work load. On the other hand a deleterious effect of the operation is to diminish the coronary artery perfusion pressure in these patients, since in diastole the valve (located distal to the coronary orifices) prevents backrush of blood from the lower portion of the body. Thus, the patients who

are improved by the operation presumably enjoy a decreased workload of the left ventricle which is relatively greater than the diminished perfusion pressure of the coronary vessels, as a result, relatively more oxygen is available to the myocardium. Organ perfusion is increased. On the other hand, those patients who are made worse by the operation would presumably be those whose coronary perfusion pressure (and oxygen supply to the myocardium) was relatively more diminished than was the work load of the left ventricle. In short, the Hufnagel operation represents a "physiologic gamble."

Following the Hufnagel procedure there often develops a degree of anemia which may be serious. It is particularly so when one remembers that any degree of anemia will be poorly tolerated by a myocardium whose blood supply is already limited by the diminished coronary perfusion pressure caused by the aortic valvular insufficiency. It has been suggested that the "sudden death" which occurs approximately 7 to 8 days following the Hufnagel operation in some patients is actually due to the diminished hematocrit which often occurs by this time. When coronary insufficiency is present, degrees of anemia which are normally well tolerated may seriously impair ventricular function and a comparable situation exists in patients with aortic regurgitation.

Hufnagel⁸⁴ reported patients, previously incapacitated, who had survived his operation for 3 years. The immediate mortality of operation was 20 per cent and the death of an additional 20 per cent was anticipated within the following 2 years. Yet, many patients had been able to carry out a relatively normal routine postoperatively. Our experience with only 3 patients has been encouraging.

While no one would claim that the plastic valve has solved the problem of aortic insufficiency, the important fact is that the feasibility of such an operation has been demonstrated. Open repair will come.

Congenital Heart Lesions

It has been the common practice to divide congenital heart conditions into "cyanotic" and "acyanotic" groups. However, the importance of such a descriptive classification has seemed to us to recede somewhat as physiologic data have become available from cardiac catheterization studies. Moreover, certain defects that do not produce cyanosis at one stage may do so at a later stage. For our purposes here, let it suffice to state that, in the absence of heart failure, conditions which permit a sufficiently large shunt from the right heart to the left heart will be associated with cyanosis, while those which produce a left to right shunt will not be associated with cyanosis. The direction in which blood flows through a shunt or defect is governed by the relative pressures on the two sides of the defect.

The management of congenital heart disease has become a highly specialized and refined field of endeavor, and accurate evaluation by a dependable group of pediatricians and cardiologists is virtually indispensable for the conduct of successful surgery in congenital heart disease. The diagnostic aids are the history and physical examination, electrocardiogram, plain roentgen films and angiocardiology and, highly important, cardiac catheterization.

The presence or absence of cyanosis is still of much diagnostic assistance in the management of congenital heart disease. For the patient to exhibit the bluish color imparted to the skin by the presence in the capillaries of more than 5 gm of reduced hemoglobin per 100 cc of blood, there must usually be a right to left shunt, that is, there is a passage of blood from the right heart or pulmonary circuit directly into the systemic system, bypassing the pulmonary capillaries where the blood escaping through the shunt would normally be oxygenated. Certain congenital heart lesions are rarely associated with cyanosis, whereas other lesions are usually associated with cyanosis. Of course, a left to right shunt—one from

the left heart or systemic circulation to the right heart or pulmonic circulation—would not produce cyanosis, since blood already saturated with oxygen is being ‘wasted’ into the pulmonary circuit. Yet, the oxygenated blood thus shunted will impart a higher than normal degree of oxygen saturation to the blood in the vessel or chamber to which it flows, a fact which can be established by gas analysis at cardiac catheterization and which is of aid in diagnosis. Tetralogy of Fallot is the commonest congenital heart lesion that produces cyanosis.

As just indicated, the term *shunt* is usually employed to describe an abnormal flow of blood that short-circuits the regional capillary bed. For example a pulmonary A-V shunt allows unsaturated blood from the pulmonary artery to pass directly into the pulmonary veins, without first passing through the pulmonary capillaries to be oxygenated. A right to left shunt in the heart bypasses the pulmonary capillaries, a left to right shunt in the heart bypasses systemic capillaries. Of course A-V shunts may occur anywhere in the body (Fig. 174). The direction that the blood flows through a shunt is again determined solely by the pressures on the two sides.

Murmurs are important in the diagnosis of acquired valvular heart disease but even more so in congenital heart disease. In the first place, it is usually a murmur (or cyanosis e.g. ‘blue baby’) that brings the heart lesion under study for diagnosis and treatment. A murmur is a sound produced by the rush of blood through an aperture that is in some way abnormal. Some murmurs have such distinctive and characteristic qualities that they represent the key stone of diagnosis particular ones being those of mitral stenosis and patent ductus arteriosus.

Angiography is the term applied to the injection of radiopaque material into blood vessels for roentgen visualization. Such study of the heart is called *angiocardiology*. Angiography has been employed for

visualization of virtually all the important vessels of the body.

Cardiac catheterization consists of the passage of a catheter through an antecubital vein, into the right atrium, right ventricle, and thence into the pulmonary artery, if no shunt allows it to pass elsewhere. Measurements of blood oxygen saturation in each chamber can be made from blood samples withdrawn through the catheter, cardiac output can be determined by the direct Fick principle (including estimates of the volume of flow through various shunts), and pressures can be recorded in the accessible chambers of the heart by means of sensitive recording devices. The left side of the heart is not readily accessible to catheterization unless an interatrial or interventricular septal defect exists, though recently needles have been introduced directly through the posterior chest wall and into the left heart for pressure studies. With pressures and blood oxygen saturation values available, the diagnosis of various lesions can be made.

PATENT DUCTUS ARTERIOSUS The patent ductus arteriosus is an important part of the fetal circulation (Fig. 127) for it permits a portion of the blood pumped by the right ventricle into the nonaerated lungs to pass from the pulmonary artery into the aorta. At the time of birth or within the first 2 days thereafter this shunt usually closes by a process that is poorly understood (see p. 832), and separates the pulmonary circulation from the systemic circulation. In the occasional individual this vessel does not close and in effect, an arteriovenous fistula (p. 447) remains. Since the shunt is from the aorta to the pulmonary artery, there is no cyanosis in the usual or uncomplicated case. Curiously, the incidence of this defect is greater in girls. In a series of 525 patients treated surgically by Gross,⁶⁸ 70 per cent were females.

Clinical and diagnostic features Although these children may show some retardation of growth, generally the abnormality is well tolerated during childhood and cardiac de-

compensation is not frequently observed in this age group. There is no mental retardation. The most common finding which brings the patient to the physician is the discovery of a heart murmur at the time of a routine physical examination, often at school. The murmur is the most characteristic finding, is heard best in the second or third interspace to the left of the sternum, and usually is present throughout the cardiac cycle. The systolic component is preponderant in most cases, and in the occasional subject no diastolic component is heard. The absence of the diastolic component, which occurs in perhaps 5 per cent of cases, is an indication for cardiac catheterization to rule out atrial septal defect or isolated pulmonic stenosis. The pressure in the pulmonary artery and its oxygen saturation would be elevated by the shunt of completely oxygenated blood from the high pressure aorta to the low pressure pulmonary artery. At times the catheter may pass directly from the pulmonary artery, through the defect, and into the aorta. However, the characteristic murmur is—with collateral clinical data—diagnostic in perhaps 95 per cent of cases.

Although the patent ductus may not give rise to symptoms during childhood, it should not be looked upon as a benign lesion. The partial transmission of aortic pressure to the pulmonary artery may gradually produce arteriolar thickening in the pulmonary vascular bed, with the development of pulmonary hypertension. In fact, the pulmonary arterial pressure may eventually approach the systemic pressure, due both to the shunt and to increased pulmonary arteriolar resistance, and at this point the surgical mortality becomes prohibitively high. The level of from 70 to 80 mm Hg systolic for pulmonary arterial pressure is frequently considered an arbitrary dividing line between patients who should do well following closure of the ductus and those who will not. Of course, the lower the pulmonary arterial pressure the better, and the higher it is the more unfavorable the prog-

nosis. In some patients the pressure in the pulmonary artery may exceed that in the aorta, and blood then passes in the reverse direction, perhaps producing cyanosis of the lower half of the body. This is a sinister omen, and right heart failure may soon follow.

In addition to the deleterious effects of pulmonary hypertension on the right ventricle, the A-V fistula increases the work of the left ventricle. Finally, bacterial infection may be engrafted upon the fistula, and progressive calcification and shortening of the ductus may render it difficult or hazardous to close in adult life.

There may be a *thrill* over the precordium. The ECG is usually normal, and the presence of significant right axis deviation should at least suggest the possibility of some other lesion, such as isolated pulmonic stenosis or tetralogy of Fallot. Roentgenologic changes, other than visualization of the fistula on angiography, are not particularly specific in the presence of a patent ductus. There is often some prominence of the pulmonary artery, and under fluoroscopy the so-called "hilar dance" may be observed, due to the rapid flow of blood into the pulmonary artery from the aorta during systole. In children cardiac enlargement is usually not marked and right ventricular enlargement has usually not developed, as it may over the years from a prolonged increase of pressure in the pulmonary artery. In general, the greater the diameter of the patent ductus arteriosus, the more marked will be the roentgen changes.

Surgical management of patent ductus. Since Gross first successfully ligated a patent ductus arteriosus in 1938, literally thousands of these operations have been performed. The ductus may be ligated with multiple ligatures or it may be divided. Because recurrence rates as high as 10 per cent have been reported following ligation, our present policy is to place clamps across the fully exposed ductus, partially dividing and partially suturing both the aortic and the pulmonary ends in stages (Fig 152). In

this way the ends are almost closed before the ductus has been completely divided, reducing the chance of hemorrhage should the clamps slip, and by division of the ductus the possibility of late recanalization is virtually eliminated. Rarely for technical reasons, multiple ligations may be preferable to division. As an added safety measure the aorta should be mobilized both above and below the ductus. In older subjects where aortic hemorrhage is a genuine possibility it is particularly important to have mobilized the aorta sufficiently to permit cross-clamping if necessary.

Operative results If operation is performed in children before marked pulmonary hypertension, heart failure, calcification, or subacute bacterial endocarditis has occurred the mortality should be less than 4 per cent. After age 20 the older the patient the greater the risk. Without operation life expectancy is probably in the general neighborhood of about 40 to 50 years of age, the chief cause of death being heart failure or the development of subacute bacterial endocarditis (from the stress of the fistula?). Whereas these are the two chief complications, the general retardation of physical development in childhood should be mentioned and occasionally aneurysmal dilatation of the ductus may result in rupture with death from this cause. In an analysis made by Keys and Shapiro,⁸² it was found that subjects who are alive at the age of 17 years have a subsequent life expectancy which averages only approximately one-half that of the general population. Gross believes that the ductus should be closed up to middle age, after which the increased difficulty of the operation (because of the depth of exposure and the increased rigidity of the involved vessels) renders the procedure hazardous and thus possibly not indicated unless definite symptoms of heart failure develop. Furthermore the size of the communication in such subjects is obviously a small one; for the presence of a large arteriovenous fistula would have caused heart failure and other complications

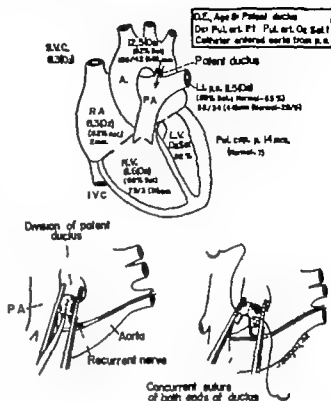


Fig 152 The patent ductus arteriosus illustrates the more important diagnostic criteria to be obtained by cardiac catheterization in any heart condition (1) abnormal pressures, (2) abnormal oxygen saturation, and (3) the passage of the catheter through abnormal openings. It is not necessary to catheterize the typical case of patent ductus arteriosus to make the diagnosis. The murmur may be virtually diagnostic (Catheterization data supplied by Dr Thomas M. Blake)

at an earlier age. Following operation the diastolic blood pressure rises, as it does following the closure of other arteriovenous fistulas and the murmur and the thrill disappear. Occasionally however, the systolic murmur persists due to dilatation of the pulmonary artery. Measurements of heart action show that the cardiac effort is diminished following closure of the fistula.

AORTIC PULMONARY SEPTAL DEFECT A congenital communication between the first parts of the ascending aorta and the pulmonary artery just above the semilunar valve is an uncommon lesion. Nevertheless it is well to be aware of this possibility when operating for patent ductus since the aortic pulmonary septal defect so closely mimics the patent ductus that it is usually encountered unexpectedly. Yet, to close this fistula is far more difficult technically than

to close the patent ductus. This is because the aortic-pulmonic septal defect is closer to the heart, is of greater length, and represents a side-to-side anastomosis rather than two separate arteries joined by a vessel of some length. While the first successful closure by Gross⁶⁷ was accomplished by ligating the communication and subsequent ones by cross-clamping using special clamps (with division and suture), Cooley and his associates³⁸ have emphasized the hazards of such an approach. They suggest that the surgeon be prepared to employ either hypothermia or the pump oxygenator, should a septal defect be found instead of the anticipated patent ductus arteriosus. Otherwise, severe hemorrhage from the under-surface of the communication may prove uncontrollable.

COARCTATION OF THE AORTA *Pathology*
Coarctation of the aorta is a constriction which most often occurs adjacent to the aortic termination of the ligamentum arteriosum, just distal to the origin of the left subclavian artery (Fig 153). The constriction may also occur either proximal or distal to this point. In fact, coarctation may occur almost anywhere in the thoracic aorta. Many prefer to attempt to classify the cases into the so-called "infantile" and "adult" types, but I have found little practical aid in such a classification. Rather, I would prefer to utilize the following more precise descriptive classification of Edwards.⁵⁰

- A Coarctation of the aorta with closed ductus arteriosus
 - 1 Coarctation in the vicinity of the ligamentum arteriosum
 - 2 Coarctation in unusual locations
 - 3 Coarctation with stenosis of the right or the left subclavian artery
- B Coarctation of the aorta with patent ductus arteriosus (about 10% of cases)
 - 1 Coarctation distal to the aortic mouth of the ductus
 - 2 Coarctation proximal to the aortic mouth of the ductus

The so-called "adult type" of coarctation may be found in infants, and the "infantile type," supposed to be characterized by a more elongated constriction, may be found in adults. Thus, we see little practical use for these terms at the present time, particularly since homografts may be inserted to bridge the defect if the ends of the distal aorta cannot be brought together without undue tension. Incidentally, even though the operation for coarctation of the ductus does not appear to be patent it should be ligated for this precaution may avoid troubles such as hemorrhage at the time of operation or perhaps disastrous hemorrhage postoperatively. If a patent ductus is situated distal to the coarctation, increased pressure in the pulmonary artery (and the lowered aortic pressure below the constriction) may reduce flow through the ductus to the distal aorta. However, if the development of collateral circulation around the coarctation has been extensive, the pressure in the distal aorta will be sufficient to cause blood to flow through the ductus from the aorta to the pulmonary artery, in the usual manner. Should the flow from the pulmonary artery to the distal aorta be sufficiently large, there would be some degree of cyanosis in the lower portion of the body.

The lumen of the coarctated segment varies considerably in size, but it is usually markedly stenosed and at times is absent.

Etiology of hypertension in coarctation
In a particularly appealing series of studies Scott and Bahnson¹³¹ investigated the role of the kidney in the development and maintenance of hypertension in experimental coarctation of the aorta. Using dogs, they produced coarctation and noted a gradual progressive rise in carotid pressure which reached a hypertensive plateau in from 1 to 7 weeks after the production of the coarctation. There was an immediate fall in femoral arterial pressure after operation, followed by a slow rise to normal and, in some instances, to supranormal levels. Subsequently, transplantation of a kidney at a level above the coarctation, with contralateral

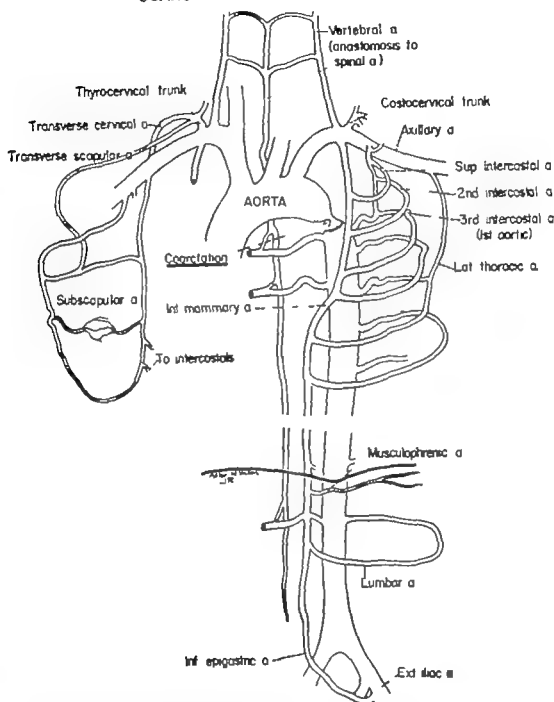
COLLATERAL CIRCULATION IN
COARCTATION OF THE AORTA

Fig 163 The cause of proximal hypertension in coarctation of the aorta is not entirely settled, but both mechanical and renal factors have been implicated.

lateral nephrectomy resulted in disappearance of hypertension in 5 animals with experimental coarctation. No change in hypertension occurred in another animal with coarctation when a kidney was transplanted to the groin and contralateral nephrectomy performed. It was concluded by Scott and Bahnson that hypertension in experimental coarctation is mediated through

a renal mechanism, and subsequent studies have strengthened this view.

In discussing the etiology of hypertension in the presence of coarctation, Little¹⁰⁹ noted that if the cause were mechanical then variations in the degree of the stenosis of the aorta and in the extent of the collateral circulation developed would be expected to cause wide fluctuations in the

degree of hypertension in individual cases. Moreover, aside from mechanical considerations, variations in blood flow to the kidneys might also be expected to influence the degree of hypertension if the renal contribution to the hypertension were important.

Diagnosis The symptoms of this condition are few, though an occasional patient may complain of fatigue or coldness in the feet and legs. In a young person, hypertension in the arms with absent or weak foot pulses should always suggest the presence of coarctation of the aorta. The comparison of the pressure in the arms with that in the legs is important, for the blood pressure in the legs is normally higher than that in the arms. Additional diagnostic aids consist of the plain roentgenogram which may show hypertrophy of the left ventricle, notching of the ribs, and a deformity of the normal outline of the descending aorta at the arch.

Angiography can be used to demonstrate the coarctation. Successful visualization of the defect is occasionally achieved by injection of the radiopaque medium into an antecubital vein, but retrograde injection through the left common carotid artery is much more effective in demonstrating the defect. However, mishaps have plagued retrograde injection and we have abandoned it, feeling that the routine use of this method will result in greater morbidity and mortality than will the rare unnecessary thoracotomy where the diagnosis is in error. For example, I have personal knowledge of 3 fatalities which occurred following retrograde angiography through the left carotid for visualization of the coarctation. An alternative method is to pass a cardiac catheter through a femoral artery and up the aorta.¹⁶³

Prognosis without operation Although patients may live through a completely normal life span with coarctation of the aorta, the general life expectancy without surgical treatment is on the order of between 35 and 40 years. In contrast, life

expectancy is presumably rendered normal if the operation is performed early enough. When death occurs it is usually due to a complication of the hypertension, to cardiac failure, or to aneurysm formation and rupture of the aorta proximal to the point of coarctation.

Surgical correction of coarctation of the aorta Coarctation of the aorta was successfully resected with end-to-end anastomosis by Crafoord of Stockholm in 1904. It followed a very short time later by a similarly successful operation by Gross.¹⁶⁴ The operation is now commonplace and is performed in most hospitals in which thoracic surgery is done. Whereas there was formerly considerable concern preoperatively on the part of the surgeon as to whether or not the length of the constriction might be such that the ends of the aorta could not be brought together without undue tension following resection, this has not been so since Gross¹⁶⁵ reported in 1951 that the use of arterial homografts produced satisfactory results.

In contrast to the brief time that a normal thoracic aorta can be occluded without risking spinal cord damage, the surgeon may take the necessary time to perform a meticulous anastomosis following resection of a coarcted segment since virtually no blood has been flowing through this segment previously. Yet, more intercostal arteries than necessary should be divided, since many collaterals (Fig. 153) have already been divided. Performing the thoracotomy and an extensive reduction of collateral circulation may result in spinal cord damage. In fact, this complication has been reported in the literature. Every effort should be made to avoid occluding the left subclavian artery during the resection, and this may often be accomplished by placing a clamp obliquely (tangentially) across one side of the usually large left subclavian artery to permit relatively normal blood flow to continue through this vessel, even when the point of coarctation is immediately distal to

point of origin from the aorta. Or, the Potts exclusion clamp may be used. Paralysis and death have been reported in a patient whose left subclavian artery was also cross clamped at the time of resection of the coarctation.

Aortic growth following resection in children. Considerable discussion has centered around the proper method of suture of the aorta following excision of the coarctation, since presumably in children the aorta must subsequently either grow to adult size or render the recurrence of coarctation probable. Johnson and Kirby⁹⁰ studied this question in pigs and found that it was probably desirable, in children, to use interrupted sutures on at least a portion of the circumference of the aorta. In patients who have reached the age of 15 or more, however, a simple continuous suture or an everting continuous mattress suture of 5-0 or 4-0 arterial silk is usually satisfactory.

Postoperative course Every effort must be made to avoid infection, which all too often will result in a rupture of the anastomosis. It is obviously important, particularly in patients whose defect tapers gradually down to the point of maximal constriction to excise a sufficient length of the aorta on either side of the constriction to permit the establishment of a lumen of normal size else the hypertension will not subside postoperatively. The presence of a thrill in the aorta at the point of anastomosis following release of the clamps indicates that the lumen is constricted and, usually, that additional aorta should be resected.

If in the immediate postoperative period the blood pressure in the legs is higher than that in the arms and if the patient has good bounding pulses in his feet it may be anticipated that the brachial arterial blood pressure will fall to normal levels over the course of the next 2 or 3 weeks, if it does not do so immediately (Fig. 154).

Paradoxical hypertension. Most surgeons have observed patients who, following

resection of a coarctation, exhibited for several days continued hypertension equal to or greater than that recorded preoperatively—at times associated with pallor, abdominal pain sweating, apprehension palpitation, tachycardia, and some fever. Sealy and co-workers¹³⁴ found this response to be due apparently to an increased secretion of norepinephrine. They reported a case of gangrene of the bowel which had resulted from the vasospasm they believed was produced by the sympathomimetic hormones.

TETRALOGY OF FALLOT "Ask a group of medical students today about the pathology of the tetralogy of Fallot and almost in unison they will say Stenosis of the pulmonary artery, interventricular septal defect, dextroposition of the aorta and hypertrophy of the right ventricle. The same question put to a group of cardiologists ten years ago would have called forth hesitant mumblings from a few who had taken mild academic interest in the subject. Nothing stimulates greater interest in a disease, hitherto completely hopeless, than the discovery of an effective therapeutic procedure. To Blalock and Taussig goes all the credit for the tremendous interest which their operation aroused in the congenital heart deformity known as tetralogy of Fallot."¹²²

Pathophysiology Tetralogy of Fallot is the most common of the congenital cyanotic lesions of the heart (Fig. 155). There is a right to left shunt which results in the passage of desaturated blood from the right ventricle into the aorta and the systemic circulation. The shunt occurs because of the fact that there is a defect high in the membranous portion of the interventricular septum and because the aorta tends in varying degrees to override the septum, receiving blood from each ventricle. In addition, stenosis of the pulmonary artery results in increased resistance, and so in systole further unsaturated blood is forced into the aorta from the right ventricle. Since a limited amount of blood can enter the pulmonary artery, pres-

degree of hypertension in individual cases. Moreover, aside from mechanical considerations, variations in blood flow to the kidneys might also be expected to influence the degree of hypertension if the renal contribution to the hypertension were important.

Diagnosis The symptoms of this condition are few, though an occasional patient may complain of fatigue or coldness in the feet and legs. In a young person, hypertension in the arms with absent or weak foot pulses should always suggest the presence of coarctation of the aorta. The comparison of the pressure in the arms with that in the legs is important, for the blood pressure in the legs is normally higher than that in the arms. Additional diagnostic aids consist of the plain roentgenogram which may show hypertrophy of the left ventricle, notching of the ribs, and a deformity of the normal outline of the descending aorta at the arch.

Angiography can be used to demonstrate the coarctation. Successful visualization of the defect is occasionally achieved by injection of the radiopaque medium into an antecubital vein, but retrograde injection through the left common carotid artery is much more effective in demonstrating the defect. However, mishaps have plagued retrograde injection and we have abandoned it, feeling that the routine use of this method will result in greater morbidity and mortality than will the rare unnecessary thoracotomy where the diagnosis is in error. For example, I have personal knowledge of 3 fatalities which occurred following retrograde angiography through the left carotid for visualization of the coarctation. An alternative method is to pass a cardiac catheter through a femoral artery and up the aorta.¹⁶³

Prognosis without operation Although patients may live through a completely normal life span with coarctation of the aorta, the general life expectancy without surgical treatment is on the order of between 35 and 40 years. In contrast, life

expectancy is presumably rendered if the operation is performed early. When death occurs it is usually due to a complication of the hypertension, to failure, or to aneurysm formation at the site of the aorta proximal to the coarctation.

Surgical correction of coarctation of the aorta Coarctation of the aorta was successfully resected with end-to-end anastomosis by Crafoord of Stockholm in 1911, followed a very short time later by a similarly successful operation by Gross. The operation is now commonplace and is performed in most hospitals in which thoracic surgery is done. Whereas there was formerly considerable concern proper technique on the part of the surgeon as to whether or not the length of the constriction might be such that the ends of the aorta could be brought together without undue tension following resection, this has not been so since Gross⁶⁹ reported in 1951 that the arterial homografts produced satisfactory results.

In contrast to the brief time that the normal thoracic aorta can be occluded without risking spinal cord damage, the surgeon may take the necessary time to perform a meticulous anastomosis following resection of a coarcted segment since virtually no blood has been flowing through this segment previously. Yet more intercostal arteries than necessary should be divided, since many collaterals (Fig 153) have already been divided. In performing the thoracotomy and anastomosis, a massive reduction of collateral circulation may result in spinal cord damage. In fact, this complication has been reported in the literature. Every effort should be made to avoid occluding the left subclavian artery during the resection, and this may often be accomplished by placing a clamp obliquely (tangentially) across one side of the normally large left subclavian artery to permit relatively normal blood flow to continue through this vessel, even when the site of coarctation is immediately distal to

point of origin from the aorta. Or, the Potts exclusion clamp may be used. Paralysis and death have been reported in a patient whose left subclavian artery was also cross-clamped at the time of resection of the coarctation.

Aortic growth following resection in children Considerable discussion has centered around the proper method of suture of the aorta following excision of the coarctation, since presumably in children the aorta must subsequently either grow to adult size or render the recurrence of coarctation probable. Johnson and Kirby²² studied this question in pigs and found that it was probably desirable, in children, to use interrupted sutures on at least a portion of the circumference of the aorta. In patients who have reached the age of 15 or more, however, a simple continuous suture or an overting continuous mattress suture of 5-0 or 4-0 arterial silk is usually satisfactory.

Postoperative course Every effort must be made to avoid infection, which all too often will result in a rupture of the anastomosis. It is obviously important, particularly in patients whose defect tapers gradually down to the point of maximal constriction to excise a sufficient length of the aorta on either side of the constriction to permit the establishment of a lumen of normal size, else the hypertension will not subside postoperatively. The presence of a thrill in the aorta at the point of anastomosis following release of the clamps indicates that the lumen is constricted and, usually, that additional aorta should be resected.

If in the immediate postoperative period the blood pressure in the legs is higher than that in the arms and if the patient has good bounding pulses in his feet, it may be anticipated that the brachial arterial blood pressure will fall to normal levels over the course of the next 2 or 3 weeks if it does not do so immediately (Fig. 154).

Paradoxical hypertension. Most surgeons have observed patients who following

resection of a coarctation, exhibited for several days continued hypertension equal to or greater than that recorded preoperatively—at times associated with pallor, abdominal pain, sweating, apprehension, palpitation, tachycardia, and some fever. Sealy and co-workers¹²⁴ found this response to be due apparently to an increased secretion of norepinephrine. They reported a case of gangrene of the bowel which had resulted from the vasospasm they believed was produced by the sympathomimetic hormones.

TETRALOGY OF FALLOT "Ask a group of medical students today about the pathology of the tetralogy of Fallot and almost in unison they will say Stenosis of the pulmonary artery, interventricular septal defect, dextraposition of the aorta and hypertrophy of the right ventricle. The same question put to a group of cardiologists ten years ago would have called forth hesitant mumblings from a few who had taken mild academic interest in the subject. Nothing stimulates greater interest in a disease, hitherto completely hopeless than the discovery of an effective therapeutic procedure. To Blalock and Taussig goes all the credit for the tremendous interest which their operation aroused in the congenital heart deformity known as tetralogy of Fallot."¹²⁵

Pathophysiology Tetralogy of Fallot is the most common of the congenital cyanotic lesions of the heart (Fig. 155). There is a right to left shunt which results in the passage of desaturated blood from the right ventricle into the aorta and the systemic circulation. The shunt occurs because of the fact that there is a defect high in the membranous portion of the interventricular septum and because the aorta tends in varying degrees to override the septum receiving blood from each ventricle. In addition, stenosis of the pulmonary artery results in increased resistance and so in systole further unsaturated blood is forced into the aorta from the right ventricle. Since a limited amount of blood can enter the pulmonary artery, pres-

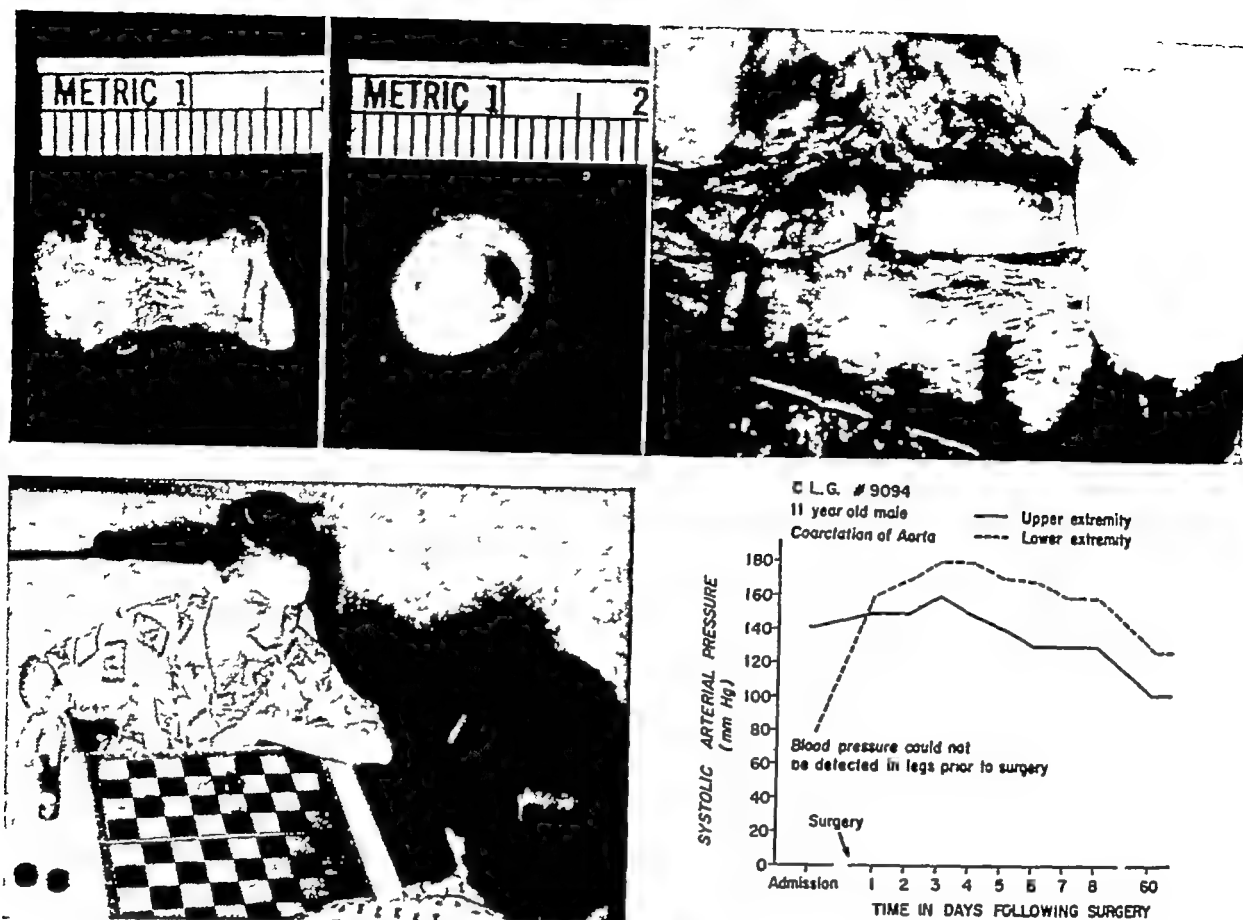


Fig 154 Case study C G, 11 years old, had all his life had cold feet, and when he exercised he found that his legs got tired easily. During a routine check-up he was found by his family physician to have hypertension, and the diagnosis of coarctation of the aorta was made. The parents postponed surgery for many months, until an episode of probable hypertensive encephalopathy with brief coma prompted immediate action. *Upper left* The excised coarcted aortic segment with very small (0.4-cm) lumen. *Upper right* Aorta following end-to-end anastomosis. *Lower left* Patient 5 days following surgery. *Lower right* Blood pressures in arms and legs before and following surgery. Note that before operation the pressure in the legs was not obtainable but that thereafter the pressure in the legs exceeded that (now normal) in the arms.

sure in the right ventricle is elevated but that in the pulmonary artery is reduced.

The cyanosis is usually present from the time of birth, though occasionally it may not develop for several months, due to the fact that the ductus arteriosus remains open for that length of time. The cyanosis may be severe and may become progressively worse, or it may be quite mild while the child is at rest. The right ventricular hypertrophy is presumably due partly to the increased pressure imparted by the left to right shunt through the interventricular septal defect, this increases the pressure against which it must pump, in addition to the aforementioned increased resistance in the pulmonary outflow tract resulting

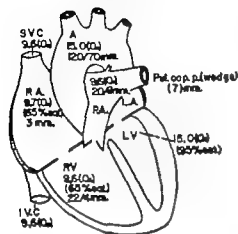
from stenosis either in the infundibulum or the pulmonary artery itself.

Clinical findings The arterial oxygen desaturation (60 to 90 per cent) which results in cyanosis also produces dyspnea. A characteristic observation is that the child squats when he is dyspneic and that squatting appears somewhat to relieve the dyspnea. In fact, this finding is of considerable diagnostic aid. It has been shown that this position apparently increases the venous return to the right heart, and that diminished cardiac output may account to a considerable degree for the dyspnea and its relief by squatting which increases cardiac output.

Clubbing of the fingers and toes is usu-

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY OF TETRALOGY OF FALLOT

Pressure and blood oxygen saturations in a normal heart



Tetralogy of Fallot

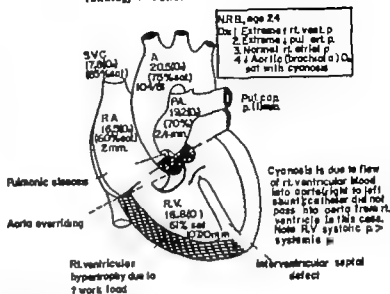


Fig. 155 The markedly elevated pressure in the right ventricle has produced right ventricular hypertrophy. The pulmonary artery pressure was very low. Overriding of the aorta with interventricular septal defect produced cyanosis. (Catheterization data supplied by Dr. Thomas M. Blake.)

ally observed in association with cyanosis, as is *polycythemia*, the red cell count ranging from 6 to 7 million per cu. mm. of blood. The cardiac murmur most commonly present is a systolic murmur to the left of the sternum which varies considerably in character and intensity. *Roentgenograms* characteristically show a "boot-shaped" heart with a blunted apex and a concavity in the region of the pulmonary segment. On *fluoroscopy* there is a paucity of vascular markings in the lung fields, and the hilar pulsations of the normal pulmonary artery are diminished or absent. The ECG characteristically shows evidence of right axis deviation due to right ventricular hypertrophy, and the absence of right ventricular hypertrophy militates considerably against the presence of tetralogy of Fallot.

While the typical case may be diagnosed with reasonable certainty on the basis of the findings already mentioned the cyanotic patients with atypical findings will require the most careful study and interpretation and in these, angiography and

particularly cardiac catheterization will be most helpful.

By *angiography* the septal defect may be revealed through premature filling of the aorta from the right ventricle, due to the fact that the aorta overrides the ventricular septum (at least physiologically). Late filling of the lung vasculature is a result of the obstruction to the entrance of blood from the right ventricle into the pulmonary artery.

Cardiac catheterization may demonstrate that the catheter can pass from the right ventricle into either the aorta or the pulmonary artery and, of course, it may pass into the left ventricle because of the septal defect. The systolic pressure in the right ventricle may approach that in the aorta (i.e., brachial arterial pressure), whereas the pressure in the pulmonary artery is low (Fig. 155). Since the pressure relationships which usually exist favor the shunt of unsaturated blood from the right ventricle to the left ventricle and into the aorta the oxygenation of the blood in the right ventricle is not increased above usual venous

values, as it would be if the shunt were from left to right. Kjellberg and his associates⁹⁵ prefer to do cardiac catheterization on most cases and to perform angiocardiology through the cardiac catheter. Our own policy is that virtually all cyanotic children be catheterized, to provide all possible information relative to the location and physiologic characteristics of the defect.

Correction of tetralogy of Fallot The one of the four defects of the tetralogy which originally permitted surgical amelioration of the condition was pulmonic stenosis. In 1945 Blalock and Taussig²⁸ conceived the idea of passing additional blood through the lungs to permit increased oxygenation. They achieved this by anastomosing a subclavian artery to a pulmonary artery, creating an "artificial patent ductus arteriosus." Whereas prior to operation the arterial oxygen saturation might have been on the order of 70 per cent, the value was increased to perhaps 80 to 90 per cent following their procedure. When the length and especially the diameter of the subclavian artery proved difficult to work with in some of the very young, Potts, Smith, and Gibson¹²³ reported a method of anastomosing the aorta directly to a pulmonary artery by means of a special clamp which permitted continued flow of blood through the aorta while pinching off a portion of its wall adjacent to the pulmonary artery, permitting construction of a side-to-side fistula. By this means an opening of a definite size was produced, usually approximately 6 mm, and this operation has been widely adopted for use in infants.

These artificial shunts produced dramatic improvement in patients with tetralogy of Fallot, albeit by virtue of having produced still another defect, and they stimulated prodigious enthusiasm and investigation in the field of congenital heart disease. Subsequently it was suggested that, instead of producing a fifth defect, the defects be reduced to three by passing a rongeur through a purse-string suture in the wall of the right ventricle and excising the

stenosing tissue in the infundibulum at the base of the ventricle. However, this presented a blind and more difficult procedure and the mortality was, in our hands, higher than that which was associated with the more simple shunt procedures. Later, Lillihei and his associates at Minnesota excised the stenosing tissue under direct vision and also closed the interventricular septal defect in patients with tetralogy of Fallot, using first the occluding technique and later the pump-oxygenator. At this writing their mortality has ranged from 20 to 30 per cent, while the mortality associated with the Blalock-Taussig and Potts-Smith-Gibson procedures has ranged from 10 to 15 per cent. Nevertheless, it is probable that in the future complete correction of the tetralogy of Fallot will be carried out under direct vision in a bloodless field at the time of open heart surgery. Meanwhile, the artificial shunts provide much benefit and can be performed by competent surgeons almost anywhere—until the problems attendant upon the use of the pump-oxygenator have been sufficiently solved to permit safe general use of dependable equipment and operation of patients who need it can be performed at a later age.

*Prognosis following a shunt operation for tetralogy of Fallot*¹⁵¹ Although the life span of these patients cannot yet be determined, as little more than 10 years has passed since the first patients were operated upon, approximately three-fourths of those coming to surgery have been considerably benefited. Improvement consists of increased exercise tolerance, diminution of cyanosis and clubbing, and reduced polycythemia. In most of the successful cases a continuous murmur can be heard at the site of the anastomosis, in fact, the presence of this murmur soon after operation is a favorable prognostic sign. The annual mortality rate has not been much above 10 per cent, and this has included the risk to which these patients are inevitably exposed whether they have an operation

not Heart size has not increased as much as the presence of a fistula would have been thought likely to occasion. For example, Campbell and Deuchar³⁸ found that the cardio-thoracic ratio might increase quickly from 48 to 52 per cent but then remain constant during the period of observation.

CONGENITAL (PURE, ISOLATED) PULMONIC STENOSIS. *Definition and pathophysiology* The term congenital pulmonic stenosis is used to denote one or more types of obstruction in the pulmonary outflow tract.³⁴ The obstruction may be located (1) in the pulmonary artery itself (pulmonary atresia), (2) at pulmonary valve (valvular stenosis), and (3) in the outflow portion of the right ventricle (infundibular stenosis). Tricuspid atresia may also simulate pulmonic stenosis. Obviously the anatomic nature of the obstruction will have much

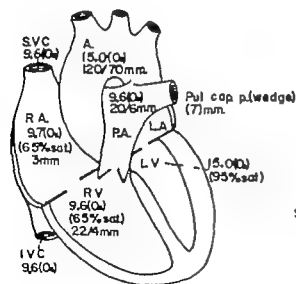
to do with methods of approach to it and with the success that can be achieved.

Pulmonic stenosis will here be considered as occurring in the absence of a septal defect and furthermore, particular attention will be devoted to those cases in which the chief pathology consists of a conelike fusion of the cusps of the pulmonary valve, which fusion may vary from a negligible degree to almost complete (pinpoint) occlusion.

The pulmonary artery is usually dilated beyond the point of stenosis, the characteristic so-called "post-stenotic dilatation" (Figs. 156 and 170). Moreover, in general the more severe the stenosis the greater the degree of post-stenotic dilatation. The largest pulmonary artery that I ever saw was encountered in a 35-year-old woman with this disease who was operated upon. Successful pulmonic valvulotomy was per-

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY OF ISOLATED PULMONIC STENOSIS

Pressures and blood oxygen saturations in a normal heart



SC age 5
Pure pulmonic stenosis
O₂ saturations normal
pressures diagnostic

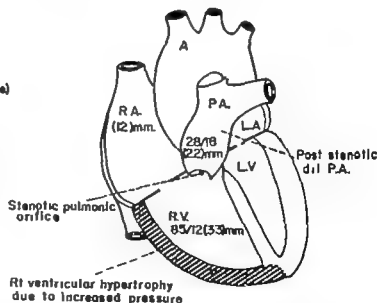


Fig 156 The diagnosis of pulmonic stenosis is established by demonstrating a gradient of diminishing pressure between the right ventricle and the pulmonary artery. In this patient a normal or slightly elevated pulmonary artery pressure (28/18) was achieved at the expense of a marked rise in right ventricular pressure. The measurement of only pulmonary artery pressure in this subject would not have indicated the pulmonic stenosis. (Catheterization data supplied by Dr Thomas M Blake.)

formed through the wall of the right ventricle near the pulmonary outflow tract. Improvement was such that, whereas previously she was almost continually in cardiac decompensation, she was subsequently able to perform her active housework and to resume her position as a secretary with an insurance company.

A patent (or potentially patent) foramen ovale is often associated with pulmonic stenosis, and if this defect is sufficiently large and the pressure in the right atrium sufficiently elevated, a right-to-left atrial shunt may result in cyanosis. However, in the absence of such interatrial or interventricular septal defects, which are not under discussion at this point, these patients are not cyanotic unless actual heart failure with the cyanosis so produced has supervened. In other words, while pulmonary outflow obstruction diminishes cardiac output, all blood that is ejected into the systemic arteries has passed through the lungs and is saturated. Yet, the dyspnea and decreased exercise tolerance may be marked. Cardiac enlargement is usually associated with a systolic murmur at the base of the heart and perhaps a thrill. Right ventricular enlargement is present but the lung fields are clear, since too little rather than too much blood flows through the pulmonary bed. The increased effort of the right ventricle results in right axis deviation in the ECG, evidence of right ventricular strain. *Cardiac catheterization* reveals considerably increased pressure in the right ventricle with a relatively low pressure in the pulmonary artery beyond the point of stenosis. By noting changes in pressure along the pulmonary outflow tract, it may be possible to localize the site of stenosis as being in the infundibulum or at the pulmonic valve or both. Moreover, pressure measurements at operation may reveal a second point of stenosis after relief of a first. Oxygen values are normal. *Angiography* exhibits no overriding of the aorta or septal defect, but the medium remains

abnormally long in the right ventricle, slow filling of the lung fields.

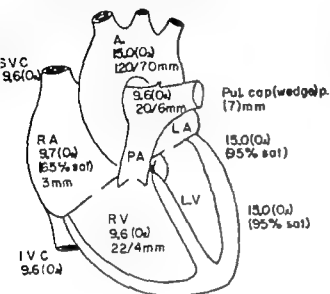
Surgical correction consists of introducing a valvulotome through the wall of right ventricle, advancing it into the pulmonary outflow tract,³¹ and thus enlarging the opening in the pulmonary artery. As an alternative approach, the stenosis may be relieved under direct vision, using either hypothermia or the pump-oxygenator operation, the location of the thrill in the pulmonary outflow tract is perhaps the most reliable indicator of the site of obstruction. Palpation of a domelike, stiff pulmonic valve further localizes the stenosis at this point.

Results are generally good, particularly when the stenosis affects the cusps of pulmonic valve itself, and the operative mortality is low. Postoperative catheterization should reveal a substantial reduction in right ventricular pressure and an elevation in pulmonic arterial pressure.

ATRIAL SEPTAL DEFECT (FIG 157) A patent foramen ovale is present in from 20 to 30 per cent of all adults, but in most cases the septa are fully developed and the valve covers the opening, though it is imperfectly fused. Yet, in some patients an actual left-to-right shunt exists. If the opening is small, the individual may live a normal life span without symptoms. If it is large, the shunt may markedly increase (4 to 10 times) the flow of blood (recirculation) through the right side of the heart and the pulmonary circuit, leading to right-sided heart failure in early or middle age. Since normally the pressure in the left atrium is higher than that in the right, these patients are usually not cyanotic. On the other hand, should pulmonary pathology develop to the extent that the pressures in the pulmonary artery, right ventricle, and right atrium are sufficiently increased, the septal defect (or the patent foramen ovale that was previously functionally closed) may permit right to left shunt to develop, producing cyanosis.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY OF ATRIAL SEPTAL DEFECT

Pressures and blood oxygen saturations in a normal heart



Pressures and blood oxygen saturations in atrial septal defect

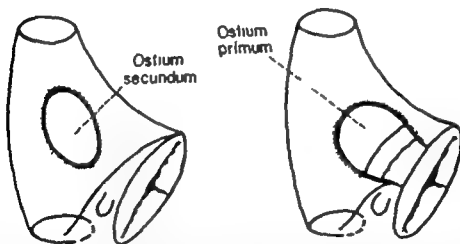
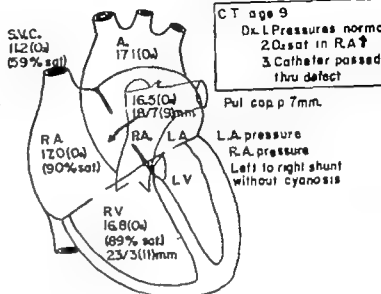


Fig 157 The recirculation through the lungs of oxygenated blood passing from the left atrium to the right atrium increases the work load of the right ventricle. The increase in flow through the pulmonary vascular bed may thus be great. Right heart failure eventually ensues, but an interatrial septal defect of even moderate size is often well tolerated for many years. (Catheterization data supplied by Dr Thomas M. Blais.)

Diagnosis The development of surgical techniques for the closure of atrial septal defects spotlighted the need for more precise diagnostic information including the size and location of the defect and the exclusion or identification of other heart lesions.

While the clinical diagnosis of an uncomplicated atrial defect is usually made without difficulty on the basis of clinical data and roentgen examination, *cardiac catheterization* is necessary to verify the diagnosis to estimate the amount of shunted

(recirculated) blood, and to measure the pressure in the pulmonary artery. The passage of the catheter from the right atrium to the left atrium does not necessarily establish that a shunt exists, since the catheter may have passed through a small probe-patent foramen ovale, nevertheless, if the arterial oxygen saturation in the right atrium is higher than that in the cavae, a left to right shunt is present. In the usual case, pressure measurements are not too helpful, since the pressure gradient from left to right need not be large.

It may be difficult to differentiate an atrial septal defect from a high ventricular septal defect, or from multiple other defects such as anomalous drainage of pulmonary venous flow into the right atrium. However, using all available evidence, plus angiocardiology, the diagnosis can usually be made. In a pure atrial septal defect the angiocardigram is not very helpful, since the direction of interatrial flow is from left to right.

Finally, it is important, when possible, to differentiate the ostium secundum defect from the far more complicated ostium primum and common atrioventricular canal. At thoracotomy the nature of the defect can be further defined by first exploring with the finger through the atrial appendage, prior to formal cardiectomy.

The *murmur* of atrial septal defect is moderate in intensity and is heard best over the second left interspace. On *roentgenogram* the right heart is not enlarged unless the shunt is of moderate size. The ECG is likely to show incomplete right bundle branch block, combined with right ventricular hypertrophy and thus right axis deviation.

Surgical treatment The ostium secundum defects have been closed by a variety of methods. Bailey⁶ and others inverted the atrial appendage to close the defect. Gross⁷⁰ advanced the atrial well technic, while Swan¹⁴⁸ and Lewis¹⁰¹ employed hypothermia. Bjork and his associates^{25, 26} advocated

the circumferential suture technic. However, the more serious ostium primum complex is not readily amenable to correction with these methods, and open heart surgery using the pump-oxygenator is probably the method of choice.

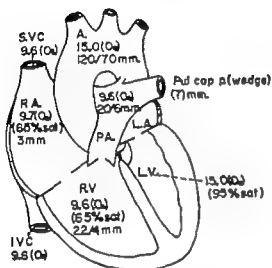
INTERVENTRICULAR SEPTAL DEFECT (FIGS 158 AND 159) *Pathophysiology* Interventricular septal defect is one of the members of the tetralogy of Fallot, but it may also occur separately. The isolated defect is usually high in the membranous portion of the septum, and may vary in size from a very small opening to one several centimeters in diameter. Much more rarely, a defect may be present in the muscular portion of the septum—congenital, traumatic, or secondary to infarction. The severity of the circulatory derangement and attendant symptomatology are proportional to the size of the opening. Small defects allow only a slight shunt of blood from the left ventricle into the right ventricle and pulmonary artery. Large defects allow much blood to pass through the opening from the left ventricle to the right ventricle, because of the marked pressure difference. The increased pressure and flow in the right heart and pulmonary circuit leads to right ventricular enlargement and pulmonary hypertension due to changes in the pulmonary vascular bed. The pressure in the right ventricle may eventually exceed that in the left ventricle, at which time the shunt changes from left to right, to right to left, and cyanosis appears. Right heart failure follows.

Diagnosis Symptoms may be absent or minimal if the defect is not large. In fact, a small defect which produces a murmur but little else is compatible with a long life. Thus, the murmur *per se*, which is characteristically harsh and heard best in the third or fourth interspace to the left of the sternum, is not an indication for surgery. A thrill may be present.

Roentgenograms may reveal hypertrophy of the left ventricle, due to the increased work load imposed by the shunt, and hyper-

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY OF INTERVENTRICULAR SEPTAL DEFECT

Pressures and blood oxygen saturations in a normal heart



Pressures and blood oxygen saturations in ventricular septal defect

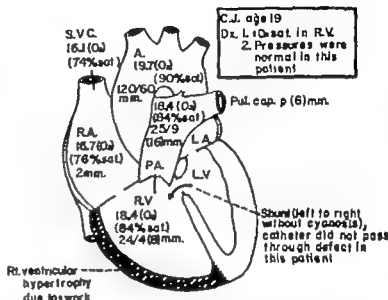


Fig 168 Interventricular septal defects are diagnosed by physical examination and by cardiac catheterization. Angiocardiograms are less informative because the shunt is from left to right that is, the contrast medium flowing into the right ventricle from the right atrium might be diluted by the shunt, but the left ventricle would not be visualized prior to visualization of the lung fields the aorta would not be filled prematurely unless there was overriding—which condition would no longer represent a simple interventricular septal defect. The left ventricle may also exhibit hypertrophy (Catheterization data supplied by Dr Thomas M Blake)

trophy also of the right ventricle. Pulmonary hypertension may develop. The ECG may show evidence of left ventricular hypertrophy if pulmonary hypertension is not present however, hypertrophy of both ventricles may be noted. Angiocardiography is not particularly helpful. Cardiac catheterization is especially valuable if the catheter can be made to enter the aorta from the right ventricle. Not as definitive, but valuable is demonstration of increased oxygen saturation in the right ventricle as compared with the right atrium. Measurements of blood flow may reveal a pulmonary flow that is many times the systemic flow, if the defect is large and pulmonary resistance low. If the catheter enters the defect promptly it may be difficult to determine whether or not overriding of the aorta is

present or a simple interventricular defect is present. In this event, angiography may disclose a normal aortic root. If the patient has a sizable right to left shunt because of severe right ventricular (and pulmonary) hypertension it may be possible to distinguish an atrial septal defect from a ventricular septal defect by injecting Evans blue dye through the catheter. If the circulation time to a recording oximeter on the ear is less when the dye is ejected in the right ventricle than in the pulmonary artery, then a ventricular defect is present. A small ventricular septal defect is not easy to diagnose unless the catheter can be passed through it.

Surgical correction of interventricular septal defect. A considerable number of interventricular septal defects have now been

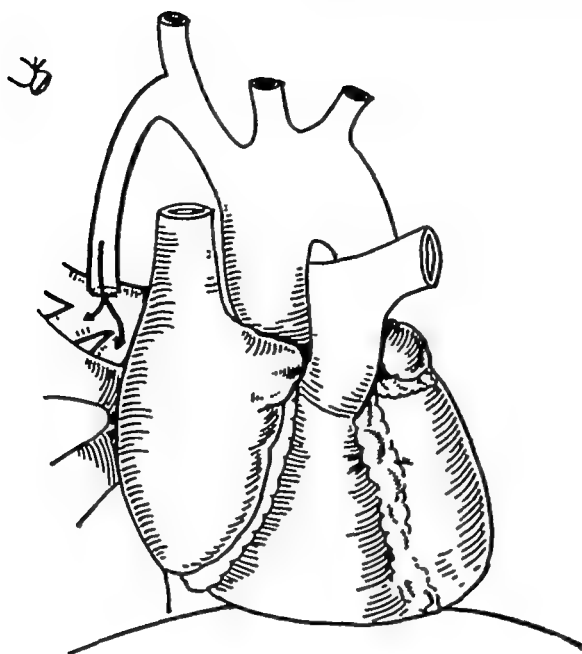
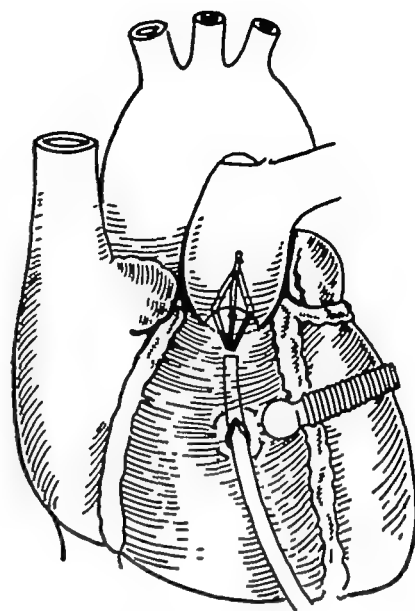
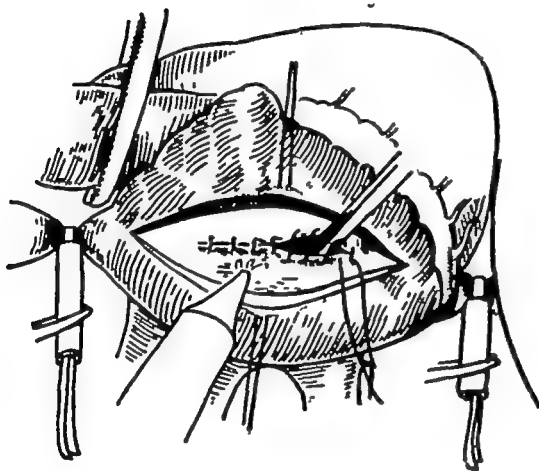
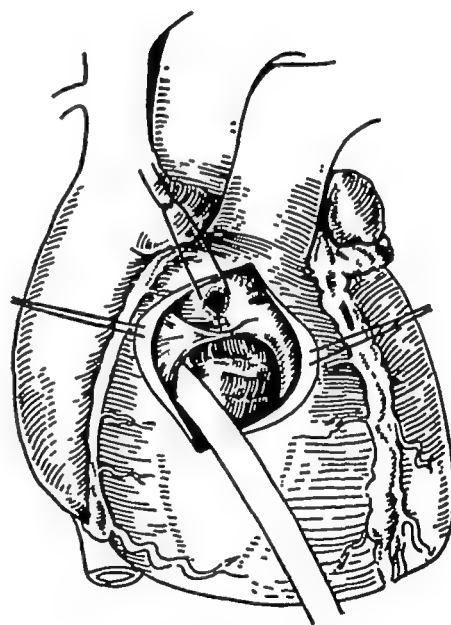
**Blalock anastomosis****Brock valvulotomy****Closure of an atrial septal defect under direct vision using hypothermia****Simple suture**

Fig 159 Representative corrective operations for tetralogy of Fallot, isolated pulmonic stenosis, interatrial septal defect and interventricular septal defect. Open heart surgery is permitting rapid modification of previous concepts and technics.

closed successfully, in some cases under hypothermia but far more often using a pump-oxygenator (Fig 160). However, the operative mortality has ranged in the neighborhood of 30 per cent, and unless the defect is large and producing significant symptoms and pulmonary hypertension, it would appear advisable to temporize until further experience with the pump-oxygenator³² has accumulated. On the other hand, where the

size of the defect is producing physical derangements which justify the operative risk, surgery should be performed. There is some evidence that pulmonary hypertension present in infancy does not invariably persist in later years.⁴²

TRANSPOSITION OF THE PULMONARY V. Various degrees of pulmonary venous drainage into the right side of the heart may occur, and occasionally the entire venous

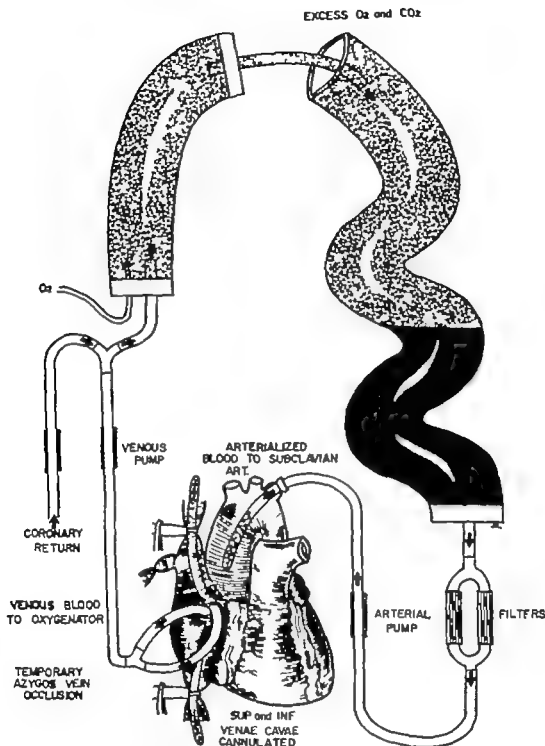


Fig 100 The DeWall Lillehei pump-oxygenator. The blood is removed from the venae cavae at the left and pumped into the helix. Oxygen is bubbled through the blood as it rises upward and flows across to the right. As it flows downward the now oxygenated blood releases CO₂ to the air. The blood then passes through the filters, and an arterial pump returns the oxygenated blood to the left subclavian (or femoral) artery. A number of different oxygenators are now commercially available but basically all are designed for extracorporeal oxygenation of the blood and the removal of CO₂.

monary drainage may enter the right heart. Whereas partial drainage of the pulmonary veins into the right side of the heart is readily compatible with life, total anomalous drainage is not well tolerated, death

usually occurring before the age of 6 months. For life to continue in the presence of complete pulmonary drainage into the right atrium, there must exist some connection between the right and left sides of the

heart, usually a patent foramen ovale or an interventricular septal defect. Muller¹¹⁶ reported 2 cases, 1 successful, in which the venous drainage from the left lung was anastomosed to the left atrial appendage. Cyanosis diminished. Further success in the correction of this condition has already been achieved at open heart surgery using the pump-oxygenator.

TRANSPOSITION OF THE AORTA AND PULMONARY ARTERY Thus far the treatment of this condition is among the least satisfactory of the relatively common congenital heart lesions. Abbott¹ found an incidence of 5 per cent in an autopsy series of 1000 cases of congenital heart disease, as compared to an incidence of 8 per cent of tetralogy of Fallot.

One-fourth of the infants with transposition die in 1 month, and more than three-fourths are dead by the end of 1 year. The basic defect is that the left ventricular output (through the pulmonary artery) returns to the left atrium, and blood leaving the right ventricle (through the aorta) returns to the right atrium. Basically, therefore, the systemic and the pulmonary circulations are anatomically separate. Accordingly, there must, of course, be some point of communication between the two, so that venous blood may enter the pulmonary circuit and arterial blood may enter the systemic circuit. This is commonly achieved through either an interventricular or an interatrial (less commonly, both) septal defect. Regarding life expectancy, those children with an interventricular septal defect have the most favorable outlook, and those with a combination of both defects the best outlook of all. Nevertheless, few indeed of these children live beyond childhood and, as mentioned above, three-fourths are dead within the first year of life.

A variety of shunt procedures have been attempted, including the establishment of an artificial interatrial defect, but so far the surgical treatment has been relatively unsuccessful. The clinical findings leading to the diagnosis were outlined by Taussig¹⁵⁰

and one of the more extensive early attempts at corrective surgery in such patients was reported by Hanlon and Blalock.⁷⁰ In 33 patients three types of operations were attempted. These included some type of extracardiac venous or arterial shunt, the creation of an atrial septal defect, and a combination of these two methods. In the first 28 patients operated upon there were 22 deaths. Nevertheless, the last several years have witnessed great strides in the surgical management of congenital heart disease, and this defect may in the future be corrected with operations yet to be devised.

The Peripheral Vessels: Pathophysiology and Therapeutic Principles

The first section of this chapter dealt with the general physiology of the circulation, and it was emphasized that the three basic factors which maintain a normal blood pressure are the pump (heart), something to pump (blood volume), and something to pump against (peripheral vascular resistance). The following discussion will be concerned with the pathophysiology of the blood vessels themselves. Although certain diseases are of particular importance in producing alterations in the blood pressure, there are specific diseases of the blood vessels which do not necessarily have a particular effect upon the general blood pressure, but they have profound effects upon the functional integrity of the blood vessels in their rôle as conduits for blood flow to the tissues.

The Diagnosis of Vascular Disease

THE HISTORY As with most clinical conditions, a careful history of the onset, character, and subsequent course of peripheral vascular disease is often of much assistance in reaching a correct interpretation of the pathology. Accordingly, it is convenient to begin this section with a review of some of the more outstanding symptoms of peripheral vascular disease, followed by a review of

the prominent physical manifestations of vascular disorders. Certain of the more commonly used tests for circulatory dysfunction will then be considered and, lastly, individual diseases will be taken up.

Pain. The pain associated with peripheral vascular disorders may be mild or it may be most severe, and it is the symptom which most often brings the patient to the physician. While this is more true of arterial disease than of venous disease, it is also a prominent symptom in certain types of venous disease. Of special importance in the diagnostic value of pain are its severity, timing, and the measures which afford relief. For example, The pain caused by a glomus (vascular) tumor beneath the fingernail may be excruciatingly severe and paroxysmal, coming on particularly when pressure is applied to the fingernail or when the patient experiences abrupt variations in temperatures. There may be little or no obvious change in the circulation of the digit. The pain associated with chronic and progressive arteriosclerosis may at first not be particularly discomforting to the patient but as the disease process continues the pain becomes more constant and boring, occurring particularly at night when he is unable to sleep. This relentless inexorable pain in the foot may finally cause the patient to seek amputation. In fact, it is our practice to allow the patient to make up his own mind and be convinced by the pain of the necessity for an amputation, rather than to persuade him against his will. If the latter is done he will often be resentful later, for he may feel that amputation was not essential. Still another type of pain is the sudden, extremely severe pain which may be associated with embolism to a major vessel, as at the bifurcation of the femoral artery. This pain is usually worse at the beginning (though there are exceptions to this), the leg is cold and sensation may rapidly diminish in the lower leg and foot. If the occlusion occurs at the bifurcation of the aorta or the bifurcation of the iliac artery, then the loss of sensation and of power in the

distal leg will extend to a higher level. The pain which follows arterial occlusion is essentially due to ischemia. In contrast to all of this, some patients have little pain following embolic occlusion, there being principally weakness and numbness of the part. The character of the pain in Raynaud's disease is virtually diagnostic. Causalgia, a "neuralgic" vascular pain, may follow vascular injury.

Intermittent claudication is the term applied to the pain or fatigue or cramps which persons with arteriosclerosis or other disease causing diminished blood flow may have on exercise. The pain or tightness or tiredness experienced in the muscles of the part gradually disappears when the person halts and rests. Actually, "tiredness" usually develops first, followed by pain of increasing severity if activity is not halted, further exercise eventually becoming impossible because of collapse of the leg.

The symptoms may affect the distal foot, the arch of the foot, the calf, or the thigh muscles, depending upon the level of arterial occlusion. In order to define the approximate severity of the circulatory deficit and the efficacy of therapeutic measures, it is useful to determine the approximate distance that the patient can walk before claudication discomfort begins. Again, while the initial discomfort of arterial insufficiency may amount to little more than a feeling of fatigue, the symptoms usually progress with the arteriosclerotic process until the patient is disabled. Yet, this may be long in coming. We resected the occluded lower aorta of a man who 15 years previously on the advice of his physician, had begun to limit exercise due to arterial insufficiency in the legs. Preoperatively he had pain even at rest, but foot pulses were reestablished by homografting, the ischemic ("trophic") changes gradually regressed, and exercise tolerance was good. Naturally, with sclerotic changes in the smaller vessels also, blood flow would not permit vigorous exercise.

Rest pain is discomfort due to arterial

insufficiency (ischemia) which occurs even at rest, perhaps being worse at night. This is a sinister and ominous symptom, which often precedes gangrene. When pain is constant even at rest, the prognosis without successful surgery is very poor.

Pain has been used as an illustrative symptom because of its pre-eminent importance, but in taking the history many other types of information should be sought. The character of the onset and the progress of the disease will also be shown to be important in diagnosis as specific diseases are taken up later in this discussion.

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION *Inspection.* The experienced clinician carefully interprets what he hears by way of history and what he sees and finds by way of physical examination, before proceeding to select the laboratory studies which appear to be most likely to provide additional pertinent information in the given case. Thus, a careful physical examination is no less important than a careful history in the management of peripherovascular disease. To cite a single example, with experience it is usually possible to determine accurately, merely by inspection of an extremity, the probable ultimate prognosis—especially if effective therapy such as arterial homografting is not feasible. One of my professors used periodically to make rounds solely by inspecting each patient and then attempting to name the condition for which the individual was being studied or treated—no historical, laboratory, or other data were given him. It was often startling to find that this superior clinician had with only his eyes reached a correct diagnosis which the rest of the staff had taken days to achieve. To see, one must consciously look for, and in no other field is this more true than in that of peripherovascular disease.

The color of the skin often reflects significant facts regarding the state of the circulation of the extremity. The color of the skin, disregarding various types of pigmentation, is usually due to the circulation through the blood vessels of the skin. The

skin color is affected by the amount of blood and by the color of the blood. Thus, the less the capillary flow, the greater will be the concentration of reduced hemoglobin in the blood that does pass into the skin—since the tissues will extract the maximum amount of oxygen from the limited amount of blood.

It is not necessary to consider in detail here all the changes in color which may occur in various types of vascular disease. Let it suffice to say that the extremity in which arterial or arteriolar occlusion has essentially shut off distal blood flow is pale and white. If the blood flow is incompletely occluded, however, permitting a small amount of blood to pass through but under diminished hydrostatic pressure, the marked desaturation of the hemoglobin present will result in variable degrees of cyanosis, as noted above.

Passive filling of minute vessels—such as that produced by obstruction to the outflow of blood as in femoral thrombophlebitis—deepens the color of the skin and cyanosis may also appear. On the other hand, engorgement of the small vessels of the skin may result primarily from excessive dilatation of the small vessels themselves, as in *erythromelalgia*. The redness or rubor of erythromelalgia has a different hue, usually, from that which is due to occlusive arterial disease of the extremity in which blood enters the finer vessels under a reduced head of pressure.

In a patient we treated who had Raynaud's phenomenon, different fingers were involved to different degrees, and during attacks the color of individual fingers reflected the variations in vascular pathology. The most severely involved digits were pale, almost white, and at the tip of one finger there was an anesthetic area in which trophic, inflammatory ("false felon"), and even early gangrenous changes could be seen (Fig 165). Those fingers that were less severely affected were quite pale, and others still less seriously affected exhibited only cyanosis. Cyanosis is, of course, to be pre-

ferred to the pallor of advanced ischemia. In summary, the exposure of the hand affected by Raynaud's phenomenon to cold results in a fairly typical train of circumstances. Due to a local hypersensitivity to cold, the excessive contraction of arteries and arterioles may be such that blood flow to the digits stops completely (This may be demonstrated by a lack of bleeding when the 'white' finger is pricked or by observing the absolute stasis in the capillary loops on finger microscopy, or by plethysmography, oscillometry and arteriography.) If the exposure to cold is prolonged, sensory changes in the finger will occur and it will eventually become anesthetic. In contrast, as the finger is warmed the opposite train of events is observed. As the spasm of the arterioles diminishes and relaxation occurs, the first blood released into the capillary bed is rapidly deoxygenated and a cyanosis results. Thereafter there may be excessive relaxation of the arterioles with dilatation of the capillaries to an unusual degree—the well known reactive hyperemia—that is probably due to the accumulation of metabolites during the period of anoxia. This is referred to as the 'pink burning' stage of reactive hyperemia.^{54, 57} The color of the skin is influenced not only by blood flow but also by temperature. When the circulation to the skin is arrested cyanosis occurs much more rapidly in warm skin than it does in cold skin, since oxygen is given up more quickly when the skin is warm than when the skin is cold. Moreover the oxygen requirements of the cooled extremity are less than those of the warm extremity. In the normal subject the venous blood of the forearm can be 'arterialized' if by heating the extremity, great vasodilatation results in an excessive rate of blood flow, under these circumstances the blood gas values of the venous blood approximate those of arterial blood.

The changes in color which occur in occlusive peripheral arterial disease are almost diagnostic and do not commonly occur in the other conditions which will be con-

sidered. The extremity with normal blood flow may exhibit some pallor when raised above the level of the heart for several minutes, as compared with the extremity which has not been raised, but the color of the two extremities quickly becomes identical when the elevated extremity is lowered to the level of the unraised extremity. Moreover, there does not occur a reactive rubor or hyperemia of the extremity when it is lowered to its usual position. On the other hand in the presence of advanced arterial occlusion the extremity assumes excessive pallor when elevated for a few moments and then it is likely to assume an appearance of angry, dusky redness (rubor) when it is placed in a dependent position following elevation. This redness in the dependent position does not indicate excessive blood flow but indicates abnormal dilatation and loss of capillary tone for the blood that does enter these vessels. The pallor on elevation is due to lack of a sufficient head of pressure. Moreover, the degree of pallor which occurs serves as some indication of the severity of the impairment of the arterial circulation. (If the pallor on elevation is patchy, it may indicate the occlusion of some digital arteries but not of others.³) When the feet are then lowered to a dependent position, normal color may not return to the skin of the lower extremities at the normal rate. If this is prolonged to a period of 45 seconds or a minute, vascular flow in the extremities is abnormal. In general, the greater the length of time required for 'normal' color to return to the foot, the greater is the degree of arterial occlusion. If complete arterial occlusion occurs, as from a sudden and massive arterial embolus the foot remains pale even in the dependent position. Therefore, the fact that redness does develop in the dependent position indicates the presence of some blood flow but the appearance of redness with associated cyanosis usually indicates an inadequate blood flow. There are exceptions to this, however, as in acrocyanosis or erythromelalgia. In the patient with occlusive peripheral arterial disease,

if there is a constant dusky redness of the feet in the dependent position, a precarious balance between blood flow and tissue requirements exists, and the prognosis without successful treatment is poor

Acrocyanosis, as pointed out, may produce constant discoloration distal to the wrist and distal to the ankles. If this is not completely persistent but tends to be so, it may be due to a late stage of Raynaud's disease. The condition in which persistent bluish to bluish-red mottling of the skin of the extremities is present is known as "livido reticularis." It may involve the hands and arms or the lower part of the trunk, but it particularly may involve the thighs. The livido is made more prominent by exposure to cold.³

Another type of skin discoloration which may be misleading and may suggest serious peripherovascular disease is that of the brownish changes due to continuous exposure of the legs to an open fire, oven, or closed heater. These patients, who have sat very close to the hearth with their legs exposed, are usually females, since the trousers cover the legs of men, the pigmentation may be permanent and ulceration may occur. I had previously encountered this phenomenon only in older patients and had considered that it might be due to deficient skin circulation resulting in a slow dissipation of the heat from the stove or fire. However, I have more recently encountered it in youngsters in whom there was no particular reason to suspect the presence of inadequate circulation to the extremity.

"Stasis pigmentation" accompanies varicose veins or chronic phlebitis and is frequently noted around the ankle, particularly above the medial malleolus. Such changes reflect chronic underlying venous disease.

Trophic alterations in the skin and its appendages may also result from ischemia, and they justify a cautious prognosis in patients with aortic occlusive disease who are to be operated upon. Among these findings are slickness and shininess of the skin, loss

of hair, and deformity of the nails. These changes may even precede intermittent claudication, but local pain or fatigue on exercise usually comes first. Muscular atrophy and the loss of subcutaneous supporting tissue may reduce the circumference of the toes.

Palpation The temperature of the skin is influenced by an extraordinary variety of circumstances. This organ must respond not only to variations in ambient temperature but also to the changes in metabolism within. Blood flow is reflexly altered according to the need to lose or to conserve body heat, as was pointed out in the discussion of body temperature regulation. Skin temperature is elevated after exercise, a warm bath, a heavy meal, and under many other conditions. Clearly then, if skin temperature is to reflect changes in vascular physiology *per se*, it must be measured under basal conditions and in a constant temperature room (see below).

Information concerning skin temperatures in one person cannot readily be transferred to another, but the paired extremities of the same person can be compared with each other. For example, lowered temperature in any particular extremity or digit, as compared with its opposite or other members, may well indicate inadequate circulation to the part. In contrast, increased heat in an extremity, in the absence of infection, may indicate increased blood flow through the extremity, such as may be found in the presence of an arteriovenous fistula or a cavernous hemangioma. Finally, the changes in skin temperature do not necessarily reflect with accuracy the blood flow to the underlying muscles which are, after all, the source of the pain in intermittent claudication.

The palpation of arterial pulsations is an extremely important part of the peripheral vascular examination. This is because it is readily done and may give information that is diagnostic. Every physical examination should include a specific notation regarding the dorsalis pedis and posterior

tibial pulses. If the foot pulses cannot be felt, the popliteals should be examined and, if these are not palpable, then the femorals. Absence of both femoral pulses may indicate aortic occlusion, which may be surgically correctable. Absence of one femoral pulsation in the presence of the other may indicate occlusion of the common iliac artery at its bifurcation on that side, since occlusions frequently involve the bifurcation of a particular artery. Absent arterial pulsations in the legs of a young person, particularly if he has hypertension in the upper extremities, should always suggest the possibility of coarctation of the aorta.

Swelling of the extremity may be due to any of the usual causes of edema (p. 54). However in peripherovascular disease it may be due to lymphatic or venous obstruction to the increased venous pressure associated with an arteriovenous fistula, to the patient's holding an ischemic extremity in the dependent position because this lessens pain, to low grade inflammation, and to other causes. Elevation of the leg usually reduces the swelling regardless of its etiology.

Unequal length of the extremities may reflect the presence of an arteriovenous fistula which existed before closure of the epiphyses, the overgrowth of bone being due to the increased blood supply. The fistula may be a relatively simple one between an artery and a vein, or it may take on the characteristics of a cavernous hemangioma. The condition is usually fairly obvious from inspection and other means of physical examination, but where the lesion is a deep one and does not involve the skin the examiner may conclude that one leg is abnormally shortened whereas in reality, one leg is lengthened. Arteriovenous fistulas have occasionally been performed deliberately in youngsters for the purpose of causing increased length of a shortened extremity, but the results have not been encouraging. Moreover the deleterious effects of such a fistula upon the heart would appear to outweigh any advantages it might have in pro-

ducing increased length of one leg in the growing child. A cavernous hemangioma may involve all layers of the extremity, including muscle and bone.

Arterial spiders may be seen in the skin and are comprised of a body and legs with a surrounding area of erythema.¹³ These spiders may be seen to pulsate, and the application of a glass slide to the lesion and proper adjustment of pressure will disclose pulsations in all instances, the blood flowing centrifugally from the central point to the periphery. These defects are generally situated around the face, neck, and upper portion of the shoulders, but they may be found elsewhere. They occur in normal persons, in persons with parenchymatous disease of the liver, and during pregnancy.

Venous stars usually overlie and are tributary to a large vein.¹³ They are similar to arterial spiders but blood flows from the periphery of the star centrally, this being the exact opposite direction of flow from that in the arterial spider. Venous stars develop most characteristically when collateral veins are enlarging as the result of deep venous thrombosis, and at times they may be several inches in diameter.

Auscultation. When the presence of an aneurysm or an arteriovenous fistula is suspected, additional important evidence may be obtained by noting on auscultation the character of the bruit, which may be associated with a palpable thrill. The arteriovenous fistula, as with the patent ductus arteriosus (also an arteriovenous fistula) will usually produce both a systolic and a diastolic bruit. In contrast, the bruit which may be associated with an aneurysm, whether the aneurysm be "true" or "false," has only a systolic component in most instances. Additional important diagnostic evidence, as will be detailed later, is that occlusion of an arteriovenous communication by pressure usually results in a slowing of the pulse rate and a narrowing of the pulse pressure during the period of occlusion.

ADDITIONAL METHODS OF INVESTIGATION
Angiography. This procedure has been con-

sidered previously, but a few additional points are applicable here. While angiography is an invaluable aid in visualizing arteries in almost all parts of the body, it is not without certain relatively uncommon but often serious hazards. It was pointed out that injection of too much of the medium into a carotid artery might, with improper technic, result in fatal brain damage. Angiocardiography is also at times poorly tolerated in the presence of pulmonary hypertension. Injection of the radiopaque media (which contain an iodide, usually) into peripheral arteries frequently produces severe spasm and, in the presence of relative ischemia, patchy areas of skin and other soft tissue necrosis may be precipitated. Aortograms may occasionally result in renal shutdown or, more rarely, in paraplegia.

In contrast to the highly valuable information gained from arteriograms, the information gained from venograms is far less helpful in the average case, due in considerable measure to the marked variation or inconstancy of venous channels.

HUMAN PLETHYSMOGRAPHY

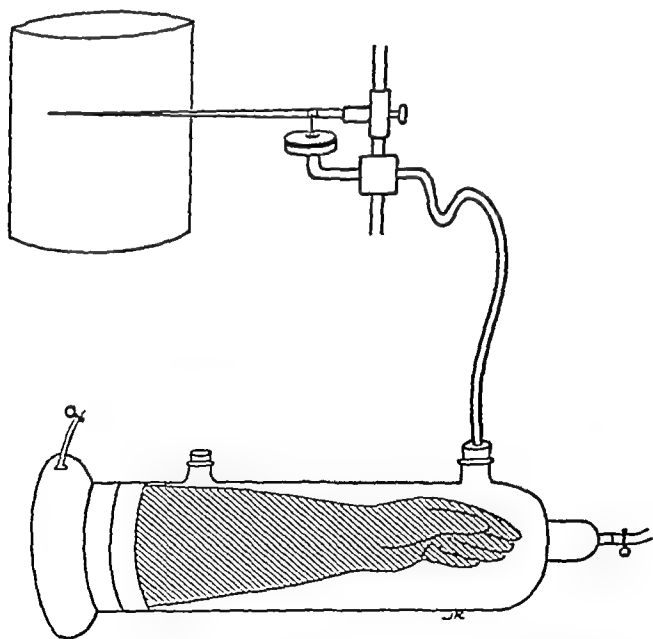


Fig 161 Plethysmography. The plethysmograph can be useful in the diagnosis and prognosis of arterial diseases of the extremities. It also aids in evaluating the results of therapy. It is not often used in day to day clinical practice. (After WRIGHT, S. *Applied Physiology*, Ed 9. London, Oxford University Press, 1952.)

Oscillometry The oscillometer is quite similar to the usual sphygmomanometer, with the exception that it is the excursions of a needle on a dial, produced by the arterial pulsations, that are noted. The greater the arterial pulsation, reflecting the stroke volume of blood passing along the artery, the greater will be the deflection of the needle on the scale. In our experience, information gained with the oscillometer has added little to that already available from physical examination.

Plethysmography The plethysmograph (Fig 161) has been used mainly for the experimental study of arterial and venous physiology, and we have not used it clinically. In essence, the apparatus permits the enclosure of a digit or an extremity in a water-filled compartment which is, of course, watertight. A cuff is then inflated (the collecting cuff) just proximal to the plethysmograph and the pressure is adjusted to one just below diastolic pressure but above venous pressure, thus trapping the volume of arterial inflow. This causes expansion of the enclosed forearm or finger, as the case may be, and the resulting pressure changes within the closed watertight compartment are recorded by a suitable manometer. A plethysmograph may therefore be defined as an apparatus for recording changes of volume per unit of time.³ It is a useful apparatus, and the blood flow to the extremity can be rather accurately measured in this way, though it of course does not indicate whether the reduced arterial flow, if present, is due to organic occlusion or to arterial spasm. Persistence of a low volume of flow after sympathetic block, however, indicates organic occlusion. Actually, if spasm persists long enough, organic vascular changes may occur anyway. In Raynaud's disease the diminished arterial flow is due largely to arterial spasm, but in arteriosclerotic disease it is due to organic occlusion. In Buerger's disease it may be due to spasm superimposed upon organic occlusion. The plethysmograph is often used to determine the effect of sympathetic block

on arterial flow as an indication of the probable value of sympathectomy in the treatment of the patient's condition. To repeat, though the plethysmograph is essentially an investigative tool, albeit a valuable one, which is not often essential in clinical practice.

Measurements of skin temperature and reflex vasodilatation. The significance of skin temperature measurements was considered above, including the admonition that the patient must be in a basal state and that the temperature and humidity of the environment must be controlled. Actually, of course, skin temperature changes of clinical significance are often detectable by simple palpation. For example, following successful unilateral paravertebral sympathetic block the involved leg is grossly warmer than the opposite extremity in the person who is capable of vasodilatation. If the block was accurate and the extremity does not become definitely warmer it is usually assumed that sympathectomy will probably not improve blood flow significantly.

For the actual measurement of skin temperatures various *thermocouples* are available commercially. Two thermocouples are usually used: one maintained at a constant temperature and the other attached to the skin. When a temperature gradient exists between the two thermocouples, a current flows over a wire connecting the two, causing a deflection of the galvanometer, this deflection is recorded on a graduated scale.

Measurements of skin temperature have as their greatest value the reflection of differences between symmetrical parts of the body since usually the temperature of the forehead, thorax and thighs is from 7 to 10° warmer than that of the toes. There is normally some vasoconstriction of the peripheral vessels of the feet, as indicated by the relatively low temperature of the toes. In contrast the temperature of the fingers ordinarily lies within the range of from 32 to 35° C. The temperature of the toes exceeds the environmental temperature when

the temperature of the fingers rises to between 32 and 35° C, and this usually occurs at a room temperature of from 25 to 26° C (77 to 78.8° F).

Allen, Barker, and Hines³ have summarized the value of controlled skin temperature as follows:

1 A difference of more than 2° C in the temperature of two symmetrical parts of the body almost always indicates impaired circulation. Thus if the temperature of the right big toe is 28° C and that of the left big toe is 32° C, it is almost invariably true that the arterial circulation to the right big toe is impaired. The same observation is applicable to companion digits, in the examination for occlusion of digital arteries in the same extremity.

2 A sharp change in the temperature of the skin under basal conditions almost certainly indicates a sharp change in a blood flow through the skin. For instance if the temperature of the skin of a toe is 28° C under basal conditions and after sympathectomy it is 34° C, it is justifiable to conclude that circulation to the skin has increased markedly. Similarly, if the temperature of the skin of a toe is 32° C under basal conditions but somewhat later (as following arterial occlusion) it is 22° C, the conclusion that arterial circulation has been greatly impaired is justified.

3 Failure of the temperature of the skin of the fingers to increase to a figure substantially beyond that of room temperature when the patient is moved into a room in which the temperature is maintained at approximately 30° C definitely indicates impaired arterial circulation. This is usually (but not always) true of the lower extremities also.

Measurements of oxygen tension. In a study of experimentally produced immersion foot Montgomery and his associates¹¹⁴ made a special investigation of variations in oxygen tension of the muscles in the subcutaneous spaces of rabbits' legs exposed to water at 3° C. Temperature measurements were also made. In general, the tempera-

tures decreased to levels characteristic of markedly reduced blood flows, though in some instances there were fluctuations in the tissue temperatures, indicating transient periods of increased blood flow, these fluctuations were observed to persist for as long as 7 days and were apt to be associated with leg motion. Usually the oxygen tension of the tissues was depressed by cold, and there was a tendency toward a greater degree of reduction in oxygen supply than in oxygen utilization. When the animals were given oxygen by inhalation while the leg was cold, the oxygen tension of the cold tissues rose to or above the level prior to the application of cold.

Oxygen tension measurements are not much used in peripherovascular practice.

CONCLUDING COMMENT REGARDING TESTS FOR PERIPHEROVASCULAR DISEASE There are various other less frequently used and less practical tests of circulation which may be made. Among these are studies of the nailfold capillaries (where arteriovenous shunts are numerous), the measurement of rates of sweating, the rate of clearance of injected radioiodine or radiosodium from the tissues under study, the measurement of skin distensibility, and others. However, by way of practical summary, in our experience the history, physical examination, various measurements with the sphygmomanometer, angiography, and differences in palpable skin temperature following paravertebral sympathetic block have been by far the most generally useful and conclusive methods of investigation of arterial disease. Tests for venous disease are described in a subsequent section.

Immersion Foot, Trench Foot, and Frostbite

EFFECTS OF COLD The writer had a modest experience with trench foot in Army hospitals in England and the United States during World War II, but since then he has had little personal contact with such cases. Therefore, Montgomery's¹¹³ review of the physiopathology of immersion foot, as well

as the review by Robinson,¹²⁰ will be drawn upon in some detail.

"The term immersion foot, retained because of brevity, denotes the disorder that results from prolonged chilling short of freezing. This loose term seems more satisfactory than 'vasoneuropathy after prolonged chilling' because vasoneuropathy is only part, though perhaps the most important part, of this disorder. The term trench foot applies to a similar, but less well defined, condition. In this the factors of physical trauma, infection, and occasional freezing are superimposed upon the effects of prolonged chilling, and the term trench foot is customarily used to denote the complications as well as the primary disorder. The term immersion foot should probably be retained to denote only the effects of prolonged chilling, and not the transient effects of brief exposure to cold nor the effects of mechanical trauma that may accompany prolonged exposure of the limb to cold."¹¹³

A number of factors enter into the amount of chilling which occurs in an extremity. Cold air is much less chilling than cold water of the same temperature, but body chilling by cold air may cause such profound vasoconstriction reflexly in a limb that the temperature of the limb may be reduced far more than that of the body and thus render the limb very susceptible to local chilling. Sufficient chilling of the body to endanger life is termed cold shock, in which functions of vital organs are dangerously affected (see *Induced Hypothermia*, p. 372). The trunk and its organs tolerate reduced internal temperature less well than a limb does.

✓ The changes which occur in a limb exposed to water between 0° C and 15° C are fairly characteristic.¹¹³ The skin becomes red and, after a day or more, widespread edema and anesthesia result. There is considerable loss of neuromuscular function, but usually gangrene and vesiculation do not appear. When these later changes do appear they may be due to mechanical pressure, infection, or intercurrent frostbite. Of course, if exposure to the lower temperature is sufficiently

prolonged, pathologic changes may involve most of the tissues of the extremity. Whereas previously it was considered that the initial changes occurred in the vessels themselves, more recent experimental studies indicate that damage to muscle and nerves predominates, with some interstitial fibrosis and inflammatory changes in the skin, but with lesser vascular changes.

The primary fault in pure immersion foot appears to differ sharply from that in frostbite. Immersion foot is a widespread inflammatory process without thrombotic ischemia or true gangrene, frostbite, on the other hand, results in necrosis and gangrene and does so both by reason of the direct damage by cold and freezing and by thrombosis which follows shortly after the process of thawing.

Effect of cold on blood flow and on temperature of limbs It is the circulation to the limb that protects against the injurious effects of external cold. Sir Thomas Lewis¹⁰² studied the circulatory responses in the skin of the chilled hand by attaching a thermocouple to the skin of a finger and immersing that part in cold water. It was found that the lower the skin temperature, the redder was the skin. He demonstrated a rhythmic increase in skin temperature which usually began within 5 to 10 minutes after immersion, diminished in magnitude progressively with time and lasted for the 2 hour period of the experiment. It was assumed that the fluctuations in temperature were a result of fluctuations in blood flow in the skin of the chilled part. Most of the phasic dilatations lasted for between 10 and 30 seconds. It was further shown that the pain in a finger that is exposed to cold is relieved during phasic vasodilatation unless vasodilatation is sudden and that nerve section and sympathectomy did not inhibit the phasing since nerve degeneration did inhibit the phasing it was surmised that the phasing was dependent upon an axon reflex. Lewis further noted that phasing in a limb decreased or failed when the body was poorly protected from cold. Other studies later suggested that ar-

teriovenous anastomoses were responsible for these rhythmic changes in blood flow. They opened at 15° C and below. The relaxation was occasional at 15° C, frequent at 10° C, and constant at 5° C. Responses of capillaries were slower than those of the arteriovenous anastomoses. However, none of these studies was sufficiently prolonged to permit the development of immersion foot. In summary, this phasic dilatation appears to afford some protection against frostbite, and it is probably an important factor in acclimatization to cold. It may also have a bearing upon the problem of immersion foot.¹¹³

There is convincing evidence that body warmth has much to do with the maintenance of circulation in an extremity exposed to cold. A heavily dressed person at rest in air at -25° C for from 2 to 3 hours requires the best possible mitten to maintain a comfortable hand (i.e., a skin temperature of 15 to 30° C) in contrast, on strenuous exercise no mitten is required, since the body heat production during exercise prevents severe chilling of the hand.

Effect of cold on nerve and muscle Nerve dysfunction and later prolonged damage to peripheral nerves and to sympathetic fibers are a regular part of severe clinical immersion foot. The anesthesia, motor weakness and muscular atrophy which develop may last for many weeks. Since the integrity of the nerve may be necessary to support the phasic increases in blood flow that would be expected to protect the part from cold as previously discussed, it is of importance to know the length of time required for cold to cause sufficient nerve damage to prevent this axon reflex. Brickford²² found that conduction was altered when the ulnar nerve of man was chilled for brief periods by passing brine through a lead pipe on the skin over the nerve. When the cooling solution was at 3° C the sensations of tickle and of cold were lost. Actual motor weakness resulted from a temperature of 0° C, and diminished sensations of "first pain" and of touch from a temperature of -2° C. Sensa-

tions of "second pain" and warmth were retained at slightly cooler temperatures. Vasodilatation in the skin of the hand, presumably permitted by interruption of sympathetic fibers along the nerve, was effected by a cooling temperature of 0° C. It was found that recovery of all functions of the nerve was prompt on rewarming.

Microscopic studies have been made of the nerves of cats following exposure to cold solutions. The large peripheral nerve fibers were found to be more vulnerable to cold than the small ones. While mild grades of damage were shown to be promptly reversible, it was apparent that nerve trunks are readily damaged by cold.

Edema in response to cold. Edematous swelling is a characteristic finding on exposure to cold, as it is in response to a burn. It is further increased by a dependent position of the extremity and by a constriction above. The edema fluid has a relatively high protein content, and it is felt that the edema is largely a result of inflammation resulting from damage by cold.

Changes in metabolism on chilling. As was seen in the discussion of induced hypothermia, oxygen utilization is greatly decreased in the chilled extremity. Montgomery and his associates¹¹⁴ studied the effect of cold on the function and structure of muscle. Immersion foot was produced in 107 rabbits by exposing their left hind legs to water at 3° C for times varying from 8 to 64 hours. Functional changes resulted and these included inability to spread the toes, inability to dorsiflex the foot, inability to hop normally, and decreased ability to bear weight on the left hind leg. Pathologic changes occurred in the muscle and these included basophilia, cellular infiltration, giant cell formation, fragmentation, abnormal variation of the size of muscle bundles, and edema. Furthermore, the degree of functional and pathologic change varied directly with the time of exposure. There was an abrupt increase in both pathologic and functional changes after 30 hours of exposure. There was also suggestive evidence that oxygen

administration during exposure suppresses the functional changes, particularly of those exposed to cold water for 30 hours. However, there was no evidence that oxygen breathing modified the morphologic changes in muscle.

CLINICAL CONSIDERATIONS IN COLD INJURY. It has been emphasized that whereas cold injuries are more commonly attendant upon military operations, such injuries are by no means rare in persons in civil life who may be suddenly exposed to frostbite or immersion foot as a result of a cyclone, flood, or occupational hazard. This danger is increased if the person exposed has an appreciable degree of peripheral arteriosclerosis. As has been pointed out, the tissue damage is due less to a direct effect of cold on tissues than to changes resulting from effects upon the circulation. Vasoconstriction, vasodilatation, sludging of blood, and thrombosis diminish the circulation bringing warmth and oxygen to the extremity. The feet are particularly vulnerable because they usually exhibit a temperature which is lower than that of the rest of the body and because they are usually in a dependent position. The injury is further aggravated by immobilization (commonly observed in troops pinned down by enemy fire) which favors sludging of blood, and the injury may also be aggravated by walking when the oxygen supply to the extremity is diminished.

There exists a pronounced difference in the ability of different patients to withstand exposure to cold and even in the same person at different times, as indicated by the fact that both the ingestion of food and exercise tend to cause increased body warming. In exposed persons the temperature, duration of the exposure, humidity, and wind velocity are also factors which have an effect. It has been pointed out that advanced age, poor general physical condition, high cold agglutinin titers, belonging to a dark skinned race, and having had a previous frostbite decrease resistance to cold injury and should be taken into account in an effort to prevent such injury.

Naturally, it is preferable to prevent frost

bite or cold injury rather than to treat it, when possible. However, it has been estimated that only about 50 per cent of those who incur cold injury had warning symptoms of sufficient severity to attract attention. Such patients may complain of feeling cold, of a stinging pain, and of numbness in the involved part. Attempts to "wake up the foot" by sharp exercise under these circumstances only leads to greater subsequent tissue damage. To remove the shoes because of pain in the feet may allow rapid swelling to the extent that the shoes cannot be got back on, with still further exposure and damage. As is well known, exposure to cold in high altitude flying is often associated with anoxia, which further aggravates the injury.

Effect of therapy on cold injury. Minor grades of cold injury usually subside rapidly. Unfortunately as was learned during World War II it is frequently most difficult to determine initially what degree of cold injury is present. Some extremities are painful for months following what had originally appeared to be a relatively minor cold injury. In England in 1944 this problem raised the difficult question of whether to return the soldier to duty or evacuate him to the United States.

Isaacson and Harrell²² studied 33 patients believed to have had bilateral equal injury. Unilateral sympathectomy was performed so that each patient could serve as his own control. Sympathectomy did not prevent or limit the extent of gangrene when performed early nor did it hasten healing once gangrene was established. Furthermore it did not protect the extremity against repeated cold injury. Its greatest usefulness appeared to be in the treatment of the late sequelae of frostbite where it did permit healing of chronic ulcers, relieve paresthesias and pain, and improve the circulation.

Emergency treatment of cold injury. The questions of the rapidity of rewarming and of the temperatures to be used in this process are still a subject of some debate. All agree however that excessive heat is to be avoided, though in animals rapid rewarming has re-

sulted in less gangrene than has gradual rewarming. Water is a better conductor than air and rapid rewarming is best achieved in a water bath. Recommended water temperatures range from 98.6 to 108 F. Once the part has been rewarmed it is left exposed to room air, and it is the consensus that massage and pressure dressings are to be avoided. Since smoking causes more or less generalized vasoconstriction, it too should be avoided. The value of anticoagulants and of vasodilator drugs in acute frostbite has yet to be proved, despite some favorable reports.¹³⁹ Cortisone has not been beneficial experimentally.

The patient is of course kept at bed rest to diminish further trauma to the tissues of the feet, and excisional surgery is withheld until all possibly viable tissue has been given every opportunity for recovery. There is a notable tendency in this condition for the clinician to overestimate the probable ultimate extent of gangrene.

Raynaud's Phenomenon and Raynaud's Disease

DEFINITION AND DELINEATION OF RAYNAUD'S PHENOMENON. The vasospastic changes which occur in the digits of certain susceptible persons have been the subject of much confusion and misdiagnosis. Originally, Maurice Raynaud described a poorly delineated group of conditions that were discussed in his inaugural thesis for the Academy of Medicine, this thesis was published in 1862 and was entitled "De l'asphyxie locale et de la gangrène symétrique des extrémités."¹⁴⁰ In his writings Raynaud clearly described the attacks of discoloration of the digits which came to be known variously as Raynaud's disease, Raynaud's syndrome, or Raynaud's phenomenon. He considered that the episodes of discoloration of the skin of the fingers on exposure to cold were the result of increased sensitivity of the sympathetic nervous system, and he maintained that it was possible to have gangrene without organic occlusion of either arteries or veins. Unfortunately, he included in his original

description a number of conditions which were not due to purely spastic phenomena, and this led to much confusion regarding precisely what the condition he had intended to describe should be called. It has become common practice to refer to the purely spastic disease as *Raynaud's disease*, differentiating more carefully other conditions which may result from arterial occlusion with a superimposed *spastic element* (*Raynaud's phenomenon*). If pure spasm (*Raynaud's disease*) persists long enough, organic changes may be produced in the walls of the involved vessels.

The physiologic basis Typical of most instances of Raynaud's phenomenon is an increased sensitivity of the digital vessels of the individual to cold. Exposure of the normal person to cold leads to a lower temperature of the fingers because the digital vessels contract and finger blood flow is much reduced. However, unless this is greatly prolonged or unless definite endothelial damage and thrombosis ensue, the reduced blood flow is still sufficient to maintain tissue metabolism in the finger. Characteristically the finger becomes pale and perhaps somewhat cyanotic, but it is not white and anesthetic. In marked contrast, in the presence of Raynaud's phenomenon there is excessive contraction of the arteriolar walls in the finger when the hands are exposed to cold, and this is of such magnitude that blood

flow through the fingers may stop completely. This excessive contraction termed by Lewis¹⁰³ the "local fault" may be demonstrated clinically by the absence of bleeding when a "white finger" is pricked or by observing the absolute stasis in the capillary loops on finger microscopy. It is confirmed by plethysmography, oscillometry, and angiography. These methods confirm the completeness of digital artery occlusion. If the vasospasm is prolonged, the finger aches, discoloration occurs, and finally it becomes anesthetic to pinprick.

Warming of the hands or finger produces relaxation of the artery (Fig 162), and the first blood that enters the small vessels of the finger becomes rapidly deoxygenated. This is referred to as the blue cyanotic stage. Eventually relaxation is excessive, and a familiar reactive hyperemia (pink burst stage) that is probably due to local accumulation of metabolites during asphyxia appears, as was described previously.

There has been considerable disagreement as to whether the increased sensitivity is caused by overactivity of the sympathetic nervous system or whether the increased spasm of the arterioles is caused by the local influence of cold upon these vessels. It now appears from various prolonged studies by many workers that both of these factors apply. That is, the narrowing of the normal and abnormal digital vessels is due to the direct local effect of cold and also to an increase in the vasoconstrictor impulses of the sympathetic nerve supply brought on by body cooling, pain, or emotion. For example, attacks of Raynaud's phenomenon can be precipitated by cooling of the extremities after an adequate sympathectomy, though the exposure has to be more prolonged than before the operation. Of the two factors, Jepson⁸⁰ believes with Sir Thomas Lewis that local cooling causing precipitous overcontraction of the arterioles is the more important.

Clinical findings In Figure 163 is shown a classification of conditions which may be associated with Raynaud's phenomenon.

THE ARTERIOLE

ARTERIOLEAR TONE REGULATES CAPILLARY
FLOW IN VARIOUS ORGANS

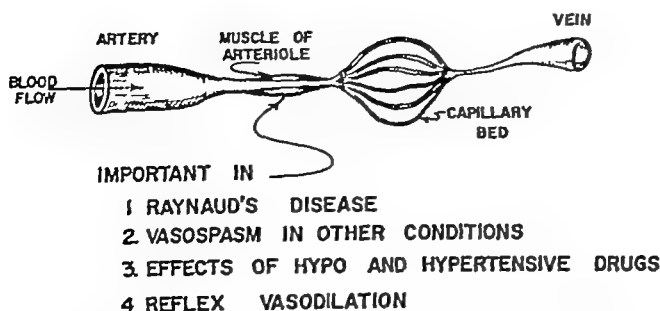


Fig 162 The arterioles play prominent rôles in conditions such as pulmonary hypertension, systemic hypertension, and Raynaud's phenomena.

Again, Raynaud's disease is that instance of the phenomenon which is on a purely spastic basis without underlying organic vascular changes. Clearly, if organic narrowing is already present, a normal degree of spasm may render the finger ischemic.

The typical patient with Raynaud's disease is a young woman, since the incidence of Raynaud's disease in women is almost five times that in men. Most often the symptoms begin during the late teens, 20's or 30's. The patient not infrequently gives a history of various types of vascular disease in other members of the family who may have had excessively cold hands or feet, dead fingers, or other evidences of vasospasm. Migraine, Raynaud's phenomenon, and hypertension are frequently associated and suggest at least some common inherent factors.²

The patient usually experiences the attack of painful blanching of the fingers—particularly the tips of the fingers and distal phalanges—on exposure to cold. This need not be excessive cold, but it is excessive for the person in question. It has been mentioned previously that the patient may develop attacks of Raynaud's phenomenon in association with emotional upsets, but emotion is a very poor second to cold as an initiating factor.

The color changes usually begin gradually, but they may come on dramatically with an acute episode of pallor in one or two fingers on exposure to cold the so called 'dead finger' phenomenon. As a rule the tips of the fingers of both hands are involved but later this may extend proximally up the fingers even at times to include the hands. The three phases of color change—pallor, cyanosis and rubor—have been described above. Pain may not be a prominent feature during the attacks but paresthesia is frequently present during the attack and is manifested by numbness, tingling, burning a feeling of tightness, "pins and needles" or sticking in the fingers. Diminished sensation in the involved fingers is frequently prominent and actual necrosis of

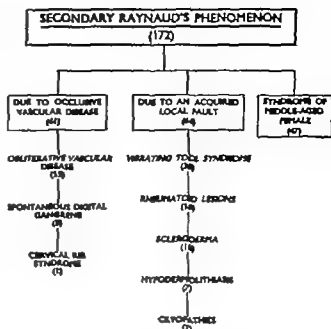


Fig 163 Raynaud's phenomenon occurs in a variety of conditions other than Raynaud's disease *per se* (From Jepson R. P. Raynaud's phenomenon—A review of the clinical problem *Ann. Roy. Coll. Surg.*, 9: 35 1951)

the tips of the fingers may, rarely, occur. Attacks may increase both in frequency and in severity, so that the patient may be considerably disabled.

The differential diagnosis of Raynaud's disease lies chiefly in ruling out the other conditions shown in Figure 163. It is apparent that "Raynaud's phenomenon" may represent pure "Raynaud's disease" or that it may represent spasm superimposed upon organic arterial disease (the true Raynaud's phenomenon). It is a common error to diagnose early scleroderma as Raynaud's disease and there are of course numerous conditions which cause morphologic arterial changes in the fingers. Jepson²⁴ prefers a clinical classification (Fig 163) which employs primary or true idiopathic Raynaud's disease and 'secondary' Raynaud's disease (at times, Raynaud's phenomenon) that is superimposed on or secondary to three main groups—arterial occlusive vascular disease, an acquired "local fault," and the "syndrome of the middle-aged female." He points out that any case of Raynaud's phenomenon occurring after the age of 20 in a man, particularly if symmetrical in distribution is almost certainly not of the idiopathic vari-

ety and is a secondary phenomenon. The secondary Raynaud's phenomenon which is due to occlusive vascular disease may be caused by obliterative arterial occlusion, spontaneous digital gangrene, or cervical rib syndrome. Those due to acquired local fault may be caused by the vibrating tool syndrome, rheumatoid lesions, scleroderma, or cryopathies. The third group, that of the middle-aged woman, is one which Jepson considers to have been previously poorly or inadequately defined. The precise etiology is still not clear, since it occurs too late to be primarily inborn, and there is no evidence of diffuse atherosclerosis. The one feature which is relatively common is that it occurs near the menopause and that re-establishment of the menses has often been associated with an improvement in the condition.

TREATMENT OF TRUE RAYNAUD'S DISEASE (IN CONTRADISTINCTION TO RAYNAUD'S PHENOMENON SUPERIMPOSED UPON ORGANIC DISEASE)
Conservative therapy. The attacks in Raynaud's disease may not be severe and conservative therapy may suffice for long periods of time. If possible, the patient should avoid cold weather. If this cannot be accomplished, the patient should wear warm clothing at all times and should wear warm gloves and shoes to prevent chilling of the body or the extremities. It has been seen previously that chilling of the body may result in a marked spasm of the arterioles of the extremities. Obviously, chilling of the extremities themselves will result in arterial spasm in these persons and, indeed, to a lesser extent in most normal persons. The patient should be reassured that the condition, while unpleasant, is not going to lead to loss of the hands, such reassurance may diminish the frequency and the severity of the attacks. Estrogen therapy, as noted in connection with Jepson's "syndrome of the middle-aged female," may be helpful in women with Raynaud's disease. Raynaud himself noted that the phenomenon often might become aggravated when the menses had stopped, only to be alleviated when the menses resumed. However, Allen, Barker,

and Hines¹ emphasize that in the more advanced cases of Raynaud's disease benefit is to be expected from medical therapy. They note that Priscoline chloride, given orally in doses of from 50 mg three or four times daily, is not helpful in mild cases but that it is particularly successful in the more severe.

Various other types of medical treatment have been used, but in general they have not been effective in the severe cases. Prolonged therapy in the less severe.

Operative treatment. Cervical sympathectomy is still the method of choice in the treatment of Raynaud's disease. After conservative measures have been tried without sufficient success over a period of several years—and perhaps trophic changes possibly with scleroderma, are beginning to appear due to the chronicity of the condition through repeated winters—sympathectomy may be considered. It is not to be performed in all cases, particularly in those who are mild, for it is not uniformly successful. Moreover, the relief achieved even in the most favorable cases may not persist.

The type of sympathectomy to be performed has been the cause of much controversy and debate. The reason that this arose was that there appeared to be an increased sensitivity of the blood vessels of the hand to injected epinephrine (and, presumably, epinephrine formed by the patient's adrenal glands) following removal of the sympathetic ganglia. There is, undoubtedly, much variation in the sympathetic distribution to the arm, and it is becoming increasingly apparent that it may be possible in some patients completely to sympathectomize the upper extremity. For example, in some instances it appears that sympathetic fibers may not go to the sympathetic chain but may go directly through the spinal nerves. Regardless, it has been so difficult to prove beyond a reasonable question that actual hypersensitivity does occur following removal of the sympathetic ganglia (in contradistinction to section of the preganglionic fibers en-

ing from the spinal cord to enter the thoracolumbar sympathetic series of ganglia) it is probable that other reasons must be sought for the failure of sympathectomy to relieve vasospasm in the upper extremity

In any event there is a firm trend toward resection of the middle cervical (stellate) ganglion, plus the first, second and third thoracic ganglia and their connecting sympathetic trunk

Reasons for failure of sympathectomy in Raynaud's disease Even when it is certain that the condition for which the sympathectomy was performed was pure Raynaud's disease—and not some other condition such as thromboangitis obliterans, cervical rib syndrome or scleroderma—there are still definite treatment failures from sympathectomy. These have been classified into early and late relapse following operation. The early relapses were further classified by Jepson into a group in whom sympathectomy had apparently been complete and one in whom it had not. Relapse after incomplete operation would not truly be called a relapse. However, there are instances of definite relapse within the first few weeks following the operation, when by all available tests the sympathectomy appears to have been complete. It would seem that this most commonly occurs in patients with severe Raynaud's phenomenon, and in this group it is considered that the "local fault" was so great "that removal of neurogenic vasoconstrictor impulses was insufficient to allow the hand to retain an adequate circulation even in moderate degrees of cold." There was no evidence that this was due to epinephrine sensitivity. The finding was permanent and did not become less marked as the epinephrine sensitivity diminished months or years postoperatively. Further more the intravenous injection of adrenergic agents failed to raise the finger temperature in the cases studied by Jepson.

In the late relapses the clinical findings occurred months or years postoperatively and the patient's symptoms returned to their preoperative severity. Those fingers which

were most susceptible to Raynaud's phenomenon preoperatively relapsed first, followed over varying periods of time by the remaining fingers. Rather than to believe that actual regeneration of the excised sympathetics occurred in most of these cases, Jepson considered it more likely that alternative sympathetic pathways were present and could not be removed by sympathectomy originally. These alternative pathways later came to be utilized in conducting efferent impulses to the vessels and under these circumstances it was not possible to completely and permanently remove all sympathetic innervation of the extremity. Simeone and Felder¹⁴⁰ believe that both regeneration and spinal nerve alternative pathways are important.

In summary, those cases which are most likely to relapse are those who had severe disease in the beginning and in whom the local fault was strongly developed. Late relapse may be due to the regeneration of sympathetics in a few to the alternative sympathetic pathways in many. In the occasional case relapsing without any evidence of neurogenic activity, it is probable that the nervous control of the arterial spasm was relatively unimportant initially and that the local fault or local sensitivity to cold—the autonomous intrinsic behavior of the digital artery—was the most important factor in the disease.

Cause of Pain in the Upper Extremity

THE SCALENUS ANTICUS SYNDROME If the condition commonly termed "scalenus anticus syndrome" or "cervical rib syndrome" is confusing to the medical student, it is hardly less confusing to the practicing surgeon. For example a cervical rib may be present with no symptoms or a cervical rib may be present but is apparently not the cause of the symptoms. The scalenus anticus muscle may or may not be the cause of the symptoms. Actually there are a number of lesions which may cause shoulder arm or shoulder arm hand pain (Table 18). Among such conditions are osteoarthritis,

TABLE 18 LESIONS THAT MAY CAUSE ONE OR MORE ELEMENTS OF THE "SCALENUS ANTICUS" SYNDROME

- 1 Scalenus anticus syndrome
- 2 Diaphragmatic referred pain
- 3 Cervical disk (herniated)
- 4 Cervical osteoarthritis
- 5 Fibrous band from first rib compressing brachial plexus, subclavian artery, or both
- 6 Cervical rib
- 7 Anomalous artery compressing brachial plexus
- 8 Subdeltoid bursitis
- 9 Rupture of supraspinatus tendon
- 10 Aneurysm of subclavian artery
- 11 Spinal cord tumor
- 12 Superior sulcus tumor
- 13 Sudeck's phenomenon from trauma
- 14 Shoulder-hand syndrome following myocardial infarction
- 15 Brachial plexus neuritis
- 16 Neoplasm of brachial plexus (*e g*, as in neurofibromatosis)
- 17 Raynaud's disease
- 18 Buerger's disease

protruded cervical intervertebral disc, fibrositis and myositis, syringomyelia, spinal cord neoplasm, superior sulcus (Pancoast) lung tumor, brachial neuritis, myocardial infarction, peripheral nerve neoplasm, ruptured supraspinatus tendon, subdeltoid bursitis, thromboangitis obliterans, and Raynaud's disease, in addition to the more obvious conditions such as cervical rib compression, spasm of the scalenus anticus muscle in the absence of cervical rib, and aneurysm of the subclavian artery. An anomalous fibrous band may also compress nerves of the brachial plexus or the contributing nerve roots, moreover, in some patients the scalenus medius may cause more compression than the scalenus anticus.¹²⁴

The diagnosis of the scalenus anticus syndrome or of the cervical rib syndrome consists, first, of the symptomatology and physical findings which lead to roentgen examinations and other suitable diagnostic measures. As a rule, evidence of compression will come from either the blood supply or the nerve supply to the arm. There may be some diminution in the pulse and blood pres-

sure on the involved side. On rare occasions there may be sufficient arrest of circulation to cause swelling and edema of the arm and in extreme instances, even gangrene. There may be paresthesia and even anesthesia involving the fingers and hand, which eventually is of course associated with trophic changes involving the thumb and the interosseous muscles. Raynaud's phenomenon may be a prominent feature of the syndrome. Exaggeration of the compression of the subclavian artery may be produced by elevating the arm over the head and somewhat posteriorly, further abetted by turning the head to the opposite side. Such a motion may cause pain or may obliterate the radial pulse, strongly suggesting the possibility of the scalenus anticus syndrome. Angiography may show evidence of an aneurysm of the subclavian artery which could also produce the shoulder-hand pain.

The successful management of the condition will depend upon accurate diagnosis. If the syndrome is due to a taut scalenus muscle, the injection of procaine may relieve the spasm and temporarily relieve the syndrome. Stellate ganglion block may be employed. However, in the more persistent cases operative exploration may be required. Anomalous minor arteries are divided when they may be compressing the nerve roots, a cervical rib is excised, a compressing scalenus medius or scalenus anticus may be divided at its insertion. Again, however, accurate therapy depends upon accurate diagnosis, so many are the conditions which may cause shoulder-hand pain. The persistent paresthesia, hyperhidrosis, and pain of the hand with trophic changes in the minor muscles of the hand may well be due to coronary occlusion, and it is generally termed the "shoulder-hand syndrome." This condition, which may be quite disabling, has responded to cortisone therapy in a number of instances. It is apparently due to a sympathetic reflex mechanism.

THROMBOANGITIS OBLITERANS (BUERGER'S DISEASE)³ *Definition* Thromboangitis obliterans has been defined as a segmental, in-

Inflammatory, obliterative disease of the arteries and veins, occurring almost exclusively in young and middle-aged men, it involves the extremities, and, rarely, the viscera as well. It produces ischemia of the tissues and frequently gangrene. The condition was first described in 1879 by von Winwarther, who reported a condition which he termed "endarteritis and endophlebitis of the leg" in a 57 year old man who had had symptoms for 12 years. Careful pathologic studies of the arteries and veins of the amputated lower part of the leg, which did not heal for several months were obviously characteristic of the usual findings in thromboangitis obliterans. There is evidence that typical cases had been observed even earlier. Even so, the various findings in the disease were poorly systematized and delineated until Leo Buerger, working at the Mount Sinai Hospital in New York, published in 1908 his first paper, entitled "Thrombo-Angitis Obliterans. A Study of the Vascular Lesions Leading to Presenile Spontaneous Gangrene." In 1924 he published in monograph form a far more detailed report in which he described the giant cells and purulent foci in the occluding vessels. His studies led him to conclude that the disease started as an acute inflammation of the vessels that resulted in the formation of thrombi, he did not emphasize the intimal thickening which has since become recognised as characteristic of the disease.²³

Pathology Thromboangitis obliterans is primarily a disease of the blood vessels of the extremities, involving the lower extremities more commonly and usually more severely than the upper extremities. It has also been found in the viscera and has on occasion led to coronary occlusion. Typically, the disease begins in medium sized or small arteries and these may be the only ones affected. The arteries most often seriously involved are the anterior and posterior tibial arteries and the radial, ulna, palmar plantar and digital arteries. The larger arteries are much less often affected, and involvement of veins is less prominent

than involvement of arteries, though a "migratory phlebitis" may precede demonstrable arterial disease. When veins are affected it is usually the smaller or medium sized veins, large venous trunks being rarely attacked.

The characteristic pathologic finding is an inflammatory, nonsuppurative panarteritis or panphlebitis with associated thrombosis but without necrosis of the wall of the vessel. When the veins are affected the characteristic migratory phlebitis may be observed in superficial veins, first one extremity or one part of the extremity is affected, and then another site, with subsidence of the first. Once the vessel is thrombosed it becomes organized by fibroblasts. As in other instances of thrombosis and occlusion, some degree of recanalisation may later occur. The pathologic involvement of a particular vessel is not continuous but involves segmental or skip areas, comparatively normal segments of vessel often beginning abruptly just beyond diseased segments. As noted above, different vessels may be involved at different times, but once the disease has produced fibroblastic occlusion of the vessel the occlusion appears to be permanent and is usually complete.²

The segmental nature of the occlusion permits considerable collateral circulation and anastomosis to occur. This has been repeatedly demonstrated by arteriography in the intact limb (Fig. 164) and by injections of radiopaque material into the arteries of amputated extremities. As is to be expected, the progressive diminution of blood flow to the involved extremity results in atrophic and later gangrenous changes which usually first involve the toes or fingers, moving proximally progressively, particularly if the individual will not stop smoking. Infection associated with the gangrene contributes considerably to the disabling potential of the occlusion and further diminishes the nutrition of the involved part. The degree of disability caused by thromboangitis obliterans depends primarily on the degree of arterial occlusion which it produces and



Fig 164 Buerger's disease with superimposed Raynaud's phenomenon, arteriogram. This 45-year-old man, an inveterate smoker, had had a myocardial infarction a number of months prior to hospitalization for extreme pain due to ischemia of the tip of the right index finger. Cold weather or the mere gripping of the steering wheel of his car were precipitating causes of numbness, tingling, and pallor in the fingers of the right hand and, to a mild degree, of the left hand. The arteriogram of the right hand shows obliteration or narrowing of various digital arteries.

upon the rate at which this is produced, since a modifying factor of considerable importance is the rate of development of collateral blood supply.

Etiology of thromboangitis obliterans
The etiology of this condition is unknown. Nevertheless, there are certainly contributing factors which are recognized and which are of much importance. The disease usually appears between the ages of 25 and 40 years and occurs almost exclusively in men. In fact, a diagnosis of thromboangitis obliterans in a woman is to be viewed with great skepticism (even more so than the diagnosis of Raynaud's disease in a man). This overwhelming preponderance of the disease

in men obviously suggests some relationship to the male hormone. The question of racial incidence was long considered important, since many of the early cases had been reported among Jews, but the disease has since been reported in virtually all races.

Smoking has an influence on the vascular system in general,¹⁴³ and it has been considered to be a major etiologic factor in Buerger's disease. The large majority of normal persons respond to cigarette smoking with definite peripheral vasoconstriction, lasting from a few minutes to half an hour or even longer, before the blood vessels gradually return to normal. There is usually a rise in systolic and diastolic blood pressure, and an increase in pulse rate of from 5 to 20 beats per minute. Nevertheless, there is much individual variation as regards the effect of smoking on the peripheral vessels, and Friedell⁵⁸ reported that men and women are not equally sensitive to tobacco smoke. Using radioactive iodinated serum albumin (RISA) as an indicator of volumetric changes in the peripheral vascular system, he concluded that the maximum degree of alteration in blood volume in the measured extremity in sensitive men averaged 19 per cent, whereas in women who responded the degree of alteration was approximately 33 per cent. The use of a filtered cigarette in each case lowered the responses considerably. The men showed a 10.7 per cent change with a filtered cigarette, while the women showed a 20.5 per cent change.

The general systemic effects of smoking represent, of course, the major factor in the inability of many persons to stop smoking. The "habit" constitutes a physiologic conditioning rather than merely a psychological routine of "going through the motions" of smoking a cigarette.

There are other measurements which serve to indicate the effects of smoking on the cardiovascular system. It has been shown beyond further question that in persons with disease of the coronary vessels an ECG effect may be produced by smoking a cigarette, and it has also been shown that the

ballistocardiographic complexes in a person with an ischemic myocardium can also be altered. Furthermore whereas the smoking of cigarettes which are devoid of nicotine results in no appreciable effect on the cutaneous temperature of the extremities, there is a measurable diminution of the skin temperature following the smoking of an ordinary cigarette.

It has been demonstrated that smoking of one or two cigarettes causes the release of from 3 to 190 millunits of the pituitary hormone into the blood stream in concentrations sufficient to produce vasoconstriction of the coronary vessels of the dog and presumably capable of having the same effect in man.²⁴ In some persons smoking appears to produce a symptom complex similar to angina pectoris, and it is now appreciated that the drinking of a cocktail does not necessarily abolish the effects of nicotine on the cardiovascular system. Thromboangitis obliterans is certainly more frequent and severe among persons who smoke excessively than among those who smoke little or not at all.

To summarize the relationship between smoking and thromboangitis obliterans, while it has not been definitely proved that smoking is the primary etiologic factor in this condition, it is rare indeed that thromboangitis obliterans is encountered in non-smokers. Thus smoking does constitute a major aggravating factor to say the least. And all physicians who have treated patients with Buerger's disease have observed that if the individual will stop smoking the process usually improves; that, on the other hand if the individual does not stop smoking other types of therapy are usually not particularly successful and the disease tends to progress to amputation of digits and more proximal portions of the extremities. The writer once assisted in the care of two patients with Buerger's disease each of whom had had upwards of 50 separate operations. Despite repeated infections associated with gangrene of progressively more proximal portions of all four extremities

both of these individuals refused to stop smoking until no portion of the hand remained with which to grasp a cigarette.

Even so, obviously only a very small percentage of heavy smokers develop Buerger's disease, and there must be other contributing factors, including those which result in the overwhelming and almost exclusive preponderance of this disease in men.

Clinical findings The clinical findings in Buerger's disease are essentially the same as those in occlusive vascular disease from any other cause, perhaps with the exception that the patients are younger than those with atherosclerosis, that infection plays a more prominent rôle, and that the veins are often involved early in Buerger's disease. In my personal experience, painful 'migrating phlebitis' has not regularly been a useful clue in differentiating the occlusive arterial disease due to thromboangitis obliterans from that due to embolism or atherosclerosis. If roentgen examination demonstrates calcification of the arteries, then Buerger's disease is unlikely. The symptoms of occlusive arterial disease are of course, pain, in intermittent claudication and subsequently rest pain; later pain is associated with trophic changes and finally ulceration and gangrene appear with osteoporosis and bone atrophy in the involved extremity. In contrast to the pain in the superficially involved veins mentioned above pain along the involved artery is not particularly prominent. These patients are sensitive to cold and a secondary Raynaud's phenomenon is not infrequently observed. The reason for this increased sensitivity to cold is that partial occlusion of the vascular supply to the extremity is already present. Vasoconstriction of a degree which normally occurs in any patient on exposure to cold may sufficiently further reduce the arterial supply to the involved extremity to produce serious ischemia with the appearance of the 'white digit.' In one patient, the pressure on the fingers required for gripping the steering wheel while driving was enough to produce pallor and numbness (Fig. 165).



Fig 164 Buerger's disease with superimposed Raynaud's phenomenon, arteriogram. This 45-year-old man, an inveterate smoker, had had a myocardial infarction a number of months prior to hospitalization for extreme pain due to ischemia of the tip of the right index finger. Cold weather or the mere gripping of the steering wheel of his car were precipitating causes of numbness, tingling, and pallor in the fingers of the right hand and, to a mild degree, of the left hand. The arteriogram of the right hand shows obliteration or narrowing of various digital arteries.

upon the rate at which this is produced, since a modifying factor of considerable importance is the rate of development of collateral blood supply.

Etiology of thromboangitis obliterans
The etiology of this condition is unknown. Nevertheless, there are certainly contributing factors which are recognized and which are of much importance. The disease usually appears between the ages of 25 and 40 years and occurs almost exclusively in men. In fact, a diagnosis of thromboangitis obliterans in a woman is to be viewed with great skepticism (even more so than the diagnosis of Raynaud's disease in a man). This overwhelming preponderance of the disease

in men obviously suggests some relationship to the male hormone. The question of racial incidence was long considered important, since many of the early cases had been reported among Jews, but the disease has since been reported in virtually all races.

Smoking has an influence on the vascular system in general,¹⁴³ and it has been considered to be a major etiologic factor in Buerger's disease. The large majority of normal persons respond to cigarette smoking with definite peripheral vasoconstriction, lasting from a few minutes to half an hour or even longer, before the blood vessels gradually return to normal. There is usually a rise in systolic and diastolic blood pressure, and an increase in pulse rate of from 5 to 20 beats per minute. Nevertheless, there is much individual variation as regards the effect of smoking on the peripheral vessels, and Friedell⁵⁸ reported that men and women are not equally sensitive to tobacco smoke. Using radioactive iodinated serum albumin (RISA) as an indicator of volumetric changes in the peripheral vascular system, he concluded that the maximum degree of alteration in blood volume in the measured extremity in sensitive men averaged 19 per cent, whereas in women who responded the degree of alteration was approximately 33 per cent. The use of a filtered cigarette in each case lowered the responses considerably. The men showed a 10.7 per cent change with a filtered cigarette, while the women showed a 20.5 per cent change.

The general systemic effects of smoking represent, of course, the major factor in the inability of many persons to stop smoking. The "habit" constitutes a physiologic conditioning rather than merely a psychologic routine of "going through the motions" of smoking a cigarette.

There are other measurements which serve to indicate the effects of smoking on the cardiovascular system. It has been shown beyond further question that in persons with disease of the coronary vessels an ECG effect may be produced by smoking a cigarette, and it has also been shown that the

ballistocardiographic complexes in a person with an ischemic myocardium can also be altered. Furthermore, whereas the smoking of cigarettes which are devoid of nicotine results in no appreciable effect on the cutaneous temperature of the extremities, there is a measurable diminution of the skin temperature following the smoking of an ordinary cigarette.

It has been demonstrated that smoking of one or two cigarettes causes the release of from 3 to 100 millunits of the pituitary hormone into the blood stream in concentrations sufficient to produce vasoconstriction of the coronary vessels of the dog and presumably capable of having the same effect in man.³⁴ In some persons smoking appears to produce a symptom complex similar to angina pectoris and it is now appreciated that the drinking of a cocktail does not necessarily abolish the effects of nicotine on the cardiovascular system. Thromboangitis obliterans is certainly more frequent and severe among persons who smoke excessively than among those who smoke little or not at all.

To summarize the relationship between smoking and thromboangitis obliterans, while it has not been definitely proved that smoking is the primary etiologic factor in this condition it is rare indeed that thromboangitis obliterans is encountered in non-smokers. Thus, smoking does constitute a major aggravating factor, to say the least. And all physicians who have treated patients with Buerger's disease have observed that if the individual will stop smoking the process usually improves; that on the other hand if the individual does not stop smoking other types of therapy are usually not particularly successful, and the disease tends to progress to amputation of digits and more proximal portions of the extremities. The writer once assisted in the care of two patients with Buerger's disease, each of whom had had upwards of 50 separate operations. Despite repeated infections associated with gangrene of progressively more proximal portions of all four extremities

both of these individuals refused to stop smoking until no portion of the hand remained with which to grasp a cigarette.

Even so, obviously only a very small percentage of heavy smokers develop Buerger's disease, and there must be other contributing factors, including those which result in the overwhelming and almost exclusive preponderance of this disease in men.

Clinical findings The clinical findings in Buerger's disease are essentially the same as those in occlusive vascular disease from any other cause, perhaps with the exception that the patients are younger than those with atherosclerosis, that infection plays a more prominent rôle, and that the veins are often involved early in Buerger's disease. In my personal experience, painful "migrating phlebitis" has not regularly been a useful clue in differentiating the occlusive arterial disease due to thromboangitis obliterans from that due to embolism or atherosclerosis. If roentgen examination demonstrates calcification of the arteries, then Buerger's disease is unlikely. The symptoms of occlusive arterial disease are of course, pain in intermittent claudication and, subsequently, rest pain or trophic changes and finally ulceration and gangrene appear with osteoporosis and bone atrophy in the involved extremity. In contrast to the pain in the superficially involved veins mentioned above, pain along the involved artery is not particularly prominent. These patients are sensitive to cold and a secondary Raynaud's phenomenon is not infrequently observed. The reason for this increased sensitivity to cold is that partial occlusion of the vascular supply to the extremity is already present. Vasoconstriction of a degree which normally occurs in any patient on exposure to cold may sufficiently further reduce the arterial supply to the involved extremity to produce serious ischemia with the appearance of the "white digit." In one patient the pressure on the fingers required for gripping the steering wheel while driving was enough to produce pallor and numbness (Fig. 165).



Fig 164 Buerger's disease with superimposed Raynaud's phenomenon, arteriogram. This 45-year-old man, an inveterate smoker, had had a myocardial infarction a number of months prior to hospitalization for extreme pain due to ischemia of the tip of the right index finger. Cold weather or the mere gripping of the steering wheel of his car were precipitating causes of numbness, tingling, and pallor in the fingers of the right hand and, to a mild degree, of the left hand. The arteriogram of the right hand shows obliteration or narrowing of various digital arteries.

upon the rate at which this is produced, since a modifying factor of considerable importance is the rate of development of collateral blood supply.

Etiology of thromboangitis obliterans. The etiology of this condition is unknown. Nevertheless, there are certainly contributing factors which are recognized and which are of much importance. The disease usually appears between the ages of 25 and 40 years and occurs almost exclusively in men. In fact, a diagnosis of thromboangitis obliterans in a woman is to be viewed with great skepticism (even more so than the diagnosis of Raynaud's disease in a man). This overwhelming preponderance of the disease

in men obviously suggests some relationship to the male hormone. The question of racial incidence was long considered important, since many of the early cases had been reported among Jews, but the disease has since been reported in virtually all races.

Smoking has an influence on the vascular system in general,¹⁴³ and it has been considered to be a major etiologic factor in Buerger's disease. The large majority of normal persons respond to cigarette smoking with definite peripheral vasoconstriction, lasting from a few minutes to half an hour or even longer, before the blood vessels gradually return to normal. There is usually a rise in systolic and diastolic blood pressure, and an increase in pulse rate of from 5 to 20 beats per minute. Nevertheless, there is much individual variation as regards the effect of smoking on the peripheral vessels, and Friedell⁵⁸ reported that men and women are not equally sensitive to tobacco smoke. Using radioactive iodinated serum albumin (RISA) as an indicator of volumetric changes in the peripheral vascular system, he concluded that the maximum degree of alteration in blood volume in the measured extremity in sensitive men averaged 19 per cent, whereas in women who responded the degree of alteration was approximately 33 per cent. The use of a filtered cigarette in each case lowered the responses considerably. The men showed a 10.7 per cent change with a filtered cigarette, while the women showed a 20.5 per cent change.

The general systemic effects of smoking represent, of course, the major factor in the inability of many persons to stop smoking. The "habit" constitutes a physiologic conditioning rather than merely a psychologic routine of "going through the motions" of smoking a cigarette.

There are other measurements which serve to indicate the effects of smoking on the cardiovascular system. It has been shown beyond further question that in persons with disease of the coronary vessels an ECG effect may be produced by smoking a cigarette, and it has also been shown that the

ballistocardiographic complexes in a person with an ischemic myocardium can also be altered. Furthermore whereas the smoking of cigarettes which are devoid of nicotine results in no appreciable effect on the cutaneous temperature of the extremities, there is a measurable diminution of the skin temperature following the smoking of an ordinary cigarette.

It has been demonstrated that smoking of one or two cigarettes causes the release of from 3 to 190 milligrams of the pituitary hormone into the blood stream in concentrations sufficient to produce vasoconstriction of the coronary vessels of the dog and presumably capable of having the same effect in man.²⁴ In some persons smoking appears to produce a symptom complex similar to angina pectoris and it is now appreciated that the drinking of a cocktail does not necessarily abolish the effects of nicotine on the cardiovascular system. Thromboangitis obliterans is certainly more frequent and severe among persons who smoke excessively than among those who smoke little or not at all.

To summarize the relationship between smoking and thromboangitis obliterans while it has not been definitely proved that smoking is the primary etiologic factor in this condition it is rare indeed that thromboangitis obliterans is encountered in non smokers. Thus, smoking does constitute a major aggravating factor, to say the least. And all physicians who have treated patients with Buerger's disease have observed that, if the individual will stop smoking the process usually improves that on the other hand, if the individual does not stop smoking other types of therapy are usually not particularly successful, and the disease tends to progress to amputation of digits and more proximal portions of the extremities. The writer once assisted in the care of two patients with Buerger's disease, each of whom had had upwards of 50 separate operations. Despite repeated infections associated with gangrene of progressively more proximal portions of all four extremities

both of these individuals refused to stop smoking until no portion of the hand remained with which to grasp a cigarette.

Even so, obviously only a very small percentage of heavy smokers develop Buerger's disease, and there must be other contributing factors, including those which result in the overwhelming and almost exclusive preponderance of this disease in men.

Clinical findings The clinical findings in Buerger's disease are essentially the same as those in occlusive vascular disease from any other cause, perhaps with the exception that the patients are younger than those with atherosclerosis, that infection plays a more prominent rôle, and that the veins are often involved early in Buerger's disease. In my personal experience painful "migrating phlebitis" has not regularly been a useful clue in differentiating the occlusive arterial disease due to thromboangitis obliterans from that due to embolism or atherosclerosis. If roentgen examination demonstrates calcification of the arteries, then Buerger's disease is unlikely. The symptoms of occlusive arterial disease are, of course, pain, in intermittent claudication and, subsequently, rest pain; later, pain is associated with trophic changes and finally ulceration and gangrene appear with osteoporosis and bone atrophy in the involved extremity. In contrast to the pain in the superficially involved veins mentioned above, pain along the involved artery is not particularly prominent. These patients are sensitive to cold and a secondary Raynaud's phenomenon is not infrequently observed. The reason for this increased sensitivity to cold is that partial occlusion of the vascular supply to the extremity is already present. Vasoconstriction of a degree which normally occurs in any patient on exposure to cold may sufficiently further reduce the arterial supply to the involved extremity to produce serious ischemia with the appearance of the "white digit." In one patient, the pressure on the fingers required for gripping the steering wheel while driving was enough to produce pallor and numbness (Fig. 165).



Fig 165 Buerger's disease with secondary or superimposed Raynaud's phenomenon. Note incipient gangrene of tip of right index finger. The impending gangrene was averted and symptomatic relief obtained by right cervical sympathectomy.

The diagnosis of thromboangitis obliterans. The diagnosis consists primarily of evaluating the probabilities which have been listed above, in the presence of demonstrable occlusion of the distal arteries in a younger individual. It is often difficult, even where migratory phlebitis is present or there is definite evidence of arterial occlusion, to diagnose the condition accurately. The history of the clinical course is frequently helpful, and roentgen examination will usually rule out calcification of the vessels. Buerger's disease is characterized by exacerbations and remissions and, particularly if the individual can stop smoking, the attacks may gradually subside and further occlusion and ischemia not appear. Biopsy may be helpful.

Buerger's disease of the finger, an infrequent finding, may produce the appearance of genuine infection in the distal phalanx, the so-called "false felon." To incise such an ischemic finger is to invite inordinately prolonged healing, if not actual gangrene. Heat is also contraindicated, of course. One condition which is still confused with Buerger's disease is that of complete or incomplete aortic occlusion in a relatively young person. When good femoral pulses are not present, an aortogram should be done before a diagnosis of thromboangitis obliterans is made.

Survey of effective therapy in Buerger's disease. Measures to halt progress of the disease—The immediate progress of the mixed ischemia and infection may be improved by the judicious use of antibiotics.

However, little definitive improvement can be achieved by conservative measures unless the patient stops smoking. The position of the ischemic extremity may be adjusted to that which is most comfortable for the individual, since this probably represents the level of optimal blood flow to the part. Chilling of either the body as a whole or the involved part should be avoided by the use of warm clothing.

Treatment of disease which is present—Vasodilating drugs have, in our experience, produced relatively little measurable or lasting improvement. We do use Pilscoline in oral doses of from 50 to 100 mg four times daily, and this may produce some symptomatic relief from pain. It may also reduce the likelihood of impending ischemic gangrene. Nevertheless, this and the many other efforts at vasodilatation have not produced definitive improvement, though they may aid temporarily.

Cervical or lumbar sympathectomy is usually of prompt and demonstrable benefit. Pain is relieved and ischemic ulcers of the fingers or toes often heal. The probable improvement by sympathectomy may be estimated by preoperative paravertebral sympathetic block with procaine, but the absence of definite evidence of vasodilatation following such a block has not deterred us from performing sympathectomy where the ischemia of the toes threatened to result in gangrene. In fact, definite trophic changes have routinely constituted an indication for sympathectomy.

If actual gangrene is present, conservative local amputation will usually be required. Though healing may be slow, it can usually be anticipated with some confidence, in sharp contrast to almost certain nonhealing of conservative amputations in pure arteriosclerotic gangrene of the toes. As a rule, sympathectomy should precede amputation of any but obviously gangrenous tissue, the increased blood flow to the part may permit survival of questionably viable tissue.

To summarize, the two dependably successful therapeutic measures which may be used in this disease are for the patient to

stop smoking and to perform *sympathectomy* on the involved side. All other measures are symptomatic and produce only temporary benefit. Anticoagulants may be helpful in some cases, specifically, in one patient who had had repeated pulmonary emboli from involved leg veins, the embolization was controlled only so long as he was on Dicumarol therapy. Unfortunately, this does little for the basic disease process.

CERTAIN OTHER INFLAMMATORY DISEASES OF ARTERIES Mention should be made of *periarteritis nodosa*, a disseminated arterial disease of unknown origin characterized by focal inflammatory lesions which involve chiefly the medium sized and small arteries and arterioles, all layers being involved. The clinical manifestations of this condition which is now grouped among the collagen diseases are protean, depending upon which arteries to what organs are involved. It has been considered by many to be an allergic phenomenon, possibly due in some cases to sulfonamide therapy. Nevertheless, the cause remains unknown and treatment remains ineffective.

Another interesting arterial disease is that of *temporal arteritis*. The temporal arteries become painful and tender, one or both being involved, the biopsy of the involved vessel exhibits microscopic findings of a *granulomatous arteritis*. The condition has frequently been found to respond to ACTH and cortisone therapy. These agents appear to influence favorably both the local and systemic systems and may prevent the visual loss which can occur in this condition. These drugs do not restore vision that has been lost prior to the time treatment was started. The loss of vision is due to occlusion of the retinal artery or the arterioles or to ischemic optic neuritis.³

Arteries may also be involved in inflammatory processes which involve surrounding structures.

Arteriosclerosis Obliterans

The following discussion will have to do with occlusive disease of the lower aorta and more peripheral arteries particularly

DISEASES OF VESSELS OF LOWER EXTREMITY

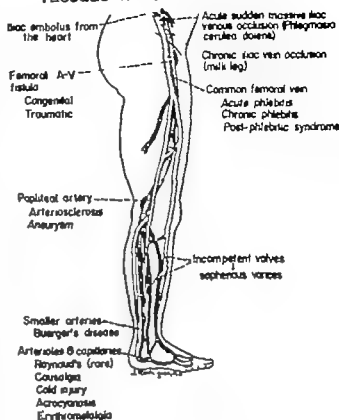


Fig 166 The pathophysiology of most of these conditions is considered in the text.

those supplying the lower extremities, due to what one may loosely term *arteriosclerosis* (Fig. 166). Actually, *atherosclerosis* would be the preferable or more exact term for the etiologic definition of most of the circumstances which will be considered. *Arteriosclerosis* has now become the term applied generally to the group of diseases which are characterized by actual structural changes in the medial and intimal layers of the artery and result in loss of elasticity of the artery, in addition to diminishing the size of the lumen. The condition which primarily affects the media, *Monckeberg's sclerosis*, is more immediately associated with the aging process and produces the familiar tortuosity of the visible and palpable larger arteries. In contrast, *atherosclerosis*, the condition with which this section will be primarily concerned, affects chiefly the intima or the area just beneath the intima, it appears to be due to a mechanism different from that producing medial sclerosis, and it is influenced by a number of factors, including

distal obstruction of the vessel, hypertension, increased dietary lipids, sex, uncontrolled diabetes mellitus, and gout—in addition to the fact that the aging process unquestionably contributes to its complex mechanism of development. Increased blood lipid levels, whether or not important in their qualitative aspects, appear to be a significant factor and one which lends hope that the condition can be prevented to some extent by proper dietary management.

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS OF ARTERIOSCLEROSIS The clinical manifestations of arteriosclerosis are due largely to the narrowing of the caliber or lumen of the vessel. Yet, there are certain other complications which may result from disturbed structure of the vessel wall—such as the usual aneurysm of the abdominal aorta, the fairly sudden occlusion which may occur around an atheromatous plaque, or a dissecting aneurysm of the aorta which, also, probably results from the undermining of an atherosclerotic plaque by the force of the blood stream. Atherosclerotic changes are manifested particularly in the brain, heart, kidney, and lower extremities. The usual process is that of acute or chronic arterial occlusion. Nervous tissue has the least tolerance for a diminished oxygen supply, with renal and myocardial tissues further down the scale, skin and voluntary muscle require the least oxygen of all, certainly over periods of relative ischemia. Obviously, certain tissues are expendable whereas others are essential for life.

THE DETERMINING FACTOR IN SYMPTOMS As emphasized earlier, the particular clinical manifestations which may be produced in any particular patient will vary widely depending upon the particular artery which is occluded. Although atherosclerosis tends to be widely distributed, some vessels are often more severely involved than others. For example, coronary occlusion due to atheromatous deposits may occur with little involvement of the vessels of the brain or legs.

Cerebral arteriosclerosis may result in a

stroke or, at times, quite bizarre neurologic manifestations, coronary atherosclerosis produces angina pectoris, renal involvement may result in hypertension or uremia, occlusion of the abdominal aorta may eventually produce Leriche's syndrome with impotency and perhaps pain in the buttocks or thighs on walking; arterial occlusion in the femoral produces intermittent claudication in the calf, and so on.

Ischemic versus neurologic pain Patients with arterial lesions are often referred first to a neurologist or neurosurgeon, and one of our patients whose aortic occlusive disease had for some time been treated for "neuritis" was completely relieved by aortic resection and the insertion of a homograft. Arterial occlusions that simulated neurologic disorders of the lower extremities were reviewed by Gilfillan and his associates^{61, 62}. According to these authors, the veterinarian Boullay first described the syndrome of intermittent claudication as early as 1831, and in 1858 Jean Marie Charcot described lameness and pain of claudication in horses pulling carriages. He also described an aneurysm of the common iliac artery in a patient and was perhaps the first to give an accurate and comprehensive survey of the clinical picture of pain due to vascular insufficiency in the lower extremity of man.

With the recent surge of interest in the diagnosis and treatment of occlusive disease of the lower aorta and leg vessels, knowledge of the symptomatology of ischemia of certain muscle groups and sensory areas has been increased and further refined. *Terminal aortic obstruction* (Fig 167) produces, as mentioned above, a symptomatology which has come to be known as Leriche's syndrome, and is characterized by atrophy of the musculature of the lower extremities including the buttocks, impotency or difficulty in maintaining an erection, and intense fatigue and muscular weakness of the lower extremities. When the patient is forced to walk, severe pain may develop in the buttocks, thighs, and legs, often in this order. *Total iliac obstruction* may be associated

with pain beginning in the low buttock and extending into the thigh and then to the calf on the affected side. The resemblance of such pain to that of nerve irritation at the lower lumbar and sacral levels has at times caused difficulty in making the differential diagnosis. Partial iliac obstruction may be associated with a syndrome of pain on exertion which includes a systolic bruit over the involved artery and claudication pain commencing in the calf and ascending to the thigh and buttock secondarily. Obstruction of the *profunda femoris* may be associated with pain in the anterior or medial aspect of the affected thigh and obstruction of the *superficial femoral* or *femoral popliteal* vessel causes the common claudication pain in the calf and popliteal area. Arterial occlusion in the vessels of the calf may be reflected by claudication pain in the sole of the foot.

PRINCIPLES OF MANAGEMENT OF OCCLUSIVE DISEASE OF AORTA AND MAJOR ARTERIES OF THE LOWER EXTREMITIES. The satisfactory management of occlusive disease of the aorta and major vessels to the lower extremities will depend upon an accurate diagnosis of the etiology and extent of the condition and, in the case of sudden occlusion, prompt therapy.

Diagnosis. The diagnosis of occlusion of the lower aorta rests upon the historical and physical findings outlined previously. These include the temperature of the lower extremities, palpation of individual vessels, ocillometric readings, blood pressure readings, muscle atrophy and other trophic changes (loss of hair, shiny skin, deformed nails) in the lower legs and the use of arteriograms or aortograms. Of these the evidence obtained from the history, plus careful physical examination (including notation of skin color, temperature and arterial pulsations) and the arteriogram are in our experience by far the most reliable measures in making an accurate diagnosis.

Treatment. Until recently the surgical treatment of arterial ischemia of the lower extremities consisted largely of lumbar sym-

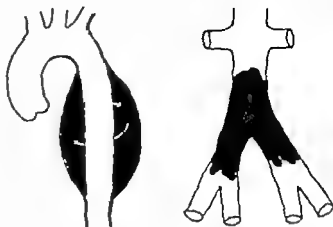


Fig 107 Left Dissecting aneurysm Right Occlusion of lower aorta. A dissecting aneurysm usually begins in the proximal aorta and progresses downward. By moving between the layers the blood tends to occlude the tributaries of the aorta. Atherosclerosis and syphilis, often in association with hypertension are the two most common causes. Chronic thrombotic occlusion of the lower aorta producing Leriche's syndrome is caused by atherosclerosis.

pathectomy, followed all too often eventually by amputation. At the present time, however, virtually every patient in whom there is the slightest question as to whether or not amputation is avoidable deserves an aortogram if the femoral pulsations are weak or absent. It is only by an acute awareness of the possibility of occlusion of the aorta or the iliac or femoral arteries that proper direct surgical attack will be carried out to restore a lumen of good caliber by either endarterectomy or homografting—for sympathectomy can only diminish the element of vasospasm, leaving the more serious organic occlusion unaffected. Neither sympathectomy nor medical measures can be expected to restore essentially normal flow in occlusive disease of major vessels.

Lumbar sympathectomy has been used for many years as treatment for a variety of diseases of the lower extremities that produce ischemia among these being thromboangitis obliterans, "diabetic gangrene," arteriosclerotic ischemia and cold or other injury with ischemia or causalgia. The indications for sympathectomy in this variety of circumstances were that a degree of arteriospasm was superimposed upon the underlying organic disease, a particularly good

example being thromboangitis obliterans. Moreover, sympathectomy was of some benefit in perhaps two-thirds of cases, and it was "curative" in a few. Now, however, aortic resection or bypassing has proved vastly more effective than sympathectomy in suitable cases, so much so that the true value of sympathectomy in occlusive disease of major arteries must be candidly reappraised. Sympathectomy should probably be used as the sole method of surgical treatment only in those patients in whom there is widespread occlusion of the vessels of the lower legs in the absence of a definite resectable major segment of occlusion such as occurs in the terminal aorta and its bifurcation, or in the iliac and femoral arteries. To repeat, sympathectomy can do nothing towards enlarging the lumen of an artery whose stenosis is due purely to organic obstruction, it can only relieve a possible spastic element that is superimposed upon organic occlusion. It does provide some measure of improvement in some patients, and we perform bilateral sympathectomy in patients with ischemic pain or threatening necrosis if a more effective surgical attack cannot be utilized. Sympathectomy may of course be combined with endarterectomy or with resection of a thrombosed area and replacement with a graft. Even so, if an arterial lumen of good size has been restored by removing organic occlusion, division of the sympathetic nerves becomes unimportant in most cases.

Resection or bypassing of occluded segment with graft. The availability of preserved aortic homografts and arterial substitutes has made possible multiple grafting procedures of diseased arterial segments. This has been applied with particular vigor and success to the occlusion of the lower aorta and its bifurcation. Patients may not be aware of the disease of the lower extremities for many months following the beginning of the occlusion, but at operation the vessel may be found to be filled with a solid core or plug of organized thrombus which may extend from the renal vessels down

to and including the iliac bifurcation on either side. Indeed, it may involve the femorals as well but, if it does, successful restoration of good flow is less likely. Occasionally the thrombosis extends upward and produces renal failure but, in our experience, thrombosis at this level usually presents as a hillock or mound between the ostia of the renal arteries, permitting continued flow through these vessels. When the thrombus extends to the level of the renal arteries, a clamp may be first applied above the renal vessels (or diagonally between the renal vessels to maintain flow to one kidney) and, making an incision across the aorta several centimeters below, by endarterectomy the upper extension of the thrombus can be removed, leaving media-adventitia to which the graft can be anastomosed proximally. A second clamp is then placed at a level a distance below the renal vessels and the first clamp (above) is opened but left in place as a safety measure, until the distal anastomosis has been completed. By this series of maneuvers the duration of renal ischemia is minimized. Of course, one may elect to remove the entire clot by simple endarterectomy, using no homograft or plastic prosthesis. Various shunts with tubing may also be used to minimize ischemia, when required.

Insidious occlusion of the aorta was brought to the attention of the profession by Leriche⁹⁹ in 1940 and was later emphasized by Elkin and Cooper.⁵¹ The first resection of the abdominal aorta with homografting was performed in 1952 by Dubost and his associates⁴⁹ for aneurysm. Since that time aortic resection has become commonplace, due in no small measure to the sound work of DeBakey, Cooley, Creech and their associates.

We have abandoned the use of heparin during or following aortic resection. If the anastomoses have been correctly performed and the vessels are patent at the end of the operation, clotting is unlikely to occur thereafter and potential hemorrhage due to heparin is avoided. The best possible means of

avoiding postoperative thrombosis is to be certain at operation that free distal arterial flow is present, to permit a full head of pressure through the aortic graft into the femoral vessels.

Delayed foot pulses following grafting

One phenomenon of considerable concern at times is the fact that foot pulses or even femoral pulses may not be palpable for from 24 to 72 hours following operation—despite the fact that free flow existed at the close of the operation, that the leg appears to be viable, and that excellent pulses may be present subsequently. The urgent question is, of course, whether or not to re-operate. This phenomenon is due to arterial spasm. The normal femoral artery may be reduced almost to a cordlike structure by spasm in the presence of femoral phlebitis.

Signs of diminishing viability of an extremity following aortic surgery Coldness and pallor of the extremity, with an absence of even femoral pulses, may be due almost entirely to arterial spasm and is, as we have just seen, compatible with viability of the extremity. In fact, foot pulses may be excellent 24 hours later. How, then, can one know when the extremity is not viable so that the graft can be re-explored before it is too late?

The first evidence of diminishing functional integrity of the leg is loss of sensation to touch or pinprick. Shortly afterward or at times before, the patient will find it impossible to move the toes or the foot as the case may be. In particular, if the patient could move the leg or legs immediately following operation but can now no longer do so (especially if movement of the thigh excludes cord damage) the extremity will probably not survive without further surgery. Usually the graft will be found to contain clot and, following its evacuation good distal flow can often be achieved. Finally, if the technical aspects of good arterial anastomosis are always carefully adhered to, very few patients will require secondary operations.

Selection of cases Aside from imperfect

technic, the commonest cause of failure of aortic grafting to preserve the extremity is that of advanced atherosclerotic occlusion of more distal arteries, the same process that precipitated thrombotic occlusion of the aorta. In general, if advanced trophic changes and impending gangrene are already present in association with the occlusion of the aortic bifurcation, the results of aortic resection and grafting will usually not save the leg. On the other hand, in relatively young patients (in their 50's) who have occlusion of the aortic bifurcation without advanced arteriosclerosis of the distal vessels and trophic changes of the skin and nails of the feet, the improvement following resection of the aorta may be extremely gratifying. Patients who previously could scarcely walk across the room without pain and fatigue in the extremities are often able to walk without limitation following operation. Since it is a simple matter to perform bilateral lumbar sympathectomy with the exposure which has been achieved for the purpose of resecting the aorta one can divide these nerves at the time of aortic surgery to reduce postoperative arterial spasm (though we rarely do so).

Thromboendarterectomy This procedure is frequently and successfully employed in connection with occlusion of the aorta and iliac vessels but the success achieved with its use in the femoral and smaller vessels has been limited. The femoral vessels have usually thrombosed following thromboendarterectomy, and at the present time arterial bypassing is preferred by most. Arterial surgery is greatly facilitated by precise localization of points of occlusion and, if indicated arteriograms performed on the operating table are most helpful.

In the aorta, it is usually relatively simple to establish a plane of cleavage between the occluding plug (which includes the intima subintimal deposits, and the inner portion of the media) and the outer layer of media with the adventitia.

SUMMARY OF MEASURES OF USE IN ARTERIO-SCLEROTIC ARTERIAL DISEASE. Although the

above review has been devoted to surgical procedures which may be done, a great many cases of arteriosclerotic occlusion are of such a diffuse nature that, aside from the possible value of sympathectomy, little helpful surgery can be offered. Nevertheless, even in these patients something may often be accomplished by a careful program of conservative management. Extremes of temperature should be avoided and, most important, the patient should not injure the toes through improper cutting of the toenails. He will also maintain strict diabetic control, should he have the disease. He should stop the use of tobacco if Buerger's disease is suspected. Fungus infections of the toes and feet are treated, and vasodilators can be used for symptomatic relief and in periods of impending gangrene. While the results here are not often dramatic, they afford in a great many patients the only measures besides sympathectomy that are likely to be beneficial. They should be used with vigor.

To conclude, in suitable candidates arterial resection with grafting, thromboendarterectomy, or bypassing with a graft constitutes the most direct and successful means of truly increasing blood supply to the ischemic extremity.

ARTERIAL OCCLUSION

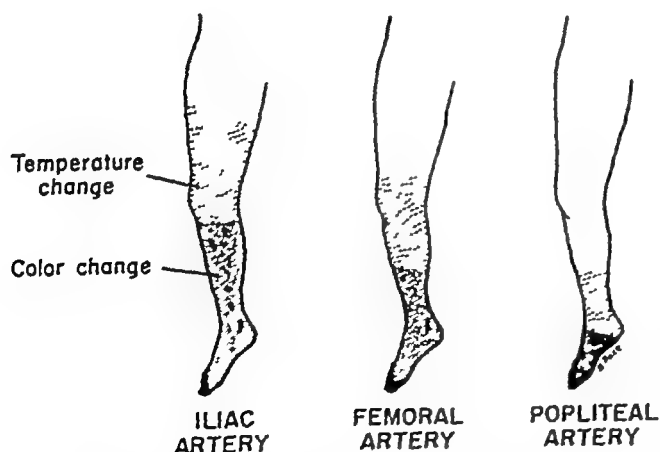


Fig 168 It is useful to note not only the extent of the color change but also the extent of temperature and sensation changes. First an ischemic extremity becomes numb, then power is lost, and soon gangrene ensues.

Sudden Arterial Occlusion (Embolism and Thrombosis) (Fig. 168)

Sudden occlusion may involve almost any artery of the body, but one of the more dramatic examples is sudden occlusion of the bifurcation of the aorta. This is usually due to an embolus from the left heart, producing the so-called "saddle embolus." While some instances of sudden occlusion of major arteries are due to thrombosis, most are due to embolism. Of 100 cases studied by Allen, Barker, and Hines,³ 41 were due to emboli from heart disease, the most frequent source of emboli. Although 32 were considered to be due to "thrombosis," it could not be definitely excluded that the thrombosis might not have begun as an embolus secondary to myocardial infarction. In patients with atrial fibrillation, emboli may arise from the left atrium. Again, *embolism from the left heart constitutes the major cause of sudden arterial occlusion.*

The embolus may involve virtually any artery, as stated, but certain arteries are more frequently occluded than are others. Emboli tend to lodge at bifurcations. Specifically, occlusion of the aortic, iliac, femoral, or popliteal bifurcation is most often encountered. However, the embolus may enter the brain or it may enter the superior mesenteric artery and produce gangrene of the major portion of the small bowel and a portion of the colon. In contrast, thrombosis most often affects smaller vessels such as the coronary and cerebral arteries.

When the patient has atrial fibrillation or has been known to have a recent myocardial infarction, the cause of the sudden arterial occlusion is usually not difficult to diagnose. Conversely, the occurrence of arterial embolism should suggest the possibility of myocardial infarction in a patient who is not fibrillating, as in the following instance.

CASE STUDY A 54-year-old man with left femoral occlusion was referred to us almost 48 hours after the probable time of occlusion. He had had no symptoms particularly suggestive of heart disease, but had had an

attack of upper abdominal pain 2 weeks previously which had been diagnosed as pancreatitis on the basis of an elevated serum amylase level. The arterial involvement had occurred while the patient was sitting with the left leg crossed over the right during recuperation from this attack when he wished to uncross his legs he found he could hardly move the left one. Pain developed only slowly and was never severe. Because of the circumstances of onset of the occlusion, we diagnosed femoral thrombosis rather than embolism. The foot was already gangrenous when he arrived at the University Hospital, and the leg was amputated. However, his convalescence from a rapid amputation under minimal anesthesia was inordinately protracted—tachycardia, profuse sweating, mild dyspnea and an ashen color being prominent features even at bed rest.

Since we were not at all satisfied with the patient's progress, an internist was asked to re-evaluate the entire case. He examined the patient, requested an ECG, and promptly diagnosed massive myocardial infarction with heart failure. The use of digitalis and a mercurial diuretic resulted in dramatic improvement.

We had not strongly considered an embolus from the heart because of the following inadequate reasons: (1) the absence of atrial fibrillation (2) the fact that the patient was referred with a diagnosis of pancreatitis that was supported by elevated serum amylase levels (3) because of the slow and essentially silent onset of the occlusion and (4) because pancreatic disease may be associated with vascular occlusion. In retrospect however, the pain of "pancreatitis" was doubtless that of a "heart attack" (as his wife had quietly believed from the beginning) and the only moderately elevated amylase level may have been due to spasm of the sphincter of Oddi following the administration of opiates. All too often one is unduly influenced by a previous diagnosis in a given case especially if the clinical impression was supported by objective labora-

tory data. The moral is that one should not accept a previous diagnosis without an utterly independent analysis of the facts of the case. Incidentally, observers who first saw the patient after the occlusion had been misled by the major symptom of paralysis without appreciable pain and, despite marked pallor of the left leg, had for almost 24 hours entertained the diagnosis of a nerve lesion rather than arterial occlusion. Para-vertebral blocks were then employed for another 24 hours before the patient was transferred for possible arterial surgery. Unfortunately, by this time the leg had already turned a dark purple and a line of demarcation had appeared, below which gangrene was obvious.

This case emphasizes that, while arterial embolism is usually characterized by sudden pain in the involved member, this need not always be so. It is at times advisable still to perform embolectomy, even though the foot may be obviously beyond salvage. Better blood flow to the remaining thigh may allow the stump to heal promptly, where otherwise it might not. In fact, in one patient a subsequent disarticulation of the thigh was required because all the surrounding muscle sloughed following amputation for iliac occlusion. Morbidity was enormously increased over what it might perhaps have been had embolectomy been performed even though the foot and lower leg were already gangrenous.

More than 50 per cent of involved legs can be saved if embolectomy is performed within 6 hours, though the patient may die of subsequent emboli or of the underlying heart disease. Heparin is not essential post-operatively.

Arterial occlusion may involve arteries which cannot be examined, and a patient is described (p. 337) who had all the signs and symptoms of an acute abdomen. Mesenteric arterial occlusion often produces gangrene of variable lengths of bowel before the diagnosis is established, frequently at autopsy.

THE DIAGNOSIS OF SUDDEN ARTERIAL OCCLUSION

SION FURTHER COMMENT As with most diagnoses, the circumstance which most readily leads to a correct diagnosis of sudden arterial occlusion is the suspicion that the patient has a condition which may have resulted in the release of an embolus—such as atrial fibrillation, a recent myocardial infarction, or generalized arteriosclerosis. When the patient has sudden and severe pain, the correct diagnosis is more likely to be suspected than when the onset of the symptoms is characterized by a gradual numbness and paralysis. Again, various forms of arterial disease are frequently considered to represent primary nerve lesions for some time before the correct diagnosis is established. In a series of patients studied by Allen, Barker, and Hines³ the symptoms appeared suddenly in only 48 per cent of cases and in only 54 per cent of cases was pain the initial symptom. On this basis, sudden arterial occlusion would be suspected in only about one-half of the cases in which it occurs, if abrupt pain were considered the only symptom of importance. Equally important, in our experience, are numbness, coldness and tingling, associated with progressive muscular weakness and, later, inability to move the leg at all. Of course, the rapidity with which symptoms appear is related to whether complete occlusion occurs abruptly or only gradually.

The diagnosis of arterial occlusion in a lower extremity is made on the basis of the symptoms previously mentioned, along with a careful search for confirmatory physical signs of arterial occlusion at various levels and diminished venous filling. The value of an arteriogram in defining the level of acute arterial occlusion should not be ignored.

Arterial spasm may so closely simulate arterial occlusion that the differentiation may be almost impossible. We once were asked to see a patient in consultation in whom the differential diagnosis involved distinguishing acute venous disease from acute arterial occlusion. There was no par-

ticular reason to suspect that the patient had sustained acute arterial occlusion, since there was no evidence of antecedent heart disease, but it was only after successful paravertebral sympathetic block that relaxation of the artery was effected. Here the arterial spasm proved to be associated with massive venous occlusion. Thrombophlebitis, phlebothrombosis, and phlegmasia cerulea dolens may all be associated with various degrees of arterial spasm. To appreciate the ischemia which arterial spasm can achieve, one needs but to perform an operation upon the superficial femoral vein (as in the days when superficial femoral veins were almost routinely ligated in any patient suspected of having phlebothrombosis of the lower extremity or pulmonary embolism) to observe the marked spasm of the artery which may occur following manipulation in separating the vein from the artery prior to ligation of the vein. Virtually no blood is passing through the artery when it is in severe spasm, and certainly no pulse is palpable. On the other hand, the injection of local anesthesia around the artery for a distance frequently results in dilatation of this vessel and a return of pulsations. In trauma, arterial spasm may be of such severity as to threaten gangrene.

While an arteriogram should be performed where required, it is really not essential for determining the level of occlusion, since this will usually be just distal to the point at which normal pulsations can be palpated. The coldness of the skin begins several inches below the level of occlusion. If one femoral pulse is absent but the opposite one is present, the occlusion will usually be found at the iliac bifurcation on the involved side, if both femorals are absent, the occlusion is at the aortic bifurcation, and so on. The level at which the skin temperature changes is best determined by passing the hand fairly rapidly down the skin of the leg. Occlusion of the popliteal artery results in a change in skin temperature just above the ankle, occlusion of the bifurcation of the

femoral results in a change in temperature at the junction of the lower and middle thirds of the thigh; occlusion of the common iliac artery may result in a change in skin temperature at the junction of the middle and upper thirds of the thigh (Fig. 168). The line of gangrenous demarcation will appear several inches below the level of temperature change. It is always desirable, if amputation must be done, to allow sufficient time to make certain of the line of demarcation, so that an adequate amputation can be done initially without the necessity for secondary procedures, except where infection may be present at the time of the first operation. That the mortality rate is increased where secondary operations are required has been repeatedly demonstrated and patients who have arterial occlusion are usually poor operative risks to begin with.

Unquestionably arterial spasm contributes considerably to the symptomatology of acute arterial occlusion, in addition to the actual organic or mechanical obstruction of the arterial lumen but important time can be lost in treating arterial spasm with paravertebral sympathetic blocks in lieu of definitive surgery to re-establish arterial patency.

Conservative measures for acute embolic occlusion save few extremities that would not have survived in any event. Paravertebral sympathetic block or "continuous caudal anesthesia" is probably the most valuable single conservative measure. In addition the part is left at room temperature, arterial vasodilators are employed, and, where indicated, anticoagulants are given.

In a review of 330 instances of peripheral arterial embolism Hamovici⁷¹ found that 38 per cent occurred in the femoral arteries, 14 per cent in the popliteal artery, 14 per cent in the common iliac artery, 10 per cent at the bifurcation of the aorta, 9 per cent in the brachial arteries, and the remainder in miscellaneous portions of the arterial tree. Six hours is usually considered the interval following acute occlusion during which suc-

cessful embolectomy can be anticipated, but occasional successes have been reported after much longer intervals. Retrograde evacuation of clot is helpful.

Arterial Aneurysms

An aneurysm is an abnormal dilatation of an artery that is permanent (Fig. 169). It is caused by some agent, process, or predisposition which produces or allows weakening of a portion of the arterial wall with resulting bulging at that point. Among the many agents which may produce injury to the arterial wall, the more important ones are syphilis, arteriosclerosis, certain types of infection and gunshot injuries which may or may not actually pierce the wall of the vessel. One other type of interesting aneurysm is the so-called "post stenotic" dilatation of an artery which occurs distal to a constriction of the vessel. For example, it has been noted that the subclavian may show aneurysm formation distal to compression as in cervical rib or scalenus anticus syndrome. The pulmonary artery may show marked dilatation distal to the stenotic valve in pulmonic stenosis. Holman⁸¹ reviewed the experimental work, including his own studies, and concluded that post-stenotic dilatation is due to the lateral waves of pressure produced by the jet effect of the stream passing through the narrowed portion of the artery and causing physical disturbances in the movement of the blood stream just distal to the point of constriction (Fig. 170). The particularly important contribution of his report was that it explained the mechanism of a common structural defect in terms of well established principles of physics. Once the arterial wall is diseased and begins to dilate from the normal pressure of blood flow, the vessel lumen at the proximal end of the aneurysmal dilatation becomes a relatively constricted point, and so the turbulence effect described by Holman may be a further contributing factor in most aneurysms.

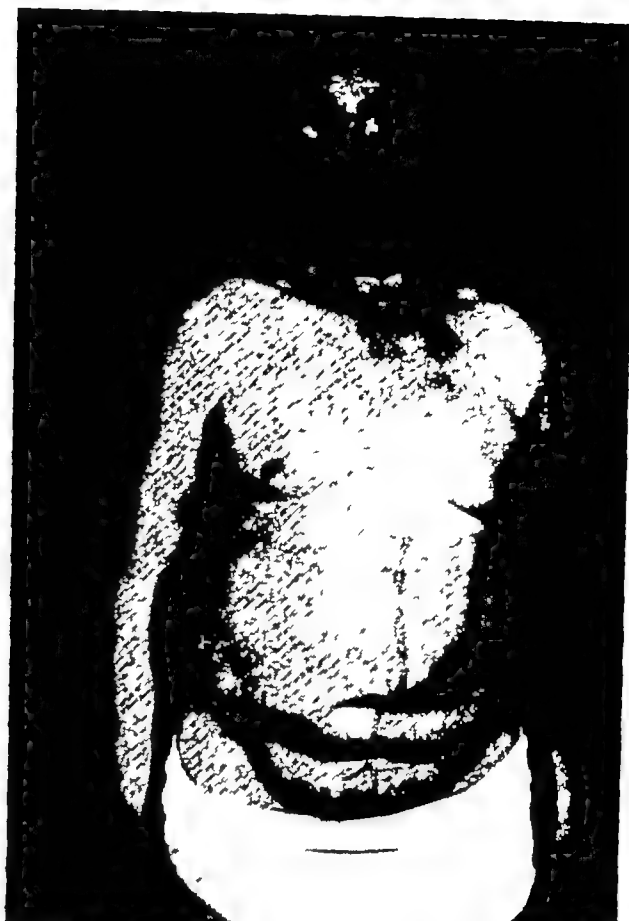
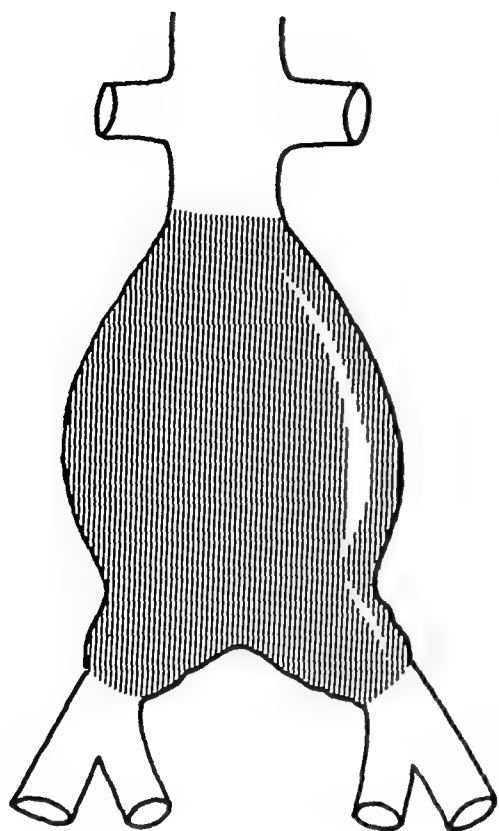
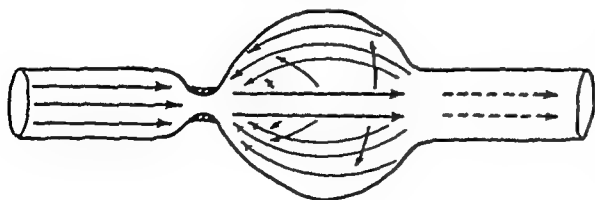


Fig 169 Case study, ruptured abdominal aneurysm S S, a 56-year-old man was suddenly seized with severe left lower abdominal pain when he jumped backward to avoid the kick of a cow. Soon thereafter the pain radiated downward into the left testicle, and when admitted to the hospital in shock he was assigned to the urology service with the provisional diagnosis of renal disease. Despite occasional episodes of hypotension and a low hematocrit level, the diagnosis of a ruptured abdominal aneurysm was not seriously considered until, after 5 days, a pulsating abdominal mass was detected. The aneurysm suddenly began to bleed again, and emergency resection and grafting were performed. Postoperatively he almost died of uremia (see Fig 23), but he eventually returned to work. Rupture of an aneurysm is not necessarily fatal immediately, and many patients can be saved by prompt surgery.

PRESSURE WAVES DISTAL TO STENOSIS



(AFTER HOLMAN)

Fig 170 The lateral pressure waves set up by the jet of fluid past a constriction produce increased stress on the wall of this segment of the vessel. Eventually structural defects permit aneurysm formation.

In general, aneurysms of the thoracic aorta are often due to syphilis, whereas aneurysms of the abdominal aorta are usually due to arteriosclerosis. Formerly it was the thoracic aneurysm that was more frequently encountered, due to the increased incidence of active syphilis throughout the population, but now the abdominal aneurysm is more frequently encountered because of the diminishing incidence of late untreated syphilis and the increasing age of the general population. This is a fortunate circumstance, in its way, for it is usually a relatively simple matter to resect and to re-

place with a graft an arteriosclerotic aneurysm of the abdominal aorta, which commonly arises below the renal arteries. It is not as simple a matter to excise the syphilitic aneurysm of the thoracic aorta, which may involve a considerable length of the vessel. Yet, aneurysms of virtually all segments of the aorta have now been successfully resected.

The so-called *mycotic aneurysm* is due to involvement of the vessel wall by an infectious process often by a fungus or by embolism from subacute bacterial endocarditis. In this circumstance, as in all others, the arterial wall is weakened at one point and constant pressure within the vessel gradually causes a dilatation of the vessel at this point. Still another type of aneurysm is the so-called *false aneurysm* (pulsating hematoma) which actually represents a hematoma which communicates with the arterial stream through an opening in the vessel wall. This is not truly an aneurysm, since here the "aneurysm" actually consists of a sac of clot, the covering of the sac being a fibrous membrane which has been thrown around the expanding hematoma, that is, continuity of the vessel wall has been lost, as would be the case with a true aneurysm only if it had ruptured (Fig. 173).

A congenital defect in the wall of an artery may also be the cause of an aneurysm, particularly of those occurring within the brain, which are of particular interest to neurosurgeons. For example the congenital aneurysm of the internal carotid artery and portions of the circle of Willis is well known. Aneurysms may develop in these vessels at any time throughout life, and rupture of these lesions is a major cause of brain hemorrhage. They are presently treated either by direct attack or more conservatively by ligation of the common carotid artery on that side.

In general, aneurysms involving the aorta to which most of the subsequent discussion will be directed, are of either the *saccular* or the *fusiform* type. The *saccular*

portion involves only one side of the artery and has a "neck." By placing a clamp across the neck, one can excise the aneurysm without stopping the flow of blood through the aorta and can then suture the defect in the wall of the aorta. This procedure has been termed "lateral aortorrhaphy."

Aneurysms with at least some fusiform component are, in our clinic, far more common, and they require the actual excision of a portion of the aorta and replacement with a homograft or some plastic material. For example, in the case of syphilitic aneurysms of the ascending aorta and arch the involvement may begin as a diffuse enlargement of the entire ascending aorta and a portion of the arch. Thus it may be difficult or impossible to find a point on the aorta where the diameter is relatively small and where one can state that here is relatively normal aorta, to which the graft may be sutured. The requirement of continuing blood flow during the process of inserting the thoracic graft originally necessitated the use of some type of bypass by means of plastic tubes or other material. Later DeBakey, Cooley, and Creech used the pump-oxygenator successfully for this purpose. The heart will fail in a matter of minutes if the ascending aorta is cross clamped without providing for emptying the heart of blood by some form of bypass or by placing the heart at rest by the use of the pump-oxygenator with inflow occlusion.

Whereas one cannot cross clamp the thoracic aorta for more than a relatively few minutes (this being increased to almost an hour by the use of hypothermia) the abdominal aorta below the renal vessels can be clamped off for much more than an hour in the normothermic individual without serious consequences. Therefore, in addition to the fact that control of the aortic blood flow is more readily accomplished in the lower abdominal aorta, the surgeon may also proceed with the firm knowledge that the occlusion and division of the aorta for whatever reasonable amount of time is required to



Fig 171 Dissecting aneurysm of aorta (see case J D in text) *Upper left* Probe in site of origin of dissecting aneurysm Note true aneurysm just above *Lower left* Intramural clot below renal arteries *Right* The entire descending aorta was involved

achieve satisfactory insertion of the graft will not often result in serious consequences to the patient—such as incontinence, renal failure, or gangrene of the extremity Nevertheless, this is not to say that the occlusion time should not be minimized by careful planning as the operation proceeds

DISSECTING ANEURYSM The dissecting aneurysm is not really an aneurysm in the usual sense in which the word is used In effect, the blood stream finds an opening between the layers of the aortic wall, and the pressure of the stream then forces the layers of the wall apart While cystic necrosis of the media, or syphilis, is the cause in many cases, in the ones that we have observed the dissection has appeared to be precipitated by an atheromatous plaque (Fig 171) Many

of these patients have hypertension The process usually begins in the aortic arch or in the ascending aorta and progresses downward through the media The following case presents certain features of this condition and emphasizes the difficulty in achieving an accurate diagnosis in some patients

Case study J D, a 48-year-old man was awakened at night with abdominal pain which became progressively more severe His local physician had seen him and, because of a mass in the abdomen and other symptoms, had diagnosed a ruptured abdominal aneurysm It was known that arterial hypertension and a positive serology had been present previously

On admission to the University Hospital

he was obviously critically ill and was complaining of severe abdominal pain with pain down the right leg. The pulse was rapid but the blood pressure level was one of mild hypertension. The abdomen was tense and there was a palpable mass in the epigastrium which actually enlarged to some extent while the patient was lying on the x ray table awaiting an aortogram. Because of his critical condition, the radiologist elected to perform the aortogram in a retrograde fashion, by passing a polyethylene catheter up the femoral artery. This resulted twice in most peculiar findings. It appeared to show no renal visualization on one side but renal visualization on the other side, and the possibility of a dissecting aneurysm was seriously considered from the bizarre findings on the aortogram. By this time however, the patient was complaining of increasingly severe pain in the abdomen, and the mass in the abdomen was visibly enlarging. Accordingly while the possibility of a dissecting aneurysm beginning in the thoracic aorta was still seriously entertained, it was considered imperative to open the abdomen and control what was almost certain to be an expanding hematoma. As soon as the peritoneal cavity was entered a retroperitoneal hematoma was noted to lie in the general region of the pancreas and the celiac axis. After placing tapes around the aorta above and below, a direct attack was made upon the apparent source of the hemorrhage. This proved to be posterior to the pancreas and, with appropriate dissection, it was eventually found to arise from a branch of the celiac axis. Still further dissection revealed that the hemorrhage was arising from the wall of the splenic artery about 2 inches distal to its origin. As the wall of the artery was cut across after ligation it was seen that a dissecting aneurysm had separated the media from the adventitia and that the latter had ruptured to produce the retroperitoneal hemorrhage. There was a strong thrill in the gastrolephatic artery but its pulsation was excellent—as was the pulsation in each renal artery and in all other major branches

of the abdominal aorta, including the iliac vessels. The aorta itself felt normal.

At this point a major decision had to be made. On the basis of probabilities, it seemed likely that the dissecting aneurysm involving the splenic artery was one that had begun in the thoracic aorta and extended downward. On the other hand, at no time had the patient had pain in his chest and all pulses of the arms, neck, and legs were of good volume, save for the right femoral pulse which was definitely diminished. Nevertheless, the right iliac pulse was good. Therefore, because of the patient's poor condition and the fact that the source of the bleeding had now been controlled—in addition to the fact that it was considered possible that the dissection might be a local phenomenon without a thoracic component (again, the aorta was normal to palpation)—it was elected to close the abdomen and not to enter the chest for the purpose of dealing with a possible dissecting aneurysm involving the thoracic aorta.

Postoperatively the patient did well from the general standpoint of maintenance of blood pressure and other functions, though he formed virtually no urine during the 24 hours that he lived. On the day following operation it was apparent that he was doing poorly, though the blood pressure was well maintained until a few hours preceding death. The pain in the right leg had increased but otherwise symptoms were not remarkable. He died in shock approximately 24 hours following the operation, from no clearly discernible cause.

Autopsy revealed a dissecting aneurysm which had begun just proximal to a large atheromatous plaque at the junction of the arch and the descending aorta (Fig 171). Approximately one half of the circumference of the aorta was involved by the process. There was a true aneurysm of the distal aortic arch just proximal to the point of dissection, and there were extensive syphilitic changes in the thoracic aorta. The cause of death was not readily apparent since there had been no further bleeding. Ischemia

of the spinal cord could have been an etiologic factor in the shock present terminally, certainly the failure to excrete urine for 24 hours was not of sufficient significance to cause death due to renal failure, in the absence of potassium intoxication. Hepatic blood flow had apparently not been occluded.

In summary, a dissecting aneurysm is an exceedingly serious condition which usually



Fig 172 Ruptured abdominal aneurysm resected with homografting. This patient died of renal failure.

ARTERIAL TRAUMA

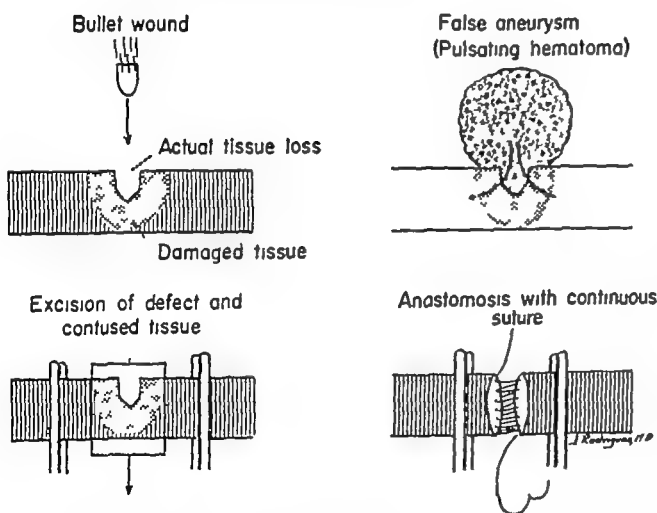


Fig 173 Gunshot injuries produce not only actual tissue loss but also radiating damage to the surrounding arterial wall. This damaged tissue should also be excised. Occasionally, especially following bird-shot injury, the arterial lumen will have been occluded by intramural hemorrhage when no defect or bleeding is visible on direct inspection of the vessel. We prefer to excise the damaged segment of the artery and to perform end-to-end anastomosis. Such primary arterial anastomoses following injury are almost uniformly successful.

ends in death, and immediate death occurs in approximately one-third of the cases. More than 50 per cent die within the first 24 hours of the onset of symptoms and only a few live for more than a month. Nevertheless, various groups have operated upon these lesions and have achieved some encouraging results.

PROGNOSIS IN ANEURYSMS The prognosis of any particular aneurysm depends upon its location, and this may be determined by angiography. It has been estimated that the average length of life in untreated abdominal aneurysms is from 6 to 12 months following diagnosis of the lesion. While homografts may themselves become aneurysmal, there can be little question that the outlook for patients with aortic aneurysms, especially abdominal aneurysms, has been greatly improved by excisional surgery. Again, from the technical standpoint it is much simpler to excise and graft an aneurysm in the abdomen arising below the renal arteries than it is to excise a lesion in the upper abdomen or chest. Rupture of an abdominal aneurysm (Fig 172) is not necessarily fatal if operated upon promptly (Fig 169). With the use of temporary bypasses almost any segment of the aorta can be operated upon. It is too early to state what the longterm results of excisional aortic surgery will be.

Traumatic Arterial Injuries (Fig. 173)

The problems associated with acute arterial injury, whether due to gunshot wounds or to stabbing, fall roughly into the following categories: (1) acute severance of the vessel, with impending ischemic gangrene if blood flow is not successfully re-established, (2) more subacute disease, with the formation of a false aneurysm (pulsating hematoma), and (3) chronic disease with arteriovenous fistula. In addition, (4) it has been mentioned that actual arterial wall dissolution may not have been present but that injury to neighboring structures or perhaps even the outer portion of the arterial wall by a bullet may result in the syndrome of

*causalgia*¹²⁵ This complex consists of sweating, paresthesias, and other phenomena which may be relieved by sympathectomy on the involved side. It can become chronic and quite disabling.

ACUTE ARTERIAL INJURY WITH LOSS OF VESSEL INTEGRITY The frequency with which gunshot injuries are admitted to civilian hospitals in different parts of the United States and, indeed, to different hospitals within the same city, varies markedly. In those hospitals in which the members of the house staff rarely see an acute gunshot injury or a serious stab wound an important phase of surgical training is neglected. Vascular injuries are frequently of the most urgent nature but they are often relatively easily managed once their fundamental nature is clearly understood.

The following case study is illustrative of many of the problems which accompany the severance of a major artery by a bullet or knife.

Case study The patient was a 23 year-old man who had been shot in a gun fight while intoxicated. He was brought to the University Hospital in a state of shock, having lost an undetermined volume of blood from a wound in the lower portion of the right thigh. It was not possible of course to know how much blood he had lost, but the fact that he was in shock in the reclining position had he not also been intoxicated would have indicated that he had lost a liter or more of blood. Hypotension responds less readily to a given volume of transfusion in the inebriated subject perhaps because of both capillary vasodilatation and less efficient arteriolar vasoconstrictor response to the oligemic state.

Physical examination had already demonstrated that whereas the left foot was warm and had a good dorsalis pedis pulse (after a relatively normal blood pressure had been restored by blood transfusion) the right foot was cold and no pulses were palpable either over the popliteal area or below rendering arterial damage highly likely. There was no major neurologic deficit.

At operation, begun with a pneumatic tourniquet placed about the upper right thigh but not inflated, the hematoma was evacuated and the path of the bullet exposed. The sciatic nerve was intact, as had been expected from the neurologic examination prior to operation, but it was found that the popliteal artery had been almost completely severed, being lacerated into shreds for a distance of approximately 1 inch. This had of course prevented retraction of the two ends and had resulted in greater blood loss than would have occurred otherwise. (In a similar case in which the wound had been inflicted with a butcher knife, the ends of the severed femoral artery had retracted and bleeding had ceased entirely, the patient being in relatively mild shock on admission prior to successful end-to-end anastomosis.) Bleeding from the artery was brisk as soon as the hematoma was removed and it was necessary to inflate the pneumatic tourniquet to control blood loss until the artery had been freed up and controlled both above and below the site of injury.

After thorough debridement of the surrounding musculature the ends of the popliteal artery were freshened for a distance of perhaps 0.5 cm, since the blast of the bullet injury had probably caused arterial wall damage for some distance adjacent to the point of actual division of the vessel. To our dismay it was now impossible to bring the ends of the artery together for anastomosis, and no suitable graft for an artery of this small caliber was available at that time. A venous graft was considered but not used when it was found possible, by sharply flexing the lower leg on the thigh, to bring the ends of the artery together. The dorsalis pedis pulse was promptly restored by the anastomosis, and it remained good after operation. A plaster cast was applied and then bivalved to keep the knee flexed for 1 week. At the end of this time the leg was removed from the cast and gradual exercises were prescribed in order to straighten the knee. Extension was complete in 2 weeks. Foot

pulses remained strong, and the patient had a completely successful result

Comment Had the ends of the popliteal artery in this case been ligated instead of anastomosed, the chances of losing the foot would have been greater than 50 per cent. Ligation of major arteries without attempted anastomosis is rapidly becoming a thing of the past. With reasonable care the flow can be restored in the vast majority of instances where little arterial length has been lost.

As for technical requirements, the following are helpful but none are indispensable: pneumatic tourniquet, 0000 and 00000 arterial silk, a light weight needle holder or a straight hemostat, fine forceps, heavy bulldog clamps, and various types of arterial clamps. When the patient is anesthetized a general anesthetic is employed, and adequate amounts of blood for transfusion are essential. Almost any type of stitch that is hemostatic will suffice, though we prefer either a continuous running "baseball" suture or the interrupted everting mattress stitch.

Arterial injuries are often associated with *nerve injuries*, and it must remain a matter of judgment as to whether a severed nerve is to be sutured at the time of the original operation or whether the wound will be closed and the nerve sutured at the end of 3 months. Immediate suture is often advisable. If not, the ends of the nerve should be tagged so that they will be readily identifiable if it is decided to delay nerve repair. This is often done with metal clips, but it is probably more practically done with black silk ligatures that can be readily identified and traced at the subsequent operation.

FALSE ANEURYSM OR PULSATING HEMATOMA

If the artery involved is not one of such significance that failure to restore continuity will result in gangrene of the extremity, or if the injury has not actually severed the artery but has made a defect in its wall, the involved extremity may survive the episode. However, a chronic leakage of blood from the hole in the wall of the vessel may result in a so-called *false aneurysm* or *pulsating hematoma*. This may gradually increase in

size due both to the escape of further blood from the defect in the wall of the artery into surrounding tissues and to the fact that fluid is drawn into the clot, such as occurs in a subdural hematoma. The picture is particularly confusing when the pulses distal to the point of injury are still present, if weak. The term false aneurysm, as mentioned above, is derived from the fact that a fibinous membrane tends to form around the hematoma, which does pulsate because it communicates with the arterial lumen. From time to time episodes of further hemorrhage tend to occur, and failure to diagnose correctly and to treat definitively results in much unnecessarily prolonged morbidity. In fact, of all the conditions which may be associated with arterial injury, the pulsating hematoma is the one which, in our experience, most often proves confusing to personnel in training. The reasons for this are several. First, the obvious immediacy of acute trauma leads any person with even meager experience to suspect the possibility of arterial injury, especially if considerable blood has been lost and the extremity is cold and pulseless. On the other hand, the pulsating hematoma may not be apparent at the time of admission, due to the fact that whereas considerable blood may have been lost, clotting has now occurred. Or, the hematoma lies deep within the musculature and a swelling of the thigh, for example, may be attributed to edema following the injury rather than to blood which has escaped into the muscle planes. Another patient may give the history of fluctuations in the size of the extremity. Still another may have sustained a stab wound without apparent serious consequences at the time, only to develop weeks later a swelling which may actually be drained surgically by the untrained person, for at times the false aneurysm simulates a collection of pus. This can be, of course, an informative experience, since the physician is usually not prepared with blood for transfusion or with a carefully placed pneumatic cuff with which to control hemorrhage. The following case will illus-

trate the delay which may precede an accurate diagnosis, even on a surgical service where such injuries are relatively common.

Case study The patient was a 28-year-old woman who had been stabbed in the upper left thigh. Although a considerable amount of blood had been lost, she was not in serious shock at the time of admission. Blood was oozing from the knife wound of the left thigh, and on exploration it was found that several muscle bundles had been severed, apparently the source of the oozing. The femoral and sciatic nerves were intact, as determined preoperatively by careful neurologic examination and, in the case of the femoral nerve at operation. The femoral artery was thought not to be involved since all leg pulses were good, and it was not formally exposed. The thigh was drained through and through.

Following operation the patient did well for several days but there then developed much swelling of the thigh which appeared to increase the circumference fairly evenly. At first the swelling was judged to be due to edema, but when later she developed fever opinion veered toward an infection and a possible collection of purulent material. Accordingly, the residents on night duty were assigned to reopen the wound and to examine for pus. This was done, unfortunately by the most junior person, the procedure being considered a most simple one. He found some old blood, but he did not actually explore deeply enough to come upon the major collection of what was actually a hematoma of large proportions. To be brief, the patient was subsequently again explored but again the significance of the deep hematoma that was found was not entirely appreciated though a considerable portion of the old clot was removed. There was still no interference with the palpable arterial supply of the extremity. Finally after a period of several weeks the swelling had largely subsided and it was felt that at last the patient could be allowed to go home. However just as she was dressing to leave the hospital blood began to emerge briskly

from the depths of the almost healed wound and she had to be taken immediately to the operating room and a pneumatic tourniquet applied just distal to the inguinal crease. This time the wound was thoroughly explored by an experienced person who found a hole in the wall of the profunda femoris artery (Fig. 166). Since this artery could readily be sacrificed, it was ligated both proximally and distally and then divided, and the patient was discharged from the hospital in 5 days—the time she should have stayed following the original injury, instead of the actual 6 weeks. It is not enough to reduce mortality—morbidity has also to be considered.

ARTERIOVENOUS (A V) FISTULA. This is the condition which exists when blood passes directly from an artery to a vein (Fig. 174) without first flowing through the intervening capillaries. The defect between the two vessels may be traumatic, congenital or infectious in origin, or even normal.

Trauma is an especially prominent cause of arteriovenous fistulas. Congenital lesions are also frequent, such as the so called "cavernous hemangioma" of an extremity, this may extend well up on the lower abdomen and buttock. The pulmonary arteriovenous fistula¹²³ permits the unoxygenated venous blood in a pulmonary artery to flow directly into a pulmonary vein without first being oxygenated producing cyanosis and perhaps clubbing of fingers and toes.

The *traumatic arteriovenous fistula* usually follows a knife wound or a gunshot injury though it may not be apparent until days, weeks, or even months later. The abnormal communication can occur anywhere in the body that an artery and a vein lie in close proximity to each other. The *signs and symptoms* of arteriovenous fistula were described accurately by William Hunter as early as 1757. He noted that the thrill and bruit could both be stopped by pressure over the proximal portion of the artery or at the site of the fistula.² As soon as the communication has been established between the artery and the vein, whether this occurs im-

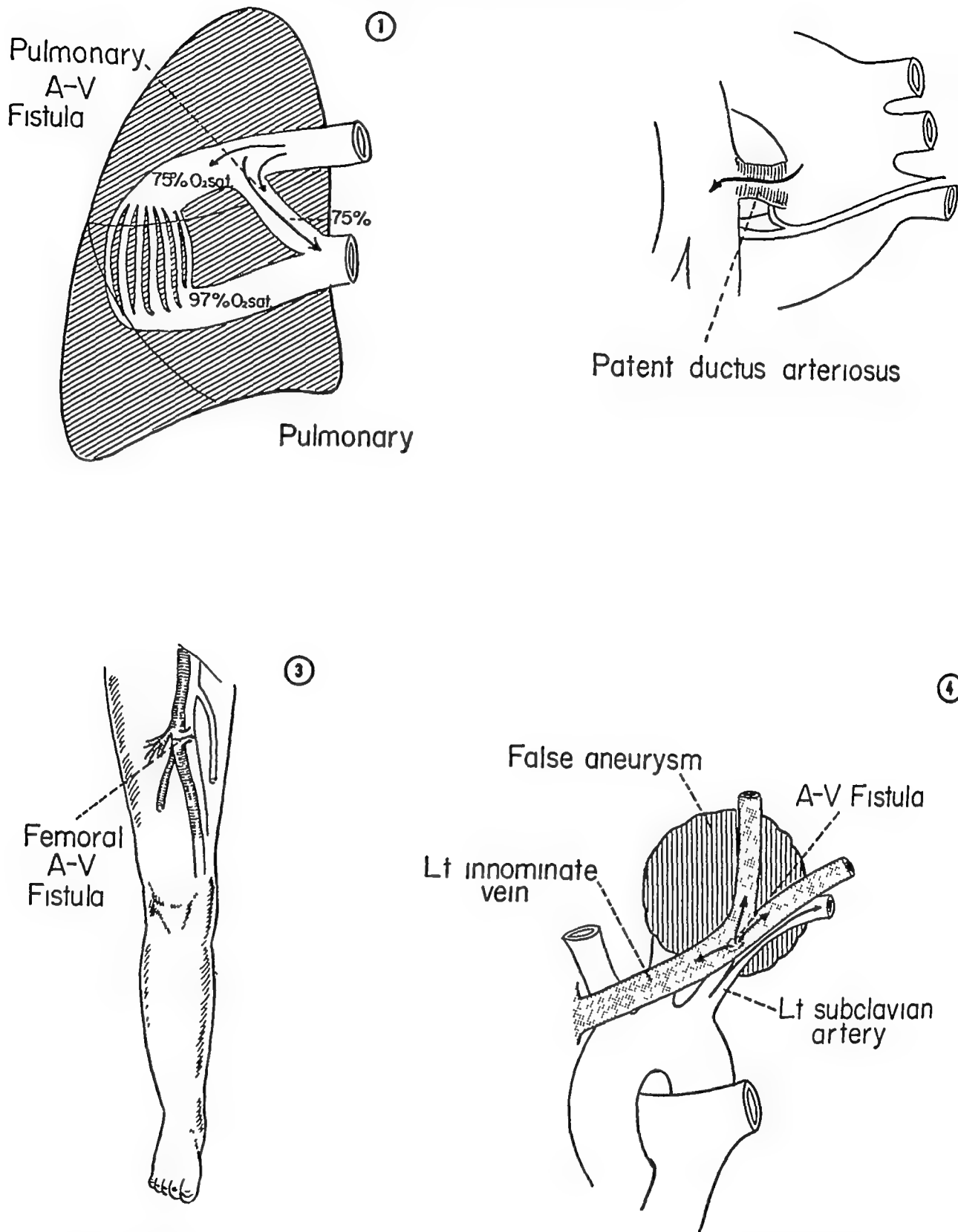


Fig 174 Representative arteriovenous (A-V) fistulas Direct arteriovenous communications (without intervening capillaries) may occur anywhere in the body—between elements of the systemic circulation, between elements of the pulmonary circulation, or between the systemic and the pulmonary circulations (patent ductus) All impose an increased workload upon the heart and, if large enough, can produce cardiac decompensation

mediately or after the lapse of variable amounts of time, there is likely to be some swelling of the involved extremity, especially distal to the site of the communication. The

veins of the involved part are commonly dilated by the unaccustomed arterial blood pressure, and their walls are thickened ("arterialization"). The skin temperature of that

leg is increased due to the increased rate of blood flow, particularly adjacent to the fistula. The increase in collateral circulation may be relatively enormous, and the arterial oxygen saturation in communicating veins is abnormally high. A thrill is palpable and a bruit can usually be heard on auscultation, both typically being present throughout the cardiac cycle. If the communication is large the blood flow to the more distal part of the involved extremity can be diminished to the extent that gangrene may occur, that is, the flow to the foot is short circuited. The precise location of the communication can be demonstrated with angiography. Classically, occlusion of the fistulous opening by firm point pressure produces a slowing of the pulse rate, a rise in diastolic pressure and a fall in systolic blood pressure, plus a reduction in the distention of the adjacent veins.

The prognosis in arteriovenous fistula is determined primarily by the size of the opening and its proximity to the heart. The resulting relative ischemia of the extremity distal to the fistula may or may not be so great as to produce gangrene. However, the changes that are most threatening to life are the cardiac derangements which occur. The increased workload imposed upon the heart by the fistula may eventuate in cardiac decompensation, with or without an increase in blood volume. Moreover, arteriovenous fistulas have long been known to be associated with subacute bacterial endocarditis. In 1935, Hamman and Rienhoff³⁸ reported a case of *Streptococcus viridans* septicemia cured by excision of a fistula between the iliac artery and vein, and in 1946 Cutler and Wolf⁴⁰ reported an acquired arteriovenous fistula with coexistent subacute bacterial endocarditis and endarteritis. Moreover, prior to the advent of antibiotics an occasional case of subacute bacterial endocarditis was cured by the closure of an associated patent ductus arteriosus also an arteriovenous fistula. Later Lillehei and his associates¹⁰⁴ demonstrated that subacute bacterial endocarditis could be produced ex-

perimentally in dogs by constructing large bilateral iliac arteriovenous fistulas.

In brief, cardiac decompensation is by far the most common serious complication of arteriovenous fistulas. If the fistula is successfully closed early enough, the enlarged heart may return to normal size and the usual circulatory stability may be restored (Fig. 175).

The management of arteriovenous fistula has undergone certain modifications in recent years. Whereas it was formerly the practice to allow at least 8 weeks for the development of collateral circulation subsequent to the diagnosis of an arteriovenous fistula, if the fistula had not persisted for weeks already, the present tendency is to operate upon these defects promptly, with a view to restoring end-to-end continuity of the artery. That is, the objective of quadruple ligation, consisting of excision of the segment of both artery and vein involved in the fistula, with consequent loss of arterial continuity, is being replaced by the objective of restoring end-to-end continuity of the vessel either by excision of the defect with end-to-end anastomosis of the artery or by the insertion of a homograft—especially in the acute case. For even though fully developed collateral circulation may prevent gangrene following ligation of the involved artery, intermittent claudication may be present postoperatively if arterial continuity cannot be restored.

Nevertheless, many still prefer to allow time for a collateral circulation to develop, provided the arterial defect is not discovered immediately after injury, at which time it can readily be exposed and repaired. The reason for allowing time in the more chronic fistula is that the inflammatory process which surrounds the fistula leads to a fibrosis which renders planes of cleavage difficult to develop, and it may be all but impossible to free the artery in such a way as to offer an opportunity for excision of the arterial defect with end-to-end anastomosis. Despite the fact that this may be the objective of the operator, it frequently happens one way or another, that a quadruple



Fig 175 Case study This 34-year-old patient was stabbed in the neck almost 14 years before hospitalization. Many months following injury a "buzzing" began in the neck over a mass that gradually enlarged. During a second post-injury pregnancy she was in heart failure from what doctors told her was an arteriovenous fistula. She was forced by the heart failure to agree to surgery. At operation the cervical mass consisted chiefly of an huge aneurysmal dilatation of the left innominate and internal jugular veins. There was a false aneurysm (Fig 174-4) eroding into the cervical spine, in conjunction with a large (almost 1.5 cm) fistula between the left innominate vein and the left subclavian artery.

ligation is finally performed. If this is done, it is important that sufficient time has elapsed to permit adequate collateral circulation to develop. Of course, an arterial graft should be available and should be used where possible.

As with all arterial surgery, the major entering vessels should be secured both proximal and distal to the fistula before a direct attack is made upon the fistula itself, for the artery is far more readily exposed

through noninflamed tissues. Here too a pneumatic tourniquet, if feasible, may prove most helpful at times. Sharp dissection is preferred, and important nerves are obviously to be preserved. If the arterial anastomosis is successful there will usually be an immediate pulsation in the dorsalis pedis and posterior tibial arteries at the close of the anastomosis. If this does not occur, sympathetic block should be employed. However, in our experience infiltration

round the artery for a considerable distance with 2 per cent procaine usually overcomes arterial spasm to the extent that at least some pulsation can be palpated distally, though this may increase as vasospasm diminishes. In some patients the maximum pulsations may not be realized until several days following an anastomosis. The thrill and bruit will of course disappear following successful management of the fistula.

CAUSALGIA: FURTHER COMMENT One of the most disabling types of pain which may follow traumatic neurovascular injury is that termed *causalgia*.¹²³ It may result from exposure to cold, gunshot wounds, or less conspicuous circumstances. For example, a sergeant fell while carrying a case of beer to the Officers' Club, and there followed prolonged pain, burning, and excessive sweating in the right shoulder and arm, associated later with muscle atrophy and marked disability. No major nerve deficits could be identified and the radial pulse was good. The symptomatology resembled that often characterized as *Sudek's atrophy* or *dystrophy*, and was similar also to the pain and atrophy of the intrinsic hand muscles secondary to coronary occlusion (shoulder hand syndrome).

Causalgia is often associated with an extreme cutaneous hyperalgesia which gradually is replaced by trophic changes consisting of scaling, discoloration and a shiny appearance suggestive of that due to chronic ischemia.

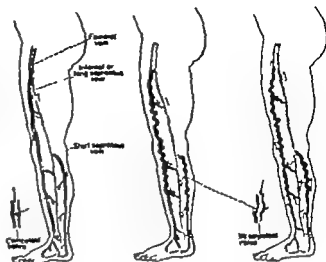
The mechanism of *causalgia* is poorly understood but characteristically the pain is relieved by paravertebral sympathetic block or sympathectomy—emphasizing the importance of the sympathetic nervous elements in the genesis of the condition.

Volkman's ischemic contracture is due in part to brachial artery compression but also to spasm of this vessel which, if not relieved may cause gangrene.

Disease of the Veins (Figs 166 and 176)

Fewer precise physiologic data are available regarding venous disease than for ar-

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY OF VARICOSE VEINS



THE TREDELEBURG TEST

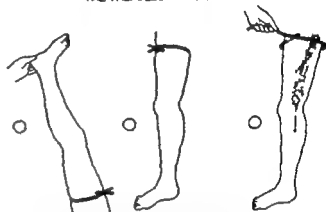


Fig 166 Tests for competency of valves in long saphenous vein (after COLA, W. H., and ELMA, R. Textbook of General Surgery Ed. 5 New York D. Appleton-Century Company Inc., 1948) Above: Reversed flow in long saphenous and communicating veins. Below: (A) Tourniquet applied after varices collapsed by elevating leg (B) With tourniquet applied long saphenous does not fill, indicating competent valves in communicating veins (C) Saphenous fills when tourniquet released, proving incompetence of valves of long or great saphenous.

terial disease. Whereas the arteries usually represent single and main trunks rendering the hemodynamics more readily evaluated, veins are tortuous, multiple, and less readily available for certain hemodynamic and other studies. Similarly, whereas there is a considerable body of accurate pathologic and physiologic information regarding lesions which cause structural changes in the walls of arteries there is a dismaying paucity of dependable information regarding the factors which produce structural

changes in veins to permit the development of so common a condition as varicose veins. Nevertheless, knowledge of venous physiology is increasing and some of the more important points will be reviewed.

METHODS OF STUDYING VENOUS DISEASE The *history* is of paramount importance in eliciting many of the important findings upon which reliable diagnosis and treatment of venous disease can be based. For example, varicose veins, deep venous thrombosis associated with thrombophlebitis, massive venous occlusion, and the migrating phlebitis of thromboangitis obliterans are all associated with pain or other symptoms which when properly evaluated may suggest the probable diagnosis.

On *physical examination* one should note the presence or absence of the following: venous distention, thrombosis and tenderness in superficial veins, or increased circumference of the extremity with edema suggesting deep venous thrombosis. An increased skin temperature with venous distention may suggest an arteriovenous fistula, in contrast, edematous swelling with diminished skin temperature may suggest the presence of deep venous thrombosis. The clinical tests employed to determine the presence or absence of valvular competency and patency of various portions of the saphenous and deep vein systems are shown in Figure 176. Venograms supplement such tests, as seen below.

Measurements of venous pressure may be made. A number of investigators have studied the venous pressure in veins of the lower extremity, both at rest and during exercise. Pollack and Wood¹²¹ found that venous pressure in the great saphenous vein at the ankle averaged 11.7 mm Hg (range, 7.0 to 21.6) in the recumbent position, 56.0 mm Hg (range, 45.0 to 67.5) in the sitting position, and 86.8 mm Hg (range, 78.5 to 92.6) in the resting standing position. They considered that the venous pressure at the ankle in the resting sitting or resting standing position was sufficient to support a column of blood to approximately the level of

the third thoracic interspace at the sternum. In studying the venous pressure changes produced by a single step, they found that there was an average rise in pressure of 10 mm Hg from the standing control level before the heel was lifted from the floor. At the beginning of the step, an average fall of 52 mm Hg (range, 28.0 to 80.5) occurred with the foot off the floor, as the heel touched the floor there was a slight rise in pressure, followed by another fall to the previous low level while the heel settled on the floor and the body weight was redistributed. The pressure returned to the control level in a time of 22.9 seconds (range, 11.0 to 37.0) as the subject resumed the quiet standing position.

In clinical practice, however, measurements of venous pressures in the lower extremities have no well established rôle in the management of venous disease.

Venous angiography is being increasingly utilized as a method of diagnosing obstruction of different veins, particularly those of the lower extremities. Beiberich and Hirsch²⁰ are given credit for being the first (1923) to inject radiopaque material into the veins of human beings, and in 1936 Barker and Camp¹⁰ employed venography in the study of obstructive venous lesions. More recently, Boyd and associates³⁰ have described their technic of lower limb phlebography and presented illustrations of some of the venous lesions that may be anticipated. The pitfalls encountered in interpreting venograms were emphasized, and these are not inconsiderable. The vein may be superimposed upon a limb or bone, and there may be serious question that filling defects are due to organic lesions. Moreover, repeated studies are of value, since a vein that did not fill with contrast medium during the first study might have been in spasm, blocked by an occluding thrombus, locally occluded, or even normal. Venospasm, constricting the vein to the point of complete occlusion, can be associated with recent acute thrombophlebitis, which may be suggested clinically. However, absent or

poor venous filling in a normal or possibly compressed vein should not be interpreted definitively without a second study. The presence of distended collateral veins may assist in the further identification of a point of deep vein occlusion suggested by the venogram. It was noted by Boyd and his co-workers that dilution of the contrast medium is sometimes seen proximal to the site of an arteriovenous fistula, or at the ends of the column of contrast medium, and that this should not be interpreted as a filling defect. Phlebography is definitely valuable in demonstrating obstruction by deep phlebitis, or in examining preoperatively and postoperatively for the effects of saphenous vein surgery or for the presence or absence of deep vein patency before surgery is done for varicose saphenous veins, where doubt exists as to the advisability of removing the superficial venous channels when occlusion of the deep veins may exist. Atrophy of the venous system is occasionally demonstrated in conditions of muscle wasting such as may follow arteriosclerotic obliterative disease. Recanalization of thrombosed or ligated veins may also be demonstrated, and Dow⁴⁴ applied venography to the diagnosis and study of the process of recurrence of varicose veins following surgery. Though recanalization was demonstrated, the most common cause of recurrence of varicose veins was the failure to ligate at operation all tributaries to the great saphenous vein.

VARICOSE VEINS *Etiology* While varicose veins are among the oldest surgical diseases known and surely one of the most common, comparatively little is proven regarding precise causes or methods of prevention. It has often been stated that varicose veins of the lower extremities represent a price that the human being pays for assuming the upright posture, yet obviously not all persons develop varicose veins. Among contributory factors that are clearly recognized are first, a congenital weakness of the venous walls and valves, which is more prevalent in some families than in others. Second, varices

may follow deep venous thrombosis in the extremities and are often seen during pregnancy. Indeed, the increased incidence in pregnant women is one of the more obvious effects of back pressure due to the descent of the fetus in the pelvis, though certainly hormonal factors are by no means excluded in this connection, for example, a nurse of our acquaintance stated that the size of the veins of her forearms and hands had increased over the months of her pregnancy (due to increased blood volume?). Third, prolonged standing undoubtedly promotes the formation of varices, or at least aggravates the condition and its sequelae and it has been shown that the pressure in the saphenous vein at the ankle is less in the recumbent position than in the sitting position and less in the sitting position than in the standing position—and especially in the presence of incompetent valves of the veins.

To summarize, the more important factors in the development of varicose veins in normal subjects who are not pregnant would appear to be, first, a familial history of weakness of the venous structures and, second, social circumstances which require prolonged standing. Varicose veins are also frequently associated with obesity, perhaps due to the poor support and compression that fat affords.

Pathophysiology As a result of the dilatation, elongation, loss of elasticity of the vein, and the disappearance or deranged function of the venous valves, a pathologic variation in venous blood flow occurs which affects primarily the great saphenous system. Incompetency of the valves of the long saphenous vein itself may allow an unbroken column of blood to extend all the way from the heart to the ankle, there being no valves in the inferior vena cava and often not even in the iliac and femoral vein central to the entrance of the saphenous vein. Moreover, even should valves in the iliac and proximal femoral vein be competent, the column of blood in the saphenous vein itself would still exert considerable hydrostatic pressure at the ankle. Consequent

it is at the ankle that the more severe complications or sequelae of varicose veins usually appear

A further contributing factor may be incompetency of the valves of the communicating veins between the saphenous and the deep vein system. Normally blood flows from the saphenous to the deep vein rather than in the reverse direction, when valves of the deep vein become incompetent, increased pressure is transmitted to the valves of the communicating veins. These valves may in turn be rendered incompetent, so that blood flows to the saphenous vein from the popliteal or femoral vein, instead of in the opposite direction as normally. Muscular action is less effective in compressing and emptying the saphenous vein than the deep veins, and the increased pressure is poorly tolerated by the tissues at the angle. In 1939 McPheeters and Anderson¹¹⁰ demonstrated with radiopaque substances a retrograde flow from the upper saphenous vein to the lower saphenous and thence to the deep venous channel below and, occasionally, back from the upper veins of the thigh, where incompetent valves were present in the deep vein, to the saphenous vein again. Other studies have demonstrated that while in normal subjects the radiopaque material injected at the ankle may be seen only in the more direct channels to the heart, in the presence of saphenous varices it remains in the numerous dilated tortuous collateral veins for a considerable period of time before gradually being cleared from these vessels.

The venous stasis, with concurrent derangements in tissue metabolism, results in a characteristic train of visible changes. Chronic edema of the ankle is followed by an induration of the skin and subcutaneous tissues, with or without hyperpigmentation of the overlying skin. These changes most often appear just above the medial malleolus, above the underlying long saphenous vein. The induration and inflammation may represent, in fact, a chronic low grade cellulitis, though specific microorganisms are

not commonly cultured from subcutaneous biopsy specimens. The brawny induration and brownish discoloration may persist for many months before actual ulceration occurs and, if corrective surgery is performed during this period, a gratifying regression of these changes of the lower leg may be observed in subsequent weeks and months. We have in mind the case of a rather obese elderly lady who had well developed induration and some pigmentation of the entire thickness of a large area of the skin above the medial malleolus. Ligation of the great saphenous vein and its branches, with stripping of this system down to the ankle beneath the area of induration—and the subsequent use of supportive elastic stockings up to the knee—resulted in a gradual softening of the induration which, had it persisted, would very likely have eventually resulted in the familiar “varicose ulcer.” The degree of pigmentation also lessened over the months, and eventually the elastic stockings were discarded.

Once *ulceration* has occurred, however, treatment is not nearly so satisfactory. This is due both to the fact that the pathologic condition of underlying tissue was allowed to reach a degree that permitted ulceration to occur, and to the fact that it is difficult to restore normal, full thickness skin over the ulcer site after it is excised. According to Summers,¹⁴⁷ varicose ulcers have been recognized from the time of Hippocrates. Ulceration, with its attendant infection and pain, results in considerable disability, a factor of the greatest concern where the individual is the breadwinner of the family and must be on his feet much of the time. Yet, one man we examined had done manual labor despite the presence of a large varicose ulcer for more than 50 years.

Diagnosis of varicose veins Symptomatology—Varicose veins usually develop over a period of years, but since the dilated veins themselves are not often incapacitating, the patient may neglect to seek treatment until the condition is far advanced. Moreover, prior to the development of cell-

ulitis and ulceration at the ankle there may be no symptoms, though one which is fairly frequent is a "dragging" or painful sensation in the distended varices. This is much more annoying to some individuals than to others. Superficial thromboses may occur at times surrounded by inflammatory changes. Another complication is that a vein immediately beneath the atrophic skin may rupture through and be the source of annoying hemorrhage, though bleeding is even more likely to occur from the bed of an ulcer. The bleeding through a minute skin defect may prove a rather pesky problem to manage in the emergency room. It may be best to incise the skin under local anesthesia and formally to expose a segment of the bleeding vein. This is then ligated with chromic catgut, since silk might act as a foreign body in the presence of infection and perhaps result in a draining sinus. Bleeding from an ulcer bed can usually be controlled with pressure.

Other symptoms of varicose veins that are occasionally encountered are itching, paresthesias, burning, and muscular cramps. The eczematoid dermatitis of the lower extremity usually associated with underlying edema and induration which may eventually result in ulceration, has been referred to above. Abnormal fatigability of the leg is noted by some patients, though this is not always well correlated with the severity of the varices.

Physical Examination.—The physical examination need not be dwelt upon here but the objective is to evaluate the extent of valvular incompetence, the location and extent of the venous dilatation, and the progression or lack of progression of the changes in the skin of the lower leg which may suggest impending ulceration. By means of both the history and physical examination one attempts to exclude the probability of complicating conditions such as thromboangitis obliterans, deep venous phlebitis and thrombosis, arteriovenous fistula and other diseases.

Having established the diagnosis of vari-

cose veins due probably to incompetent valves, the next step is to determine whether or not the valves of the long saphenous vein are incompetent and the level of this incompetence. The presence and the level of incompetent communicating veins between the saphenous vein and the deep veins should be established, and the status of the short saphenous vein which courses up the posterior surface of the calf and enters the popliteal vein recorded. Finally, the patency and the competency of the valves of the deep veins of the leg must also be assessed. For to strip the long saphenous vein and to ligate the short saphenous vein in the absence of patent deep veins can result in a very serious circulatory disturbance due to obstruction of venous return from the leg, as the writer once had occasion to observe. The patient developed much swelling of the leg with blister formation, and for a time the actual viability of the extremity was in doubt. Prolonged disability resulted, and the man was not able to walk normally for months. Late venograms demonstrated obstruction of the deep veins of the leg which had doubtless been present before the long saphenous vein was stripped.

The usual tests for valvular competency of leg veins are shown in Figure 176.

Treatment of varicose veins. In the overall view, once incompetency of the valves of a long saphenous vein has resulted in significant varices, prophylactic high ligation with stripping is the procedure of choice, provided that the deep veins are patent. Certainly the appearance of early skin changes at the ankle constitutes an adequate indication to urge the patient to have prophylactic surgery promptly. The patient is warned preoperatively that other veins may dilate in the future that varicose veins require a reorientation of life activities in many instances, and that careful postoperative follow up measures are almost as important as is the surgery which usually cannot remove all varices let alone the predisposition to form varices.

In making the upper (inguinal) incision,

it is important to avoid severing the numerous lymphatic channels (incise skin and then spread the fatty tissues), else a simple procedure may result in prolonged morbidity as the wound drains lymph for weeks and perhaps becomes infected. It is of course far simpler to strip the lower portion of the long saphenous from below upward than from above downward to the ankle, since the former direction allows one to invert the smaller portion of the vein into the larger portion as the vein ascends. It is important to identify preoperatively the sites of the more prominent collateral varices (with special note of those which are most offensive to the patient) and to mark these carefully, either with an indelible substance which will not be washed off as the leg is prepared for operation or, better still, with the scratch mark of a pin. Otherwise, both the patient and the operator may be dismayed when prominent varices are present postoperatively. Patients are advised to wear elastic stockings for weeks or months following the operation, certainly until ankle swelling or induration has subsided.

In studying the causes of recurrences of varicose veins, Luke¹⁰⁹ concluded that most are due either to the fact that incompetent communicating veins were missed at the initial operation or to the subsequent opening of incompetent communicating veins between the saphenous systems and the deep venous circulation. If not dealt with, these incompetent communicating veins may result in recanalization of the original veins, or they may produce varicosities in formerly small superficial collateral venous channels.

Chronic varicose ulcer This condition will be further discussed under the heading of *stasis ulcer* of the lower extremity, since in many patients who do not have well defined varices it is impossible to determine the extent to which varicose veins contribute to the ulceration, as compared to deep venous disease. In either case, the fundamental defect appears to be venous stasis, with or without abnormality in lymphatic drainage.

THROMBOPHLEBITIS AND POSTPHLEBITIC SE-

QUELAE Thrombophlebitis may initially begin as "phlebothrombosis," since it is claimed that thrombosis in a vein almost invariably results in at least a degree of surrounding inflammation. Yet, even so, the condition usually diagnosed as thrombophlebitis, with its inflammatory and adherent thrombus, is not accompanied by the same hazard of pulmonary embolism as is the condition that has come to be known as phlebothrombosis, with its bland and readily dislodged thrombus. Hence, the distinctive terminology does serve a useful purpose, it seems to us. Phlebothrombosis and pulmonary embolism are discussed elsewhere (p. 499), and here only thrombophlebitis will be considered.

Etiology of thrombophlebitis Thrombophlebitis may appear following direct injury to the vein, or as the migratory phlebitis of thromboangitis obliterans, or under less readily explained circumstances. Varicose veins are particularly susceptible to the etiologic agents, known and unknown, which may cause thrombophlebitis, but it is the thrombosis of the deep veins of the legs or pelvis which produce the most marked clinical changes. These thromboses are particularly likely to occur following operation or childbirth, but they are also frequently observed when the patient has a "medical" disease, among the more notable ones being pancreatic disease and malignant tumors. Yet, "spontaneous" thrombophlebitis is often encountered whose etiologic basis is not identified. Thrombophlebitis may occur in patients with blood dyscrasias or with pelvic masses which press upon the iliac veins. A suppurative condition adjacent to large veins, as occurs in postpartum sepsis, may also result in thrombophlebitis. Even so, a great many cases of thrombophlebitis have little etiologic explanation, as noted above.

Signs, symptoms, and diagnosis of thrombophlebitis In contradistinction to phlebothrombosis, in which the first manifestation may be a pulmonary embolus with the signs and symptoms thereof, thrombophlebitis usually is manifested primarily in the in-

involved extremities. There is usually swelling of the part, which can most readily be determined by measuring the extremity and comparing this value with that of the opposite member at the same level. There is generally some pain, associated often with tenderness, redness, increased local temperature, and fever. As the more acute reaction subsides the redness or increased temperature of the extremity may be replaced by a chronic edematous swelling which actually renders the leg somewhat cooler than the normal one. Occlusion of the deep veins may be demonstrated by angiogram.

Actually, however the diagnosis of acute phlebitis or thrombophlebitis is usually not difficult, since definite and characteristic physical findings are typically present in the involved extremity.

Management of acute thrombophlebitis
The patient is kept at bed rest with the legs elevated, and elastic bandages are applied from the toes to the groin. Anticoagulants are frequently employed often beginning immediately with adequate doses of heparin and at the same time starting Dicumarol or a related compound. In general it will be necessary to give approximately 50 mg. of a long acting (a slowly released) heparin compound every 6 hours intramuscularly, controlled by the determination of the clotting time, the usual 3 tube method being clinically adequate. A clotting time of not less than 20 minutes and not greater than 1 hour constitutes satisfactory control. Patients vary considerably in their response to heparin, and the clotting time in the individual subject will also vary according to the time of the last injection.

Whereas the effect of heparin in lowering the rate of clotting begins in a few minutes, the effect of Dicumarol (which diminishes clotting by a specific toxic effect on the liver to reduce the production of prothrombin) is not achieved for from 2 to 3 days. Initially both heparin and Dicumarol are given, the rapid action of heparin produces the desired anticoagulant effect until the cheaper but more slowly acting Dicumarol can take ef-

fect. Heparin, which must be injected, is then discontinued. One may give 300 mg. of Dicumarol or a related compound by mouth initially, 200 mg. the following day, 100 mg. the third day. On the third day the prothrombin level is determined and thereafter the dosage (perhaps 50 to 100 mg. per day or every other day) is regulated by a determination of the prothrombin level at judiciously spaced intervals. The prothrombin level should be kept below 50 per cent but above 20 per cent of normal. It is important to realize that some patients may exhibit spontaneous hemorrhage such as hematuria, at a much higher prothrombin level than do others. It is important to obtain a baseline prothrombin measurement before Dicumarol is begun.

The rationale for using anticoagulants is, first to diminish the extent of the thrombosis in the extremity and second to diminish the likelihood of pulmonary embolism. There are those who feel that anticoagulants have significantly diminished fatalities from pulmonary emboli whether arising from "bland thrombosis" or from frank thrombophlebitis. As stated elsewhere we treated a patient with chronic venous disease of the legs who began again to have pulmonary emboli each time anticoagulants were stopped. Yet, for one such patient, there are many others in whom the value of anticoagulant therapy is open to genuine question. Furthermore definite hazards attend the use of anticoagulants the chief one being of course the occurrence of spontaneous hemorrhage which may be difficult to control. Heparin can be promptly neutralized by the injection of protamine, milligram for milligram. Also the newer forms of vitamin K₁, injected in massive doses have been shown significantly to diminish if not to abolish the effect of Dicumarol. Nevertheless, almost all clinics using anticoagulants freely have at times had difficulty with hemorrhage. This is not such a disadvantage as to render the use of these agents unwarranted but it is certainly a matter to be considered in patients where hemorrhage from

various organs might be unusually damaging

Antibiotics are used if the patient with thrombophlebitis manifests chills and fever

Active *surgical intervention* may be required if pulmonary emboli arise from an extremity which is obviously the site of venous disease. The offending vein is ligated proximal to the thrombosis, if feasible. Thrombophlebitis may involve the major pelvic veins, and upon occasion septic emboli may produce lung abscesses and septicemia. Under these circumstances, in at least one case with which we were associated, ligation of the inferior vena cava abolished further emboli and the patient rapidly improved.

THE POSTPHLEBITIC SYNDROME **CHRONIC VENOUS INSUFFICIENCY** Patients who recover from the acute episode of thrombophlebitis may gradually develop the condition that has come to be termed chronic venous insufficiency or the postphlebitic syndrome. This consists of chronic pain and swelling of the extremity that is aggravated by the upright position, eventually cellulitis, an eczematoid reaction of the skin, and, finally, ulceration of the lower leg may appear. The ulcer which develops from the chronic cellulitis of the lower leg has been termed a "stasis ulcer," and in a great many patients it is difficult to determine whether the ulceration has been due primarily to deep vein thrombosis, to varicose veins, or to a combination of both. While either may result in a stasis ulcer, it is perhaps fair to say that the underlying pathologic feature of both consists of deranged venous dynamics in the lower extremity, perhaps associated with occlusion of the lymphatics by chronic cellulitis, as has been recently re-emphasized by Moyer and Butcher.¹¹⁵

To recapitulate, the postphlebitic syndrome may be manifested by stasis ulcer in the absence of readily demonstrable varicose veins. Varicose veins may precipitate the development of a stasis ulcer in the absence of deep vein occlusion by thrombosis. Both may be present and contribute to the

development of the stasis ulcer. Finally, neither of these defects may be demonstrated in many patients who have ulceration of the ankle. In fact, in perhaps a major "leg ulcer" patients who do not have obvious varices the etiology of the stasis is quite obscure.

PRINCIPLES OF MANAGEMENT OF STASIS ULCERS OF THE LOWER LEG *Prophylaxis and conservative measures* So difficult is it to achieve truly satisfactory results once a severe stasis ulcer has developed that it is highly desirable to avoid this complication. For this reason, varicose veins should be treated before chronic recurrent cellulitis of the inner aspect of the lower leg has been allowed to progress to ulceration. If ulceration has occurred, then the treatment of the ulcer itself will be similar to that described below for the postphlebitic ulcer.

In the patient with acute deep thrombophlebitis every effort is to be made to achieve the greatest possible recovery after the initial attack. While there are very definite limits to what may be accomplished depending upon the circumstances of the individual patient, it is advisable to treat the initial attack of thrombophlebitis vigorously by the use of bed rest, antibiotics, anticoagulants, and elastic stockings or bandages. Thereafter, until all swelling disappears, the patient should be urged to remain with the feet in an elevated position for at least a portion of the day to avoid serious swelling from venous edema in the lower extremity. Recurrent attacks of thrombophlebitis should be similarly managed with care, always with a view to the much worse circumstances that will exist if the condition progresses to a stasis ulceration, despite the impatience of the patient with the conservative measures. He should be made to understand that he has a chronic disease which is not really "curable" in the usual sense, and which requires new habits. Even so, the condition usually does improve in time, and this is the justification for cautious optimism and encouragement of the patient to adopt a hopeful attitude.

Operative treatment of stasis ulcers The desirability of high saphenous ligation and stripping, plus ligation of the short saphenous vein for varicose ulcer, has been outlined. However the ligation of the major veins for the treatment of the *postphlebitic ulcer*—as first advocated by Parona¹⁷⁰ in 1904, by Leriche²⁴ in 1923, and later re-emphasized by Buxton and Collier²⁵ and by Linton and Hardy¹⁰⁴—has not received the same general acceptance as has the ligation and stripping of the great saphenous vein for *varicose ulcer*. The rationale for ligation of the superficial femoral vein for postphlebitic ulcer is that following thrombosis this vein recanalizes and thus, due to incompetent valves venous stasis occurs from back pressure, this back pressure being relieved by ligation of the vein. Boyd and his associates²⁹ studied this procedure in 42 patients, 36 of them female and 6 male. The extremities were examined preoperatively with venous pressure recordings and phlebograms, and in some patients these studies were repeated following surgery. In addition, careful evaluation of the arteries was made before operation. The majority of the patients presented long-standing postphlebitic ulceration and were given a preoperative program of complete bed rest to reduce the leg edema as far as possible by elevation of the extremity. The ulcer surface was treated by an occlusive dressing utilizing streptomycin, followed by frequent moist dressings after the gross infection had been controlled. At operation either the popliteal or the superficial femoral vein was ligated, though in some the femoral vein itself was ligated. At the same operation the ulcer was excised and the defect grafted. Following operation the patients were restricted to bed until the grafted ulcers were finally healed and on leaving the hospital the extremity was supported with an elastic stocking or some similar support depending upon the degree of edema which followed mobilization. Since other criteria of improvement were somewhat intangible ulcer healing was selected as the most satisfactory clinical means of

assessing the success or failure of any treatment. Maintenance of ulcer healing for 3 years, gross reduction in swelling, and a marked diminution in pain were classified as good results. A deterioration was recorded if the original ulcer had broken down or enlarged or a further ulcer had appeared *de novo*. Patients who had an increase in swelling or pain were also listed in the poor result groups. Of the 42 cases satisfactorily followed, 14 cases were classified as good and 8 of these had ulcers preoperatively. Seven of these ulcers remained completely healed and the other ones had broken down to a minor extent after 2 years. Boyd and his co-workers concluded that femoral ligations were the least unsatisfactory of the procedures, since 6 of 15 patients who had popliteal ligations exhibited great deterioration after the ligation. In the 6 patients whose exercise venous pressure was reviewed both before and many months or years after popliteal vein interruption, a postoperative rise, indicating a less efficient venous clearance mechanism, was recorded in every case. It was found that, of 6 patients who had venous pressure recordings following exercise both before and following operation, in none was the postoperative pressure lower than the preoperative one and in some cases it was increased. Thus, it was concluded that ligation of the superficial femoral or popliteal vein resulted not in a decrease in the pressure in the veins of the foot or ankle but usually resulted in an increase in this pressure. Accordingly, it was concluded that ligation of a major vein, and particularly the popliteal vein, hindered the venous return from the lower limb. Improvement seen in their 14 patients who were classified as showing good results were thought to be more correctly attributed to the ligation of the incompetent superficial communicating veins, skin grafting, excision of the ulcer, and supervision of the after care of these patients with particular emphasis upon re-education in view of their partial disability.

These results have been cited in some detail because they coincide with the views of



Fig 177 Chronic stasis ulcer excised, with split thickness skin grafting. Ulcers of the lower leg may be secondary to varicose veins or to deep vein phlebitis. Yet, in a great many patients no varices or chronic deep phlebitis appears to exist, and the cause of the ulceration is obscure.

the present writer. In our experience with this procedure, which is admittedly small, ligation of the superficial femoral vein as a part of the treatment of postphlebotic ulcers has appeared to add little.

Excision of stasis ulcer with skin grafting (Fig 177) If the objective is merely to provide covering of the ulcerated surface by epithelium, this can be achieved in many ulcers simply by placing the patient in bed with the legs elevated for a week or so. Epithelium readily grows in from the sides, particularly after the infection has been diminished by local treatment with antibiotics and moist compresses, and an epithelial covering will be achieved. Unfortunately, this epithelial covering overlies diseased tissues and promptly exhibits dissolution once the patient is on his feet again. Therefore, the simple covering of an ulcer with a thin layer of epithelium, whether this is allowed to occur spontaneously with the patient at bed rest or whether a split thickness skin graft is applied to the ulcerated surface, will not rehabilitate patients with stasis ulcers. There is an increasing awareness that the entire defective tissue must be excised, down to the fascia. Moreover, excision of only the ulcer itself, without removing the diseased surrounding but still intact skin, will invite recurrence. Moyer and Butcher¹¹⁵ have advocated the injection of sky-blue dye (Wyeth) into the superficial or intradermal

lymphatics to delineate the diseased from the normal skin. The material spreads along the lymphatics when they are present and not occluded by chronic inflammation, but the dye does not enter and pass along the lymphatics of diseased skin. Thus, if all tissue is excised back to the point at which normal flow of the dye occurs in the superficial skin lymphatics, then the chances of having the ulcer recur after deep and wide excision with ligation of communicating veins beneath are reported to be reduced.

Following wide and deep excision of the ulcer and split-thickness skin grafting, the patient is kept in bed until the skin graft is well healed. Then he is allowed up gradually, great care being taken to avoid the occurrence of small hemorrhages beneath the skin graft. When the patient can be up and about with the skin graft remaining in an apparently healthy condition, he is allowed increasing amounts of exercise with the concurrent use of an elastic stocking up to the knee. Here too, educational measures are important, and the patient must avoid undue swelling of this lower extremity, assuming the supine posture at all possible times during the first few months postoperatively. A general rearrangement of his way of life thereafter may be required. However, so disabling is the chronic ulcer that all these measures are well worthwhile.

MISCELLANEOUS OTHER MANIFESTATIONS OF THROMBOTIC DISEASE OF VEINS Venous thrombosis may occur wherever veins are found, and several rather striking clinical conditions may result. Again, venous thrombosis may be due to venous stasis, local venous injury, increased blood coagulability, infection, or invasion by tumors, it may occur following the use of diuretics, in blood dyscrasias such as polycythemia vera, and in the presence of certain tumors such as carcinoma of the pancreas.

Occlusion of the inferior vena cava may be caused by simple thrombosis, thrombophlebitis, neoplasm, aneurysm, or a-cites. Most commonly the obstruction results from an ascending thrombus in one or both iliac

veins which we observed in at least three debilitated patients in one year. There is swelling of both legs and the lower trunk, associated with marked distention of collateral venous channels such as the inferior epigastric veins which communicate with the superficial abdominal veins, including the internal mammary veins. Actual occlusion of both renal veins at the vena cava is not always incompatible with life, though reduced urine flow is associated with albuminuria and hematuria. In inferior vena caval obstruction the venous pressure in the legs is elevated, but that in the arms is normal. Accordingly, the presence of prominent veins on the abdominal wall adjacent to the umbilicus does not necessarily mean that the patient has portal hypertension due to cirrhosis, they may also reflect obstruction of the inferior vena cava. Upon occasion prominent abdominal veins may merely reflect the fact that the individual has lost much weight and supporting subcutaneous tissue particularly fat, which has allowed the veins to become more prominent. The ligated vena cava may recanalize.¹¹²

When blood flows in a retrograde fashion through veins and causes their diameter to increase, the valves of these veins often become incompetent, if for no other reason than that the valves are no longer of such size as will completely occlude the lumen of the distended vessels.

Superior vena caval obstruction produces a striking clinical picture known as the superior vena caval syndrome. The resulting venous engorgement of the upper portions of the body drained by the superior vena cava results in cyanosis and edema of the face, neck, arms and upper thorax. The eyes may become bloodshot and on leaning forward or other exertion headache, dizziness and even fainting may occur. Large distention of the veins of the upper portions of the body is apparent with a marked increase in venous pressure.

The causes of superior vena caval "obstruction" are varied and among those that we have encountered were nonspecific medi-

astinal inflammation, tuberculous lymph nodes, sarcoidosis, lymphoma such as that of Hodgkin's disease, extension of pulmonary carcinoma, metastatic disease from other tumors, aneurysm, mediastinal goiter, constrictive pericarditis, and massive left pyothorax with a shift of the mediastinum to the right (Fig 208). In one patient the condition appeared shortly after he had lifted one end of an automobile on a bet, presumably the great exertion resulted in a type of "effort thrombosis" to be described below.

The diagnosis of superior vena caval obstruction is usually easy, due to the distribution of the venous distention. However, angiography will demonstrate delayed emptying of the veins of the injected arm, extensive collateral drainage will be seen and not infrequently the site of obstruction will be visualized.

The treatment and prognosis of obstruction of the superior vena cava depends upon the etiology. For example, although neoplastic compression may be relieved by radiation the patient will not often be cured. Where the condition is due to a chronic nonspecific inflammatory process with associated fibrosis neither x-ray nor direct surgical attack is particularly successful. The surgeon might think preoperatively that he will be able readily to remove the tissue which is compressing the vena cava, but at operation he finds it difficult to identify this vessel and a dense inflammatory mass and he finds it even more difficult satisfactorily to remove all obstructing tissue from around it. The obstruction is usually not localized to one small segment, and resection with homografting is not often successful initially or for long.

There are now numerous reports in the literature of the use of vessel grafts, more recently arterial grafts for bypassing the obstruction of the superior vena cava. This has allowed satisfactory decompression in some instances but again successful results are usually short lived because of the nature of the underlying disease process.

"Effort" thrombosis of the axillary vein is a particularly interesting condition which occasionally is seen following some unusual or violent physical effort, "as following spanking of a child" Surprisingly, pulmonary embolism has occurred only with the greatest rarity following thrombosis of the axillary vein The physical findings include an increase in the circumference and cyanosis of the involved arm The superficial veins are distended, and the tender and firm axillary vein is palpable in the axilla

No particular therapy other than general supportive measures is required The thrombosis does not tend to propagate, and the symptoms usually subside within a few days or weeks

Acute massive venous occlusion in the lower extremity has been reported under the appellation of "phlegmasia cerulea dolens" This condition has been recognized for a great many years and, according to Osius,¹¹⁰ it was first described by Fabricius Hildanus in 1593, when he reported and described such an entity, even to the details of gangrene Many causes have been described, the most common being surgical and obstetrical procedures, infection, malignancy, and traumatic accidents It may be difficult to distinguish venous occlusion from arterial occlusion in some patients, for arterial occlusion can be associated with significant swelling of the extremity¹⁹

The *pathologic physiology* of acute massive venous occlusion appears to consist of virtually complete obstruction of the venous outflow of the involved leg This results in a diminution of arterial inflow, in addition to the fact that arterial vasospasm may be intense

The diagnosis is suggested by the rapidity with which the thrombosis occurs and by the obvious thrombosis of the larger vessels of the leg

The *treatment* of the condition consists of paravertebral blocks or continuous caudal anesthesia to diminish arterial spasm and thus enhance blood supply to the leg, combined with elevation and wrapping of the ex-

trinity and the use of anticoagulant therapy Venous thrombectomy was utilized by Osius, and he considered it to be helpful

REFERENCES

- 1 ABBOTT, M E *Atlas of Congenital Cardiac Disease* New York, American Heart Association, 1936
- 2 ABELMANN, W H, ELLIS, L B, AND HARKEN, D E The diagnosis of mitral regurgitation An evaluation of clinical criteria, fluoroscopy, phonocardiogram, auricular esophagogram and electrokymogram *Am J Med*, **15**: 5, 1953
- 3 ALLEN, E V, BARKER, N W, AND HINES, E A *Peripheral Vascular Diseases*, Ed 2 Philadelphia, W B Saunders Company, 1955
- 4 BAILEY, C P Personal communication
- 5 BAILEY, C P, BOLTON, H E, NICHOLS, H T, JAMISON, W L, AND LITWAK, R S The surgical treatment of aortic stenosis *J Thoracic Surg*, **31**: 375, 1956
- 6 BAILEY, C P, DOWNING, D, GECKELER, G D, LIKOFF, W, GOLDBERG, H, SCOTT, J C, JANTON, O, AND REDONDO-RAMIREZ, H P Congenital interatrial communications, clinical and surgical consideration with a description of a new surgical technic, Atriaseptopexy *Ann Int Med*, **37**: 888, 1952
- 7 BAILEY, C P, GECKELER, G D, TRUEX, R C, LIKOFF, W, ANTONIUS, N A, ANGULO, A W, REDONDO-RAMIREZ, H P, AND NEPTUNE, W Arterialization of the coronary sinus *J A M A*, **151**: 441, 1953
- 8 BAILEY, C P, GLOVER, R P, AND O'NEILL, T J E The surgery of mitral stenosis *J Thoracic Surg*, **19**: 16, 1950
- 9 BAKER, C, BROCK, R C, CAMPBELL, M, AND WOOD, P Valvotomy for mitral stenosis A further report on 100 cases *Brit M J*, **1**: 1043, 1952
- 10 BARKER, N W, AND CAMP, J D Direct venography in obstructive lesions of veins *Am J Roentgenol*, **35**: 485, 1936
- 11 BAZETT, H C Blood volume and cardiovascular adjustments *Am Heart J*, **21**: 123, 1941
- 12 BEAN, W B A note on venous stars *Tr A Am Physicians*, **64**: 100, 1951
- 13 BEAN, W B The cutaneous arterial spider, a survey *Medicine*, **24**: 213, 1945
- 14 BECK, C S Acute and chronic compression of the heart *Am Heart J*, **14**: 515, 1937
- 15 BECK, C S Development of a new blood supply to the heart by operation *Ann Surg*, **102**: 801, 1935
- 16 BECK, C S, AND LEIGHNINGER, D S Scientific

- basis for the surgical treatment of coronary artery disease. *J A M A*, 159: 1204 1955
- 17 BECK, C S STANTON E BATHUCHOK W., AND LUTER, E. Revascularization of heart by graft of systemic artery into coronary sinus. *J A M A* 137: 436, 1948
 - 18 BECK C S AND TICHY V L. The production of a collateral circulation to the heart. *Am Heart J* 10: 819 1935
 - 19 BEXTON B F Femoral embolism simulating thrombophlebitis. A case report. *Am Surgeon* 19: 258 1963
 - 20 BEHREND J., AND HIRSCH S. Die Röntgenographische Darstellung der Arterien und Venen am Lebenden Menschen. *Klin Wochenschr.* 2: 2236 1923
 - 21 BENGERON J., ABELMANN W H VAZQUEZ MILAN H AND ELLIS L B Aortic stenosis—clinical manifestations and course of disease review of 100 proved cases. *A M A Arch Med* 94: 911 1954
 - ✓ 22 BICKFORD R G The fibre dissociation produced by cooling human nerves. *Clin. Sci.* 4: 159 1939
 - 23 BIGGLOW W G LINDSEY W K AND GREENWOOD W F Hypothermia its possible rôle in cardiac surgery An investigation of the factors governing survival in dogs at low body temperature. *Ann. Surg.*, 132: 840 1950
 - 24 BING R J SIEGEL, A VITALE, A BALMONT F SPARKS, E TARSCHLER, M KLAPPER, M., AND EDWARDS S Metabolic studies on the human heart in vivo I Studies on carbohydrate metabolism of the human heart. *Am J Med* 15: 284 1953
 - 25 BJÖRK, V O AND CRAWFORD C The surgical closure of interauricular septal defects. *J Thoracic Surg.*, 26: 300 1953
 - 26 BJÖRK, V O CRAWFORD C JOHANSSON H KJELLBERG S R., AND RUDHE U Atrial septal defects. A new surgical approach and diagnostic aspects. *Acta chir scand* 107: 499 1954
 - 27 BJÖRK, V O MALMSTRÖM, G AND UOGLA L G Left auricular pressure measurements in man. *Ann Surg* 158: 718 1963
 - 28 BLALOCK, A., AND TAUSIG H. B Surgical treatment of malformations of heart in which there is pulmonary stenosis or pulmonary atresia. *J A M A*, 128: 189 1945
 - 29 BORD A M CATCHPOLE, B N JENSON R P AND ROSE, S S. Major venous ligation in the treatment of postphlebitic sequelae. *Lancet*, 2: 113, 1953
 - 30 BORD A M CATCHPOLE, B N JENSON R. P AND ROSE, S S The technic and interpretation of lower limb phlebography. *Ann Surg* 158: 723 1963.
 - 31 BROCK R. C Pulmonary valvulotomy for relief of congenital pulmonary stenosis. *Brit. M J* 1: 1121 1948
 - 32 BROWN I W JR. HEWITT W C, JR., YOUNG G., SEALY W C., AND HARRIS J E A simple expendable blood oxygen-gas exchanger for use in open cardiac surgery. *Surgery* 40: 100 1956
 - 33 BURNER, L. *The Circulatory Disturbances of the Extremities Including Gangrene Vaso-motor and Trophic Disorders* Philadelphia W B Saunders Company 1924
 - 34 BURN J H Antidiuretic effect of nicotine and its implications. *Brit. M J* 2: 109 1951
 - 35 BUXTON R. W AND COLLIER, F A Surgical treatment of long-standing deep phlebitis of the leg. II A supplemental report. *Surgery* 18: 663 1945
 - 36 CAMPBELL, M AND DEUCHAR, D Results of Blalock Tausig operation in 200 cases of morbus caeruleus. *Brit. M J*, 1: 349 1953
 - 37 CHURCHILL-DAVIESON H C, McMillan I R R MELROSE D G AND LYNN R B Hypothermia An experimental study of surface cooling. *Lancet*, 2: 1011 1953
 - 38 COOLEY D A., McNAMARA D G., AND LARSON J R. Aorticopulmonary septal defect diagnosis and surgical treatment. *Surgery* 42: 101 1957
 - 39 COURMAND A., AND RANGER, H. A Catheterization of the right auricle in man. *Proc Soc Exper Biol. & Med.*, 46: 463 1941
 - 40 CUTLER, S S AND WOLF J Acquired arteriovenous fistula with coexistent subacute bacterial endocarditis and endarteritis. *Ann. Int. Med* 25: 973 1946
 - 41 DEXTER L. Physiologic changes in mitral stenosis. *New England J Med* 254: 829 1956
 - 42 DILLON R. F GASUL, B M., AND FELL, E H. Congenital heart disease. In *Physiologic Principles of Surgery* edited by L M Zimmerman and R. Levine Philadelphia, W B Saunders Company 1967
 - 43 DIMOND E G AND ANDREWS M H. Clinical thermometers and urinometers determination of their accuracy. *J A M A* 156: 125 1954.
 - 44 DOW J D The venographic diagnosis of the method of recurrence of varicose veins. *Brit. J Radiol.*, 25: 382 1952
 - 45 DRESDALE, D T RIFKIN C B GUZMAN S V., AND GREENE, M A Postcardiotomy syndrome in patients with rheumatic heart disease. *Am. J Med* 21: 57 1956
 - 46 DUFFRS R. D (Editor) *The Physiology of Induced Hypothermia* Washington D C., National Academy of Science-National Research Council, 1956

- 47 DuBois, E F *Fever and the Regulation of Body Temperature* Springfield, Ill, Charles C Thomas, 1948
- 48 DuBois, E F, EBAUGH, F G, JR, AND HARDY, J D Basal heat production and elimination of 13 normal women at temperatures from 22°C to 35°C *J Nutrition*, **48**: 257, 1952
- 49 DUBOST, C, ALLARY, M, AND OECONOMOS, N Resection of an aneurysm of the abdominal aorta *A M A Arch Surg*, **64** 405, 1952
- 50 EDWARDS, J E Congenital malformations of the heart and great vessels, in Gould, S E, *Pathology of the Heart* Springfield, Charles C Thomas, 1953
- 51 ELKIN, D C, AND COOPER, F W, JR Surgical treatment of insidious thrombosis of aorta *Ann Surg*, **130**. 417, 1949
- 52 ENGEL, F L The significance of the metabolic changes during shock *Ann New York Acad Sc*, **55** 381, 1952
- 53 FICK, A Sitzungsbd d phys-med Gesellsch zu Wurz, **16** 1780 Cited by Marshall, E K, Jr Cardiac output of man *Medicine*, **9** 175, 1930
- 54 FINE, J, FRANK, H, SCHWEINBURG, F, JACOB, S, AND GORDON, T The bacterial factor in traumatic shock *Ann New York Acad Sc*, **55** 429, 1952
- 55 FISHER, C, INGRAM, W R, AND RANSON, S W *Diabetes Insipidus and the Neuro-Hormonal Control of Water Balance A Contribution to the Structure and Function of the Hypothalamico-hypophyseal System* Ann Arbor, Edwards Brothers, Inc, 1938
- 56 FORSSMAN, W Die Sondierung des rechten Herzens *Klin Wchnschr*, **8**. 2085, 1929
- 57 FRACCHIA, A A, AND BRUNSCHWIG, A Hyperthermia (114 F rectal) with recovery *J A M A*, **149**: 926, 1952
- 58 FRIEDEL, M T Effect of cigarette smoke on the peripheral vascular system Radioactive iodinated albumin used as indicator of volumetric change *J A M A*, **152**. 897, 1953
- 59 FRIEDLICH, A, HEIMBECKER, R O, AND BING, R J A device for continuous recording of the concentration of Evans blue dye in whole blood and its application to determination of cardiac output *J Appl Physiol*, **3**. 12, 1950
- 60 GARDNER, W J, AND HALL, D E Arterial bloodletting during operation as an aid in hemostasis *Am J Surg*, **79**. 635, 1950
- 61 GILFILLAN, R S, JONES, O W, JR, ROLAND, S I, AND WYLIE, E J Arterial occlusions simulating neurological disorders of the lower limbs *J A M A*, **154**: 1149, 1954
- 62 GILFILLAN, R S, STEINFELD, J L, AND LEEDS, F H The syndrome of peripheral arterial insufficiency with partial occlusion of the iliac artery, a study of 9 cases *Surgery*, **35** 598, 1954
- 63 GLOVER, R P, BAILEY, C P, AND O'NEILL, T J E Surgery of stenotic valvular disease of the heart *J A M A*, **144** 1049, 1950
- 64 GORLIN, R, AND GOODALE, W T Changing blood pressure in aortic insufficiency Its clinical significance *New England J Med*, **255**: 77, 1956
- 65 GREHANT, M M, AND QUINQUAUD, H Recherches expérimentales sur la mesure du volume de sang qui traverse les poumons en un temps donné *Compt rend Soc de biol*, **3** 159, 1886
- 66 GRIFFITHS, H W C, AND GILLIES, J Thoracolumbar splanchnicectomy and sympathectomy, anaesthetic procedures *Anaesthesia*, **3**: 134, 1948
- 67 GROSS, R E Surgical closure of an aortic septal defect *Circulation*, **5**. 858, 1952
- 68 GROSS, R E The patent ductus arteriosus Observations on diagnosis and therapy in 525 surgically treated cases *Am J Med*, **12**: 472, 1952
- 69 GROSS, R E Treatment of certain aortic coarctations by homologous grafts, a report of 19 cases *Ann Surg*, **134** 753, 1951
- 70 GROSS, R E, POVERANZ, A A, WATKINS, E, JR AND GOLDSMITH, E I Surgical closure of defects of the interauricular septum by use of an atrial well *New England J Med*, **247**: 455, 1952
- 71 HAIMOVICI, H Peripheral arterial embolism A study of 330 unselected cases of embolism of the extremities *Angiology*, **1**: 20, 1950
- 72 HALLER Quoted by Welcker, H, *Prager Vrtljschr*, **4** 11, 1854 Cited by Ravdin, I S, Walker, J M, Jr, and Rhoads, J E, *Ann Rev Physiol*, **15** 165, 1953
- 73 HAMILTON, W F, MOORE, J W, KINSMAN, J M, AND SPURLING, R G Simultaneous determination of the pulmonary and systemic circulation times in man and of a figure related to the cardiac output *Am J Physiol*, **84**: 338, 1928
- 74 HAMILTON, W F, RILEY, R L, ATTYAH, A M, COURVAND, A, FOWELL, D M, HINNIFSTEIN, A, NOBLE, R P, REMINGTON, J W, RICHARDS, D W, JR, WHIFELER, N C, AND WITHAM, A C Comparison of the Fick and dye injection methods of measuring the cardiac output in man *Am J Physiol*, **153** 309, 1948
- 75 HAMMAN, L, AND RICHMOND, W F, JR Subacute *Streptococcus viridans* septicaemia cured by excision of an arteriovenous aneurysm of the external iliac artery and vein *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp*, **57** 219, 1935

- 6 HAKLON C R AND BLALOCK A Complete transposition of the aorta and the pulmonary artery. Experimental observations on venous shunts as corrective procedure. *Ann. Surg.* 127: 335 1948
- 77 HARDY J D Relationships between fever and sweating. *Fed. Proc.* 11: 64 1952
- 78 HARDY J D, SAY P K, AND DRABKIN D L The relation of body fluid compartments to body fat. *Surg. Gynec. & Obst.* 93: 103 1951
- 79 HARKEN D E, DEXTER L, ELLIS L B, FARMAN R E, AND DICKSON J F, III The surgery of mitral stenosis. III. Finger-fracture valvuloplasty. *Ann. Surg.* 134: 722 1951
- 80 HARRINGTON I The mass-movements of the circulation as shown by a recoil curve. *Am. J. Physiol.* 14: 287 1905
- 81 HOLMAN E. On circumscribed dilation of an artery immediately distal to a partially occluding band poststenotic dilation. *Surgery* 36: 3 1954
- 82 HOLMAN E, AND WILLETT F Results of radical pericardiectomy of constrictive pericarditis. *J. A. M. A.*, 157: 789 1955
- 83 HORVATH S M, RUBIN A, AND FOLTZ, E L Thermal gradients in vascular system. *Am. J. Physiol.*, 161: 316 1950
- 84 HUFNAGEL, C A Surgical treatment of aortic insufficiency. In *Cardiovascular Surgery* edited by C Lam Philadelphia, W B Saunders Company 1955
- 85 IMAMOTO N H AND HANSELL, J B The rôle of sympathectomy in the treatment of frost bite. *Surgery* 33: 810 1953
- 86 JEPSON R. P Raynaud's phenomenon—review of clinical problems. Hunterian lecture. *Ann. Roy. Coll. Surgeons England*, 9: 35 1951
- 87 JEPSON R. P The effects of vascular occlusion and local cooling on finger skin blood flow. *Clin. Sc.* 13: 250 1954
- 88 JOHNSON J, AND KIRBY C K An experimental study of cardiac massage. *Surgery* 26: 472 1949
- 89 JOHNSON J AND KIRBY C K Cardiac resuscitation. *S. Clin. North America*, 29: 1745 1949
- 90 JOHNSON J AND KIRBY C K The relationship of the method of suture to the growth of end-to-end arterial anastomoses. *Surgery* 27: 17 1950
- 91 KELLER, A. D The rôle of the circulation in the physiology of heat regulation. *Phys. Therapy Rev.*, 30: 511 1950
- 92 KEYS A AND SHAPIRO M J Patency of the ductus arteriosus in adults. *Am. Heart J.*, 25: 158, 1943
- 93 KINSMAN J M, MOORE, J W AND HAMILTON W F Studies on the circulation I. Injection method physical and mathematical considerations. *Am. J. Physiol.* 89: 322 1929
- 94 KIRKLIN J W, COXAGOLLY D C, ELLIS F H, JR., BURCHELL, H B., EDWARDS, J E., AND WOOD E H Problems in the diagnosis and surgical treatment of pulmonary stenosis with intact ventricular septum. *Circulation* 8: 849 1953
- 95 KJELLBERG S R. ET AL *Diagnosis of Congenital Heart Diseases* Chicago Year Book Publishers, Inc., 1955
- 96 LABORIT H, AND HUGUENARD P L'hibernation artificielle par moyens pharmacodynamiques et physiques en chirurgie. *Presse méd.*, 59: 1320 1951
- 97 LAUFMAN H Profound accidental hypothermia. *J. A. M. A.*, 147: 1201 1951
- 98 LERICHE, R. *Presse méd.* 31: 309 1923 Cited By Boyd A. M., Catchpole B. N., Jepson, R. P., and Rose S S Major venous ligation in the treatment of postphlebotic sequelae. *Lancet*, 2: 113 1953
- 99 LERICHE, R. De la résection du carrefour aortico-iliaque avec double sympathectomie lombaire pour thrombose artérielle de l'aorte le syndrome de l'oblitération terminale aortique par artérite. *Presse méd.* 48: 601 1940
- 100 LEWIS F J AND TAUVIC M Closure of atrial septal defects with the aid of hypothermia. Experimental accomplishments and the report of one successful case. *Surgery* 33: 52 1953
- 101 LEWIS, F J, TAUVIC, M., VASCO R. L., AND VIALI S The surgical anatomy of atrial septal defects: experiences with repair under direct vision. *Ann. Surg.*, 142: 401 1955
- ✓ 102 LEWIS T Observations upon the reactions of the vessels of the human skin to cold. *Heart*, 15: 177 1929-31
- 103 LEWIS, T Raynaud's disease with special reference to nature of malady. *Brit. M. J.* 2: 138 1932.
- 104 LILLIHEN C W, BOSS J R, R. AND VIASCHER, M B Occurrence of endocarditis with valvular deformities in dogs with arteriovenous fistulae. *Ann. Surg.*, 132: 577 1950
- 105 LILLIHEN, C W, COHEN M., WARDEN H. E AND VASCO R. L. The direct vision intra cardiac correction of congenital anomalies by controlled cross circulation results in 29 patients with ventricular septal defects, totality of Fallot and atrioventricularis communis defects. *Surgery* 38: 11 1955
- 106 LITTON R. R AND HARDY I B, JR. Post-thrombotic syndrome of the lower extrem

- ity, treatment by interruption of the superficial femoral vein and ligation and stripping of the long and short saphenous veins *Surgery*, **24**: 452, 1948
- 107 LITTLE, D M, JR *Controlled Hypotension In Anesthesia and Surgery* Springfield, Ill, Charles C Thomas, 1956
 - 108 LITTLE, R C The etiology of hypertension in coarctation of the aorta *South M J*, **46** 911, 1953
 - 109 LUKE, J C Amputation for ischaemic arterial disease of the leg *Canad M A J*, **65** 343, 1951
 - 110 MCPHEETERS, H O, AND ANDERSON, J K *Injection Treatment of Varicose Veins and Hemorrhoids*, Ed 2 Philadelphia, F A Davis Company, 1939
 - 111 MCQUISTON, W O Anesthetic problems in cardiac surgery in children *Anesthesiology*, **10**: 590, 1949
 - 112 MILES, R M, AND YOUNG, J M Recanalization of the vena cava *Surgery*, **33**: 849, 1953
 - 113 MONTGOMERY, H Experimental immersion foot, review of the physiopathology *Physiol Rev*, **34**: 127, 1954
 - 114 MONTGOMERY, H, HORWITZ, O, PEIRCE, G, AND SAYEN, A Experimental immersion foot I The effects of prolonged exposure to water at 3° C on the oxygen tension and temperature of the rabbit leg *J Clin Invest*, **33** 361, 1954
 - 115 MOYER, C A, AND BUTCHER, H R, JR Stasis ulcers, an evaluation of the effectiveness of three methods of therapy and the implication of obliterative cutaneous lymphangitis as a credible etiologic factor *Ann Surg*, **141** 577, 1955
 - 116 MULLER, W H, JR The surgical treatment of transposition of the pulmonary veins *Ann Surg*, **134**: 683, 1951
 - 117 NEELY, W A, WILSON, F C, JR, MILNOR, J P, HARDY, J D, AND WILSON, H Cardiac output, a clinical comparison of the direct Fick, dye, and ballistocardiographic methods *Surgery*, **35**: 22, 1954
 - 118 O'SHAUGHNESSY, L An experimental method of providing a collateral circulation to the heart *Brit J Surg*, **23**: 665, 1936
 - 119 OSIUS, E A Acute massive venous occlusion *A M A Arch Surg*, **65**: 19, 1952
 - 120 PARONA, F Della legatura della vena poplitea nelle varici alle gambe *Policlin*, **11**: 349, 1904 Cited by Boyd, A M, Catchpole, B N, Jepson, R P, and Rose, S S Major venous ligation in the treatment of post phlebotic sequelae *Lancet*, **2**: 113, 1953
 - 121 POLLACK, A A, AND WOOD, E. H Venous pressure in the saphenous vein at the ankle in man during exercise and changes in posture *J Appl Physiol*, **1**: 649, 1949
 - 122 POTTS, W J The tetralogy of Fallot *Am J Med*, **12** 596, 1952
 - 123 POTTS, W J, SMITH, S, AND GIBSON, S Anastomosis of the aorta to a pulmonary artery *J A M A*, **132**: 627, 1946
 - 124 RAAF, J Surgery for cervical rib and scalenus anticus syndrome *J A M A*, **157**: 219, 1955
 - 125 RANSON, S W Regulation of body temperature *A Res Nerv & Ment Dis, Proc*, **20** 342, 1940
 - 126 RANSON, S W *The Anatomy of the Nervous System, From the Standpoint of Development and Function*, Ed 4. Philadelphia, W B Saunders Company, 1931
 - 127 RAYNAUD, A G M De l'asphyxie locale et de la gangrène symétrique des extrémités Paris, Rignoux, 1862 Cited by Allen, E V, Barker, N W, and Hines, E A, Jr *Peripheral Vascular Diseases*, Ed 2 Philadelphia, W B Saunders Company, 1955
 - 128 RIBERI, A, SHUMACKER, H B, JR, KAJIKUMI, H, GRICE, P F, AND BOONE, R D Ventricular fibrillation in the hypothermic state *Surgery*, **38**: 847, 1955
 - 129 ROBINSON, S Physiological effects of heat and cold *Ann Rev Physiol*, **14** 73, 1952
 - 130 ROSE, J C, HUFNAGEL, C A, FREIS, E D, HARVEY, W P, AND PARTENOPE, E A The hemodynamic alterations produced by a plastic valvular prosthesis for severe aortic insufficiency in man *J Clin Invest*, **33**: 891, 1954
 - 131 RUSHMER, R F *Cardiac Diagnosis, a Physiologic Approach* Philadelphia, W B Saunders Company, 1955
 - 132 RYDELL, R, AND HOFFBAUER, F W Multiple pulmonary arteriovenous fistulas in juvenile cirrhosis *Am J Med*, **21**: 450, 1956
 - 133 SCOTT, H W, JR, AND BAHNSON, H T Evidence for a renal factor in the hypertension of experimental coarctation of the aorta *Surgery*, **30** 206, 1951
 - 134 SEALY, W C, HARRIS, J S, YOUNG, W G, AND CALLAWAY, H A Paradoxical hypertension following resection of coarctation of aorta *Surgery*, **42**: 135, 1957
 - 135 SELIGMAN, A M, FRANK, H A, AND FINE, J Traumatic shock, successful treatment of hemorrhagic shock by vivi-perfusion of liver in dogs irreversible to transfusion *J Clin Invest*, **26** 530, 1947
 - 136 SELLE, W A *Body Temperature Its Changes With Environment, Disease and Therapy* Springfield, Ill, Charles C Thomas, 1952
 - 137 SHORR, E, ZWEIFACH, B W, AND FURCHGOTT,

- R. F. On the occurrence sites and modes of origin and destruction of principles affecting the compensatory vascular mechanisms in experimental shock. *Science* 102: 480 1945
138. SHUMACKER, H. B. JR. Causalgia III A general discussion. *Surgery* 24: 485 1948.
 139. SHUMACKER, H. B. JR., WHITE, B. H., CORWELL, A. R., WELBY, E. L., AND SANFORD, T. F. Studies in experimental frostbite I The effect of heparin in preventing gangrene. *Surgery* 22: 900 1947
 140. SIDGON, F. A., AND FIELDS, D. A. The super-sensitivity of denervated digital blood vessels in man. *Surgery* 30: 218, 1951
 141. SjöSTRAND, T. Volume and distribution of blood and their significance in regulating circulation. *Physiol. Rev.* 33: 202 1953
 142. SMITH, L. W., AND FAY, T. Temperature factors in cancer and embryonal cell growth. *J. A. M. A.*, 113: 653 1939
 143. Smoking and the cardiovascular system (editorial) *J. A. M. A.* 150: 1016 1962
 144. STARR, I. Essay on the ballistocardiogram. *J. A. M. A.*, 155: 1413 1954
 145. STARR, I., RAWSON, A. J., SCHROEDER, H. A., AND JOSEPH, N. R. Studies on the estimation of cardiac output in man, and of abnormalities in cardiac function, from the heart's recoil and the blood's impacts: the ballistocardiogram. *Am. J. Physiol.*, 127: 1 1939
 146. STEWART, G. N. Researches on the circulation time and on the influences which affect it IV The output of the heart. *J. Physiol.* 22: 159 1897
 147. SUMMERS, J. E. Highlights in the treatment of varicose veins and ulcers. *Am. J. Surg.*, 86: 443, 1953
 148. SWAN, H., VINTUR, R. W., BLOUNT, S. G. JR., AND KIRCHER, L. T. JR. Hypothermia in surgery: analysis of 100 clinical cases. *Ann. Surg.*, 142: 382 1955
 149. SWAN, H., ZEAVIN, I., HOLMES, J. H. AND MONTGOMERY, V. Comparison of circulation in general hypothermia I Physiologic changes and their control. *Ann. Surg.* 138: 300 1953
 150. TAUSKIN, H. B. *Congenital Malformations of the Heart*. New York: The Commonwealth Fund, 1947
 151. TAUSKIN, H. B. AND BAUERSTEDT, S. R. Follow-up studies on the first 1,000 patients operated on for pulmonary stenosis or atresia: results up to March 1952. *Ann. Int. Med.* 38: 1 1953
 152. Thermal gradients in the vascular system (editorial) *J. A. M. A.*, 146: 1137 1951
 153. THOMPSON, S. A. AND RAISSACK, M. J. Cardio-pericardiopexy: the surgical treatment of coronary arterial disease by the establishment of adhesions pericarditis. *Ann. Int. Med.* 16: 495 1942
 154. TURPIN, T. Etat actuel de la chirurgie Intrathoracique. *Tr. Internat. Cong. Med.*, 1913. Cited by Bailey, et al., *J. Thoracic Surg.* 20: 516 1950
 155. VALENTIN, G. *Lehrbuch Physiol.*, 1: 493 1847. Cited by Rawdon, I. S., Walker, J. M., Jr., Rhoads, J. E. *Ann. Rev. Physiol.*, 15: 165 1953
 156. VICKENBURG, A. M. Development of an anastomosis between the coronary vessels and a transplanted internal mammary artery. *Canad. M. A. J.*, 55: 117 1946
 157. WALSH, B. J., BLAND, E. F., AND JONES, T. D. Pure mitral stenosis in young persons. *Arch. Int. Med.*, 65: 321 1940
 158. WASS, W. R. The effect of atrioventricular nodal blockade on fibrillation produced by electric shock. *Surgical Forum* 7: 283 1957
 159. WELLS, J. A., AND RALL, D. P. Mechanism of pyrogen induced fever. *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.*, 68: 421 1948
 160. WIGGANS, C. J. Myocardial depression in shock. *Am. Heart J.*, 33: 633 1947
 161. WRIGHT, S. *Applied Physiology*. Ed. 9. London: Oxford University Press, 1955
 162. YOUNG, W. G., JR., SEALT, W. C., HARRIS, J. S., AND BOWMAN, A. The effects of hypercapnia and hypoxia on the response of the heart to vagal stimulation. *Surg. Gynec. & Obst.*, 93: 51 1951
 163. ZIESSER, H. F., JR., SCHNASEL, T. G., JR., AND JOHNSON, J. Roentgenographic localization of descending aorta. Use in infant with tetralogy of Fallot. *J. A. M. A.*, 150: 1200 1952.

Chapter 16

The Lungs

All systems of the body comprise a single functional unit, but certain units are functionally more intimately related than are others. The heart and the lungs constitute an exceedingly well synchronized complex, the activity of one closely influencing that of the other. It is therefore not surprising that one frequently hears the combined term "cardiopulmonary function," instead of "heart function and lung function." Nevertheless, if it is constantly borne in mind that the two activities are interdependent, then it is perhaps permissible to discuss lung physiology separately for the sake of clarity.

The normal and pathologic physiology of the lungs will be discussed under the following headings:

- A The physiology of respiration
 - 1 Control of pulmonary ventilation
 - a Nervous control
 - b Chemical control
 - 2 Mechanics of pulmonary ventilation
 - a Muscles of respiration
 - b Intrapleural pressures
 - c Cough mechanism
 - d Hiccups
 - e Methods of artificial respiration
 - 3 Functional anatomy of the lungs
 - a The pulmonary segments
 - b Blood supply to the lungs
 - 4 Lung volumes and capacities
 - 5 Lung function tests
- B The pathophysiology of certain representative thoracic conditions
 - 1 Respiratory dysfunction due to excision of pulmonary tissue

- 2 Indications and value of pulmonary decortication
- 3 Abnormalities of the pulmonary circulation further comment
- 4 Acute and chronic pulmonary emphysema
- 5 Intrathoracic tumors
- 6 Lung cysts
- 7 Chronic pulmonary infection bronchiectasis, lung abscess, and tuberculosis
- 8 Thoracic trauma
- 9 Severe hemoptysis causes and management

The Physiology of Respiration

Control of Pulmonary Ventilation

NERVOUS CONTROL The nervous control of respiration is influenced by many factors, and numerous of these are still obscure. The primary respiratory center that is concerned with automatic rhythmic respiration is situated in the pons and the upper medulla. However, the localization of the respiratory center is not complete, for a large number of neurons in this general region appear to be integrated in the function of respiration. There is evidence that on either side of the medulla there is a group of neurons which may influence respiration on the opposite side, and there is also evidence to suggest that the respiratory center may contain both an *inspiratory center* and an *expiratory center*. Normally, regular and rhythmic respiration would seem to be produced by a rhythmic stimulation of the inspiratory cen-

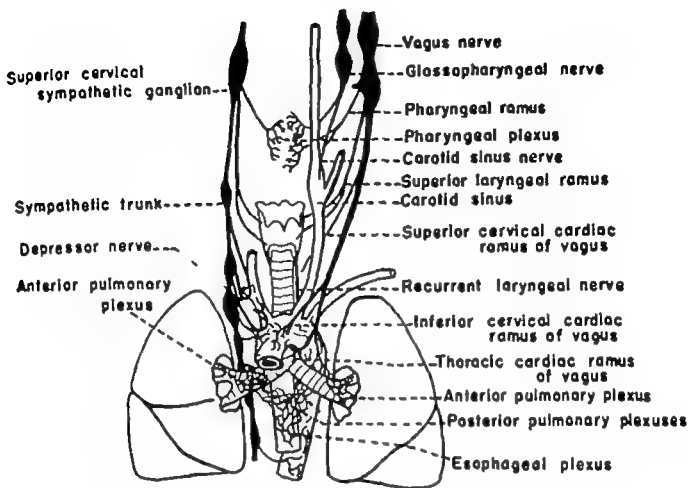


Fig 178 Vagus (right) and sympathetic (left) nerves of the respiratory tract. The precise rôle of the autonomic nervous system in respiration has never been clearly defined. Thus, pulmonary denervation for such diseases as emphysema and bronchial asthma must be viewed with reserve (From *Levitt, A. Visceral Innervation and Its Relation to Personality* Springfield Ill., Charles C Thomas, 1961)

ter, expiration then occurring as a passive movement. Yet, it is of course apparent clinically that expiration can be a conscious and a forced effort—as in asthma, emphysema or severe exercise. Furthermore, there may be cross connections between the inspiratory and the expiratory centers, since the stimulation of one can produce inhibition of the other. The inspiratory center apparently lies in close contact with the central origin of the vagus nerves and certain of these relationships are shown in Figure 178.

The question of whether or not there is spontaneous activity of the respiratory center has been a subject of much debate. There are those who feel that the respiratory center does not have spontaneous or automatic activity and they feel that the reflexes arising peripherally which constantly act upon the center are responsible for the apparently

rhythmic activity. Recent evidence obtained by Howard and Webb¹¹ in our laboratory favors this view. These workers divided all but one afferent nerve from the lungs, and respiration continued. However, when this last afferent nerve was sectioned, the dog abruptly ceased to breathe and died if not mechanically ventilated. These studies would appear to provide recent evidence that even if the respiratory center should have some degree of spontaneous rhythmic activity, it is not enough in dogs to maintain life.

The respiratory center is acted upon by, and in turn influences, various and sundry reflexes particularly those involving the circulation. In addition respiration is quite sensitive to psychic impulses, and this provides the stimulus for certain 'hyperventilation' syndromes of emotional origin.

There is a subsidiary "respiratory center" which includes the reflex arc of the motor cells of the anterior horn of the spinal cord. The anterior horn cells coordinate principally the action of the respiratory muscles, they do not coordinate respiration as a whole.

Some of the central or higher center responses which may influence respiration are as follows: (1) laughing and crying, (2) sneezing due to irritation of the nasal mucous membrane, conducted by the sensory fibers of the Vth cranial nerve, (3) a related sneezing reflex known as the nasociliary reflex, which is activated when one enters bright sunlight, the sensation of nasal irritation being produced, (4) startling sounds or the viewing of upsetting scenes, and (5) even sudden unpleasant thoughts. Nevertheless, under ordinary circumstances these factors assume a relatively minor rôle in the regulation of respiration. The most important factors are *reflexes* from the lungs and the carotid and aortic "sinuses," and *chemical* changes in the blood which involve pH and CO₂ tension (see below).

Pulmonary vagal reflexes. The *vagus nerves* (Fig 178) have a rich plexus in the lungs. The end organs are stretch receptors, and are stimulated particularly during inspiration. As inspiration begins, the number of impulses going to the respiratory center is markedly increased. The increasingly rapid bombardment of the inspiratory center in the medulla by these impulses set off by stretching of the lungs finally inhibits inspiration. Expiration, usually passive, then occurs due to the elastic tissue of the lungs. However, in certain diseases, notably bronchial asthma and chronic pulmonary emphysema, expiration becomes an active effort even at rest. Hering and Breuer described these pulmonary vagal reflexes in 1868.

Other reflexes which influence respiratory efforts: aortic and carotid sinuses and bodies. Other reflexes which may affect respiration, particularly under abnormal conditions, are those which arise from the aortic arch and

from the carotid sinuses situated at the bifurcation of the carotid arteries. In 1927 Heymans and Heymans¹⁰ reported that respiratory reflexes could be elicited from the aortic arch (Fig 179). Thereafter it was found that stimulation of structures in the region of the carotid bifurcation also could influence respiration. It was subsequently shown that both the carotid bifurcation and the aortic arch contain two types of receptors, the *pressoreceptors* which respond to mechanical stimulation and the *chemoreceptors* which respond to chemical stimulation. A rise in arterial blood pressure stimulates the pressoreceptors and tends to diminish respiration. In contrast, stimulation of the carotid and aortic bodies, which contain small glandlike structures that are stimulated by oxygen lack, tends to increase respiration. Again, except under abnormal conditions these pressoreceptors and chemoreceptors have comparatively little to do with respiration. The pressoreceptors almost never have a significant part in normal respiration, but the chemoreceptors (which are stimulated by anoxemia but little influenced by carbon dioxide tension) exert a protective effect of considerable importance in patients whose respiratory center has become insensitive to changes in carbon dioxide tension and hydrogen ion concentration. When the arterial oxygen tension has fallen to approximately 70 mm Hg in man (normal level, 95), impulses arise from the aortic and carotid bodies which stimulate the respiratory center to increase inspiration.

CHEMICAL CONTROL. The chemical control of pulmonary ventilation was reviewed by Wintstein^{23, 24}. Whereas the chemoreceptors are particularly sensitive to anoxemia but only slightly sensitive to carbon dioxide tension, the respiratory center is markedly sensitive to changes in carbon dioxide tension and hydrogen ion concentration but relatively insensitive to changes in arterial oxygen saturation.

The rôle of carbon dioxide. Respiration must prevent anoxia and must assist in the

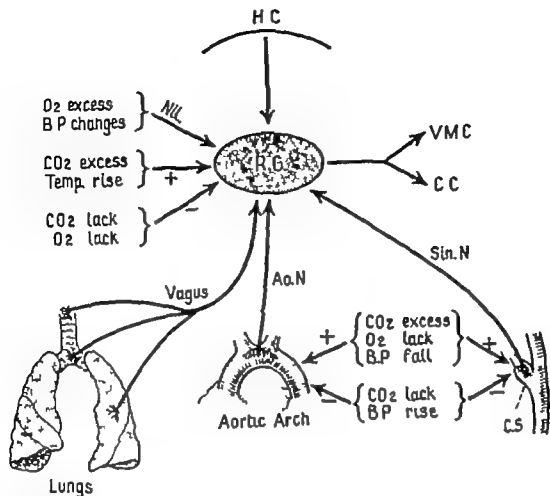


Fig 179 Regulation of respiration. R.C. = Respiratory center H.C. = Higher centers C.C. = Cardiac center V.M.C. = Vasomotor center CS = Carotid sinus region (including carotid body) Sin.N. = Sinus nerve A.o.N. = Aortic nerve (aortic arch includes the aortic body) + = Stimulates breathing - = Depresses breathing The bronchioles are well supplied with smooth muscle but the musculature of the pulmonary arterioles is in doubt. It is possible that alterations in pulmonary resistance are effected more by changes in bronchiolar tone and diameter than by changes in vascular tone (From WARREN S: *Applied Physiology* Ed. 9 London, Oxford University Press 1955)

maintenance of the normal blood pH. The chemical control of respiration is dependent largely upon the effect of carbon dioxide upon the respiratory center. Anoxia, on the other hand, has a depressant effect upon the respiratory center though anoxemia may stimulate the respiratory center reflexly through its effect upon the aortic and carotid bodies. Whereas the respiratory center may have as noted previously, a degree of inherent rhythmicity it is extremely sensitive to changes in blood carbon dioxide tension. Very slight increases in the concentration of carbon dioxide result in an increased respiratory volume exchange and decreased concentrations of carbon dioxide result in a diminished respiratory volume exchange.

When the respiratory center is depressed by anesthesia or anoxia and cannot respond adequately to an increasing carbon dioxide tension a very dangerous state of acidosis and anoxemia may result. Serious respiratory acidosis may also occur in emphysema.

CO₂ tension versus blood pH as a respiratory stimulus Much debate and experimentation has centered around the effort to determine whether the respiratory center is sensitive to the molecule of carbon dioxide *per se* or whether it is primarily sensitive to changes in hydrogen ion concentration and thus sensitive to carbon dioxide in that it has an acidifying effect. It is not necessary to present here the various types of data adduced to support the different views,

but there does appear to be evidence which would indicate that both the hydrogen ion concentration and the molecular configuration of carbon dioxide exert an effect upon the respiratory center. Carbon dioxide may act also by stimulating the chemoreceptors in the aortic and carotid bodies. When the hydrogen ion concentration of the arterial blood reaching the respiratory center is lowered (pH increased), the respiratory retention of carbonic acid assists in restoring the blood pH to normal (7.4). The opposite process obtains in acidosis. This extremely important aspect of respiratory function—the elimination or retention of carbon dioxide, as required, in states of acid-base imbalance—was previously discussed in some detail (p. 40).

Mechanics of Pulmonary Ventilation

It has been seen that the primary *afferent impulses* in respiration course through the vagus nerves, though some sensory fibers do course through the phrenic nerves (reflected in pain referred to the shoulder in diaphrag-

matic irritation). The *motor impulses* for respiration travel from the respiratory center to the anterior horn cells of the spinal cord which, through reflex associations, coordinate the muscles of respiration.

MUSCLES OF RESPIRATION The chief muscles of respiration are the diaphragm and the external intercostal muscles which, when stimulated by means of the phrenic and intercostal nerves, enlarge the chest both from above downward and in the transverse and anteroposterior dimensions. This enlargement of the space within the thoracic cage results in a tendency for the thoracic wall and diaphragm to move away from the lung. However, this increases the negative intrapleural pressure and causes the lung to follow the contours of the expanding thorax, and air is drawn into the lungs through the trachea. Actually, the intrapleural space is normally but a potential space between the visceral and parietal pleurae, containing only a slight amount of lubricating fluid. It was noted above that the recoil of the lung, which causes expiration, is due largely to the elasticity of this organ, upon which capacity is based the measurement of "lung compliance."

That bronchi as well as alveoli enlarge on inspiration can be readily observed at bronchoscopy. During inspiration the caliber of the bronchi increases and during expiration the caliber of the bronchi decreases (Figs 180B and 199). The internal intercostal muscles may actively assist expiration.

Exercise and increased respiratory requirements action of accessory muscles. When more than the normal quiet respiration is needed, certain accessory muscles of respiration are brought into action. During inspiration these include the serratus magnus, scaleni, trapezius, rhomboids, and alae nasi; in active expiration, the internal intercostals are assisted by muscles of the abdominal wall, which force the diaphragm upward.

Pulmonary ventilation can be sustained by either the external intercostal muscles or the diaphragm, but the loss of both, through

PATHOGENESIS OF PULMONARY SUPPURATION AND ATELECTASIS

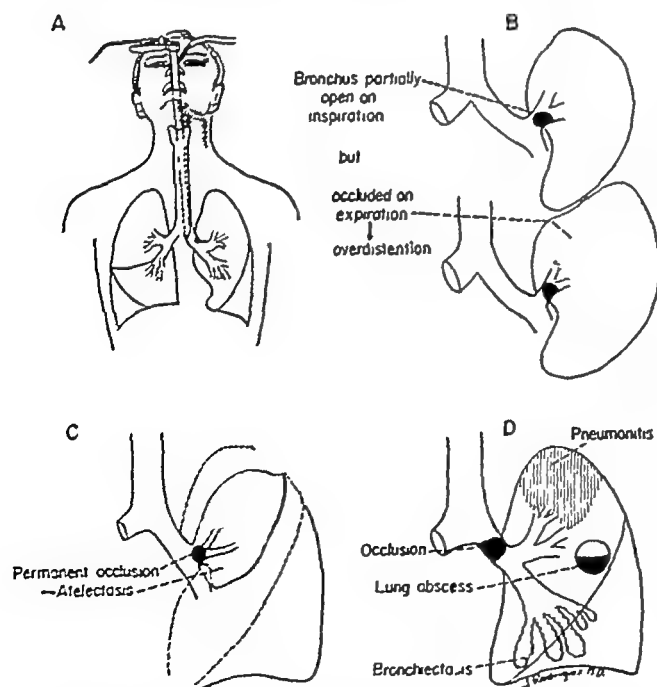


Fig 180 Lobar emphysema, atelectasis, and pulmonary suppuration are sequential developments in the course of progressive bronchial occlusion by tumor or foreign body

paralyzing disease or excessively high spinal anesthesia, results in a situation in which ventilation must be carried on artificially.

Although the diaphragm is the chief muscle of respiration and normally is responsible for a substantial portion of the respiratory volume, this muscle may be more or less fixed in one position in some individuals and then ventilation is achieved largely through the action of the external intercostal muscles. The previously mentioned accessory muscles of respiration may also be called into play.

INTRAPLEURAL PRESSURES. In the physics of pulmonary ventilation, the intrapleural pressure is of the utmost importance. As has been emphasized, the intrapleural "space" is usually only a potential space, but under pathologic conditions it may become filled with pus, effusion, blood or air.

The normal intrapleural pressure is slightly below atmospheric pressure, that is, there is a partial vacuum in the intrapleural space (from -9 to -12 cm. of water during inspiration and from -3 to -6 cm. during expiration). The presence of this negative pressure maintains the lungs in their expanded state, during both inspiration and expiration. Were it not for this negative pressure or suction effect the constant pull of the elastic fibers of the lungs would collapse the lung (atelectasis). For, even in expiration the lung is by no means collapsed since a complete collapse of the lung reduces the lung size to only a fraction of the size it assumes in normal expiration (Fig. 181).

The fluctuations in intrapleural pressure during the ventilatory cycle may be readily observed by introducing into the pleural space a needle connected to a water manometer, the variations in pressure are obvious. The same fluctuations are seen in the under water drainage tube inserted following a thoracotomy (Fig. 182) if the tube is not occluded the column of water in the tube may be seen to rise during inspiration and to fall during expiration.

Pathologic variations in the intrapleural pressure are discussed in some detail later

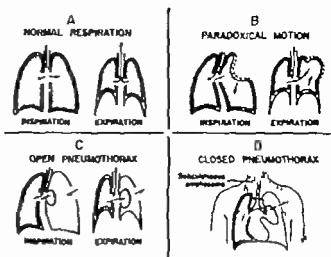


Fig. 181 Paradoxical motion (B) not only interferes with the lung on the injured side but it also prevents effective expansion of the opposite lung. Furthermore "used" air tends to pass back and forth from one lung to the other and asphyxiation can occur. The effects of open pneumothorax are similar to those of paradoxical motion, and venous return to the right heart may be diminished in both. Closed "tension" pneumothorax can produce atelectasis of one lung and can seriously impair function of the other (see also Fig. 182).

on, including those in pneumothorax pyopneumothorax (Fig. 183), atelectasis and the pressure relationships which follow the removal of a lung.

COUGH MECHANISM. While ciliary action of the bronchial epithelial cells will rid the normal individual of some amount of mucus or foreign material which the bronchi might contain this is entirely inadequate when a life-threatening amount of secretion or other material is present (Fig. 184). Both reflex and voluntary coughing are most important in clearing the tracheobronchial tree of potentially occluding materials and thus avoiding pneumonia, atelectasis, bronchiectasis, or lung abscess. In the comatose patient the cough reflex may not be sufficiently active to open the air passages and tracheobronchial suction is frequently mandatory. It is also required in the noncomatose individual who because of discomfort or other reasons will not cough sufficiently to clear the smaller bronchi and prevent atelectasis and pneumonia. Actually, a chief value of catheter suction in most patients is that it stimulates the afferent vagal fibers

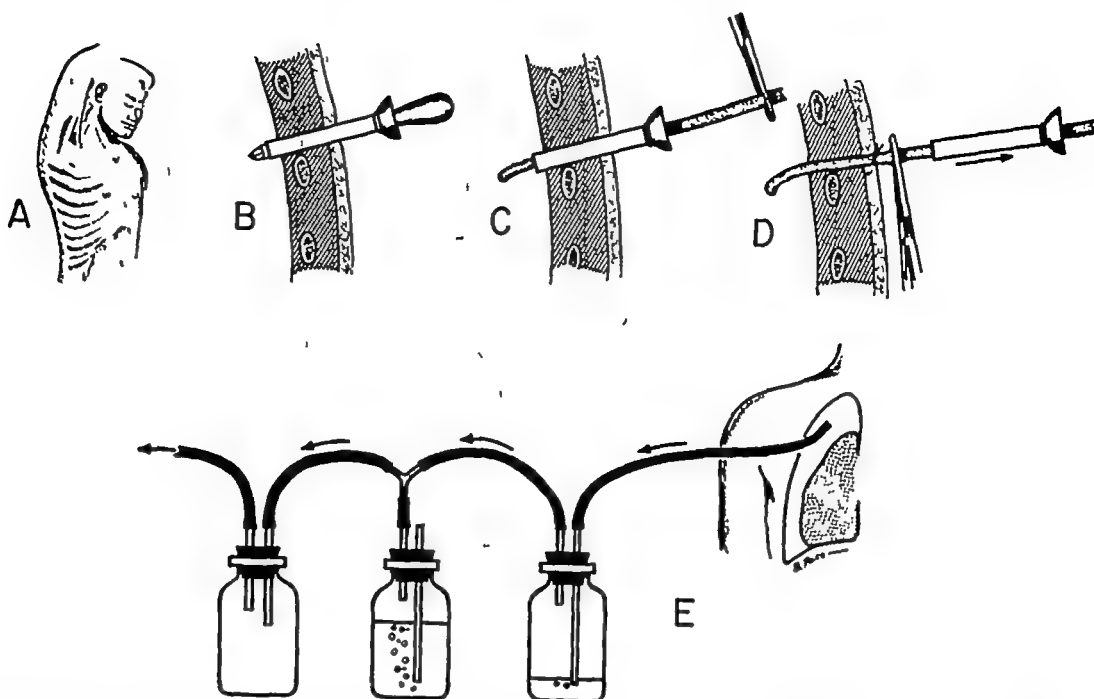


Fig 182 Management of tension pneumothorax In an emergency it is advisable to aspirate the hemithorax with a large needle to improve respiration Formal closed drainage can be instituted later



Fig 183 Massive left pyopneumothorax This patient had edema of the lower half of his body and the left upper half—but not the right upper half (see Fig 208) Following thoracentesis the edema promptly subsided

and produces involuntary coughing, which clears the smaller bronchi that one cannot expect to reach with either the catheter or the bronchoscope Moreover, after one session of suctioning, the patient usually coughs to avoid a second one

The act of coughing is initiated by a sharp inspiratory effort, followed by abrupt clo-

sure of the glottis and a forceful expiration which rapidly increases the intrapleural pressure, followed by sudden opening of the glottis so that the offending material is propelled upward toward the mouth When one is "coughing out" a patient, it is essential to insist that the patient actually close the glottis and thus generate an effective expulsive force In other words, merely to breathe deeply is not to cough

To appreciate the value of effective coughing, one needs but to auscult the poorly ventilated patient's chest and note the scattered râles and faint breath sounds in the dependent portions of the lungs Following this, the individual is asked to cough several times If one then listens again, he will usually hear fewer râles and much improved breath sounds, reflecting ventilation of previously atelectatic portions of the lung

Another factor in the pathogenesis of post-operative atelectasis is the diminished respiratory excursion caused by incisional pain Still another factor is the excessive use of opiates, these drugs reduce the sensitivity of the bronchial mucosa and may thus abolish the cough reflex Moreover, opiates also have an almost specific depressant effect upon the respiratory center This may re-

sult in an additional reduction in ventilation. Thus, the accumulation of secretions because of an obtunded cough reflex, plus an inadequate ventilatory effort due to respiratory center depression, may produce serious anoxia and may even cause death in elderly subjects. If one doubts this effect, he can convince himself by determining arterial O_2 and CO_2 values in preoperative patients who have received perhaps 15 mg of morphine sulfate as preoperative medication, a not unusual dose in many parts of the United States. The arterial oxygen saturation will often be depressed.

HICCUPS (HICCOUGHS, SINGULTUS) Hiccups are reflex spasmodic contractions of the diaphragm and often are due to gastric retention. They may be observed following thoracic and abdominal operations, in the presence of subdiaphragmatic inflammatory processes in states of acid base imbalance, with brain lesions, or with no demonstrable pathology. When diaphragmatic irritation is the cause of the hiccups, the afferent impulses may be transmitted through the phrenic nerve or through other afferent nerves such as the vagus or sympathetics. The motor limb of the reflex arc is supplied by the phrenic nerve.

Despite the large number of remedies which have been suggested for the relief of hiccups this complication can present one of the most challenging problems in all of therapeutics. Some bouts of hiccups will respond to the usual measures such as the inhalation of carbon dioxide (paper bag re-breathing or CO_2 from a cylinder), or the spraying of the posterior pharynx with ethyl chloride or of course gastric decompression. There are other intractable cases of hiccups, however which may persist for days weeks or even months. Formerly it was often necessary to inject or to crush the phrenic nerve on the side affected after identifying the involved hemidiaphragm at fluoroscopy. Fortunately chlorpromazine has proved gratifyingly effective in controlling hiccups.

METHODS OF ARTIFICIAL RESPIRATION While there is always available somewhere in

TRACHEAL SUCTION WITH CATHETER

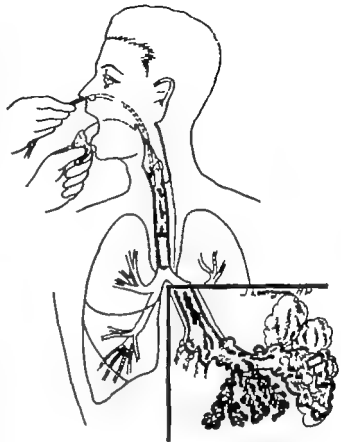


Fig 184 The patient should inhale as the catheter is advanced through the glottis. In addition to the tracheal secretions aspirated with the catheter further material is cleared from the smaller bronchi by the highly important coughing that catheter suction stimulates.

most hospitals an anesthesia machine or pulmotor of some type for inflation of the lungs, such instruments are often not at hand and some immediate maneuver must be employed to maintain life. These measures consist of mouth to mouth breathing and of the different techniques of manual artificial respiration.

Several studies in recent years have thrown considerable doubt upon the well known and widely used Schafer prone method, though unquestionably this method has resulted in the saving of many lives in the past. After a critical survey of manual artificial respiration procedures Gordon and his associates⁹ came to the conclusion that one of the push pull methods (Fig. 185) was preferable in most instances. The conclusion was based upon studies in curarized

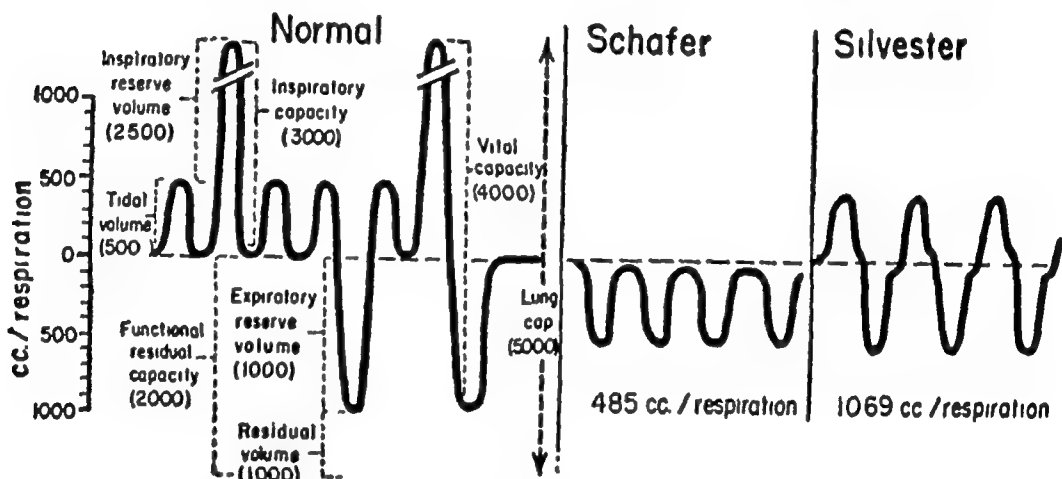
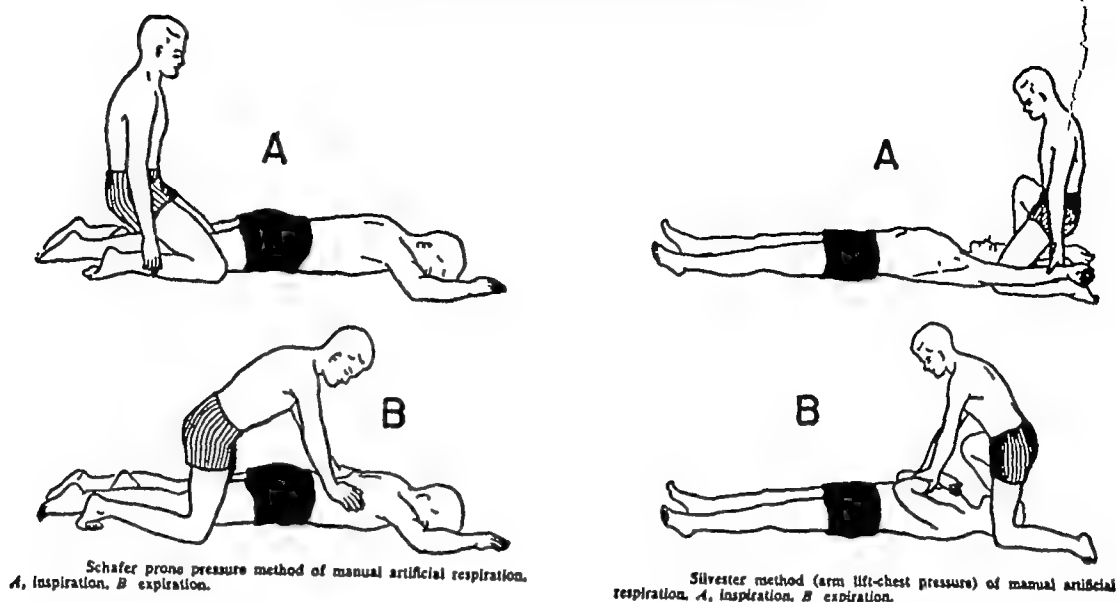


Fig 185 The Silvester method afforded a volume of 1069 cc per "respiration" as compared with 485 cc per respiration for the Schafer method (see text) (From GORDON, A S, SADOVE, M S, RAYMON, F, AND IVY, A C Critical survey of manual artificial respiration J A M A, 147 1444, 1951)

normal subjects and upon warm corpses, in which the volume of air moved per minute by the different types of artificial respiration was measured. These values are also shown in Fig 186. The Schafer method resulted in an exchange of only 485 cc of air per cycle, while the Silvester and the various lift-pressure methods resulted in the movement of approximately 1000 cc of air per cycle. The conclusion of Gordon and his associates was that as soon as is compatible with the instructional requirements involved, the Schafer prone pressure method of manual artificial respiration should be replaced by one of the more efficient push-pull methods.

Functional Anatomy of the Lungs

PULMONARY SEGMENTS (FIGS 186 AND 187)
Pulmonary surgery has moved through a succession of stages, each succeeding stage being made possible by further advances in our knowledge of the underlying anatomy, physiology, and pathology of pulmonary conditions. It was not until late in the 1930's that the method of massive tourniquet ligation of the pulmonary hilum was gradually abandoned in favor of the individual identification and ligation of specific structures in anatomic dissection. It was not long thereafter that the resection of pulmonary lobes was performed with precision and with good results. Next came the work of Churchill

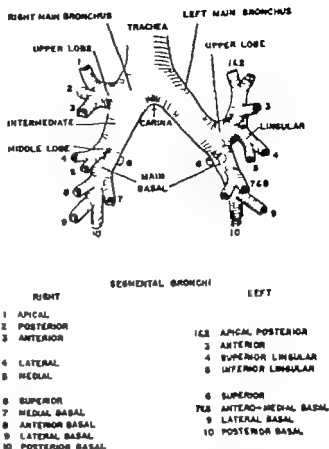
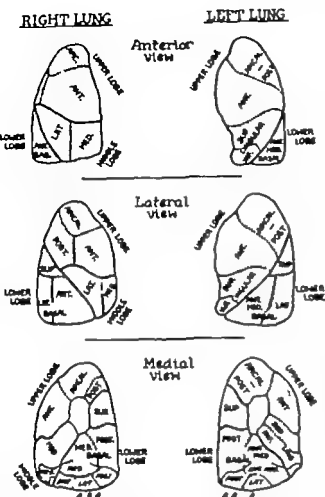


Fig 187 The pulmonary segmental bronchi (From JOHNSON J., AND KIRBY C K. *Surgery of the Chest* Chicago, Year Book Publishers, Inc 1952)

has 10 segments and the left lung has 8 segments, the reason being that the apical and posterior segments of the left upper lobe arise from a common bronchus. Nevertheless, the apical and the posterior segments of the left upper lobe can still be isolated and resected separately. Two of the left basal segments are often fused, accounting for only 8 segments in this lung. The individual basal segments are usually not resected separately, though this can be done when it is necessary to preserve all possible pulmonary tissue. The greater the experience of the operator with segmental resections the more accurately will he be able to excise the desired tissue without injuring adjacent segments.

On bronchoscopic examination it is possible under the most favorable conditions to visualize all or most of the segmental orifices on both sides. It may thus be observed whether or not mucus, pus, or blood

Fig 186 The pulmonary segments. (From JOHNSON J. AND KIRBY C K. *Surgery of the Chest* Chicago, Year Book Publishers, Inc., 1952)

and others which gave impetus to the realization that the pulmonary segments were separate anatomic units (Fig. 188) and that they could be individually excised at operation. This also was an important advance, for certain diseases, notably pulmonary tuberculosis and lung abscess, tend to have a segmental distribution.

Each segment has its own bronchus, artery and venous drainage, and with appropriate preoperative roentgenograms the disease can often be localized in a specific segment. Therefore the modern surgeon must have an intimate knowledge of the hilar structures of each individual segment, with the possible exception of the basal segments of each lower lobe. The segmental terminology proposed by Jackson and Huber¹² has been widely accepted in the need for a uniform nomenclature. The right lung



Fig 188 The pulmonary segments are anatomically distinct elements of pulmonary tissue *Above* Note the deep fissure and sharp demarcation of the superior segment of the right lower lobe (held with lung clamp) *Below* The hemostats hold an entire diseased pulmonary segment that has been carefully excised Pulmonary function is not significantly reduced by the precise removal of such diseased tissue

is emerging from any given segmental orifice. A familiarity with the location of the segmental bronchi, as seen through the bronchoscope, is of material assistance in the interpretation of bronchograms and in the identification of the various segments at thoracotomy.

BLOOD SUPPLY TO THE LUNGS The pulmonary artery to a lung can be divided without resulting in necrosis of pulmonary tissue. This is because a main nutrient supply of the bronchi and the parenchyma comes from the bronchial arteries, which carry systemic or arterial blood. In contrast, one cannot divide the pulmonary vein to a portion of the lung without running considerable risk of atelectasis and gangrene. This is due to the fact that, in contrast to the bronchial arteries, the bronchial veins are usually rudimentary structures, and as a rule they are not able to transport the blood away from the lung in the presence of ligated pulmonary veins. Nevertheless, it has been shown that considerable hypertrophy of the bronchial veins may occur under certain pathologic conditions (e.g., in some instances of pulmonary hypertension), and may be responsible for the transport of a considerable volume of blood from the lung in question. In the course of pulmonary resection it is advisable to ligate the artery first, since this will diminish the blood trapped in the portion of the lung to be excised.

Lung Volumes and Capacities

To establish uniformity of nomenclature in respect to the names applied to the various lung volumes a group of American respiratory physiologists agreed in 1950 to use the following terms and definitions¹¹

A. Volumes. There are four primary volumes which do not overlap (Fig. 189)

- 1 Tidal volume or the depth of breathing is the volume of gas inspired or expired during each respiratory cycle (usually about 500-600 cc)

2. Inspiratory reserve volume (formerly complementary or complementary air minus tidal volume) is the maximal amount of gas that can be inspired from the end-inspiratory position.

3. Expiratory reserve volume (formerly reserve or supplemental air) is the maximal volume of gas that can be expired from the end-expiratory level

4. Residual volume (formerly residual capacity or residual air) is the volume of gas remaining in the lungs at the end of a maximal expiration.

B. Capacities. There are four capacities, each of which includes two or more of the primary volumes (Fig. 189)

- 1 Total lung capacity (formerly total lung volume) is the amount of gas contained in the lung at the end of a maximal inspiration.

- 2 Vital capacity is the maximal volume of gas that can be expelled from the lungs by forceful effort following a maximal inspiration.

- 3 Inspiratory capacity (formerly complementary or complementary air) is the maximal volume of gas that can be inspired from the resting expiratory level

4. Functional residual capacity (formerly functional residual air, equilibrium capacity, or mid capacity) is the volume of gas remaining in the lungs at the resting expiratory level. The resting end expiratory position is used here as a baseline because it varies less than the end-inspiratory position.

Normal values for lung volumes are given in Table 19. It may be seen that there are considerable variations in even healthy individuals. Therefore measured deviations from "normal" in a given patient must be relatively large to be significant. This accounts in part for the skeptical attitude with which many clinicians have come to

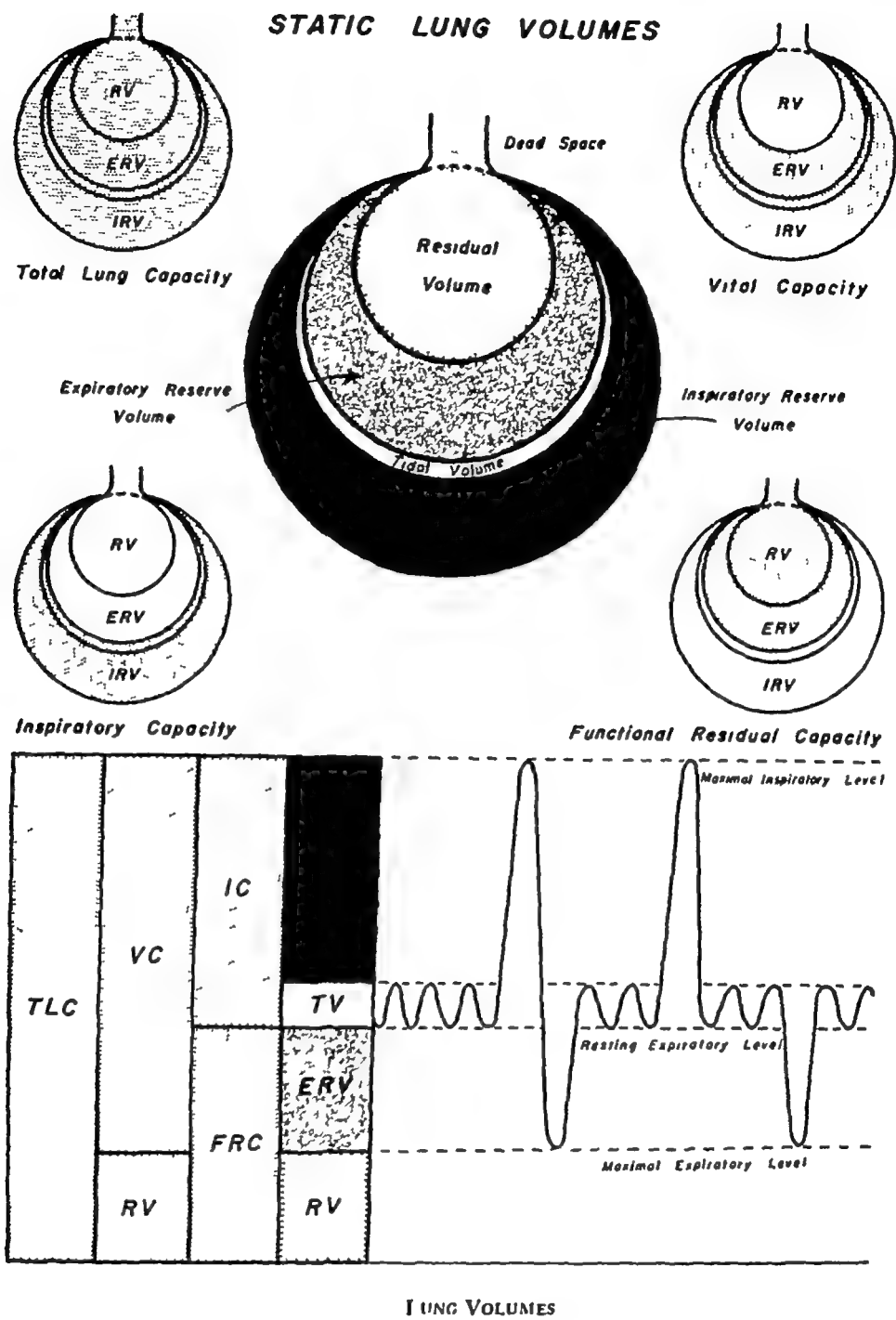


Fig 189 Lung volumes It is important to consider how different types of intrathoracic disease—such as large mediastinal tumor, atelectasis, or chronic emphysema—may affect the static lung volumes (From COMROE, J H, JR, FORSTER, R E, II, DUBOIS, A B, BRISCOE, W A, AND CARLSEN, E *The Lung—Clinical Physiology and Pulmonary Function Tests* Chicago, Year Book Publishers, Inc, 1955)

regard lung function tests, in addition to the fact that in almost 8 out of 10 subjects the experienced clinician can estimate the respiratory function with sufficient accuracy on clinical grounds alone. Even so, in the few subjects in whom an accurate assessment of lung function is of critical importance, lung function studies can be extremely valuable. Changes in lung function from one

month to another are informative, if sufficiently great. As with individual liver function tests, individual lung function tests and lung volumes need not always be abnormal in the presence of lung disease. The various measurements of liver or of lung function often evaluate entirely different aspects of the total physiology of the respective organs.

TABLE 10 NORMAL LUNG VOLUMES

	50 Young Men (Recumbent)		50 Young Women (Recumbent)		11 Men > 50-Yr † (Semirecumbent)	
	Mean	S.D.	Mean	S.D.	Mean	S.D.
Age (years)	22.0	3.3	23.1	3.4	61.5	6.8
Height (cm)	176.2	5.1	163.4	4.2	169	4.8
Weight (kg)	72.5	11.2	57.2	9.4	85.0	12.4
Inspiratory capacity (liters)	3.79	0.52	2.42	0.36	2.61	0.61
Expiratory reserve volume (liters)	0.98	0.26	0.73	0.19	1.01	0.38
Vital capacity (liters)	4.78	0.59	3.14	0.41	3.48	0.48
Residual volume (liters)	1.10	0.35	1.10	0.50	2.43	0.50
Functional residual capacity (liters)	2.18	0.50	1.82	0.30	3.44	0.74
Total lung capacity (liters)	5.97	0.81	4.24	0.57	5.92	0.57
RV/TLC × 100 (%)	10.8	4.4	25.9	5.0	40.0	7.1

* From Kaltreider N L, Fray W W and Hyde H V Z *Am Rev Tuberc* 37:662 1938

† From Greifenstein F E, Kling R M, Latch W S and Comroe J H Jr *Appl Physiol* 4:641 1952

(From Comroe J H, Forster R E II, Dubois A H, Briscoe W A and Carlson E *The Lung Clinical Physiology and Pulmonary Function Tests* Chicago Year Book Publishers Inc 1955)

For this reason the entire battery of tests may be required to assist in identifying the functional derangement that is present. For example, the vital capacity may be normal in the presence of considerable pulmonary disease which interferes with diffusion or pulmonary blood flow. The vital capacity is reduced by pneumothorax, hydrothorax, pneumonia, or pulmonary edema to cite only a few.

The *residual volume* and the *functional residual capacity* are important indices. The residual volume obviously cannot be measured directly, but it can be measured indirectly. One method is based upon the nitrogen that is flushed from the lungs while the subject is breathing pure oxygen; the expired air is collected in a spirometer that has first been flushed with oxygen to remove nitrogen (for air contains 80 per cent nitrogen, Table 20). By measuring the nitrogen collected in the spirometer and using suitable calculations, the residual air can be computed. An increase in the residual air is often taken to represent structural emphysematous changes but, more accurately it represents hyperinflation that may be due to (1) chronic emphysema, (2) partial ob-

TABLE 20 GAS COMPOSITION OF THIS ATMOSPHERE

	Volume Per Cent		
	Inspired (atmospheric) air	Expired air	Alveolar air
Oxygen	20.94	16.3	14.2
Carbon dioxide	0.04	4.0	5.5
Nitrogen (including argon 0.94 per cent and other rare gases)	79.02	79.7	80.3

struction of the airway, as in bronchostenosis, (3) overdistention of the remaining lung following resection of lung tissue, and (4) deformity of the thorax.²

Lung Function Tests

The several lung volumes given in Table 19 and Figure 189 do not actually measure lung function. These volumes might all be relatively normal but due to inadvertent ligation of one main pulmonary artery at lobectomy, the function of the involved lung would be nil. Or diffusion across the alveoli to and from the pulmonary capillaries might be so impaired that despite relatively

MEAN VALUES FOR BLOOD O₂, CO₂ AND pH IN HEALTHY YOUNG MEN

	Arterial Blood	Mixed Venous Blood
1 O ₂ pressure (mm Hg)	95	40
2 Dissolved O ₂ (ml O ₂ /100 ml W B.)	0 29	0 12
3 O ₂ content (ml O ₂ /100 ml W B)	20 3	15 5
4 O ₂ combined with Hb (ml O ₂ /100 ml W B)	20 0	15 4
5 O ₂ capacity of Hb (ml O ₂ /100 ml W B)	20 6	20 6
6 % saturation of Hb with O ₂	97 1	75 0
7 Total CO ₂ (ml CO ₂ /100 ml W B)	49 0	53 1
(mM/liter)	21 9	23 8
8 Plasma CO ₂ (ml CO ₂ /100 ml plasma)	59 6	63 8
(a) Dissolved CO ₂ (ml CO ₂ /100 ml)	2 84	3 2
(b) Combined CO ₂ (ml CO ₂ /100 ml)	56 8	60 5
(c) Combined CO ₂ /dissolved CO ₂	20/1	18 9/1
(d) CO ₂ pressure (mm Hg)	41	46 5
9 Plasma pH	7 40	7 376

Fig 190 Blood gas values (From COMROE, J H, JR, FORSTER, R E, II, DUBOIS, A B, BRISCOE, W A, AND CARLSEN, E *The Lung—Clinical Physiology and Pulmonary Function Tests* Chicago, Year Book Publishers, Inc, 1955)

normal lung volumes and pulmonary blood flow, respiratory efficiency could be markedly impaired. It is therefore apparent that efficient lung function requires the efficient operation of three major functional elements. (1) pulmonary ventilation, (2) alveolar-capillary membrane gas transfer, and (3) pulmonary blood flow.

The primary requirement of lung function is the oxygenation of, and the removal of carbon dioxide from, venous blood. The venous blood in the pulmonary artery has a relatively low oxygen content but an elevated carbon dioxide content (for average normal values, see Fig 190). This cyanotic blood normally passes through the pulmonary capillary bed that is surrounded by well ventilated alveoli, and pink blood whose hemoglobin is largely saturated with oxygen and largely cleared of carbon dioxide then enters the pulmonary veins to return to the left atrium. Obviously, since cellular oxygenation is an ultimate goal of "respiration," the efficiency of the systemic circulation in transporting the oxygenated blood to the peripheral tissues—as well as the efficiency with which the peripheral tissues utilize the oxygen—are also important elements in the total respiratory process. That is, oligemic

shock can produce cellular anoxia very quickly even in the presence of normal lung function.

For emphasis, then, let it be clearly understood that lung function can be reduced by a defect in either ventilation, diffusion, or blood flow, or by any combination of these. First, diminished breathing reduces ventilation, as may atelectasis, or intrapulmonary gas mixing may be uneven, as in emphysema. Second, the diffusion surface area may be reduced, as in emphysema or by pneumonectomy, the diffusion efficiency of a normal total diffusion surface area may be reduced in interstitial edema or fibrous thickening of the alveolar walls (Fig 191). Third, abnormal pulmonary blood flow, as through a large pulmonary arteriovenous fistula (Figs 174 and 192), may result in cyanosis because of the fact that a large amount of unsaturated pulmonary arterial blood bypasses the pulmonary capillary bed and enters the pulmonary veins directly, here pulmonary ventilation and alveolar diffusion may be normal. As another example of the interplay of blood flow and ventilation (Fig 193), let it be assumed that the blood flow to a portion of the lung is adequate but that this portion of the lung

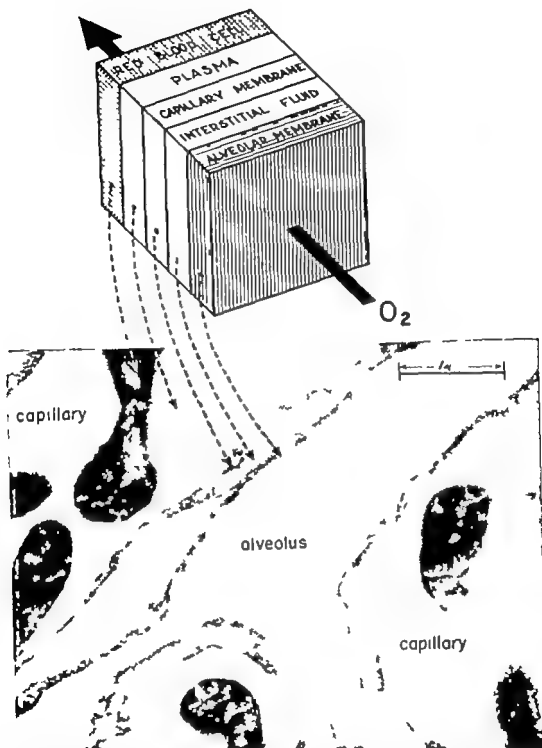


Fig. 191 Electron microscope photograph of rat lung, showing the layers through which the blood gases must pass. It is difficult to separate diffusion defects from defects due to impaired pulmonary ventilation and blood flow. However diffusion abnormalities do exist in many patients (e.g., pulmonary edema in mitral stenosis, hyaline membrane disease) and this important element in respiration becomes of increasing concern as problems in ventilation and pulmonary blood flow are better understood. (From COMRAZ, J. H., FORSYTER, R. E. II, DUBOIS, A. B., BALFOUR, W. A. and CARLSEN, E. *The Lung—Clinical Physiology and Pulmonary Function Tests*. Chicago: Year Book Publishers, Inc., 1955.)

is not adequately ventilated such as may occur in the presence of lobar pneumonia the blood passing through this portion of the lung will not be oxygenated and upon enter-

ing the main blood stream, it will impart the appearance of cyanosis. This is sometimes referred to as a functional arterio-venous shunt, in contradistinction to the

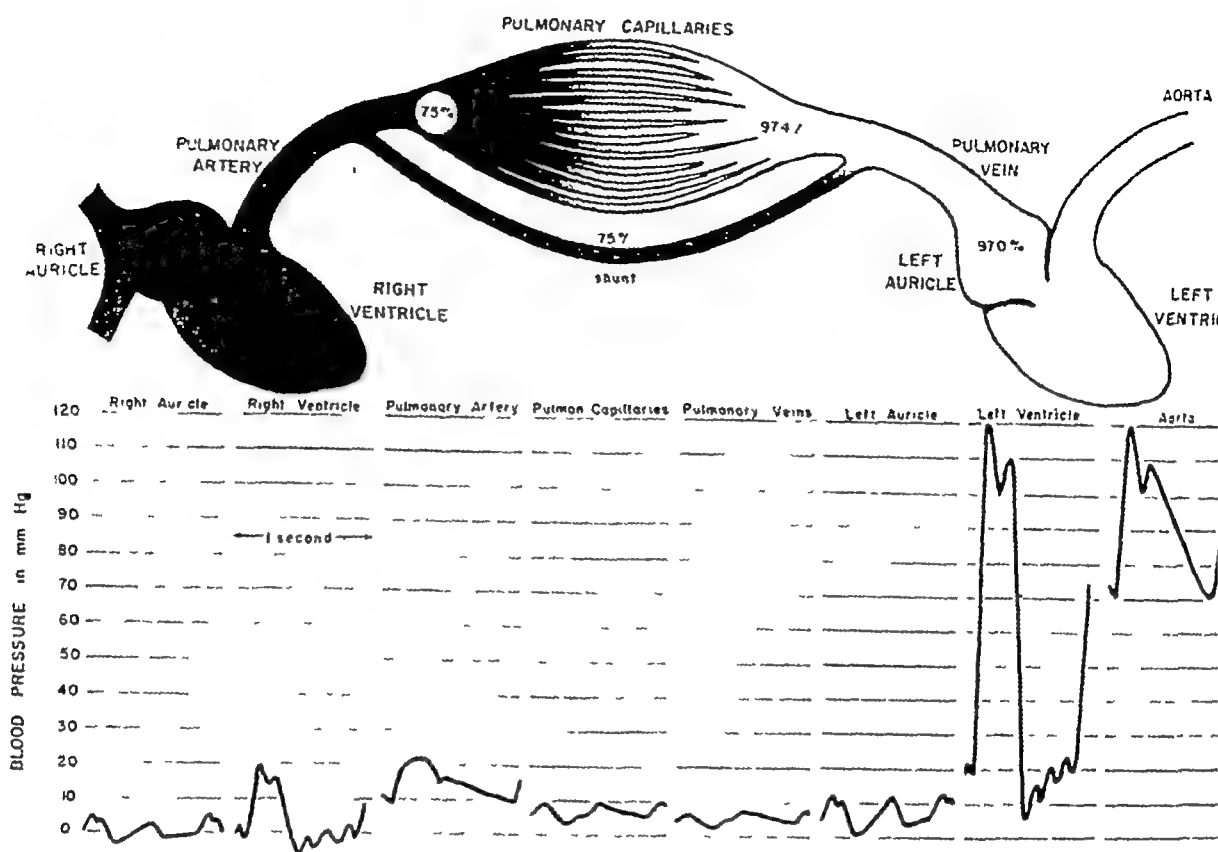


Fig 192 The pulmonary circulation. The great disparity between right ventricular and left ventricular pressure is apparent. Much less force is required to propel blood through the lungs than through systemic areas supplied by aortic blood. (From COMROE, J. H., JR., FORSTER, R. E., II, DUBOIS, A. B., BRISCOE, W. A., AND CARLSEN, E. *The Lung—Clinical Physiology and Pulmonary Function Tests*. Chicago, Year Book Publishers, Inc., 1955.)

true anatomic pulmonary arteriovenous shunt or fistula. Of course, a right to left intracardiac shunt will also produce cyanosis, and cyanosis alone does not indicate whether the pathology is in the lungs or in the heart.

Now that the several components of respiratory function have been outlined, let us consider measurements which reflect the efficiency of the total process.

Arterial oxygen content. Since the major function of the lung is to arterialize the venous blood (that is, to add oxygen and to remove excess carbon dioxide) it is patently of value to analyze the gas content of arterial blood at rest and during exercise. If the arterial gas values are abnormal at rest or become abnormal on exercising, further studies may then be performed to identify where the fault lies, if it is not clinically apparent.

The measurement of the venous oxygen

concentration is of no practical aid in estimating the efficiency of pulmonary function since the venous oxygen saturation will depend upon the amount of oxygen which is removed in the peripheral tissues, which in turn will depend upon the metabolic rate. The concentration will also depend upon the speed of the circulation, since the greater the volume of blood that passes through a given tissue, the less the amount of oxygen that will be removed from any particular volume of blood. Of course, the degree of venous oxygen saturation is also influenced by the arterial oxygen saturation of the blood which was transported peripherally. Finally, by immersing the hands in cold water the rate of blood flow can be so decreased that the gas values in venous blood leaving the hands closely approach those of arterial blood.

Arterial oxygen content may be expressed on the basis of percentage hemoglobin saturation.

ration, volumes per cent, or as oxygen tension (mm. Hg) The last reflects more precisely relatively small changes in arterial oxygen content. The normal oxygen content of arterial blood is from 19 to 21 vol per cent. The normal arterial oxygen saturation is from 93 to 99 per cent, and the normal arterial oxygen tension ranges from 90 to 102 mm Hg. The normal pH of arterial blood ranges from 7.38 to 7.42.

A low arterial oxygen saturation (the measurement of arterial oxygen saturation is more readily carried out than is the measurement of arterial oxygen tension) does not necessarily mean that pulmonary disease is present since, as was pointed out, an intracardiac right to left shunt (Fig. 155) or a pulmonary A V fistula (Fig. 192) may result in cyanosis due to reduced arterial oxygen saturation. Nevertheless, a low arterial oxygen saturation may, and commonly does, indicate pulmonary disease and further studies are indicated.

Pulmonary insufficiency versus pulmonary disability It is useful here to make the distinction between pulmonary insufficiency and pulmonary disability the former may result in inadequate oxygenation of the blood with cyanosis but the person may carry on his usual activities on the other hand, in certain diseases the arterial oxygen saturation may be normal, but it is maintained at a normal level through such severe respiratory effort that the individual has pulmonary disability even though he may not yet have pulmonary insufficiency. That is *pulmonary disability is related to the amount of physical effort that must be expended to provide whatever pulmonary function is achieved*. For example the asthmatic patient may by sufficient effort succeed in maintaining adequate alveolar gas exchange and a normal arterial oxygen saturation but the effort required to maintain normal blood gas levels is such that the resulting dyspnea quite incapacitates the individual.

The arterial oxygen saturation will not

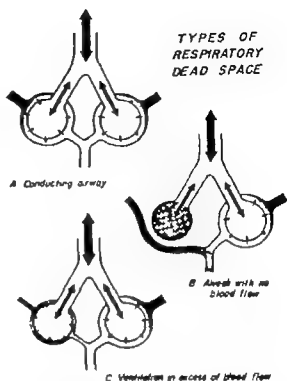


Fig 193 Dead space is here used to indicate bronchopulmonary space which contains air that is of no assistance in total respiration. Obviously the air that remains in the trachea and bronchi does not assist in oxygenating the blood or in removing CO_2 . (A) Similarly if a ventilated alveolus has no blood flow effective respiration in this unit is impossible (B) Finally the alveolar ventilation may be in excess of blood flow (C) A non-ventilated alveolus that is still perfused with blood constitutes a functional shunt in contradistinction to a true pulmonary arteriovenous (A V) shunt (Fig. 192) (From COXSON, J. H., JR., FORSTER, R. E., II DUBOIS A. B. BALFOUR, W. A. AND CARLSEN E. *The Lung—Clinical Physiology and Pulmonary Function Tests* Chicago Year Book Publishers Inc 1955)

give evidence of even very large pulmonary lesions unless these lesions are not being aerated while still being perfused with blood. Even a pneumonectomy is followed by a normal arterial oxygen saturation in most instances especially if the patient is at rest. In contrast cyanosis may be present (diminished arterial oxygen saturation) when both lungs are *in situ* if a lobe or a lung is defective and not being ventilated while still being perfused with blood such as might occur in atelectasis or in lobar pneumonia.

Whereas even severe exercise does not usually produce cyanosis in a normal sub

ject, exercise may decrease arterial oxygen saturation in the presence of right to left shunts (intracardiac or intrapulmonic), in "functional" shunts, in patients with a sharp reduction in diffusion surface area, and in subjects who cannot adequately increase pulmonary ventilation in proportion to the demands of the exercise. In the absence of intrapulmonary or intracardiac anatomic vascular shunts, a decrease in arterial oxygen saturation during exercise may be taken to indicate significant pulmonary disease.

Arterial carbon dioxide content The arterial carbon dioxide content can be of considerable diagnostic importance, both as regards pulmonary function *per se* and in classifying states of acid-base imbalance. The normal values are given in Figure 190. As was noted in the discussion of acid-base balance (p. 40), an elevation of the total carbon dioxide content of arterial plasma may reflect either pulmonary insufficiency

for the elimination of carbon dioxide (respiratory acidosis), or it may reflect metabolic alkalosis due to the loss of chloride with a compensatory retention of carbon dioxide in the form of bicarbonate, combined largely with sodium. To resolve the question the blood pH may be used, for in respiratory acidosis the value will be depressed and in metabolic alkalosis it will be increased—assuming that in neither case is compensation complete. Therefore, if the blood pH is decreased below normal in the presence of an elevated carbon dioxide tension and content, it indicates that the lungs are no longer capable of eliminating carbon dioxide with sufficient rapidity to prevent respiratory acidosis. Such may develop because of inadequate pulmonary ventilation during anesthesia, because of exhausted soda lime in the rebreathing system, or because of pulmonary emphysema. Conversely, the total arterial carbon dioxide content may be diminished in either respiratory alkalosis (hyperventilation syndrome) (Fig. 194) or metabolic acidosis (Fig. 26). Here again, the measurement of the blood pH is helpful in distinguishing between the two conditions, though the clinical features of the case will usually render accurate interpretation possible without recourse to blood pH measurements, which may not be available.

Except in unusual instances—such as during closed anesthesia where the carbon dioxide is ineffectively removed due to inadequate ventilation, while oxygen is administered in increased concentrations under positive pressure—an increase in carbon dioxide content of the blood resulting from pulmonary insufficiency is virtually always associated with anoxemia. That is, an insufficiency for carbon dioxide elimination is usually accompanied by an insufficiency for oxygen uptake. On the other hand, anoxemia can readily occur without the retention of carbon dioxide. This is because the elimination of carbon dioxide across the capillary membrane proceeds with much greater facility and speed than does the

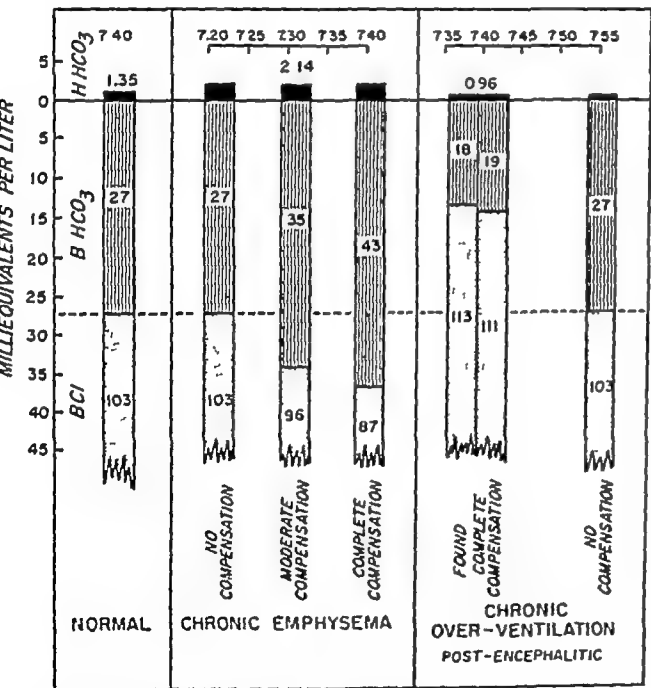


Fig 194. Respiratory acidosis in emphysema (including compensatory adjustments) and respiratory alkalosis in hyperventilation (including compensatory adjustments). Acidosis due to CO₂ retention is compensated for by chloride excretion and base-bicarbonate increase. Alkalosis due to excessive CO₂ excretion is compensated for by chloride retention and base-bicarbonate reduction. (Redrawn from GAMBLE, J. L. *Chemical Anatomy, Physiology, and Pathology of Extracellular Fluid*. Cambridge, Mass., Harvard University Press, 1917.)

uptake of oxygen. Poorly ventilated alveoli result in the blood's leaving the alveoli with an elevated carbon dioxide content and a low oxygen content. Hyperventilated alveoli, on the other hand (Fig. 193), can do no more than saturate the blood with oxygen, whereas they can effect a greater than usual decrease in the blood carbon dioxide concentration. As the blood from poorly ventilated areas mixes with the blood from hyperventilated areas in the pulmonary veins, the unsaturated blood reduces the average arterial oxygen saturation, in contrast the blood with the increased amounts of carbon dioxide mixes with blood from which an unusual amount of carbon dioxide has been removed, resulting in a normal carbon dioxide content or perhaps even a reduced carbon dioxide content.

A low arterial CO_2 tension that is associated with a low O_2 tension may reflect a diffusion problem.

It may be seen, therefore, that the carbon dioxide content of arterial blood may be elevated, normal, or low in patients with pulmonary disease. A normal or even a low level does not necessarily indicate that pulmonary disease may not be present but it does indicate that the individual is still able to eliminate carbon dioxide satisfactorily. If this elimination of carbon dioxide is achieved at the expense of disabling respiratory effort, though then pulmonary sufficiency for the elimination of carbon dioxide has been maintained at the expense of pulmonary disability.

The comparison of the arterial oxygen saturation and carbon dioxide content during the breathing of air and then of pure oxygen can be utilized to give information regarding the over all ability of the lung to perform its mission of saturating the blood with oxygen and eliminating carbon dioxide. Exercise imposes additional stress on this mission and shunts may thus be demonstrated.

ADDITIONAL INDICES OF LUNG FUNCTION

Tidal volume. As stated tidal volume normally ranges from 500 to 600 cc. per re-

spiratory exchange. However, all of this expired air does not reach the ultimate destination, the alveoli, since a portion of it remains in the dead space consisting of the nose, mouth, pharynx, trachea, and bronchi (Fig. 184). Fowler⁸ estimated the dead space at approximately 150 cc for males and 110 cc for females. If the tidal volume is 500 cc and the respiratory dead space in the particular individual in question is 150 cc, then only 350 cc of the inspired air actually reaches the alveoli to participate in the exchange of oxygen and carbon dioxide. Obviously, the individual who is taking shallow respirations reduces the margin between the total volume of the inspired air and the dead space, with a consequent diminution in alveolar ventilation.

Minute volume. The minute volume is the product of the tidal volume and the respiratory rate. If the tidal volume is 500 cc per respiratory cycle and the patient breathes 20 times per minute, the minute volume will be 20×500 or 10 L. If the dead space is equal to 150 cc of each tidal volume, then the volume of alveolar ventilation would be 10 L minus 3 L, or 7 L. On the other hand, if the tidal volume were 1 L and the rate of respiration 10 per minute, the minute volume would be 10 L per minute and the effective alveolar ventilation would be 8.5 L per minute. Thus, the dead space is of importance in both normal and abnormal respiration, and we shall find that it further aggravates the pathophysiology of flail chest and sucking wounds of the thorax.

Vital capacity further comment. It was seen that the vital capacity is the maximum amount of air that can be expelled following the deepest possible inspiration. It varies with age, physical build, and sex and is usually greater in males. It normally ranges from about 3500 to almost 6000 cc, and it is by all odds the most commonly used single test of pulmonary function. If the individual can and does cooperate, then a significant diminution in the vital capacity has clinical significance. Many disease con-

ditions may cause a reduction in the vital capacity, among these are atelectasis (Figs. 180 and 181), bronchial obstruction (Fig 180), pulmonary fibrosis (Fig 207), pulmonary edema (Fig 149), lung cyst (Figs 203 and 204), pleural effusion (Figs 183 and 208), tumors (Fig 202), lung resection, and pneumonia. Nevertheless, a diminished vital capacity does not necessarily mean that parenchymal lung disease is present, since phrenic nerve paralysis or pleural effusion may also reduce the value. Even so, a normal capacity is reassuring as regards total lung volume, whereas a marked reduction in the vital capacity certainly indicates that the patient must be studied carefully before pulmonary surgery is attempted. The timed vital capacity can be abnormal when the untimed value is normal, as in emphysema.

The precise value obtained for the vital capacity varies considerably in different normal subjects, and strongly indicated pulmonary surgery should not be omitted merely because the vital capacity is relatively low. If the vital capacity is only 2 L but pulmonary function is otherwise gen-

erally fair, operation to resect residual tuberculous foci may still be performed, particularly if the portion of lung to be excised is not assisting in respiration. Actually, the diseased lobe or segment may not be ventilated but may still be perfused with blood, thus interfering with respiration by serving as a functional shunt (Fig 188).

It has, again, been noted that the vital capacity may be normal in the presence of extensive pulmonary disease that does not diminish the intrathoracic space, as in emphysema. Therefore, while the vital capacity is an important single measurement of pulmonary status, it alone does not reflect adequately the efficiency of pulmonary reserve. Other indices are required.

Maximum breathing capacity This volume is the maximal volume that can be breathed in 1 minute by the greatest possible voluntary exertion. After one practice or trial effort to allow the subject to determine what tidal volume he will use and what rate of respiration he will employ, he is asked to breathe as deeply and as rapidly as he can through a low resistance system (Fig 195) for 15 seconds. The individual will ordinarily employ only that portion of the vital capacity which is in the intermediate range, since the extremes of the vital capacity require an undue amount of time and effort (Figs 196 and 197). The normal range of the maximum breathing capacity is from about 80 to 120 L/min, women having a smaller maximum breathing capacity than men. Individual variations in the maximum breathing capacity are large, and the variation from the anticipated normal must be great to be significant.

The maximum breathing capacity is not necessarily closely correlated with the vital capacity, for usually the individual will use only a part of the vital capacity in performing the maximum breathing capacity measurement (Fig 197). Actually, the normal individual will ordinarily use a tidal volume of about 50 per cent of the vital capacity, and the rate will vary considerably from about 50 to 70 respirations per minute.

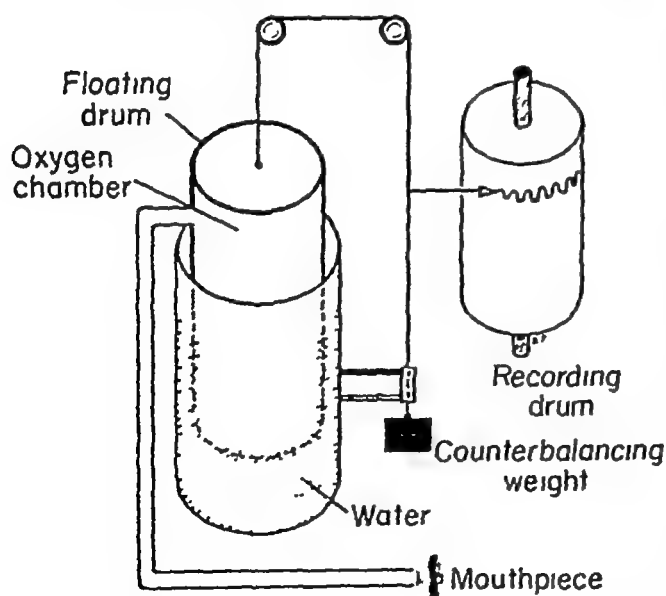


Fig 195 The spirometer and associated apparatus are used to measure various of the lung volumes and capacities. The respiratory excursions are recorded on the drum which revolves at constant speed. By simple calculations the volume of gas moved with each respiration or with a series of respirations over a timed interval can be estimated.

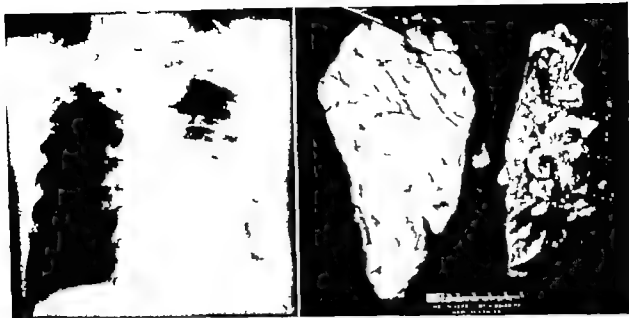


Fig 198 Decortication for chronic empyema. *Left* Left empyema cavity without definite fluid level. *Right* Greatly thickened and fibrous pleural "peel" removed. Not only the lung itself but also the adjacent chest wall may be mobilised by decortication in such cases (see Fig. 197)

It follows that the person with a limited vital capacity but with an ability to breathe rapidly may have as good a maximum breathing capacity as the person who has a normal vital capacity, since both are using only about one half the vital capacity. Thus, the maximum breathing capacity may be normal in instances where the vital capacity is reduced, or, the maximum breathing capacity may be reduced where the vital capacity is normal.

Obstruction of the bronchi or loss of elasticity of the lungs are potent factors in diminishing the maximum breathing capacity conditions which are prominent in emphysema, the emphysematous patient who may have a normal vital capacity generally has a significantly reduced maximum breathing capacity. On the other hand the patient with pulmonary fibrosis may have a maximum breathing capacity that is normal (Fig. 198) but have a low total vital capacity. Again this is due to the fact that the individual with pulmonary fibrosis can breathe rapidly and since in the maximum breathing capacity test only a portion of the normal vital capacity is employed he may produce the same volume of air exchange per minute as a normal individual.

It is important to comprehend the relationships which exist between total vital capacity and timed vital capacity in such different conditions as emphysema, pulmonary fibrosis, and restrictive disease such as chronic empyema.

Exercise tolerance In clinical practice, one of the very best measurements of pulmonary functional reserve is the presence or absence of dyspnea on walking the length of a hallway or in climbing 1 or 2 flights of stairs. If the individual is not unduly dyspneic on moderate exercise (and, of course if he has not been dyspneic at rest), then he will usually withstand satisfactorily the removal of diseased, relatively functionless lung tissue, within reason. Naturally, the greater the amount of pulmonary tissue to be resected, the greater the care with which pulmonary function must be assessed. Ideally, one may use standardized tests such as walking on a treadmill pedaling a stationary bicycle, or repeated mounting and descending from a platform, but ordinary exercise provides a practical compromise.

Bronchspirometry Bronchspirometry is the term applied to the selective measurement of the ventilatory capacity through a single main stem bronchus. With the aid of an appropriate tube which excludes the

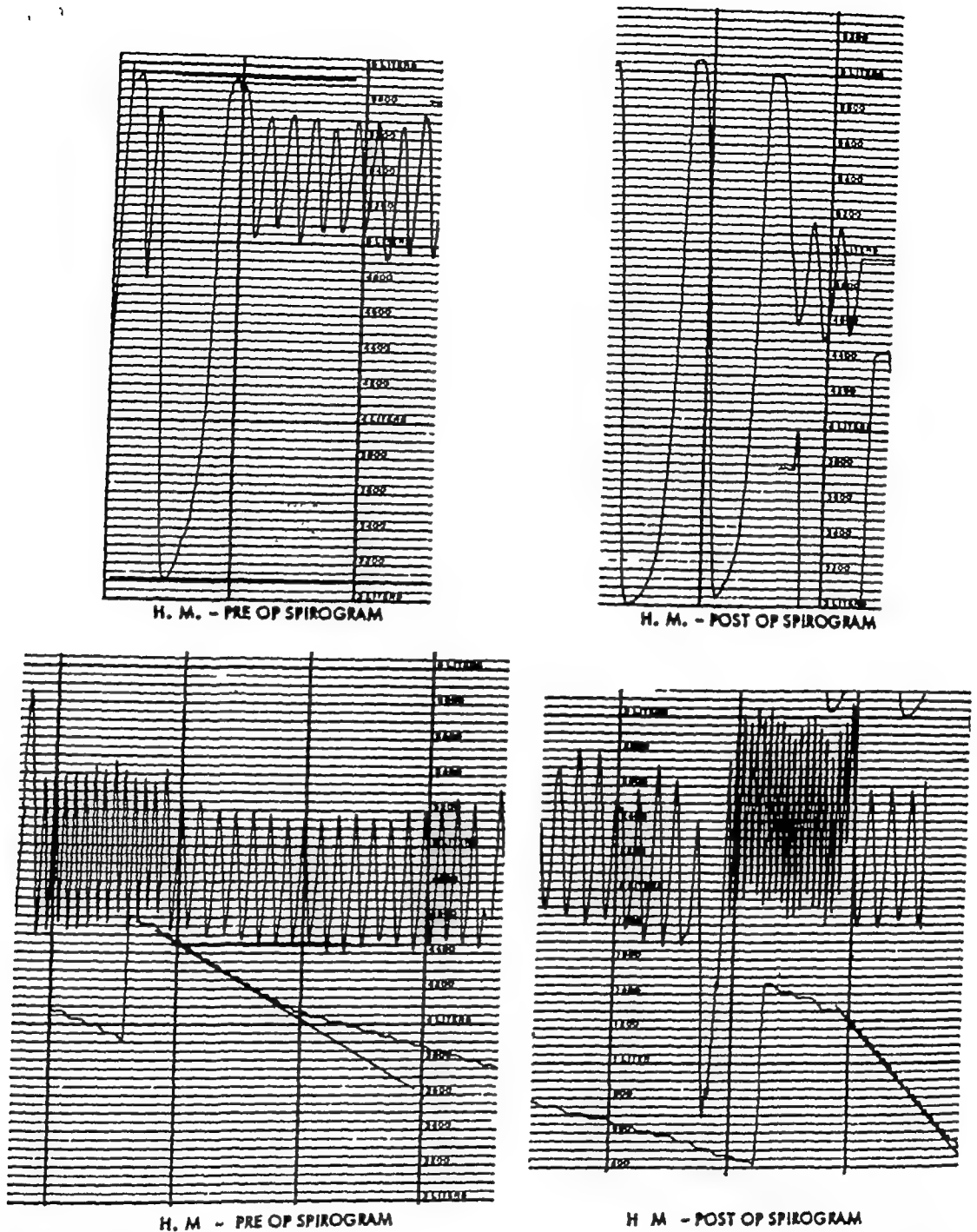


Fig 197 Spirograms of a patient with empyema before and following pulmonary decortication (see Fig 196) In the two spiograms shown above it may be seen that the *timed vital capacity* was not changed much by decortication. However, below it is seen that the *maximal breathing capacity* was considerably improved by operation, as reflected by the much sharper angle of ascent of the straight line summing volume. The improvement in ventilation was considered to be the result of lessened fixation of the thoracic cage on the involved side. (Courtesy of Dr Josef R. Smith)

air from the other main stem bronchus, the actual ventilation from one lung can be measured. This has the obvious advantage of affording evidence regarding the relative contribution of each lung in the total respiratory effort. For example, it may be found that one lung is providing a very small percentage of the total ventilatory effort

and that therefore the removal of this lung will not seriously further diminish the respiratory function of the individual. The oxygen consumption and the CO_2 excreted by each lung is also measured. The right lung usually contributes approximately 55 per cent of the vital capacity and absorbs 55 per cent of the oxygen, the left lung 15

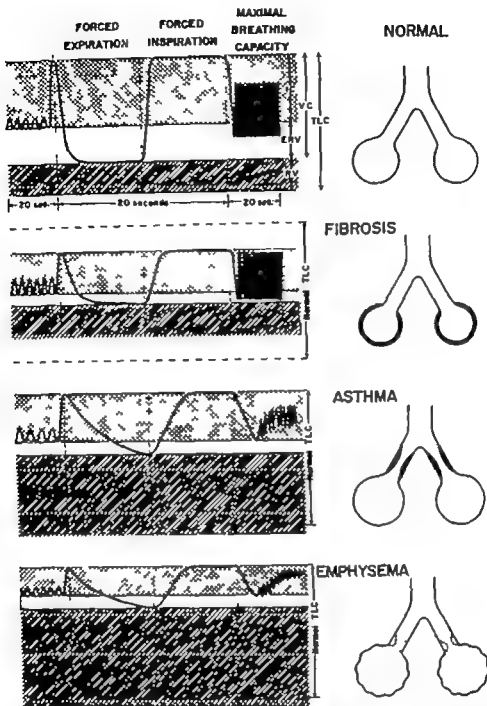


Fig 198 *Pulmonary fibrosis* The residual volume is not greatly altered but the expiratory reserve volume and the total lung capacity are reduced

Asthma There is evidence of air trapping, the timed vital capacity would suggest broncho-stenosis or spasm the expiratory reserve volume is much reduced and the residual volume is much increased

Emphysema. The spirometers exhibit a diminished timed vital capacity there is air trapping due to bronchospasm and stenosis the expiratory reserve volume is much diminished the residual volume is greatly increased. Pulmonary disability and pulmonary insufficiency are both likely to exist. (From COMMON, J. H., JR., FORSTER, R. E., II DUBOIS A. B. BRIDGES, W. A., AND CARLSEN E. *The Lung—Clinical Physiology and Pulmonary Function Tests*. Chicago Year Book Publishers, Inc., 1955)

per cent. Moreover, on the basis of oxygen uptake and ventilation, values for the relative volumes of blood flow can be estimated

While theoretically information obtained

by bronchspirometry should be ideal, in clinical practice the use of this technic has not been very satisfactory, in our experience. The actual performance of broncho-

spirometry is more difficult than the uninitiated might imagine, for it requires earnest cooperation on the part of several individuals, one being the patient. The breathing through the tube is always stenotic breathing (and therefore abnormal), and this makes the accurate interpretation of the spirographic tracings difficult. Moreover, in the critically ill individual where the information would be of the most value, the patient frequently cannot tolerate the asphyxiating effect of introducing the tube. This is particularly true in patients who have not only a diminished pulmonary reserve but who have also abundant pulmonary secretions (tuberculosis, bronchiectasis). The struggles which result from the tube's being placed may largely invalidate the results in most patients.

X-rays and fluoroscopic examination Much information regarding the probable vital capacity can be ascertained from the chest roentgenograms and from fluoroscopic observation of the leaves of the diaphragm during respiration. In the patient with emphysema the leaves of the diaphragm are flat, and the diaphragmatic movement with each respiratory cycle is minimal. Such individuals usually have a diminished ventilatory capacity. In fact, a radiologist who is especially interested in lung function can often predict with much accuracy the values that will be obtained in measuring certain indices of lung function.

Breathing reserve The breathing reserve is defined as the difference between the maximum breathing capacity and minute volume of breathing. For example, if the maximum breathing capacity is 100 L per minute and the minute volume is 10 L per minute, the breathing reserve is 90 L per minute. When this individual exercises vigorously, on the other hand, his minute volume may rise to 70 L and thus his breathing reserve is reduced to 30 L (100 L minus 70 L). It is clear that the breathing reserve may be reduced either because of a decrease in maximum breathing capacity or an increase in

minute volume of breathing. More frequently it is due to the former. According to Comroe and his associates,² the minute volume of resting patients with pulmonary disease rarely exceeds 20 L per minute. The minute volume of breathing at which a patient experiences dyspnea is a useful value clinically.

Spiograms The use of spiograms has been implicit in the foregoing discussion. Tracings may be made of normal breathing, vital capacity, and maximum breathing capacity upon a rapidly moving drum. These provide a permanent record for comparison with later tracings, and they also permit analysis of many characteristics of the breathing pattern. Among the data so derived are the following: (1) The actual and relative periods required for normal inspiration and expiration [Ordinarily expiration requires 1/2 times as long as inspiration, but in the presence of expiratory obstruction (asthma, emphysema) and where the elastic fibers of the lungs are diminished, the expiratory time may be prolonged.] (2) The speed of normal and maximal inspiration and expiration. Normally, the air flow is rapid and results in deep inspiratory and expiratory slopes, with the exception of the terminal portion (Fig 185). In emphysema, however, although the vital capacity may be normal the rate of air flow is slowed throughout—particularly through the latter one-half of expiration, that is, the *timed* vital capacity would be reduced. Cournand and Richards⁴ found that in congestive heart failure the flow was slower for the last few hundred cubic centimeters of *both* inspiration and expiration. (3) Interval for the chest to return to the resting expiratory level, when allowed to return passively to the expiratory position following maximal inspiration. Normally, all the inspired air will be expelled before the next inspiration, but in patients with emphysema or bronchial obstruction this is not so.

Intrapulmonary gas distribution (mixing) Even though the actual ventilation volume of the lungs (from the point of view

empyema. Later on, as it became possible to perform pneumonectomy without the almost routine development of infection in that hemithorax, there arose concern regarding what the ultimate effect of overdistention of the remaining lung would have upon its function, since overdistention of varying degrees did exist where thoracoplasty was not done.

Actually, doubt still exists regarding whether or not thoracoplasty should be routinely done following pneumonectomy (we do not in the routine case), but it is unquestionably true that marked overdistention with emphysema does have certain untoward effects upon the structure and function of the remaining lung. This has been demonstrated with lung function tests.

Yet, in some patients thoracoplasty on one side following pneumonectomy has been shown to have a deleterious effect on the mechanics of ventilation on the opposite side.

THE NUMBER OF PULMONARY LOBES REQUIRED FOR SURVIVAL. As many as 3 of the 5 lobes of the lungs have been excised with "adequate" pulmonary function remaining. Overholt¹⁶ reported 4 patients who had had all but 5½, 6, 7, and 8 segments removed, respectively. These patients had an increased residual volume, a finding considered to be consistent with overdistention and more likely due to hyperinflation than to true emphysema.

THE "PULMONARY CRIPPLE" In choosing between lobectomy and pneumonectomy for carcinoma of the lung, one will be influenced by the pulmonary function. The improvement in "cures" by pneumonectomy does not justify an almost deliberate risk of pulmonary insufficiency, where pneumonectomy is performed in the face of markedly diminished pulmonary reserve, in our opinion. Here lobectomy would be preferable.

Indications and Value of Pulmonary Decortication

As an outgrowth of the experiences during the World War II, it was appreciated that the clot or "peel" which was formed by

the deposition of fibrinous exudate and blood over the surface of the lung could be removed and the lung freed almost entirely in many instances (Fig. 196). This procedure, termed decortication, is now routinely practiced, when indicated. It is most frequently required where the blood of a traumatic hemothorax has been allowed to clot and thus it is advisable to keep the hemithorax as free of blood as possible by beginning aspiration as soon as the patient is seen. If clotting does occur, streptokinase or streptodornase may be employed promptly to liquefy the clot and permit aspiration of the fluid. The use of such aggressive conservative therapy early may often obviate the need for subsequent thoracotomy and decortication. Chronic empyema may also imprison the lung.

At operation the constricting layer may consist of only fibrinous exudate which is just beginning to organize and may be quite thin. On the other hand, the capsule or peel may be extremely leathery and fibrotic, and at times it is extensively calcified. The configuration of the sac, which covers not only the visceral pleura but also the parietal pleura, and which may contain fluid within its cavity, can be visualized by thinking of a collapsed football that has been inserted in the hemithorax and molded over the surface of the lung.

Obviously a dense fibrous material can prevent the lung from reexpanding, but it is often surprising how thin a fibrinous layer can be and still prevent effective expansion of the lung. The pressures which induce lung expansion are indeed delicate ones.

The degree of reexpansion and improvement which follows decortication varies considerably from one patient to another. Therefore, if almost complete reexpansion has been achieved already, surgery will probably gain little or no additional function.

Abnormalities of the Pulmonary Circulation: Further Comment.

To review, the pulmonary circulation differs in certain fundamental aspects from the

systemic circulation Among the more important of these are the following First, the pulmonary arteries carry venous blood, whereas the pulmonary veins carry arterial blood to the left atrium in the normal heart. When one is operating upon the lung, a sudden gush of bright blood generally indicates venous bleeding, cyanotic or dark blood indicates arterial bleeding Second, normally the pressure in the pulmonary artery is only about one-sixth the pressure in the systemic arteries and direct compression will usually control pulmonary hemorrhage The systolic pressure in the pulmonary artery should be somewhat less than 20 mm. Hg, whereas the systolic pressure in the aorta might be on the order of 120 mm. Hg. The diastolic pressure in the pulmonary artery is, of course considerably lower than the systolic pressure (Fig. 127) The development of pulmonary arterial hypertension may so increase the work of the right heart as to produce failure, for rarely the pulmonary pressure may equal systemic pressure Third the pulmonary arterial blood supply is not essential for nutrition of the lung itself this requirement can be performed entirely by the bronchial arteries. That is one can ligate the pulmonary artery to a lung with impunity so far as lung tissue viability is concerned but he cannot ligate all bronchial arteries with impunity Even here however there is some cross supplementation, in that it has been shown that whereas the bronchial arteries are necessary for adequate nourishment of the bronchus near the hilum the pulmonary artery blood may nourish the more distal bronchi.

Blades and his associates¹ studied the effect of occlusion of all pulmonary vessels including the bronchial arteries, for varying periods of time in dogs. They concluded that temporary occlusion of the vessels to one lung produced astonishingly little gross or microscopic change in pulmonary tissue. They felt that this might be of value in the production of a bloodless field for certain types of pulmonary surgery including lung homotransplantation and might also provide useful information in the maintenance

of extracorporeal circulation The important point was, however, that dogs in whom the ischemia to the lung had been maintained for as long as 360 minutes showed, at autopsy from 7 to 34 days later, no characteristic differences between the ischemic lung and the control lung in the given animal. Moreover, wound healing of incisions in the lung appeared to be progressing satisfactorily and normally when animals were sacrificed 14 days after the incision had been made in the ischemic lung.

In a somewhat different study Wyatt, Burke, and Hanlon²³ studied the morphologic effects upon canine lungs of ligation of the pulmonary veins. The pulmonary veins from the right or left lung were divided in 25 dogs. Division of the left pulmonary veins did not result in death but, in contrast, the mortality was high when the right pulmonary veins were divided, though this mortality was obviated by the postoperative administration of penicillin. It was considered possible that the greater severity of reaction following ligation of the right pulmonary veins could have been due to quantitative differences in venous flow on the two sides, since the circulation through the right lung is considered to represent approximately three-fifths of the total pulmonary circulation, as against two fifths through the left lung. In contrast to circumstances in which the pulmonary artery had been ligated, Wyatt and his co-workers found that interruption of the venous drainage from the lung resulted in intense and diffuse capillary congestion and extravasation into the lung. Nevertheless, anatomic study of lungs following ligation of the veins revealed rapid clearance of the blood constituents within 6 weeks without evidence of infarction. At the end of 12 months there was complete expansion of the lung. During this time hypertrophy of the bronchial veins may have occurred to shunt blood to the systemic venous system and thus relieve pulmonary congestion. The bronchial veins which chiefly drain the hilar bronchi and major subdivisions deliver their blood into the azygos hemiazygos, and intercostal veins. These

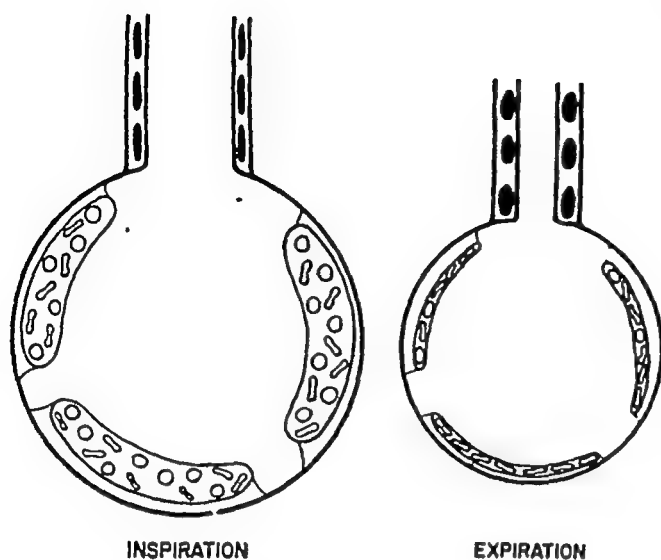


Fig 199 Schema to illustrate the effect of respiration on the pulmonary circulation. The alveolus in inspiration is shown with large volume. Its contained air is indicated by the widely separated dots representing relative rarefaction due to the diminished intra-alveolar pressure. The bronchiole is widely dilated, permitting free access of air into the alveolar chamber. The reduced intra-alveolar pressure permits engorgement of the pulmonary capillaries shown filled with red blood cells. The alveolus in expiration is smaller due to the diminished air volume. The bronchiole is constricted, increasing the resistance to outflow of air. The increased air pressure in the alveolus (suggested by the greater concentration of dots) acts to compress the capillaries and thus increases the resistance to flow through these vessels. (From Rombard, S. Bronchomotor tone—a neglected factor in the regulation of the pulmonary circulation. *Am J Med*, 15: 356, 1953.)

vessels may be enormously dilated in the bronchial mucosa of a patient with pulmonary hypertension. The bronchial veins may therefore serve as collateral flow to return blood by way of the caval system to the right atrium rather than by way of the pulmonary veins to the left atrium. It has been shown that there is a cross communication between pulmonary arterial and bronchial venous flow. In addition to this collateral flow, innumerable pleural adhesions may provide escape of pulmonary arterial blood from the lungs in some patients with pulmonary hypertension.

At pulmonary resection it is preferable, as stated, to ligate the pulmonary artery first and ligate the vein second. The reason for this is that in doing a pneumonectomy,

to ligate the vein first will lead to the entrapment of a considerable volume of blood within the lung before the pulmonary artery is occluded. In contrast, ligation of the pulmonary artery first allows blood to drain from the lung, and one thus does not remove as much blood with the excised lung. Furthermore, the lung that is not congested with blood is far more easily retracted and maneuvered about in the chest to gain exposure than is the congested or the emphysematous lung. Finally, ligation of the pulmonary artery first does not irrevocably commit one to resection, for gangrene will not occur, however, to ligate the pulmonary veins is to risk lung gangrene. Of course, this feature of congestion following initial ligation of the veins takes on decreasing significance as one goes from pneumonectomy, to lobectomy, to segmental resection. In the last there is no particular preference as to which vessel is ligated initially, though the artery is usually taken first.

BRONCHOMOTOR TONE RÔLE IN REGULATION OF PULMONARY CIRCULATION Rodbald¹⁰ reviewed current theories regarding the effects of bronchomotor tone on the pulmonary circulation. The *arteriolar concept* holds that the arterioles of the lung are essentially similar to those of the systemic circulation and that muscular contractions in the walls of these vessels largely regulate circulation through the lungs. Yet, a well established musculature in the walls of these vessels has never been clearly demonstrated, in contrast, there is abundant musculature in the walls of the bronchioles, and many feel that variations in the tone of this abundant musculature may well influence blood flow through the lungs (Fig 199). While in the systemic circuit vasomotor constriction operates to distribute the cardiac output to organs having a variety of functions, it is generally accepted that each part of the lung has the same general function as any other part. Therefore, the shunting of blood through various parts of the lung by arteriolar constriction would appear, if indeed it did exist, to have no particular functional

importance. Furthermore, many of the 'arteriolar' effects previously attributed to vasoconstrictor drugs on the basis of experimental data might also be attributed equally well to the effects of bronchospasm. The weak and contradictory responses of the pulmonary vessels to nerve stimulation and to the administration of drugs provides a rather insecure foundation upon which to ascribe pulmonary blood flow changes to alterations in vascular tone.

In direct contrast to the school which was designated by Rodbard as the 'arteriolar tone school', there exists the 'passivity school' which acknowledges the weak and equivocal responses of the pulmonary circulation to nerve stimulation and to the exhibition of potent response to cardiovascular drugs, this school holds that the lungs are essentially spongelike structures, passively accepting the right ventricular output. "The blood flows passively downhill through the pulmonary vascular bed to the lower pressure of the left auricle." Even here, however, there are data which are difficult to harmonize with this theory. The pulmonary arterial pressure (normally from 10 to 25 mm. Hg with a mean of about 15 mm. Hg) may range from 30 to 80 mm. Hg mean pressure in patients with mitral valvular disease, congenital heart disease or in chronic cor pulmonale. One would expect that were this entire load to be thrown on the pulmonary capillary bed pulmonary edema would quickly ensue. Of course it can and often does ultimately ensue in these conditions but for many months and even years it may not do so. Therefore there must exist some mechanism to prevent the full head of pulmonary arterial pressure from being thrust upon the capillaries in the alveolar walls. If increased arteriolar tone is not to be implicated in this circumstance then Rodbard suggests the possibility that this head pressure is stepped-down by increased bronchiolar tone. Thus is not to deny that in the presence of chronic pulmonary hypertension definite changes do occur in the walls of the vessels comprising the pulmonary arteriolar

bed, but such organic structural changes in the walls of vessels do not appear until pulmonary arterial hypertension has persisted for some time. Meanwhile, some mechanism would seem to be necessary to prevent pulmonary edema, the fluid in the alveolus represents the balance between alveolar capillary hydrostatic pressure and alveolar capillary colloid osmotic pressure—and the latter cannot be expected to increase significantly.

By way of explaining how changes in bronchiolar tone might prevent development of pulmonary edema in the presence of pulmonary arterial hypertension, let it be recalled that positive pressure breathing is often efficacious in the treatment of pulmonary edema presumably by exerting an opposite pressure, forcing the fluid in the alveoli back into the pulmonary venous return to the left heart. It is suggested that during spontaneous recovery from pulmonary edema a contraction of the bronchioles produces air entrapment in the alveoli, resulting in an intrinsic positive pressure which similarly forces transudate back into the alveolar capillaries. Parenthetically, it may be mentioned here that bronchospasm has long been considered to play a major rôle in the physiology and symptomatology (including pulmonary hypertension and subsequent cor pulmonale) of bronchial asthma, this is one instance in which bronchospasm probably does influence the flow of blood through the lungs.

Regardless of its ultimate validity, the bronchiolar tone concept helps to make rational certain data derived during the treatment of chronic cor pulmonale. As emphasized by Rodbard if the airways could be opened and the entrapped air be permitted to escape, much of the disability of chronic cor pulmonale would be dissipated. Actually, potent bronchodilators such as aminophylline and ephedrine have been shown to reduce the pulmonary arterial pressure despite an increase in cardiac output and a marked reduction in pulmonary vascular resistance is evident.

Since it is generally accepted that bronchospasm contributes significantly to the symptomatology exhibited by the asthmatic, Rodbaird suggested that bronchiolar constriction may be one cause of the increased pressure in the pulmonary artery and its minor subdivisions, apparently to protect the pulmonary capillary bed from an increased pressure. That asthmatic attacks have a large emotional element is also accepted, and Daly, Lambertsen, and Schweitzer⁵ have presented evidence for the direct central control of bronchomotor tone, mediated through the vagus nerves. Therefore, while in pulmonary hypertension an organic element may exist in the form of medial and later intimal vascular thickening which may progress almost to occlusion of the smaller pulmonary vessels, a spastic element may be superimposed in the form of spasm of the bronchioles which in turn influences blood flow.

Tussive syncope Fainting may follow a paroxysm of coughing in older emphysematous patients, and it has been suggested that this is the result of increased intra-alveolar pressure with back-stasis of blood in the systemic circulation leading to diminished cardiac output, similar to that produced by the Valsalva maneuver. The reduced cardiac output results in hypotension, which in turn results in cerebral anoxia and fainting. Cessation of coughing allows the intrapulmonary hypertension to diminish, with the result that cardiac output rises and consciousness is restored.

Acute pulmonary edema This complication is particularly likely to occur under circumstances which predispose to left heart failure or to left atrial hypertension. Systemic arterial hypertension and myocardial infarction are especially common causes of the former, and mitral stenosis and mitral insufficiency are likely to cause the latter. Hormonal imbalance with sodium and water retention predisposes to pulmonary congestion. During operation, overtransfusion or excessive metabolic demands such as can occur in less than optimally

controlled thyrotoxicosis may precipitate pulmonary edema. A pheochromocytoma may do the same. Excessive blood transfusion is a particular hazard following pneumonectomy and should be scrupulously avoided.

The onset of pulmonary edema is signaled by the appearance of excessive watery secretions in the endotracheal tube, perhaps associated with a fall in blood pressure. Auscultation of the chest reveals widespread râles, most marked in dependent areas. If the process continues, the clear secretions in the endotracheal tube become pink and frothy and virtually boil out of the tube when it is disconnected for suction. Without effective treatment at this stage the condition may soon terminate fatally.

Management consists of positive pressure oxygen therapy, elevation of the trunk, venous tourniquets to the extremities, aminophylline given intravenously, digitalis if indicated, and repeated catheter suction of the trachea. Of these, the first is perhaps the most efficacious.

PULMONARY ARTERIOVENOUS SHUNTS (FIGS 174 AND 192) These defects were mentioned earlier. Although the presence of arteriovenous shunts bypassing the capillary circulation had been suspected from the passage of certain parasites through the lungs, Printzmetal and his associates¹⁸ were the first to demonstrate the passage of glass beads through the lungs of dogs and rabbits, and Tobin and Zariquey²¹ demonstrated this in man. The latter workers used fresh normal human lungs from 20 adults and 3 newborn infants which were perfused until they were almost free from blood. Several hundred small glass spheres ranging from 10 to 750 μ in diameter were then added to the perfusion. Spheres up to 500 μ in diameter were recovered in the perfusate from 9 adult and 2 neonatal lungs. Spheres larger than 500 μ were lodged in the arteries. By radiographs of lungs injected with radiopaque media, it was shown that shunts up to 500 μ in diameter are located near the apex of the lobes, shunts up to 200 μ in di-

anometer were found at lower levels and were occasionally present in the pleura.

Signs and symptoms If the shunt is significant in size, the common findings are those of *cyanosis* (due to the passage of un-oxygenated blood directly from a pulmonary artery into a pulmonary vein) *clubbing* of the fingers and toes and usually, *polycythemia*. A murmur may be heard and there may be a familial history of *hemorrhagic telangiectasis*. An increased density may be seen on the plain roentgenogram and if angiography is done the density may further increase indicating that blood is flowing through it. Of course, an arteriovenous fistula may exist which is not sufficiently large to shunt enough blood to cause clubbing of the fingers or polycythemia.

It has been pointed out that cyanosis in functional pulmonary arteriovenous shunts is due to the passage of blood through poorly ventilated lung tissue. An important point in diagnosis is that the breathing of 100 per cent oxygen will not raise the peripheral arterial oxygen saturation to normal if an A-V shunt of significant size is present.

The treatment of true pulmonary arterio-

venous fistula consists of excision of the lesion, usually with a portion of the surrounding lung.

PULMONARY EMBOLISM (FIG 200) This condition remains one of the outstanding unsolved problems in surgical practice. First, it is not a catastrophe that befalls only surgical patients, it is common in medical patients as well. A second point of importance is that *sudden death occurs in only about one fifth of the patients with this disease*. Towbin²² conducted an autopsy survey at the Columbus State Hospital in Columbus, Ohio. Between September 1, 1949, and January 1, 1954, 881 deaths occurred. Postmortem examinations were performed in 512 cases (58 per cent). Of the 512 cases studied at autopsy, thromboembolic lesions were present in the lung in 132 (25.7 per cent). Massive pulmonary embolism was the cause of death in 73 cases (14.2 per cent). Occlusion occurred in arteries of medium caliber in 18 cases (3.5 per cent). Well established infarcts of the lung were noted in 60 subjects, representing 45 per cent of the cases in which there was embolic disease of the



Fig 200 Left A pulmonary embolus. The mechanism of death following small emboli is obscure. Massive emboli may occlude the pulmonary artery to produce fatal cor pulmonale. Right An infarct of the lateral segment of the right middle lobe.

lung In many instances rapid death did not permit the development of definite infarction The most frequent site of embolization was the right lower lobe, being involved in 61 per cent of the cases in which there were thromboembolic lesions, though usually there were concurrent emboli in other lobes

Towbin divided the clinical patterns of pulmonary embolism into three main categories: *sudden death, a subacute course, and a chronic pattern* Sudden death occurred in 24 (18 per cent) of the patients in this study who had thromboembolic lesions in the lung Although the author noted that these cases demonstrated clinically the textbook picture of sudden and unexpected death, the attending physicians at the time often diagnosed coronary occlusion At autopsy it was found that 18 of this group had large, coiled, loosely impacted emboli in one or more of the lobal arteries In 6 instances of sudden death, emboli in medium sized pulmonary arteries constituted the principal finding at autopsy, in accord with the finding of de Takats and Jessor⁶ that patients may die from a small embolus obstructing an insignificant area of the lung (due to the initiation of widespread autonomic reflexes?) If widespread spasm of the pulmonary arteries occurs to the degree that may be observed in the arterial spasm of the lower extremity following occlusion of a relatively minor branch, then it is of course possible that spasm of the entire pulmonary arterial tree could account for sudden anoxic death This has never been proved

In Towbin's series the subacute clinical pattern was observed in 55 cases, or 42 per cent of the deaths associated with pulmonary embolism and in 11 per cent of deaths occurring in all cases in which autopsy was performed in this study While there may have been an extensive pulmonary infarction in these patients, death did not occur for from several days to even a few weeks This is in sharp distinction to the generally held opinion that massive pulmonary embolism usually causes sudden death Towbin's study indicates that, on the contrary, mas-

sive pulmonary embolism may cause a *terminal illness which is prolonged over several days, and that this sequence is more common than that of sudden death* All clinicians have seen such cases, patients who were obviously mortally stricken at the outset but who survived for several days The following case is illustrative

Case study A middle-aged man was convalescing from exploratory laparotomy and biopsy of widespread pancreatic carcinoma when, 10 days postoperatively, he suddenly became cyanotic and apprehensive, and developed tachycardia Though in shock, he was completely rational The veins of the neck gradually became distended and the face suffused The electrocardiogram was within normal limits It was considered likely that the diagnosis was that of massive pulmonary embolism, which was proved at autopsy when he died approximately 3 days after the episode

This patient revived the question of pulmonary arterial embolectomy, since there was ample time for thoracotomy However, in 2 subsequent cases, both proved at autopsy, emergency angiography failed to demonstrate the site of the embolus

Finally, a chronic terminal illness was present in 53 (40 per cent) of Towbin's patients with thromboembolic lesions in the lung It was apparent that repeated embolization had occurred over a considerable period of time, and that pulmonary embolism had not represented merely the terminal event In 22 cases in this group there was massive pulmonary artery occlusion, these being mainly cases of ununited fracture of the femur in severely debilitated patients with large decubitus ulcers Femoral ven thrombi were usually found In this connection, Laufer and Gray¹¹ reported 2 cases of organized thrombus occluding a main pulmonary artery, and such a case was autopsied in our hospital

Pulmonary embolism is, again, not merely a sudden postoperative phenomenon, it often occurs repeatedly and may eventually cause pulmonary hypertension Towbin

found that the incidence increased with age and that, for some reason not readily apparent, it was more common in women than in men (34 per cent as against 20 per cent). In addition, it was noteworthy that patients with preexisting pulmonary disease appeared to suffer more severely from embolism than did patients with the same degree of embolism who had had no antecedent pulmonary disease. This of course again raises the question of whether or not these patients die of acute right heart failure, since lung disease might reduce the vascular bed and predispose to pulmonary hypertension. In conflict with the hypothesis of acute pulmonary hypertension and cor pulmonale as the cause of death, however, was the report of Selzer and Bradley.²⁰ They were performing cardiac catheterization when massive pulmonary embolism with shock occurred. The pressure in the pulmonary artery did not rise, it fell, and they suggested that peripheral (reflex?) failure is the cause of shock in pulmonary embolism.

The cause of the fatal shock following pulmonary embolism remains obscure.

Acute and Chronic Pulmonary Emphysema

The term "chronic" is used here to differentiate the disease under discussion from "acute" pulmonary emphysema which is due to the ball valve effect of incomplete occlusion of a bronchus as from adenoma. The latter type of obstruction allows air to enter as the bronchus dilates on inspiration, but the air is expired with difficulty. This causes overdistention of that portion of the lung supplied by the bronchus until the bronchus is completely obstructed even during inspiration and atelectasis results (Fig. 180).

The etiology of chronic pulmonary emphysema has not been clearly determined but it is known to follow chronic cough, chronic bronchial infection, bronchospasm such as is commonly observed in bronchial asthma and other less well defined entities such as 'senile degeneration. The residual lung volume is increased (Fig. 198), and

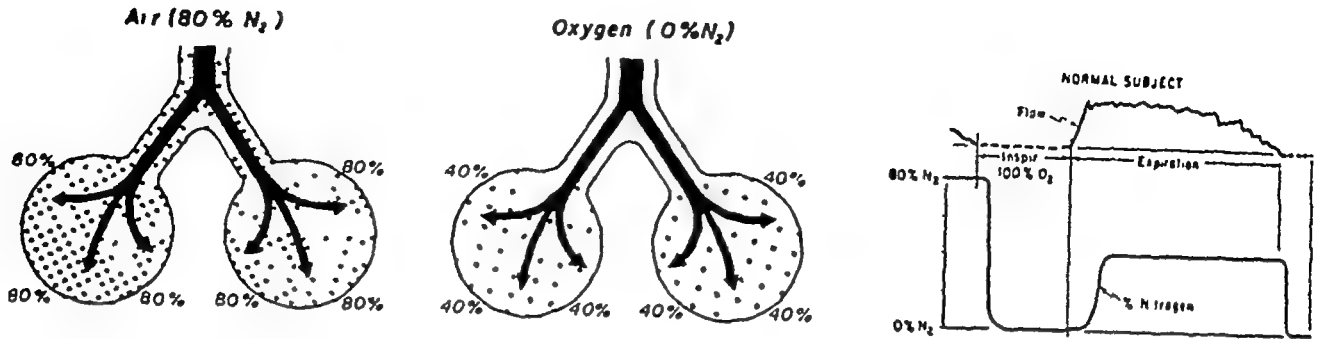
poor gas mixing may be present (Fig. 201). Carbon dioxide is not properly eliminated and respiratory acidosis (Fig. 194) may ensue, as will cyanosis due to reduced arterial oxygen saturation.

The emphysema may be expressed pathologically as diffuse hypertrophic emphysema, subpleural bullae and blebs, localized degeneration commonly referred to as 'cotton-candy lung,' or a combination of these. Most workers feel that the elastic framework of the lung is weakened and that the intrapleural pressure more nearly approaches atmospheric pressure, due to the diminished elastic recoil of the lung. Bronchostenosis and obstruction result in overdistention of the alveoli with resulting rupture of many of them which coalesce to form larger spaces, this may eventually result in a vast diminution in the total respiratory membrane surface available for the passage of oxygen into the capillary blood stream and for the escape of carbon dioxide. A further result of this process is the obliteration of the capillary bed in the destroyed alveoli, with resulting diminished circulation through the lungs, this predisposes to the development of pulmonary hypertension and cor pulmonale (Fig. 149). Operation upon an emphysematous lung is frequently difficult because the lung will not collapse sufficiently to permit good exposure of the hilar structures. The development of respiratory acidosis under anesthesia must be carefully guarded against.

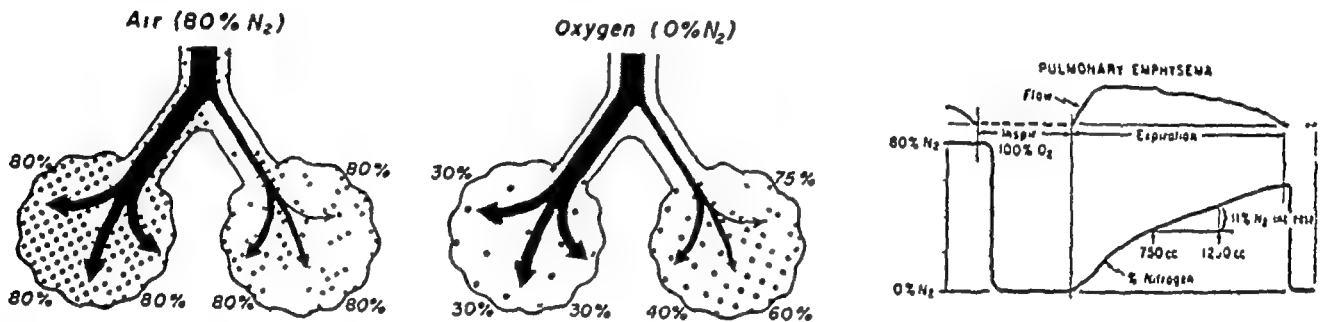
RELATIONSHIP OF ARTERIAL HYPOXEMIA TO DISABILITY IN EMPHYSEMA. The relationship of arterial hypoxemia to disability and to cor pulmonale with congestive failure in patients with chronic pulmonary emphysema was studied by Miller Fowler, and Helmholtz.²⁴ In 240 patients with chronic diffuse obstructive emphysema the values for arterial oxygen saturation were recorded by oximetry with the patient at rest, during exercise, and breathing 90 to 95 per cent oxygen. Half of this group maintained normal values for arterial oxygen saturation, even after exercise to the limit of their tolerance,

DISTRIBUTION OF INSPIRED GAS

UNIFORM DISTRIBUTION



NON-UNIFORM DISTRIBUTION



DISTRIBUTION OF INSPIRED GAS

Fig 201 Impaired gas mixing constitutes a major defect in the pathogenesis of chronic pulmonary emphysema (From COMROE, J H, JR, FORSTER, R E, II, DUBOIS, A B, BRISCOE, W A, AND CARLSEN, E *The Lung—Clinical Physiology and Pulmonary Function Tests* Chicago, Year Book Publishers, Inc, 1955)

while 23 per cent had hypoxemia at rest. In an additional 27 per cent whose arterial oxygen saturation was normal at rest, hypoxemia developed during a standard exercise tolerance test. It was found that although the incidence of hypoxemia was greater in patients with marked clinical disability, the presence or absence of hypoxemia did not govern the degree of disability in the individual case. Many patients with hypoxemia had fairly good tolerance for exercise, whereas numerous patients with normal arterial oxygen saturation had severe exertional dyspnea. On the other hand, cor pulmonale with congestive heart failure, when present, occurred almost exclusively among patients who had either transient or persistent hypoxemia, and the incidence was greatest among those patients with persistent hypoxemia. Conversely, only 1 case of hypoxemia and cor pulmonale occurred among 118 patients in whom normal values

for arterial oxygen saturation were recorded at rest.

A basic problem in this disease is that of achieving adequate pulmonary ventilation without excessive physical effort (*i.e.*, respiratory "sufficiency" without respiratory "disability").

TREATMENT OF CHRONIC PULMONARY EMPHYSEMA In general, no truly satisfactory therapy exists, though considerable symptomatic relief may be provided. Medical measures consist of bronchodilators, positive pressure breathing, abstinence from smoking, and treatment of pulmonary infection. Surgical measures have included excision of large cysts and bullae, and vagal neurectomy. The value of the latter is unproved.

Intrathoracic Tumors (Fig. 202)

The principal physiologic disturbance that may be produced by intrathoracic tu-



Fig 203 Above X-ray showing huge right mediastinal mass which proved to be a lymphoma. The total lung volume (and vital capacity) were considerably reduced. *Below* The surface of the tumor was traversed by many vessels, from which it gained its parasitic existence. Such lesions often appear to be in part within the lung parenchyma, but usually a plane of cleavage can be established which permits ready separation of the lung from the surface of the tumor. Lung volume and function were much improved following surgery.

mois are (1) obstructive emphysema of the lung supplied by the partially occluded involved bronchus, followed by atelectasis and perhaps associated infection when bronchial occlusion by the growth is complete, (2) changes in lung function caused by diminished total lung capacity and vital capacity, (3) involvement of surrounding structures, such as the phrenic, sympathetic, or recurrent laryngeal nerve, (4) associated pleural effusion or esophageal involvement with dysphagia, perhaps leading to a broncho-esophageal fistula, (5) anemia due both to actual blood loss through hemoptysis or hemothorax and to an influence upon the red cell's life cycle, (6) distant effects such as clubbing, periostitis, and joint manifestations (p 181), and (7) toxemia due to necrosis and other less comprehensible factors which produce "malignant cachexia."

Lung Cysts

Various classifications of lung cysts have been offered, and there is still considerable disagreement as to precisely how the cysts arise. For present purposes, however, the simple classification of congenital pulmonary cysts *versus* acquired pulmonary cysts will suffice.

Congenital pulmonary cysts may be of the bronchogenic variety which are lined with bronchial epithelium but do not necessarily connect with a bronchus. However, such cysts frequently do communicate with a bronchus and may be filled with fluid which is periodically disgorged. When these cysts become infected they may be considered lung abscesses until removed. They may be solitary or multiple. Some disappear spontaneously.

There is a second type of congenital cyst which is particularly likely to be found in the newborn, and this is the large balloon-like cyst or pneumatocele. Respiratory distress may be a prominent feature in these infants, and excision of the cyst or the involved portion of the lung may be required to permit the remainder of the lung to expand.

Finally, there may be combination of both types.

Acquired pulmonary cysts usually take the form of bullous emphysema or pleural blebs. Acquired "cysts" may follow pneumonitis in infants, these usually clear with conservative therapy.

As indicated, the pathophysiologic changes which accompany lung cysts are due to infection, to diminished lung volume, to pressure of the expanded cysts on surrounding pulmonary tissue, and to rupture of a subpleural bleb causing spontaneous pneumothorax. It was formerly believed that spontaneous pneumothorax was usually caused by tuberculosis, but it is now accepted that the usual cause is the rupture of a subpleural bleb. Pneumonitis may develop from spillage of cyst fluid.

The infected lung cyst should be evacuated (Figs 203 and 204). Spontaneous pneumothorax is first treated conservatively by aspiration of the air, and, if repeated aspiration is necessary, by the institution of underwater catheter drainage with suction to expand the lung. If two or more attacks of spontaneous pneumothorax have occurred, it may be elected to perform thoracotomy and excise the cystic area which frequently is obvious and often at the apex, to prevent recurrence; one may strip the parietal pleura over the area to produce pleural symphysis. Some surgeons also introduce an irritant substance such as iodinated talcum powder to produce an inflammatory reaction which will further promote pleural symphysis.

The management of cystic disease of the lung where the cyst is not solitary—and especially where cystic disease involves a large portion of both lungs—presents a very difficult problem. In fact, this condition may be so extensive as to merit the common name of "vanishing lung." Under these circumstances it is not possible to excise most even a significant portion of the cystic lung without unduly compromising the remaining pulmonary reserve. These patients usually become pulmonary cripples and defy successful therapy of any type.



Fig 203 Left Congenital lung cyst with air-fluid level. The cyst had become infected
Right Patient 1 week after operation. The specimen is shown in Figure 204. She has remained well.

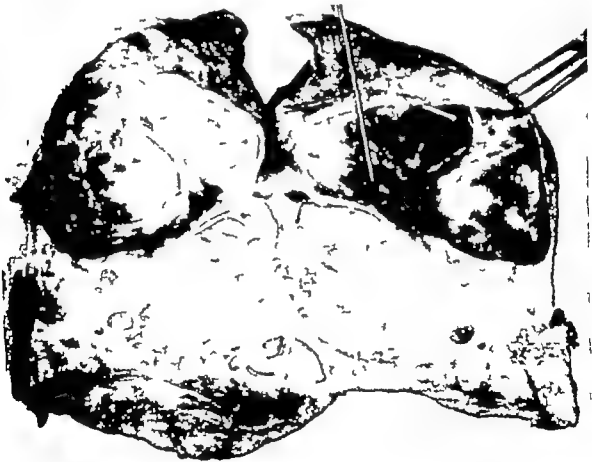


Fig 204 Left lung excised. The entire organ was riddled with cysts of various sizes. Four separate systemic arteries arose from the aorta near the diaphragm and entered this lung in addition to the distribution of the left pulmonary artery. To sever these systemic arteries inadvertently in dividing the inferior pulmonary ligament can result in brisk hemorrhage.

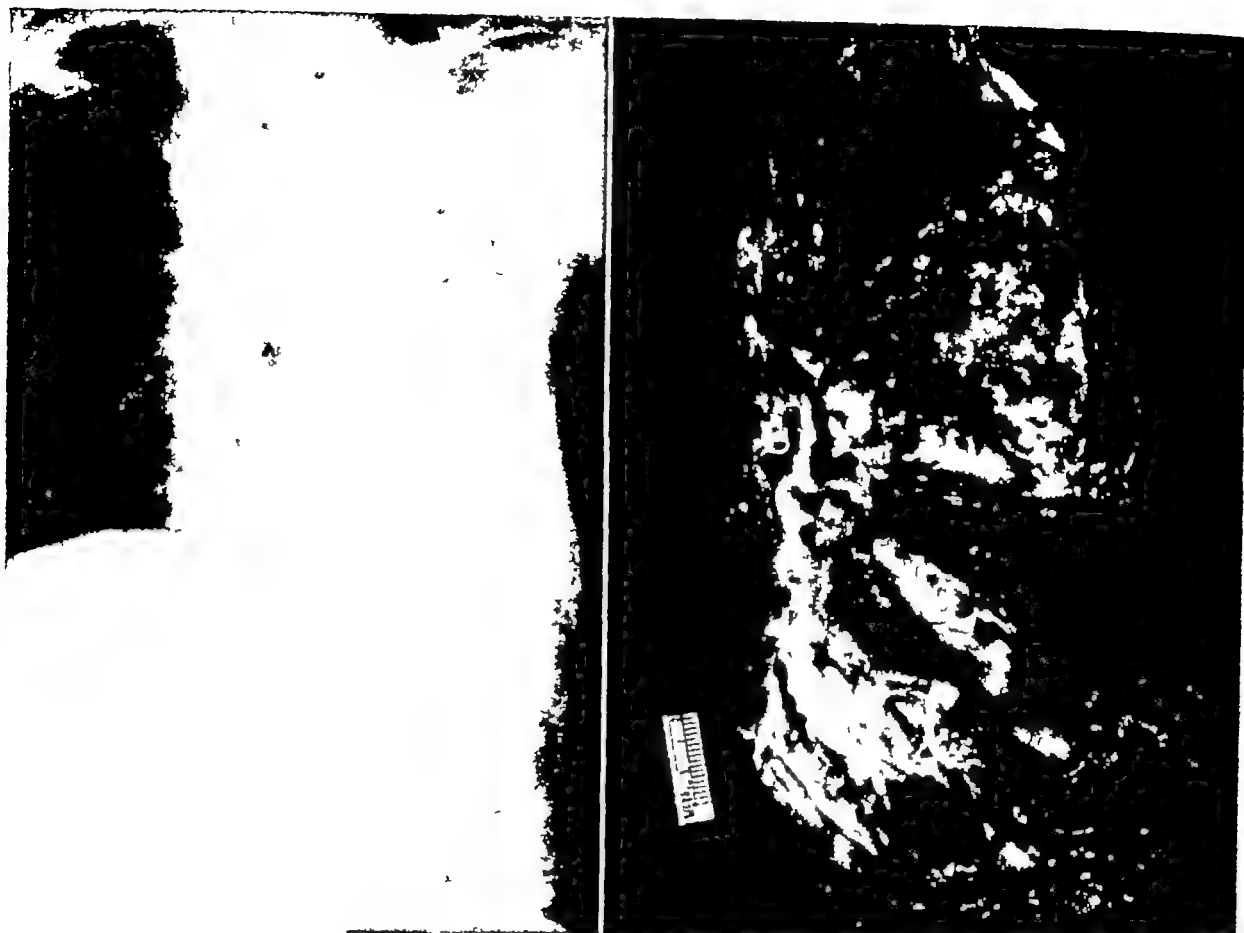


Fig 205 Left Bronchogram in adult female showing generalized bronchiectasis of left lung. Copious sputum and constant infection. The left lung was of little aid in respiration, in fact, it acted as a "functional shunt," since it was still perfused with blood, whereas the alveoli remaining were poorly ventilated. Yet, she was not cyanotic at rest. Vital capacity and maximum breathing capacity were diminished. *Right* Excised left lung showing consolidation of upper lobe and extensive bronchiectasis of lower bronchi. This lung was essentially useless in respiration, and pulmonary function was not impaired by removing this site of chronic suppuration.

Chronic Pulmonary Infection: Bronchiectasis, Lung Abscess, and Tuberculosis

The derangements in normal physiology which result from chronic pulmonary infection are due, first, to the systemic effects of infection *per se* and, second, to the structural alterations produced locally that influence pulmonary function. Bronchiectasis (Fig 205) and lung abscess (Fig 206), often referred to as "suppurative disease," are prone to develop following neoplastic bronchial obstruction, or perhaps following aspiration of foreign material, or distal to bronchostenosis due to cicatricial change. Both diseases may be associated with considerable surrounding pneumonitis and, eventually, pulmonary fibrosis and atelectasis. The usual signs of sepsis may be anticipated.

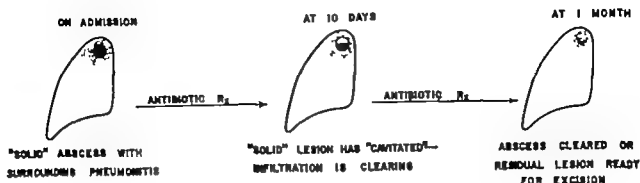
Tuberculosis, on the other hand, is above all a chronic, fibrosing process which may destroy a large portion of the pulmonary tissue. Patients with bilateral, far advanced, widespread disease exhibit markedly reduced lung function and, not infrequently, cor pulmonale and right heart failure.

Clubbing of the fingers and toes may be a manifestation of almost any chronic lung infection or process, including that of fungoid disease (Fig. 207).

In each of these diseases—suppurative bronchiectasis, lung abscess, and tuberculosis—it is important to comprehend the natural history of the process, for such knowledge is all but indispensable to intelligent diagnosis and management. The terms acute, subacute, and chronic can represent highly important distinctions with respect

LUNG ABSCESS VS TUBERCULOSIS RATES OF HEALING

LUNG ABSCESS



TUBERCULOSIS

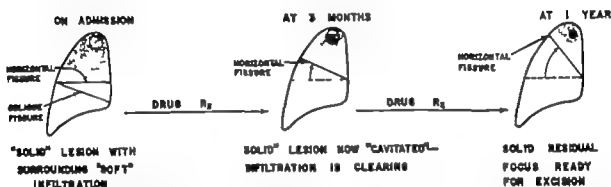


Fig 206 The hallmark of tuberculosis is its chronicity. It heals by fibrous scar. If an undiagnosed cavity diminishes rapidly under antibiotic therapy it probably represents a suppurative abscess rather than tuberculosis. Lung abscess is more common in the lower lobe and tuberculosis in the upper lobe.



Fig 207 This patient had extensive bilateral pulmonary infiltration as seen on x-ray and, after repeated investigation in several medical centers, she underwent lung biopsy for diagnosis. Bacterologic studies were negative but histologic studies were suggestive of either histoplasmosis or of perivascular cellular infiltration due to an irritative process. She lived in an area where *Histoplasma capsulatum* was endemic, but she had also been frequently exposed to chemicals used for cotton defoliation and as insecticides. She was usually dyspneic only on moderate exercise but at times this seemed more marked immediately preceding menstruation. Note the clubbing of fingers and toes. She had extensive inflammatory pulmonary fibrosis of moderate degree. She was not cyanotic and polycythemia was not present. The vital capacity was reduced. The heart subsequently enlarged.

LEFT HYPERTENSIVE PYOPNEUMOTHORAX

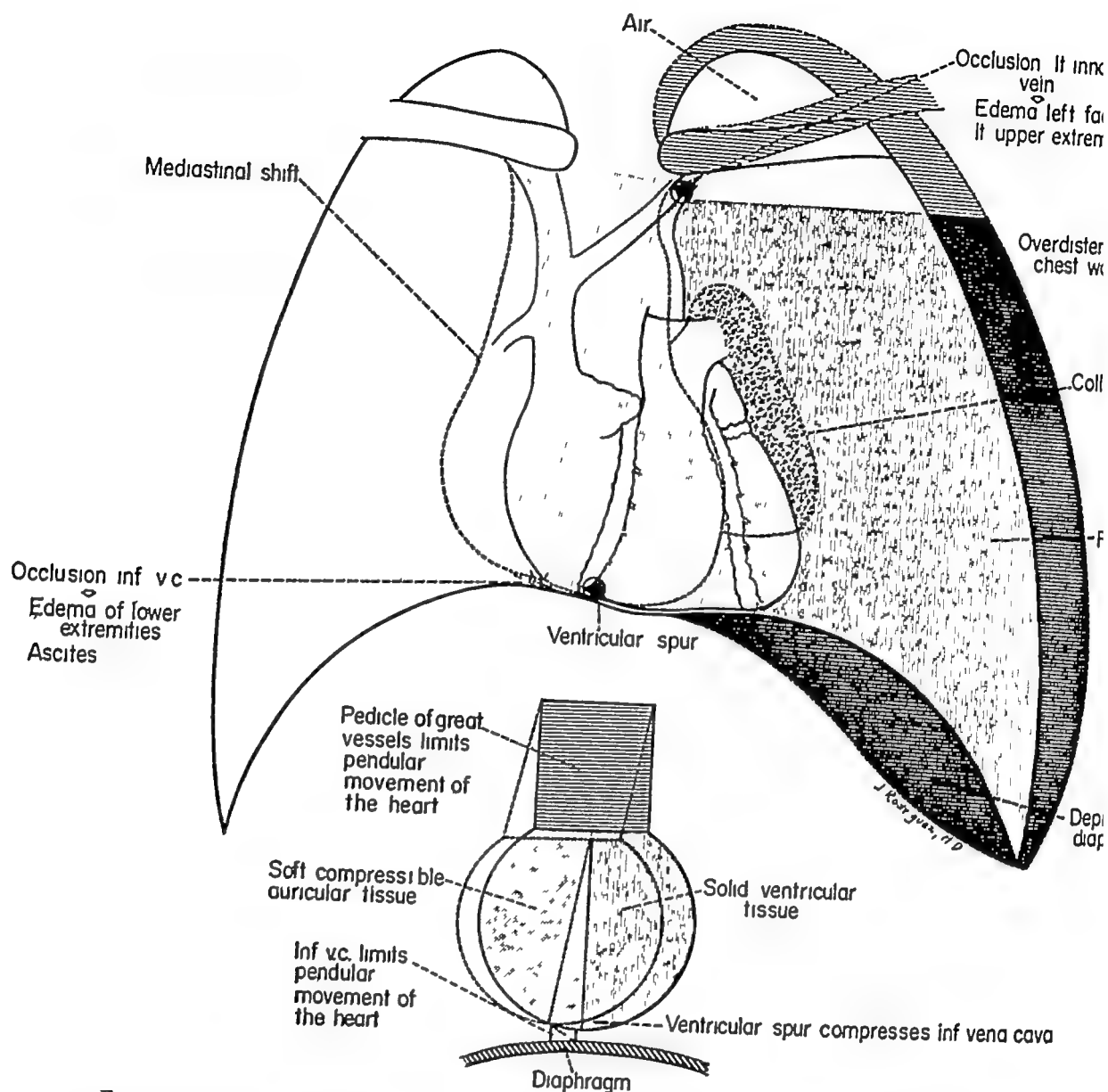


Fig 208 In this diagram are presented the clinical findings in an adult male who was admitted with a severe left pyopneumothorax. Also indicated are the probable mechanisms by which selective edema of the left upper one-half of the body and the lower extremities was produced; there was no edema of the right face and arm. It appeared probable that the left innominate vein had been occluded at the point indicated, while the right innominate vein remained patent. The inferior vena cava was compressed by the ventricular spur as it shifted to the right. Most significant, within a few hours after left thoracentesis the edema of the left face and arm and that of the lower extremities had largely subsided. The severe cardiopulmonary symptoms had also diminished. This case documents the effects of positive intrathoracic pressure, not only is the lung collapsed, but there is also an interference with the venous return to the right atrium.

to prognosis and required therapy. In Figure 206 it may be seen that a tuberculous cavity and a lung abscess cavity present many kinetic and therapeutic similarities. In the former, one treats the acute "abscess" and surrounding exudative disease with strepto-

mycin or isoniazid and para-aminosalicylic acid (PAS), in the latter, penicillin in massive doses is used. If treatment is successful, the pneumonic or infiltrative element in both diseases clears and the cavity diminishes in size—though this process may

expected to proceed far more rapidly in lung abscess than in tuberculosis, a point of diagnostic aid in doubtful cases. As time passes, the natural healing process of fibrosis and scar formation may entirely replace the cavity in either disease, or only a residual focus may remain. At this point the lung abscess is said to be "chronic" and the tuberculosis is said to have "stabilized" indicating that the time may have come to excise the remaining disease, which can now be done safely. As with peptic ulcer, surgery in tuberculosis and lung abscess is usually reserved for excision of disease remaining after medical therapy. And time is required to establish "intractability to further medical therapy." If the acute lung abscess is aggressively treated before fibrous tissue has surrounded it, more than two-thirds of such cases will not require surgery.

Thoracic Trauma

HEMOTHORAX, HYDROTHORAX, PNEUMOTHORAX, FLAIL CHEST DUE TO MULTIPLE RIB FRACTURES, AND SUCKING WOUNDS. Several aspects of thoracic trauma were described in Chapter 1, and are presented in Figures 1, 181, 183, 203, and 209. In general, most of these conditions interfere with normal lung expansion, either through occupying intrathoracic space or by rendering it impossible to achieve the negative intrathoracic pressure during inspiration that is required to expand the lungs. Pleural effusion, blood, and air compress the lung on the involved side and also displace the mediastinum to the opposite side partially to compress the second lung—if the mediastinum has not been fixed by previous inflammation. When any doubt exists and there is not time to get a chest x ray because of severe respiratory

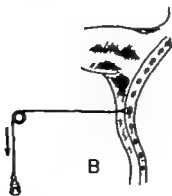
STABILIZATION OF THE CHEST WALL



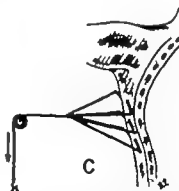
Flail chest as a result of fractured ribs



A STRAPPING



B RIB TRACTION



C SOFT TISSUE TRACTION

Fig 209 Temporary strapping of the fractured ribs to secure immobilization and improve respiration is often highly expedient. Nevertheless, some type of traction or other means of rib fixation in normal position should be substituted for the compression as soon as practicable. Otherwise the ribs will heal in the depressed position and a serious reduction in lung volume may result.

distress, the chest should be aspirated immediately with a syringe and needle, indeed, even the needle may be lifesaving in the presence of tension pneumothorax

In flail chest and large sucking wounds an even more serious condition may obtain, for it is often even more difficult for the opposite "good" lung to expand. In addition, the respiratory dead space is increased, "used" air is sucked to and fro between the "good" lung and the collapsed lung. Effective ventilation may thus be brought almost to a standstill, and urgent measures are required. The emergency management consists of strapping the defect. Whether the injury consists of multiple fractures or an actual hole in the chest wall, the physiologic problem is the same. Later some more fastidious treatment can be effected in the operating room on a live patient.

In addition to the deranged pulmonary function in the presence of abnormal intrapleural pressures, the venous return to the right heart may be seriously interfered with (Fig 208)

Severe Hemoptysis: Causes and Management

Few complications cause more merited concern than does massive hemoptysis, for even if the patient does not exsanguinate he may drown in his own blood. Fortunately, hemoptysis does not often represent a large volume and tends to be self-limited.

Pulmonary bleeding is usually intermittent and usually stops with sedation and reassurance. The Trendelenburg position should be used if bleeding is brisk, to avoid flow into the more dependent bronchi. On the other hand, the bleeding may be such as immediately to threaten life. Under these circumstances it is highly desirable to know the side from which the bleeding is coming. Frequently the patient himself can lateralize the hemorrhage, on the basis of symptomatology. If not, bronchoscopy may at least permit the identification of the involved main stem bronchus. If this can be done and the bleeding does not lessen under

conservative therapy, then once the offending side is identified one can rapidly perform thoracotomy and occlude that main bronchus. Of course, the endotracheal tube must enter the "good" bronchus, and a steep head-down position must be maintained until the endotracheal cuff is inflated. Frequent suction is indicated. The clamping of the main bronchus ends the danger of bleeding into the uninvolved lung and one can then identify the involved lobe or smaller bronchus. Bronchotomy may be required but the involved lobe or segment can often be identified by the external evidence of interstitial hemorrhage.

Again, it is rare that emergency thoracotomy is required, and it is vastly preferable to identify the source with precision preoperatively. Among the more frequent causes of profuse bleeding are bronchiectasis, tuberculosis, bronchial adenoma, and mitral stenosis. In one patient who began to bleed at a startling rate during bronchoscopy, subsequent pulmonary arterial catheterization revealed marked pulmonary hypertension. Large numbers of small varices were later visualized in the bronchial mucosa.

REFERENCES

- 1 BLADES, B, BEATTIE, E J, JR, HILL, R P, AND THISTLETHWAITE, R. Ischemia of the lung. *Ann Surg*, **136** 56, 1952
- 2 COMROE, J H, JR, FORSTER, R E, II, DUBOIS, A B, BRISCOE, W A, AND CARLSEN, E. *The Lung—Clinical Physiology and Pulmonary Function Tests*. Chicago, Year Book Publishers, Inc, 1955
- 3 COMROE, J H, JR, AND FOWLER, W S. Detection of uneven ventilation during a single breath of O₂. *Am J Med*, **10** 408, 1951
- 4 Cournand, A, AND RICHARDS, D W, JR. The effect of various types of collapse therapy upon cardiopulmonary function. *Am Rev Tuberc*, **44** 123, 1943
- 5 DALY, M DE B, LAMBERTSEN, C J, AND SCHWARTZ, A. The effects upon the bronchial musculature of altering the oxygen and carbon dioxide tensions of the blood perfusing the brain. *J Physiol*, **119** 292, 1953
- 6 DE TAKATS, G, AND JESSER, J H. Pulmonary embolism, suggestions for its diagnosis, pre-

- vention and management. *J.A.M.A.*, 114: 1415 1940
- 7 DONALD K. W. The definition and assessment of respiratory function. *Brit. M. J.*, 1: 1068, 1953
- 8 FOWLER, W. E. The respiratory dead space. *Am J Physiol* 154: 405 1918
- 9 GORDON A. S., SADOVE, M. ■ RAYMON F., AND IVY A. C. Critical survey of manual artificial respiration. *J.A.M.A.*, 147: 1414 1951
- 10 HETMANX C., AND HETMANX J. F. Sur le mechanisme de l'arythmie cardiaque respiratoire. *Compt. rend. Soc. de biol.*, 96: 716 1927
- 11 HOWARD H. S. AND WEBB W. R. Respiratory paralysis following pulmonary denervation. *Surgical Forum*, 8: 466, 1953
- 12 JACKSON C. L., AND HUBER, J. F. Correlated applied anatomy of the bronchial tree and lungs with a system of nomenclature. *Dis. Chest*, 9: 319 1943
- 13 LAUFER, S. T., AND GRAY J. D. Organized thrombus occluding a main pulmonary artery. Report of two cases. *New England J Med.*, 254: 803 1956
- 14 MILLER, R. D., FOWLER, W. S., AND HELMHOLTZ, H. F., JR. The relationship of arterial hypoxemia to disability and to cor pulmonale with congestive failure in patients with chronic pulmonary emphysema. *Proc Staff Meet. Mayo Clin.*, 28: 737 1953
- 15 NEMER, P. STONE, H. H., MACKELL, T. N. AND HAWTHORNE, H. R. Studies on pulmonary function utilizing the method of controlled unilateral bronchovascular occlusion. *Surgical Forum* 4: 234 1954.
- 16 OVERHOLT R. H., AND LANGER, L. New technique for pulmonary segmental resection its application in treatment of bronchiectasis. *Surg Gynec & Obst.*, 84: 257 1947
- 17 PAPPENHEIMER, J. Standardization of definitions and symbols in respiratory physiology. *Fed Proc* 9: 602 1950
- 18 PRINTEMETAL, M., ORNITZ, E. M., SIMKIN B., AND BENJAMIN H. C. Arteriovenous anastomoses in liver spleen, and lungs. *Am J Physiol* 152: 48 1948
- 19 ROBBARD E. Bronchomotor tone A neglected factor in the regulation of the pulmonary circulation. *Am J Med.*, 15: 356 1953
- 20 SELZER A., AND BRADLEY H. W. Observations concerning the origin of shock associated with acute cor pulmonale. *Am J Med* 22: 163 1957
- 21 TOBIN C. E., AND ZARIQUET M. O. Arteriovenous shunts in the human lung. *Proc Soc Exper Biol. & Med* 75: 827 1950
- 22 TOWBIN A. Pulmonary embolism incidence and significance. *J.A.M.A.*, 156: 209 1954
- 23 WINTERSTEIN H. Chemical control of pulmonary ventilation. I. The physiology of the chemoreceptors. *New England J Med.*, 255: 216 1956
- 24 WINTERSTEIN H. Chemical control of pulmonary ventilation. II Hypoxia and respiratory acclimatization. *New England J Med.*, 255: 272, 1956
- 25 WYATT J. P., BURKE, D. R., AND HANLON C. R. Morphologic study of canine lungs after ligation of the pulmonary veins. *Am J Pathol* 29: 291 1953

Chapter 17

The Physiology of Anesthesia: Some Points for Surgeons

The objective here is to survey some of the more practical physiologic considerations involved in the safe conduct of anesthesia. Most anesthesiologists have a reasonably adequate understanding of cardiopulmonary physiology, but a very large number of anesthetics given in the United States are administered by persons who have received a very limited indoctrination in applied basic science. Accordingly, the surgeon must develop, himself, a thorough appreciation of the physiologic problems that may arise in the patient who receives spinal anesthesia or who is put to sleep. Even local anesthesia may produce alarming and at times fatal reactions.

In preparing the factual discussion which follows, I have drawn upon several standard works in the field^{1, 3, 7}. However, most of the controversial opinions expressed are mine, and are not to be attributed to others.

Rôle of Preanesthetic Medication

In contemplating surgery, the patient hopes for a reasonably pleasant and rapid passage to the unconscious state, from which he will awake cured of his disease. The objective of preanesthetic medication is to increase the tranquillity and to enhance the safety of the anesthesia. Basically, the tranquillity is ensured in most subjects by the use of a sedative, and the safety is enhanced both by sedation and by the use of an atropine-like drug to reduce tracheobronchial and oral secretions. It also protects against certain circulatory reflex changes.

The preanesthetic medication should begin the evening before operation with the administration of a suitable hypnotic, usually one of the barbiturates, to give the patient a good night's rest. If the "usual dose" (such as 0.1 gm of pentobarbital) has not produced sleep by 1 or 2 o'clock in the morning, it is our practice to have this dose repeated. On the morning of operation an additional sedative is given. Formerly morphine was used almost routinely, but in recent years this respiratory depressant has generally been replaced by a barbiturate. The latter has less effect upon respiration and, while it has little analgesic effect, the patient is not usually in pain prior to the operation anyway.

If the dosage of the hypnotic has been adequate, the patient arrives in the operating room without apprehension and at times even asleep. Having him in such a condition reduces the likelihood of a marked physical outburst during the second stage of anesthesia, and it also reduces the hazard of vago-vagal reflexes arising in the pharynx which may produce cardiac arrest. Needless to say, it has much psychologic benefit in preparing the patient to face the operation.

Inhalation Anesthesia

Broad Principles

RESPIRATORY FUNCTION AS RELATED TO ANESTHESIA. The general physiology of respiration has been considered previously, but it is appropriate to reexamine certain specific

relationships that exist between lung function and the facility with which proper anesthesia can be established

The efficiency of inhalation anesthesia depends primarily upon the physical laws of the diffusion of gases. The problem is to deliver the anesthetic agent to the brain in the concentration required by the operation to be performed to hold it there in controlled concentration as long as it is needed, and to get it out again—all with the least possible interference with the normal physiologic process of the body (Fig. 210). The effectiveness with which anesthesia is induced will depend upon the following: (1) the concentration of the anesthetic agent in the inspired air; (2) the ventilation volume; (3) diffusion across the alveolar membrane; and (4) the efficiency of the circulation.

During the period in which anesthesia is being induced, the concentration of the anesthetic agent in the alveolar air is high relative to the concentration in tissues and there is ready flow of the gas to the cells. After the concentration of the anesthetic agent in the cells of the more peripheral tissues has risen to that approaching the concentration in the inspired air during which period anesthesia has been induced, there is much less rapid transport between the alveolar air and the tissues. When the concentration of the anesthetic agent in the alveolar air is lowered at the end of the operation, the gradient is reversed: the high point of the gradient is now that of the concentration of the anesthetic agent in the cells and the low point is in the alveolar air (Fig. 211). Therefore the cells are rapidly cleared of a large portion of the anesthetic agent; the residual portion is eliminated much more slowly as the concentration in the cells begins to approach the low or virtually absent concentration in the alveolar air.

The minute respiratory volume may have an equal or greater influence upon the diffusion volume of the agent across the alveolar membrane than has the factor of drug concentration in the inspired air. For example, the patient who takes only short,

IDEAL TRANSPORT OF OXYGEN CARBON DIOXIDE AND AN INHALATION ANESTHETIC AGENT

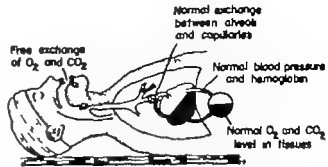


Fig. 210 Some of the more important factors in the safe conduct of anesthesia (After American Medical Association *Fundamentals of Anesthesia* Ed. 3 Philadelphia W B Saunders Company, 1954)

DEPOT TISSUE EFFECT

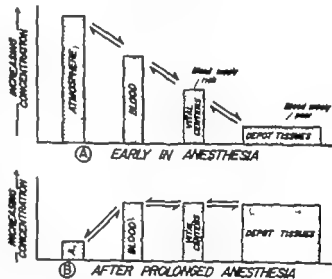


Fig. 211 Direction of movement of anesthetic agent during induction and during recovery from anesthesia. The depot tissue storage effect is a particular hazard in prolonged pentothal anesthesia, for example, the injected pentothal cannot be exhaled as a gas and must be metabolized or excreted in the urine (After American Medical Association *Fundamentals of Anesthesia* Ed. 3 Philadelphia W B Saunders Company, 1954)

shallow breaths during an attempt at induction will be anesthetized slowly indeed regardless of the concentration of the anesthetic agent in the volume of gas that is inspired.

Any circumstance which interferes with the transport of the anesthetic agent across the alveolar membrane will interfere with

ASPIRATION DURING ANESTHESIA

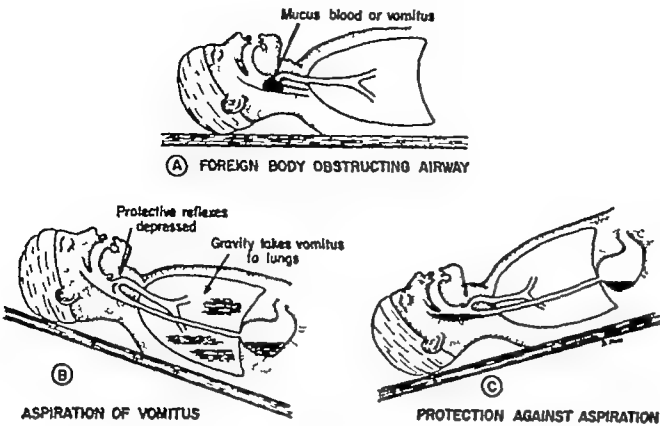


Fig 212 Some hazards during anesthesia

the process of anesthetization While mucus is the most common *barrier to diffusion* in inhalation anethesia (Fig 212), the presence of blood, purulent secretions, or of pulmonary edema may also interfere with gaseous diffusion

The efficiency of the *pulmonary and systemic circulations* influences the rate of transport to the cells of the brain, for otherwise the anesthetic agent will not be delivered to the brain in sufficient concentrations

Finally, some chemical agents act much more rapidly than others upon the cells of the brain Ether and chloroform do not affect the central nervous system nearly so rapidly as do nitrous oxide and ethylene Cyclopro-

1st	1st STAGE - ANALGESIA	
2nd	2nd STAGE - DELIRIUM	
3rd	1	1st Plane
	2	2nd Plane
	3	3rd Plane
	4	4th Plane
4th	4th STAGE - RESPIRATORY PARALYSIS	

Fig 213 This chart shows the division of anesthesia into four stages and the division of the third or surgical stage into four planes (From GUEDEL, A E *Inhalation Anesthesia—A Fundamental Guide*, Ed 2 New York, The Macmillan Company, 1952)

pane acts rapidly, is capable of producing all stages of anesthesia, and permits rapid recovery

Stages and Planes of General Anesthesia

The stages and planes of anesthesia are represented graphically in Figures 213 and 214 These are relatively easily remembered when one has closely observed anesthesia induction a few times

Stage I, or the stage of *analgesia*, is that produced by one or two inhalations of a nitrous oxide-oxygen mixture such as is commonly used by dentists for dental extractions The senses are benumbed but the patient remains conscious The period of analgesia is brief, but it is adequate for very short procedures *Stage II*, or the stage of *delirium*, is often a stage of excitement, representing the time when the individual loses consciousness The higher centers of cerebration are blocked, leaving the secondary centers active The patient may pass very quietly through this second stage, or the most violent outburst may be noted It is advisable always to have the patient adequately restrained by suitable harness or by assistants who guide the individual's movements but protect the conduct of the anesthesia During this stage all should be quiet and the patient should not be molested He can often still hear, but he may grossly misinterpret what he hears The second stage may again be observed as the whole process of anesthetization is reversed and the patient is emerging from the anesthesia

Stage III, or the stage of *surgical anesthesia*, is the one in which surgical procedures become possible This third stage extends from the onset of regular rhythmic respiration and loss of the eyelid reflex to *Stage IV*, or the stage of *respiratory paralysis* *Stage III* has been subdivided into four planes

The Signs of the Various Stages and Planes of General Anesthesia

The presence or absence of Stage I and Stage II can usually be detected by super-

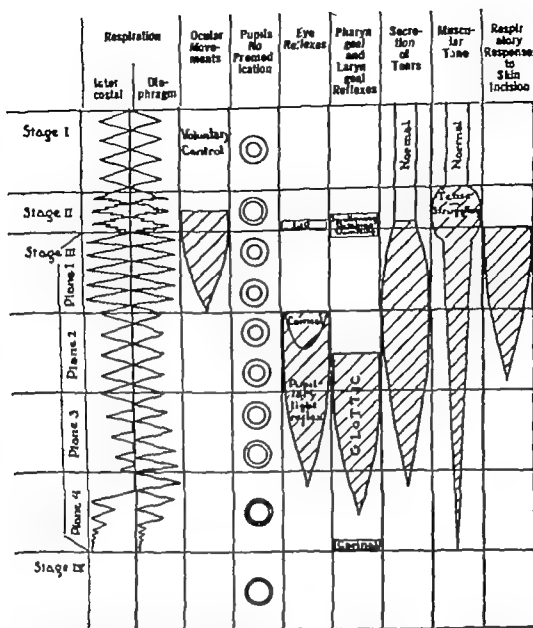


Fig 214. Physical signs of depth of anesthesia. It is important that the surgeon know the physical signs upon which the anesthesiologist depends to guide the course of the anesthesia. (From AMERICAN MEDICAL ASSOCIATION: *Fundamentals of Anesthesia* Ed 3. Philadelphia, W B Saunders Company 1964)

ficial observation. However, Stage II, or the stage of delirium, may be misleading in that the patient may appear to be in the early planes of Stage III when in fact he may suddenly begin violent struggles and have to be forcibly restrained.

As noted during Stage II it is preferable to avoid all possibly exciting influences such as mention of the operation within the patient's hearing or the beginning of the prep.

The planes of Stage III are to a considerable extent arbitrary, but it is useful to be able to distinguish in a general way between the lighter planes and the deeper planes.

CHARACTERISTICS OF THE PLANES OF STAGE III (SURGICAL) ANESTHESIA. In Plane 1 of Stage III the eyeballs usually are moving and strabismus may be present the lid reflex is inactive and superficial skin reflexes are dulled. The respirations are now regular with inspiration and expiration being of equal length. The swallowing reflex is abolished and the pupils are of preanesthetic size. In Plane 2 the eyeballs are now inactive and are fixed centrally with a slight increase in the size of the pupil. The abdominal muscles are beginning to relax. In Plane 3 the eyeballs are still fixed and the pupils slightly

more dilated. The pupillary light reflex is present but becomes progressively more sluggish as the depth of *Plane 3* is increased. Muscular relaxation is adequate for abdominal surgery. In *Plane 4* the eyes are fixed and the pupils are widely dilated, as a rule. The pupillary light reflex is abolished. Profound skeletal muscular relaxation is present and bronchial reflexes are obtunded. *With cardiorespiratory paralysis not far distant, the blood pressure and the pulse pressure tend to fall, and the pulse rate increases. Respiration is of the gasping type and is much less effective. These are important warning signs.*

In *Stage IV*, or the stage of respiratory paralysis, there is a cessation of automatic respiratory function. (Respiratory paralysis is deliberately induced in the course of the so-called "controlled respiration" anesthesia that is used in certain intrathoracic operations. Here the anesthetist maintains the pulmonary ventilation by rhythmic manual compression of the gas bag, otherwise, of course, death from anoxia would supervene. However, respiratory efforts may be largely abolished with a lesser degree of anesthesia if the lungs are continuously hyperventilated to reduce the CO_2 stimulus.) In *Stage IV* there is complete absence of reflex activity and the pupils are widely dilated (except under cyclopropane) and are inactive to light.

The stages and signs of anesthesia were developed largely with the use of ethyl-ether anesthesia. When the patient is under cyclopropane there is more depression of respiration but less effect upon the pupils. Whereas dilatation of the pupil often occurs in *Plane 4* of surgical anesthesia when ethyl-ether is used, with the administration of cyclopropane a pupil that is more than 25 per cent dilated over the preanesthetic size is rarely seen unless hypoxia is present. In this connection, it is worth remembering that nitrous oxide alone is incapable of inducing a depth of anesthesia much beyond *Plane 2* of *Stage III* without producing definite and visible hypoxia. Accordingly, to

provide surgical anesthesia, nitrous oxide is usually supplemented with some other agent such as Pentothal or ether, often with the aid of a muscle relaxant such as the curare-like agents.

ADDITIONAL COMMENT While the eye signs are of contributory aid, *the safest means of evaluating anesthesia usually consist of the character of the respiration, the level of the blood pressure, and the state of muscular relaxation.* A dilated pupil may be due to sympathetic stimulation, perhaps from fear or other factors, and it may be necessary to test for the light reflex to distinguish sympathetic dilatation from that caused by hypoxia or an overdose of the anesthetic agent. If the light reflex is also absent in the presence of pupillary dilatation, the probability of hypoxia or anesthetic overdose must be considered.

The reason that very deep surgical anesthesia is particularly hazardous in less experienced hands is that the number of clinical guides to the level of the anesthesia declines progressively as the depth of anesthesia increases.

Reflexes of Importance in the Conduct of Anesthesia: Further Comment

THE EYELID REFLEX This reflex is elicited by gently raising the upper eyelid. If the patient is still in the second stage of anesthesia the eyelid will then descend and will close. However, if the anesthesia is in the third stage the lid will not close spontaneously. This affords a means of determining whether the patient is in the stage of delirium, though quiet, or whether he has reached *Stage III*, that of surgical anesthesia.

REFLEX SWALLOWING The appearance of swallowing indicates that the patient is "light." It is usually noted in the first or uppermost plane of *Stage III*, if the patient is coming out of deep anesthesia. When one is operating upon animals, the observation that the animal is making swallowing movements is a signal to administer additional anesthesia.

VOMITING This frequently occurs as the

patient emerges from anesthesia or as he is being inducted. It is met at the deep end of second stage anesthesia and is only slightly above the level at which reflex swallowing is noted. The danger of vomiting is, of course, that in the absence of a snugly fitting endotracheal tube the patient may aspirate vomitus into the lungs (Fig. 212). Death may occur abruptly or, if not, lung abscess or pneumonia may develop.

REFLEX APNEA. Apnea may be defined as the absence of respiratory efforts. It is seen particularly at the beginning of anesthesia induction (reflex) and at excessive depths of anesthesia (paralysis). Or hyperventilation may have so lowered the blood CO_2 tension (apapnia) that the usual respiratory stimulus is lacking. Actually, hyperventilation prior to reflex breath holding may permit the maintenance of apnea for a considerable period of time. Eventually however the concentration of carbon dioxide will reach a level at which the patient will no longer be able to hold his breath voluntarily.

LARYNGOSPASM. While reflex laryngospasm or spasm of the vocal cords is at times produced by traction on abdominal viscera the most common and annoying type of laryngospasm is that which follows direct irritation of the vocal cords usually by the anesthetic agent. Varying degrees of spasm are frequent with ether but less so with cyclopropane. The presence of such spasm indicates that the level of anesthesia is above the second plane of Stage III, since it is abolished at the junction of the first and second planes of third stage anesthesia. Spasm is particularly likely to occur if a high concentration of irritating anesthetic mixture is employed initially. With mild spasm it may be possible to maintain adequate oxygenation by compressing the bag while waiting for the spasm to be broken through.

Severe laryngospasm is a most common serious complication in anesthesia and time is a critical factor. The first corrective action should be moderately strong intermittent positive pressure on the rebreathing bag with 100 per cent oxygen. If no gas

has been forced past the cords after about 30 seconds, critical time should not be wasted with ineffectual measures. The patient should be totally relaxed with one of the intravenous muscle relaxants, of which Succinyl Choline is the fastest. While waiting out the 45 seconds required for Succinyl Choline to act, positive pressure should be continued on the bag. The instant the cords begin to relax oxygen will be forced into the lungs. The patient should be ventilated with intermittent positive pressure until he appears to be well oxygenated. An endotracheal tube should now be inserted. It must be realized that once a muscle relaxant is used the patient will not breathe spontaneously for at least several minutes. In every anesthetic the anesthetist must be prepared to control ventilation by mask and to intubate if this should become necessary.

VAGO-VAGAL REFLEX. Laryngeal or tracheal stimulation or irritation during the introduction or the removal of an endotracheal tube particularly under certain conditions of respiratory disequilibrium, may produce marked effects upon the heart. The vagus nerves supply both the afferent and the efferent fibers of these reflexes. Cardiac arrhythmias such as bradycardia, atrioventricular (A-V) block cardiac standstill or even ventricular fibrillation may occur. It appears that this may be more likely when cyclopropane is being used than with other anesthetics, with the possible exception of intravenous Pentothal.

TRACTION REFLEXES. Reflexes produced by traction may be readily observed during either abdominal or thoracic surgery. Those in the abdomen generally result from traction on the mesentery or on various viscera. Changes in respiratory or circulatory function or vomiting may ensue.

In the thorax the reflexes which result in variations in respiration or in cardiac activity result from traction in the region of the hilum which stimulates the abundant vagal fibers. Many surgeons prefer to anesthetize the region of the hilum of the lung before beginning the hilar dissection.

SKIN REFLEXES One reason that it is important to have the blood pressure checked from time to time when relatively minor operations are being done under local anesthesia is that reflex hypotension may develop

Controlled Respiration

Previous reference has been made to the fact that the respiratory reflexes can be abolished and the ventilation provided entirely by manual or mechanical means. This technic is facilitated by the use of cyclopropane, since this agent has a markedly depressant effect upon respiration, however, controlled respiration can also be achieved with other agents.

Technic When the third stage of anesthesia has been reached, the rebreathing bag (Fig 215) is squeezed during the latter portion of each inspiratory phase, the bag being promptly released as normal expiration begins. By careful timing of the manual pressure on the bag with the patient's respiratory efforts, pulmonary hyperventilation can be produced. This reduces the content of the carbon dioxide in the alveoli air and the blood, and at the same time the increased respiratory volume results in an increased diffusion of the anesthetic agent.

When the blood content of carbon dioxide has become sufficiently low and the tissue content of ether sufficiently high, spontaneous respiratory movements cease. The anesthetist then carries on the respiration as necessary at a rate slightly exceeding the normal respiratory rate, perhaps at 20 to 22 respirations per minute. When desired, the spontaneous respiration can be restored by maneuvers which diminish the concentration of the anesthetic agent in the tissues or which increase the concentration of carbon dioxide available for the stimulation of respiration, or both. Hyperventilation can also be effected with some artificial device such as the Jefferson ventilator.

The dangers attendant upon deep anesthesia consist chiefly of overdosage of the anesthetic agent, and hypoxia and hypercapnia from inadequate respiratory ventilation. Controlled respiration is a type of anesthesia which is to be used only by the more experienced person, specifically, it should not be used by the anesthetist who has not had sound training in respiratory physiology. Controlled respiration is not required for most thoracic operations.

Controlled hypotension during anesthesia is discussed elsewhere (p 363)

ANESTHESIA CIRCUIT APPARATUS

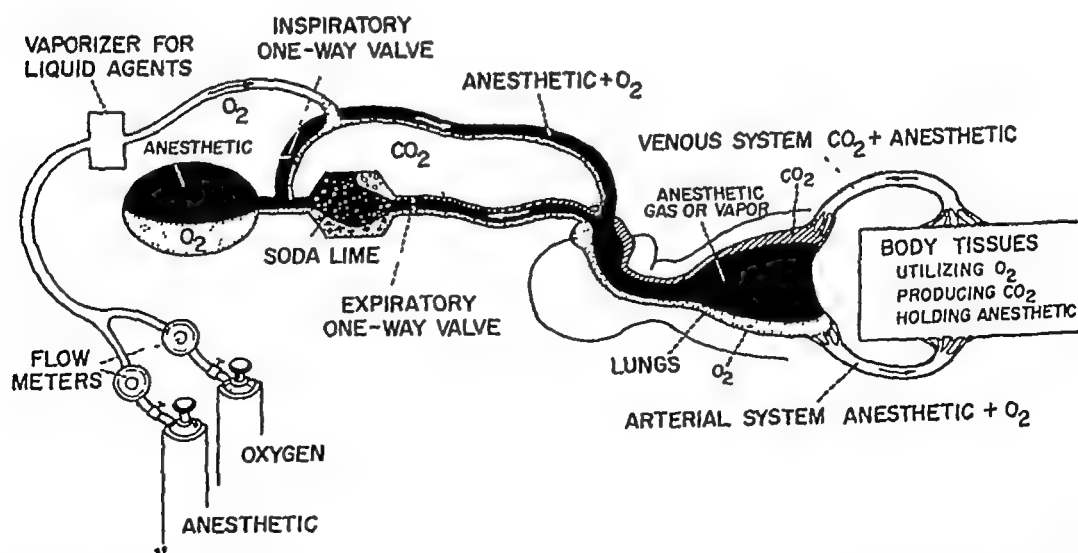


Fig 215 The common gas machine (After Adriani, J, in American Medical Association *Fundamentals of Anesthesia* Ed 3 Philadelphia, W B Saunders Company, 1954)

Commonly Used Anesthetic Agents

Some Volatile Liquids and Inhalation Gases

ETHYL ETHER. This drug was first used to induce anesthesia in human beings by Crawford Long in 1842, but its use was not officially reported until employed by Morton in 1846. Ether volatilizes rapidly during open administration at room temperature, and thus effects a cooling of the atmosphere inspired by the patient. The effective concentrations of ether vapor for anesthesia are from 3.5 to 4.5 per cent, and overdosage may occur when alveolar concentration is from 0.7 to 8 per cent. Ether is not altered in the body and approximately 90 per cent of the inhaled ether is eliminated through the lungs, the remainder being eliminated through the skin and urine. The average time of desaturation is 8 hours though in obese individuals this may require a longer period of time. And it certainly will require more time if the individual has received excessive amounts of ether for anesthesia. The emergence from ether anesthesia can be hastened by hyperpnea and slowed by diminished respirations.

Drucker and his group⁶ have emphasized that ether results in such abnormalities of glucose metabolism as to simulate uncontrolled diabetes.

CYCLOPROPANE. The anesthetic properties of this drug were first recognized by Lucas and Henderson⁷ in 1929, and an early clinical report was made by Waters and his associates⁸ in 1934. This agent is a saturated hydrocarbon gas, colorless and with a sweetish garlic like taste and odor. It is nonirritating to the mucous membranes in concentrations of under 50 per cent. Cyclopropane is essentially as potent an anesthetic agent as ether. It has with chloroform the property of increasing the irritability of the cardiac conduction mechanism. In general however, cyclopropane is well tolerated. Its marked respiratory depressant effect renders it an effective agent for establishing controlled anesthesia. This is safely achieved

because, since only comparatively small concentrations of the gas (20 to 25 per cent) are required to produce anesthesia, the oxygen concentration in the inspired gas mixture can be on the order of 80 per cent. In contrast, since ether is in many respects a respiratory stimulant, the administration of adequate amounts of the ether to produce respiratory arrest would require a dangerously high concentration if no element of hyperventilation were used. Analgesia may be produced with from 3 to 5 per cent cyclopropane in the gas mixture, unconsciousness with 6 to 8 per cent, surgical anesthesia with 20 to 25 per cent, and respiratory arrest with from 35 to 40 per cent concentration.

Cyclopropane-oxygen represents a more explosive gas than does ether-oxygen, and it is also associated with a greater incidence of arrhythmias. Cyclopropane produces less muscular relaxation than does ethyl-ether, but the use of curare-like compounds has largely obviated this defect.

Again, a particular advantage of cyclopropane is that a low percentage of drug in the gas mixture permits a high concentration of oxygen. However, associated respiratory depression may permit adequate oxygenation (by virtue of the high oxygen concentration) even while acidosis develops from inadequate ventilation that results in carbon dioxide retention.

NITROUS OXIDE. While nitrous oxide is in itself a virtually nontoxic agent, it alone cannot produce satisfactory surgical anesthesia with adequate relaxation. Unfortunately, the occasional anesthetist achieves surgical anesthesia by virtue of the element of relaxation that is derived from anoxia. This agent should not be employed in concentrations greater than 80 per cent nitrous oxide (the other 20 per cent of the mixture being oxygen), certainly not for surgical anesthesia.

Nitrous oxide, to repeat does not produce satisfactory relaxation. It is the familiar "gas" anesthesia that is so commonly used by dentists. For prolonged surgical operations the nitrous oxide-oxygen mixture is

usually supplemented with ether or Pentothal. The failure to produce relaxation can be partially offset by using curare.

The use of nitrous oxide is contraindicated in the presence of anemia.

Intravenous Agents

THIOPENTAL SODIUM (PENTOTHAL SODIUM)
When given intravenously this barbiturate produces a rapid and profound hypnosis and, soon, unconsciousness. In essence, the patient is either awake or asleep. One convenient form of administering the drug is to ask the patient to begin counting, the drug is then injected slowly until the individual can no longer continue.

One form of the drug may be dissolved in 40 cc of distilled water and then given intravenously. The rate of injection should not exceed 4 cc in the first 15 seconds, at least 30 seconds to 1 minute being permitted for the full effect of the preliminary injection to occur. The initial dose can then be repeated if the narcosis does not develop within 40 seconds. After the patient is unconscious, from 1 to 2 cc are injected intermittently, as required, to maintain the unconscious state.

The *advantages* of Sodium Pentothal anesthesia are that the induction is rapid and usually pleasant for the patient, moreover, recovery is prompt (if an excessive dose of the drug has not been given) and is not unpleasant. Pentothal produces little or no nausea, it is free of the usual explosive hazards, and the cough reflex is not abolished. Salivation and pulmonary secretions are not increased. It is particularly valuable for the induction of cyclopropane or ether anesthesia in persons who are apprehensive. Passage of an endotracheal tube is often facilitated by the use of Pentothal, even when the anesthesia is to be continued with another agent. Pentothal is often used in combination with nitrous oxide by inhalation, and with curare by injection, for complete surgical anesthesia. When Pentothal is used alone, suitable muscular relaxation is not obtained without the addition of curare.

Definite *disadvantages* are encountered with Pentothal anesthesia. To begin with, it is a strong respiratory depressant and once injected it cannot be rapidly eliminated; ether can be exhaled, but Pentothal must be metabolized by the liver or excreted. Furthermore, the drug is stored in depot tissues such as fat and progressively more may need to be injected to keep the concentration in the brain at an anesthetic level. Yet, the accumulation in the depot tissues may inordinately prolong recovery from anesthesia if Pentothal is used for a long operation. Thus, it is desirable to limit its use to suitable procedures which require only about 30 minutes of anesthesia.

Second, as it is a barbiturate, it has little analgesic effect. Third, there are fewer reliable signs of anesthesia than with ether. It is therefore difficult to maintain the level of anesthesia at a point that is between the stage of decreased reflexes and that of respiratory or circulatory depression. In inexperienced hands this respiratory depression is the major hazard of the drug. Admittedly, in the hands of an expert Pentothal represents an extremely useful drug, especially for the induction of other anesthetics and for the insertion of the endotracheal tube where this is to be used. In contrast, in the hands of those who are less familiar with this agent its use can be disastrous. The following case report is illustrative.

Case study The patient was a 54-year-old white woman with mitral stenosis who had been essentially bedridden for the past several months. She of course represented a poor surgical risk, but the internist in attendance and the patient herself and her family thought that the possibility of benefit from a mitral valvulotomy was worthwhile, in view of her present life as an invalid. Accordingly, after she had been hospitalized and prepared as best she could be, she was brought to surgery. There the anesthetist, who rarely used Pentothal for any purpose, decided that on this particular occasion the drug would reduce apprehension and facilitate intubation. A "usual dose"

was given intravenously, following which the respirations promptly ceased and did not resume for almost 30 minutes. Intubation was not readily achieved, and meanwhile it proved difficult to inflate the lungs adequately by compression of the gas bag. Her appearance was one of deep cyanosis. Eventually some degree of spontaneous respiratory activity did return, however, and the skin color improved to approximately that present preoperatively.

At this point consultation was held with her internist and the anesthetist. It was agreed that, ordinarily, good judgment would dictate postponement of surgery but that in her case, it was doubtful whether further delay would be tolerated. Moreover, since the endotracheal tube was now in place and fairly adequate pulmonary ventilation possible, it was elected rapidly to execute the mitral valvulotomy. This was done satisfactorily and uneventfully through the bed of the excised left 5th rib. Finger fracture sufficed. No anesthetic other than the initial Pentothal injection was given.

Only once was further physiologic difficulty encountered during operation. As the atrial appendage was being oversewn the heart rate became slow and cardiac contractions weak but at no time did the heart stop. At the end of the operation the blood pressure had fallen from an initial level of 100/60 to a level of 70/40, though this gradually rose. Respiration remained unsatisfactory and it was some time before extubation and discontinuance of manual assistance could be achieved. Eventually she was returned to her room in fair condition with orders that respiration was to be closely watched. It remained shallow and slow and 4 hours postoperatively the rate fell rather abruptly to 4 per minute and the blood pressure fell to shock levels. She still had not reacted in any manner and all reflexes were absent. Recall too that no anesthetic had been given during the entire operation except for the initial injection of Pentothal. It was believed that the patient simply had never metabolized the original

dose of Pentothal, though its respiratory depressant effect might have been augmented by the period of anoxia which had occurred prior to intubation. A face mask and anesthesia machine were employed to improve pulmonary ventilation, using the airway that remained in place from operation. Her color promptly improved considerably and spontaneous respiratory efforts quickened, possibly due in part to the injection of caffeine and Coramine. Nevertheless, the rate was still only about 12 per minute and the excursions were very shallow. Accordingly it was decided to give the patient Nalline (N allylnormorphine), though it was appreciated that this drug was generally considered to be only a morphine antagonist and not a barbiturate antagonist. Nevertheless, shortly after 10 mg. had been injected intravenously both the rate (to 20 per minute) and depth of respiration improved considerably. After a period of time an additional 10 mg. of Nalline were given intravenously. Thereafter the patient began to move her hands and feet slightly and within the next 30 minutes she began to moan intermittently. All this was viewed as an encouraging turn of events but unfortunately 10 hours later she suddenly became markedly hypotensive again and nor epinephrine and transfusion were ineffectual in raising the blood pressure. She died.

Comment. A number of factors contributed to this patient's death. A major contributory cause was of course, the Grade IV heart disease due to mitral stenosis. Second the use of Pentothal represented poor judgment especially in this critically ill subject—and particularly as the anesthetist was not adequately familiar with its capacity to depress respiration. Again Pentothal should be used only by the expert. This particular anesthetist was especially facile in the use of ether for pulmonary resections, but she simply chose to use an unfamiliar drug in an extremely poor risk patient. Actually the dosage given would not have been excessive in most subjects, but in the patient in question who had chronic passive congestion of

the liver and whose edema-free weight was only 90 lb, it was excessive. Lastly, in retrospect, when there was difficulty with the induction we should have postponed the operation, even if there was the strong possibility that conditions might not again be even as stable as they appeared then.

To repeat, once Pentothal has been injected it cannot be removed until metabolized or excreted in the urine. Ether is much safer in the hands of the less experienced person.

Spinal Anesthesia

✓ Agents for Spinal Anesthesia

The three drugs most frequently used for inducing spinal anesthesia are *Nupercaine*, *Pontocaine*, and *procaine*.

TECHNICS Spinal anesthetic solutions are either *hyperbaric* (having a specific gravity greater than that of spinal fluid) or *hypobaric*. For example, procaine dissolved in spinal fluid is mildly hyperbaric. If dissolved in a heavy glucose solution (10 per cent), however, it becomes definitely hyperbaric and tends to gravitate to the lowest part of the spinal sac. Nupercaine, on the other hand, in a 1:1500 solution is definitely hypobaric and tends to rise in the spinal sac. Thus, by using solutions of anesthetic drugs that are heavier or lighter than spinal fluid, the anesthetist can by posturing the patient direct the flow of the anesthetic agent upward or downward. Nevertheless, this must be done promptly, before the agent has been "fixed" by the nerve tissues. After such fixation, changing the position of the patient may no longer affect the level of anesthesia.

Hypobaric solutions must be used with care in that they tend to rise unless the patient is put in a Trendelenburg position. With hyperbaric solutions, on the other hand, the patient is first put in a Trendelenburg position until the level of anesthesia, as tested with a pin, has risen to a point that is suitably high to permit the intraabdominal procedure that is contemplated. He is then returned to the horizontal position to pre-

vent a further rise of the anesthetic agent. The chief danger of allowing the drug to extend too far upward is, of course, first, the paralysis of the muscles of respiration including the diaphragm and, later, even paralysis of medullary centers.

LENGTH OF ACTION Procaine has a relatively short action. A dose of this drug will produce dependable anesthesia for only 1 hour, as compared to comparable doses of Pontocaine and Nupercaine, both of which produce anesthesia of from 1 to 3 hours. Since it is always possible that the duration of operation will be longer than anticipated, Pontocaine and Nupercaine are usually preferred to procaine.

The use of Pontocaine is particularly satisfactory. This drug is far more potent than procaine and is used in one-tenth the concentration of the latter, that is, in a solution of from 0.5 to 1.0 per cent (20 mg). This dilution usually affords approximately 2 hours of anesthesia, which is adequate for most of the more common operations such as cholecystectomy, colectomy, or hemorrhaphy. It is of course not adequate for operations which upon occasion take longer, such as gastrectomy, abdominoperineal resection, and the like. Nevertheless, the technique of "continuous spinal" may be used for an operation of almost any duration, the catheter or spinal needle is left in place and additional drug is injected intermittently as needed.

✓ Complications of Spinal Anesthesia

FALL IN BLOOD PRESSURE A fall in blood pressure is fairly common following spinal anesthesia, due to the effect of the level of anesthesia in abolishing the vascular tone in the splanchnic region and in the lower extremities. However, a drop in blood pressure during spinal anesthesia may also be related to traction on viscera and, as with any other anesthetic, to blood loss—in addition to various other causes (Table 14, p. 361).

A fall in blood pressure due to reduced vasomotor tone in the lower one-half of the body can usually be treated satisfactorily

by elevating the lower extremities or by placing the patient in a Trendelenburg position. If necessary, Neo-Synephrine or some other vasopressor drug may be given intravenously at a slow drip. Shock due to hemorrhage should be treated with blood transfusion, not with vasoconstrictor agents.

NAUSEA AND VOMITING. Patients often become nauseated and vomit during spinal anesthesia, particularly following traction on the various organs of the upper abdomen such as the stomach. Nausea may also signal the approach of shock.

POST SPINAL HEADACHE. It is now generally agreed that a major factor in the development of a persistent post spinal headache is the reduction of cerebrospinal fluid pressure. Evidence in favor of this explanation includes the following:

- 1 Headache similar to "post-spinal" headache can be produced in man in the upright position by withdrawal of fluid and can be abolished by restoration of this fluid.

- 2 In many patients with postlumbar puncture headache, a second puncture will reveal either low pressures or pressures of approximately zero.

- 3 Transient relief of postlumbar puncture headache by the subarachnoid injection of fluid may be achieved.

- 4 The use of a very small bore needle reduces the incidence of the typical headache.

SERIOUS NEUROLOGIC SEQUELAE. Among the various organic neurologic complications reported with spinal anesthesia are paraplegia, abducens paralysis and lesser degrees of extremity paralysis. However, in a follow up study of 10,098 spinal anesthetics in 8460 patients, Driggs and Vandam⁵ found no major neurologic sequelae.

Complications of Anesthesia in General

Respiratory Difficulties

Anoxia or hypoxia (Table 21) is the most serious consequence of respiratory inadequacy, and may result from a number of causes. Among these are an overdose of pre-anesthetic sedative drug (particularly of morphine), an overdose of the anesthetic

agent itself, the use of nitrous oxide without adequate amounts of oxygen, breath holding, laryngospasm, inadequate delivery of oxygen through the inspired air, anemia, shock, and other causes. It is not uncommon for a patient to receive an overdose of morphine sulfate and to come to the operating room with a very slow respiratory rate (Fig 216). The fact that an overdose of the anesthetic agent can produce hypoxia due to inadequate respiratory efforts is of course well known. Anoxia due to breath holding and laryngospasm does not usually result in tissue damage, though at the time the appearance of the patient may be quite disturbing.

Aspiration of gastric contents into the lungs is always a potential hazard and of course interferes, often fatally, with respiration. This is most likely to occur in patients who have gastric retention or intestinal obstruction, or in patients who have eaten recently—the last is encountered most often in obstetric patients and in children. With children, it is advisable never to take the word of the mother or of the child that he has not eaten in the last 4 hours, for all too frequently the stomach will contain food. It is better to delay operation a few hours, where possible. If the issue is then still in doubt, one can further protect the patient with the use of an endotracheal tube, or by gastric lavage. Pulmonary aspiration or spillover is also a hazard when one is resecting a portion of the lung for abscess, bronchiectasis, or a large tuberculous cavity. Such spillover can produce extensive and perhaps fatal pneumonia in the remaining lung—not to mention subsequent spread of the infection if the patient survives the immediate operation. Finally, no one who has performed a tonsillectomy in a child under open drop ether is likely to forget the possibility of the aspiration of blood!

Other Circulatory Disturbances

MARKED DIMINUTION IN BLOOD PRESSURE. Asphyxia may cause an initial rise in the arterial blood pressure, followed later by a

TABLE 21 HYPOXIA CLASSIFICATION
BY CAUSE*

-
- A Inadequate oxygenation of normal lungs
- 1 Deficiency of oxygen in atmosphere, such as occurs during
 - a Ascent to high altitudes where total gas pressure and hence oxygen pressure is subnormal
 - b Exposure to an atmosphere at normal barometric pressure with an oxygen content below that of room air (for example, a 90 per cent nitrous oxide-10 per cent oxygen mixture)
 - 2 Obstruction to flow in pharyngeal or laryngeal airways caused by
 - a Soft tissue relaxation in unconscious patients
 - b Glottic and subglottic edema
 - c Foreign bodies
 - d Ludwig's angina
 - e Carcinoma of larynx
 - f Nerve or muscle paralysis
 - g Spasm of vocal cords (laryngospasm, stridor)
 - 3 Obstruction to flow in tracheobronchial airway resulting from
 - a External pressure
 - b Foreign bodies
 - c Bronchial constriction
 - d Edema
 - e Secretions
 - 4 Insufficiency of respiratory muscles caused by
 - a Anterior poliomyelitis
 - b Neuritis
 - c Phrenic paralysis
 - d Myasthenia gravis
 - e Administration of curare-like drugs
 - f Increased intracranial pressure
 - g Injury to medulla oblongata
 - h Excessive doses of anesthetic agents or other depressant drugs, such as morphine or barbiturates
 - i Tight dressings
 - j Abdominal distention
- B Inadequate oxygenation of abnormal lungs
- 1 Insufficient quantity of functioning lung tissue resulting from
 - a Pneumothorax
 - b Hydrothorax
 - c Increased intra-abdominal pressure
 - d Atelectasis
 - e Pneumonia
 - f Neoplasm
 - g Cyst
 - h Infarct
 - i Tuberculous cavitation
 - j Pulmonary hemangiomata

- k Removal of lung tissue
 - l Congestive heart disease
 - m Emphysema
 - 2 Improper alveolar mixing of inspired gases
 - 3 Poor diffusion of gases across alveolar capillary membrane caused by
 - a Pulmonary infection with exudation into the alveoli
 - b Pulmonary fibrosis
 - c Diffuse pulmonary hemorrhage
 - d Pulmonary capillary sclerosis
 - C Venous-arterial shunts—these may occur in
 - 1 Some types of congenital heart disease
 - 2 Pulmonary hemangiomata
 - 3 Cases in which blood is circulating through unaerated alveoli
 - D Inadequate transport of oxygen by the blood
 - 1 Diminution of active hemoglobin caused by
 - a Severe, acute, or chronic anemia
 - b Methemoglobinemia
 - c Carbon monoxide poisoning
 - d Sulfhemoglobinemia
 - 2 Deficient circulation
 - a Generalized lack found in
 - (1) Hemorrhage
 - (2) Shock
 - b Localized lack found in
 - (1) Peripheral vascular disease
 - (2) Peripheral vasoconstriction
 - (3) Cardiac pathology
 - (a) Congestive heart failure
 - (b) Coronary occlusion
 - (c) Acquired valvular defects
 - (d) Congenital cardiac anomalies
 - E Inadequate tissue oxygenation
 - 1 Tissue edema
 - 2 Abnormally high tissue demand for oxygen
 - 3 Poisoning of cellular enzyme systems
-

Excessive doses of anesthetics and sedatives depress enzyme systems, cyanide inactivates cytochrome oxidase

* From AMERICAN MEDICAL ASSOCIATION *Fundamentals of Anesthesia*, Ed 3 Philadelphia, W B Saunders Company, 1954 (After Comroe, J H, Jr, and Dripps, R D)

rapid fall in blood pressure (Fig 217) The surgeon should always view with alarm the observation by the anesthetist that, though some blood has been lost, the blood pressure not only has not fallen, it is actually rising. This is often a warning sign of anoxia or of hypercapnia, however, if at this point the pulmonary ventilation is increased by the anesthetist, the blood pressure may decline to normal levels and no shock ensues. Even

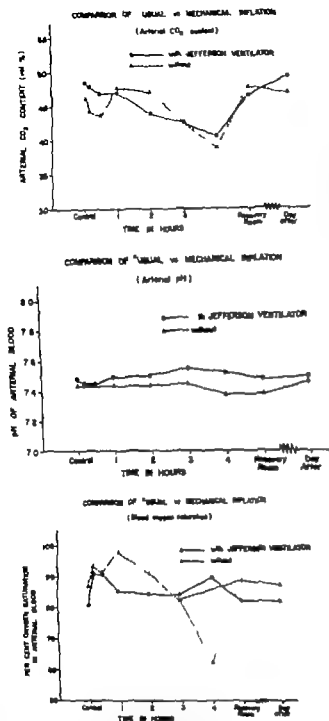


Fig 218 Comparison of "usual" versus mechanical inflation of the lungs during anesthesia. (From HARDY J D DAMPEIER, J O JR TURNER, M D., AND BITTENBENDER, G. Data published in *Surgical Forum* 7: 182 1957) Fifteen patients were studied with each method. Toward the end of operation hyperventilation occurred in both groups and lowered the CO₂ content of arterial blood. In general, the blood pH was maintained satisfactorily by both methods. The control arterial oxygen saturations were depressed in the initial studies by the heavy preanesthetic medication then employed. While the averages indicate that satisfactory ventilation can be achieved by either manual or mechanical assistance 2 patients in the "manual"

the fall in blood pressure which must eventually follow an initial rise due to serious anoxia may also be effectively treated by increasing the respiratory function, if anoxia has not existed too long. Unfortunately, the initial and warning elevation of blood pressure in asphyxia may not occur if the patient is already quite deeply anesthetized. This is particularly true if the third plane of the third stage has been reached.

The most common cause of hypotension during anesthesia is still, however, blood loss with inadequate blood replacement. Other causes of shock during anesthesia are shown in Table 14 (p 361).

HYPERTENSION DURING ANESTHESIA Marked rises in blood pressure may be produced by epinephrine secretion incident to the struggles and emotional excitement of the induction of the anesthesia. The blood pressure is usually higher during the earlier portions of the anesthetic induction than it is after the patient has reached the stage of surgical anesthesia.

An undiagnosed pheochromocytoma may, very rarely precipitate severe hypertension followed by circulatory collapse.

Cardiac Standstill and Ventricular Fibrillation

Etiology Cardiac arrest and ventricular fibrillation are treated in much the same manner and therefore will be considered together.

Cardiac standstill may occur from any of a number of factors, the most common of which is excessive anesthesia or asphyxia, or both, or from certain strong vagal stimuli such as may occur when one is producing traction in the region of the pulmonary hilum. Of course, cardiac arrest is particularly likely to occur during heart operations.

Ventricular fibrillation on the other hand, may follow any of the causes which have been enumerated for cardiac arrest but it also apparently can occur in situations in

group suffered serious hypoxia and respiratory acidosis, and one had a nonfatal cardiac arrest. Averages obscure such individual variations.

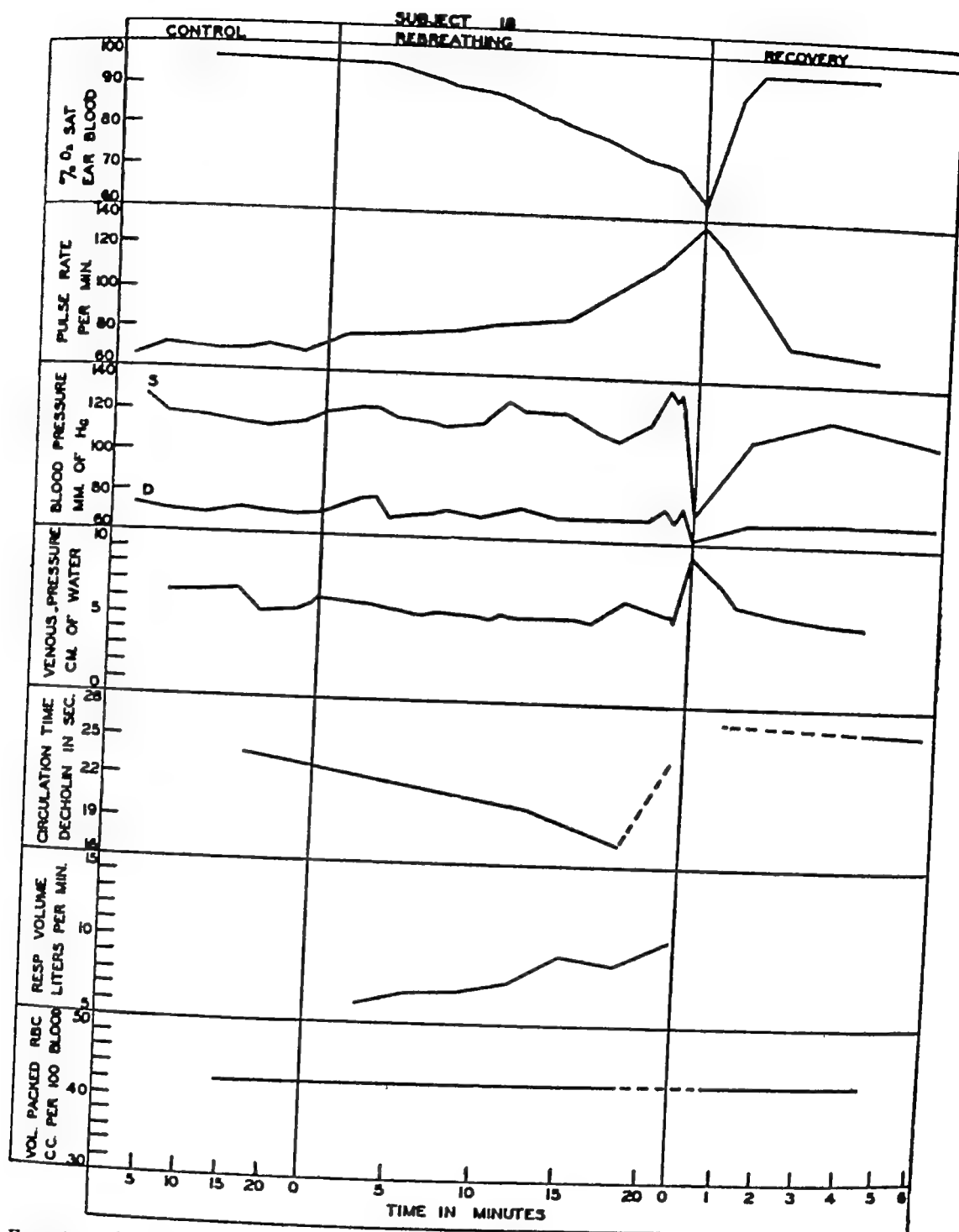


Fig 217 Circulatory alterations produced by rebreathing in man (From ERSHLER, I, KOSSMANN, C E, AND WHITE, M S Venous pressure and circulation time during acute progressive anoxia in man *Am J Physiol*, 138: 595, 1942-1943) The subject was allowed to rebreathe without the addition of oxygen to the gas mixture Eventually the oxygen available in the system was so depleted that the oxygen concentration in ear blood fell to 65 per cent, pulse rate approached 140, blood pressure fell to 80 systolic after a brief preliminary elevation, and venous pressure rose, as did the minute respiratory volume These experimental findings in a volunteer subject are very similar to those observed during hypoxic anesthesia

which serious hypoxia has not occurred and where the anesthesia is actually very light The presence of epinephrine in the blood may increase the general irritability of the heart, as does cyclopropane

Nevertheless, cardiac standstill is far more frequent than is ventricular fibrillation, aside from cardiac operations, and the most common cause is that of anoxia or hypercapnia due to any of several causes

The following case report illustrates the type of anesthetic conduct which can produce cardiac arrest.

Case study Patient H. B. was a 47 year-old white woman who was in good health with the exception that she had chronic cholecystitis with cholelithiasis. She was brought to the operating room following preanesthetic medication which consisted of morphine sulfate, 10 mg, and atropine sulfate, 0.4 mg, given subcutaneously 1 hour previously. The patient was a moderately obese individual with a short neck, and the student anesthetist experienced difficulty in ventilating the lungs adequately before any attempt was made to introduce the endotracheal tube. However after some effort an endotracheal tube was inserted and the face mask was reapplied. At this point the surgeon had finished scrubbing and had entered the operating room where the anesthesia was being induced. As he was putting on his gown and gloves he noted that the patient's respiratory excursions were very slight and that the movements of the gas bag were also very slight, though the patient was obviously 'pulling' very hard in an effort to inspire. The skin was cyanotic, but was not deeply so, and no interference with the conduct of the anesthesia was attempted. Nevertheless, it was quite obvious that the induction was not proceeding smoothly and so the surgeon "broke scrub" and placed a finger upon the radial artery. The pulse was quite rapid and presently it began to couple—that is, there were two beats and then a dropped third beat and this continued as the patient became more and more cyanotic. At this point the surgeon insisted that the student call her superior and this was done. The superior immediately seized the syringe containing Pentothal to give the patient additional dose intravenously to relieve the spasm. Thus the surgeon discouraged. He asked that, instead the mask be removed and the endotracheal tube be examined—since the chest was not being expanded even with forceful manual compression of the gas bag. It

was found that the endotracheal tube was completely kinked in the upper pharynx and that gas could not be forced through it. The patient by this time was deeply cyanotic and the pulse was extremely irregular and weak. However, after another endotracheal tube had been inserted and effective respiration achieved, the skin color soon improved. The pulse remained irregular for a few more minutes until a number of adequate respirations had been accomplished, but it then gradually returned to one of moderate rate, good volume, and regular rhythm.

At this point a consultation was held between the surgeon and the anesthetist and it was decided to continue the operation since now the blood pressure and the respiratory exchange appeared to be satisfactory. The operation began with a right subcostal incision which was developed to expose the peritoneal cavity and the gallbladder. However, no sooner had a clamp been placed upon the gallbladder than the anesthetist stated that the pulse was no longer palpable. The surgeon quickly palpated the aorta and there was no pulsation. Accordingly, the left chest was immediately entered just below the large pendulous breast and the heart was found to be at a standstill. Manual compression for only three times was sufficient to start the heart again, and thereafter it continued to beat adequately. Presently the chest was closed. The gallbladder was then quickly removed and the abdomen was closed. The patient made an uneventful recovery.

Comment This patient is illustrative of numerous problems which enter into the cause and management of cardiac arrest. The cardiac musculature had already been depressed by the period of asphyxiation which had occurred during the time that the kinked endotracheal tube remained in the trachea largely blocking the respiratory exchange. The fact that the cardiac neuromuscular mechanism was affected was reflected in the fact that the pulse had become markedly irregular and faint during that time.

Subsequently, the operation was continued because it was considered that the anesthesia was now satisfactory, which it was. Nevertheless, the prolonged period of decreased oxygen saturation had rendered the cardiac musculature abnormal in its reaction, the traction on the gallbladder—perhaps associated with some fall in blood pressure (the blood pressure did not happen to be measured at this particular time) and the fact that the reflexes set up in this region affect the heart—resulted in cardiac standstill. Fortunately, the anesthetist was now thoroughly alert to any further difficulty, and she had her hand upon the pulse. The state of cardiac arrest was noted almost the instant it occurred, and this permitted prompt left thoracotomy and cardiac massage which quickly restored the cardiac beat. The longer the delay, the more difficult it is to start the heart.

THE MANAGEMENT OF CARDIAC ARREST The management of cardiac arrest must begin long before the surgeon is ever face to face with this dire emergency in the operating room. Surgical residents and all others doing surgery, regardless of what type of surgery it is, must now indoctrinate themselves with the measures which must be taken when cardiac arrest occurs. They must steel their conviction that they will promptly open the chest, if no pulse or blood pressure can be obtained when these were previously present. The importance of the development of a definite plan of action to be used when one is confronted with cardiac arrest cannot be overemphasized. We are reminded of a young resident who was faced with the necessity of doing a tracheotomy immediately for postoperative thyroid bleeding, instead of meeting the emergency, he rushed to the operating room to find an anesthetist who would do an endotracheal intubation. But while he was gone the patient died. The resident's self-analysis was an honest and searching one. He stated that when next aware of the need for definite and immediate action he would not again fail to meet the issue squarely himself. And he

proved this the following week. He was doing an abdominal operation in a poor risk patient when cardiac arrest occurred. Without the slightest hesitation he opened the chest, restored the heart beat, and saved the patient's life.

When the anesthetist states that the pulse is no longer palpable and the blood pressure is zero, the surgeon must assume that cardiac arrest exists—if he too can feel no pulse in a major vessel or if a cardioscope (if being used) so indicates. The matter of opening the chest is now such a simple one that there can be no excuse for failure to attempt resuscitation. *Three things must be done. First, the chest must be opened and the heart massaged at a rate of from 60 to 120 beats per minute (Fig 218). Second, the anesthetist must vigorously inflate the lungs by use of the bag at a rate of at least 20 respirations per minute (Fig 219). Third, just as quickly as possible an intravenous infusion must be started, preferably with blood, but with plasma, plasma expander, saline or glucose, if blood is not available.*

These three measures provide for the immediate emergency. If the ventricles are fibrillating, the arrhythmia can be managed with electroshock after the patient and the heart itself have been reoxygenated. Prolonged massage may be required (hearts have resumed function even after several hours), but usually the beat is rapidly restored if the duration of arrest has been brief.

The surgeon is often worried by several largely academic problems. For example, he is apprehensive that bleeding from the intercostal arteries will occur. This obviously will not be serious, since if the heart has stopped there will be only the static blood pressure in these vessels. Too, there is the fear that the lung will be cut. Even if this does occur—though it rarely will occur if even the most nominal care is used—it does not constitute a serious injury, the defect can be readily oversewn with chromic catgut later. Also, there is the possibility that the heart itself will be stabbed with the

knife as the chest wall is opened. We have actually seen this occur in one patient, the knife used to open the chest actually inflicted a small stab wound in the left ventricle. However, the coronary artery was not cut, the heart was started by manual compression, the stab wound was oversewn, and the resident could credit himself with the saving of a life. Of course, chest wall bleeding will occur after the blood pressure has been restored but the vessels are easily ligated.

The importance of having the right heart

CARDIAC COMPRESSION

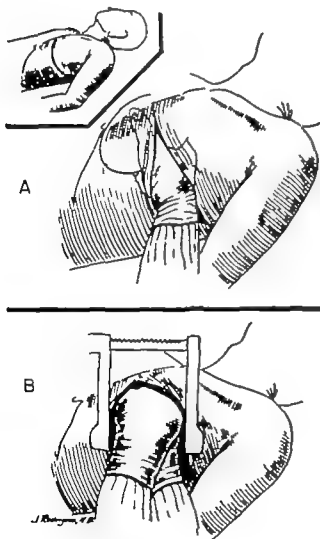


Fig 218 The important thing in cardiac arrest is to open the left chest quickly and begin compressing the heart. The lungs are ventilated effectively with air or pure oxygen and intravenous fluids are given (preferably blood plasma or plasma expander). Other details must await these three basic requirements.

LARYNGOSCOPY

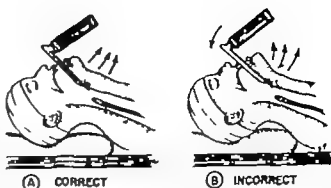


Fig 210 All surgeons should be thoroughly versed in the use of the laryngoscope (After Adriani.)

fill as it is being compressed is a very real one. The heart will not be filling if the venous return to the right heart is inadequate and instead of an effective pulse at a rate of from 60 to 100 times per minute, a slower rate will have to be adopted to permit the heart to fill with blood. However, with the infusion of a suitable fluid intravenously the venous return to the right heart will be adequate.

MANAGEMENT OF VENTRICULAR FIBRILLATION

Ventricular fibrillation poses a more serious problem than does simple cardiac standstill. Nevertheless, as noted, the initial treatment for ventricular fibrillation is the same as that for cardiac standstill. Cardiac massage, intravenous infusion, and pulmonary ventilation with pure oxygen are maintained for several minutes before an attempt is made to bring the fibrillating ventricles to a standstill after which the treatment is again precisely the same as for cardiac standstill. So, to produce a regular rhythm in the presence of ventricular fibrillation, it is necessary first to stop the purposeless muscular contractions entirely. This may be accomplished in one of two ways. One may cross-clamp the aorta just distal to the coronary arteries and instill 2 per cent potassium chloride into the aorta proximal to the occluding clamp; this fluid is then massaged into the coronary arteries and the heart comes usually, to a standstill. On the other hand one may use the electroshock

apparatus (defibrillator)—which we prefer. Many such instruments are now available commercially.

It is often stated that no more than 5 minutes must have elapsed before effective heart beat is restored, else the brain will have been damaged beyond recovery. Unfortunately, the time available is often even shorter than 5 minutes, for a relative anoxia may have existed for some time to cause the cardiac arrest.

REACTIONS TO LOCAL (INCLUDING TOPICAL) ANESTHETIC AGENTS Adriani and Campbell² have recently reported the very rapid absorption of local anesthetics through mucous membranes. For example, a quantity of a drug that resulted in no detectable blood level when infiltrated subcutaneously gave levels when applied topically that were equal to one-third to one-half of those after intravenous injection. Thus, reactions caused by local anesthetic agents are probably due to overdosage with absorption. Accordingly, the less drug used, the less will be the incidence of reactions—as has

been noted by all who do bronchoscopy regularly.

REFERENCES

- 1 ADRIANI, J. *The Chemistry of Anesthesia*, Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, 1946.
- 2 ADRIANI, J., AND CAMPBELL, D. Fatalities following topical application of local anesthetics to mucous membranes. *J A M A*, **162**: 1, 1956.
- 3 AMERICAN MEDICAL ASSOCIATION. *Fundamentals of Anesthesia*, Ed 3. Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Company, 1954.
- 4 DRIPPS, R. D., AND VANDAM, L. D. Hazards of lumbar puncture. *J A M A*, **147**: 1118, 1951.
- 5 DRIPPS, R. D., AND VANDAM, L. D. Long-term follow-up of patients who received 10 spinal anesthetics. *J A M A*, **156**: 1, 1954.
- 6 DRUCKER, W. R., COSTLEY, C., STULTS, R., MILLER, M., CRAIG, J. W., AND WOODWARD, J. The effect of ether anesthesia on pyruvate metabolism. *Surgical Forum*, **7**: 185, 1957.
- 7 GUEDEL, A. E. *Inhalation Anesthesia*, Ed 2. New York, The Macmillan Company, 1936.
- 8 LUCAS, G. H. W., AND HENDERSON, V. E. Cyclopropane anesthetic gas, cyclopropane, preliminary report. *Canad M A J*, **21**: 173, 1929.
- 9 WATERS, R. M., AND SCHMIDT, E. R. Cyclopropane anesthesia. *J A M A*, **103**: 975, 1932.

Chapter 18

The Endocrine System

The Pituitary

If it performed no functions other than to regulate the rates of thyroid and adrenocortical activity, the pituitary would deserve consideration in this volume. However, this gland of manifold secretions has many other far-reaching potentialities. Certain of these will be reviewed, and the physiologic effects of hypophysectomy and of pituitary tumors will be outlined.

The Anterior Pituitary

SURVEY OF HORMONES (FIG 220) The anterior lobe of the pituitary consists of at least three types of cells—the acidophil, the basophil, and the chromophobe (nonfunctioning?) cells. The following hormonal substances are secreted: (1) adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH), (2) thyroid stimulating hormone (TSH), (3) growth (somatotrophic) hormone, (4) gonadotrophic hormone (gonadotropin), and (5) lactogenic hormone (prolactin).

Adrenocorticotropin (ACTH) It was noted in Chapter 1 that the activity of the adrenal cortex is regulated almost entirely by the release of ACTH (a protein substance) by the pituitary. In turn, the rate of release of this substance by the pituitary is related to the level of adrenocortical hormones in the blood. For example, the administration of cortisone or hydrocortisone suppresses the secretion of ACTH by the patient's own pituitary (Fig. 242). Conversely, adrenocortical insufficiency may be associated with an increased blood ACTH

level if the cortical insufficiency is not secondary to pituitary disease.

ACTH stimulates the adrenal cortex to secrete increased amounts of hydrocortisone, corticosterone, aldosterone (?) and, presumably, other adrenocortical hormones. Moreover, the physiologic effects of ACTH appear to be mediated entirely through the adrenocortical hormones. The material is inactive by the oral route, readily effective by the intramuscular route, and maximally effective by the intravenous route.

Thyroid stimulating hormone (thyrotropin, TSH) This tropic material increases thyroid weight and activity in much the same fashion that ACTH influences the adrenal cortex; its absence results in thyroid regression. Administration of TSH to normal animals produces an increase in thyroid weight, a loss of colloid with an increase in acinar cell height, an increased uptake of I^{131} , an increase in the serum protein bound iodine (PBI) level, and an elevation of the basal metabolic rate (BMR).

Diffuse toxic (exophthalmic) goiter or Graves' disease has been considered to be due to an increased rate of release of TSH, though Werner¹⁰³ has presented evidence that the fault is primary in the thyroid. The solitary toxic nodule is considered perhaps to reflect localized hypersensitivity to the normal amount of TSH. This material is effective by the parenteral but not by the oral route.

Growth hormone (somatotropin) This substance has been obtained in purified form from the pituitaries of cows and hogs and

THE ANTERIOR PITUITARY HORMONES
AND THEIR FUNCTIONS

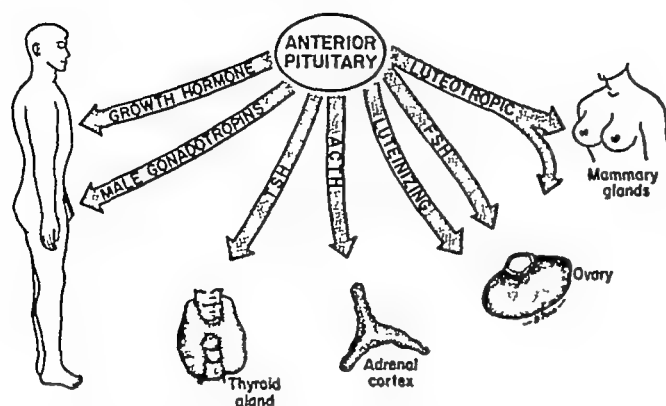


Fig 220 The pituitary hormones have far reaching effects

has been extensively studied by Evans, Simpson, and Li⁴⁴ and by several surgical units in recent years. It normally stimulates growth in the young organism, and the tissue formation so stimulated is high in protein and low in fat. A positive nitrogen balance has been achieved in adults following the administration of growth hormone.

If one injects growth hormone in young dogs, changes are produced in the skeleton which resemble acromegaly. Presumably growth hormone, which affects all substances necessary for normal lean tissue construction, is responsible for the excessive growth in the adolescent that may result in gigantism.

Possible clinical uses of the purified material have not been clearly defined. Its use in the management of burn patients has not materially influenced the mortality.

Gonadotropic hormone (gonadotropin) This term embraces both the follicle stimulating hormone (FSH) and the luteinizing hormone (LH). The ovary responds to the gonadotropic substances with growth of the primordial follicle, ovulation, and formation of the corpus luteum. Moreover, steroid hormones which influence the growth and development of the endometrium, as well as the secondary sex organs and characteristics, are produced by the ovary in response to gonadotropins. The corpus luteum is maintained by prolactin or luteotropin. In the male, FSH may promote spermatogenesis

while LH stimulates the Leydig cells which secrete androgenic steroid.

Other hormones of the anterior pituitary It is by no means certain that all major hormones of the anterior pituitary have been discovered. For instance, it has always seemed odd that such important endocrine organs as the parathyroids, pancreas, and adrenal medulla should not be more directly influenced by the pituitary tropic substances than we have sure knowledge of at present.

HYPOFUNCTION OF THE ANTERIOR PITUITARY
Spontaneous hypopituitarism Since the major function of the anterior pituitary is to secrete the important tropic hormones which regulate the activity of various other endocrine organs and of general somatic development, serious consequences follow diminished pituitary activity. In 1914 Simmonds⁹⁷ described a man with clinical findings suggestive of hypopituitarism, and autopsy studies revealed that the essential feature was destruction of the pituitary gland. The primary endocrine defect had been insufficiency of the hormones ordinarily elaborated by the anterior lobe of the pituitary. Hypopituitarism has since become commonly recognized, and some of the lesions which produce this hypofunction are tumors, cysts, gumma, massive tuberculous necrosis, granulomas of unknown etiology, hypophysectomy, and Sheehan's postpartum necrosis of the anterior lobe. Sheehan⁹⁸ described massive focal atrophy of the anterior pituitary that occurs only in women and is nearly always of postpartum origin. The lesion appears to represent an ischemic necrosis similar in type to an infarct and occupying most of the anterior lobe. He reported 14 cases of fresh pituitary necrosis and 1 of late pituitary necrosis observed in the course of 2 years at the Glasgow Royal Maternity and Women's Hospital. It is considered that the necrosis occurs in the hypertrophied pituitary of pregnancy due to hemorrhage and, perhaps in addition, because of hypotension or general circulatory collapse at the time of delivery, resulting in

inadequate blood flow to the pituitary for a short time. The treatment of this condition with replacement therapy has thus far been disappointing.

*Surgical hypopituitarism (hypophysectomy for advanced cancer)*¹¹ The use of hypophysectomy in the treatment of advanced breast cancer in 28 patients was reviewed by Kennedy, French, and Peyton.¹² In discussing the endocrinologic aspects of this procedure, they pointed out that the best available index in the living subject of the completeness of hypophysectomy, even though a crude one, is the subsequent activity of endocrine organs dependent upon the pituitary tropic stimulus. In their patients the best sign of marked hypopituitarism was the inability to withdraw cortisone therapy, for to do so resulted in the usual evidence of acute adrenocortical insufficiency consisting of hypotension, fever, and collapse. (More recently LeRoy *et al* have used tagged cholesterol and measured corticoid production.¹³)

Ovarian function could not be studied in most patients because oophorectomy had been performed prior to the hypophysectomy, nevertheless, measurement of the pituitary gonadotropic hormone revealed a disappearance of this substance after operation and in no case did it reappear in the urine.

Thyroid function varied following hypophysectomy. Often within 3 months of operation the patients noted dry skin, decreased sweating, cold intolerance constipation, weight gain, and poor regrowth of scalp hair. Subsequently, sluggish behavior, myxedematous facies and a slow response of tendon reflexes was observed. Thyroid function tests revealed a decrease to hypothyroid levels.

Diabetes insipidus of some degree appeared in virtually every patient, the degree of polyuria and polydipsia varying in different subjects. In some the condition was temporary and in others permanent. Whether or not it was permanent appeared to be related not to the completeness of hy-

pophysectomy but to whether or not there was irreversible damage to the cells of the hypophyseal stalk and hypothalamus. Polyuria was controlled, where required by nasal insufflation of pitressin powder.

The advanced *breast cancer* for which the operation had been performed was considered to be objectively improved in 18 of 28 patients treated. Even so, hypophysectomy constitutes a rather heroic measure for brief palliation.

TUMORS OF THE ANTERIOR PITUITARY *Eosinophil (acidophilic) adenomas of the anterior pituitary* comprise approximately 20 per cent of pituitary adenomas, and they secrete abnormal amounts of various of the anterior pituitary hormones. When the acidophilic adenoma arises in pre-adult life before ossification is complete, *gigantism* results. If the tumor develops in an adult, the condition known as *acromegaly* may be produced. It is characterized by overgrowth of the bones of the hands, feet and face, atrophy of the gonads with decline in sexual function (this may be preceded by a temporary increase in sexual function), enlargement of the viscera, stimulation of the thyroid and adrenals which may result in signs of excessive activity of these organs, and, finally, derangements in glucose metabolism, probably secondary to the increased adrenocortical activity. Visual field defects may result from optic nerve involvement.

Basophil adenomas of the anterior pituitary¹⁴ rarely grow to sufficient size to cause pressure symptoms. For many years following Cushing's original description of the basophil adenoma it was considered that the tumor of the pituitary was the cause of Cushing's syndrome or, at least, that Cushing's syndrome (p 565) arose from overstimulation of the adrenal cortices by some secretion of these basophil cells, presumably ACTH. Nevertheless, recently there has been doubt whether these basophil tumors are responsible for any aspect of Cushing's syndrome. In fact there is evidence that the "neoplastic" changes in the basophil cells may be the result of the in-

creased blood level of adrenocortical hormone, in other words, that the basophil tumor may be a result rather than the cause of the Cushing's syndrome, at least in some instances. Moreover, many believe that ACTH is secreted, not by the basophil cells, but by the eosinophil cells of the anterior pituitary. Therefore, the significance of basophil tumors is uncertain at this point.

Chromophobe adenomas constitute about 70 per cent of the pituitary adenomas, and are by far the largest group of pituitary tumors requiring surgical intervention. No hypersecretion has been attributed to them and, as a rule, the symptoms of chromophobe tumors are largely those of hypopituitarism, due to encroachment upon and destruction of the endocrine cells of the anterior lobe. As indicated above, hypopituitarism is characterized by the loss of libido in the male and amenorrhea in the female. Body hair becomes scant and men need shave only rarely. The basal metabolic rate is usually diminished and obesity may occur.

Other tumors of the pituitary are adamantinomas and suprasellar cysts, neither of which has any particular physiologic significance other than that it may compress neighboring structures.

Differential Diagnosis of Pituitary Tumors The well developed clinical picture of acromegaly or gigantism is usually enough to permit a diagnosis of eosinophil adenoma. Patients with these tumors often have severe headaches, but as a rule visual disturbances due to compression of the optic chiasm or optic nerves do not occur until late. The visual field defect, when it occurs, is usually that of bitemporal hemianopsia or a right or left homonymous hemianopsia.

Patients with eosinophil adenomas may eventually exhibit signs of decreased pituitary function. Roentgen examination may reveal enlargement or erosion of the sella turcica and surrounding structures.

Management of Pituitary Tumors The eosinophil adenoma has in the past most commonly been treated initially with deep

roentgen therapy. If this has no effect and the tumor progresses, as evidenced by an increasing defect in visual fields and headache, surgical intervention is indicated. It may not be possible to remove the entire tumor, but the optic chiasm must be freed from pressure.

At the present time, neurosurgeons are more and more attacking the pituitary directly, with irradiation being depended upon less often. Surgical approaches and techniques have been better worked out, and the operation does not carry the same risk as it previously did. Certainly surgery is usually employed for the management of chromophobe adenomas, the most common pituitary tumor. The most serious effect of many pituitary tumors is that of visual loss, and they should be dealt with before vision has become seriously impaired.

The Posterior Pituitary

The posterior lobe or neurohypophysis is anatomically fused with, but physiologically separate from, the anterior lobe or adenohypophysis. It is intimately connected with the hypothalamus and it secretes two hormones: the antidiuretic substance (ADH, pitressin) and the oxytocic substance (pitocin). The latter stimulates the uterus, particularly at term, and it has also been shown to promote the discharge of milk from the breast during lactation.⁸⁵

Hypofunction of the neurohypophysis results in diabetes insipidus (p. 42), characterized by the secretion of large quantities of dilute urine, necessarily accompanied by polydipsia. The condition is managed with pitressin.

Hyperfunction of the neurohypophysis, such as might be produced by a functioning tumor, has not been described, to our knowledge.

The Thyroid

Embryology The thyroid gland develops as an invagination of the floor of the embryonic pharynx. This process descends as a cellular stalk to the anterior part of the neck.

and then, by proliferation of its cells, gives rise to the epithelial elements which are later to become the adult organ. The connection with the pharynx, known as the thyroglossal tract usually disappears and is represented only by the foramen cecum at the base of the tongue. If this structure does persist, it may give rise to the familiar thyroglossal duct cyst. The normal adult thyroid gland weighs from 24 to 30 gm.

The gross anatomic relationships of the normal thyroid are shown in Fig. 221. At operation certain complications are likely to arise if particular care is not exercised. First the recurrent laryngeal nerves ascend on either side of the trachea and run beneath the respective thyroid lobes. The incidence of nerve injury at operation is probably in the neighborhood of 3 per cent or higher considering United States surgery as a whole. Second the parathyroid glands may be inadvertently removed if a radical thyroidectomy is to be performed. Third the thyroid gland has a rich blood supply and postoperative bleeding within the fascial

confines of the neck can cause tracheal compression and asphyxia.

The Iodine Cycle: Role in Histologic Appearance of the Gland

Microscopically the organ consists of many spherical or oval follicles which are lined by cuboidal epithelium. The center or cavity of the follicles is normally filled with a pink staining viscous material known as the colloid of the gland, and it consists chiefly of an iodine-containing protein called *thyroglobulin*. The colloid is decreased in amount in the hyperplastic or toxic gland, and the cells are more nearly columnar than cuboidal. However, when iodine is given the patient whose gland is hyperplastic the colloid increases, the cells lining the follicles again become cuboidal and the appearance of the gland resumes the normal appearance.

IODINE METABOLISM.^{10, 51} Clearly the iodine cycle has much to do with the microscopic picture and the functional status of the thyroid gland. What are some of the

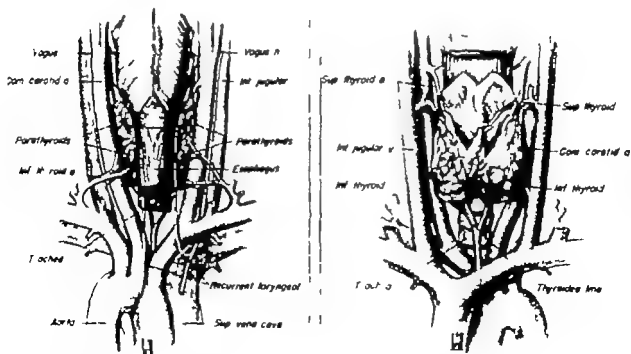


Fig. 221 Posterior and anterior views of the thyroid and its relationships. (From HARDY J. D. *Surgery and the Endocrine System*. Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Company 1952.)

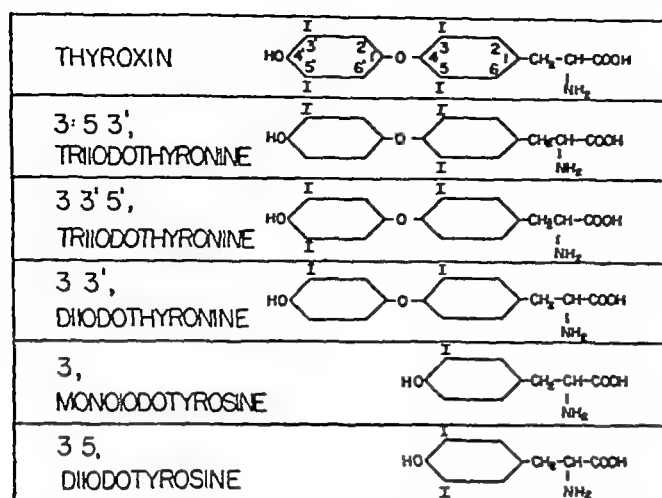


Fig 222 Structural formulas of iodinated amino acids found in the thyroid gland and in plasma (From OLIVER, L. In *Physiologic Principles of Surgery*, edited by L. M. Zimmerman and R. Levine. Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Company, 1957.)

more important aspects of the iodine cycle, particularly as regards the effect of various therapeutic measures?

The weight of iodine in the thyroid gland is approximately 15 mg, and this represents almost one-fifth of the total body iodine. It is found in several known forms, and others will doubtless be described (Fig 222). Reports vary as to the exact proportions to be assigned the different forms in which elemental iodine is found in the thyroid gland and in plasma. Roughly, in the gland inorganic iodide has been estimated at 10 per cent, thyroxine, 35 per cent, 3:5 3' triiodothyronine, 20 per cent, diiodotyrosine, 25 per cent, moniodotyrosine, 17 per cent, and moniodohistidine, 2 per cent.⁸⁶ It was only a few years ago that thyroxine was the only known active thyroid principle.

It was seen above that the follicles of the normal thyroid gland contain considerable amounts of colloid (essentially thyroglobulin). This protein contains both thyroxine and diiodotyrosine, bound to the rest of the protein molecule by the peptide linkage. Thus, thyroglobulin is a storage form of thyroxine. Diiodotyrosine is a precursor of the latter, and moniodotyrosine may be a precursor of triiodothyronine.

The *iodine cycle* is presented in Figure 223. Iodide is extracted from the blood and

concentrated in the thyroid gland at a level several hundred times that in the blood. It is excreted principally by the kidney. However, iodide as such is not reactive with proteins to form the organic thyroid principles. Therefore, some process must exist by which the iodide that the thyroid "traps" from the extrathyroidal iodide "pool" is oxidized to iodine. This is emphasized by the demonstration of Dvoskin⁴² that the subcutaneous injection of elemental iodine (I_2) can excrete a thyroxine-like effect on adrenal size and growth in thyroidectomized animals, while similar doses of iodide are virtually without effect. There is evidence that this oxidation of iodide to iodine in the thyroid is catalyzed by a peroxidase, but Roche, Lissitzky, and Michel⁹³ do not consider that the presence of a specific oxidase is physiologically necessary for this reaction. Regardless of whether or not a specific enzyme is required, it appears that *the effect of anti-thyroid drugs is to block the essential step of the conversion of iodide to iodine in the thyroid*. In other words, following the administration of thiouracil the gland can still "trap" iodide from the blood stream, but it cannot convert it to iodine so that it can be incorporated with amino acids such as tyrosine to form thyroxine and other metabolically active thyroid principles.

For the release of thyroxine into the blood stream the huge thyroglobulin molecule must be degraded, since it cannot itself normally pass into the capillaries. This is effected by a proteolytic enzyme capable of liberating iodinated amino acids from the thyroglobulin. The injection of thyrotropin (TSH) apparently activates this process, and the plasma thyroxine level rises.

THYROXINE AND TRIIODOTHYRONINE To recapitulate, in the thyroid inorganic iodide is changed to iodine by peroxidase and is bound initially into moniodotyrosine and diiodotyrosine (Fig 223). Two molecules of the latter are then combined to form thyroxine. Triiodothyronine is also formed, perhaps by a coupling of moniodotyrosine and diiodotyrosine or by a deiodination of thy-

THYROIDAL METABOLISM OF IODINE

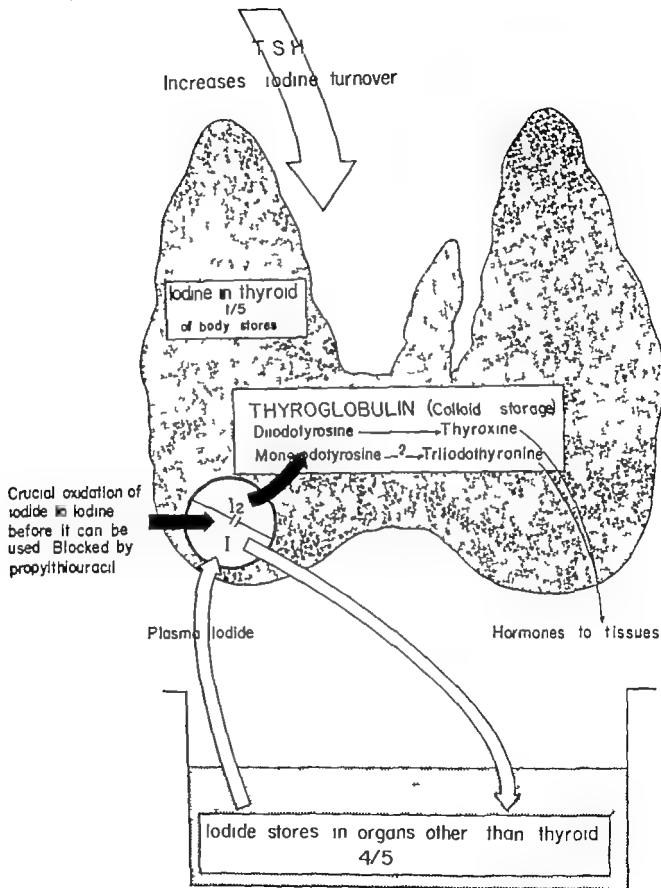


Fig 223 Thyroid function is intimately associated with iodine metabolism.

roxine These and other iodinated amino acids, which represent the active thyroid hormones, are then stored in thyroglobulin, the familiar thyroid colloid material Under proper stimulus, presumably that of TSH under usual circumstances, a proteolytic enzyme degrades the large thyroglobulin molecule and releases the various iodinated amino acids, but normally only metabolically active compounds reach the blood stream To be active, the compound must carry iodine at the 3' position on the thyronine structure (Fig 222)⁸⁶

Since the rate of thyroid activity is normally controlled largely by the anterior pituitary (TSH), what regulates the release of thyrotropin? The level of circulating thyroxine appears to have some rôle, and the hypothalamus may contribute an additional effect

By the use of paper chromatography it has been shown that only thyroxine and triiodothyronine are normally present in the plasma, the latter only in minute amounts in the absence of hyperthyroidism Following surgical trauma or radiation damage, however, even thyroglobulin itself may appear in the circulation

The general *metabolic effects of thyroxine* are well known An initial effect is to increase the metabolic rate, but normal growth and mental development also depend upon an adequate supply of the thyroid hormones Hypothyroidism during the growth period results in cretinism Hypothyroidism in adults results in myxedema, characterized by abnormal collections of water, salt, and protein, these are promptly mobilized by the administration of active thyroid hormones Other metabolic effects have to do with the metabolism of carbohydrate (deranged glucose tolerance curve and glycosuria, in thyrotoxicosis), of lipids (increased serum cholesterol level in hypothyroidism), and proteins (abnormal protein deposits in myxedema) The neuromuscular system exhibits evidence of increased irritability in the presence of excessive amounts of thyroxine, but eventually the muscles may exhibit actual

atrophy and marked myasthenia Atrial fibrillation and heart failure may accompany thyrotoxicosis of long standing, and there is evidence that the myocardium is more sensitive to thyroxine than are most other tissues The thyroid hormone increases protein breakdown and results in a negative nitrogen balance if the patient does not eat with an increased appetite Creatinuria is characteristic of hyperthyroidism and has been used as a means of diagnosing this condition, the response of creatinuria to the administration of thiourea has also been used as a test for thyrotoxicosis Thyroxine increases rates of absorption from the gastrointestinal tract and is thought to diminish the secretion of TSH by the anterior pituitary The relationship between thyroid and adrenal hormones will be referred to subsequently

There is some evidence that thyroxine is converted to triiodothyronine at the tissue level before it is metabolically effective

The *metabolic effects of triiodothyronine*⁸⁷ are qualitatively very similar to those of thyroxine, but quantitatively the former is more potent on a weight basis and produces physiologic effects much more rapidly For example, McGavack and Reckendorf⁸⁷ compared the activities of desiccated thyroid substance, sodium L-thyroxine, and D,L-triiodothyronine in 12 cases of adult myxedema The average daily control dose for desiccated thyroid was 152.6 mg (range, 120 to 210 mg), that for sodium L-thyroxine was 258.0 micrograms (range, 200 to 350 micrograms), and that for D,L-triiodothyronine was 145.1 micrograms (range, 100 to 175 micrograms) Moreover, the number of days required to bring the subject back to the euthyroid state with optimal doses of the respective drugs was, for desiccated thyroid 21.0, for sodium L-thyroxine 19.2, and for D,L-triiodothyronine 5.0, with individual variations

Actually, the physiologic effects of triiodothyronine can be detected within hours following injection, while those of thyroxine require several days This is of particular

interest in view of the fact it has been difficult to explain early postoperative nitrogen wastage on a thyroid basis, if thyroxine were the only thyroid hormone concerned. However the early postoperative nitrogen wastage could be produced by the more rapidly acting triiodothyronine, though such an increase in this hormone has yet to be demonstrated conclusively.

Mechanism of Action of Thyroid Hormones

It would appear that the thyroid hormones exert their influence upon tissue metabolism through a regulation of various enzyme activities. Nevertheless, there is still no clear choice between the two principal possibilities as to the mechanism. Direct participation of the thyroxine as a sort of coenzyme, or indirect release of metabolically active substances.¹¹ Direct involvement of thyroxine in an enzyme system has never been established, but it has been suggested that thyroxine causes a release of coenzymes, protein carriers, or other substances needed for many of the energy transforming processes in all cells. It is also considered possible that thyroxine has different effects in different tissues. Thyroxine may influence tissue utilization of oxygen through an effect on cytochrome.

Hyperthyroidism

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY. Despite its prevalence and consequent intensive investigation, the specific mechanism by which spontaneous hyperthyroidism develops is still unknown. Basically of course a derangement in the intrathyroidal metabolism of iodine results in the release of excessive amounts of thyroxine into the blood stream, presumably because of an inability to store iodine in the form of colloid (thyroglobulin). This results in an even greater rate of uptake of inorganic iodine (iodide) with further oxidation of the iodide by peroxidase to produce more substrate for thyroxine synthesis and release.

Toxic diffuse goiter versus toxic nodular

goiter (different diseases?) While the ultimate effects of all forms of hyperthyroidism—factitious, hyperpituitarism as in acromegaly, Graves disease, and toxic adenoma—are largely due to excessive blood and tissue levels of active thyroid principles, there are wide variations in the clinical pictures which accompany these conditions especially between that of diffuse toxic or exophthalmic goiter (Graves disease) and nodular toxic goiter. Perhaps the most striking difference in the exophthalmos which usually occurs in Graves' disease, but many believe that there is a fundamentally different stimulus for the increased activity. Specifically it has been assumed that Graves disease is probably due to an increased secretion of TSH by the pituitary, while the toxic nodule is due to a primary defect within the thyroid gland itself. It has been suggested that cells of the toxic nodule are hypersensitive to the normal amount of thyrotropin. Unfortunately, the matter is probably not to be so neatly settled. Werner and his associates,¹⁰³ for example offered evidence that Graves disease is not a form of hyperpituitarism but that it too arises from a fault that is primary in the thyroid itself. They noted that whereas in normal subjects the administration of thyroxine or triiodothyronine would reduce the thyroid uptake of I^{131} (by suppressing TSH secretion) this effect was not observed in Graves' disease.

Dobyns⁴⁰ reviewed the physiologic concepts in Graves' disease, including the possible influence of the higher nervous centers in the (emotional) genesis of this condition. He made the important point that the concept of the disease has been broadened to take account of the fact that initially there may be thyrotoxicosis without exophthalmos or exophthalmos without goiter. Later thyrotoxicosis, exophthalmos, and diffuse goiter may all three be manifest (Fig. 224). Another point particularly emphasized was that the approximate date of onset of Graves' disease, especially in young individuals, is usually fairly well defined, in contrast to the insidious onset of symptoms



Fig 224 Graves' disease exophthalmos, hyperthyroidism, and diffuse goiter. It is widely believed that this disease is due to excessive secretion of thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), and emotional overtones are prominent in both the pathogenesis and in the established disease itself.

in toxic nodular goiter. Moreover, many years often elapse from the time that a nodular goiter is noted until the onset of symptoms of hyperthyroidism. Thus, toxic diffuse goiter and toxic nodular goiter vary as to general behavior; toxic nodular goiter is virtually never associated with exophthalmos, and the response to iodine is different. Patients with Graves' disease are notoriously emotionally unstable and excitable, as compared to the calm or even "apathetic" individual with toxic nodular goiter. Toxic diffuse goiter responds within a few days to iodine therapy, in contrast to the less dramatic response of toxic nodular goiter. This same general type of response of the two types of goiters is also encountered in radioiodine therapy.

Exophthalmos. The mechanism of the exophthalmos of Graves' disease remains unsettled. Dobyns¹⁰ obtained evidence that the anterior pituitary produced not only TSH but also a separate exophthalmos-producing substance (EPS) which would selectively produce exophthalmos in the Fundulus, a small minnow. However, this work awaits further confirmation.

The treatment or control of exophthalmos is unsatisfactory, due in part to the fact that the etiology remains in doubt. Dobyns has pointed out that the instances of "exophthalmos" should be separated in two groups: the first group consists of those cases encountered in Graves' disease which are not associated with actual forward displacement of the globe (in contradistinction to lid signs) and which subside when the hyperthyroidism is controlled. The second and more important group are those associated with true forward displacement of the globe by edema and fibrosis of the retro-orbital tissues. This progressive exophthalmos is essentially a self-limiting process, but the eye may be lost before the process has spent itself. Above all, the cornea should be carefully protected from drying and consequent ulceration. In severe cases surgical retro-orbital decompression may be indicated. Dobyns recommended that the patient sleep upright to diminish the edema formation in the retrobulbar space, and that both hypothyroidism (which might result in increased pituitary secretion) and hyperthyroidism be avoided.

MECHANISMS OF THE EFFECTS OF IODINE AND ANTITHYROID DRUGS IN HYPERTHYROIDISM. *Inorganic iodine.* Lack of iodine, which tends to interrupt the normal output of thyroid hormone, results in an increased secretion of TSH. Consequently, the cells of the thyroid are stimulated and it enlarges, though the function of the gland may not be increased.

In contrast, when iodine is administered to the patient with Graves' disease the thyroid gland diminishes in size, in part the result of a reduction in its vascularity. However, the height of the follicle cells also declines, and the colloid within the follicles is increased in amount. The precise way in which iodine achieves these effects is uncertain, but there may be effects upon both the pituitary and the thyroid gland itself. It has been postulated that (1) the thyroid is rendered less sensitive to TSH, (2) the rate of thyroid hormone synthesis is suppressed, or (3) the rate of release of thy-

roxine (and of other active compounds) is reduced. None of these is definitely established as the primary factor, though, and other modalities may be found more important.

Antithyroid drugs Certain compounds, such as thiouracil, propylthiouracil, and mercaptoimidazole, have a specific effect in blocking hormone synthesis. They do this by inhibiting the peroxidase conversion of trapped iodide to iodine for the formation of diiodotyrosine, precursor of thyroxine (Fig. 223). The daily adult therapeutic dose of propylthiouracil is approximately 300 mg. though larger amounts may be required in individual patients, and the dose of mercaptoimidazole (Tapazole) is approximately 30 to 40 mg. The use of divided doses throughout the 24-hour period produces a more sustained antithyroid effect.

THE DIAGNOSIS OF HYPERTHYROIDISM. The clinical appearance of the patient who has diffuse toxic goiter with hyperthyroidism or Graves disease, often with prominent exophthalmos, is known to all students and clinicians. The diagnosis of hyperthyroidism in these individuals rarely presents a problem, though it is of value to assess the relative magnitude of the thyroid overactivity initially, so that the response to treatment can be better evaluated. In contrast, hyperthyroidism due to nodular goiter or to excessive doses of thyroid substance may long elude diagnosis because the clinical signs are less obvious.

Clinical evidence The diagnosis of hyperthyroidism will, of course, be suspected from the history and the physical examination which reveal intolerance to hot weather, moist skin, peripheral dilatation, amenorrhea and weight loss associated with an increased appetite. As noted previously the circulatory effects include tachycardia, increased pulse pressure, increased cardiac irritability and arrhythmias which often take the form of auricular fibrillation. The tremor and other nervous and muscular findings are accompanied by increased muscle irritability, hyperkinetic activity, palpitation,

diarrhea, myasthenia, and late muscular atrophy in some subjects. In fact, it may be difficult at times to distinguish thyrotoxic myopathy from myasthenia gravis and, indeed, the two may coexist. Needless to say, the presence of a goiter should always prompt careful evaluation with regard to the possibility of thyrotoxicosis. Again, well developed Graves disease is not likely to be overlooked, in contrast, the elderly lady who has a solitary hyperfunctioning adenoma of the thyroid, who has lost weight and perhaps has mild cardiac decompensation may well escape accurate diagnosis until the disease has been present for a long while and circulatory changes are far advanced. It was seen above that the nodular goiter often has been present for years before thyrotoxicosis is diagnosed.

Laboratory tests Once the clinical evidence has raised the suspicion that thyrotoxicosis exists, certain laboratory tests are helpful.

The basal metabolic rate (BMR) remains a practical guide in the diagnosis and management of hyperthyroidism. Moreover, this measurement is available almost everywhere for highly skilled technical personnel are not required.

On the other hand the BMR is no longer the most reliable gauge of the rate of thyroid activity. Among its disadvantages are, first, that it may be impossible to bring the patient to the test in a basal condition, though intravenous Pentothal anesthesia can be employed to achieve this requirement for the duration of the test. Of importance Benedict¹⁷ showed that an emotional disturbance may cause a rise in the BMR which may not subside for several days. Second, a repeatedly normal BMR will rule out hyperthyroidism in all but the very exceptional case, but a persistently elevated rate does not necessarily mean that the patient has thyroid overactivity. For example, the patient may normally have had a low BMR, which has risen to the upper limits of the "normal" level during the period of increased thyroid function. Third

other conditions may be associated with an increased metabolic rate—among these being pheochromocytoma, acromegaly, leukemia, essential hypertension, certain drugs, pregnancy, infections, fever, polycythemia vera and, of course, the administration of thyroid extract. Fourth, cardiac failure, asthma, emphysema, or other types of respiratory disturbances render the BMR determination unreliable, not to mention the possibility of a perforated eardrum or a leak in the machine.

The rate of *radioiodine uptake* by the thyroid gland is now established as a most dependable measurement of thyroid activity. It employs the fact that the thyroid gland traps and organically binds the administered inorganic radioactive iodine at a rate commensurate with thyroid activity (Fig. 225). This was first demonstrated by Hertz, Roberts, and Salter⁵⁸ in 1942. They found that the normal range of uptake in man lay between 10 and 40 per cent. An uptake in excess of 50 per cent of the injected iodine was held to be specific for thyroid hyperactivity, though there was a slight overlap between the euthyroid and the hyperthyroid patients.

While the tracer study has proved somewhat less dependable in nodular than in diffuse goiter, this additional test of thyroid function has proved exceedingly valuable as a clinical and laboratory tool, furthermore, the development of the scintillation counter has made possible the use of very small tracer doses, on the order of 1 μ c (microcurie). This is 1/100 the former dose.

The disadvantages of the radioiodine uptake measurement are that, aside from the moderately expensive initial technical and instrumental outlay that is needed, important precautions are required to avoid false interpretations. For example, the patient must not have recently received thiouracil-like compounds or iodine therapy. In fact, it is unreliable if the patient has received iodine in any form, and the effect of lipiodol used for bronchography may persist for months. Factitious hyperthyroidism resulting from excessive treatment with desiccated

thyroid for such conditions as sterility would not be detected by the radioiodine uptake study. Finally, the uptake of radioactive iodine by goiters that are partially or wholly intrathoracic often cannot be determined accurately. The urinary excretion of radioiodine is now rarely used to evaluate thyroid uptake and activity.

The *conversion ratio* is a variant of the radioiodine uptake measurement. In a series of investigations employing radioiodine as a tracer in the study of thyroid physiology Chaikoff, Taubog, and Reinhardt²⁵ found that the rate of incorporation of radioactive iodine into protein by the thyroid was increased in rats and guinea pigs injected with thyrotropic hormone. These workers suggested that the rate of conversion of radioactive iodine into thyroxine might be used to measure thyroid activity. Subsequently Clark, Moe, and Adams³⁰ found that in man the conversion ratio ranged from 13 to 40 per cent. Those patients whose conversion ratio was 50 per cent or greater were considered to have thyroid hyperactivity, and in a study of 150 patients we⁸ obtained similar results. Two advantages of importance which the conversion ratio has over the uptake study are, first, that the conversion ratio is unaffected by the intrathoracic position of all or part of the thyroid gland and, second, that one can draw the blood in the patient's room for the measurement of the conversion ratio and avoid the necessity of taking the patient to the Geiger counter. In fact, commercial tracer samples are purchasable in such form that the sample may be given orally, a blood sample then drawn 24 hours later, and thus shipped to a distant city for analysis of the conversion ratio.

The *protein bound iodine level* of serum (PBI) has been shown to bear a dependable direct relationship to the degree of thyroid activity, and this fraction is now considered to represent the quantitative measurement of the iodine of thyroxine and related compounds circulating in the blood stream. A carefully performed serum PBI determination provides an accurate measurement of

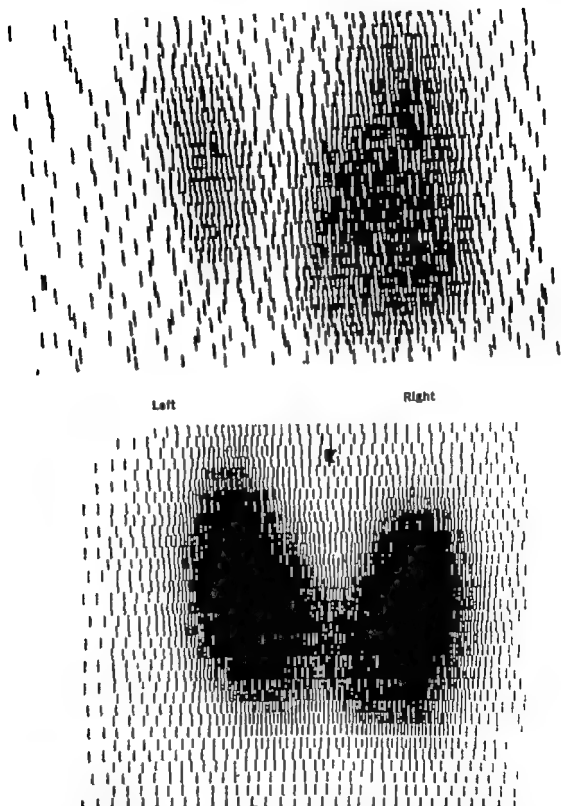


Fig 225 Scintigram performed following the administration of radioiodine. The relative density of the I^{131} uptakes by different lobes reflect the relative activities of these lobes. A toxic adenoma would reflect more activity than the surrounding tissue (From Radioiodine in Medicine Spectrum 5: 165 1957)

the level of thyroid activity, provided the patient has not recently received iodine-containing compounds or thyroid extract. The injection of iodine in any form renders the test unreliable for some time and again the

use of lipiodol for bronchography may cause a spurious elevation of the PBI level for as long as 15 months after the injection of the material. Nevertheless, with adequate precautions this test though laborious is su

terior to the BMR, in that it is a more objective determination and is not affected by most of the numerous conditions which render the BMR unreliable. Moreover, the serum PBI level is not affected by thiouracil administration, whereas the radioiodine uptake is

The normal range of the serum PBI level lies between 3 and 8 μg (micrograms, gamma) per 100 ml of serum. Values above this range indicate thyrotoxicosis and values below this range indicate a state of hypothyroidism. If the serum PBI level is within normal limits, the patient almost certainly does not have thyrotoxicosis, however, this cannot be said for the BMR, since an increase in thyroid activity of 30 points (as from -15 to $+15$) might have taken place shortly preceding a test which showed a BMR of $+15$, as has been noted previously.

General discussion of tests for the diagnosis of hyperthyroidism. It should not be concluded that any one test of thyroid activity should be used to the exclusion of all others. Each of the four tests discussed above measures a different facet of thyroid physiology and the tests supplement one another. In fact, in certain situations all may be useful. For example, hyperthyroidism associated with an intrathoracic goiter might not be accurately measured by the radioiodine uptake because of the goiter's anatomic location. The BMR might be unreliable because of pressure upon the respiratory tract. The serum protein-bound iodine level would be elevated in this instance, but the conversion ratio would be required to distinguish between factitious thyrotoxicosis and true hyperactivity of the intrathoracic goiter. We reported a case in which the thyrotoxicosis was indeed factitious and was not due to hyperactivity of the patient's huge intrathoracic goiter.⁵³

Thyroid hyperactivity in patients who have received thiouracil compounds is best diagnosed by determination of the BMR and the serum PBI level, since even small amounts of these drugs modify the uptake of

radioiodine by the thyroid for a few days. If the patient has ingested iodine or iodine-containing compounds, the BMR would be the only test immediately reliable, for the serum PBI level, the conversion ratio, and the radioiodine uptake would be rendered suspect. Therefore, iodine therapy should be avoided until a quantitative diagnosis of the level of thyroid activity has been made. Finally, when at times a combination of circumstances has rendered all available laboratory tests unreliable, a clinical test of iodine therapy may be quite useful. Knowledge of the serum cholesterol level is of no practical use in the diagnosis of hyperthyroidism.

MANAGEMENT OF HYPERTHYROIDISM. Hyperthyroidism may be managed conservatively or with surgery. Conservative management consists of the administration of inorganic iodine, various antithyroid compounds, or radioiodine. Nevertheless, only surgery and radioactive iodine administration constitute definitive therapy.

It is not the purpose here to discuss in detail the merits of radioactive iodine *versus* surgery. There can be little question that thyrotoxicosis due to either nodular or diffuse goiter can be controlled with radioiodine in the vast majority of instances. The decision as to whether surgery or radioiodine is to be used is usually settled on the basis of whether or not radioactive iodine is available, the preference of the physician, and the preference of the patient. In many hospitals where radioiodine therapy is available it is now used almost routinely, especially in Graves' disease. Moreover, surgeons themselves often recommend radioiodine, particularly in the management of recurrent toxic goiter, in poor risk patients, and in patients with malignant exophthalmos. In brief, the use of radioiodine has greatly reduced the number of operations performed for toxic goiter.

The therapeutic objective of all forms of treatment is to reduce the amount of thyroid hormone made available to the tissues. Surgery accomplishes this objective by excising

most of the functioning thyroid tissue, radioiodine by destroying thyroid cells, and propylthiouracil and iodine by suppressing hormone synthesis and release. It will be clear that a satisfactory therapeutic result may be obtained even in the absence of factual knowledge of the precise mechanism by which the thyroid is stimulated to produce excessive amounts of its hormones. External x ray has been virtually discarded as a treatment for thyrotoxicosis.

Inorganic iodine is used to prepare patients for surgery and, occasionally, to treat a mild recurrence of hyperthyroidism following surgery.

Antithyroid drugs The antithyroid drugs such as propylthiouracil and mercaptimidazole are used for preoperative preparation

of the thyrotoxic patient and, in some instances, as a means of definitive therapy. However, the frequency of recurrence following cessation of treatment, the time and expense involved in the control of this therapy, and the distinct possibility of carcinogenesis following prolonged stimulation of the thyroid by these goitrogenic compounds have limited their use as the sole means of therapy. Nevertheless, there are those who do use these agents, usually one at a time, as a definitive treatment for thyrotoxicosis. The effects of I^{131} , KI, and thiouracil on the BMR are compared in Figure 226.

Thyrotoxicosis during pregnancy is often satisfactorily managed with antithyroid drugs especially during the last trimester.

COMPARISON OF POTASSIUM IODIDE THIOURACIL, AND RADIO-ACTIVE IODINE IN HYPERTHYROIDISM

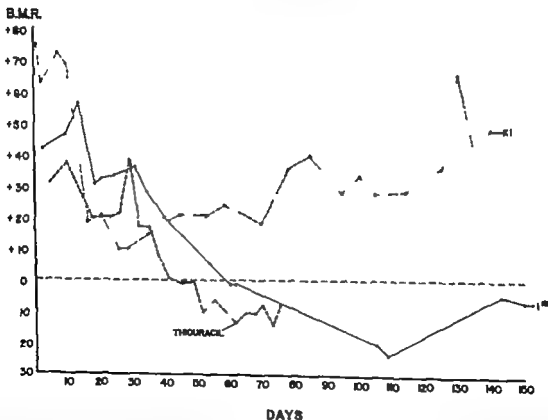


Fig 226 Potassium iodide effected a prompt, if brief remission. Thiouracil reduced the basal metabolic rate (BMR) more rapidly than did I^{131} (Potassium iodide modified from MELLANBY *Nutrition and Disease* 1934 thiouracil modified from BARR D P., AND SHORE E Ann Int. Med., 23: 754 1945 radioactive iodine modified from KELLEY M P., HAIXES S F., AND KEATING, F R. J Clin Endocrin., 9: 171 1949)

Radioiodine is contraindicated and thyroidectomy might precipitate a premature delivery. Furthermore, when the stimulus of pregnancy has subsided it will be possible to evaluate thyroid function more accurately.

Actually, the effect of radioiodine is often too slow, even were this agent a safe one to use in the pregnant woman. Propylthiouracil also may act too slowly, as it did in a case we observed who aborted within 48 hours after admission. Some transient fetal thyroid suppression is produced by propylthiouracil therapy, but the mother must be protected from the hazards of thyrotoxicosis, in addition to the fact that she will abort if untreated.

We have followed a moderate number of cases of thyrotoxicosis during pregnancy. If the disease develops before the third trimester we usually recommend proper preparation followed by surgery; propylthiouracil is used for cases developing in the last trimester, as indicated.

Radioiodine therapy This is an effective agent,³¹ but certain limitations must be kept in mind. First, it should not be administered to pregnant women, lest the thyroid of the fetus be destroyed. Ovarian effects are questionable. Second, there remains some question as to whether patients under 40 years of age should receive therapeutic doses of from 5 to 15 millicuries of radioactive iodine, since it is not yet certain that I^{131} will not prove to be carcinogenic in human beings (as it is in rats), from 15 to 20 years are usually required for an irradiation effect to produce cancer. Third, nodular toxic goiters are not always successfully treated with radioiodine and the possibility of carcinoma residing in a solitary nodule may be overlooked. (Such a patient is under care in our hospital at this writing.) We believe that most toxic nodular goiters should be managed surgically.

A massive dose of radioiodine may (rarely) cause a thyroid crisis (as in a case with which we were associated), and it may occasionally be advisable to bring the thyrotoxicosis under control with an antithyroid

drug before the radioiodine is administered. It would seem preferable to utilize graded doses of the radioiodine rather than to give a single massive dose at the beginning, no matter how accurately one thinks he can determine the size of the gland and its relative activity, as determined by the tracer study. The response to radioiodine is a gradual one, and a full effect of treatment will not occur until after from 3 to 6 months. Thus, the status of the patient should be re-evaluated carefully before each dose of I^{131} is given. One quite clear-cut indication for radioactive iodine therapy is in the management of postoperative recurrence of thyrotoxicosis, since secondary operations are particularly likely to result in recurrent laryngeal nerve injury or hypoparathyroidism.

Surgical management The indications for surgical therapy, as compared with radioiodine, vary from one clinic to another and, as stated previously, no detailed examination of this changing philosophy will be offered here. In our view, the diffuse toxic goiter in most men, and in women at the end of the childbearing period, can satisfactorily and safely be managed with radioiodine—and the patient naturally prefers the drinking of a glass of water (containing the I^{131}) to operation. On the other hand, we feel that at the present time most nodular goiters and some toxic diffuse goiters should be managed surgically. Of course, in many areas of the United States radioactive iodine is still not readily available to patients who do not have the means to travel considerable distances, and in these individuals surgery must be relied upon.

In brief, if the concern regarding possible carcinogenesis proves baseless, as it probably will, radioiodine may become the treatment of choice in most cases of thyrotoxicosis.

The thyrotoxic patient may be prepared for surgery with the traditional inorganic iodine therapy, and this frequently results in an essentially euthyroid subject upon whom surgery can safely be performed. However, the great advantage of propylthio-

uracil and the other antithyroid drugs is that, with these, most patients can be rendered basal and safe for surgery, whereas with iodine therapy alone there often remain individuals who will not respond satisfactorily. It is no longer permissible to perform the thyroidectomy when the basal metabolic rate has not been brought into the normal range, the pulse stabilized at a relatively slow rate, the patient improved symptomatically, and the weight loss curve reversed. The administration of antithyroid drugs in sufficient dosage for sufficient lengths of time will usually achieve this.

Both cortisone and ACTH have been used for the preoperative preparation of patients with thyrotoxicosis, but this has been done largely on an experimental basis. Since these drugs themselves often increase the rate of metabolism, they have no place except in carefully controlled experiments, in our opinion. We studied (1951) the effect of these hormones upon thyroid activity in both euthyroid and hyperthyroid subjects.^{24, 25} There is no question that thyroid activity is reduced, but patients with thyrotoxicosis are better prepared for surgery with antithyroid drugs and/or inorganic iodine.

After the patient has been satisfactorily prepared for operation with one or more of the appropriate drugs and an adequate diet, a sufficiently radical thyroidectomy is performed in Graves' disease and the functioning adenoma with perhaps additional portions of the gland are resected in nodular toxic goiter. While the removal of a large portion of the thyroid gland does not influence the possible overproduction of the thyroid stimulating hormone (TSH) by the pituitary at least not directly it does remove much of the functioning tissue of the target organ the thyroid. This effectively diminishes the amount of thyroxine available to the tissues to increase the rate of metabolism and in general, achieves the desired therapeutic effect.

Some patients require much more propylthiouracil for satisfactory control than do

others. Since goitrogenic compounds increase the vascularity of the gland, many surgeons prefer to administer inorganic iodine in the form of potassium iodide or Lugol's solution during the week prior to operation, with or without propylthiouracil. I often do this myself, but without feeling that it is imperative.

Nutritional deficits are common in the presence of prolonged thyrotoxicosis. Fatty infiltration in the liver and protein losses should be minimized by the consumption of a high caloric, high protein diet with liberal vitamin supplements. Sedation is given for the hyperirritable neuromuscular system, and digitalization may be indicated if prolonged thyrotoxicosis has resulted in cardiac decompensation.

Physiologic Considerations in Nontoxic Goiter: Diffuse and Nodular

Simple (nontoxic diffuse) goiter is common in areas where there is an inadequate supply of iodine in the water supply. Such goiters are referred to as endemic goiters and may be experimentally produced in animals by placing these animals on iodine-deficient diets. They can also be produced by giving goitrogens which interfere with thyroxine synthesis by the thyroid. A good descriptive term is that of "iodine-deficiency thyroid hyperplasia." The enlargement of the thyroid occurs because the thyroxine formation is depressed due to an inadequate supply of iodine or to the effect of goitrogens. The diminished plasma level of thyroxine results in an increased function by the anterior pituitary in secreting TSH and thyroid hyperplasia results, this is associated with an increase in the weight of the thyroid, a decrease in the amount of colloid in the follicles and an hyperplastic increase in the height of the lining epithelial cells. The iodine content of such a thyroid is of course, quite low, and there is an extremely low concentration of thyroxine in the gland. The follicles may contain much colloid, but the colloid contains little thyroxine.

The treatment of colloid goiter should be considered from both the prophylactic and

the therapeutic standpoints Prophylactically, the addition of small amounts of iodine to table salt or to drinking water all but eliminates the formation of endemic goiter Once the goiter has formed, medical therapy may or may not be effective in causing it to regress While iodine therapy has been recognized as effective in endemic goiter, it is generally realized that it is of little value in sporadic goiter Nevertheless, most simple goiters should be treated first with iodine therapy to see if this will help Should the nontoxic goiter not regress under simple iodine therapy, thyroid hormone may be used Greer and Astwood⁵⁰ reviewed the reported experience with the treatment of nontoxic goiters with thyroid substance, and added 50 cases of their own treated over a 5-year period Seventy-six per cent of the patients responded to therapy with a decrease in the size of the goiter and 40 per cent had a complete remission Only 2 relapses were observed during the 1 to 7 years of observation following treatment Eighty-seven per cent of 23 diffuse goiters responded to therapy, 44 per cent undergoing complete remission Sixty-seven per cent of 9 multinodular goiters had a favorable response, 23 per cent disappearing completely Sixty-seven per cent of 18 single nodules responded

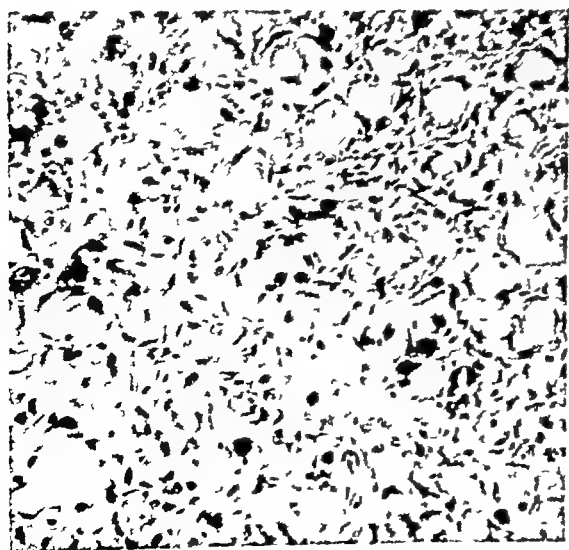


Fig 227 Carcinoma of the thyroid in center of solitary nodule This lesion, barely large enough to fill the low power field under the microscope, was found almost by accident

and 39 per cent disappeared completely. Only 15 per cent of 40 goitrous patients not treated with thyroid had a reduction in the size of the goiter These workers stated that iodine may be effective when iodine deficiency is the major etiologic factor, or when the primary defect is a failure of the iodine-concentrating mechanism of the thyroid If, however, the defect lies beyond the stage of iodine concentration, such therapy may well fail Thyroid substance, on the other hand, will decrease the secretion of thyrotropin and, in turn, the size of the goiter, regardless of the nature of the defect in hormone synthesis, in this sense, then, desiccated thyroid might be regarded as a specific in the treatment of goiter Greer and Astwood further noted that, as a practical therapeutic measure, the administration of thyroid has certain advantages In addition to its beneficial effect upon the size of the goiter in 3 out of 4 cases, thyroid administration aids in the diagnosis in doubtful cases Failure of the goiter to respond and failure of the radioiodine accumulation to be suppressed constitutes suggestive evidence for a diagnosis of hyperthyroidism They acknowledged that the significance of single thyroid nodules is currently controversial Some feel that all such nodules should be removed because from 10 to 20 per cent of them are considered malignant (Fig 227) at pathologic examination, others feel that the death rate from carcinoma of the thyroid is so low that the likelihood of death from thyroid surgery is greater than the likelihood of saving a life by the routine removal of solitary thyroid nodules

The finding that solitary nodules often respond to thyroid indicates that their hyperplastic state is of a physiologic and not a neoplastic nature, in the view of Greer and Astwood For example, simple enlargement of the thyroid gland is generally accepted as functional hypertrophy, even though the other lobe is completely normal in size It is usually assumed that one lobe is more sensitive to thyrotropin than the other In any event, thyroid therapy seems to be as

beneficial in unilateral thyroid enlargement as in bilateral enlargement. It is possible that a single nodule represents a localized area which has a lower thyrotropin threshold than the rest of the gland, since the response of the nodules noted in Greer and Astwood's⁵⁰ series was not greatly different from that of other types of goiter. They administered from 2 to 3 grains of desiccated thyroid daily, the extremes ranging from $\frac{1}{2}$ to 6 grains.

It should be stated, however, that not all diffuse or nodular nontoxic goiters respond to iodine therapy. We favor excision of the goiter which appears to have a single hard nodule—and we are well aware that other nodules may exist which are not palpable preoperatively. The simple colloid or nontoxic goiter may also require surgery because of compression of the trachea and other neighboring structures, and for cosmetic reasons. In Figure 227 is shown a microscopic section from a soft nodule removed from the neck of a lawyer. It was considered almost surely benign, but he was anxious that it be removed. The mass about 2 cm in diameter, constituted most of the right thyroid lobe. In the center the pathologist found, almost accidentally, this virtually microscopic carcinoma.

Post Thyroidectomy Complications

INJURY TO RECURRENT LARYNGEAL NERVES

Routine preoperative visualization of the vocal cords should be performed to ascertain that both laryngeal nerves are intact. If one cord is found not to move satisfactorily preoperatively then one must be doubly careful in dissecting on the opposite side to avoid the possibility of injury to the other recurrent laryngeal nerve. Except for the hoarseness (which improves with time) actual division of one nerve is usually not accompanied by serious consequences. However injury to both nerves will frequently require a permanent tracheostomy for respiratory obstruction. Various operations have been devised to remedy the situation caused by injury to both recurrent laryngeal nerves,

but these procedures are not particularly satisfactory.

More frequently the nerve has merely been traumatized, not cut, and one may expect complete recovery with considerable confidence. If both cords move well immediately postoperatively—and to look takes but a moment—the development of hoarseness at the end of from 24 to 48 hours is almost certainly the result of an inflammatory edema that will subside.

The incidence of recurrent laryngeal nerve injury should be less than 1 per cent, but it is probably more nearly 3 to 4 per cent. If one is doing a radical operation for a cancer of the thyroid it is at times impossible not to take the nerve on one side, since it may be completely surrounded by the tumor.

HYPOPARATHYROIDISM. Just as the nerves should be visualized when a radical subtotal resection is contemplated so also should the parathyroid glands be visualized when the posterior thyroid capsule is to be removed, as in total thyroidectomy. It follows, then, that the surgical resident must become familiar with the appearance and approximate location of both the nerves and the parathyroids. At least one parathyroid should be identified and left *in situ*, if hypoparathyroid tetany is to be avoided consistently. If a parathyroid is inadvertently separated from its blood supply one can implant it in the adjacent sternocleidomastoid muscle. A number of small fat lobules or lymph nodes may have some resemblance to the parathyroid but this gland is usually identifiable when actually visualized. If doubt remains, a small portion can be submitted for frozen section.

If the parathyroids have all been removed—or if only three have been removed but the blood supply to the remaining one is temporarily diminished—the signs and symptoms of hypoparathyroidism will appear by the end of 24 hours and not later than 48 hours as a rule. The most common of these is a tendency to carpopedal spasm and tingling of the feet, legs, and hands.

Confirmatory evidence is gained by demonstrating a positive Chvostek's sign, which consists of lightly tapping the facial nerve in front of the ear and noting the spasmodic contractions of the muscles of the face and particularly those around the mouth. In addition, if carpal spasm is not already present the inflation of a blood pressure cuff on the upper arm will usually produce it (Trousseau's sign). Such findings following thyroidectomy should always suggest the possibility of hypoparathyroidism with hypocalcemic tetany. The management of this condition may be carried out in the following steps:

(1) First draw blood for serum calcium and phosphorus determinations, before therapy has masked the chemical picture.

(2) Give 10 to 20 cc of 10 per cent calcium gluconate solution intravenously at once.

(3) Give calcium gluconate or calcium lactate (lactate is better absorbed than gluconate) by mouth. Approximately 12 gm per day in divided doses will usually suffice.

(4) Give vitamin D orally in doses of from 50,000 to 300,000 units daily.

(5) If vitamin D and calcium lactate, plus supplements of intravenous calcium gluconate, fail to control the tetany, parathormone should be given parenterally in doses of 100 units, as necessary to relieve symptoms. The effect of this hormone is short lived, and the dose may need to be repeated a number of times before the oral vitamin D therapy has had effect.

(6) If the increased calcium made available by vitamin D therapy should prove inadequate, dihydrotachysterol (A T 10) may be administered for maintenance therapy in oral doses of from 5 to 10 cc daily initially, followed by 2 cc twice weekly. However, this substance has a definite cumulative action, and its administration must be controlled by frequent serum calcium determinations.

Dihydrotachysterol should not be started until it has been amply demonstrated that the hypoparathyroidism is to persist for

some time. Many surgeons make the mistake of giving A T 10, a long acting drug, when oral calcium therapy would have sufficed. If dihydrotachysterol is not administered, one will usually be relieved to find, within a few days, that the hypoparathyroidism is temporary and that the patient may safely go home without any calcium or other therapy. On the other hand, if A T 10 has been given, the operator may have to wait 6 or 8 weeks to be certain of the status of parathyroid function, and this is never as happy a situation as had the patient been discharged with the diagnosis of hypoparathyroidism reversed or changed to "transient."

POSTOPERATIVE HEMORRHAGE WITH RESPIRATORY OBSTRUCTION. The most sinister single complication following thyroidectomy is that of hemorrhage leading to respiratory difficulty and, all too often, to death. This is particularly likely to be disastrous in that it often occurs when the patient is no longer in the operating room or the recovery room, and close observation may have been discontinued. The complications of recurrent laryngeal nerve injury and parathyroid tetany do not usually occasion immediate disaster, though they must be handled expeditiously. On the other hand, respiratory obstruction due to hemorrhage may not be recognized until the situation is all but irretrievable. The onset is usually insidious and may go unnoted or, if noted, then unappreciated for a time. At first there may be not more than a subjective feeling of tightness in the neck and an objective appearance of fullness. Presently the patient becomes dyspneic, and this may be the last warning before a most alarming state of respiratory distress and cyanosis suddenly intervenes. The chief difficulty lies in the fact that the hemorrhage is deep to the fascia and no bleeding may be noted externally. Moreover, while adequate drainage at the time of closure may diminish the incidence of obstruction due to hemorrhage, concealed bleeding may still occur. *A tracheotomy set should be kept on all floors.* Furthermore,

the wound should be re-explored and tracheostomy seriously considered at the first evidence of respiratory obstruction. The resident staff must be thoroughly indoctrinated with the concept that the time to do a tracheostomy is when one is first forced to think of it. Fortunately, the general tendency to perform tracheostomy earlier in a variety of clinical circumstances has diminished the incidence of fatal postoperative respiratory obstruction due to hemorrhage.

THYROID CRISIS This is now a most infrequent complication of thyroid surgery or thyroid disease but it does occur, and we have observed two cases in the past few years, both in children. In one instance the mother had refused to bring the child back for treatment of known hyperthyroidism until finally the child was admitted in thyroid crisis and died within a few hours despite hydrocortisone and other therapy. The second youngster was under treatment for several months and the case brings out certain important points.

Case study The patient was a 6-year-old girl who exhibited evidence of weight loss, mild exophthalmos and a rapid pulse when the mother first brought her to the hospital for examination. The clinical examination suggested hyperthyroidism since a goiter was also present and excessive thyroid activity was proved by (1) the uptake of radioactive iodine (2) determination of the serum PBI level (which was elevated) and (3) several somewhat unsatisfactory measurements of the basal metabolic rate. Following this over a period of many weeks the child was given several of the antithyroid drugs (particularly propylthiouracil) in adult dosage (600 mg. per day) after early failure to obtain a satisfactory response with lesser amounts. Suffice it to say that none of the antithyroid drugs achieved a basal condition. The radioiodine committee met—internist, radiologist, and surgeon—and after a careful review of the case decided against the use of radioiodine. It was elected to give inorganic iodine for 10 days and then to do a subtotal thyroidectomy. She remained sweaty and tremulous car-

dinal failure appeared imminent even with digitalis therapy, and she had gained no weight. Here, then, was a patient who had not responded satisfactorily to treatment with large dosages of antithyroid drugs.

She was placed on iodine therapy and, though she improved somewhat, she did not become truly basal. Nevertheless, at a general staff conference it was decided that she was probably safe for thyroidectomy and that it should be performed at once. Accordingly, subtotal thyroidectomy was expeditiously performed after 10 days of iodine therapy. The pulse rate rose from the preoperative level of 88 to 110 beats per minute during the operative procedure, and at the end of operation it had reached a rate of approximately 140 beats per minute. Approximately 2 hours following operation the rectal temperature had risen to 100° and the pulse rate had increased to approximately 200 per minute. The respiratory rate had climbed alarmingly, and her general condition appeared critical. Since the possibility of crisis had been anticipated, sodium iodide, hydrocortisone, and ACTH were on hand and were promptly started intravenously. An oxygen tent and water-alcohol sponging were used to combat the hyperthermia. Unfortunately, despite all measures the temperature rose to 106° by rectum and the pulse rate became so rapid as to defy accurate count. The respiratory rate had become extremely fast, and presently the child developed pulmonary edema with copious pink frothy sputum. All supportive measures were unavailing, and she died approximately 5 hours after the operative procedure in what was interpreted by all observers as thyroid crisis. She had not received excessive transfusion of blood during operation and little blood had been lost.

Comment This case illustrates a number of pertinent physiologic facts. In retrospect, since a truly basal state was never achieved preoperatively the possible dangers of radioactive iodine in a young person should have been accepted and the agent used. In other words, surgery should no longer be employed in a patient who cannot be rendered

basal. Second, in our experience no satisfactory therapy exists for the patient who is in severe thyroid crisis. Surgery was undertaken in this girl partly because of reports in the literature which had led us to believe that, should thyroid crisis develop, it could be controlled reasonably well with adrenocortical replacement therapy. Such was not the case. The patient received massive doses of these compounds immediately following operation and they had no visible effect on the thyroid crisis, as they had no effect in the other child who was admitted in thyroid crisis and died. It may well be that the patient who has relatively mild thyroid storm will respond satisfactorily to treatment with adrenocortical replacement therapy, for adrenal steroid therapy can reduce thyroid activity. Nevertheless, be this as it may, the best possible treatment for thyroid crisis is to avoid it, for effective therapy for the full-blown case has yet to be developed.

MALIGNANT EXOPHTHALMOS This condition has been discussed previously and is not strictly a complication of thyroidectomy. Yet, the exophthalmos often does increase following thyroidectomy, and some have actually treated this complication with desiccated thyroid in fairly liberal doses. The rationale for this is that the exogenous thyroid hormone may suppress pituitary activity, which is presumed to be the source of the stimulus for the exophthalmos. Moreover, certainly hypothyroidism, with its deposits of edema fluid and possible stimulation of pituitary activity, is to be avoided. Notwithstanding, no genuinely suppressive therapy is available.

A marked exophthalmos which appears to be progressing is considered by many, including myself, to be an indication for radioactive iodine rather than surgery. There has been evidence that thyroidectomy increases the rate of progression of the exophthalmos in some subjects, and it has been considered possible that the more gradual reduction of thyroid activity with I^{131} therapy is preferable to thyroidectomy.

RECURRENT THYROTOXICOSIS The recurrence rate following subtotal thyroidectomy varies with the amount of gland removed at operation and should be in the neighborhood of 5 per cent or less if from four-fifths to five-sixths of the gland are removed at the time of surgery. Obviously, the lower the recurrence rate, the higher will be the incidence of hypothyroidism postoperatively, and one must use judgment in the individual case. A more radical resection, with a greater risk of hypothyroidism, is more permissible in older persons who have matured than in younger individuals who will need normal thyroid activity to achieve the normal development of other organs. Postoperative recurrence of hyperthyroidism may require nothing more than inorganic iodine dosage or perhaps a course of propylthiouracil. If these simple measures do not suffice, radioiodine is effective.

Postoperative hypothyroidism is treated with appropriate doses of thyroid substance.

Relation of Thyroid Gland to Other Endocrine Glands

As has been emphasized throughout this volume, all organs are interdependent and the thyroid gland is no exception. It has been seen that a close relationship exists between the thyroid and the pituitary, since the removal of the pituitary is followed by involution of the thyroid and a state bordering on myxedema is produced. On the other hand, total thyroidectomy may result in pituitary hypertrophy in some animals.

Another most interesting relationship is that which the thyroid and the adrenal cortex appear to bear to each other. It is well known that the administration of adrenocortical substance results in a rapid lysis of lymphoid tissue and that lymphoid tissue is increased in hyperthyroidism. Furthermore, the administration of adrenocortical substance was shown to diminish thyroid activity. It was further shown by White and Dougherty¹⁰² that the administration of adrenocortical extract results in the mobilization of nitrogen in lymphoid

tissue and that the administration of thyroxine increases mobilization of nitrogen from the muscles, each will result in the mobilization of some nitrogen from the liver but both together effect a greater mobilization than the sum of that mobilized by either hormone alone. The appearance of the patient in thyroid crisis suggests certain of the features of adrenocortical crisis, and various workers have reported beneficial results with the use of adrenocortical substances in hyperthyroidism. While adrenocortical hormones may not save the patient in severe thyroid crisis, there is no doubt that the administration of cortical hormones tends to suppress thyroid activity.

The thyroid often enlarges at puberty, during menstruation and pregnancy, and may change at the menopause. Normal development of the gonads is dependent upon normal thyroid activity. Fertility is reduced in hypothyroidism and thyroid therapy often improves the reproductive function in such individuals. For example, sterility and habitual abortion may be favorably influenced by the administration of thyroid extract. Corresponding changes may be seen in the male reproductive function particularly with regard to spermatogenesis.

Thyroiditis

Inflammation of the thyroid may be due to demonstrable bacterial agents (brucellosis in one case we saw) or, far more commonly to idiopathic or "chemical" derangement in which no specific etiologic factor can be identified. Accordingly, as is so often true when the cause of a disease is obscure the treatment is largely empiric, though frequently effective.

SUBACUTE THYROIDITIS This disease of unknown etiology affects women twice as often as men and occurs chiefly between the ages of 20 and 50. The involved portion of the gland, one lobe or the entire organ, usually exhibits swelling and tenderness. The tissue is firm and the overlying skin may be reddened. Systemic reaction is usually not a prominent feature but fever and chills

may develop. The condition usually runs a self-limiting course over a period of weeks or months.

Among the treatments that have been beneficial in individual cases are roentgen therapy, antithyroid drugs (specifically propylthiouracil), cortisone and occasionally, desiccated thyroid. Antibiotics are usually not helpful. When the involved portion of the gland is resected surgically it reveals evidence of a diffuse inflammatory process, and leukocytic infiltration and giant cells are seen.

CHRONIC THYROIDITIS *Riedel's struma* ('Woody thyroiditis') This is a chronic inflammatory fibrosing condition which may involve only one lobe or both lobes. It presents as a hard "goiter" which may be somewhat tender, but the principal problem is to distinguish this lesion of unknown cause from cancer. Even at operation, the involvement of contiguous tissues in the inflammatory process may render it most difficult to exclude thyroid malignancy.

Treatment consists of excising enough of the inflammatory mass to relieve pressure symptoms. Radical resection involves considerable risk of nerve injury and hypoparathyroidism. The various medical measures given above for acute and subacute thyroiditis are generally ineffective in the management of Riedel's struma.

Hashimoto's struma (*struma lymphomatosa*) This is a chronic degenerative disease of the thyroid, characterized by marked lymphocytic infiltration, and it appears chiefly in women of middle age. The thyroid enlargement is firm but essentially nontender. Here too, the cause is unknown. Some consider the condition a form of chronic thyroiditis, but others believe it represents the effects of primary hypothyroidism; the pituitary stimulus is increased in the absence of sufficient thyroid hormone, and thyroid enlargement occurs.

Roentgen therapy may retard the disease, after confirmation of the diagnosis by biopsy, but excision may be required to relieve pressure effects.

The Parathyroid Glands

The management of hypoparathyroidism following thyroidectomy was discussed above. Normal parathyroid physiology and hyperparathyroidism will now be considered.

Historical Notes

In 1891 Gley⁴⁸ showed that removal of the parathyroid glands led to tetany, explaining the findings that had been observed following thyroidectomy. In 1908 MacCallum and Voegtlin⁷² found that the tetany was due to a lowering of the blood calcium level. Collip^{32, 33} discovered parathormone in 1925.

Meanwhile, von Recklinghausen⁹¹ had described the cystic changes in bone in 1891, Askanazy (1904)⁴ had found a parathyroid tumor at autopsy in a case of the disease, and Erdheim⁴³ had shown that the parathyroid glands were enlarged in rickets, osteomalacia, and pregnancy. Thus the groundwork had been laid for the demonstration that parathyroid overactivity could produce disease of bones. In 1925 Mandl,⁷⁵ a Viennese surgeon, excised an adenoma and demonstrated recalcification of the demineralized bones.

In subsequent years the classic metabolic studies of Aub, Albright, Cope, and others of the group at Harvard greatly extended the parameters of our own knowledge of parathyroid disease.

Normal Physiology

REGULATION OF PARATHORMONE SECRETION
The factors which regulate the formation and release of parathormone by the parathyroids are rather more obscure than in the case of the thyroid and adrenal secretions. To begin with, no tropic hormone from the pituitary has been demonstrated for these glands, and thus regulatory mechanisms have had to be sought within the glands themselves. Carnes, Pappenheimer, and Stoerk²¹ found that rats fed a diet low in calcium developed marked enlargement of the parathyroid glands, a diet high in cal-

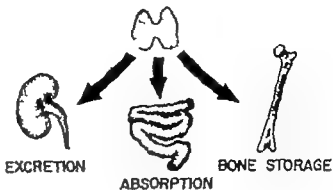
cium but low in phosphorus resulted in a significant reduction in parathyroid volume, in comparison with that of the stock diet controls. The addition of gradual increments of potassium phosphate to the low phosphorus, high calcium diet increased the serum phosphate level proportionately and caused a corresponding increase in parathyroid volume. These workers also found that large doses of viosterol further reduced the size of the parathyroids on a low phosphorus diet, at the same time raising the serum levels of both calcium and phosphorus. Viosterol inhibited the hyperplasia produced by a low calcium diet. Patt, Wallestein, and Luckhardt⁸⁰ also showed that parathyroid hypertrophy could be produced by a low calcium diet. These authors demonstrated that the perfusion of the isolated thyrioparathyroid apparatus of the dog with decalcified blood resulted in a perfusate which caused a rise in the serum calcium level when injected into normal dogs. This did not result when the infusion was done with normal blood. Therefore, it would appear that the serum calcium level is important in regulating the rate of parathormone formation in man. The liberation of this principle appears to be independent of nervous control and, as noted, counterbalancing forces from other endocrine organs have not been described.

ACTIONS OF PARATHORMONE The primary function of the parathyroid hormone (or hormones?) is to regulate the blood levels of inorganic calcium and phosphorus, largely by controlling renal excretion of these ions. The injection of parathormone increases the rate of phosphorus excretion (Fig. 228). This is followed by a mobilization of phosphorus from the bones in an attempt to maintain a normal level of serum phosphorus, which in turn results in the mobilization of calcium (Fig. 229). The increased amount of calcium phosphate thus made available raises the serum calcium level. It is thought by some that the mere lowering of the serum phosphorus level by increasing phosphorus excretion in the urine (with parathormone) results automatically

a reciprocal rise in calcium, since these two elements almost invariably bear a reciprocal relationship to each other in physiologic states.

The studies of Tweedy, Chilcote and Parsons¹⁰⁰ with radioactive phosphorus supported the earlier view of Aub that the parathyroid glands have their primary influence on phosphorus metabolism through direct action on the kidney tubules to increase the excretion of phosphorus. They found that following thyroparathyroidectomy the early diminution in urinary and fecal excretion of administered phosphate tagged with P^{32} could be reversed within 1 hour by the injection of parathyroid extract. After bilateral nephrectomy this material had no effect on the distribution, retention, or excretion of P^{32} .

Calcium (and Phosphorus) Metabolism



- 1 Parathormone
- 2 Dihydrotachysterol (A.T 10)
- 3 Vitamin D

Fig 220 Calcium metabolism embraces bone storage renal excretion and intestinal absorption. Parathormone regulates the serum calcium level largely through its promotion of phosphorus excretion (Fig 228). However in post-thyroidectomy hypoparathyroidism the action of injected parathormone is so short-lived as to render it unsuitable for long term maintenance. Liberal doses of calcium lactate (12 gm. per day) and vitamin D (orally) may suffice if not A.T 10 must be used.

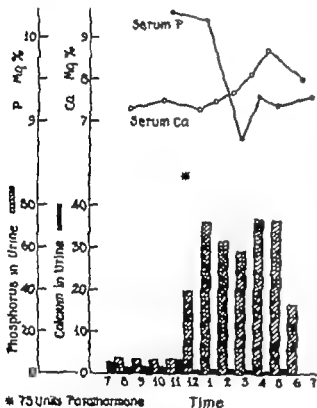


Fig 228 Effect of parathormone on calcium and phosphorus metabolism in a case of idiopathic hypoparathyroidism. (From ALBERT F. and ELLIOTT R. Studies on the physiology of the parathyroid glands. I. Calcium and phosphorus studies on a case of idiopathic hypoparathyroidism. J. Clin. Invest. 7: 194 1929.) Note that almost immediately following the injection of 75 units of parathormone the urine phosphorus content rose, the serum phosphorus level fell, and the serum calcium level rose.

All agree that the primary effect of parathormone is on the renal excretion of phosphorus.⁶ Nevertheless a direct effect on the bones themselves cannot be entirely excluded on the basis of the evidence at hand. Some cancers alter calcium metabolism.^{7, 90}

Normally the calcium and phosphorus levels of serum remain fairly constant. When excessive amounts of parathyroid tissue are removed at thyroidectomy the serum calcium level declines and the phosphorus level rises. For example, the calcium level (normal 10 mg. per 100 cc. or 5 mEq. per L.) may decline to 8 mg. the serum phosphorus level (normal 4 mg. per 100 ml.) may rise to 6 or 7 mg. The opposite effects are observed in hyperparathyroidism.

Hyperparathyroidism: Diagnosis and Management

Hyperparathyroidism may be primary or secondary. The primary type is that which is due to primary disease within the

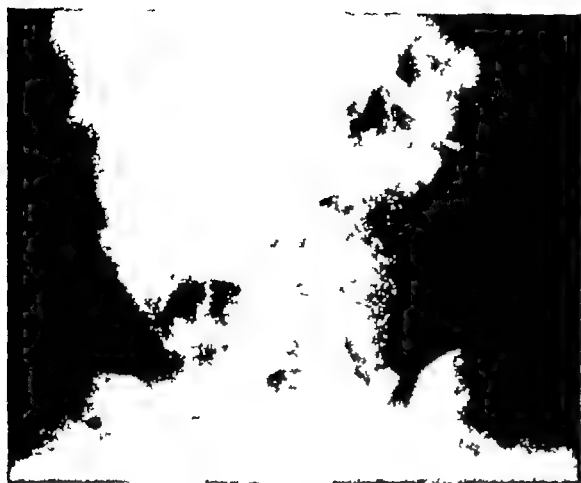


Fig 230 Renal calculi secondary to functioning parathyroid adenoma (Patient B L, see text)

parathyroid glands themselves, usually a functioning adenoma but occasionally the result of "diffuse hyperplasia"⁹² Secondary hyperparathyroidism is associated with diffuse hyperplasia of the parathyroid glands, secondary to impaired renal function. A commonly accepted theory is that in patients with chronic renal failure phosphate is not excreted in normal amounts and its concentration in body fluids rises. The rise in phosphate ion concentration depresses the calcium ion to below normal levels ($\text{Ca} \times \text{P} = \text{K}$, or constant), and this in turn calls forth a compensatory overactivity of the parathyroids in an effort to maintain a normal calcium level. This cellular hyperplasia has been well documented in chronic renal insufficiency by Pappenheimer and Wilens⁸⁸ and by Castleman and Mallory^{25, 26}. An associated demineralization of bones in childhood is sometimes referred to as "renal rickets." In the presence of extensive renal damage it may be difficult, if not impossible, to distinguish between primary and secondary hyperparathyroidism, for chronic primary hyperparathyroidism also usually causes death through renal failure.

The lesions found in states of primary hyperparathyroidism are chiefly in the parathyroids, skeleton, and kidneys. The excessive parathormone production is almost invariably due to a functioning parathyroid tumor which may lie either in the neck or

in the mediastinum. More than one tumor may be present, but usually only one parathyroid is enlarged. The excessive hormonal activity results in demineralization of the skeleton with cyst formation, pathologic fractures, and other changes associated with *osteitis fibrosa cystica* (von Recklinghausen's disease of bone). In approximately 30 per cent of cases of primary hyperparathyroidism the excessive hypercalcemia results in the formation of renal stones, and the renal damage secondary to nephrolithiasis often produces uremia if the process is not reversed by excision of the tumor. It has been estimated that perhaps 10 per cent of all patients with renal stones have hyperparathyroidism (Fig 230).

DIAGNOSIS The diagnosis of primary hyperparathyroidism begins with the suspicion that it exists. When renal stones or bone demineralization is found, serum calcium, phosphorus, and phosphatase levels should be determined in all patients who have renal stones or who have pathologic fractures that cannot be explained on some other basis such as metastatic carcinoma. However, "metastatic carcinoma" may reflect parathyroid adenoma (patient E II, p 562).

There are definite symptoms that accompany the elevated calcium level which occurs in hyperparathyroidism. Among these are muscular atony, weakness, fatigue, constipation, anorexia, weight loss, nausea, polyuria, and polydipsia. Nevertheless, these phenomena are not sufficiently distinctive, of themselves, to suggest parathyroid adenoma. The renal complications are the result of a deposition of calcium in the kidneys. The calculi may cause pain, infection or, eventually, uremia.

Important diagnostic points are given in Figure 231. The ultimate diagnosis rests upon the laboratory demonstration of hypercalcemia, hypophosphatemia, and hyperphosphatase. For the diagnosis of hyperparathyroidism the serum calcium level should be greater than 12 or 12.5 mg per 100 ml of serum. However, it is important to realize

PARATHYROID ADENOMA CALCIUM AND PHOSPHORUS VALUES

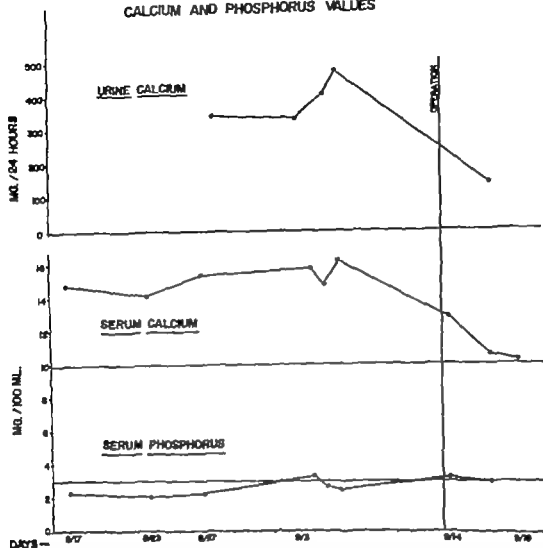


Fig 231 This patient (B L.) had renal stones that led to investigation for hyperparathyroidism. The urinary calcium excretion on a low calcium diet (in essence a diet free of milk and milk products) was consistently above 300 mg. preoperatively but the level fell after removal of the tumor. The normal subject excretes less than 300 mg. of calcium per 24 hours on a low calcium diet. The serum calcium consistently exceeded the upper limit of normal (12 mg per 100 cc) before operation but declined thereafter. As was to be expected, the serum phosphorus level was somewhat depressed on several occasions preoperatively. Note the prompt decline in urine and serum calcium values following resection of the parathyroid adenoma shown in Figure 233. The serum phosphorus level rose. The renal stones were removed surgically. Renal failure due to chronic infection around calculi is the most common cause of death in hyperparathyroidism. (From NEELY W A AND ALLEN J L. Functioning parathyroid adenomas. *The Mississippi Doctor* 35: 68 1957.)

that the level may not be consistently elevated and that several determinations should be made at different times, often several weeks apart, to rule in or rule out an elevated serum calcium level. In 12 of 24 cases Keating⁶⁴ found that the average concentration of calcium was less than 12.5 mg. per 100 ml. of serum. In 4 cases the average level fell within the normal range and in

7 cases one or more determinations fell within the normal range. Again calcium determinations over a period of weeks or months may be necessary to detect the hypercalcemia of hyperparathyroidism.

A definitely lowered serum inorganic phosphorus level may be of particular aid in those patients in whom the serum calcium level is within normal limits or only

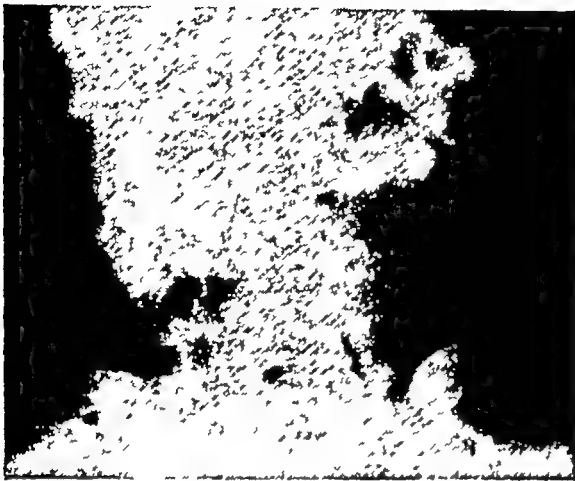


Fig 230 Renal calculi secondary to functioning parathyroid adenoma (Patient B L, see text)

parathyroid glands themselves, usually a functioning adenoma but occasionally the result of diffuse hyperplasia.⁹² Secondary hyperparathyroidism is associated with diffuse hyperplasia of the parathyroid glands, secondary to impaired renal function. A commonly accepted theory is that in patients with chronic renal failure phosphate is not excreted in normal amounts and its concentration in body fluids rises. The rise in phosphate ion concentration depresses the calcium ion to below normal levels ($\text{Ca} \times \text{P} = \text{K}$, or constant), and this in turn calls forth a compensatory overactivity of the parathyroids in an effort to maintain a normal calcium level. This cellular hyperplasia has been well documented in chronic renal insufficiency by Pappenheimer and Wilens⁸⁸ and by Castleman and Mallory^{25, 26}. An associated demineralization of bones in childhood is sometimes referred to as "renal rickets." In the presence of extensive renal damage it may be difficult, if not impossible, to distinguish between primary and secondary hyperparathyroidism, for chronic primary hyperparathyroidism also usually causes death through renal failure.

The lesions found in states of primary hyperparathyroidism are chiefly in the parathyroids, skeleton, and kidneys. The excessive parathormone production is almost invariably due to a functioning parathyroid tumor which may be either in the neck or

in the mediastinum. More than one may be present, but usually only one thyroid is enlarged. The excessive hormonal activity results in demineralization of the skeleton with cyst formation, pathologic fractures, and other changes associated with *osteitis fibrosa cystica* (von Recklinghausen's disease of bone). In approximately 10 per cent of cases of primary hyperparathyroidism the excessive hypercalcemia results in the formation of renal stones, and renal damage secondary to nephrolithiasis often produces uremia if the process is not reversed by excision of the tumor. It has been estimated that perhaps 10 per cent of all patients with renal stones have primary hyperparathyroidism (Fig 230).

DIAGNOSIS The diagnosis of primary hyperparathyroidism begins with the suspicion that it exists. When renal stones, bone demineralization is found, serum calcium, phosphorus, and phosphatase should be determined in all patients who have renal stones or who have pathologic fractures that cannot be explained on any other basis such as metastatic carcinoma. However, "metastatic carcinoma" may mimic parathyroid adenoma (patient E, p 562).

There are definite symptoms that accompany the elevated calcium level which occurs in hyperparathyroidism. Among these are muscular atony, weakness, fatigue, constipation, anorexia, weight loss, nausea, polyuria, and polydipsia. Nevertheless, these phenomena are not sufficiently distinctive, of themselves, to suggest parathyroid adenoma. The renal complications are the result of a deposition of calcium in the kidneys. The calculi may cause pain, infection, or, eventually, uremia.

Important diagnostic points are given in Figure 231. The ultimate diagnosis is made upon the laboratory demonstration of hypercalcemia, hypophosphatemia, and hypophosphatemia. For the diagnosis of hyperparathyroidism the serum calcium level should be greater than 12 or 12.5 mg per 100 of serum. However, it is important to re-

PARATHYROID ADENOMA CALCIUM AND PHOSPHORUS VALUES

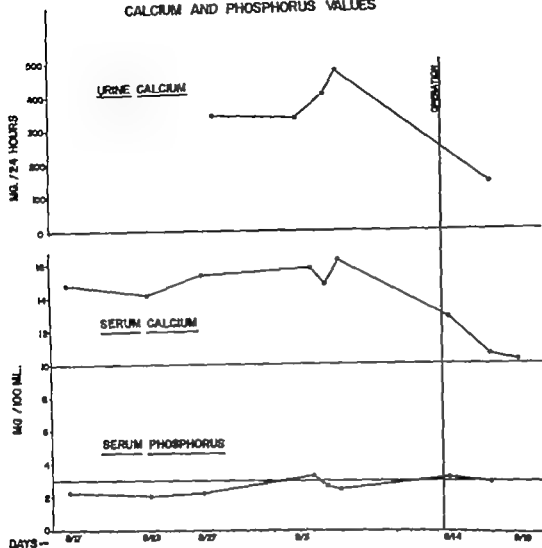


Fig. 231 This patient (B. L.) had renal stones that led to investigation for hyperparathyroidism. The urinary calcium excretion on a low calcium diet (in essence a diet free of milk and milk products) was consistently above 300 mg preoperatively but the level fell after removal of the tumor. The normal subject excretes less than 300 mg. of calcium per 24 hours on a low calcium diet. The serum calcium consistently exceeded the upper limit of normal (12 mg per 100 cc.) before operation, but declined thereafter. As was to be expected, the serum phosphorus level was somewhat depressed on several occasions preoperatively. Note the prompt decline in urine and serum calcium values following resection of the parathyroid adenoma shown in Figure 232. The serum phosphorus level rose. The renal stones were removed surgically. Renal failure due to chronic infection around calculi is the most common cause of death in hyperparathyroidism. (From NELLY W. A., AND ALTMAN J. L. Functioning parathyroid adenomas. *The Mississippi Doctor* 35: 68 1957.)

that the level may not be consistently elevated and that several determinations should be made at different times, often several weeks apart to rule in or rule out an elevated serum calcium level. In 12 of 24 cases Keating⁴⁴ found that the average concentration of calcium was less than 12.5 mg. per 100 ml. of serum. In 4 cases the average level fell within the normal range, and in

7 cases one or more determinations fell within the normal range. Again, calcium determinations over a period of weeks or months may be necessary to detect the hypercalcemia of hyperparathyroidism.

A definitely lowered serum inorganic phosphorus level may be of particular aid in those patients in whom the serum calcium level is within normal limits or only

slightly elevated. In addition, the serum *alkaline phosphatase level* is often elevated in hyperparathyroidism. This is probably due to the bone disease and not to the hyperparathyroidism *per se*, the serum phosphatase level may remain elevated long after the serum calcium and phosphorus levels and the urinary excretion of calcium have returned to normal.

Measurement of the *urinary calcium excretion* is most helpful in reaching a diagnosis of hyperparathyroidism. If the urinary calcium excretion is elevated, hyperparathyroidism must be considered, even if the serum calcium level is normal. On a low calcium diet (in essence, no milk or milk products) the normal 24-hour excretion should be less than 300 mg, and values above this figure indicate hyperparathyroidism unless otherwise explained. Barney and Sulkowitch¹² proposed a screening test which is useful. The patient is placed on a low calcium diet for 3 days, and then the urine is collected for 24 hours. A buffered oxalate mixture is added to an aliquot of the specimen. If more than a trace of calcium precipitate occurs on mixing with the buffer solution, hyperparathyroidism is suggested. If indicated, the more exacting balance study of Bauer and Aub¹⁴ can then be performed. Howard¹⁰ has proposed an intravenous calcium tolerance test for the detection of hyperparathyroidism, but we have had no experience with it.

Note on calcium fractions The total serum calcium concentration is dependent upon the serum protein concentration, and for this reason the levels of both must be determined. The calcium bound to protein varies with alterations in the serum protein level, and it is not primarily affected by parathormone. In contrast, ionic calcium is specifically affected. Thus, the individual with a lowered serum protein level but a normal total serum calcium level may still have an increased (but masked) ionic calcium level, caused by hyperparathyroidism. Although the free (ionic) and the bound calcium levels cannot be determined indi-

vidually, their relative concentrations can be estimated by the use of the nomogram prepared by McLean and Hastings.⁷⁸ For example, the hypercalcemia of multiple myeloma or sarcoidosis would be found to be paralleled by a rise in serum protein, indicating that the increased calcium level was due to the increased serum protein level. The theoretical possibility that a lowered serum protein level can mask hyperparathyroidism is rarely encountered in practice.

Physical examination Unless the individual has lost stature or had other bony deformities, little may be found on clinical examination. The parathyroid adenoma is usually not palpable but occasionally it is. *Pancreatitis in hyperparathyroidism* Instances of pancreatitis have been reported in association with hyperparathyroidism, and such a case will be described below. Moyer⁸⁴ believes that deranged calcium metabolism may play a basic rôle in the pathogenesis of ordinary pancreatitis.

Peptic ulceration in hyperparathyroidism Just as the "ulcerogenic" tumor of the pancreas has been shown to give rise to a particularly vicious type of peptic ulceration, so may parathyroid tumors promote this disease, the ulcer may heal promptly when the tumor is removed.⁸⁶ Adrenocortical and adrenal medullary tumors may also produce peptic ulcer.

Differential diagnosis Other conditions that cause bone lesions must be excluded. Some of these are adolescent rickets, osteomalacia associated with idiopathic steatorrhea, senile osteoporosis, carcinosis of the skeleton (see patient E H, p 562), multiple myeloma, Paget's disease, fibrous dysplasia of bone, and the bone lesions of sarcoidosis. Renal stones may follow a variety of known and unknown pathologic circumstances.

OPERATIVE MANAGEMENT OF HYPERPARATHYROIDISM The treatment of hyperparathyroidism usually consists of surgical excision of the adenoma. Much less frequently the parathyroids may exhibit generalized hyperplasia such as is encountered in diffuse goiter or in adrenocortical hyperplasia.

Parathyroid adenoma In 1931 Walton¹⁰² reported operations upon 4 patients with hyperparathyroidism due to adenomas of the parathyroid glands and he was the first to call attention to the importance of searching for abnormal parathyroid tissue in regions other than about the thyroid gland. In 2 of his patients parathyroid glands had been mechanically displaced from their original positions, and he noted that in such displacements the original vascular pedicle connecting the tumor to the thyroid artery had been preserved. In 1936 Churchill and Cope²⁹ clearly correlated the various locations in which adenomas were found with the embryogenesis of the parathyroid glands. Churchill further postulated that the parathyroid glands would probably be found within the limits of the tubular fascial structure of the neck, bounded anteriorly by the deep layer of the middle cervical fascia and posteriorly by the prevertebral fascia. Following these reports surgeons were led to perform a systematic surgical dissection of the cervical region as well as of the posterior superior and anterior mediastinum.

The *operative exposure* for exploration of the neck and mediastinum for parathyroid adenoma should be meticulous and an adequate search for parathyroid adenoma requires a knowledge of the appearance of the normal parathyroids. In our experience the tumor has more often been found near one or the other of the inferior poles of the thyroid. However, the upper parathyroid glands are more constant in position and are exposed first. If they are found and are normal they are not removed. Atrophy of the parathyroids that are found suggests the presence elsewhere of an hyperfunctioning adenoma. If the upper parathyroids are found to be normal or somewhat atrophied the lower ones are searched for in the same careful manner though it is to be remembered that they may not be found in the neck but that one or more may be found in the superior mediastinum. If an adenoma has not been found and all parathyroids are not found in the neck, the sternum

is then split and the anterior and posterior mediastinum explored. The thymus particularly should be carefully examined, for it may contain the adenoma. One or more parathyroids may lie within the capsule of the thyroid gland itself. To repeat the normal parathyroids should not be removed as they are exposed, for subsequent excision of the adenoma may then render the patient hypoparathyroid for life a very serious complication.

There may be more than one adenoma, but this is decidedly unusual. Moreover, approximately 80 per cent of adenomas are found in the cervical region or in the posterior superior mediastinum. It is the adenomas located in the anterior mediastinum that are most commonly missed. Malignancy may develop in an adenoma.³⁷

Parathyroid hyperplasia (primary) In 1947 Black and Sprague²¹ reported the first case of diffuse parathyroid hyperplasia, and the right superior and inferior and the left inferior parathyroid glands were resected. The left superior parathyroid gland, its weight estimated at about 300 mg., was preserved and the patient was apparently cured. Black²⁰ has since published in monograph form his large experience with hyperparathyroidism.

Nevertheless, one should be most hesitant in making the diagnosis of primary hyperplasia, lest normal parathyroid glands be removed and an adenoma overlooked. Where primary hyperplasia is encountered as it will be occasionally Albright³ recommends partial resection of the large parathyroid glands, leaving perhaps 200 mg. of hyperplastic tissue.

POSTOPERATIVE CARE. Tetany The problem most likely to arise following removal of a functioning adenoma is hypocalcemic tetany. This is not necessarily due to true hypoparathyroidism, since the serum phosphorus level may be even lower than that present preoperatively. The tetany is due in considerable measure to massive recalcification of demineralized bones and hence it is most likely to occur in patients with

marked bone changes³⁶ To prevent tetany one may need to give calcium by both the oral and the intravenous routes

The *prognosis* following removal of the adenoma depends upon the state of renal disease and function (see patient B L, below) Unfortunately, a large percentage of the patients have advanced renal damage due to renal stones with associated pyelonephritis The removal of the adenoma in these patients may come too late to permit reversal of the advanced renal disease and, indeed, most patients with a parathyroid adenoma eventually die of renal failure On the other hand, if the adenoma is diagnosed early, before renal damage is sufficiently far advanced, the prognosis is excellent

PARATHYROID CLINIC CASE STUDIES *Case 1 Adenoma with renal stones but without demonstrable bone lesions.* B L, a 33-year-old housewife, was well until she developed "pus in the urine" during a pregnancy in 1954 This was successfully treated, and she had no further trouble until March 1956, when she began to have back pain associated with urgency and nocturia (four to five times) Her local physician discovered bilateral kidney stones, and she was admitted to the University Hospital on August 13, 1956, for study She was 5 months postpartum and was lactating

Physical examination revealed no pertinent positive findings Specifically, no mass was detected in the neck, nor were the kidneys palpable

Roentgen studies showed bilateral kidney stones with additional calcinosis (Fig 230) The staghorn calculus on the right was associated with almost no excretion of the intravenously injected Urokon There was reasonably good visualization of the left renal pelvis on intravenous pyelography, though stones were present on this side as well

A bone survey demonstrated no cystic or other lesions that might be due to hyperparathyroidism

Laboratory data were diagnostic Whereas the renal stones might have been due to any number of causes, careful analyses of plasma

calcium and phosphorus levels and of urinary calcium excretion indicated that the patient had primary hyperparathyroidism In Figure 231 it may be seen that preoperatively the serum calcium level ranged 14 to 16 mg per 100 cc and the serum phosphorus level from 2 to 3 mg per 100 cc Urinary calcium excretion (on a low calcium diet) was above 300 mg per 24 hours on separate occasions—and during one 24-hour period it was almost 500 mg The total serum protein level was 6.7 gm per 100 cc These calcium and phosphorus values, taken together, were strongly suggestive of primary (nonrenal) hyperparathyroidism The alkaline phosphatase level was 2.5 Bodan units, which was in accord with the absence of demonstrable bone changes There is increasing confirmation that the elevated alkaline phosphatase level of von Reckhausen's disease is due to the bone involvement rather than to the increased amount of parathyroid hormone *per se*, as noted

The blood nonprotein nitrogen (NPN) was 22 mg per 100 cc

The first operation, exploration of the neck, was performed on September 14, 1956 A 1.5 by 2 cm parathyroid adenoma was found adjacent to the left lower pole of the thyroid (Fig 232) The blood supply of the yellowish-brown tumor was clearly derived from the inferior thyroid artery, and excision was easy Frozen section confirmed the diagnosis of parathyroid adenoma

The immediate postoperative course was uneventful Referring again to Figure 231 one may note that the serum calcium level fell to within normal levels promptly, that urinary calcium excretion declined to less than 200 mg per 24 hours, and the serum phosphorus level stabilized at about 3 mg per 100 cc

A second operation was performed on January 29, 1957, and the staghorn renal calculus on the right was removed Secondary hemorrhage occurred around the nephrostomy tube postoperatively, but this responded satisfactorily to conservative management At this time the NPN was



Fig. 238 Parathyroid adenoma (Patient II L., see text) *Above* The smaller arrow indicates the parathyroid adenoma the large arrow indicates the lower pole of the left thyroid lobe *Below* Microscopic appearance of the tumor

20 mg. per 100 cc. serum creatinine 0.8 mg. per 100 cc. serum calcium 10 mg. per 100 cc., and serum phosphorus 3.5 mg. per 100 cc.

Comment This patient exhibited most of the more common problems met in primary

hyperparathyroidism. Renal stones, a more frequent complication by far than osteitis fibrosa cystica led to the laboratory studies which established hyperparathyroidism as the underlying etiology of her disease. Al

though renal failure due to nephrocalcinosis and nephrolithiasis had not yet occurred, it could have been expected to do so had the parathyroid tumor not been removed. This is the most frequent cause of death in this condition—that is, renal failure due to chronic infection and calculi. As is usually the situation, the patient had doubtless had the disease for several years. The prognosis is determined by the amount of kidney damage that has occurred before the calcium metabolism is restored to normal by correction of the hyperparathyroidism.

Case 2 Adenoma with massive bone involvement but without true renal calculi, pancreatitis, far advanced emphysema, with fatal postoperative pulmonary insufficiency.

E. H., a 69-year-old retired Pentecostal Holiness preacher, was well until about 1952 when he began having pains in his heels and feet, which gradually came to involve most joints. In 1953 roentgen studies were made which showed “malignancy” of the distal portion of the left femur; “palliative” x-ray therapy was given to this lesion but, to the surprise of many, he did not proceed to die. He did lose considerable weight, and he developed increasing shortness of breath. However, the most striking feature of all was a marked shortening in stature. Specifically, he had bought a well fitted tailor-made suit, but little more than a year later he called his wife’s attention to the fact that the coat, which was of the correct length originally, now reached almost to his knees. Despite a conscious effort to maintain good posture, he had become quite stooped (“my back’s bent”). The skeletal pain continued, and episodes of dizziness appeared. Marked weakness enforced limited activity.

He was admitted to the University Hospital for study on December 17, 1956. Among the tentative diagnoses entertained on the medical service were primary hyperparathyroidism, Paget’s disease (of bone), multiple myeloma, osteoporosis of nonspecific origin, and metastatic malignancy.

Physical examination revealed a small, markedly kyphotic gentleman who was well

oriented, alert and smiling, but whose physical power was greatly diminished. He could walk only with canes and assistance. The thorax was round and “emphysematous” and his neck appeared to have sunk into the thoracic inlet, like that of a turtle. It was obvious that pulmonary function was limited by the contour and fixation of the thoracic cage, regardless of what metastatic pulmonary calcinosis had occurred. Furthermore, the neck was so shortened that exposure at operation for parathyroid adenoma would be difficult. There was dull tenderness over most bones, and sharp tenderness over one rib, this finding was subsequently explained when a recent pathologic fracture was demonstrated.

Roentgen studies showed generalized demineralization of the skeleton, with marked shortening of the spine (Fig 233). The “outside” films made in 1953 were obtained, and the increase in bone involvement was striking. No renal calculi were visualized, though a very limited excretory function of both kidneys was apparent from the intravenous pyelogram.

Laboratory data were virtually diagnostic. The total serum protein level was 5 gm per 100 cc, serum calcium 16.8 mg per 100 cc (8.4 mEq per L), and serum phosphorus 2.6 mg per 100 cc. The one disturbing feature was that the 24-hour urinary calcium excretion on a low calcium diet was only 168 mg on one occasion and only 189 mg on another. It should have been higher, it was felt, if a parathyroid adenoma were present—but at the same time it was realized that diminished calcium reserves and diminished renal function might have reduced the amount of calcium that could be excreted, certainly the elevated blood calcium level was affording the renal tubules a high enough gradient.

The alkaline phosphatase level was 41, 35, and 37 Bodansky units on three separate occasions, respectively. Moreover, the level had been measured in 1953 at the first hospital and had been 4 units, though serum calcium levels at that time had been 13.



Fig. 233 Hyperparathyroidism (Patient E H) Skeletal deformity emphysema and marked shortening in stature Note the greatly increased posteroanterior (P A) diameter of the bony thorax (see text)

and 12.8 mg. per 100 cc. and serum phosphorus levels 2.0 and 2.6 mg. per 100 cc. Clearly, the original "malignant" lesion of the femur had been associated with diagnostic serum calcium and phosphorus values but their significance was not appreciated. The fact that the serum alkaline phosphatase level was only 4 units in 1953, with only one bone cyst, and repeatedly above 35 units in 1956 reflected the great increase in the extent of the bone disease.

The blood urea nitrogen (BUN) had been 38 mg. per 100 cc. in 1953. The NPN level was 31 mg. per 100 cc. in 1956 and the serum creatinine 1.9 mg. per 100 cc. The plasma CO_2 was 20 mEq, and it was felt that this represented mild renal acidosis. There was a fixed low urinary specific gravity and the phenolsulfonphthalein (PSP) excretion was 7 per cent in 15 minutes and 13 per cent in 60 minutes, a total of 20 per cent in 1 hour (a low value indicating limited renal function).

At operation (cyclopropane-ether anesthesia) on January 15 1957 a collar incision was made and the thyroid exposed. Search on the left disclosed one small parathyroid. Next the right side was explored and buried in the connective tissue between the esopha-

gus and the common carotid artery. On the posterior aspect of the right thyroid lobe was found a mass that measured 3.0 by 2.5 by 1.5 cm. before sectioning by the pathologist. The frozen section diagnosis was that of parathyroid adenoma.

The postoperative course was unsatisfactory almost from the beginning, due to respiratory insufficiency. Intravenous calcium gluconate was given intravenously, and at no time did signs of hypocalcemic tetany develop, nor did the serum calcium level decline below the normal levels it fell to within 24 hours following operation. The 24-hour calcium excretion 3 days after operation was 30 mg., a very low value. Yet, the serum phosphorus level did not rise.

Within 24 hours of surgery, marked respiratory difficulty with hyperventilation and a feeling of suffocation had appeared. Cyanosis and, at times Cheyne-Stokes respiration were present. Tracheostomy was performed to diminish respiratory dead space. Oxygen therapy was tried but was not particularly helpful and was abandoned because of the hazard of such therapy in certain emphysematous patients. Aerosols were employed to diminish the viscosity of the large amounts of viscid tracheobronchial

secretions which were periodically removed with catheter suction. Unfortunately, respiratory efficiency did not improve, and the patient became gradually exhausted by the constant respiratory effort. Despite all measures, he died quietly on the sixth postoperative day. The cause of death appeared to all observers to be that of respiratory insufficiency, due largely to diffuse emphysema, diminished thoracic mobility, and bronchopneumonia.

Autopsy disclosed bronchopneumonia and pulmonary emphysema, mild cardiac enlargement, mild to moderate *pancreatitis*, and "parathyroid nephritis." It was considered that the pathologic findings were compatible with the clinical diagnosis of respiratory insufficiency as the primary cause of death. Postoperative blood pH measurements would have been helpful in further evaluating the possibility of acidosis, a condition that was suggested by the low plasma carbon dioxide combining power values. The urine output was consistently good.

Comment. This man exhibited the classic *osteitis fibrosa cystica* described by von Recklinghausen. The bone cyst and typical serum calcium and phosphorus values should have resulted in a correct diagnosis of hyperparathyroidism 4 years earlier, in 1953. However, the disease is not so common that one is disposed to think of it routinely, unless it is suspected in the presence of any cystic bone disease or renal stone. The marked bone involvement produced a sharp elevation of the alkaline phosphatase level.

In retrospect, despite the very short neck

and difficult exposure, local anesthesia might have been preferable from the standpoint of minimizing pulmonary irritation in a man who already had a seriously diminished pulmonary functional capacity. This choice was discussed preoperatively but was unfortunately not elected.

The Adrenal Cortex

The physiology of the adrenal cortex embraces a host of activities, and many of these have been touched upon in other sections. The pre-eminence of the cortical steroids in the metabolic response to operation is due to their effects on the processes of protein-fat-carbohydrate utilization, fluid balance, blood pressure regulation, immune response, and many other functions. Therefore, it is not surprising that excessive adrenocortical activity results in a very diffuse or complex clinical picture. The chemistry of the adrenal steroids continues to unfold.⁴¹

The facets of adrenocortical physiology will be considered in the following order: (1) hyperadrenocorticism, (2) adrenalectomy for essential hypertension and for malignant neoplasms, (3) preoperative and postoperative care, including signs of acute, subacute, and chronic adrenocortical failure, (4) adrenocortical hormones in surgical treatment.

Hyperadrenocorticism

This term refers to the clinical effects produced by excessive amounts of one or more of the hormones¹⁰⁷ of the adrenal cortex. Greatly simplified, oversecretion of hydrocortisone-like steroids produces Cushing's syndrome. Excessive secretion of aldosterone results in aldosteronism. Excessive secretion of androgenic hormones results in the adrenogenital syndrome. Lastly, excessive secretion of adrenal estrogens may produce feminization in the male. These syndromes are shown in Figure 234. However, there is much overlapping. In general, the hydrocorticoid family (of which hydrocortisone represents about 85 per cent of the total secretion) is derived from the zona fasciculata

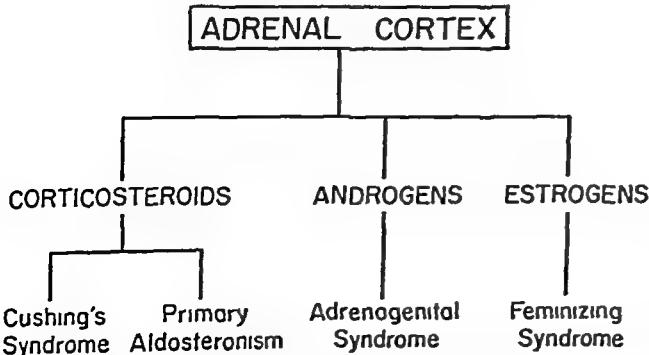


Fig 234. Hormones of the adrenal cortex: the syndromes produced by hypersecretion.

or middle zone, aldosterone is probably derived from the zona glomerulosa or outer zone, and the adrenal androgens are probably derived from the zona reticularis or inner zone (Fig. 235)

Let us now consider the more clearly delineated of the several clinical syndromes derived from excessive secretion of the different adrenocortical steroids. The clinical findings depend primarily upon the chemical formula of the hormone or hormones that are present in excess, but the physical appearance of the patient is further modified by age and sex. Moreover, the hyperadrenocorticism may result from adrenocortical hyperplasia or tumor, or from steroid therapy. In these respects hyperadrenocorticism is comparable to hyperthyroidism due to diffuse goiter, toxic adenoma, or thyroid substitution therapy. There is further similarity, in that diffuse hyperplasia of either organ may result from excessive secretion by the anterior pituitary of the respective tropic hormones, TSH and ACTH. In this instance most of the functioning tissue of each lobe of the thyroid or of each adrenal must be excised to reduce hormonal secretion to normal. In contrast the functioning solitary adenoma of either the thyroid or the adrenal is largely autonomous (not under the control of the pituitary) and, therefore simple removal of the adenoma usually effects a cure unless in the case of the adrenal the lesion is malignant.

In the presence of hyperplasia the adrenal glands tend to maintain their normal configuration, but in the presence of tumor the normal configuration is usually lost.

Cushing's Syndrome

The pathophysiologic changes encountered in Cushing's syndrome are caused by the excessive secretion of glucocorticoids and can be reproduced in some measure by the administration of excessive amounts of cortisone or hydrocortisone over a prolonged period. While there may be considerable hirsutism in this syndrome, it is more generally distributed and usually less masculine

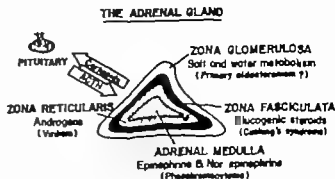


Fig. 235 Functional anatomy of the adrenal gland and its reciprocal relationship with the anterior pituitary. Aside from a degree of autonomy of the zona glomerulosa, the adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) stimulus is required for normal adrenocortical activity. Conversely, an excess amount of circulating corticosteroid as during cortisone therapy tends to suppress the release of ACTH by the pituitary. Adrenocortical hyperplasia is due to an excessive secretion of ACTH by the pituitary, but this hypersecretion must be mediated through the adrenal cortex to produce Cushing's syndrome or the adrenogenital syndrome. The adrenal medulla is not under the control of the pituitary and is not essential for life.

in distribution than in the adrenogenital syndrome. There is commonly a "buffalo" type of obesity, a plethoric appearance with a 'moonlike' face, purple striae of the thighs and abdomen, ecchymoses, and a wasting of the muscles of the extremities and elsewhere (Fig. 236). Hypertension is likely, and amenorrhea is common in women. Further investigation reveals osteoporosis and perhaps polycythemia and hypokalemic alkalosis. An elevated blood sugar level and a diabetic type of glucose tolerance curve are frequently found. These patients may have definite mental aberrations and a fairly definite type of psychosis may develop, as a somewhat different abnormal mood is observed in the patient with Addison's disease.

DIAGNOSIS OF CUSHING'S SYNDROME.¹ History and physical examination. The history and the physical examination may suggest endocrine abnormality and prompt further studies (Figs 236 to 238). However, the disease may come on most insidiously and, while to a new physician the clinical picture might at once suggest Cushing's syndrome, the physician who has followed the patient from the first nonspecific complaints is often



Fig 236 Cushing's original case Note abdominal striae, truncal obesity, and hirsutism of lip (From CUSHING, H The basophil adenomas of the pituitary body and their clinical manifestations (pituitary basophilism) Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp, 50. 137, 1932)

blind to the marked changes that have developed before his very eyes Under these circumstances, confirmatory laboratory studies may not be requested So it was with patient J H, whose case is described below

Laboratory studies It has been seen that the glucose tolerance curve is often abnormal, and that hypokalemic alkalosis and polycythemia may be found Even so, in our experience these data have been less helpful than the actual determination of plasma and urinary steroid values The urinary excretion of both corticoids and 17-ketosteroids is usually elevated, though the increase in corticoids predominates Normal values must be established for the individual laboratory We have used a modification of the

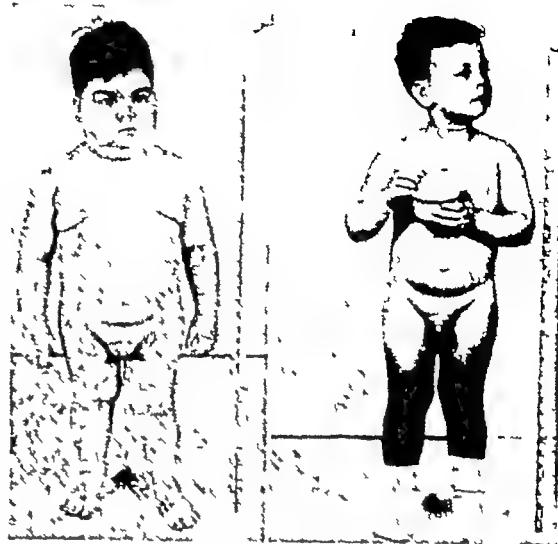


Fig 237 Case study, Cushing's syndrome in child Patient J S was markedly obese, hypertensive, mildly diabetic, and had an insatiable appetite Left Appearance on admission Right Appearance 5 months after resection of most of each adrenal (From ROSE, E K, ENTERLINE, H T, RHOADS, J E, AND ROSE, E Adrenal cortical hyperfunction in childhood Pediatrics, 9 475, 1952)



Fig 238 Cushing's syndrome This obese man with wasted legs had a malignant tumor of the right adrenal with hepatic metastases Note the abdominal striae and ecchymoses Cortical hormones promote fat deposition but lean tissue wastage—"the weak fat man" (patient J H, see text)

method of Heard and Sobel for corticoid determinations, and the urinary excretion in normal subjects has ranged from 5 to 8 mg per 24 hours The standard Zimmerman reaction for 17-ketosteroid measurement gives values which normally range from about 10 to 20 mg per 24 hours in men and

from about 7 to 15 mg. per 24 hours in women. Children have lower values.

Plasma hydrocortisone levels and their response to ACTH afford important additional information. In our laboratory, normal plasma hydrocortisone levels range from 5 to 10 μ g (gamma) per 100 cc of plasma. The response to ACTH is performed as follows: 20 units are infused at a constant rate over a 4-hour period, and a blood sample is drawn at the termination of the infusion. In normal individuals the plasma corticoid level is less than 30 mg. per 100 cc, in Cushing's syndrome the level is usually much higher than this.

As will be more fully presented subsequently, most cases of the adrenogenital syndrome can be diagnosed by the decline in the level of 17 keto steroid excretion following cortisone or hydrocortisone administration. This does not readily occur in Cushing's syndrome to permit differential diagnosis between hyperplasia and tumor. Fortunately, however, this is not of great importance in Cushing's syndrome for whether the disease be due to tumor of the adrenal or to hyperplasia surgical management is indicated.

Finally, it should be noted that in some cases of Cushing's syndrome the excretion of corticoids and 17 keto steroids is within the upper range of normal and no definite increase in hormonal secretion can be demonstrated. This is particularly true of patients who exhibit only a generalized hirsutism, for many hirsute individuals have essentially normal endocrine function. The basic hair pattern of the individual is genetically determined and patients of different racial origin vary widely with respect to the amount of hair which may normally be expected. Yet in addition to hereditary factors the amount and distribution of body hair is also influenced by corticoids and androgens and estrogens. Wilkins¹⁰⁷ has emphasized that sexual hair—facial, pubic and axillary—which is influenced particularly by androgens and estrogens should be considered apart from other body hair. Again,

as noted above, generalized hirsutism is a feature of Cushing's syndrome, but there is not necessarily a marked increase in hair.

MANAGEMENT OF CUSHING'S SYNDROME. *Medical therapy has not been satisfactory* in the management of Cushing's syndrome, a disease which is incompatible with normal longevity. *Surgery is required.* The best results are obtained when a benign tumor is found and excised, unfortunately, many of these tumors are malignant, highly so. Much more frequently the condition is due to bilateral adrenocortical hyperplasia and here the surgeon must choose between total and subtotal adrenalectomy. The disadvantage of total adrenalectomy is that although hyperadrenocorticism is abolished, permanent adrenal absence is produced and thereafter the patient must forever remain under close and competent medical supervision. The disadvantage of subtotal adrenalectomy is that the tissue remaining may hypertrophy or exhibit true hyperplasia and again produce Cushing's syndrome.

What incision to use? Unless a tumor can be demonstrated by palpation, by plain soft tissue roentgenography, by intravenous or retrograde pyelography or by roentgen study using retroperitoneal oxygen insufflation, it is difficult if not impossible to distinguish preoperatively between adrenocortical hyperplasia and adrenocortical tumor. If tumor on which side is it situated?

If the site of a tumor can be identified preoperatively we often use the thoraco-abdominal incision avoiding the anterior abdominal fat. If a tumor has not been identified at the time of operation we make a transverse upper abdominal incision so that any contingency can be dealt with. One may explore through a short transverse incision near the midline and this can then be extended to one side if a tumor is palpated, or it can be extended to both sides if adrenal tissue is to be resected bilaterally for hyperplasia. All tumors are removed by adrenalectomy on the involved side. We most often deal with bilateral hyperplasia by resecting all of the right adrenal and leaving only a

thumbnail size remnant surrounding the central vein on the left, where drainage is to the easily accessible renal vein. Meticulous exposure is more difficult on the right, where drainage is directly into the inferior vena cava beneath the liver. The transverse abdominal incision is readily converted to a thoraco-abdominal incision, if required.

If a sufficient amount of adrenal tissue is removed, the female patient will in the course of the next few weeks resume her menses, the pathologic obesity will disappear, and normal strength and libido will return.

CASE STUDIES The following two patients present instances of Cushing's syndrome. The first subject, a woman, had bilateral hyperplasia and was temporarily "cured" by almost total adrenalectomy. The second subject, a man, had a right adrenocortical carcinoma that was found to have metastasized to the liver, and he subsequently died.

Cushing's syndrome due to adrenocortical hyperplasia (This case was diagnosed and referred by Dr. J. Manning Hudson, Jackson) M. N., a 23-year-old housewife was in her usual state of health until 1949, when she began to gain weight and noticed an increased growth of hair on her face, legs and abdomen, and between the breasts. The pubic hair assumed the male escutcheon and all hair became darker, as did the skin. Over the next 6 years her face became more round, *weakness* developed despite weight gain, and headaches were increasingly frequent. Her sexual desire declined, but menstrual periods remained essentially normal.

Physical examination at the time of her admission to the University Hospital on August 8, 1955, revealed an obese, mildly hypertensive young woman with a ruddy skin over a moon-face. There was moderate, generalized hirsutism, but no significant voice changes. Striae were not present, the clitoris was not enlarged, and supraclavicular fat pads were not prominent.

Roentgen studies revealed no soft tissue mass and the kidneys were not displaced.

The sella turcica was within normal limits and no osteoporosis was noted.

Laboratory data disclosed the following: fasting blood sugar (FBS) 85 mg per 100 cc, essentially normal glucose tolerance curve, NPN 24 mg per cent, virtually normal peripheral blood count. *The 24-hour 17-ketosteroid excretion was 30.8 mg, approximately three times the normal level.* Corticoid measurements were not yet available in the newly opened hospital.

The diagnosis was considered to be that of Cushing's syndrome. This was supported by a compatible history, physical examination, and the elevated excretion of 17-ketosteroids.

Operation was performed on August 22, 1955, through a transverse upper abdominal incision. No tumor was found in either adrenal area, and both ovaries were normal to palpation (an arrhenoblastoma had to be excluded). The left adrenal gland was almost twice the size of the right, grossly and by subsequent weighing. Nevertheless, having once had recurrence of an adrenogenital syndrome in a patient whose enlarged adrenal only was removed, I removed approximately 95 per cent of both adrenals, leaving the remnant just around the emerging central vein.

Postoperatively she did well on 100 mg of cortisone intramuscularly every 6 hours, having also received 100 mg immediately prior to operation. The fever promptly rose to 102° F and the pulse rate to 120. However, at no time were we seriously concerned about her, and within 72 hours the vital signs had returned to preoperative levels. The ACTH and cortisone were gradually discontinued, with the plasma sodium and NPN levels stabilized at normal levels.

Even before discharge from the hospital on September 3, she stated that she was stronger than before operation.

She was seen 3 months later and felt well. The obesity had diminished, she felt she had normal strength, and libido had returned. Interestingly, as of the present

writing (March 1958), she has again begun to have symptoms of weakness and easy fatigue but there is no physical or laboratory evidence of disease. Regeneration¹² or hypertrophy of remaining adrenal tissue does occur.

Comment on case. This patient presented a relatively early case of Cushing's syndrome, and many of the features of the "full blown" disease were absent. Specifically, she had no striae, ecchymoses, amenorrhea, diabetes, plasma electrolyte derangements, osteoporosis, or polycythemia. However most diseases have an initial period, brief or protracted, during which signs and symptoms are minimal. Adrenocortical hyperfunction characteristically pursues an insidious course, but it usually increases progressively nonetheless. This young woman had had definite evidence of adrenal hyperfunction for at least 11 years, but the stage of the disease was still not an advanced one at the time of successful surgery. The next patient presented as florid a picture as one could wish.

Cushing's syndrome due to adrenocortical carcinoma. J. H., a 58-year old machinist had always been fat (weighed 300 lb.), but considered himself to be in good health until January 1955. At that time he consulted a company physician for rather vague symptoms and was told he had a goiter but that treatment was not necessary. Things went along through the spring and summer and, while he did not feel really well, neither did he feel really sick. He continued working full time. The first positive finding of historic note came in August of that same year, when numerous purplish blood spots (ecchymoses) broke out on his extremities and particularly on his forearms. Further more bleeding from abrasions at work appeared to be more difficult to control than before and the skin over the ecchymoses was perforated with great ease.

In September there began attacks of back pain which afterward continued intermittently. Cystoscopy was performed and a

diagnosis of polycystic kidneys was made. Hematuria occurred from time to time.

From this time on he was not able to work consistently, chiefly because he was weak. He was frequently nauseated and at times, upon arising from lying down, he felt that "something slipped downward" in his abdomen. This sensation was associated with dyspnea, which always gradually subsided in a few minutes and he felt all right again.

He realized that he was becoming more and more depressed and moody. This was unnatural, and his family was concerned.

On admission to the University Hospital on March 3, 1956 for study his weight had declined from the "healthy" value of 300 lb. he now weighed 230 lb. The chief complaints were still back pain, hematuria, and intermittent fever—plus a profound weakness. Even his voice had become weak. This distressed the patient since both he and his friends thought that a man so fat could not be sick and should not be so weak. His family knew he was sick though, for he had never before been one to complain. The intern's work up began with "a strange and complex story."

Physical examination revealed a classic picture of Cushing's syndrome though by no means all were agreed on this point. The surgical service was consulted regarding the nodular goiter and the consultant wrote as follows:

I believe there are three items upon which I might comment.

1. Fundamental cause of weakness—possibly Cushing's syndrome (purplish striae, ecchymoses, truncal obesity, etc.) Suggest usual studies to rule in or out (glucose tolerance test, corticoids and 17 ketosteroids).

2. Nontoxic nodular goiter confined to left lobe—larger than it appears at first and displacing trachea slightly to right.

3. Lower extremities—dependent rubor of feet with tropic changes in skin and toenails. Rt femoral (artery) barely palpable.

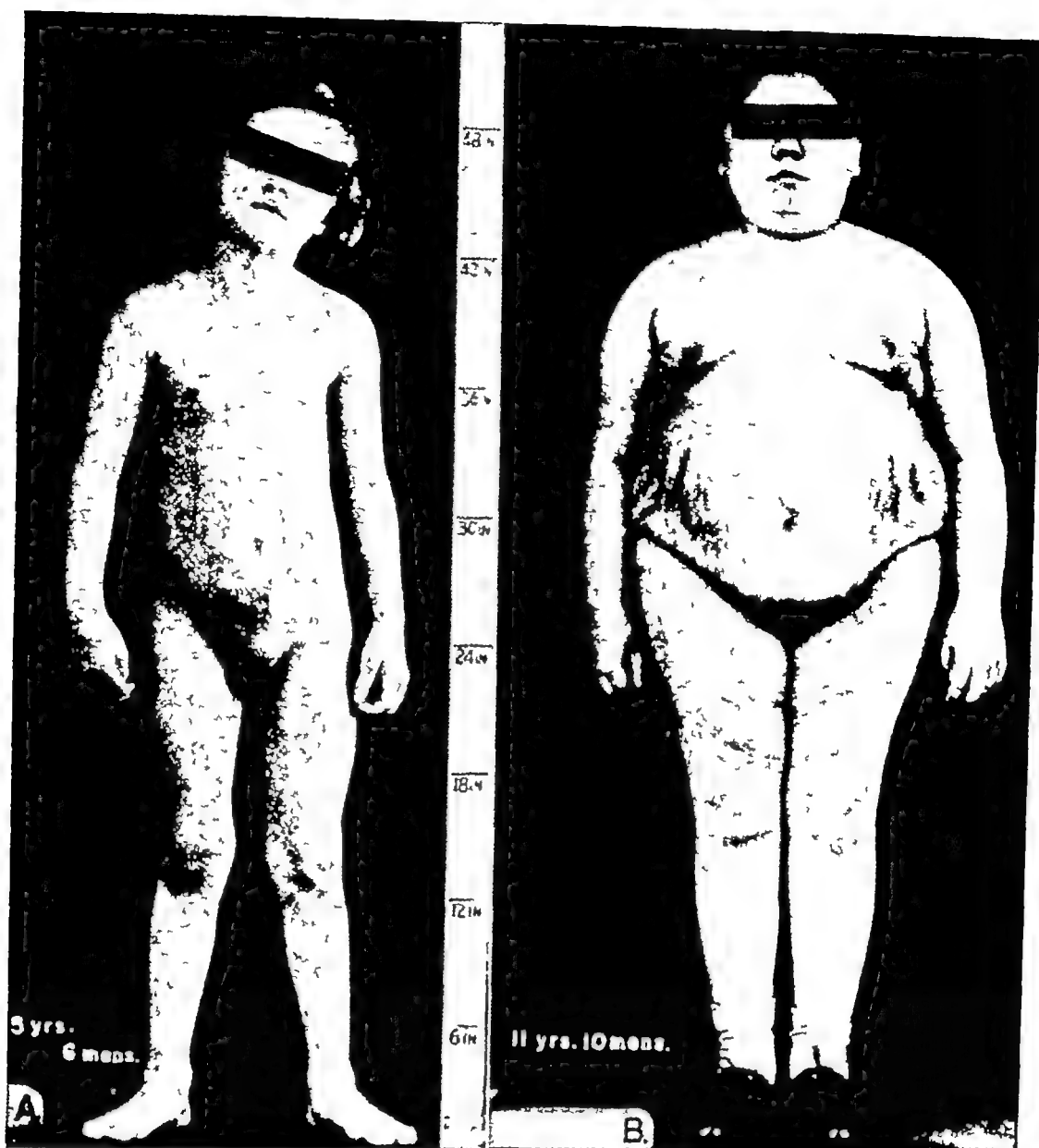


Fig 240 Comparison of adrenogenital syndrome (left) with Cushing's syndrome (right) in girls (From ALBRIGHT, F Cushing's syndrome Harvey Lect, 38 123, 1942-1943) The adrenogenital syndrome, caused by adrenal androgens, produces masculinization in females and precocious puberty in males The condition is compatible with normal longevity In contrast, virilism is not a prominent feature of Cushing's syndrome, a generalized metabolic disorder, here the muscular growth and strength characteristic of the adrenogenital syndrome are replaced by muscle wasting, weakness, and fat deposition Striae, ecchymoses, diabetes, and hypertension are common findings in this disease which, if severe, is incompatible with normal longevity Both the adrenogenital syndrome and Cushing's syndrome may be caused by adrenocortical hypersecretion resulting from either tumor or hyperplasia

quite striking, if in a boy or girl or in the adult female The pubic hair is masculine in distribution, the voice is coarse and often deep, and adult females must usually shave—hence the bearded lady of the circus In contrast to the weakness of the patient with Cushing's syndrome (a profound metabolic disorder affecting most body processes), the woman with the adrenogenital syndrome is

strong and may anticipate a normal (if unhappy) life span

In children with the adrenogenital syndrome the physical manifestations vary according to the sex of the patient and the age of onset If adrenal hyperplasia occurs in the male child prior to birth, macrogenitosomia precox may be present (precocious development of body and genitalia) As noted,

hyperplasia appears after birth, sexual maturity and accelerated general body development may be observed during childhood. If overproduction of androgens by the adrenal cortex occurs in the female *in utero*, the condition gives rise to a rather uniform picture of female pseudohermaphroditism. At birth the clitoris is found to be hypertrophied, resembling a hypospadias penis and surrounded ventrally by fibrous cords extending outward from the undersurface. The condition is almost always due to hyperplasia of the adrenal cortex. In the adrenogenital syndrome develops in the adult female, however, the possibility of the condition being due to a tumor is a significant one and this possibility should be excluded at once.

The adrenogenital syndrome may also arise because of androgen secreting ovarian tumors such as adrenal rests or true ovarian androblastomas. It can also be produced by excessive doses of androgen therapy in males as in the management of metastatic breast cancer.

DIAGNOSIS OF ADRENOGENITAL SYNDROME. It has been pointed out that if the condition is present at birth or appears during childhood, it is almost surely due to adrenocortical hyperplasia. If it develops in a previously normal menstruating woman then the possibility of adrenocortical tumor must be seriously considered. Therapeutically, it is important to distinguish between the two, for conservative therapy with cortisone or hydrocortisone may be used for the suppression of androgen production by hyperplastic glands, tumors require operation. Fortunately, Wilkins and his group¹⁰⁸ described a means of doing this. If the elevated urinary excretion of 17 ketosteroids declines on cortisone therapy the condition is very likely due to hyperplasia (Figs. 241 and 242).

If there is no significant effect, tumor must be excluded by operation. The exogenous cortisone suppresses the endogenous secretion of ACTH and androgen production declines. It has been shown that the secretion of ACTH is increased in patients with the adrenogenital syndrome due to hyperplasia



Fig. 241 Case study adrenogenital syndrome. Enlarged clitoris and hyperplastic adrenal in 14 year-old girl. For 6 or 8 years the mother had noted an enlarging clitoris. The girl had become stocky, her forehead hairline had receded (Fig. 231) and her voice had deepened. Menstruation had not begun, breast development was absent and pubic hair exhibited the male scutcheon. Shown below are the nodular adrenal gland removed from the patient at surgery (only one gland was enlarged) a normal adrenal gland from another patient and a piece of cardboard cut to the approximate size of the adrenal opposite to the hyperplastic one. (From HARDY J. D. *Surgical Physiology of the Adrenal Cortex* Springfield Ill., Charles C Thomas 1965.)

Tumors, on the other hand, are usually autonomous and not dependent upon the ACTH stimulus.

In virilizing adrenocortical hyperplasia the level of urinary 17 ketosteroid excretion rarely much exceeds 60 mg. per 24 hours; this level may be somewhat greater in the presence of a benign tumor, but it may be greatly increased in the presence of a malignant tumor of the adrenal (Figs. 243

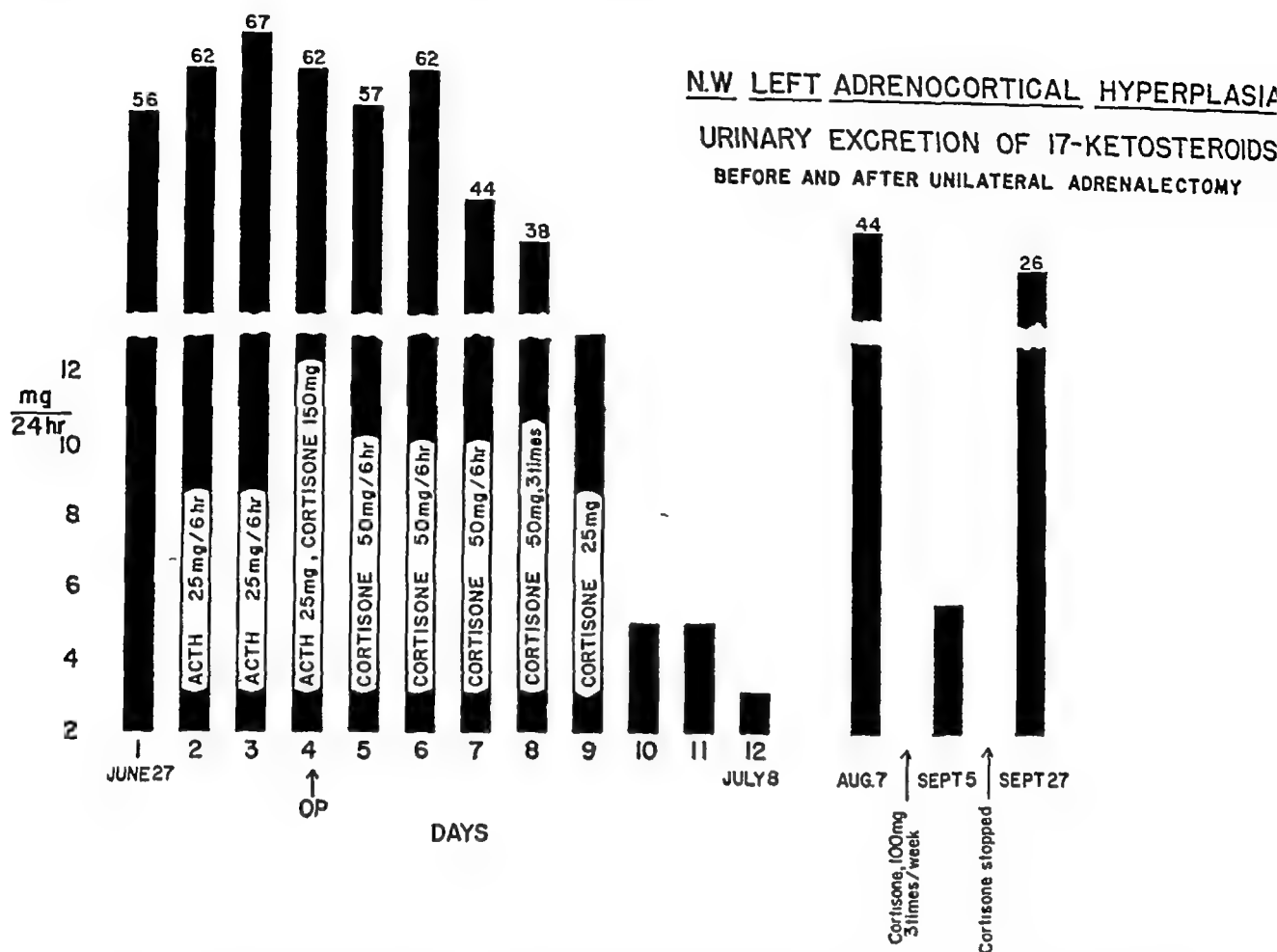


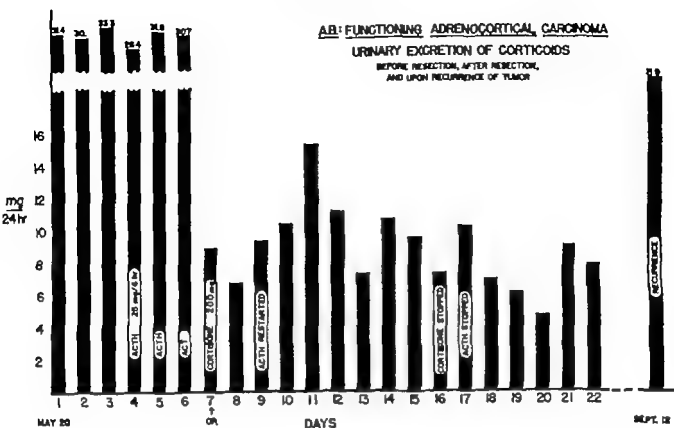
Fig 242 This patient is the one referred to in Figures 241 and 251. She was operated upon prior to the current practice of using corticosteroid therapy to suppress androgen production. At surgery the left adrenal was found to be hyperplastic and nodular (Fig 241), but the right adrenal was grossly normal, the left adrenal was removed. The ovaries and uterus were hypoplastic but were otherwise not remarkable. The parents were advised that hyperplasia of the right adrenal might develop later, and this did occur. Note that following removal of the hyperplastic left adrenal the previously elevated excretion of 17-ketosteroids (representing degraded androgens) fell to normal levels on the sixth post-operative day (tenth day of study). However, by August 7 the level had risen again to 44 mg per 24 hours. Cortisone suppressive therapy was then started and the 17-ketosteroid excretion fell promptly. It was allowed to rise once again by stopping the cortisone temporarily, but thereafter the dosage was maintained. This suppression of androgen production permitted gonadotropic hormones to produce feminization (breasts and menses), probably through ovarian estrogen production. (From HARDY, J. D. *Surgical Physiology of the Adrenal Cortex*. Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, 1955.)

and 244) The production of corticoids is also usually increased, but the production of 17-ketosteroids (androgens) preponderates to produce masculinization, if corticoid production had been preponderant, Cushing's syndrome would have resulted.

In addition to the test of the effect of cortisone therapy on 17-ketosteroid excretion, all the other usual measures should be used to exclude tumor.

Fractionation of 17-ketosteroids may be helpful. For example, it may be difficult to

distinguish virilism produced by adrenocortical hyperfunction from that produced by a true tumor of the ovary. In general, the alpha fraction is secreted by both the adrenal cortex and tumors of other organs such as the ovary or testis, but the beta fraction is secreted only by the adrenal cortex.¹⁵ Normally and in adrenal hyperplasia the beta fraction represents only 5 to 15 per cent of the total excretion, but in the presence of an adrenocortical tumor the beta fraction may be greatly increased.



It may be difficult to distinguish *hormonal* from *genetic pseudohermaphroditism*. Wilkins¹⁰⁷ has stated that if pubic hair, increased osseous and somatic development and an increase in 17 ketosteroid secretion appear after birth the diagnosis is probably that of adrenocortical hyperplasia. If the enlarged clitoris and other signs of abnormal sexual development have been present from birth, with no pubic hair or increase in 17 ketosteroid excretion, the condition is probably genetic in origin.

SURGERY VERSUS STEROID THERAPY IN ADRENAL GENITAL SYNDROMES All tumors are excised because of the danger of malignancy. It is still too early to determine whether cortisone therapy will be permanently satisfactory for the management of hyperplasia and in

fact, our limited experience suggests that it will not be. Nevertheless, at the present time it is our feeling that this therapy should be given a fair trial. We have used 200 mg. of cortisone daily for 2 weeks, by which time the excretion of 17 ketosteroids has usually declined and dosage is accordingly reduced. Jailer and his associates^{22, 23} studied 26 patients with adrenal hyperplasia and 10 patients with functioning adrenal tumors including instances of both adrenal virilism (adrenogenital syndrome) and Cushing's syndrome. A significant fall in urinary 17 ketosteroids was obtained in all patients with adrenal virilism secondary to adrenal hyperplasia and in most instances of Cushing's syndrome due to this disorder. In no instance was a fall in urinary 17 ketosteroids

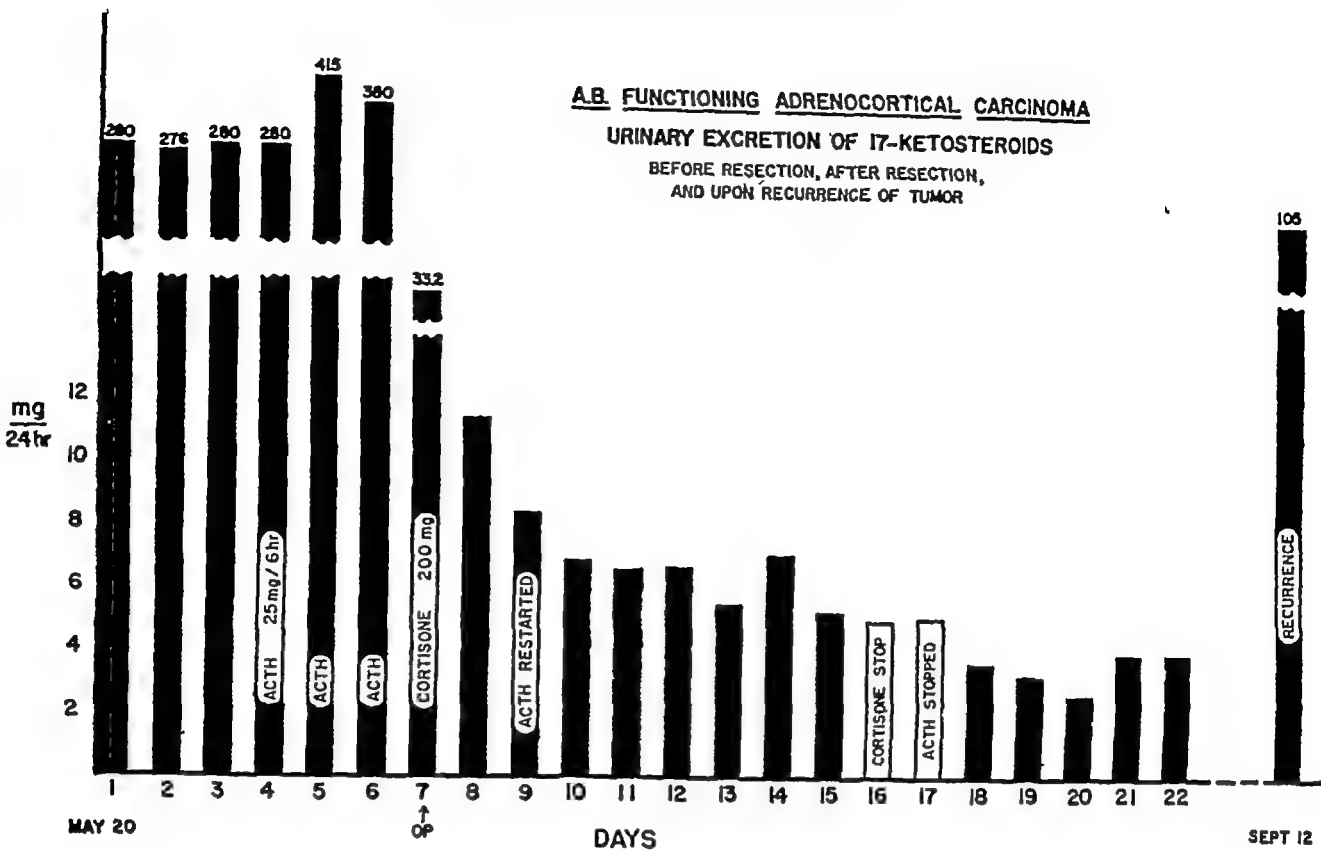


Fig 244 Case study, adrenogenital syndrome due to adrenal carcinoma. This patient, who is further described in Figure 243, had a 17-ketosteroid excretion of 280 mg per 24 hours (normal, 10). Surprisingly, the tumor responded to adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) therapy by increasing the excretion to 415 mg per 24 hours, though the corticoid excretion did not change (Fig 243). The level of 17-ketosteroid excretion fell to normal levels immediately following removal of the tumor and to very low levels when the ACTH was stopped on the seventeenth day of the study. The ACTH had been given to stimulate the probably atrophic left adrenal—since atrophy is common in the adrenal opposite one which harbors a functioning tumor (in contrast to hyperplasia, as in Figure 241). On September 12 she returned with hepatic metastases, and the level of 17-ketosteroid excretion had risen again to 105 mg per 24 hours. Malignant adrenocortical tumors often produce very high rates of steroid secretion, whereas hyperplasia results in intermediate rates (From HARDY, J. D. Urinary steroids in adrenocortical tumor. *Ann Surg*, 138: 765, 1953).

obtained in patients with functioning adrenal neoplasms. In another instance which was brought to our attention, there was a reduction in 17-ketosteroid excretion following the administration of cortisone orally, but the level did not decline entirely to within normal limits. At operation it was found that the patient had an arrhenoblastoma of the ovary, a true ovarian tumor which also secretes androgens. It would appear that in this instance the oral administration of cortisone had diminished the secretion of 17-ketosteroids by the adrenals, but that it had not reduced the androgens elaborated by the ovarian tumor. Again, if

the urinary excretion of 17-ketosteroids does not decline to within normal limits, the patient should be explored for the possibility of a tumor.

Our experience with only a few such patients has been that more and more cortisone is required and that initial improvement is difficult to maintain. In one teen-age girl, for example, feminization was achieved initially, but this subsequently regressed even under much higher cortisone dosage. In some patients, and particularly in some infants *in utero*, the androgen-producing cells of the zona reticularis may become so hyperplastic as to crowd out the cells of the zona glomeru-

losa and the zona fasciculata, which secrete the life-maintaining corticoids. Adrenocortical failure and death may ensue in the neonatal period. This circumstance was reported by McQuarrie and his associates⁷⁰ and we ourselves have observed a female infant who was hermaphroditic at birth and died of adrenocortical failure a day or so later.

The case now to be presented emphasizes many of the problems associated with adrenal virilism.

Case study. *Adrenogenital syndrome (virilism, pseudohermaphroditism) due to bilateral adrenocortical hyperplasia.* E. H., a 43-year-old divorcee, had been extremely 'passionate' since the age of 6 and had masturbated frequently throughout the ensuing years in search of relief from the driving libido. The clitoris had been large since she could remember, the voice husky, the increased body and sexual hair coarse, and she shaved regularly. She had menstruated only three times in her life, this at the age of 31 following a course of pill therapy for 1 year.

She had always been rather big and stocky and had stopped growing at the age of 12. In 1947 she had married but her sexual desire was so great and so incessant that her husband soon left her. Since that time she had occasionally worked but for the most part she had drifted restlessly from one relative to another, moving frequently.

In 1951 she was operated upon in Mobile, Alabama and bilateral adrenocortical hyperplasia was demonstrated. However, no adrenal tissue was resected at that time because of the inadequacy of the replacement therapy that would be available to her. The 24-hour excretion of 17 ketosteroids in 1954 was reported as 61 mg.

Another finding of note was the fact that she had suffered from nocturia (6 to 8 times) for many years.

A niece was reported to be developing evidence of the adrenogenital syndrome, in line with the strong genetic tendency of the disease.

On admission to the University Hospital on January 9, 1955, she exhibited the usual physical signs of virilism that were described above. The body hair was wiry, the voice rather deep, the build stocky, the breasts moderate in size, and the clitoris about four times normal size. Blood chemistry studies were essentially normal, but the 24 hour excretion of 17 ketosteroids was 28 mg (average normal, 10 mg).

Since the presence of adrenocortical hyperplasia had been observed by a competent surgeon in Mobile, it was decided to give the patient cortisone therapy to reduce the adrenal androgen production—this by suppressing pituitary function and its secretion of ACTH. In this way the life-maintaining corticoids were supplied by oral therapy, meanwhile suppressing ACTH which would stimulate the adrenals to secrete not only corticoids but the unwanted androgens as well.

This therapy did lower the androgen production to normal levels, in that the 17-ketosteroid excretion declined to 5.9 mg. per 24 hours. Yet, the libido was only slightly decreased, the patient's headaches were only partially relieved, and she was by no means rehabilitated. Adrenalectomy is still under consideration as of this writing.

Comment. This patient presents a fairly typical story of the unfortunate girl who has adrenal virilism or pseudohermaphroditism. Since she had had symptoms since the age of 6, the disease was almost surely due to hyperplasia rather than to tumor. Suppressive cortisone therapy for this condition has been thus far, disappointing to us, and we are tending once again to be inclined to do subtotal bilateral adrenalectomy. True philosophically and theoretically suppressive steroid therapy has great appeal but in actual practice it has failed to work effectively for us. It routinely reduces the 17 ketosteroid output in hyperplasia of course but larger and larger doses of cortisone have been required to maintain the initial response in our limited experience.

Primary Aldosteronism

Aldosterone has been isolated only recently⁹⁸ Prior to this it had been appreciated that when all known adrenocortical hormones had been removed from the adrenal bed, there still remained behind in the residue an "amorphous substance" with a marked effect upon salt metabolism This was aldosterone This corticosteroid has been shown to have a specific rôle in water and salt metabolism, that is, only fluid balance is affected by aldosterone One of the glucocorticoids must be supplied for maintenance following complete adrenalectomy Moreover, while the glucocorticoids have as their major rôle the maintenance of functions other than that of fluid metabolism, most of them also have a sufficient effect on electrolyte metabolism in most patients to maintain health in the absence of other adrenocortical hormones

In 1955 Conn³⁴ reported a patient whose clinical features were termed *primary aldosteronism* The findings consisted of hypertension, muscle weakness, renal and electrolyte abnormalities, and an increased excretion of salt-retaining hormone in the urine

The plasma chemical change in primary aldosteronism consists of hypokalemic alkalosis and hypernatremia The condition has usually been due to an adrenocortical tumor secreting increased amounts of an aldosterone-like substance

It is to be expected that primary aldosteronism will be diagnosed more frequently now that the typical clinical picture and the hormone responsible have been identified Tumors should of course be removed by adrenalectomy

Conn and his associates³⁵ have also described an increase in aldosterone secretion in connection with *familial periodic paralysis* It appears that the associated retention of sodium may be a pathogenic factor in the electrolyte derangements which characterize this condition, of which a lowered plasma potassium level is a conspicuous feature This finding is considered to be due

to a movement of the potassium ion into the cells During recovery there was excretion of considerable amounts of sodium but little potassium

Liddle, Duncan and Bantter⁶⁰ have reported evidence for a dual mechanism regulating adrenocortical functions in man The secretion of glucocorticoids appears to be regulated by ACTH, whereas the rate of secretion of aldosterone is to a considerable extent independent of ACTH This has, of course, been suspected for some years

Adrenocortical Insufficiency

The hormones of the adrenal cortex are essential to life, and the absence of at least a minimal supply is reflected in shock⁵⁰ Nevertheless, the rapidity with which circulatory collapse develops is dependent upon whether or not there is complete absence of the hormones, as in total adrenalectomy, or whether a marked but incomplete depletion of hormones exists Thus, incomplete absence results in *subacute adrenocortical insufficiency* and *chronic adrenocortical insufficiency* (*Addison's disease*)

Acute adrenocortical failure This picture may be produced by complete or nearly complete adrenalectomy It may also be seen following the stress of other types of surgery in a patient who has inadequate adrenal function to furnish the normal metabolic stability—as in the presence of adrenal tuberculosis or tumor metastases, or in cortical atrophy due to previous prolonged cortisone therapy, or following the resection of a functioning tumor of the opposite gland

Acute adrenal failure usually occurs within the first 48 hours after operation The signs and symptoms consist chiefly of a sharp rise in temperature, tachycardia, shock, oliguria, and mental confusion There has not been time for the plasma electrolyte levels to change, and the measurement of urinary corticosteroid excretion in the emergency is utterly impracticable, for any number of reasons

The mechanism of the shock is not clear, but it has been suggested that cortical hor-

mones are required for the normal effectiveness of chemical substances which mediate vascular tone

Once adrenocortical insufficiency has been diagnosed, the treatment consists of giving adequate amounts of hydrocortisone intravenously and intramuscularly. We give 100 mg. intravenously 4 times a day, over each 6-hour period. ACTH may or may not be helpful; it might be useful if failure were due to adrenocortical atrophy but not if failure were due to adrenal excision or destruction. Even in atrophy the effect of ACTH might require several days to appear.

Subacute adrenocortical failure. When the presence of a modicum of remaining adrenocortical function cushions the onslaught of the physiologic reaction to cortical hormone withdrawal, permitting the patient to slide gradually into failure, a picture develops which is much different from that of acute failure. There has been time for substantial losses of sodium to occur and this is reflected in a lowered plasma sodium level and a rise in the NPN though the latter need not necessarily be due to sodium loss *per se*. The patient becomes weak, listless, drowsy, and anorexic (Fig. 245). Previously alert, he cannot remain attentive, and he may not remember what has just been said. Fever is not a common finding at this stage and the decline in blood pressure is not as abrupt as in acute failure.

While much of the symptomatology may be palliated by the administration of saline solution and desoxycorticosterone acetate (DOCA), a glucocorticoid such as hydrocortisone is usually also required to support metabolic processes other than those involved in fluid metabolism. We usually give hydrocortisone salt solution and frequently, ACTH to stimulate the remaining adrenal tissue. This treatment is continued until general health and plasma electrolyte values are normal after which it is gradually reduced to a maintenance level or discontinued.

At times hydrocortisone may not prove completely adequate as a replacement sub-

R.McD Cushing's Syndrome (mild) Excision Left Adrenocortical Adenoma

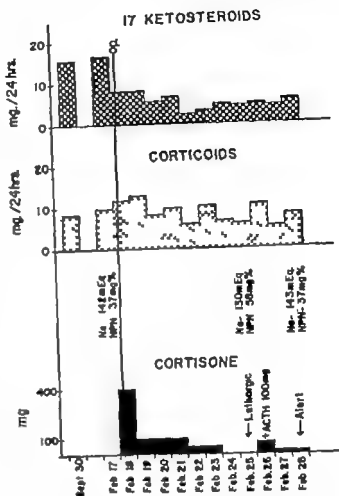


Fig. 245 Case study subacute adrenocortical failure (From HARDY J D *Fluid Therapy* Philadelphia Lea & Febiger 1954). This middle-aged lady had had a benign left adrenocortical adenoma excised by thoracoabdominal approach on February 18. On February 25 her daughter who was a registered nurse noted that the mother was disoriented and unable to remember conversation from one moment to the next. Cortisone had been reduced from the 400 mg. given during the first 24 hours following operation to 100 mg. on each of the next 3 days, then to 50 mg. for 2 days, and then stopped. Thus, when she became lethargic on February 25 she had had no steroid replacement therapy for almost 48 hours. Plasma sodium and blood nonprotein nitrogen (NPN) levels were obtained at once and were 130 mEq per L., and 58 mg per 100 cc respectively. Cortisone and adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) promptly restored the mental state and the blood chemistry levels to normal. This patient had the electrolyte abnormalities of subacute failure: here findings were in sharp contrast to the findings met in sudden or acute failure—high fever, rapid pulse, hypotension, and apprehension followed by disorientation and coma.

stance and the addition of DOCA (or, soon, aldosterone?) may be required

Chronic adrenocortical failure This syndrome is well known. Asthenia, marked weight loss, hypoglycemia, salt loss, and skin pigmentation are prominent features

Tetany during corticosteroid therapy Large doses of corticosteroid therapy may produce "hypocalcemic" tetany. This is apparently due more to the mild alkalosis which occurs than to an absolute reduction in the total serum calcium level. It was pointed out earlier (p. 68) that normal neuromuscular irritability is dependent largely upon the ionized calcium fraction, which is diminished by alkalinization

Complications of Adrenocortical Therapy for Conditions Other Than Adrenal Insufficiency

Most of the more important considerations in adrenocortical hormonal therapy for adrenal insufficiency have been touched upon. However, it remains to note that undesirable or even harmful effects may attend intensive or prolonged steroid therapy. These have been presented in Figure 246. It may be seen that, with the particular exception of cortical atrophy, most of the side effects or sequelae are due to exaggeration of usual adrenocortical effects. Hence, the "toxicity" lies more in the direction of excessive dosage, or in derangement of normal endocrine balance, than it does in any toxic effect *per se*

UNDESIRABLE SIDE EFFECTS OF STEROID THERAPY

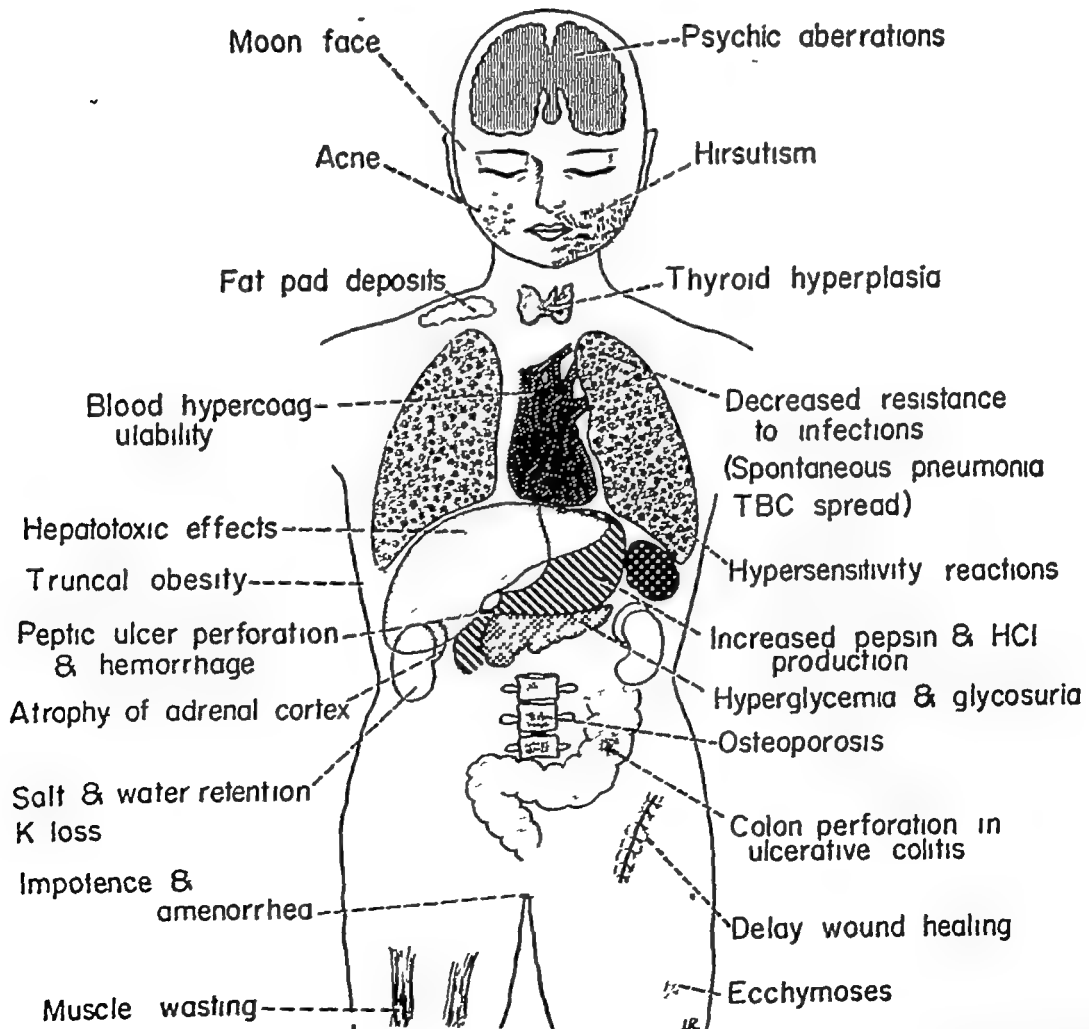


Fig 246 Side effects of corticosteroid therapy usually represent excessive manifestations of normal potentialities (From HARDY, J. D., AND MEENA, A. L. Hazards and safeguards in steroid therapy *Surg Clin North America*, October, 1957: 1425)

In concluding this comment, one might point out that (1) adrenocortical hormones do not act specifically against any particular case, and inflammatory reactions caused by many different agents may be radically modified by these drugs, (2) bacterial organisms and their toxins are not directly sterilized by these compounds, for in lobar pneumonia their administration may abolish the patient's symptoms while permitting the pneumococci to continue to multiply in the blood stream, (3) the effect of these hormones is largely suppressive and whereas during treatment they may modify tissue reaction to various noxious agents, manifestations of the disease frequently return when the drugs are stopped. At times it is necessary to begin ACTH therapy before one can stop prolonged hydrocortisone treatment, as is because adrenocortical atrophy and pituitary hypofunction have occurred. In such cases it may be quite difficult to "wean" the patient from chronic adrenal steroid therapy. One should follow plasma sodium and PN levels for several days before relaxing the observation of such an individual.

The Adrenal Medulla

The only known function of the adrenal medulla is to secrete epinephrine and norepinephrine, though other substances may be identified in the future. The tumor of the adrenal medulla is called a pheochromocytoma but not all of these neoplasms secrete excessive amounts of sympathomimetic substances. To our knowledge, hyperplasia comparable to that which involves the adrenal cortex, as a cause of adrenal medullary hypersecretion has not been reported. The adrenal medulla is not essential to life and this is readily demonstrated by the adequacy of cortical replacement therapy following total adrenalectomy.

Pheochromocytoma

HISTORICAL ASPECTS This tumor was described by Manassé¹⁴ as early as 1893, but it was not until 1922 that Labbé, Tinel, and Joumer¹⁵ recorded the first complete study of a classic case. Their patient was a young

woman who suffered severe attacks of vomiting associated with tremor, chilliness, and palpitation. The blood pressure was usually elevated but was highly variable. When the patient died in acute pulmonary edema, autopsy revealed a pheochromocytoma above the left adrenal gland. Four years later Vaquez, Donzelot, and Gerandel¹⁶ reported the first case of paroxysmal hypertension diagnosed during life. This patient was treated with deep roentgen therapy over both adrenals and a remission was achieved. The first patient surgically explored and thereby cured was a woman who had attacks of paroxysmal hypertension associated with dyspnea, headache, tachycardia and vomiting. C. H. Mayo successfully removed a tumor intimately associated with the left adrenal gland.¹⁶ Finally, in 1937 Beer, King, and Prinzmetal¹⁶ demonstrated preoperatively in an animal preparation a pressor substance in the patient's blood during hypertensive crisis, an effect which was absent following surgery.

PATHOLOGY OF PHEOCHROMOCYTOMAS This tumor is formed by chromaffin cells which are derived from the neuroectoderm of the neural crest, and which are developmentally related to the cells of the sympathetic ganglia. These lesions may be benign or, rarely, malignant. However, to demonstrate malignancy the tumor must have metastasized for, microscopically, benign tumors are indistinguishable from malignant ones. Moreover even though most tumors are microscopically benign, if they secrete excessive amounts of epinephrine-like substances they are physiologically malignant, for they will eventually cause the death of the patient.

Usually small, round, encapsulated and unilateral, these tumors were found bilaterally in 16 of 152 cases reported by Mac Keith.¹⁷ Furthermore while they are usually found in the adrenal glands or nearby, they may be situated elsewhere in the abdomen; and even in the thorax. Whereas the normal adrenal medulla contains only about 0.4 mg. of epinephrine per gm. of tissue, assays of pheochromocytoma tissue have resulted in values which varied from 0.12 to 20 mg. per

gm of tumor tissue Goldenberg and his associates⁴⁹ used paper chromatography to demonstrate the presence of norepinephrine in the adrenal medulla, and it was subsequently demonstrated that the functioning pheochromocytoma secretes both epinephrine and norepinephrine. In recent years it has become possible to measure the blood levels of these catechol amines.

Pheochromocytoma and neurofibromatosis One relationship of particular interest is that pheochromocytoma is related to certain neurocutaneous syndromes, and approximately 5 to 10 per cent of cases are associated with von Recklinghausen's disease. Thus, stigmata of neurocutaneous disease such as *café-au-lait* spots or nodules in a hypertensive patient should arouse the suspicion of pheochromocytoma.

Pheochromocytomas are surely more common than was formerly realized, and the intense interest in essential hypertension now results in more frequent detection of these tumors. All cases of essential hypertension should be screened with a Regitine test (see below).

DIAGNOSIS OF PHEOCHROMOCYTOMA *Signs and symptoms* The paroxysmal attack or "crisis" frequently associated with pheochromocytoma is the result of the intermittent liberation of excessive amounts of epinephrine and norepinephrine into the blood stream. The history may date back for years and initially the disease may have been mild. As the months and years pass, though, the episodes are apt to increase in severity. Approximately one-half of the patients have spontaneous attacks, but others are aware of precipitating factors such as postural changes, emotional or physical stress, pain, constipation, and menstruation. In the full-blown attack the symptoms experienced are palpitation, precordial distress, nausea, vomiting, dizziness, circumoral pallor, coldness of the extremities, glycosuria, headache, and anxiety. Dilatation of the pupils may be noted, and pulmonary edema may be sufficiently severe to cause death. The attacks may last from a few

minutes to several days, though ordinarily the episode is terminated within from one to two hours. Initially the blood pressure usually falls to normal levels between paroxysms, but eventually it may become chronically elevated, rendering differentiation from essential hypertension difficult.

The *modes of death* in cases of untreated pheochromocytoma are acute pulmonary edema with shock and collapse during the crisis, cerebral hemorrhage, or chronic renal or cardiac failure.

Hypermetabolism and an increased basal metabolic rate are the result of an increased secretion of the medullary hormones and often lead to the erroneous diagnosis of hyperthyroidism. Indeed, such patients have been subjected to thyroidectomy. In addition, the excess epinephrine may produce the picture of "diabetes mellitus," which clears on resection of the tumor. It has been suggested that this is, in effect, "steroid diabetes" from ACTH release, but it may be epinephrine-induced glycogenolysis. In any event, when "diabetes," hypertension, and hypermetabolism are found in the same patient, pheochromocytoma should be seriously considered.

In at least two patients of whom we have first-hand knowledge, *gastroduodenal hemorrhage* was the presenting manifestation of pheochromocytoma.

Physical examination may reveal an *abdominal mass* in the flank. If on massage of the mass a typical attack is induced, the diagnosis of pheochromocytoma is virtually certain. If a tumor is not palpable, massage of the abdominal wall may still precipitate an attack, though the tumor is not necessarily present on the side massaged.

Roentgenologic measures should be directed toward visualization of the kidney areas and the chest. These have been discussed elsewhere under the diagnosis of adrenocortical tumors. However, again, the tumor need not lie adjacent to the kidney. Aortography has been reported to assist in the diagnosis of the lesion, but we have not tried it.

Additional laboratory studies and clinical tests As indicated above, the fasting blood sugar level may be elevated as a result of the excessive secretion of epinephrine. In addition, there may be a decreased glucose tolerance suggestive of diabetes mellitus, though more commonly the glucose tolerance curve is normal. Glycosuria may be found. The basal metabolic rate may be increased, and the urinary excretion of corticoids is elevated in the occasional case, apparently because of ACTH release. During an attack the plasma epinephrine and norepinephrine levels may be measurably increased, as previously mentioned.

Specific diagnostic chemical tests In 1933 Fourneau and Bovet⁴³ published their work on the use of benzodioxane compounds as "sympathicolytic" agents, and since that time a number of these compounds in addition to other chemical agents, have been used as tests and as treatments in cases of pheochromocytoma. The more important of these will now be outlined briefly.

Provocative tests The histamine test — The purpose of this test is to attempt to precipitate the usual hypertensive crisis in a patient suspected of having a pheochromocytoma but whose blood pressure is normal at the time the patient is seen. The usual procedure is to administer 0.05 mg. of histamine base intravenously. In normal subjects hyperreactors, and patients with essential hypertension the reaction is approximately equivalent to the blood pressure rise which results from the cold pressor test and the patients with essential hypertension may show some circumoral pallor and may have headache. In the patient with pheochromocytoma however an attack may be precipitated within 2 minutes, consisting of severe headache, distress and pain in the abdomen and later in the chest, groaning, restlessness, anxiety, more circumoral pallor, and excessive sweating associated with a marked rise in blood pressure.

While this test is useful, it may fail to produce an attack in the patient who ac-

tually does have a functioning pheochromocytoma.

The meclohyl test — This test also is used to attempt to precipitate a crisis in a patient whose blood pressure is normal at the time of examination. Twenty-five milligrams of this drug are given subcutaneously. An initial blood pressure fall of short duration, followed by a marked and more sustained rise to hypertensive levels, constitutes a positive test. False positives with the test are said to be few, but a failure of response does not rule out the presence of pheochromocytoma.

Adrenolytic agents Whereas the provocative agents are used to attempt to precipitate an attack and achieve a positive diagnosis in the patient in whom pheochromocytoma is suspected but whose blood pressure is normal at the time of examination, the adrenolytic agents are used to attempt to lower the blood pressure in patients who have hypertension when examined. It is assumed, though not entirely correctly, that the blood pressure of the patient with essential hypertension will not be lowered by the administration of these drugs, while in the patient whose hypertension is due to medullary hormones the blood pressure will fall.

Piperoxan (benzodioxane) and Dibenzamine — Piperoxan was one of the first of these agents to be used for the diagnosis of pheochromocytoma. This agent was of value and frequently accurately indicated the presence of a pheochromocytoma. Nevertheless, it occasionally gave false negative as well as false positive results. That is, it failed to lower the hypertensive blood pressure in some patients with pheochromocytoma, and in some patients in whom it did lower the blood pressure no pheochromocytoma was found. It is now little used.

Dibenamine — This drug does block the effect of circulating epinephrine and norepinephrine, and it will cause a drop in blood pressure when a pheochromocytoma is elaborating these substances. Yet it also may depress the blood pressure in the presence

of essential hypertension and this feature is of course a serious defect in the test

Regitine (C-7337) —This substance was first used by Grimson and his associates,⁵¹ and it has since been widely used in the detection of pheochromocytomas. They used 5 mg doses intramuscularly, and found fewer side effects than with benzodioxane. A single intramuscular injection of 5 mg of Regitine may be considered adequate for routine tests in hypertensive patients to detect circulating epinephrine elaborated by a pheochromocytoma. Piperoxan can be used as a confirmatory test.

Subsequent experience by others confirmed the fact that Regitine offered a more useful test in the diagnosis of pheochromocytoma than did piperoxan. According to Gifford, Roth, and Kvale,⁴⁷ Regitine is most reliable when given intravenously (in doses of 5 mg). Regitine produced a marked fall in blood pressure in patients with sustained hypertension secondary to pheochromocytoma and, while it did have some depressor effect on blood pressure in 66 per cent of patients who had essential hypertension, the blood pressure of the patients was usually decreased less than 35 mm Hg systolic and 25 mm diastolic. False positive reactions were obtained in 3 out of 149 patients without pheochromocytomas to whom Regitine was given intramuscularly and in 4 out of 107 patients to whom Regitine was given intravenously. These false positive reactions were attributed to the following factors: (1) sedation before the test, (2) uremia, (3) basal blood pressures that were in the low hypertensive range, and (4) the unexplained depressor effect of Regitine on the blood pressure of some hypertensive patients.

The effect of adrenolytic drugs on pheochromocytoma with functioning metastatic lesions —In a particularly exacting test of the efficacy of the various drugs which are available for the treatment of hyperepinephrinemia, Bannon and Allen⁹ studied the efficacy of piperoxan, Regitine, Priscoline, Dibenamine, and Dibenzylamine in a patient with functioning metastases from a pheo-

chromocytoma. The problem presented *preoperatively* by the patient was that of how to reduce the blood pressure in order to improve the general condition of the patient sufficiently so that operation could be performed without too great a risk. The problem *postoperatively* was that of how to reduce the blood pressure which was high because of the functioning metastases. It was found that although piperoxan (benzodioxane) produced a moderate reduction in blood pressure on continuous intravenous or intramuscular administration, refractoriness to its adrenolytic action developed. Moreover, the duration of its action was so short as to render it of little use in sustained therapy. Large amounts of Regitine were used, but refractoriness developed to its action also. The effect of Priscoline was dramatic, but its brief action precluded sustained therapeutic use. Dibenamine reduced the blood pressure in a satisfactory manner, but the duration of its action was brief. Finally, the intravenous and oral administration of Dibenzylamine, a relative of Dibenamine, proved to be effective in counteracting the symptoms and signs of hyperepinephrinemia for a prolonged period. During the 7 months of administration of this drug, no toxicity was noted and refractoriness did not develop. Its use allowed adequate preparation of the patient for operation and successful treatment of the postoperative recurrence of hypertension.

MANAGEMENT OF PHEOCHROMOCYTOMA Having diagnosed the presence of a pheochromocytoma by history, by such findings as physical examination may reveal, and by the appropriate tests, the definitive treatment consists of excision of the tumor. Occasionally physical examination or roentgen studies may have disclosed the location of the tumor, but often it is not possible to lateralize it preoperatively. If the side involved can be determined prior to operation, a relatively short thoraco-abdominal incision is preferred; otherwise a short transverse upper abdominal incision is made, through which the adrenal areas are ex-

plored The incision may then be extended in either direction. Recall that from 10 to 15 per cent are bilateral

A good *basal anesthetic* is helpful in avoiding emotional reactions which may precipitate an attack preoperatively, and a general anesthetic is desirable. Contrary to the situation with a functioning adrenocortical tumor, the adrenal medulla opposite the one giving rise to a pheochromocytoma does not undergo atrophy, though no ill effects would occur if it did.

It is desirable to expose the tumor and to ligate the blood supply as early as possible, since manipulation of the tumor may liberate large amounts of epinephrine with resulting excessive blood pressure levels. As a further precautionary measure, an intravenous drip of Dibenamine or Regitine should be available to use during the operation in the event that manipulation of the tumor produces excessive blood pressure levels. In fact some surgeons continue a slow drip of an adrenolytic drug throughout operation as a prophylactic measure.

Postresection shock. One much disputed circumstance which not infrequently follows resection of a pheochromocytoma is that profound shock may occur shortly after the tumor has been excised. The etiology of this hypotension is not clear. Bartels and Catell¹² stated that this type of collapse may occur while the pheochromocytoma is still *in situ*. If so, it would seem that an excess of epinephrine rather than a lack of it is the cause of the shock, and that the circulatory collapse is due to acute failure of the left side of the heart. This view is further supported by the report of Grimson and his co-workers²¹ on the beneficial effect of benzodioxane when used continuously throughout the operation to neutralize excessive amounts of circulating epinephrine. In stark contrast others maintain that it is a lack of epinephrine which is causing the shock, and evidence has been advanced to support this view also. In a patient operated upon by Decker, McDowell, and Trimble²⁰ manipulation of the tumor caused the blood pressure

to spike to 280/180. The tumor had two or three vascular pedicles, which were clamped and ligated. The mass was shelled out easily, leaving some yellowish, normal looking adrenal gland behind. As one vessel was being clamped, the blood pressure suddenly dropped to 60/20 and an intravenous injection of solution containing 5 mg. of epinephrine and 500 cc of isotonic sodium chloride solution was started immediately. The pressure was well controlled by this method and was maintained at about 100/60. The patient received 500 cc of blood during the operation. During the first night after operation, however, the needle used for the intravenous injection of the epinephrine solution became plugged and before the solution could be started again the blood pressure dropped to 40/10. In the haste of starting the epinephrine solution again, too much was allowed to enter the vein and the pressure suddenly rose to 200/100 and the patient developed a severe headache. The drip was regulated immediately and the patient had no further trouble. Epinephrine solution was used at intervals during the next 3 days, and the systolic blood pressure was maintained by this means at between 90 to 140 mm. Hg. However the picture in their subject was somewhat confused by the fact that during the early postoperative period the patient was transfused because of a low hemoglobin level.

Further suggestive data in favor of the epinephrine deficiency theory were offered by Litman and State¹⁰ who reported a fatality in the case of an 11 year old girl who received Dibenamine preoperatively and then went into profound irreversible shock immediately after the removal of a pheochromocytoma. She was given large doses of epinephrine but without effect, and it was believed that the Dibenamine had rendered the patient refractory to epinephrine.

Clearly, the question of the cause of this interesting shock phenomenon remains unsettled. Fortunately, it is not usually a severe problem, and with judicious medication hypertension caused by manipulation of the

tumor, and hypotension following its removal, can be controlled. If the hypertension has not become fixed because of the chronic presence of the pheochromocytoma, the prognosis following resection of the tumor is excellent.

THE HAZARD PRESENTED BY INCIDENTAL PHEOCHROMOCYTOMA AT OPERATION It is highly dangerous to perform, say, a cholecystectomy on a patient who has a functioning pheochromocytoma, the subject may die in hypertensive crisis. Of 15 cases of pheochromocytoma diagnosed at autopsy, Minno, Bennett, and Kvale⁸³ noted that 5 had died during operation for other lesions.

Endocrine Disorders of the Pancreas

Hyperinsulinism

HISTORICAL CONSIDERATIONS Possibly the first time that the pancreas was associated with diabetes and glucose metabolism was in 1788, when Cawley²⁷ reported the autopsy findings of a diabetic patient who presented pancreatic calculi. In 1856 Claude Bernard¹⁸ wrote upon glycosuria and hyperglycemia with a perception which considerably clarified and advanced knowledge in this field. In 1869 Paul Langerhans⁶⁷ described the islands to which his name was subsequently affixed. In 1884 Ainozan and Vailland³ ligated the ducts of the pancreas and noted an atrophy of the acinar tissue and a persistence of the islet cells. They failed, however, to attach significance to the persistence of the islet cells in an animal which did not develop diabetes. A fatal diabetes in animals was produced by pancreatectomy in 1889 by von Mehring and Minkowski⁸⁰ and in 1891 Minkowski⁸² demonstrated that a successful graft of pancreatic tissue would prevent diabetes following total pancreatectomy, with diabetes ensuing when the graft was also excised. A further step in the eventual solution of this problem was taken when Schafei,⁹⁴ in 1895, noted the evidence favoring an internal secretion of the pancreas, he pointed out that, while total pancreatectomy produced a fatal diabetes, a total external pancreatic fistula did not. In 1901 Opie⁸⁷

described hyaline changes in the islet of diabetics at autopsy, and in 1922 Ba and Best¹⁰ isolated insulin and demonstrated its potency in the treatment of diabetes litus.

Shortly following the discovery of insulin, Seale Harris⁵⁶ observed that symptoms of hypoglycemia similar to those of insulin shock occurred in certain patients with spontaneous hypoglycemia, and suggested that this could be due to hyperplasia or neoplasia of the isles of Langerhans. 7 years later such a case was studied by Sell Wilder and his staff,¹⁰⁶ and this patient, a physician suffering from a syndrome suggestive of insulin shock, was operated upon by W. J. Mayo. A tumor of the pancreas was found (with multiple liver metastases) which represented an islet cell carcinoma. A biologic assay on standardized rabbits revealed that the metastases contained insulin, as shown by their ability to lower the blood sugar in these animals. The case successfully treated surgically was created upon by Roscoe Graham of Toronto and was reported by Howland and his associates.⁹¹ At operation a benign adenoma of islet tissue was removed and the patient cured.

PATHOLOGY OF ISLET CELL TUMORS No islet cell tumors secrete increased amounts of insulin. They may be found as incidental findings at autopsy. One obscure type of islet cell tumor described by Zollinger and Ellison¹⁰⁹ has been termed the "ulcerogenic tumor of the pancreas", it may be associated with a particularly virulent type of peptic ulceration due to greatly increased acid secretion. This ulcerogenic tumor may be, more often is not, linked with the secretion of increased amounts of insulin. It usually is derived from alpha cells or delta cells.

The tumors of the isles of Langerhans are usually reddish brown in color and contrast with the yellow or ivory color of the surrounding pancreas. Moreover, the neoplasms are of a firmer consistency than surrounding tissue. They are typically benign, well circumscribed, and average from 1 to 2 cm

diameter. They are found more frequently in the tail or body of the pancreas, since islet tissue is more abundant in these areas. Nevertheless, this is only a relative matter, since of 76 patients reviewed recently from the experience at the Mayo Clinic 19 had tumors of the head, 22 of the body, and 28 of the tail of the pancreas. The other tumors were at the junction of the body and tail, or were multiple, and in one case the location of the tumor was not stated.²³ The fact is one must search carefully for nodules in the head of the pancreas and in all other sites. Since the tumors can be multiple, many patients with islet cell adenomas have had at least one previous operation at which a tumor may or may not have been found. More often, of course, these adenomas are solitary. The size of the lesion bears little relationship to the severity of the disease, that is to the amount of insulin secreted and to symptoms.

Does islet cell hyperplasia occur? While it may be true that very rarely the hyperinsulinism is due to generalized hyperplasia of the islet cells, the frequency with which this is diagnosed tends in all reported studies to be inversely proportional to the care with which the surgeon seeks for the adenoma at the time of operation. Moreover, the adenoma has often been found in pancreatic tissue that was resected because no tumor could be discovered. Furthermore, the tumor has at times been found at autopsy in patients in whom a part of the pancreas had been resected but the hyperinsulinism had not been satisfactorily managed. Thus one must be exceedingly cautious in diagnosing the hyperinsulinism as being the result of generalized islet cell hyperplasia lest the small adenoma be overlooked. In 76 of 94 cases reported from the Mayo Clinic, an actual tumor of the islet cells of the pancreas was found, therefore. Bredahl, Priestley, and Ryncarson²⁴ believe that if hyperinsulinism due to diffuse hyperplasia of the islet cells does exist it must be exceedingly rare; they have found no patient in whom this

condition was definitely established by pathologic examination.

The majority of islet cell adenomas are benign. In the Mayo Clinic experience there were 46 benign adenomas, 23 Grade I carcinomas, and 7 metastasizing carcinomas of the isles of Langerhans.

Hyperinsulinism may be encountered from childhood to late adult life, though the greatest incidence is in the fourth, fifth, and sixth decades.

THE DIAGNOSIS OF HYPERINSULINISM. The diagnosis of hyperinsulinism rests upon the hypoglycemia produced and the symptoms which ensue therefrom. Causes of hypoglycemia include organic hyperinsulinism (islet cell adenoma), functional hyperinsulinism, the hypoglycemia of liver failure, and the hypoglycemia of pituitary or adrenal failure.

The organic causes in which a recognizable anatomic lesion can be found, are hyperinsulinism due to pancreatic islet cell adenoma or carcinoma, hepatic disease, pituitary hypofunction, adrenocortical hypofunction, and certain central nervous system lesions. There are, in addition, functional states of hyperinsulinism in which no recognizable anatomic lesion has been demonstrated but which are probably due to a relative hyperinsulinism. Finally, there are the other causes such as factitious hyperinsulinism which is occasionally encountered in persons of questionable sanity or in malingerers.

Signs and symptoms of hypoglycemia. Wilder¹⁰⁴ grouped the nervous components of this syndrome under three headings: (1) those related to the vegetative nervous system, consisting of nausea, sweating, pallor, flushing, chilliness and syncope, (2) those arising from the central nervous system, represented by restlessness, tonic or clonic muscle spasm, opisthotonus and convulsions, and (3) psychic disturbances such as apprehension, disorientation, mania, confusion, unconsciousness and coma. Abdominal pain may be prominent.

Whipple's triad embodies findings which establish the diagnosis. In 1947 Whipple¹⁰⁴

re-emphasized the following findings which have now been recognized as representing an almost indispensable diagnostic grouping: first, the "attacks" come on characteristically in the early morning during the fasting period before breakfast, or following intensive mental or physical effort when sugar reserves are low, second, during the attacks or after a prolonged fast of at least 24 hours the blood sugar levels are below 50 mg per 100 cc, third, the patients recover promptly from the "spells," whatever their pattern may be, on administration of sugar by vein or by mouth.

When this triad has been rigidly sought and demanded, there has resulted a gratifyingly high percentage of accurate preoperative diagnoses. Whipple found a tumor in 27 of 32 cases in which a typical triad was present preoperatively.

The relation of consciousness to the blood sugar level is of interest. There is not a particularly good correlation between the blood sugar level and the state of consciousness, though in general a very low blood sugar level (less than 30 mg per 100 cc) will be associated with mental confusion and possibly coma.

The symptoms may occur slowly or suddenly, and may or may not be associated with loss of consciousness. Briedahl and his associates²² pointed out that the pattern of symptomatology is usually constant for any one individual, although the severity of symptoms may vary with different attacks. They considered it likely that some tumors secrete insulin constantly, as would be expected, and, if so, the attacks occur at the same time every day. Other tumors, on the contrary, appear to have intermittent secretion, paroxysmal attacks occurring at irregular and infrequent intervals.

Repeated, severe attacks with unconsciousness may be associated with temporary or even permanent neurologic changes, and a progressive mental deterioration may be seen in longstanding cases. For this reason the treatment of suspected cases should be

delayed no longer than is necessary to establish the diagnosis.

Difficulty in diagnosis If the possibility of hyperinsulinism is kept in mind, the low blood sugar level will suggest the presence of this state of hormonal imbalance and the possible conditions with which the diagnosis of islet cell adenoma may be confused will readily be eliminated by a few appropriate studies. Yet, there often is considerable delay before the correct diagnosis is arrived at. Among the patients reported by Briedahl, Priestley, and Ryneason,²² 14 had been diagnosed as having epilepsy, 2 as having tetany, 6 as psychosis, 4 as hysteria, 3 as menopause, 2 as brain tumor, 2 as diabetes, 2 as being drunk, and 1 as a heart attack—all before the correct diagnosis was made. With refreshing candor, Briedahl and his associates noted that the initial diagnosis of chronic nervous exhaustion in 2 patients was made at the Clinic, though later the true nature of the illness in these patients was appreciated and the hyperinsulinism treated.

MEDICAL MANAGEMENT The chief disadvantage of delaying treatment, once the diagnosis is made, is that repeated attacks may produce permanent neurologic or mental damage. The use of medical therapy, consisting of frequent feedings every few hours, is likely to produce a markedly obese individual, and this therapy is thus not feasible in most instances.

The use of corticosteroid therapy in the management of hyperinsulinism The diabetogenic effect of cortisone and hydrocortisone has led to the use of these compounds in the management of the hypoglycemia of hyperinsulinism. Cortisone effectively controlled the hypoglycemia of an islet cell adenoma and hydrocortisone was later found to afford similar results. More recently, glucagon has been used in the management of states of hyperinsulinism. Secreted by cells of the Islets of Langerhans, this substance promotes glucose utilization and thus functions as an insulin antagonist.

In studying the effect of hydrocortisone in acute hypoglycemia, Frawley⁴⁶ noted that pyruvic acid concentrations in the blood might be significantly increased without marked changes in glucose or fructose. The changes in pyruvic acid, potassium, and phosphorus metabolism which characterize and distinguish steroid diabetes from diabetes mellitus were emphasized.

SURGICAL MANAGEMENT A transverse upper abdominal incision is a suitable one. Needless to say, the search for the adenoma must be orderly and painstaking.

Preoperative and postoperative care Preoperatively the patient should come to the operation with an intravenous glucose drip running to avoid hypoglycemia during operation. Postoperatively the subject may manifest a moderate hypoglycemia which need cause little concern, though the development of frank diabetic acidosis should be prevented with appropriate insulin dosage. Fortunately, the normal islet cells do not usually manifest the same degree of atrophy in the presence of a functioning adenoma as do the parathyroid glands or the adrenal cortex opposite the one containing a functioning tumor. Though the patient may present a mildly diabetic picture in the immediate postoperative period this is usually of little moment.

Prognosis The results are excellent when the adenoma is found and removed provided irreversible cerebral changes have not occurred as the result of chronic disease and repeated attacks of hypoglycemia. The results are far less satisfactory when no adenoma is found and a subtotal or total resection of the pancreas is resorted to—for usually the adenoma has been overlooked. Total pancreatectomy is a somewhat formidable procedure and deprives the patient of normal physiologic processes of digestion. In addition there are serious complications which often follow resection of this organ.

Hypoinsulinism (Diabetes Mellitus)

Diabetes mellitus results from inadequate amounts of circulating insulin. Methods for

the measurement of insulin content of blood are not precise, but a method utilizing the effect of insulin on the glucose utilization of the isolated diaphragm was reported by Groen and associates.⁴⁷ Prior to this method, the probable insulin content of blood was estimated by noting the hypoglycemic effect of serum from the patient on the blood sugar level of especially prepared rabbits.

It is not desirable to present here a detailed review of the pathophysiology of diabetes mellitus. Basically, an inability to utilize glucose to satisfy energy requirements results in the combustion of fat, which is inefficiently metabolized. The overproduction of acid ketone bodies depletes the total base, with resulting dehydration (as base is not available to hold water).

Recent contributions to the understanding of experimental diabetes have been reviewed by Stetten.⁴⁸ The impairment in glucose utilization is widespread and includes the several normal fates of glucose, such as glycogenesis, fatty acid synthesis, pyruvic and lactic acid formation, and the total oxidation of glucose to carbon dioxide.

DIAGNOSIS OF DIABETIC ACIDOSIS IN SURGICAL PATIENTS A history of weight loss, polyphagia, polydipsia, and polyuria should certainly suggest the possibility of diabetes mellitus. The disease should also be considered in any patient with severe or repeated infections, especially of the toes.

The duration and the severity of the metabolic disturbances, the resulting deficiencies and the extent of the therapeutic difficulties that may be encountered will often be suggested by a few preliminary exploratory observations and examinations. The laboratory studies will reveal an elevated blood sugar level and glucose acetone, and diacetic acid will be found in the urine. The initial blood sugar level does not necessarily indicate the degree of acidosis or the seriousness of the patient's condition, since certain patients with extremely high blood sugar levels may require relatively little insulin to effect recovery from acidosis, while others

with a lower blood sugar level may require tremendous amounts of insulin

Acidosis is not rendered certain by the finding of a low plasma carbon dioxide combining power, since a lowered level is also found in compensated respiratory alkalosis. Nevertheless, one will seldom be mistaken in diagnosing acidosis on the basis of a reduced carbon dioxide combining power when this finding is accompanied by clinical and other evidence of uncontrolled diabetes.

TREATMENT OF DIABETIC ACIDOSIS IN SURGICAL PATIENTS The treatment of diabetic acidosis in the surgical patient will often consist both of the treatment of the diabetic acidosis *per se* and of the management of a precipitating or aggravating surgical condition such as a gangrenous extremity, or a carbuncle or other purulent collection. Any condition which imposes an increased metabolic load upon the individual renders the diabetes more difficult to manage.

The fluid problem is primarily one of insulin dosage and the restoration of body fluid and electrolyte balance. Large deficits of sodium, chloride, potassium and, often, magnesium and phosphorus may exist. In the treatment of severe acidosis or coma, Butler²³ recommends the administration of crystalline insulin in a dosage of at least 2 units per kg of body weight or 75 units per m² of body surface, given intramuscularly to avoid the possible delays of intravenous administration. A similar amount of crystalline insulin is given intravenously with the first infusion. He further recommends that at the beginning of therapy, with the first dose of crystalline insulin, a second injection of from 5 to 10 units of Protamine zinc insulin be administered, depending upon the age, size, and the past history of the patient—including past therapy, if this is known. Thereafter the need for crystalline insulin is determined by frequent analyses of the urine sugar (preferably followed by means of an indwelling Foley catheter) and with such blood sugar measurements as may be considered neces-

sary. Several hundred units of regular insulin may be required for the correction of diabetic acidosis in adults, and the age to be used is "enough." The serum potassium level may be normal or elevated on admission, but cellular stores of potassium will usually have been depleted. As treatment progresses, potassium will usually need to be administered. This decline in serum potassium level during therapy is further aggravated by the intracellular shift of potassium in the process of glycogen formation following the administration of insulin.

Blood transfusion and *antibiotics* are given liberally, and oral nutrition is begun as soon as feasible. If balanced fluid preparations are available they should be used in preference to isotonic saline solution. Fortunately, such mixtures are now available in most hospitals, and additional amounts of potassium or, if desired, sodium chloride can be added to these solutions. We usually employ sodium bicarbonate with its replaceable anion (HCO_3) to combat acidosis, though sodium lactate is satisfactory.

The Breast

The physiology of the breast is of particular importance to the surgeon in respect to growth characteristics. Lactation, in contrast, raises surgical problems when a galactocoele or acute breast abscess must be drained, or when breast cancer develops in a lactating breast.

Functional Anatomy

CANCER SURGERY Certain aspects of breast structure (Fig. 247) deserve comment in connection with surgery for malignancy. The breast is, of course, a surface or external organ, since neither of the peritoneal cavities is entered in the course of conventional "radical" mastectomy, the mortality associated with this operation is virtually nil if anesthesia is satisfactory and blood loss replaced as it occurs.

In approximately one-third of outer quadrants

LYMPHATIC DRAINAGE OF THE BREAST

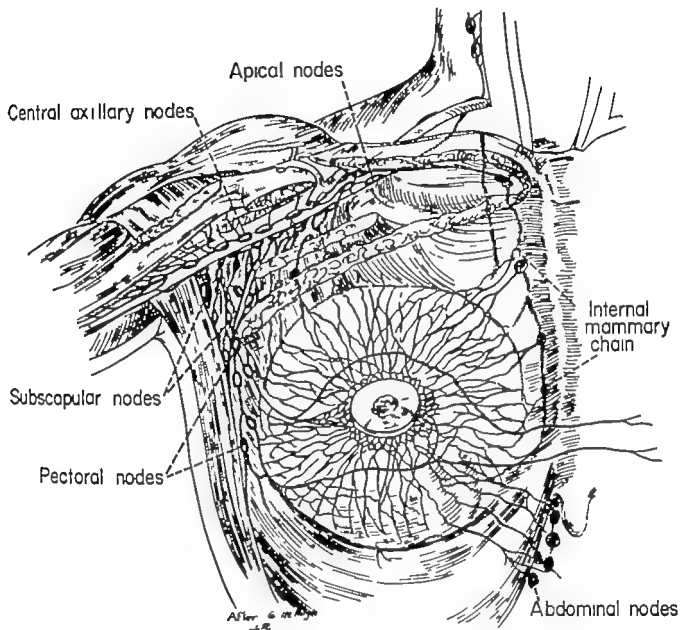


Fig 247 Hematogenous spread of breast cancer can occur independent of lymphatic channels.

rant cancers with axillary node metastases and in approximately two-thirds of inner quadrant cancers with axillary node metastases the internal mammary chain of nodes is involved. The fact that the incidence of internal mammary node involvement is increased in the presence of axillary node metastases may be due in part, to back pressure along the lymphatic channels due to blockage of the axillary lymphatics by tumor spread. Obviously the patient will not be cured by radical mastectomy

if involved internal mammary nodes are not resected, and these are probably not often eradicated successfully

INTRADUCTAL PAPILLOMA. This tumor may or may not be a premalignant lesion. Like the problem of malignancy in gastric ulcer, it is a moot question whether the benign intraductal papilloma of the breast becomes malignant or whether the papilloma was malignant from its inception. While proof is difficult to marshal for either point of view to the exclusion of the other, I per-

sonally look upon an intraductal papilloma as a more serious lesion than the common extraductal fibroadenoma which occurs in

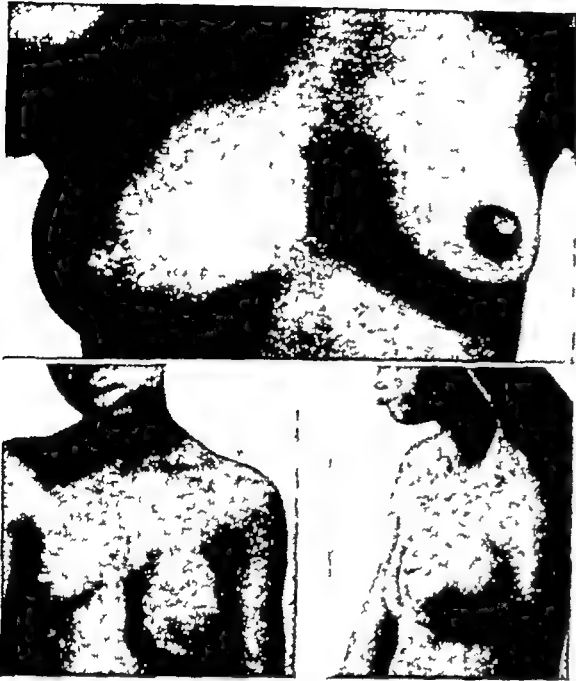


Fig 248 Above Virginal hypertrophy *Below* Rapidly growing fibroadenoma at puberty



Fig 249 Transient breast enlargement in boy at puberty Such temporary gynecomastia occurs more frequently than is generally realized When the balance swings definitely in favor of androgen secretion over estrogen secretion, the breast enlargement recedes in most patients In girls at puberty, one breast may begin to develop months before the other, thus, it is most important not to excise the "lump" with the thought that the mass beneath the nipple represents a tumor In time, one may assure the mother, the second breast will begin to develop Continued observation is desirable until this occurs

young women and is usually the only breast tumor encountered below the age of 20

The pertinent anatomic fact here, however, is that by massaging the breast in the direction of the nipple when the tumor cannot actually be felt, one can often press blood from the ductal opening on the surface of the nipple This permits identification of the pie-shaped segment of the breast in which the offending papilloma is situated At surgery a probe can often be passed into the involved duct (about 1 cm) and ducts open upon the surface of the nipple Excision of the duct containing the papilloma can then be accomplished more precisely, with less disfiguration of the breast If a probe cannot be passed into the duct from which the serosanguinous fluid is expressed, then a short circumareolar incision overlying the duct will often permit its identification as it extends to the nipple The bluish discoloration caused by intraductal hemorrhage is quite distinctive

In general, one should use radial rather than transverse incisions that sever uninvolved lactic ducts Yet, it has always been surprising to me how few complications accompany transections of lactic ducts, exclusive of those in an actively lactating breast Full advantage should also be taken of the fact that incisions made just at the border of the pigmented areola (circumareolar incisions) heal with a scar that is hardly visible This is of course undesirable in women, but it is also desirable in males whose gynecomastia does not regress and is excised The entire male breast (Fig 249) can be removed through a circumareolar incision An obvious scar near the breast in a male will lead to questions which may embarrass him

LOCAL ANESTHESIA The position and configuration of the breast and its nerve supply render local anesthesia particularly suitable for excision of benign masses and for simple mastectomy When there is little chance that radical mastectomy will be needed, local anesthesia is highly suitable for breast surgery in many patients

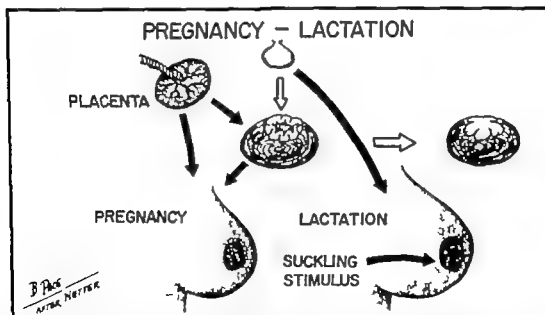
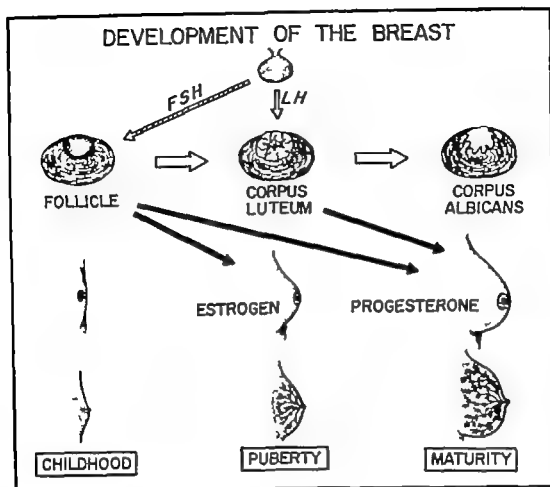


Fig 250 Endocrine factors in breast development and function. Most important are (1) follicle stimulating or gonadotropic hormone (FSH) which produces initial breast development through ovarian secretion of estrogens (2) progesterone from corpus luteum and later the placenta, which further prepares the breast for lactation and (3) pitocin from the posterior lobe of the pituitary which initiates lactation. The secretion of pitocin accounts for the familiar letdown reflex by which the mother exhibits a copious flow of milk, usually in response to neurogenic or psychio stimuli evoked by nursing of the young (After Netter F H. *The Ciba Collection of Medical Illustrations* Summit New Jersey Ciba Pharmaceutical Products, Inc 1948)

Hormonal Influences (Fig. 250)

ESTROGENS The secretion of estrogens promotes breast development, whether ovarian

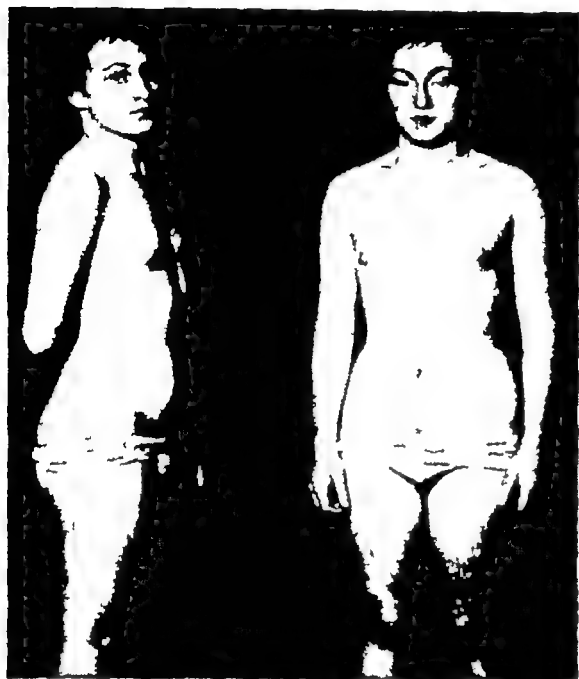


Fig 251 Breast development following adrenogenital syndrome. This 14-year-old girl (Patient N C W, Figs 241 and 242) exhibits beginning breast development that was produced with oral cortisone therapy. This treatment suppressed the pituitary secretion, with a consequent fall in androgen production. Ovarian function stimulated by her gonadotropic hormones then brought about feminization, including a first menstrual period. Note the short hair above the forehead, which was just beginning to grow again after the baldness produced by the adrenogenital syndrome.



Fig 252 Gynecomastia due to malignant estrogen-secreting adrenocortical tumor.

(Fig 248, 251) or adrenal (Fig 252) origin. Under the powerful effect of ovarian estrogens stimulated by pituitary gonadotropic hormones at puberty, the breasts usually develop rapidly. Yet, one breast may begin to develop long before the other breast does, and the initial "lump" on the developing side may be mistaken for a tumor and, unhappily, excised. If one temporarily reassures the parents, the second breast will develop in time. Of course, the nodule can represent a tumor, and close observation is indicated until the issue is settled. The same problem arises in connection with the usually transient breast enlargement of male children at puberty.

Virginal hypertrophy Breast development may be excessive either unilaterally or bilaterally. This "virginal hypertrophy" is usually a problem only when one breast far outstrips the other (Fig 248). The enlarged breast may be truly enormous, but the difference is not great, nothing need be done, for many women go through successful lives with unequal breasts. However, in some patients a plastic procedure (mastoplasty) is justifiable to reduce the gross disproportionate size of a huge breast.

Gynecomastia Breast enlargement in the male was alluded to above. Unquestionably, it is due primarily to estrogen stimulation, though the mechanisms are not always clear. Circumstances in which gynecomastia may be observed are (1) puberty (Fig 248), (2) estrogen therapy (as for prostatic cancer), (3) cirrhosis (Fig 80), (4) starvation, (5) functioning adrenocortical tumors (Fig 252), and (6) certain lung tumors.

The explanation of breast enlargement in connection with estrogen therapy or an estrogen-secreting tumor is readily apparent, but the explanation in the instance of puberty, cirrhosis, or starvation is not so simple. In starvation and in cirrhosis it has been assumed that hepatic inactivation of androgens was more effective than the hepatic inactivation of estrogens. Moreover, the pituitary secretion of androgens doubtless is diminished in these conditions, whereas the

adrenocortical secretion of estrogens may be relatively unchanged. Hence, the ever present hormonal balance, which decides whether the individual will have the male or the female secondary sex characteristics, swings in favor of female values. In male puberty, however, the explanation is still less clear. Without question the estrogenic substances are largely responsible for the breast enlargement, which gradually subsides as androgens become preponderant. The subtle interplay of estrogens, androgens, and hepatic function at puberty requires much further study.

ANDROGENS Male-type hormones suppress breast development in children (Fig. 251) or diminish breast size when the breasts are subjected to androgenic therapy during adult life. That is, the estrogen androgen hormonal balance is shifted to the male side by androgen therapy or by adrenocortical hyperfunction that produces the adrenogenital syndrome (Figs. 241, 244).

REFERENCES

- 1 ALARICHT F. Cushing's syndrome. *Harvey Lect.*, 38: 123 1942-1943
- 2 ALARICHT F. The parathyroids—physiology and therapeutics. *J. A. M. A.*, 117: 527 1941
- 3 ARKOWAN N., AND VAILLARD L. Contribution à l'étude du pancréas du lapin. Lésions provoquées par la ligature du canal de Wirsung. *Arch. physiol. norm. et path.* 3: 287 1884
- 4 ARKOWAN M. Ueber ostitis deformans ohne osteoides Gewebe. *Arch. Geb. path. Anat. Inst. zu Tübing. Leipzig* 4: 398 1904.
- 5 ASPER, S. P. JR., SELENKOW H. A. AND PLAMOVSON C. A. A comparison of the metabolic activities of 3,5,3'-L-triiodothyronine and L-thyroxine in myxedema. *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.*, 93: 161, 1953
- 6 AUB J. C. Calcium and phosphorus metabolism. *Harvey Lect.*, 24: 151 1928-1929
- 7 BAKER, W. H. Abnormalities in calcium metabolism in malignancy: effects of hormone therapy. *Am. J. Med.* 21: 714 1956
- 8 BALLS K., PHILLIPS J., AND HARDY J. D. Status of the conversion ratio as a measure of thyroid activity. *Fed. Proc.* 10: 9 1951
- 9 BAXTER W. G. AND ALLEN E. V. The effect of adrenolytic drugs on pheochromocytoma with functioning metastatic lesions: report of a case. *Proc. Staff Meet. Mayo Clin.*, 27: 450 1952
- 10 BANTING, F. G., AND BEST C. H. Internal secretion of the pancreas. *J. Lab. & Clin. Med.*, 7: 251 1922
- 11 BARKER S. B. Mechanism of action of thyroid hormone. *Physiol. Rev.*, 31: 205 1951
- 12 BARNET J. D., AND SULKOWITZ H. W. Progress in the management of urinary calculi. *J. Urol.* 37: 746 1937
- 13 BARTOLA E. C., AND CATTELL, R. B. Pheochromocytoma: its diagnosis and treatment. *Ann. Surg.* 131: 903 1950
- 14 BAUER, W., AND AUB J. C. Studies of inorganic salt metabolism. I. The ward routine and methods. *J. Am. Dietet. A.*, 3: 106 1927
- 15 BAXTER, J. S. The growth cycle of the cells of the adrenal cortex in the adult rat. *J. Anat.* 80: 139 1946.
- 16 BEAL, E. KING, F. N., AND PRINEMETAL M. Pheochromocytoma with demonstration of precursor (adrenalin) substance in the blood preoperatively during hypertensive crisis. *Ann. Surg.* 106: 85 1937
- 17 BENEDICT F. G. Degree of constancy in human basal metabolism. *Am. J. Physiol.*, 110: 521 1934
- 18 BLANCHARD C. Mémoire sur le pancréas et sur le rôle du suc pancréatique dans les phénomènes digestifs. *Compt. rend. Acad. d. sc. (Supp.)* 1: 379 1856. Quoted by Whipple. *A. O. Surgery* 16: 280 1944
- 19 BERSOW S. A. Pathways of iodine metabolism. *Am. J. Med.*, 20: 653 1956
- 20 BLACK B. M. *Hyperparathyroidism*. Springfield Ill. Charles C. Thomas, 1953
- 21 BLACK, B. M., AND SPRAGUE, R. G. Hyperparathyroidism due to diffuse primary hyperplasia and hyperplasia of the parathyroid glands: report of a case. *Proc. Staff Meet. Mayo Clin.*, 22: 73 1947
- 22 BRIDGEMAN, H. D., PRINCELET J. T., AND RYANSON E. H. Clinical aspects of hyperparathyroidism. *J. A. M. A.*, 160: 193 1953
- 23 BUTLER, A. M. Diabetic coma. *New England J. Med.* 243: 648 1950
- 24 CARNES W. H., PAPPELHEIMER, A. M., AND STORER, H. C. Value of parathyroid glands in relation to dietary calcium and phosphorus. *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.*, 51: 314 1942
- 25 CASTLEMAN B. AND MALLORY T. B. Parathyroid hyperplasia in chronic renal insufficiency. *Am. J. Path.*, 13: 553 1937
- 26 CASTLEMAN B. AND MALLORY T. B. The pathology of the parathyroid glands in hyperparathyroidism: study of twenty-five cases. *Am. J. Path.* 11: 1 1935
- 27 CRAWLEY T. A singular case of diabetes, con-

- sisting entirely in the quality of the urine
London M J, 9: 286, 1788.
- 28 CHAIKOFF, I L, TAUROG, A, AND REINHARDT, W O The metabolic significance of protein-bound iodine of plasma, a study of its concentration under various conditions and its rate of formation as measured with radioactive iodine *Endocrinology*, 40: 47, 1947
 - 29 CHURCHILL, E D, AND COPE, O The surgical treatment of hyperparathyroidism *Ann Surg*, 104: 9, 1936
 - 30 CLARK, D E, MOE, R H, AND ADAMS, E E The rate of conversion of administered inorganic radioactive iodine into protein-bound iodine of plasma as an aid in the evaluation of thyroid function *Surgery*, 26: 331, 1949
 - 31 CLARK, D E, RULE, J H, TRIPPEL, O H, AND COFRIN, D A Five-year experience with radioactive iodine in treatment of hyperthyroidism *J A M A*, 150: 1269, 1952
 - 32 COLLIP, J B The parathyroid glands *Medicine*, 5: 1, 1926
 - 33 COLLIP, J B, CLARK, E P, AND SCOTT, J W The effect of a parathyroid hormone on normal animals *J Biol Chem*, 63: 439, 1925
 - 34 CONN, J W Progress report Primary aldosteronism *J Lab & Clin Med*, 45: 661, 1955
 - 35 CONN, J W, FAJANS, S S, LOUIS, L H, STREETEN, D H, AND JOHNSON, R D Intermittent aldosteronism in periodic paralysis *Lancet*, 2: 802, 1957
 - 36 COPE, O, AND NARDI, G L The parathyroid glands In *Physiologic Principles of Surgery*, edited by L M Zimmerman and R Levine Philadelphia, W B Saunders Company, 1957
 - 37 COPE, O, NARDI, G L, AND CASTLEMAN, B Carcinoma of the parathyroid glands, 4 cases among 148 patients with hyperparathyroidism *Ann Surg*, 138: 4, 1953
 - 38 CUSHING, H The basophil adenomas of the pituitary body and their clinical manifestations (pituitary basophilism) *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp*, 50: 137, 1932
 - 39 DECKER, H C, McDOWELL, F W, AND TRIMBLE, I R Pheochromocytoma, case with discussion of differential diagnosis and surgical treatment *J A M A*, 147: 642, 1951
 - 40 DOBRYNS, B M Physiologic concepts in the diagnosis and treatment of Graves' disease *Am J Med*, 20: 684, 1956
 - 41 DORFMAN, R I Metabolism of androgens, estrogens and corticoids *Am J Med*, 21: 679, 1956
 - 42 DVOSKIN, S Thyroxine-like action of elemental iodine *Tr Am Goiter A*, 160, 1949
 - 43 ERDHEIM, J Über Epithelkörperbefunde bei Osteomalacie *Sitzungsb d.k Akad d Wissensch Math-naturw Cl*, 116: 311, 1907
Cited by Cope, O, and Nardi, G L The parathyroid glands In *Physiologic Principles of Surgery*, edited by L M Zimmerman and R Levine Philadelphia, W B Saunders Company, 1957
 - 44 EVANS, H M, SIMPSON, M E, AND LI, C H The gigantism produced in normal rats by injection of the pituitary growth hormone I Body growth and organ changes *Growth*, 12: 15, 1948
 - 45 FOURNEAU, E, AND BOVET, D Recherches sur l'action sympathicolytique l'un nouveau dérivé du dioxane *Arch internat pharmacodyn et therap*, 46: 178, 1933
 - 46 FRAWLEY, T F The rôle of the adrenal cortex in glucose and pyruvic acid metabolism in man including the use of intravenous hydrocortisone in acute hypoglycemia *Ann New York Acad Sc*, 61: 462, 1955
 - 47 GIFFORD, R W, JR, ROTH, G M, AND KVALE, W F Evaluation of new adrenolytic drug (Regitine) as test for pheochromocytoma *J A M A*, 149: 1628, 1952
 - 48 GLEY, E Sur les fonctions du corps thyroïde *Compt rend Soc de biol*, 43: 551, 567, 583, 841, and 843, 1891 Cited by Cope, O, and Nardi, G L, The parathyroid glands In *Physiologic Principles of Surgery*, edited by L M Zimmerman and R Levine Philadelphia, W B Saunders Company, 1957
 - 49 GOLDENBERG, M, FABER, M, ALSTON, E J, AND CHARCAFF, E C Evidence for the occurrence of nor-epinephrine in adrenal medulla *Science*, 109: 534, 1949
 - 50 GREER, M A, AND ASTWOOD, E B Treatment of simple goiter with thyroid *J Clin Endocrinol*, 13: 1312, 1953
 - 51 GRIMSON, K S, LONGINO, F H, KERNODLE, C E, AND O'REAR, H B Treatment of a patient with a pheochromocytoma *J A M A*, 140: 1273, 1949
 - 52 GROEN, J, KAMMINGA, C E, WILLEBRANDS, A F, AND BLICKMAN, J R Evidence for the presence of insulin in blood serum a method for an approximate determination of the insulin content of the blood *J Clin Invest*, 31: 97, 1952
 - 53 HARDY, J D, AND RIEGEL, C R Effect of ACTH and cortisone upon the hyperthyroid state Unpublished observations
 - 54 HARDY, J D, AND RIEGEL, C R The laboratory diagnosis of hyperthyroidism A practical analysis of current methods with a

- presentation of illustrative cases *Am J Med Sc.*, **221**: 359 1951
- 50 HARDY J D., RIEDEL, C AND EHRMAN E P Experience with protein bound iodine (PBI) effect of ACTH and cortisone on thyroid function *Am J Med Sc.*, **219**: 581 1950
 - 51 HARRIS, S. Hypernephrosis and dysnephrosis. *Am J A M A.*, **83**: 729 1924
 - 52 HERTZ, R. Physiologic effects of androgens and estrogens in man. *Am J Med.*, **21**: 671 1956.
 - 53 HERTZ, S., ROBERTS, I., AND SALTER W T Radioactive iodine as an indicator in thyroid physiology IV The metabolism of iodine in Graves disease *J Clin. Invest.*, **21**: 25 1942.
 - 54 HULL A. G., ZINTZ, H. I., AND PARSONS D W Observations of human adrenal cortical deficiency *Am J Med* **21**: 358, 1956
 - 55 HOWARD J E., HOPKINS T R., AND CORCOS T B On certain physiologic responses to intravenous injection of calcium salts into normal, hyperparathyroid and hypoparathyroid persons. *J Clin. Endocrinol* **13**: 1 1953
 - 56 HOWLAND G CAMPBELL, W R MALTRY E J AND ROBINSON W L. Dysnephrosis convulsions and coma due to islet cell tumor of the pancreas with operation and cure *J A. M. A.*, **93**: 674 1920
 - 57 JAILER, J W GOLD J J AND WALLACE, E Z Evaluation of the "cortisone test" as a diagnostic aid in differentiating adrenal hyperplasia from adrenal neoplasia *Am J Med.*, **16**: 340 1954
 - 58 JAILER, J W LOUGHRAN J AND CAMELL, G F Adrenal virilism I Diagnostic considerations and treatment *J A M A* **150**: 875 1952.
 - 59 KEATING F R., JR., AND COOK, E N The recognition of primary hyperparathyroidism. *J A M A* **129**: 994 1945
 - 60 KENNEDY B J FRENCH L A AND PETTON W T Hypophysectomy in advanced breast cancer *New England J Med* **255**: 1165 1956
 - 61 LARAT, M TIKEL, J AND DOUMER E Crises solaires et hypertension paroxysmique en rapport avec une tumeur surrénale. *Bull et mém Soc méd hôp Paris* **46**: 982 1922
 - 62 LANGGHANS P *Beiträge zur mikroskopischen Anatomie der Bauchspeicheldrüse* Berlin Lange 1899
 - 63 LE ROY G V., DAVIS M E AND RUMI, D New developments in cancer endocrine test. *Bull. Cancer Progr* **7**: 71 1957
 - 64 LITTLE, G W., DUNCAN L. E., AND BARTTER, F C Dual mechanism regulating adrenocortical functions in man *Am J Med* **21**: 350 1956
 - 65 LITMAN N N AND STATE D Pheochromocytoma use of *n*-*n*-dibenzyl-*b*-chloroethylamine (Dibenamine®) and piperidino-methyl-benzodioxane (benzodioxane®) in surgical therapy *Pediatrics*, **4**: 735 1949
 - 66 LUFT R OLIVETONA H IKKOS D., NILSSON L., AND LUNGGREN H Hypophysectomy in the treatment of malignant tumors. *Am J Med.*, **21**: 728, 1956
 - 67 MACCALLUM W G AND LOSOTLEN C On the relation of the parathyroid to calcium metabolism and nature of tetany *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp* **19**: 91 1908
 - 68 MACKERRIN R Adrenal-sympathetic syndrome chromaffin tissue tumor with paroxysmal hypertension *Brit. Heart J* **6**: 1 1911
 - 69 MANASSE, P Ueber die hyperplastischen Tumoren der Nebennieren. *Virchows Arch. path. Anat.*, **133**: 301 1893
 - 70 MANDL, F *Klinisches und Experimentelles zur Frage der lokalisierten und generalisierten Ostitis fibrosa. B Die generalisierte Form der Ostitis fibrosa.* *Arch klin Chir.*, **143**: 245 1926
 - 71 MATO C H Paroxysmal hypertension with tumor of retroperitoneal nerve report of a case *J A M A.*, **89**: 1047 1927
 - 72 MCGAVACK, T H AND RECKENDORF H K Therapeutic activity of decaecated thyroid substance sodium L thyroxine and D L triiodothyronine a comparative study *Am J Med* **20**: 774 1956
 - 73 McLEAN F C AND HASTINGS A B Clinical estimation and significance of calcium ion concentration in the blood *Am J Med Sc.*, **189**: 601 1935
 - 74 McQUARRIE, I., JOHNSON R N AND ZIEGLER, M R. Plasma electrolyte disturbance in a patient with hypercorticotadrenal syndrome contrasted with that found in Addison's disease *Endocrinology* **31**: 762 1937
 - 75 MEHRING J VON AND MINKOWSKI O Diabetes mellitus nach Pankreasextirpation. *Arch exper Path u Pharmacol.*, **26**: 371 1880
 - 76 MICHELL, R. Recent progress in the physiology and biochemistry of thyroid hormones. *Am J Med* **20**: 670 1956
 - 77 MINKOWSKI O Untersuchungen über den Diabetes mellitus nach Extirpation des Pankreas. *Arch exper Path u. Pharmacol.*, **31**: 85 1893
 - 78 MINNO A M., BENNETT W A., AND KYALE, W F Pheochromocytoma study of 15 cases

- diagnosed at autopsy *New England J Med*, **251**: 959, 1954
- 84 MOYER, C A Personal communication
 - 85 NEWTON, N R, AND NEWTON, M Relationship of ability to breast feed and maternal attitudes toward breast feeding *Pediatrics*, **5**: 869, 1950
 - 86 OLINER, L The thyroid gland In *Physiologic Principles of Surgery*, edited by L M Zimmerman and R Levine, Philadelphia, W B Saunders Company, 1957
 - 87 OPIE, E L The relation of diabetes mellitus lesions of the pancreas *J Exper Med*, **5**: 527, 1901
 - 88 PAPPENHEIMER, A M, AND WILENS, S L Enlargement of the parathyroid glands in renal disease *Am J Path*, **11** 73, 1935
 - 89 PATT, H M, WALLERSTEIN, E, AND LUCKHARDT, A B A humoral control of parathyroid secretion *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med*, **49**: 580, 1942
 - 90 PLIMPTON, C H, AND GELLHORN, A Hypercalcemia in malignant disease without evidence of bone destruction *Am J Med*, **21** 750, 1956
 - 91 RECKLINGHAUSEN, F VON Die fibrose oder deformirende Osteitis, die Osteomalacie und die osteoplastische carcinose in ihren gegenseitigen Beziehungen *Festschrift Rudolph Virchow*, Berlin, Reimer, 1891
 - 92 ROBINSON, A W, BLACK, B M, SPRAGUE, R G, AND TILLISCH, J H Hyperparathyroidism due to diffuse primary hyperplasia and hypertrophy of the parathyroid glands Report of case *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin*, **26**: 441, 1951
 - 93 ROCHE, J, LISSITZKY, S, AND MICHEL, R Sur la triiodothyronine, produit intermédiaire de la transformation de la diiodothyronine en thyroxine *Compt rend Acad d sc*, **234** 997, 1952 Cited by Oliner, L The thyroid gland In *Physiologic Principles of Surgery*, edited by L M Zimmerman and R Levine Philadelphia, W B Saunders Company, 1957
 - 94 SCHAFER, E A Internal secretions *Lancet*, **2**: 321, 1895
 - 95 SCHAFER, P W *Pathology in General Surgery* Chicago, University of Chicago Press, 1950
 - 96 SHEEHAN, H L Post-partum necrosis of the anterior pituitary *J Path & Bact*, **45** 189, 1937
 - 97 SIMMONDS, M Ueber Hypophysisschurund mit todlichem Ausgang *Deutsche med Wehnschr*, **40** 322, 1914 (not read)
 - 98 SIMPSON, S A, TAIT, J F, WETTSTEIN, A, NEHER, R, EUW, J VON, SCHINDLER, O, AND REICHSTEIN, T Konstitution des Aldosterons, des neuen Mineralocorticoids *Experientia*, Basel, **10** 132, 1954 (not read)
 - 99 STETTEN, DEWITT, JR Recent contributions to the understanding of experimental diabetes *J A M A*, **150** 971, 1952
 - 100 TWEEDY, W R, CHILCOTE, M E, AND PATRAS, M C Distribution, retention and excretion of radiophosphorus following thyroparathyroidectomy, or bilateral nephrectomy, and administration of parathyroid extract *J Biol Chem*, **168**: 597, 1947
 - 101 VAQUEZ, H, DONZELOT, E, AND GERANDEL, E Les Crises d'hypertension artérielle paroxystique *Presse méd*, **34**: 1329, 1926
 - 102 WALTON, A J Surgical treatment of parathyroid tumors *Brit J Surg*, **19** 285, 1931
 - 103 WERNER, S C Euthyroid patients with early eye signs of Graves' disease, their responses to L-triiodothyronine and thyrotropin *Am J Med*, **18** 608, 1955
 - 104 WHIPPLE, A O Hyperinsulinism in relation to pancreatic tumors In *Endocrinology of Neoplastic Diseases*, p 357 New York, Oxford University Press, 1947
 - 105 WHITE, A, AND DOUGHERTY, T F Rôle of adrenal cortex and thyroid in mobilization of nitrogen from tissues in fasting *Endocrinology*, **41** 230, 1947
 - 106 WILDER, R M Hyperinsulinism (Colver Lecture) *Internat Clin*, **2**: 1, 1933
 - 107 WILKINS, L Hyperadrenocorticism *Pediatrics*, **3**: 533, 1949
 - 108 WILKINS, L, LEWIS, R A, KLEIN, R, GARDNER, L I, CRIGLER, J F, JR, ROSENBERG, E, AND MIGEON, C J Treatment of congenital adrenal hyperplasia with cortisone *J Clin. Endocrinol*, **11** 1, 1951
 - 109 ZOLLINGER, R N, AND ELLISON, E H Primary peptic ulceration of the jejunum associated with islet cells of the pancreas *Ann Surg*, **142** 709, 1955

Chapter 19

The Nervous System Its Rôle in Surgical Practice

As the principal motivating and integrating force in the human organism, the nervous system assumes a position of truly first importance in surgical physiology. Only a few decades ago diseases were arbitrarily divided rather sharply into the 'organic' and the "functional." This was gradually perceived to be at odds with the facts and there arose the discipline referred to as "psychosomatic medicine" which sought a common ground between diseases of the psyche and those of the soma. Now happily it is no longer necessary to consider the organic and the functional separately for during the past few years it has been established once and for all that any given disease, "psychologic" or 'organic' may affect the entire human organism. Disease of the psyche affects the soma and disease of the soma affects the psyche the difference commonly being only one of degree. Derangement of motivation—of the emotions—results in diseases which frequently require surgical intervention; conversely patients with diseases of specific organs such as the liver, the adrenal or the colon frequently develop emotional problems which require psychiatric assistance. As another common example excessive emotional stress of certain types can result in peptic ulcer for which surgery may be required; on the other hand thyrotoxicosis, hyperinsulinism, Cushing's syndrome and Addison's disease are frequently associated with rather typical alterations of mood. The administration of adrenocortical steroids therapeutically

may produce peptic ulceration or it may produce acute psychotic episodes (Fig. 246).

Above all, patients with diseases which must terminate fatally may develop marked psychiatric derangements all due in one way or another to the disease. Among writers who have painted particularly vivid word pictures of such life circumstances are Shakespeare in numerous instances, Tolstoy in his *Death of Ivan Ilyitch*,²² and Hemingway in his *Snows of Kilimanjaro*.¹⁸ In brief *the mind and the body are one*.

The nervous system will be considered under three headings: (1) Emotions and their visceral consequences, the autonomic nervous system; (2) Pain pathways and management; (3) Increased intracranial pressure, pathophysiology and management.

Emotions and Their Visceral Consequences: The Autonomic Nervous System

The emotional composition of the human being is the final net result of an incredibly complex group of subtle and less subtle molding forces. Although man's immediate relationship to his actual physical and climatic environment has to do with his ultimate development, physical threats to his life and happiness are not so important to the present discussion as are the psychologic assaults, threats and frustrations which he encounters in his relationships with other human beings. One of the more penetrating studies regarding the problem of man's re-

action to his social and cultural environment was Wolff's *Stress and Disease* ³⁷ He pointed out that man is particularly vulnerable because he is so constituted that he reacts not only to the actual existence of danger, *but to threats and symbols of danger experienced in his past that call forth reactions little different from those to the assault itself* Since his adaptive and protective capabilities are limited, a man's responses to many sorts of noxious agents and threats may be similar, the form of reaction to any one agent depending more on the individual's nature and past experience than upon the particular noxious agent evoking it Moreover, because of its magnitude and duration, the adaptive-protective reaction may be far more damaging to the individual than the effects of the noxious agent *per se* In this respect, the psychologic reaction to stress is not too different from the physiologic reaction to stress, which we have reviewed elsewhere That is, it was pointed out by Selye that the pituitary-adrenal system reacts to a wide variety of injuries by essentially the same endocrine response of the adrenal medulla, the pituitary, and the adrenal cortices though in varying degrees

A most important fact in any consideration of man's emotional problems is that "man is a tribal or group creature with a long period of development, dependent for his very existence on the aid, support, and encouragement of other men He lives his life so much in contact with men and in such concern about their expectations of him that perhaps the greatest threat of all is his doubt about his ability to live the life of a man He is threatened by those very forces in society upon which he is dependent for nourishment and life He must be a part of the tribe and yet he is driven to fulfill his own proclivities, because of his sensitive organization he is pulled two ways at the same time" ³⁷

Four generalizations were drawn by Wolff, on the basis of available data First, the "dangers" for man are in large part defined in the "moies," folklore and taboos

of his specific culture Second, many of the "dangers" so defined are overstated or exaggerated so that the individual must deal with the anxiety imposed by his culture, plus the actual danger Third, along with such culturally engendered anxiety, methods for dealing with it are developed and prescribed by the culture These methods of resolution become formalized and are more or less effective in old and stable cultures Fourth, in changing or deteriorating cultures, the method of resolution of anxiety and tension ceases to be operative long before the tension-producing factors lose their potency In other words, when a culture either changes rapidly or deteriorates, the anxiety-resolving systems break down before the culturally engendered anxieties become attenuated To underscore this fact, it was noted that among the Hopi Indians, in recognition of the danger of snakes, it was decreed that one might not tread on the track of a snake If one did this, soreness of the ankles and legs would result In earlier days the accidental treading on a snake's track was promptly treated by the medicine man, who had a traditional procedure for neutralizing the untoward effects of the breach Among the younger Hopi, however, the taboo concerning the snake tracks persists, but their belief in the medicine man has been shaken by various influences of the present American civilization Thus, young Hopis who are unfortunate enough to step on a snake track often experience pain in the ankles, for which they now have at their command no satisfactory therapeutic procedure

Another example given concerned the rapid cultural changes now occurring in central India It has been reported that diarrhea, ulcerative colitis, neurocirculatory asthenia, and asthma are far more common among the relatively opulent, well nourished, hygienically oriented, educated, so-called Westernized Indians of the large communities than among the ignorant, unschooled, unhygienic, highly religious and often overworked, undeified, non-Western-

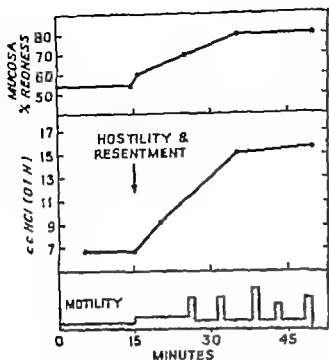


Fig 263 The stomach is traditionally influenced by emotions—"I have no stomach for that." Effects of emotion on gastric motility and blood supply of gastric mucosa are shown in the records of observations on "Tom" a patient with chronic gastric fistula. Upper record Percentage redness of mucosa. Middle record Gastric acidity in cubic centimeters of 0.1 N HCl per 100 cc of gastric juice. Lower record Motility of stomach. In association with the feeling of hostility and resentment there is an increase in gastric motility, increase in volume of HCl secreted and increased vascularity of the gastric mucous membrane. (From Wolff S, and Wolff H G. Evidence on genesis of peptic ulcer in man. J A M A 120: 670 1942 as modified by Wessner S. *Applied Physiology* Ed 9 London Oxford University Press, 1933)

used people of the small villages. The former are adjusting themselves to a new set of values and are caught between the two systems, finding little support in either. Among these are the outwardly bland but inwardly striving dissatisfied, tense, anxious and hostile persons who exhibit offensive and defensive protective patterns.

When the individual feels insecure in his setting, there develop conflicts and feelings of frustration, anger, humiliation, and anxiety (Figs. 253 & 254). Once again "It is not the particular nature of the forces pressures and preferences that engender a threat for the individual in any particular society, but how they are perceived and the amount of conflict directly or indirectly engendered

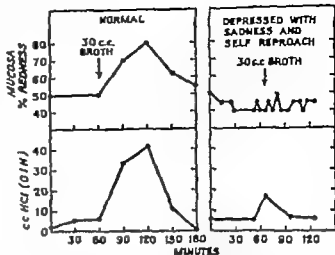


Fig 264 Peptic ulceration characteristically develops during periods of emotional stress. In these records of observations on "Tom" patient with chronic gastric fistula are shown the effects of emotion on gastric secretory response to food. Records from above downwards. Percentage of redness of mucosa. HCl secreted in cubic centimeters of 0.1 N HCl per 100 cc. Left figure Changes in HCl secreted and vascularity of gastric mucosa (indicated as percentage redness) in response to ingestion of 30 cc of broth with the subject in a normal emotional state. Right figure Reduced secretory and vascular response when the subject was "depressed with sadness and self-reproach" (From Wolff S and Wolff H G. Evidence on genesis of peptic ulcer in man. J A M A, 120: 670 1942 as modified by Wessner S. *Applied Physiology* Ed 9 London, Oxford University Press, 1935)

It is not the specific behavior towards parents, power possession, sexuality, the hours of work, or even the type of work or the amount of individual freedom of action, but it is the threat engendered by the culture which becomes pertinent to the development of stress with its ensuing protective reaction patterns and disease."²⁷

Stress-Promoting Factors in the American Culture

Wolff reviewed the sociologic stress factors in the United States, and called attention to the fact that the conditions in the United States represent those of a country which has no long and subtle past upon which to base the methods of adaptation and resolution of conflicts. There is, as it were, a loss of the anchorage which was present in the countries from which our

forebears came, and yet the country is not old enough to have developed fixed cultural values and rigid strata of society. Nevertheless, while it is frequently claimed that there are no social levels or "castes" in the United States, many sociologists have insisted that this is more of a misconception than a reality. Actually, there are readily perceptible social strata in most communities, as was forcefully emphasized by J. P. Marquand in his novel *Point of No Return*.²²

Since an individual's reaction to his environment is frequently fixed very largely in early life, during his relationships within the home and with the parents, it is of interest to note that the frustrations and anxieties and conflicts engendered in the parents, by cultural pressures through which they have suffered frustration and rejection, are projected upon the children. The parents' hostilities and their consequent limited capacity to give and accept love are features of their own insecurity and promptly reflect themselves in family relationships. Children readily perceive when, for the parents, the "breath of life" is going out of a cultural institution concerning which the parents yet remain irresolute. The phenomenon of children rejecting parents, and of parents rejecting the children and, frequently, each other, all threaten individual development, function, and happiness.³⁷

Examples of Subconscious Influences upon Measurable Bodily Functions

THE STOMACH AND DUODENUM Following the classic work of William Beaumont,⁴ many studies have attested the fact that the gastric secretion and the appearance of the gastric mucosa can be made to vary in the individual. For example, in one experimental subject with a gastric fistula through which the mucosa could be observed, it was found that sudden fear caused a decline in the secretion of hydrochloric acid and a marked blanching of the mucosa of the stomach. In another situation, however, the same subject exhibited an increase in hydro-

chloric acid secretion in response to the evoking of feelings of hostility and resentment by offensive conversation.³⁷

Peptic ulceration has increased markedly among males since 1900. In studies involving patients outside the United States, Jennings¹⁸ found that, between 1850 and 1900, of every 6 patients with peptic ulcers perforated into the peritoneal cavity, 4 were women and 2 were men. Since 1920, of every 10 perforations, 1 has occurred in an elderly woman and 9 have occurred in men, mostly in the middle years or younger. Similarly, a review²⁶ of the incidence of perforated ulcer at the New York Hospital from 1880 to 1900 revealed that women had perforated ulcer about as commonly as men, that is, 7 men to 6 women. All perforations in these patients were visualized either at operation or at autopsy. Beginning in the period from 1901 to 1906, however, the ratio of males to females was 10 males to 4 females, between 1932 and 1939 the ratio was 36 males to 3 females. Therefore, it is apparent that perforated ulcers occurred frequently in young women during the middle of the nineteenth century and diminished markedly at the beginning of the twentieth century.

The fact that the incidence has shifted from women to men during the last 50 years was examined from the point of view of the altered social requirements of the two sexes.¹⁸ It was suggested that the limited job opportunities open to women during the latter half of the nineteenth century, with heavy pressure to become married at an early age or to risk being an unwanted relative in another household, fostered much stress upon the female by strictly limiting her goals while denying her the release of overt expression of the competitive effort. After marriage, also, the relationship between a man and a woman was well defined, with the man being unquestionably conceded the leading position in the household. Nevertheless, he was permitted, within the security of the marriage, to lean heavily upon his wife emotionally.

With the turn of the century, on the other

hand, women became much more able to seek employment outside the traditional teacher or similar positions, and their earning capacity increased so as to approach that of men. In present day marriages the woman often contributes to the financial structure of the family, and accordingly she assumes more liberty than was possible when she was not contributing to the family income. Moreover, she shares the prestige of earning for the family livelihood. Yet, should she fail in her occupational venture, she is justified by society in retiring and of being provided for by her husband without occasioning comment. On the other hand, the man cannot retire, he must succeed, and if he fails to be "a good provider" he may be denied the feeling of security which his wife's emotional support could give him. Therefore, while society's requirements for the male are essentially as stringent as before, the emotional support accorded him in return has diminished. This is felt to be reflected in the overwhelming preponderance of peptic ulcer in males as compared with females.

THE COLON *Ulcerative colitis* Characteristically, the patient with ulcerative colitis is outwardly calm and superficially peaceful with more than the usual dependence upon some one person such as his mother or wife. Nevertheless, it has been repeatedly found by psychiatric examination that this calm exterior is quite nonrepresentative of the intense feelings of hostility, resentment and guilt going on in the subconscious mind or indeed, frequently in the conscious. Furthermore it has been found quite often that the colon reacts to circumstances involving anxiety and other unpleasant emotions by excessive contraction, mucosal engorgement, increased blood flow and an increased secretion of lysozyme.

Functional megacolon It is well known that psychogenic constipation occurs in the adult, but it is not as generally appreciated that the megacolon seen in the child may be a psychologic reaction to his family or environmental circumstances rather than to

the true absence of a normal complement of ganglia in the lower portion of the colon. For this reason, it is important to question the parents carefully regarding the onset and development of the megacolon and constipation in the individual child.

CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM. That circulatory symptoms may result from chronic anxiety and other psychic stress has been known for a great many years. The "soldier's heart," now usually known as "neuro-circulatory asthenia" or "incoordination of the circulation," was described in the American Civil War by DaCosta.⁸ Since that time, in all wars this syndrome has been prominent, consisting of sweating, faintness, easy fatigability, palpitation, extrasystoles and weakness, particularly under circumstances of prolonged danger. Precordial pain is a prominent feature of this type of stress, and may be due to chronically increased tone of the pectoral and shoulder muscles and perhaps of the diaphragm. Patients with cardiorespiratory symptoms often feel that it is impossible to take a deep breath.

Of course, combat need not be the only cause of cardiopulmonary symptoms, since prolonged tension in the conduct of routine living may also result in these phenomena, as a result of anxiety, anger, guilt, rage, frustration and the like. Patients who already have a diminished coronary circulation due to organic changes may develop outright angina at rest due to the effects of the tension state. Changes in the efficiency of the renal circulation as a result of prolonged stress, may lead to arterial hypertension. Burdens imposed upon the heart by everyday physical exertions are often mild and usually brief in duration, and therefore are perhaps less costly to the individual than those associated with emotional disturbances which may be severe and prolonged over many months or even years. Moreover, there is a tendency for patients with chronically increased cardiac work manifested by increased pulse rate and other circulatory phenomena eventually to develop organic heart disease, probably the

result of the long continued burden upon the heart. It has been found that electrocardiograms made before and during an interview which involves topics of great personal significance may exhibit not only changes in rate and rhythm but alterations in the configuration of the action potential itself. That is, in some patients the alterations in the electrocardiogram produced by psychic trauma and stress are similar, if not identical, to those produced by exercise.

DIABETES MELLITUS When under emotional stress, patients with diabetes mellitus may escape from satisfactory control and develop acidosis unless more than the usual amount of insulin or dietary management is employed. To be sure, under certain types of stress normal individuals exhibit glycosuria, probably because of an increased adrenocortical activity, with the usual diabetogenic tendency following such physiologic alterations.

THYROID FUNCTION Following a severe emotional stress the basal metabolic rate may remain elevated for several days.²⁴ Furthermore, the incidence of thyrotoxicosis has often been observed to rise in occupied countries, and many an instance of Graves' disease can be traced to a severe emotional shock such as loss of a close relative. There is little doubt, in my mind, that psychic stress can have an effect upon thyroid function.

ASTHMA Attacks of asthma may be provoked by emotional trauma. Moreover, as noted above, respiratory symptoms commonly result from anxiety, hyperventilation being another example.

CONCLUSION Many additional examples of the influence of emotional insult upon bodily functions might be given, but the ones outlined serve to indicate the range and depth of these influences. It may develop that, even in the same individual, one type of threatening situation may regularly cause extrasystoles, another type hypersecretion, and a third type diarrhea. The brain is an

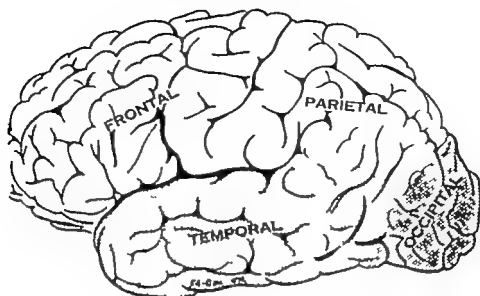
incredibly subtle and complex receiving and transmitting instrument.

The Autonomic Nervous System

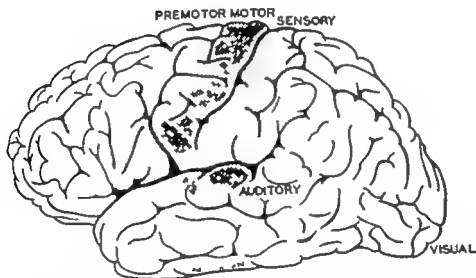
The autonomic nervous system is a system of pathways from the cerebral cortex to the subcortical areas, to the hypothalamus, and thence to the viscera and the endocrine system—in broad outline.

That a continuous neurohumoral pathway connects the cerebral cortex and the most remote viscera is no longer a matter of conjecture. There has been increasing recognition of the existence of *widespread autonomic representation at the cortical level* in both man and animals, and certain data have been advanced to elucidate the functional interrelation between the two systems.²⁰ The cerebral cortex (Fig. 255) may be divided into two main regions: first, the neocortex, comprising centers on the lateral surface and contiguous grey matter within its sulci, centers which function through projections to and from the lateral nuclei of the thalamus and also through connections with other parts of the cerebral hemispheres, and, second, the older limbic system, which is made up of a series of medial and orbital structures. Thus, according to one classification, the elements included in the limbic system are (a) the pyriform area and cortex surrounding the olfactory striae, (b) the hippocampal gyrus, (c) the hippocampus, (d) the parasplenic gyrus, and (e) the subcallosal gyrus. The subcortical nuclear structures known to be directly related to the limbic system include (a) the amygdala, (b) the anterior thalamic nuclei, (c) the hypothalamus, (d) the epithalamus, (e) parts of the basal ganglia, and (f) the pontine structures. Various of these are shown in Figures 256 and 257.

The limbic system—which serves as a conducting unit from the cerebral cortex to the hypothalamus and thence to the pituitary and to the autonomic nervous system—is thus made up of a group of functionally



Lobes of cerebrum



Premotor motor and sensory

Fig. 255 The lobes of the cerebral cortex (Modified from KLEMM, R. M.: *Nursing Care of Neurosurgical Patients* Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, 1940)

interrelated structures which send and receive projections to and from the medial nuclei of the thalamus and hypothalamus, a system which in early neural development is involved in affectively determined behavior.¹⁸ While no region of the cerebral cortex is exclusively concerned with any one function, and while the limbic system is predominantly autonomic in its affinities and the neocortex is predominantly somatic in each there is extensive overlapping, some autonomic responses are obtainable from the neocortex, and from the limbic system

arise a limited number of reactions which affect somatic nervous elements.

In brief, the limbic system is primarily concerned with the visceral nervous functions and the neocortex with somatic nervous functions.

HYPOTHALAMUS - INTEGRATIVE CENTER OF THE AUTONOMIC NERVOUS SYSTEM. It would be difficult to overestimate the importance of the hypothalamus to the physiologic mechanisms considered in this volume. The hypothalamus was called by Sherrington²⁹ the 'head ganglion' of the body. Its anatomic

connections with the cerebral cortex (neocortex as well as the limbic system) are extensive, and it is a region of the forebrain in which autonomic and somatic function

overlap *The hypothalamus functions in relation to the limbic system in much the same way that the thalamus itself does to the neocortex*, for the hypothalamus has its own afferent system ascending from the spinal and the medullary levels, and in turn it projects to the cortex ²⁰

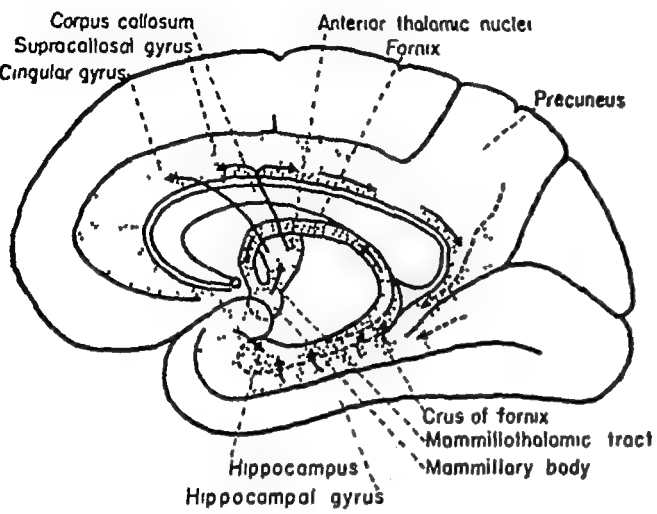


Fig 256 Some elements of the limbic system. The subcortical areas adjoining the cingulate gyrus have rich connections which mediate emotional and hence visceral responses (From KUNTZ, A *Visceral Innervation and Its Relation to Personality* Springfield, Ill, Charles C Thomas, 1951)

In Figure 257 are shown certain of the more important connecting pathways of the hypothalamus, which is in the neighborhood of the mammillary body in this diagram. It is to be noted that the hypothalamus is joined through other thalamic nuclei with the cerebral cortex and, in particular, with the structures of the limbic system (cingulate gyrus). Furthermore, the hypothalamus is associated with ascending and descending tracts that pass through the medulla oblongata. These pathways continue down the spinal cord and give rise to the preganglionic and postganglionic fibers which innervate the viscera and blood vessels (Fig 258)

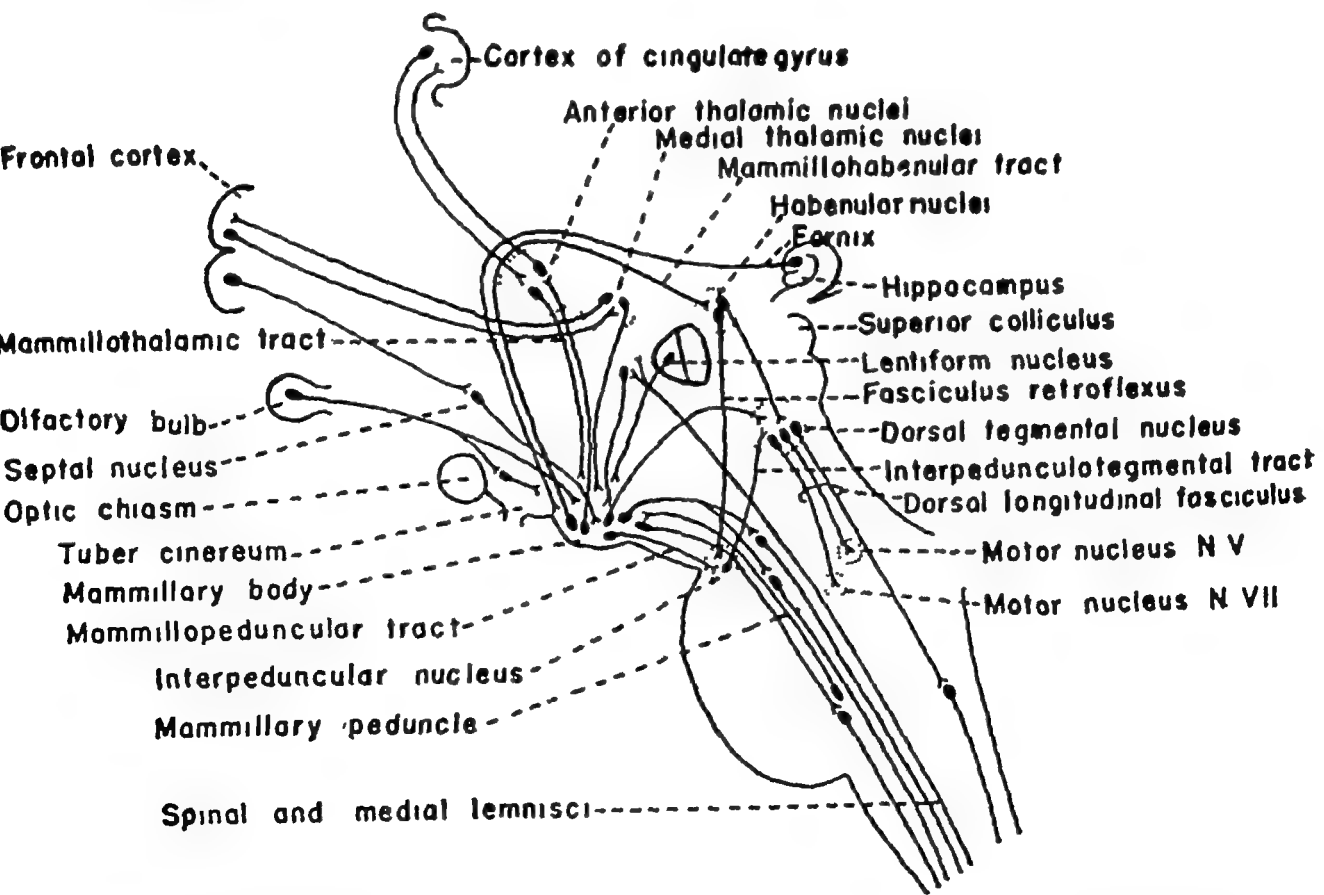


Fig 257 Through the hypothalamic pathways the higher centers of the cerebral cortex influence the function of thoracic and abdominal viscera (From KUNTZ, A *Visceral Innervation and Its Relation to Personality* Springfield, Ill, Charles C Thomas, 1951)

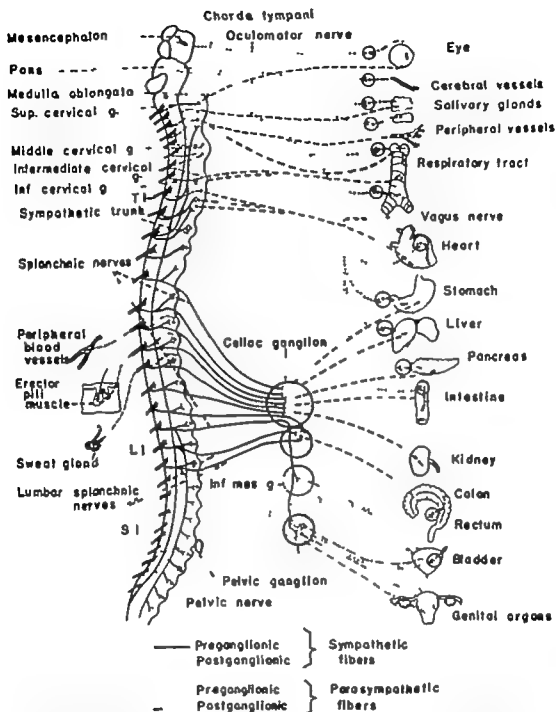


Fig 258 Emotional responses are mediated largely through the autonomic nervous system (From KURTZ, A *Visceral Innervation and Its Relation to Personality* Springfield Ill. Charles C Thomas, 1951)

Rôle of hypothalamus and surrounding areas in metabolism The hypothalamus and bordering nervous structures comprise one of the most fascinating regions of the entire body. Let us refer again to Figures 20, 258 and 257 for orientation. The hypothalamus is at the level of the diencephalon. In the medulla oblongata and the pons are found centers which have to do with the regulation of vasomotor activity and respiration, and there appears to exist a center

in the medulla oblongata which exerts an influence on carbohydrate metabolism.²⁰ Nevertheless the center in the medulla that has to do with carbohydrate metabolism is less important than the neural mechanisms for the control of carbohydrate metabolism which are located in the hypothalamus (but which connect with the center in the medulla).

The functions of the hypothalamus Integration and emotional response —Much

of the foregoing discussion has had to do with the rôle of the hypothalamus as a "switchboard" or "clearing center" for impulses having to do with the expression of emotion and personality. Let us now consider its function in metabolism.

Regulation of pituitary secretions—In Figure 20 are shown the neural connections which exist between the hypothalamus and the hypophysis. In addition, it is considered probable that humoral influences also act directly upon the hypophysis.¹⁷ The rate of release of ACTH, the posterior pituitary antidiuretic hormone, and certain other hormones of the anterior lobe of the pituitary appear to be regulated by impulses descending to this gland from the hypothalamus.

Homeostasis—The maintenance of the "steady state," so necessary for normal function of the organs of man and other warm-blooded animals, is achieved in considerable measure through the integrative functions of the hypothalamus. Lesions of this organ result in marked deviations from normal physiologic function in a variety of ways. The hypothalamus has to do with the regulation of *body temperature*, and specific lesions produced in this area may result in marked hyperthermia or, under other circumstances, in hypothermia. The prominent rôle of the hypothalamus in *water and salt metabolism* has been recognized for many years, and the most marked aberration in this connection is the diabetes insipidus produced by some lesions in this region. The classic work of Verney³³ did much toward defining the relationships which exist between the hypothalamus, by way of the hypothalamico-hypophyseal tract, and secretion by the posterior pituitary of the antidiuretic hormone. In addition, as noted, impulses from the hypothalamus aid in regulating the secretion of ACTH, which in turn regulates secretion of adrenocortical hormones with their far-reaching effects on body fluid metabolism.

Carbohydrate, protein, and fat metabolism—It is not necessary to describe in detail specific hypothalamic effects on the me-

tabolism of these foodstuffs. Merely through its effect on the secretion of ACTH, this integrative center exerts an effect on all. However, it is of interest here to note the relation of hypothalamic lesions to obesity. Anand and Brobeck¹ confirmed that in rats and cats an increased food intake and obesity resulted from chronic bilateral destruction in the vicinity of the ventromedial nuclei of the hypothalamus; they also found that the production of bilateral lesions in the lateral hypothalamic area caused the animals to refuse to eat. Even in animals previously made hyperphagic by medial lesions, eating ceased when the lateral areas were destroyed bilaterally. It was therefore assumed that the lateral areas contain a "feeding center" responsible for the central hunger reaction or the urge to eat, while the more medial regions may be capable of exerting normally an inhibitory control over the feeding desire.

Andersson and McCann³ stimulated the hypothalamus of the goat and recorded with convincing movies the effectiveness of either an electrical current or the injection of a small amount of hypertonic solution in increasing the water intake of the animal. Andersson² showed that the stimulation of the anterior hypothalamus in the vicinity of the supraoptic nucleus would induce milk ejection in lactating sheep and goats and, further, that the mechanism was mediated by the neurohypophysis. Moreover, it was pointed out that procedures known to release the posterior lobe hormone, such as intracarotid injections of hypertonic saline solution or stimulation of the central vagus, also induce milk flow. This is of course of interest in psychic and other problems attendant upon human lactation. De Groot and Harris¹¹ showed that electrical stimulation in the region of the tuber cinereum or the mammillary bodies in unanesthetized, unrestrained rabbits resulted in lymphopenia comparable in magnitude to that caused by emotional stress. The lymphopenic response is regarded as one of the

ekest known indicators of pituitary activity

There is evidence that the hypothalamus influences not only the gastric, but pancreatic and biliary functions as well. The waking state and sleep —It has been known for many years that the neural mechanisms in the region of the hypothalamus have a rôle in the maintenance of the waking state. Either somnolence or excessive activation and excitation can be produced by appropriate lesions in animals and certain clinical hypothalamic syndromes are associated with excessive sleeping.

The hypothalamus and pulmonary edema —Gamble and Patton¹⁴ reviewed the evidence that neural mechanisms are involved in the genesis of pulmonary edema. They noted that there is a high incidence of lung edema in head injury cases and that central nervous system depressants, autonomic blocking agents, or denervation procedures protect against some of the edema. Autonomic procedures. The experimental production of pulmonary edema by contusion and increased intracranial pressure was considered further presumptive evidence of a neural pathogenesis for some instances of pulmonary edema. Furthermore they themselves were able to produce fatal hemorrhagic edema of the lungs in rats by discrete electrolytic lesions of the rostral hypothalamus. The edema was confirmed by gravimetric procedures and by both gross and histologic study of the lungs.

Clinical hypothalamic syndromes. Since most of the evidence which has been given above was derived from experiments on animals, it is of confirmatory interest to note that such clinical circumstances also occur in human beings. Wechsler¹⁵ reviewed certain of the groups of findings which he had observed clinically and which he considered to be due to lesions of the hypothalamus and surrounding parts of the brain. Among these manifestations were symptoms reflecting interference with temperature regulation, variations in blood pressure, in pulse and respiratory rates, dis-

turbances in water and sugar metabolism, and peculiar states of consciousness. Not all patients presented all these findings, but most had deviations in one or the other of the following: sleep, emotional expression, and other states of consciousness, water, fat, and sugar metabolism, vasomotor activities such as blood pressure and pulse rate, body temperature, and gastrointestinal activity.

There is clinical evidence that destructive lesions at brain levels above that of the hypothalamus may produce metabolic changes.

CLINICAL CLASSIFICATION OF AUTONOMIC DYSFUNCTION. Before proceeding to consideration of the specific innervation of various of the viscera via the sympathetic and parasympathetic nerves it is useful to consider at this point some of the conditions which have been considered to be caused by autonomic dysfunction. A classification is given in Table 22. While the autonomic nervous system may not be responsible for the development of all these conditions in all patients, there can be little question but that dysfunction of the autonomic nervous system, central or peripheral, can result in most of them. If nothing else, the classification serves to indicate the tremendous range of bodily functions which are influenced, if indeed not regulated, by the autonomic nervous system.

PERIPHERAL DISTRIBUTION OF SYMPATHETIC AND PARASYMPATHETIC NERVES. In Figure 258 is shown the innervation of various of the body organs by the sympathetic and parasympathetic nerves. The number of autonomic nerve fibers that enter most of the visceral organs leaves little doubt that the autonomic nervous system influences their function. In addition humoral factors and an intrinsic nerve supply are also operative in some organs.

Familial autonomic dysfunction. Riley¹⁶ reviewed 33 cases of what he termed familial autonomic dysfunction. The most striking features in these children were defective lacrimation in that they failed to

TABLE 22 A CLINICAL CLASSIFICATION OF DYSFUNCTIONS OF THE AUTONOMIC NERVOUS SYSTEM*

Central dysfunctions
I Organic
A Hypothalamic
1 Disturbed temperature regulation
2 Autonomic epilepsy (Penfield)
II Emotional
A Cardiovascular
1 Neurocirculatory asthenia
2 Arrhythmias
3 Tachycardia
4 Bradycardia
5 Syncope
6 Blush
7 Hypertension
8 Emotional vasoconstriction
B Genitourinary
1 Polyuria
2 Emotional albuminuria
3 Amenorrhea
C Gastrointestinal
1 Pylorospasm
2 Peptic ulcer
3 Ulcerative colitis
4 Nausea, vomiting, diarrhea
D Metabolic
1 Emotional hyperglycemia
2 Hyperventilation syndrome
3 Diabetic acidosis
Peripheral efferent dysfunctions (possible)
I Sympathetic hypertonia
A Skin—hyperhidrosis
B Eye and ear
C Gastrointestinal
1 Ileus
2 Megacolon
3 Postvagotomy atony
D Cardiovascular
1 Sinus tachycardia
2 Raynaud's disease
3 Raynaud's phenomenon
4 Scleroderma sclerodactyly
5 Livedo reticularis
6 "Reflex" peripheral vasoconstriction
(a) Thrombophlebitis
(b) Peripheral emboli and thrombosis
(c) Cervical rib, scalenus anticus syndrome
(d) Shoulder-hand syndrome (myocardial infarction)
II Sympathetic hypotonia
A Eye—Horner's syndrome
B Cardiovascular
1 Postural hypotension
C Genitourinary—impotency (male)

TABLE 22 —Cont'd

III Parasympathetic hypertonia
A Respiratory—bronchoconstriction
B Gastrointestinal
1 Postsympathectomy ulcers
2 Pylorospasm
3 Spastic constipation
4 Peptic ulcer
IV Autonomic dystonia
A Skin
1 Erythromelalgia
2 Acrocyanosis
B Gastrointestinal—cardiospasm (absence of intrinsic ganglia)
C Genitourinary—neurogenic bladder
Peripheral afferent dysfunctions
I Syndromes characterized by pain
A Causalgia and Sudeck's atrophy
B Angina pectoris
C Herpes zoster
D Shoulder-hand syndrome
E Dysmenorrhea (?)
II Reflex dysfunctions
A Carotid sinus syndrome
B Vagovagal syndromes
C Pulmonary edema

* Collected from the literature

produce tears in normal fashion when crying. This was usually absolute, but in several cases an occasional tear was visible. Nevertheless, the eyes were not dry and tear production was adequate to maintain corneal health in most instances. Another prominent feature was skin blotching, and in all but 1 of the group erythematous, sharply defined blotches appeared on the face, shoulders, and upper part of the thorax when the patient was excited or was eating. They were usually symmetrical and tended to recur in the same areas. One patient showed only mottling of the extremities when excited. Excessive perspiration was another prominent feature in that all patients perspired excessively, especially under conditions of excitement. Another patient exhibited a symmetrical skin blotching but also a symmetrical perspiration. Other findings consisted of (1) drooling which persisted long past infancy, (2) emotional instability in that they responded to minor emotional stimuli in an "all or none"

fashion, (3) motor incoordination with hyporeflexia, and (4) relative indifference to pain. The familial incidence was considered to suggest a genetic origin of this syndrome.

FUNCTIONAL COMPONENTS OF AUTONOMIC NERVES The sympathetic and the parasympathetic system each contain both afferent and efferent fibers, and these fibers of course supply the motor and sensory components of visceral innervation. Moreover both systems have preganglionic and postganglionic fibers (Fig. 259). Unlike the peripheral somatic efferent conduction pathways the peripheral visceral efferent

pathways involve synaptic relays in autonomic ganglia. The conduction of impulses through the preganglionic fibers results in the liberation of an humoral substance at the synaptic junctions in the ganglia. The conduction of impulses through the postganglionic fibers likewise results in the liberation of an humoral substance at the neuro effector junctions. It is considered that these humoral substances play a part in synaptic transmission and also in transmission at the neuro effector junctions. The humoral substance liberated by stimulation of postganglionic sympathetic fibers re

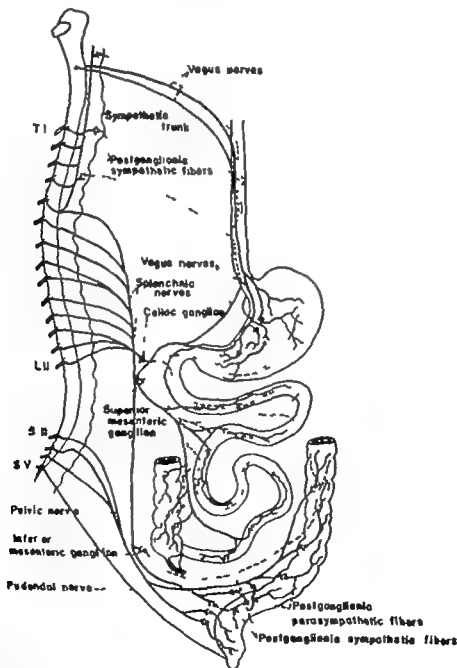


Fig. 259 Innervation of the alimentary tract. (From KUMR, A. *Visceral Innervation and Its Relation to Personality* Springfield, Ill. Charles C. Thomas, 1951.)

sembles adrenin, if it is not identical with this substance. Since it is intimately associated with sympathetic nerve stimulation and function, it has been termed *sympathin*. Kuntz²⁰ emphasized that the entrance of this material into the circulating blood with its epinephrine-like effects may be responsible for the generalized response observed in sympathetic stimulation. In contrast, the humoral substance that is liberated by stimulation of postganglionic parasympathetic fibers possesses properties in common with acetylcholine but probably is not identical with that substance. Since this substance, like acetylcholine, is highly unstable, it exerts only a local influence. Finally, the humoral substance liberated at synaptic junctions due to the stimulation of either sympathetic or parasympathetic preganglionic fibers appears to be identical with parasympathin, the acetylcholine-like substance.

SURGERY OF THE AUTONOMIC NERVOUS SYS-

TEM The vascular system Raynaud's syndrome—The use of sympathectomy in the management of Raynaud's disease or other conditions manifesting Raynaud's phenomenon was described previously (p 421). In Figure 260 are shown the relationships of the upper sympathetic ganglia to the spinal nerves in the upper extremity. It is our personal feeling that the results achieved by sympathectomy in Raynaud's-like conditions are best produced by a liberal resection of the stellate ganglion and a portion of the chain above and below it. This of course removes both preganglionic and postganglionic sympathetic fibers, with the possible appearance of the so-called "sensitivity phenomenon" due to an increased susceptibility of the end organs to circulating epinephrine. However, this has always been, to us, a difficult matter to prove clinically, and we no longer attempt to spare the postganglionic components. Hor-

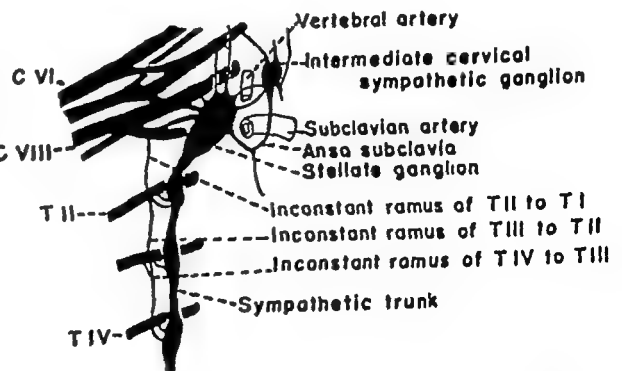
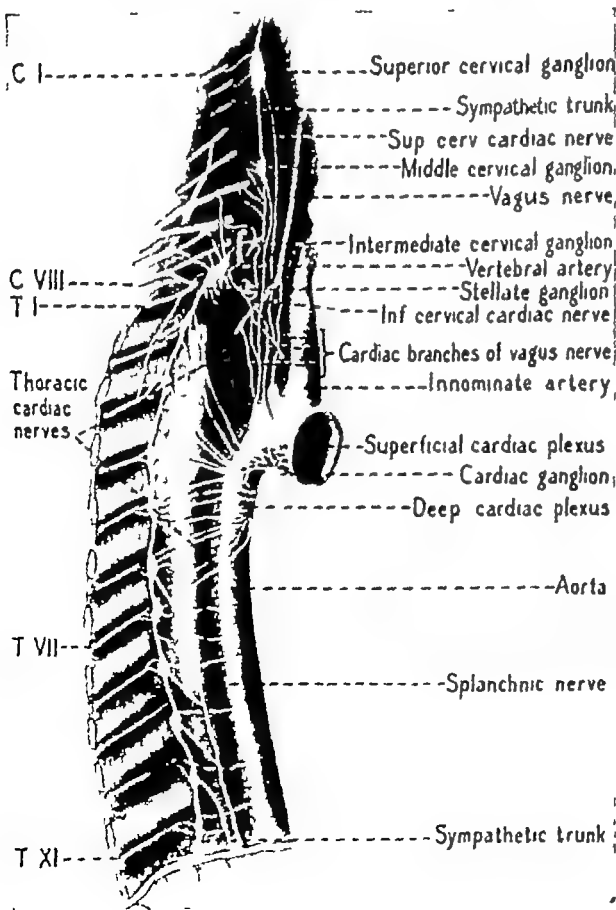


Fig 260 Sympathetic innervation of the upper extremity (From KUNTZ, A *Visceral Innervation and Its Relation to Personality* Springfield, Ill, Charles C Thomas, 1951)

ner's syndrome is usually produced by this type of operation.

Shoulder hand syndrome—It is not always appreciated that shoulder injuries, as well as the sequelae of myocardial infarction, may result in peculiar alterations in the upper extremity, affecting in particular the hand. There may be burning pain in the part associated with swelling and occasionally, some atrophy of the intrinsic musculature of the extremity. Bone changes have also been described. We have cited (p. 451) the case of an enlisted man who fell while carrying a case of beer to the officers' club, injuring his right shoulder. Following a rather painful recovery he exercised by suspending his weight by the involved hand and arm. The shoulder was again injured. Again it improved gradually, but there developed a burning type of pain in the forearm and hand of that extremity associated with swelling of the hand and wrist. There was no alteration in the sensation to touch and pin prick and there was no loss of muscular power except that due to the pain induced by muscular contractions. Roentgen examination revealed no demonstrable abnormality. It was considered probable that he had somehow injured the sympathetic outflow into the right arm.

The heart—The innervation of the heart is shown in Figure 132. Both the parasympathetic vagus nerves and the sympathetic nerves play an important rôle in the rate and character of cardiac contraction. Cardiac acceleration is mediated through the sympathetic nerves and cardiac inhibition through the vagus nerves. Fainting (syncope) may be associated with a marked increase in vagal tone and a markedly slowed heart rate in the neighborhood of from 40 to 50 beats per minute. Apprehension causes sympathetic release and rapid heart action. Sympathetic denervation as treatment for angina pectoris has largely been abandoned.

Carotid sinus syndrome—The carotid sinus and the area of the aortic arch have

much to do with the reflex control of blood pressure (p. 355) which is mediated through the autonomic nervous system. There is an increase in heart rate and peripheral vasoconstriction. The opposite effects occur in acute distention of the carotid sinus.

Clinically *carotid sinus syncope* is due to the sensitivity of the carotid sinus to pressure perhaps from a stiff collar when the person turns his head in one direction or the other. As a result of the pressure stimulation of the carotid sinus, there may be a sudden slowing of the heart mediated through stimulation of the vagus nerve and perhaps suppression of the sympathetic system with the consequence that the individual faints. The treatment for this condition is to strip the adventitia of the carotid bifurcation on the involved side, which is determined preoperatively by clinical studies involving carotid sinus pressure and reproduction of the syndrome of syncope. All adventitia, with nerves, is stripped for from 2 cm below the bifurcation to approximately 2 cm above, on both the internal and the external carotid arteries. It is well to infiltrate the carotid sinus area with 2 per cent procaine before beginning dissection. In case of doubt as to which side is at fault, both sinuses should be denervated.

Vessels of the lower extremities—Lumbar sympathectomy has had an extensive trial for a wide variety of peripheral vascular conditions (see Chapter 15). The best results have been realized in Buerger's disease and in causalgia following traumatic arterial injury. In fact almost by definition the pain ascribed to 'causalgia' must be relieved by sympathetic block or division else the diagnosis of causalgia becomes suspect. Sympathectomy in other vascular conditions has also been discussed elsewhere.

Sympathectomy for arterial hypertension—This particular mode of treatment has now had a wide clinical application. The consensus is that while a few patients are considerably benefited and others somewhat improved symptomatically if not af-

folded increased longevity, the unpredictability of the response of the individual patient and the questionable effect in extending longevity have resulted in the virtual abandonment of this treatment

The same hypotensive effects can be achieved by conservative therapy in employing autonomic blocking agents such as hexamethonium and other antihypertensive agents. If sympathectomy is to be used at all, it should probably be reserved for the very occasional patient whose hypertension does not respond to medical measures and whose condition is rapidly deteriorating.

The respiratory tract The respiratory tract—and in particular the lungs—receives a rich supply of both sympathetic and parasympathetic fibers. In general the parasympathetic nerves exert a tonic or constrictor influence on the smooth muscle of the bronchioles, whereas the sympathetic nerves are mainly inhibitory. The respiratory function is closely coordinated with changes in the circulation, this is achieved through the carotid sinus reflexes and similar pressor reflexes in the aortic arch.

The autonomic nerves have been assigned a rôle in the physiologic mechanisms acting in bronchial asthma, in pulmonary emphysema where bronchial spasm and stenosis exist, and in the mechanism of death in pulmonary embolism. Yet, despite considerable clinical application of pulmonary neurectomy, there is still, in our opinion, inadequate evidence that sufficient beneficial effects are achieved by nerve division in these conditions to warrant routine surgery.

The gastrointestinal tract The esophagus—The esophagus is supplied by both vagal and sympathetic fibers. The act of swallowing, once it has been initiated, is reflex and apparently depends, in part, upon a deglutition center in the medulla oblongata. That the number of ganglion cells may be diminished in the presence of megaesophagus has been reported from time to time, and the possibility that achalasia (cardiospasm) is the result of autonomic dysfunction has been suggested by many

However, this concept of the etiology of achalasia or dysfunction of the cardioesophageal sphincter has never been sufficiently well documented to achieve general acceptance, and at the present time autonomic surgery has no prominent place in the management of esophageal disease.

The stomach—The stomach receives both sympathetic and parasympathetic nerve fibers. By and large, the stimulation of the vagus nerves results in increased gastric motility and secretion. Gastric motility tends to be inhibited by stimulation of the splanchnic sympathetic nerves. Even so, the response to the stimulation of either group of nerves may be conditioned by the previous state of activity of the gastric musculature.

The important surgical aspects of the vagal supply of the stomach were discussed in connection with the use of vagotomy in the treatment of peptic ulcer (p. 314).

The small intestine—As a rule, stimulation of the parasympathetic nerves to the small intestine results in augmentation of muscular tone and motility, whereas stimulation of the sympathetics tends to have an inhibitory effect. It was seen earlier that anger, guilt, hostility, and resentment may be accompanied by an increased motility of the large intestine and by an increased secretion of mucus. Conversely, intense fear or fright frequently is accompanied by relaxation of the large bowel and ischemia of the mucous membrane. It was reported by Lillehei²¹ that extirpation of the celiac and the superior and inferior mesenteric ganglia in dogs regularly resulted in fulminating diarrhea associated with bloody stools containing increased amounts of mucus, frequently peptic ulceration in the stomach and the duodenum also occurred. However, when vagotomy was carried out simultaneously with the extirpation of these ganglia, peptic ulceration and gastroenteritis failed to develop. For this and similar reasons, Dennis and his associates¹² used vagotomy as a treatment for ulcerative colitis, the rationale being that the intestinal hypermotility



Fig 261 Autonomic ganglia in intestine: (A) Sympathetic trunk ganglion of a child 8 years of age (B) celiac ganglion of an adult. (From KURTZ: *Visceral Innervation and Its Relation to Personality* Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, 1951)

Lower left: Hirschsprung's disease. This condition is due to inadequate numbers of autonomic ganglia in the distal constricted segment.

and diarrhea would be diminished by abolishing the vagal nerve supply. Unfortunately, this did not prove particularly helpful in the management of ulcerative colitis.

The colon—True congenital megacolon has been mentioned elsewhere but certain facts bear repeating here. The marked proximal dilatation with the normal sized distal lower segment and rectum, has excited much interest in the extrinsic and intrinsic nerve supply to this organ. Through the work of Swenson and his associates²¹ it was pointed out that the normal sized segment was usually deficient in ganglion cells (Fig. 261). Since the distended portion of the bowel was found frequently to have a normal number of ganglion cells, it was assumed that the diseased portion of the bowel was actually the distal and normal sized portion, which merely failed to propel the fecal stream from the distended portion of the colon to the anus. One of the first forms of surgical treatment was resection of the distended portion of the colon which at that time appeared to be the segment at fault.

however, few were improved. Next there was a period during which sympathectomy was performed with the thought that the inhibitory influence of the sympathetic nerves to the colon would be abolished and that the parasympathetic (pelvic) nerves would thus be unopposed. However, it was not until Swenson's demonstration that the site of pathologic function was in the distal segment and anastomosing the normally innervated colon to the distal rectum was devised, this represented a major advance in the management of congenital megacolon. At the time of operation it is important to monitor the extent of colon resection by means of frozen section demonstration of ganglia in the bowel wall at the level of proximal transection. Of course rarely there may be a relative paucity of ganglia throughout the entire gastrointestinal tract.

It might be mentioned here that megacolon may be associated with megaureter, probably through the same general deficiency of intrinsic innervation.

Pain

Nature and Types of Pain

The sensation of pain is often not only the symptom which signals to the patient that he should consult a physician but it is also a manifestation of the disease that may greatly facilitate diagnosis. For pain to occur, however, the proper stimulus must be present. To give an example, pain arises from the bowel not when it is cut but when it is stretched, in contrast, stretching of the skin does not usually cause pain but cutting does.

Pain is an unpleasant sensation that may be derived from actual physical injury or from a state of mind. In this connection, it at times becomes almost impossible to determine whether or not the pain which the person complains of is due to a disorder of the mind or to a disorder of a visceral or somatic portion of the body. By the technique of counterirritation, pain from a part can be successfully diminished if not abolished, at least in the mind of the patient. The procedure known as "cupping" was formerly employed fairly extensively as a counterirritant, as have been hot water bottles, mustard plasters, and other means of causing strong stimulation of the skin sensory receptors to distract the patient from the perception of deeper "pain." The importance of the state of consciousness and frame of mind upon the perception of pain and its intensity, as reported by the patient, may be still further emphasized by the fact that reassurance often results in the relief of the pain in a particular situation. Similarly, pain is notoriously worse at night, though often no specific reason can be determined. "In the light of day" many of the fears, apprehensions, and unpleasant memories experienced during the night—and which may have summated to increase the patient's "pain"—are dissipated by the realization that painful past experiences are, in fact, past in time if not in memory.

Though pain may have a strong psychic or emotional component, this does not by

any means negate the fact that it is a definite entity and that all the discomfort is quite real to the patient.

How is pain mediated? It is generally accepted that basic pain perception is mediated through specific pain receptors which consist of naked nerve endings in the skin or elsewhere. Thus, pain may be perceived independent of other sensations such as touch or heat. Nevertheless, if the nerve fibers which conduct these other sensations, such as heat or touch, are sufficiently strongly stimulated, the resulting sensation may be an unpleasant one and may be considered pain. Therefore, pain may be mediated through both myelinated and unmyelinated fibers. The impulses enter the spinal cord and travel over the spinothalamic tracts to the brain stem, and thence to the posterolateral and posteromedial nuclei of the thalamus. Awareness of pain seems to take place at the thalamic level, but the cerebral cortex appears to be required for localization and recognition of the quality and degree of the offending stimulus.

It has been pointed out that somatic pain from the body surfaces provokes a so-called defense reaction consisting of an increase in the output of epinephrine with consequent cardiac acceleration, an increase in blood pressure, and vasoconstriction. Visceral pain, in contrast, may lead to almost opposite effects, in that there is a decrease in blood pressure and a decrease in heart rate, and nausea and vomiting may occur. Certain types of pain may be considered defense mechanisms, such as the warning pain of angina and intermittent claudication, signaling that ischemia of the part requires reduced muscular activity. On the other hand, Corbin⁶ has emphasized that causalgic pain and neuralgic pain are difficult to explain on a teleologic basis, since the persistence of such pain over a long period of time may result in serious deterioration of the individual's emotional stability—as physicians well appreciate.

SUPERFICIAL PAIN. Superficial pain is the pain that is elicited by noxious stimuli at

the skin surface. It is clearly localized and it is sharp or burning. When greater than the usual stimulus is required to elicit pain, *hypesthesia* is said to exist, if the part is unduly sensitive, then *hyperesthesia* (or hyperalgesia) is the term used to describe this state. Spontaneous sensations which are unpleasant may occur in the skin, such as itching, formication, or tickling.

The increased sensitivity or hyperalgesia of the skin deserves further comment. It frequently accompanies febrile illnesses, but it may be caused by diseases of the nerves themselves, as in neuritis whether due to trauma or other cause. It often is noted on either side of a surgical wound particularly following a subcostal incision for cholecystectomy, as the intercostal nerves begin to regenerate the edges of the wound are at first relatively insensitive to stimuli but presently the skin may become acutely sensitive, gradually resuming the normal state with the passage of time.

DEEP PAIN An example of deep pain is

that pain which is felt in bones. It is a dull, aching, diffuse and often purely localized sensation. Periostitis, ischemia, or distention of the marrow cavity may cause deep pain. In the days when intramarrow infusions were relatively popular, the injection of blood or other fluid into the marrow space of the tibia at too rapid a rate resulted in distention of the marrow cavity and outcries of pain.

A second type of deep pain is visceral pain, which is usually dull and is poorly localized. This type of pain may be produced by various stimuli such as inflammation within the abdomen, distention of hollow viscera, or traction on the mesentery of the bowel.

REFERRED PAIN This is the familiar phenomenon observed when irritation of the diaphragm by a subdiaphragmatic collection results in pain over the trapezius or the deltoid region. The reason for this is, of course, that the sensory area of the shoulder "referred to" is supplied by the same cervical

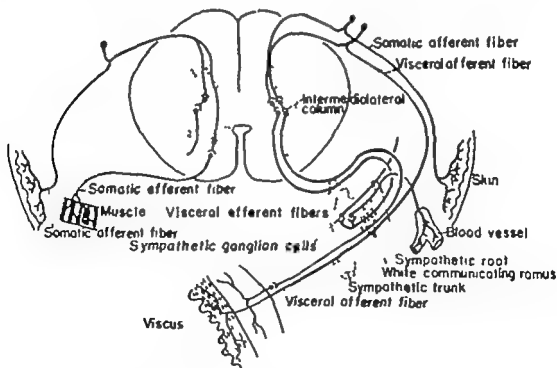


Diagram illustrating somatic (left) and visceral (right) reflex arcs.

Fig. 262 Mechanism of referred pain from abdominal viscera. (From KUNTZ, A. *Visceral Innervation and Its Relation to Personality* Springfield Ill. Charles C Thomas, 1961)

neive roots which supply the phrenic nerve to the diaphragm Similarly, pain in the hip joint, as in early tuberculosis, may be referred to the knee O1, pain due to coronary occlusion may be referred, by way of sympathetic connections, down the inner surface of the left arm The reflex arc, by means of which intraperitoneal visceral pain is referred to the skin of the abdominal wall, is shown in Figure 262

CENTRAL PAIN Corbin⁶ calls attention also to central pain, which is that perceived in the mind when there is no peripheral cause, at least at the moment One of the most classic examples of this type of phenomenon is the so-called phantom limb pain which was described by S Weir Mitchell and his associ-

TABLE 23 APPROXIMATE PAIN REFERENCE OF VARIOUS ORGANS IN MOST INSTANCES

- | | |
|----|---|
| 1 | Esophagus—to anterior or posterior thorax at about the level of the lesion, in many patients |
| 2 | Heart—to precordium, neck (and, rarely, teeth), left arm, shoulder blades, or epigastrium |
| 3 | Diaphragm—to deltoid region on involved side |
| 4 | Stomach—epigastrium, characteristically, pain of ruptured ulcer tends to spread downward |
| 5 | Pancreas—belt-like area, front and back (Fig 86, p 252), pain of hemorrhagic pancreatitis tends to spread downward |
| 6 | Gallbladder—to right subcostal region anteriorly and to shoulder blades posteriorly, may cause precordial pain simulating angina pectoris |
| 7 | Kidney and ureter—to back or flank, or into genitalia on the involved side |
| 8 | Bladder—suprapubic pain or into genitalia |
| 9 | Ovary, tube or uterus—to anterior abdomen, often suprapubic, or into groin |
| 10 | Appendiceal—often begins adjacent to umbilicus but usually localizes in right lower quadrant |
| 11 | Bowel—depends on the level, cramping pain should always suggest mechanical obstruction, diverticulitis may simulate left sided appendicitis |
| 12 | Pancreatic, gallbladder, or gastroenterostomy dysfunction (stomal ulcer)—may be the cause of pain referred to the back in patients with these possibilities |

ates²⁵ a great many years ago For months following amputation the patient may “experience” pain in the amputated foot—even though he sees that the foot is gone

ABDOMINAL PAIN The accurate interpretation of the origin and character of abdominal pain represents a major requirement in the successful conduct of abdominal surgery The type of pain which arises from disease of various organs has been mentioned under appropriate sections throughout this volume, but certain important relationships are shown in Figure 262 and Table 23

Surgical Procedures for Relief of Pain

In Figure 263 are shown the levels at which various surgical procedures may be performed for the relief of pain These include operations upon the cerebrum, chordotomy in both the cervical and the thoracic regions, myelotomy of the lower cord, and sympathectomy However, extensive thoracolumbar sympathectomy carries with it the hazard that subsequent serious disease, such as a ruptured peptic ulcer or gallbladder, may cause no symptoms

The Use of Opiates for Pain Relief

Patients vary widely in the degree to which they experience or manifest pain following operation Actually, the wound is usually not especially painful unless motion is involved, as with thoracic incisions Therefore, heavy doses of opiates, which depress respiration, are best avoided unless obviously required

**Increased Intracranial Pressure:
Pathophysiology and
Management**

**The Third Circulation: Origin, Course,
and Absorption of the Cerebrospinal
Fluid**

In delivering his Cameron Prize Lectures at the University of Edinburgh, October 19–22, 1925, Harvey Cushing dedicated the first to Francois Magendie and entitled this lecture “The Third Circulation and Its

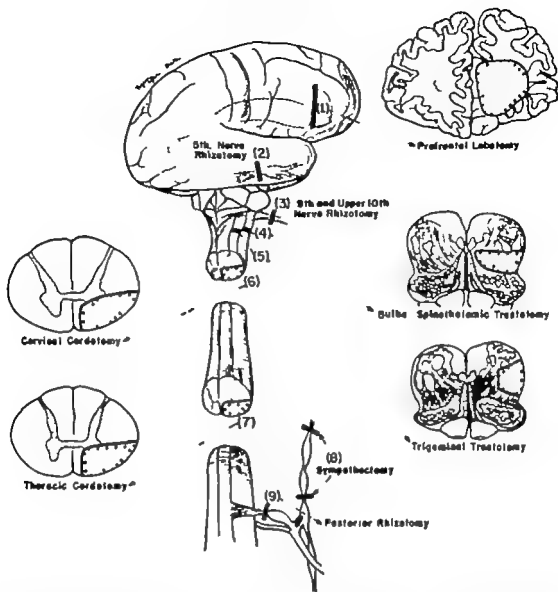


Fig 203 Surgery of pain relief Sites of standard neurosurgical procedures for relief of pain The IXth Xth and XIth nerves leave the brain stem along a line dorsal to which lies the descending trigeminal tract (incision 5) and ventral to which lies the crossed pain pathway from the limbs and the torso (incision 4) (From SWARTZ W H In *Surgery—Principles and Practice* edited by J G Allen H N Harkins, C A Moyer and J E Rhoads Philadelphia J B Lippincott Company 1957)

Channels.⁷⁷ He pointed out that only 100 years had passed since the appearance of the earliest of Magendie's epoch making publications in which attention was drawn to the physiologic importance of the peculiar watery medium which bathed the central nervous system. Cushing then went on to review the current knowledge regarding the spinal fluids origin and the course of the cerebrospinal fluid. It was already known that the cerebrospinal fluid was in continual movement and in a definite direction furthermore it traveled through a highly special pathway in a fashion which served

the purpose of lymphatic drainage, since lymphatic vessels as such were not present in the brain (Fig. 264)

In 1911 Dandy⁸ had devised a method of producing experimental hydrocephalus by occluding the aqueduct of Sylvius and of determining the site of the block by an injection of phenolsulfonphthalein. It was subsequently found that when one foramen of Monro was occluded a unilateral hydrocephalus resulted yet if the choroid plexus in that lateral ventricle was removed coincidentally the ventricle remained collapsed. This proved beyond doubt that the cerebro-

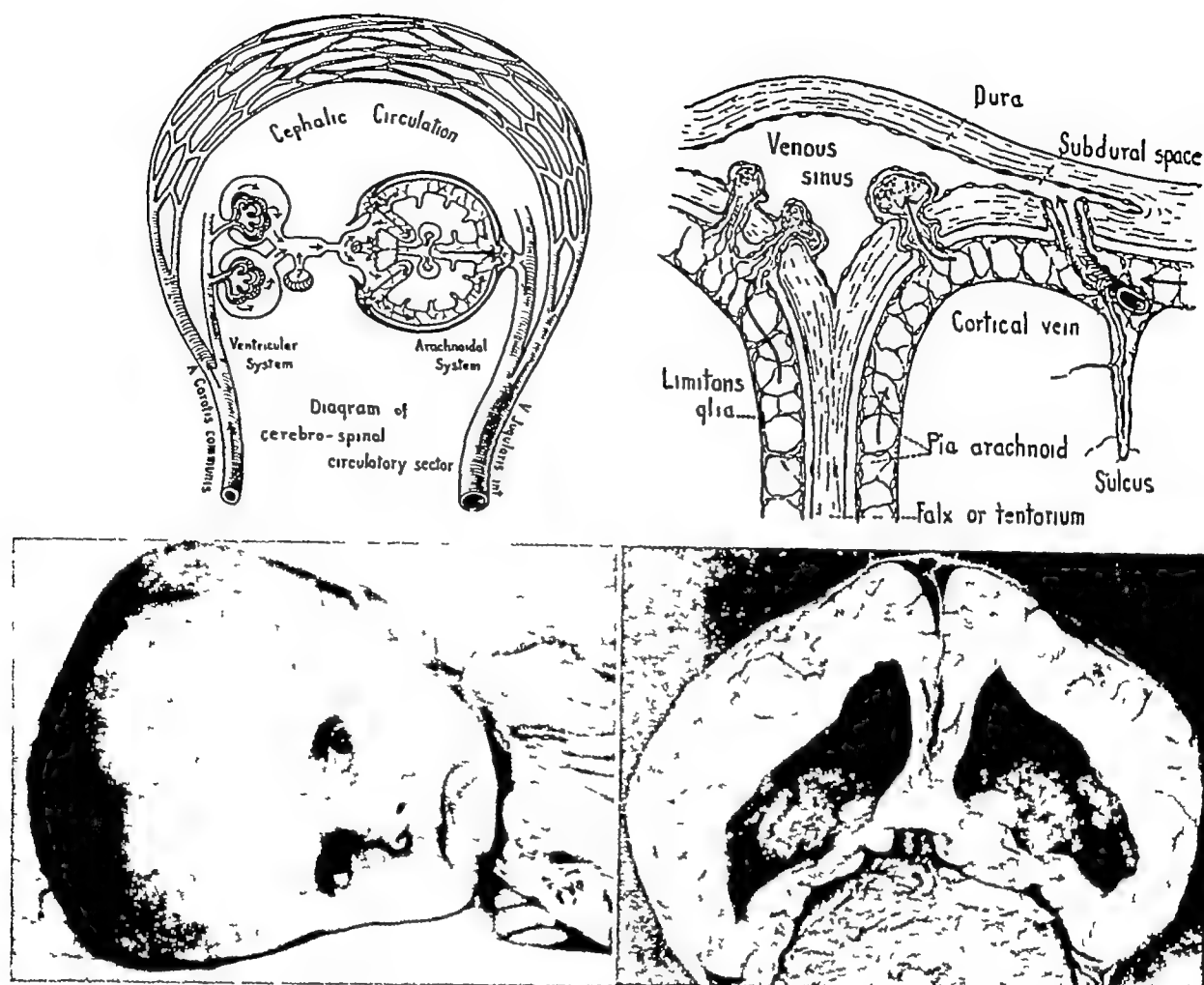


Fig 264 Circulation of the cerebrospinal fluid Above are shown the processes of formation and absorption of cerebrospinal fluid It is formed by the choroid plexuses and absorbed in the arachnoidal system over the brain and spinal cord (From CUSHING, H *Studies in Intracranial Physiology and Surgery* London, Oxford University Press, 1926) Below is shown a child with the characteristic physical changes of hydrocephalus (Courtesy of Dr Orlando J Andy) and also bilateral hypertrophy of the choroid plexuses (From DAVIS, L E A physio-pathological study of the choroid plexus with the report of a case of villous hypertrophy J M Research, 44: 521, 1924)

spinal fluid was secreted by the choroid plexuses Previously Cushing had observed fluid freely exuding from a choroid plexus in a patient who had a unilateral hydrocephalus due to a cystic intraventricular tumor arising near and occluding the right foramen of Monro When a clip was placed on the entering choroidal artery, however, the choroid plexus blanched and the secretion apparently ceased

The cerebrospinal fluid passes from the lateral ventricle, to the foramen of Monro, into the third ventricle, through the aqueduct of Sylvius to the fourth ventricle, out into the subarachnoid space through the foramen of Luschka and the foramen of

Magendie It is absorbed chiefly by the arachnoid villi into the dural sinuses and the spinal veins Roughly four-fifths of the fluid is absorbed by way of the cerebral arachnoid villi and most of the rest by way of the spinal villi (Fig 264)

FACTORS WHICH AFFECT CEREBROSPINAL FLUID FLOW AND PRESSURE *Hydrocephalus resulting from obstruction* We have previously alluded to the studies of Dandy, among others, who demonstrated that hydrocephalus is usually the result of a blockage of the outflow of the cerebrospinal fluid from the ventricular choroid plexuses, where it is formed, through the roof of the fourth ventricle into the subarachnoid spaces Ac-

tually, very rarely hydrocephalus may result from an excessive rate of formation of cerebrospinal fluid, though this is of no particular clinical significance. In Figure 264 is shown a case cited by Cushing⁷ which had been reported by Davis.¹⁰ It was thought that huge bilateral but symmetrical hypertrophy of the choroid plexus had resulted in the formation of fluid at a rate that was in excess of the capacity of the subarachnoid villi to reabsorb.

Nevertheless, hydrocephalus usually is caused by actual blockage of the flow of the cerebrospinal fluid. *Internal hydrocephalus* is the term applied to a blockage of the fluid before it has left the ventricles. This could occur by blockage of either foramen of Monro which would produce a unilateral hydrocephalus in the lateral ventricle, or the blockage could occur in the aqueduct of Sylvius, which would produce dilatation of the ventricular system proximal to this or it could occur due to sclerosis in the roof or lateral exits of the fourth ventricle. *External hydrocephalus* on the other hand, is the term applied to the extraventricular hydrocephalus which results from a blockage of the free flow of the fluid through the subarachnoid space and thus diminishes the total number of arachnoid villi available for absorption. Inflammatory changes in the leptomeninges may occlude the arachnoid villi and in this way prevent absorption. In fact, Weed²² showed in 1919 that a chronic high grade hydrocephalus could be produced experimentally by the subarachnoid injection of lamp black which served to occlude the villi.

Every neurosurgical service has its share of unfortunate children with hydrocephalus, and large numbers of essentially unsuccessful operative procedures have been attempted in an effort to permit successful chronic drainage and decompression.

EFFECT OF INTRAVENOUS THERAPY ON CEREBROSPINAL FLUID PRESSURE. In 1919 Weed and McKibben²³ demonstrated that prompt changes in brain volume followed the intravenous injection of hypertonic and hypo-

tonic fluids. The use of hypertonic solutions was promptly adopted as a means of lowering intracranial tension, and it was noted that certain patients who were in a deep stupor, even with Cheyne-Stokes respiration, could be brought back to consciousness after such treatment. However, this and related measures have ultimately proved to be of limited value. In brief, the intravenous injection of an hypotonic solution may result in a marked and prolonged rise in cerebrospinal fluid pressure. In contrast, if an hypertonic solution is given there is a temporary lowering of the intracranial pressure. The solution most commonly used for this is 50 per cent sucrose given in the amount of from 50 to 100 cc intravenously. It is possible also to dehydrate the individual by giving small doses of magnesium sulfate by mouth each day.

Incidentally in the course of his experiences in the management of hydrocephalus in children Cushing observed that electrolyte imbalance might lead to intestinal tussusception in youngsters. This is a major cause of death in uremic dogs.

Mechanics of Increased Pressure

To appreciate the effect which changes in increased intracranial pressure may have upon the brain, it is well to bear in mind that the brain and its coverings are encased in a tight bony box. Since the brain itself contains large amounts of incompressible water there are definite limits to which the intracranial pressure can rise without causing irreversible damage to nerve cells.

When the intracranial pressure rises—whether due to hemorrhage and clot edema, tumor, abscess or depressed fracture—the cerebrospinal fluid is forced out along the sheaths of the cranial nerves and if this process continues with sufficient severity, permanent brain cell damage will occur. As we know, the increase in intracranial pressure results in edema of the optic disc.

For a time the increased pressure in the arteries relative to that in the veins will continue to bring in blood whose exit through

the veins is partially limited by the pressure upon the veins. Thus, an increase in the intracranial pressure usually results in displacement of some of the cerebral fluid. The blood vessels may be compressed and the surface of the gyri flattened. Finally, when all possible intracranial space has been taken, the pressure is exerted on the contents of the posterior fossa of the skull and the cerebellar peduncles are gradually herniated downward into the foramen magnum. This may so obstruct the foramen magnum that the spinal fluid can no longer escape into the subarachnoid space of the spinal canal, where a portion of the normal absorption of this fluid occurs. It is probable that as the intracranial pressure increases, the pressure of the confining foramen magnum upon vital medullary centers results in respiratory paralysis due to anemia of the respiratory center. *Respiratory failure usually precedes failure of the heart.*

Signs and Symptoms of Acutely Increased Intracranial Pressure

The surgeon most frequently encounters acutely increased intracranial pressure in connection with traumatic accidents. There is the history of head injury, with or without loss of consciousness. However, patients who sustain serious head injury often do lose consciousness for hours, days, weeks, or even months. It is customary to consider the pathophysiology of acute head injury under the categories of concussion, contusion, and compression, though in the given case these are apt to merge and to be of little clinical aid. In brief, concussion represents the circumstance in which one is momentarily "knocked out," as by a blow to the jaw. Serious brain damage is not present. In contusion, however, and in compression of the brain, there may be extensive tissue edema, hemorrhage, and laceration.

As intracranial pressure rises due to gross hematoma or diffuse edema and hemorrhage, the *blood pressure* rises but the *pulse rate* and the *respiratory rate* decline. If the contents of the skull continue to swell, respira-

tion may be of the Cheyne-Stokes type before it fails. The initial rise in blood pressure is followed by a fall in blood pressure and an increase in pulse rate—signs which often herald the approach of death. Finally, a marked increase in the body temperature, usually without sweating, is observed. Most of these alterations in vital signs are due to terminal ischemia of the medullary center. Thus, *the early warning signs of brain compression are a rise in blood pressure, a slowing of the pulse, a deepening of unconsciousness, and slowing or irregularity of respiration.*

Signs and Symptoms of Chronically Increased Intracranial Pressure²⁷

In the more gradually produced increased intracranial pressure (and even in the acute) any or all of the following signs and symptoms of increased intracranial pressure may be noted and all should be viewed with insight when they are encountered.

Headache. This is apt to be severe and is rather constant. It is likely to be made worse by any movement which increases intracranial tension, such as straining at stool, rising, bending over, coughing, or sneezing.

Vomiting. This may be of the "projectile" type and is usually not preceded by nausea.

Choked disc. This visible sign may be associated with subjective evidence of diminished vision and objective evidence of visual field defects.

Stupor and, later, unconsciousness. This is due to an increase in intracranial pressure causing anoxemia of vital centers.

Blood pressure and pulse. As noted with acutely increased intracranial pressure in trauma, a rise in blood pressure and a slow bounding pulse associated with slowed respiration is a sign of increased intracranial pressure. With a further increase in intracranial pressure the blood pressure will fall, the pulse will become rapid, and respiration will eventually cease.

Miscellaneous other signs are vertigo,

mental dullness and deterioration, convulsions and strabismus.

Focal Signs of Increased Intracranial Pressure¹⁸

Mass lesions produce symptoms by increasing intracranial pressure and by affecting particular areas of the brain.

Frontal lobe Lesions of the frontal lobe are insidious in onset and are usually manifested first in *personality changes*. Diminished mental capacity and attention to surroundings may accompany a loss of care in personal tidiness. Hemiparesis will not be present unless there is encroachment upon the motor cortex as the mass enlarges. Convulsions may then occur and speech disturbances are not uncommon.

Motor cortex Lesions of the motor cortex cause convulsions on the side of the body opposite that of the lesion. If relief is not provided, contralateral hemiparesis and, eventually, complete paralysis may develop.

Parietal lobe Since this lobe is the seat of sensation and stereognosis, the following signs may be observed. Convulsive seizures may be preceded by a sensation of tingling or numbness with associated change in sensory appreciation, astereognosis or the inability to determine size, shape, weight and texture of objects may be lost even though tactile and touch perception may be intact.

Temporal lobe Lesions of this lobe may be accompanied by hallucinations of smell. The odor (not noted by the attendant) is usually disagreeable and may be associated with a smacking of the lips. Dreamlike states may be present and an occasional auditory hallucination and difficulty in understanding spoken words may be observed though sound is appreciated. Various speech disturbances, or types of aphasia, are seen. If the motor cortex is impinged upon, varying degrees of hemiparesis of the opposite side of the body may be observed.

Occipital lobe As the occipital lobe has an important association with visual func-

tion, visual hallucinations may precede generalized convulsions.

The cerebellum The signs and symptoms of cerebellar lesions are not readily overlooked. An ataxic gait and station are characteristic: the patient walks with a broad base, feet wide apart, and with staggering. There are other lesions which can produce such a gait but a cerebellar lesion must always be considered. An increase in intracranial pressure, with severe and continued headache and early visual disturbances, is common. Vomiting of the projectile type is frequently observed. A marked nystagmus is often associated with vertigo, tinnitus and occasionally with fainting. *Adiadochokinesis* is a characteristic finding of lesions of the cerebellum and posterior fossa. Not infrequently the patient will hold his head so that the occiput is toward the side of the lesion and patients have a tendency to fall to the side of the lesion. Past pointing is likely.

Pituitary tumors The changes which occur in the presence of pituitary tumors have much to do with the endocrine system and were outlined in that section (p. 533). The important facts to be noted in this particular discussion are that a pituitary tumor of increasing size causes pressure on the surrounding structures and may be accompanied by a marked loss in vision as the lesion progresses. These pressure changes usually arise from the eosinophilic chromophobe or mixed tumors since the basophilic adenomas are typically very small.

The usual findings in the presence of pituitary enlargement are as follows. Headache is an early symptom. Photophobia may be associated with marked visual disturbances consisting particularly of a bitemporal hemianopsia. That is, the fibers crossing through the optic chiasm are damaged so that the individual is not able to see normally in the temporal fields. Actual atrophy of the optic nerves may occur and eventually almost complete blindness may be noted. Roentgen examination frequently shows enlargement of the sella turcica.

The Care of Acute Head Injuries³⁰

Numerous physiologic requirements are involved in the early management of head trauma.²³ Certain of these may be illustrated by outlining the treatment of these injuries.

1 *Treatment of shock* Regardless of the type of head injury, shock must be treated immediately, before more definitive other therapy is undertaken. The principles of the management of shock are discussed elsewhere.

2 *State of consciousness* If the patient is not unconscious on admission to the hospital, he should be watched very carefully that he does not become so. If he does become so, certain other measures listed below are indicated. A careful neurologic examination is recorded at the time of initial evaluation.

3 *Chronologic clinical record* A careful clinical record is kept of the pulse, respiratory rate, blood pressure, and changes in neurologic signs.

4 *Scalp laceration* Since a scalp laceration may be associated with a much more serious underlying injury to the skull or brain, it is advisable simply to cover the defect with a sterile dressing until the patient's shock and other pathology have been evaluated. Following the more urgent measures, the head can be shaved and the scalp laceration cleansed and sutured, after the skull has been carefully examined with the gloved finger for a fracture. Skull roentgenograms should always be taken where there is any suspicion of a possible fracture.

5 *Bleeding or discharge of cerebrospinal fluid from ears or nose* This generally indicates a fracture at the base of the skull which is permitting the fluid and blood to come to the outside. Such fractures are usually serious. If other pathologic findings are not present, the chief objective in therapy is to prevent the development of meningitis. The use of heavy doses of antibiotics is indicated. The nose should not be manipulated or swabbed or sprayed, and the patient should be cautioned against sneezing. In most cases the discharge ceases within a

few days and no further difficulty arises. The general care of drainage from the external auditory canal is similar to that for the nose. Where possible, the patient should lie with the injured ear downward on a large sterilized gauze pad.

6 *Management of cerebral edema* There is much disagreement among neurosurgeons regarding the value of the various methods other than surgery that may be used (dehydration, intravenous injection of hypertonic solutions, or spinal tap). Hypothermia may be helpful.

7 *The position of the patient* Most neurosurgeons feel that the patient should be kept flat in bed for some days following a period of unconsciousness, and for much longer periods if serious brain damage has been present. The chief reasons for doing this are to minimize alterations in intracranial pressure and to diminish the likelihood of post-traumatic "neuroses." Actually, the so-called neurosis may consist of dizziness and headaches that are quite real. During recent years there has been the tendency to allow patients to be ambulatory somewhat earlier following simple postconcussion unconsciousness that is not associated with demonstrable brain injury.

8 *Bladder care* Patients with increased intracranial pressure may become incontinent of urine before unconsciousness occurs, and of course they will have to be catheterized if they are unconscious. To diminish the excoriation of the skin by urinary incontinence with the development of bed sores, to maintain bladder tone, and to diminish the likelihood of bladder infection, some method of evacuation of the bladder with frequent irrigation is commonly used.

9 *The relief of pain* The application of ice bags to the head will frequently markedly diminish headache. The routine use of morphine is to be discouraged because it diminishes respiration, which is already reduced, and because in addition it constricts the pupils and precludes the use of pupil examinations for the localization of the lesion, such as a dilating pupil on the side of

the injury would do. When morphine must be used it should be used with caution, and frequent small doses are to be preferred to large doses given less frequently. Codeine may be used or, even better, barbiturates may suffice. In addition to stimulating respiration, caffeine sodium benzoate may also lower the intracranial pressure somewhat.

10 Control of hyperthermia The use of multiple ice bags may be sufficient to maintain the temperature below 104° F. Cooling is further facilitated if the skin is moistened and multiple electric fans blown over it. However, at times even these measures, combined with the use of aspirin, may be inadequate. Under such circumstances an ice water enema may be given and repeated as often as necessary. From 300 to 500 cc of fluid may be administered as an enema and withdrawn after from 15 to 20 minutes. One of the various types of cooling apparatus used in producing clinical hypothermia may also be employed.

11 Tracheostomy This should be done if indicated.

12 Operative intervention If a mass lesion is present and operable, surgical intervention will prove far superior to the conservative measures listed above.

Electroencephalography

It would be incomplete to have alluded to intracranial mass lesions and injuries without mentioning the electroencephalogram (EEG). In 1929 Hans Berger² reported the surprising observation that tracings could be made of the electrical activity of the brain through the unopened skull. Since then this discipline has advanced steadily. A person expert in reading and interpreting the EEG is essential. The EEG is particularly helpful in the diagnosis, localization, and prognosis of lesions producing various forms of epilepsy. It is helpful also in the diagnosis and localization of brain tumors, and in localizing residual scar following traumatic injury (Fig. 265). There is a fairly good correlation between the recovery of the damaged tissues and the return of the

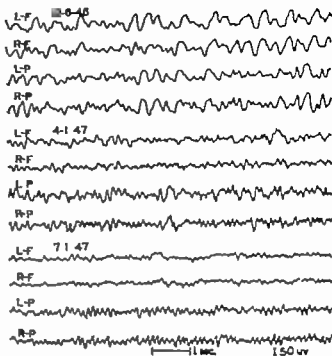


Fig. 265 An electroencephalogram following cerebral contusion. Electroencephalographic tracings (four channels) of a 9-year-old boy following cerebral contusion. The upper four tracings, taken on the day of injury, December 6, 1946, show diffuse irregular slow activity of 2- to 4-per-second waves. The second series taken on April 1, 1947, still show moderately slow wave activity, but it is approaching normal. The lower four tracings, taken July 1, 1947, show that the electrical activity has nearly returned to normal 8-per-second waves. This boy was unconscious for 4 days and made a satisfactory recovery. The correlation between the brain wave tracings and the clinical course is close in this case. (From RAND, C. W. In *Textbook of Surgery*, Ed. 5, edited by F. Christopher Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Company, 1949.)

EEG to normal. As pointed out by Gibbs¹³ the specific nature of the abnormalities which produce the electroencephalographic changes are usually not indicated by an EEG. That is, the EEG abnormalities are much the same whether produced by trauma, vascular pathology, infection, or neoplastic disease. Nevertheless, the variations which are observed may lead one to suspect that a particular type of lesion is developing. This is especially apparent if one can compare the changes in the EEG that have appeared over a period of days, weeks, or months.

A high degree of asymmetry between the left and right halves of the brain, even though both show normal patterns, is thor-

oughly reliable EEG evidence of the lateralized injury, if a lesion is present, it is usually on the side of the reduced voltage. Nevertheless, the EEG may be entirely normal in the presence of serious brain damage. Thus, the negative EEG does not rule

out disease, but positive EEG findings are of important confirmatory value. A particularly important application of the EEG lies in the value of a positive finding in patients who have seizures which may or may not rest upon an organic basis. The finding of abnormal activity would establish the organic nature of the disease, whereas the patient might otherwise be considered to be neurotic. On the other hand, again, a normal electroencephalogram would not exclude organic disease.

Neurofibromatosis (von Recklinghausen's Disease, Fig. 266)

In closing, mere mention will be made of tumors of nerve tissue. In the brain the symptoms and signs of local pressure or of a generalized increase in intracranial pressure usually prompt the individual to consult a physician. The pheochromocytoma



Fig 266 Café au lait pigmentation of von Recklinghausen's neurofibromatosis. This disease may affect virtually any organ. Uremia is not rare, due to ureteral obstruction. (Courtesy of Dr. Temple Ainsworth.)

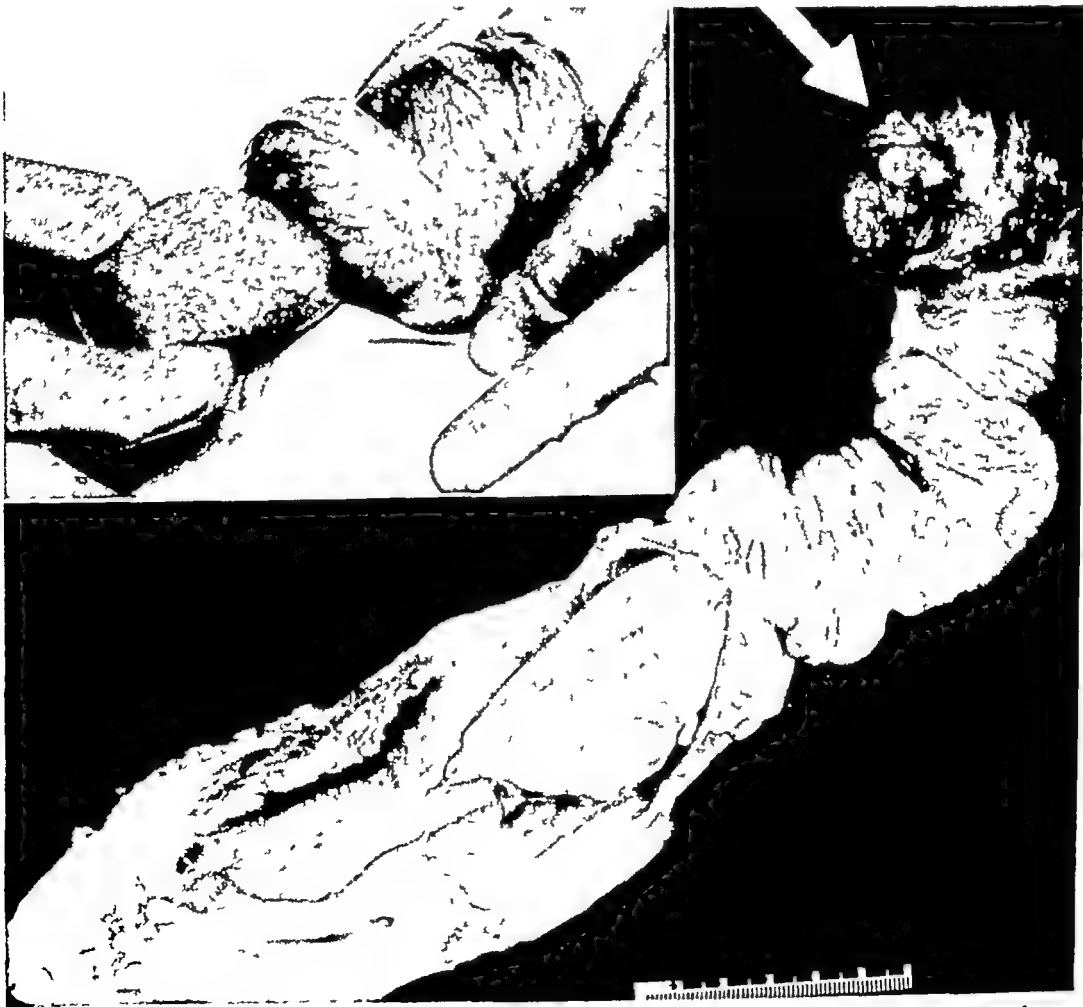


Fig 267 Intussusception due to neurogenic polyp. The patient had von Recklinghausen's neurofibromatosis, and had numerous tumors elsewhere.

and neurofibromatosis are closely related. Finally, nervous tissue tumors can produce dysfunction in any organ or region of the body including intussusception (Fig 267)

REFERENCES

- AXAND H K., AND BROBECK, J R. Localization of "feeding center" in hypothalamus of rat. *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 77: 323 1951
- ANDERSSON B. Further studies on the milk ejection mechanism in sheep and goats. *Acta physiol. scandinav.*, 23: 21 1951
- ANDERSSON B AND McCANN S M. Polydipsia evoked by hypothalamic stimulation in the goat. *Kungl. Veterinärhögskolan Stockholm Sweden (Physiol. Motion Picture)* 40th Annual Meeting April 16-20 1956
- BEAUMONT W. Experiments and observations on the gastric juice and the physiology of digestion (Facsimile of the original edition of 1833) VIII International Physiological Congress, Boston 1929
- BRIDGE, H. Über das Elektrenkephalogramm des Menschen. *Arch. Psychiat.*, 87: 527 1929 (not read)
- COHEN K B. What is pain? *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin.*, 31: 206 1956
- COSLING H. *Studies in Intracranial Physiology and Surgery* London: Oxford University Press 1926
- DaCosta J M. On irritable heart. A clinical study of a form of functional cardiac disorder and its consequences. *Am J M Sc* 61: 17 1871
- DADDY W E AND BLACKFAN K D. Internal hydrocephalus. An experimental clinical and pathological study. *Am J Dis. Child.*, 8: 406 1914.
- DAVIS L E. A physio-pathological study of the choroid plexus with the report of a case of villous hypertrophy. *J M Research* 44: 531 1924
- DE GROOT J AND HARRIS G W. Hypothalamic control of the anterior pituitary gland and blood lymphocytes. *J Physiol* 111: 335 1960
- DEWICK, C EDDY F D, FRYKMAN H M, MCCARTHY A M., AND WESTOVER, D. The response to vagotomy in idiopathic ulcerative colitis and regional enteritis. *Ann Surg.* 128: 479 1948
- FULTON J F. Somatic functions of the central nervous system. *Ann. Rev. Physiol* 15: 305 1953
- GAMBLE, J E., AND PATTON H. D. Pulmonary edema and hemorrhage from preoptic lesions in rats. *Am. J Physiol* 172: 623 1963
- GIBBS F A., AND GIBBS E. L. *Atlas of Electroencephalography*. Ed 2. Cambridge: Mass. Lew A Cummings & Co 1950
- HENRYGWAT E. "Snows of Kilimanjaro" In *Great Modern Short Stories* Modern Library Book New York Random House 1942
- HUME D M. The neuro-endocrine response to injury present status of the problem. *Ann Surg.*, 138: 518 1953
- JENNINGS D. Perforated peptic ulcer. Changes in age-incidence and sex-distribution in the last 150 years. *Lancet* 1: 385 1910
- KLEVEN R M. *Nursing Care of Neurosurgical Patients* Ed 1 Springfield Ill. Charles C Thomas 1949
- KURTZ, A. *Visceral Innervation and Its Relation to Personality* Springfield Ill., Charles C Thomas 1951
- LILLEHEI C W. Effects of postganglionic sympathectomy and vagotomy upon the gastrointestinal tract. *Am J Physiol.*, 155: 451 1948.
- MARQUAND J P. *Point of No Return* Boston, Little Brown & Company 1949
- MATSON D D. *The Treatment of Acute Craniocerebral Injuries Due To Missiles* Springfield Ill., Charles C Thomas, 1948
- MEANS J H. *The Thyroid and Its Diseases* Ed 2 Philadelphia J B Lippincott Company 1948
- MITCHELL, S W., MOREHOUSE, G B AND KEEY W W. *Gunshot Wounds and Other Injuries of Nerves* Philadelphia J B Lippincott Company 1894
- MITTELMAN B AND WOLFF H G. Emotions and gastroduodenal function. Experimental studies on patients with gastritis, duodenitis and peptic ulcer. *Psychosom. Med.*, 4: 5 1942
- RAND C W. The nervous system head in junior. In *A Textbook of Surgery* Ed. 5 edited by F Christopher Philadelphia, W B Saunders Company 1951
- RILEY C M. Familial autonomic dysfunction. *J A M A* 149: 1832 1952
- SHERINGTON C S. *The Integrative Action of the Nervous System* New Haven Yale University Press, 1906
- SWEET W H. *Surgery of the Nervous System In Surgery—Principles and Practice* edited by Allen J G Harkins H N., Moyer C A., and Rhoads, J E Philadelphia J B Lippincott Company 1957
- SWENSON O., EDWARD M D., NEUBAUER, B D AND PICKETT L. New concepts of the etiology diagnosis and treatment of congenital megacolon (Hirschsprung's disease). *Pediatrics*, 4: 201 1949

- 32 TOLSTOY, L N *Death of Ivan Ilytch* New York, Dumont, 1899
- 33 VERNEY, E B Antidiuretic hormone and the factors which determine its release Proc Roy Soc, London, s B, **135** 25, 1947
- 34 WECHSLER, I S Clinical hypothalamic syndrome Anatomico-physiological correlations J Nerv & Ment Dis, **117**: 492, 1953
- 35 WEED, L H The experimental production of an internal hydrocephalus *Contributions to Embryology, No 42* Publication No 272, p 425 Carnegie Institute of Washington, 1920
- 36 WEED, L, AND MCKIBBEN, P Pressure change in the cerebrospinal fluid following intravenous injection of solutions of various concentrations Am J Physiol, **48** 512, 1919
- 37 WOLFF, H G *Stress and Disease* Springfield, Ill, Charles C Thomas, 1953

Chapter 20

Infancy Poses Special Problems

The very young often confront the surgeon with special problems in anatomy, pathology, physiology and technic that are largely absent in older persons. Therefore while one would not wish to imply that the physiology of the infant is qualitatively very much different from that of the adult, there are certain quantitative differences which are of importance to surgeons. Moreover, it is in the infant that congenital defects are usually discovered and corrected and we may quite properly concern ourselves briefly with the pathogenesis of developmental defects. The following areas will be considered: the pathogenesis of developmental defects; the altered physiology found in newborn and premature babies; and the metabolic response of infants to anesthesia and operation.

Pathogenesis of Developmental Defects

Surgical considerations in the young must begin even before birth, for the surgery of children has to do frequently with the correction of developmental defects. It has become highly important to distinguish more precisely between the defects that are hereditary or genetically transmitted and those which are merely congenital (present at birth). The reason for this is that, more and more congenital defects that were previously thought due to deranged chromosomes and genes are now being found to be due to maternal disease during pregnancy. Accordingly the popular notion that most congenital defects are inevitable because of genetic aberrations must be searchingly reappraised. There can be no question but that

many developmental defects will be shown to be preventable.

Historical Notes

That maternal disease could produce defects in the fetus was noted by Jonathan Hutchinson through his studies of congenital syphilis. However, the broad significance of this observation, relative to the prevention of developmental defects, was long ignored by the medical profession. In 1924 Talbot¹³ stated his belief that most congenital malformations that were the result of lack of embryonic development were not hereditary defects but were acquired *in utero*. He considered that these defects were due to placental injury during the early period of gestation. Talbot described 20 consecutive cases of deformed infants in which there was evidence of placental damage near the base of the cord. 6 of the babies were anencephalic.

In 1941 Gregg⁴ pointed out the relationship which exists between the development of congenital cataract and other deformities and the occurrence of German measles (rubella) in the mother during pregnancy. In 1952 Olm and Turner⁶ reported a patient with tetralogy of Fallot who twice delivered at 6 months gestation an anencephalic infant following a Blalock operation; the mother delivered a normal infant at term.

Experimental Studies

In 1877 Camille Dareste³ reported the artificial production of monstrosities including anencephaly in the chick embryo, as a result of thermal insults to the embryo-

nated egg. However, it is only in recent years, through the experimental studies of Ingalls⁷ and others, that the epidemiology of congenital defects has surged forward. Noting that such commonplace defects as those associated with mongolism often had been associated with a possible etiologic episode during pregnancy, especially in conditions leading to anoxemia, Ingalls and others embarked upon a series of controlled studies. They decided upon oxygen lack as one stimulus to use, and it was soon found that multiple and different anomalies could be produced at will, depending upon the timing of the maternal stress induced by the anoxia in mice. For example, gross defects of the skull and of the brain were produced experimentally as localized manifestations of oxygen lack on the ninth day of gestation.

With such anoxia (usually produced by means of atmospheric pressures simulating altitudes of 25,000 to 30,000 ft—as atop Mt. Everest) the timing of maternal stress in pregnancy and its intensity can be varied at will. The mother can be subjected to anoxia on any desired day, and the timing in gestation and the degree of stress used can profoundly influence the type and number of congenital defects to be found in the young. Using stress anoxia upon fish eggs, Ingalls

and co-workers were able to induce embryonic deformity as early as the 16-cell stage.

It is not necessary to list the variety of congenital defects that can be produced at will under controlled experimental conditions. The fact is, most of the congenital defects with which the pediatric surgeon is so commonly engaged have already been produced experimentally. According to Ingalls, “The evidence is overwhelming that many, if not most, anomalous children have survived a temporary intrauterine stress” (Fig. 268).

Types of Teratogenic Agents

In addition to anoxia, certain vitamin deficiencies, cortisone, trypan blue dye, and ionizing radiation have been used to produce anomalies. The development of mutations among exposed Hiroshima residents has not appeared. However, brachycephaly and mental retardation occurred in 11 babies of mothers pregnant and standing within three-quarters of a mile (1,200 m) of the hypocenter at the time of the explosion; such defects were not found among the progeny of mothers at greater distances.

Prevention of Anomalies⁷

It has been suggested that proper attention to teratogenic factors already known

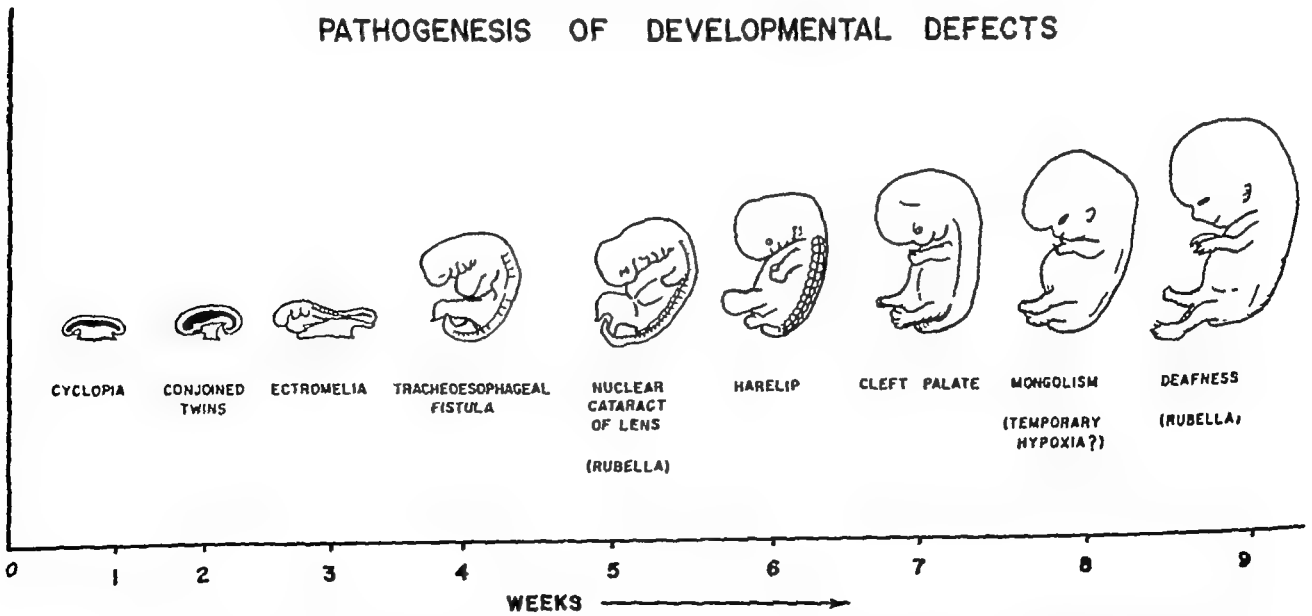


Fig. 268 The evidence is steadily increasing that many or most developmental defects are due to stress imposed upon the fetus at the time the particular organ involved was being formed. Thus, many congenital defects may prove to be preventable.⁷

TABLE 24 SOME REPRESENTATIVE
CONGENITAL ANOMALIES

-
- A. Head and neck
- 1 Congenital hydrocephalus
 - 2 Haro lip cleft palate or both
 - 3 Microtia (small ears)
 - 4 Thyroglossal duct cyst
 - 5 Cystic hygroma
 - 6 Branchial cleft cyst
- B. Lungs and trachea
- 1 Congenital arteriovenous fistula
 - 2 Congenital cysts
 - 3 Tracheo-esophageal fistula
 - 4 Agenesis of lung
 - 5 Sequestration of lobe
 - 6 Anomalous vessels and bronchi
- C. Heart and great vessels (incomplete list)
- 1 Tetralogy of Fallot
 - 2 Transposition of aorta and pulmonary artery
 - 3 Transposition of great veins
 - 4 Septal defects
 - 5 Coarctation of aorta
 - 6 Patent ductus arteriosus
- D. Alimentary tract
- 1 Esophagus
 - (a) Atresia (with or without fistula)
 - (b) Reduplication
 - 2 Diaphragmatic hernia
 - 3 Stomach
 - (a) Hypertrophic pyloric stenosis
 - 4 Small intestine
 - (a) Duodenum
 - (1) Atresia or stenosis
 - (2) Annular pancreas
 - (3) Undescended cecum with duodenal compression
 - (b) Jejunum and ileum
 - (1) Atresia
 - (2) Duplication
 - (3) Cysts
 - (4) Malrotation
 - (5) Meckel's diverticulum or persistence of vitelline duct
 - (6) Meconium ileus (deficiency of pancreatic enzymes)
 - (c) Colon rectum and anus
 - (1) Congenital megacolon
 - (2) Imperforate anus
 - (3) Rectovaginal rectovesical or recto-urothral fistulas
- E. Genitourinary tract
- 1 Kidneys
 - (a) Horseshoe kidney
 - (b) Cystic disease
 - 2 Ureters
 - (a) Congenital mega ureter
 - (b) Double ureter
-

TABLE 25 —Cont d

- 3 Bladder
 - (a) Exstrophy
 - (b) Patent urachus
 - 4 Urethra
 - (a) Various bands septa or valves
 - 5 Penis
 - (a) Hypospadias
 - (b) Hermaphroditism
 - 6 Scrotum
 - (a) Undescended testicle
- F. Liver
- 1 Atresia of bile ducts
- G. Abdominal wall
- 1 Omphalocele
 - 2 Hernias
 - (a) Umbilical
 - (b) Inguinal
- H. Skeleton (a representative few)
- 1 Various skull anomalies
 - 2 Missing or supernumerary parts of extremities
 - 3 Congenital dislocation of the hip
 - 4 Pectus excavatum
-

will reduce the incidence of anomalies in the foreseeable future. Among such preventive measures for the mother are

- 1 Allow small children to acquire rubella and perhaps mumps and chicken pox naturally. Protect against pertussis. Develop vaccine to prevent influenza during pregnancy. Treat syphilis promptly.

- 2 Avoid anemia and hypothyroidism. Correct, insofar as possible organic heart disease, systemic hypertension, retroflexion, and tumors of the uterus.

- 3 Control diabetes carefully. Avoid maternal anoxia at operation or dentistry. Avoid radiation and marked dietary deficiencies. Avoid cortisone therapy.

- 4 Older women have a higher incidence of anomalous offspring and their general health should be meticulously maintained.

Some Congenital Defects of Surgical Importance

In order to indicate the extent to which congenital defects occasion surgery in infants a few such defects are listed in Table 24 and in Figures 269-274.



Fig 269 Patient F W, 5 days after division of patent ductus. This very common congenital lesion is well tolerated for a number of years by most patients. In some, however, pulmonary hypertension of such magnitude develops as to preclude successful division of the ductus.



Fig 270 Sequestered lung. The bronchus of the collapsed, solid lung held by the lung clamp connected with the esophagus only, not with the tracheobronchial tree. Its arterial blood supply was derived from the aorta at a level just below the diaphragm. (From ST RAYMOND, A H, JR, HARDY, J D, AND ROBBINS, S G. Lower accessory lung communicating with the esophagus and associated with congenital diaphragmatic hernia. *J Thoracic Surg*, 31: 354, 1956.)

In conclusion, human embryogenesis represents an almost unbelievably complex and delicate process, any one of whose myriad components may be arrested at a given time. Whenever such an arrest in development of a part occurs, even if temporary, the result



Fig 271 Biliary tract obstruction. Thought to have atresia of the extrahepatic biliary tract, this infant proved instead to have obstruction of the terminal common duct by inspissated bile which was flushed through. Unfortunately, it is bile duct atresia that is more commonly encountered in the presence of intractable jaundice following birth, and in the majority of patients little can be done.

of this arrest appears in the offspring as a deformity.

Some Hemodynamic Changes that Occur in Fetal Circulation at Birth

In Figure 127 it may be seen that several very important changes must occur at birth. The ligation of the umbilical cord stops the circuit of blood through the hypogastric arteries to the placenta. The foramen ovale closes functionally because of the increased pressure in the left atrium. The ductus arteriosus usually closes quite promptly. The valves of the inferior vena cava atrophy, and the pulmonary circulation reaches the normal volume.

The timing and the mechanism of the closure of the ductus arteriosus has been rather obscure. However, recently some fascinating work performed in the Nuffield Institute in England has shed considerable light on this question.¹⁰ The experimental

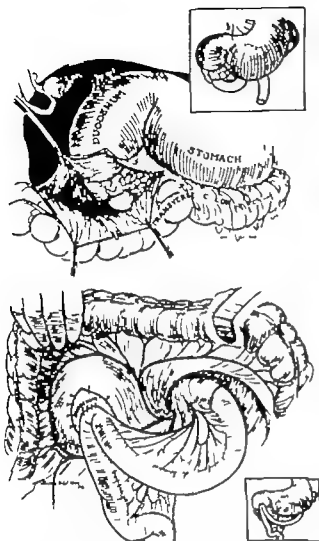


Fig 272 Annular pancreas and its management To avoid possible common duct injury and pancreatic fistula, it is usually better not to try to resect the obstructing pancreatic annulus but to perform duodenojejunostomy (From Wilson H and Bucalart J H Annular pancreas producing duodenal obstruction *Ann Surg* 137: 818 1953)

work was performed using cinema roentgenography in the fetal and 2-day-old lamb After establishing that the adult type circulation existed in the 2 day-old animal the investigators delivered lambs by cesarcan section, with placental circulation remaining intact A nosebag was placed over the fetus to prevent respiration and the circulatory pathway through the heart, lungs and aorta was followed by the injection of radiopaque medium Blood left the right ventricle through the pulmonary trunk and entered the ductus arteriosus Mixing and turbulence of the aortic and pulmonary streams at the end of this shunt indicated



Fig 273 Patent urachus—the urachus is derived from the allantois (From Bexton H F, Langford H G and Hardy J D Patent urachus. *Am. J Surg* 88: 513 1954)

patency of this bypass In contrast to that seen in the postnatal state, filling of the pulmonary artery was slow most of the pulmonary artery blood being shunted through the ductus into the aorta However, within minutes after tying the cord and the beginning of pulmonary ventilation, the ductus arteriosus closed Whereas previous to pulmonary ventilation there was almost no pulmonary flow, one cardiac ejection now filled the lungs The pulmonary blood volume rose literally with the first breath, and unless pulmonary ventilation occurred these flow alterations were not observed

Blood pressure changes were also followed in the fetal lamb With the onset of respiration both pulmonary and systemic systolic pressures fell to about 40 mm. Hg When the umbilical cord was tied there was some recovery of systemic pressure, but the most rapid recovery observed took place about 15 minutes after the acute pulmonary changes were over Similar pressure trends were observed in a series of human newborns studied by the skin flush method

Thus, the suggestion that functional closure of the patent ductus arteriosus need be due to fibrosis is no longer tenable on the basis of the data for sheep given above.



Fig 274 Meckel's diverticulum at surgery This congenital defect results from the persistence in varying degrees of the vitello-intestinal duct The diverticulum shown above was quite contractile, and it alternately shortened and lengthened as it was handled The base was cross-clamped, the diverticulum was excised, and the stump was inverted

While fibrosis surely does occur eventually, functional closure by contractile elements and longitudinal stress would appear to be a tenable explanation that could account for immediate cessation of ductus flow upon expansion of the lungs Of course, the angiocardiology would not so readily reveal flow from aorta to pulmonary artery, due to pressure alterations, and this reversal of the direction of flow (from that of fetal life) may persist somewhat longer

Altered Physiology Found in Newborn and Premature Babies

The physiology of the newborn infant was reviewed by Smith¹² in monograph form in 1951, and this source has been drawn upon freely in the following discussion

Respiratory Problems

The question of whether or not respiratory movements occur *in utero* would appear to have been settled in the affirmative However, this fetal activity has little relationship to the respiratory effort required to sustain life once the cord is tied Under normal circumstances, when the respiratory centers have not been depressed by anesthesia, the human infant seemingly can begin to breathe simply by the reflex response to the stimuli of exposure at birth Thereafter, breathing is more or less rhythmical if the infant is normal

When surgery must be performed upon premature and full-term infants, the efficiency of respiration becomes a matter of great practical importance, and it has seemed to us that more neonatal surgical deaths are due to respiratory complications than to any other single cause

It has been pointed out that the respiratory movements of the newborn are almost entirely diaphragmatic If movement of the diaphragm is interfered with by abdominal distention or diaphragmatic hernia, the infant—and especially the premature infant—is in a most critical state Even at best, the respiratory efforts of the premature are often shallow, rapid, and irregular, a poor starting point when surgery must be done Hence, extreme care must be exercised during anesthesia to minimize depression of respiration and periods of relative anoxia

Circulatory Problems

The entire homeostatic mechanism of the premature and, to a lesser extent, of the full-term infant is more fragile than that of the older subject The circulatory system is no exception

First the total blood volume of the premature is very small, and even small losses at surgery are highly important. For example, suppose that the total blood volume of a 4-lb (1.8-kg.) premature is approximately 10 per cent of body weight, or 180 cc., obviously, blood loss must be minimized and it must be adequately but meticulously replaced. Overtransfusion can be as disastrous as undertransfusion.

Coagulation defects are relatively common in the newborn and particularly in prematures. Many of the protective physiologic mechanisms of which blood clotting is an important one, are not yet fully developed in infants.

Body temperature regulation is always a problem in prematures, for several reasons (1) metabolism and heat production are deficient, (2) body heat regulating centers with their peripheral afferents and efferents are less rugged and (3) subcutaneous fat (insulation) is at a minimum. Therefore unless the ambient temperature is carefully controlled the body temperature of the small infant may vary widely with changes in room temperature. This is especially true of prematures since their body surface area exposed for cooling or heating is relatively enormous when compared with that of the adult. Specifically the weight of a full term infant is approximately 5 per cent of that of an average adult while his body surface area is 15 per cent of that of the adult.

Vasomotor stability is much less sturdy in the very young, and for this reason they are less able to withstand conditions which would not seriously handicap the circulatory apparatus of the adult.

The *systemic systolic blood pressure* in the umbilical artery increases from 33/7 in the 5-month fetus to 70/35 in the 7 month fetus to 80/46 in the full term fetus.¹⁵ At the neonatal age of 10 days this value usually lies between 90 and 100 mm Hg. In prematures the blood pressure normally ranges from 60 to 80 mm. Hg.

It is manifest that a truly convenient method for accurate intermittent measure-

ment of the blood pressure during operation upon all infants is urgently needed. The anesthesiologist and the surgeon will otherwise have little inkling of the status of the blood pressure of the diminutive patient. It is merely known, by auscultation that the heart is still beating and, by observation, that any shock that might exist has not yet halted respiratory effort. Since cardiorespiratory stability is admittedly precarious in the very young it is especially important that undue stress upon the cardiovascular system be avoided.

The heart rate declines at birth from the more rapid fetal rates to about 120 to 130 per minute; however, there is much variability and rates of from 90 to 180 are frequently observed in normal infants. The slightest exertion may cause marked tachycardia in many infants.

The Alimentary Tract

The gastrointestinal tract of the newborn infant has the normal complement of secretory and absorbing mechanisms, but the supporting musculature is less well developed. Thus, food absorption proceeds satisfactorily but distention readily occurs. The enzymic activity of the upper gastrointestinal tract is adequate for the digestion of most simple foods. Although the pH of the gastric contents is about 7.0 immediately after birth there occurs within a few hours a sharp relatively transient and unexplained increase in activity.

The *meconium* consists of enzymes residue from swallowed amniotic fluid desquamated cells from the mucosa and traces of blood from unrecognized sources. About 60 to 200 gm. are present in the bowel at birth. Some meconium is usually passed within the first 10 hours postnatally, and normally all of it has been evacuated by the fourth day. The meconium in the alimentary tract while sterile at birth, often contains bacteria 5 hours later and after 24 hours it always does so.

The *Farber test* for patency of the alimentary tract where atresia is suspected at

birth, consists of demonstrating swallowed epithelial cells in the center of the meconium stool ⁴

In general, the digestive tract of the newborn is adequately fitted to receive the usual food offerings

Renal Function

Much has been written regarding renal functional capacities in premature and full-term infants, not a negligible amount of which has conflicted. The reason for this surely lies, in part, in the technical difficulties inherent in the study of a sufficient number of subjects to achieve statistically reliable data. Therefore, the following comment will be restricted to generalizations that are fairly well agreed upon.

As with various other organs or systems, the kidneys do not reach anatomic maturity until about the thirty-fifth week after conception—whether or not all of this period is spent *in utero* ¹². Therefore, while the kidney of the infant is able to cope with ordinary requirements, it is ill prepared to cope with either excess or deficit of fluid, especially of salt-containing fluid. That is, the infant kidney can neither efficiently conserve sodium, if needed, nor can it readily excrete sodium when administered. Hence, the use of saline solution in the very young promptly results in edema in many instances. Since babies are born with an excess of water that amounts to from 5 to 10 per cent of body weight and which must be

excreted during the first day or so of life, the immediate fluid requirements at birth are small. Water intake may properly be restricted until the second to the third day, when the usual milk intake of infancy is established.

The concentrating powers of the infant kidney are limited and there often occurs an increased plasma concentration of electrolytes and urea, which gradually declines as renal function becomes more efficient. It has been shown that the urea clearance and other function tests are impaired in the premature infant and, to a lesser extent, in the full-term infant.

Many pertinent aspects of preoperative and postoperative care in infants are described in the recent monograph by Kiese-wetter ⁸.

Endocrine Function

Adrenocortical activity. A relatively large amount of effort has been devoted to the study of adrenocortical function in infants, and some representative data are given in Table 25. The plasma levels of free hydrocortisone in the newborn are significantly lower than those in adults. This has been reported by various workers, and it has been confirmed in our own laboratory ¹⁴. Furthermore, the level of hydrocortisone “conjugates” is extremely low in cord blood and in the newborn during the first few days of life.

Thyroid activity. The radioiodine uptake of normal newborn infants was measured by Van Middlesworth using 1 μ c (microcurie) of I¹³¹. The uptake of 7 infants was demonstrated to lie within the range of values which would be found in hyperthyroid adults.

The protein bound iodine level has been found to average 4.7 μ g (micrograms) per cent at birth, rising gradually over the next few days.

Metabolic Response of Infants to Anesthesia and Operation

The metabolic response of the adult to injury has been outlined in Chapter 1. The

TABLE 25 ADRENOCORTICAL RESPONSE TO SURGERY,¹⁴ FREE AND CONJUGATED CORTISONE LEVELS IN PLASMA

Patient	Age	Preopera- tive		Postoperative					
				4 hours		24 hours		6 days	
		Free	Conj	Free	Conj	Free	Conj	Free	Conj
A. W.	5 wks	7.5	7.1	12.5	10.0	8.0	5.0	6.9	5.0
B. D.	1 mo	2.1	0.0	3.8	0.2	1.3	0.0	—	—
V. G.	10 mo	2.2	0.1	4.0	2.8	1.8	0.0	—	—
J. L.	1 mo	1.5	0.0	2.0	0.0	—	—	—	—
G. N.	1 mo	2.33	0.0	8.2	1.0	0.5	0.0	—	—
P. C.	3 mo	5.9	1.33	7.5	3.33	6.1	0.83	—	—

objective here will be to point out the particular effects of anesthesia-operation upon the metabolism of the newborn.

Problems with Anesthesia

The fact that the cardiorespiratory apparatus of the premature and even of the full term infant is highly susceptible to noxious influences was indicated earlier. The breathing of the very small infant is often jerky and irregular, and the induction of anesthesia may be difficult for this reason. Actually, much may be achieved merely with local anesthesia and a sugar or whisky test pacifier, particularly is this mode of anesthesia adequate for body wall repairs such as small to moderate sized omphaloceles.

When general anesthesia must be used, the apparatus and the anesthesiologist must be chosen with the patient in mind. In our opinion in few other circumstances is the general anesthesiologist more likely to get into difficulty than in giving a small infant anesthesia for a thoracic procedure. If the anesthetist has not had experience with infants, some one who has had such experience should be in attendance.

We do not argue that one must choose for thoracic procedures a closely fitting mask without an endotracheal tube, or an endotracheal tube without a cuff, or an endotracheal tube with a cuff. All three methods are in use, and the good anesthesiologist gets good results with whatever he chooses to employ. It so happens that we are more accustomed to the use of an endotracheal tube without a cuff. Open drop ether is a good anesthetic where judiciously used for procedures that do not require positive pressure—as with thoracic operations. Cyclopropane is satisfactory for closed circuit anesthesia; it permits rapid induction and rapid recovery, and a high concentration of oxygen can be used.

Precanesthetic medication dosages are given in Figure 275.

Body Temperatures during Anesthesia

The hazard of excessive hypothermia or of hyperthermia during anesthesia was emphasized by Bigler and McQuiston.¹ Due to the aforementioned lability of the heat-regulating mechanisms, the infant may be subjected to wide swings in body temperature. They found that infants under 6 months of

PREOPERATIVE MEDICATION CHILDREN'S HOSPITAL OF PITTSBURGH*

Age	Wt./Lb.	Apothecary (Gr.)			Metric (Mg.)		
		Morph.	Nemb.	Scop.	Morph.	Nemb.	Scop.
0-2 mo	7-10	1/480	—	1/800	0.125	—	0.075
2-3	10-12	1/320	—	1/800	0.2	—	0.075
3-4	12-14	1/240	—	1/600	0.3	—	0.1
4-7	14-16	1/144	—	1/600	0.4	—	0.1
7-11	16-18	1/112	—	1/600	0.5	—	0.1
11-18	19-24	1/96	—	1/400	0.6	—	0.15
18-24	21-27	1/72	1/4	1/400	0.8	15	0.15
2-3 yr	27-30	1/64	1/4	1/400	1.0	15	0.15
3-5	30-40	1/48	as	1/300	1.5	30	0.2
5-8	40-55	1/32	as	1/300	2.0	30	0.2
8-10	55-65	1/24	1	1/200	2.5	60	0.3
10-12	65-80	1/16	1	1/200	4.0	60	0.3
12-14	80-90	1/12	1as	1/200	5.0	90	0.3
Over 14	90 +	1/8	1as	1/200	8.0	90	0.3

Fig 275 Great care is required in preparing the dosage of strong drugs for infants. (From KRAMER, W. B. *Pre- and Postoperative Care in the Pediatric Surgical Patient* Chicago: Year Book Publishers, Inc., 1956 as modified from LIGON, M. D. and BELTON, M. K. *Pediatric Anesthesia* New York, The Macmillan Company 1948.)

age tended to develop subnormal temperatures during surgery, which had not seemed harmful. In contrast, fever developed in over 62 per cent of their series of patients between the ages of 6 months and 13 years when they were not cooled. A cold water mattress was found to be more efficient than ice bags in preventing fever.

Metabolic effects (including acidosis) of anesthesia. Bunker and his co-workers² investigated acid-base equilibria and certain other indices of metabolism in comparing ether with cyclopropane as an anesthetic for infants. During *ether anesthesia*, infants under 1 year, unlike adults, regularly developed a moderate *respiratory acidosis* but no metabolic acidosis.

In passing, it might be mentioned that during ether anesthesia the state of carbohydrate metabolism resembles in many respects that of uncontrolled diabetes mellitus.

Other aspects of the response to surgery. Aside from studies of the free and conjugated hydrocortisone levels in plasma before, during, and following surgery (Table 25), we have not done metabolic studies in infants and must turn to the literature. It has been seen that the general pattern of the response of the plasma levels of free hydrocortisone in the newborn was similar to that in adults, but that the levels were lower in the infant, there is almost no conjugated hydrocortisone in the blood of the newborn (or in cord blood).⁵

Rickham¹¹ has recently reported in monograph form his detailed metabolic studies in 9 infants who underwent surgery. In general the results reported do not appear to differ radically from those in adults except, perhaps, in respect to potassium metabolism. The postoperative increase in potassium excretion so characteristic of the adult response was not observed in the newborn.

REFERENCES

- 1 BIGLER, J. A., AND McQUISTON, W. O. Body temperatures during anesthesia in infants and children. *J. A. M. A.*, **146**: 551, 1951.
- 2 BUNKER, J. P., BREWSTER, W. R., SMITH, R. M., AND BLECHER, H. K. Metabolic effects of anesthesia in man. III. Acid-base balance in infants and children during anesthesia. *J. Appl. Physiol.*, **5**: 233, 1952.
- 3 DARESTE, C. *Recherches sur la production artificielle des monstruosités ou essais de tératogénie expérimentale*, p. 39. Paris, C. Reinwald & Cie, 1877. Cited by Olim, C. B., and Turner, H. B., *J. A. M. A.*, **149**: 932, 1952.
- 4 FARBER, S. Congenital atresia of the alimentary tract, diagnosis by microscopic examination of meconium. *J. A. M. A.*, **100**: 1753, 1933.
- 5 FARRIS, L. L., TURNER, M. D., HARDY, J. D., AND NEWTON, M. 17-21 Hydrocorticotestosterone in labor and delivery. *Surgical Forum*, **8**: 489, 1958.
- 6 GREGG, N. M. Congenital cataract following German measles in mother. *Tr. Ophth. Soc. Australia*, **3**: 35, 1942. Cited in editorial, *New England J. Med.*, **255**: 623, 1956.
- 7 INGALLS, T. H. Causes and prevention of developmental defects. *J. A. M. A.*, **161**: 1047, 1956.
- 8 KIESEWETTER, W. B. *Pre- and Postoperative Care in the Pediatric Surgical Patient*. Chicago, Year Book Publishers, Inc., 1956.
- 9 OLIM, C. B., AND TURNER, H. B. Anencephaly in fetuses of mother with tetralogy of Fallot, normal infant following Blalock operation. *J. A. M. A.*, **149**: 932, 1952.
- 10 Respiratory problems in the premature infant. Report of the 15th M&R Pediatric Research Conference, M&R Laboratories, Columbus, Ohio, 1954.
- 11 RICKHAM, P. P. *The Metabolic Response to Neonatal Surgery*. Cambridge, Mass., Harvard University Press, 1957.
- 12 SMITH, C. A. *The Physiology of the Newborn Infant*, Ed. 2. Springfield, Ill., Charles C. Thomas, 1951.
- 13 TALBOT, J. E. The placental infarct and its relation to the etiology of deformed babies. *Am. J. Obst. & Gynec.*, **8**: 271, 1921.
- 14 WOFFORD, J. L., TURNER, M. D., AND HARDY, J. D. Steroid metabolism in infants. Effect of surgery on plasma 17-21 hydroxycorticosteroid levels. Interim report. *Surgical Forum*, **8**: 116, 1958.
- 15 WOODBURY, R. A., ROBINOW, M., AND HAMILTON, W. F. Blood pressure studies on infants. *Am. J. Physiol.*, **122**: 472, 1938.

Chapter 21

Urologic Considerations of Special Interest

Certain problems in the field of urology hold particular interest for all physicians. Those to be discussed briefly are as follows: (1) Urinary calculi, (2) hematuria, (3) injuries to kidneys, ureters, bladder or urethra, (4) urinary retention, acute and chronic, and (5) ureterosigmoidostomy.

Urinary Calculi

While a definite set of circumstances can be predicted to result in a relatively large incidence of renal stones by no means all stones can be explained on the basis of one or the other of the individual circumstances. In fact, the majority of renal stones have no obvious etiology and, indeed, where a predisposing situation exists there still is the question of precisely why calcium precipitates in some subjects and not in others.

Among the common and important predisposing factors may be listed the following: (1) prolonged bed rest (calcium is mobilized when the subject is immobilized), (2) hyperparathyroidism (calcium is mobilized in large amounts), (3) bacterial infection (certain organisms particularly predispose to renal stone formation), (4) urinary tract obstruction (urinary stagnation and increased incidence of infection), (5) dehydration (important in relatively few), and (6) metabolic (organic) dysfunction (uric acid or cystine calculi).

From this list it may be seen that calcium mobilization, urinary tract infection and urinary tract obstruction are particularly important in stone formation. Calcium is a component of most primary urinary calculi.

Physical Factors in Stone Formation⁵

It has been pointed out that every specimen of urine contains stone-forming elements such as uric acid and calcium oxalate. Their solubility in urine depends upon: (1) The pH of the urine. At pH 5 pure uric acid is present to the point of saturation, at pH 7 the urine is supersaturated with calcium oxalate. (2) The presence of other electrolytes in the urine, such as sodium phosphate. (3) The presence of certain nonelectrolytes in the urine. For example, the solubility of calcium oxalate in water is doubled by adding urea.

Protective effect of urinary colloids. Great interest has developed recently in the protective rôle of the urinary colloids as regards stone formation. These substances normally consist of mucin, nucleic acid, chondroitin, sulfuric acid and a complex nitrogen-containing carbohydrate. Precipitation of the urinary colloids may result in stone formation. It has been shown that the total quantity of proteins and other particles of colloidal size in the urine of patients with calculous disease is 3 to 13 times greater than in normal urine. Some of the factors which may influence the quantity of urinary mucoproteins were considered by Boyce Garvey, and Norfleet.^{1, 2} Two patients with hyperparathyroidism due to functioning adenomas were found to have the highest concentrations of urinary mucoproteins in their clinical series. It was felt that the most important single factor influencing the turbidity of urine was the pH.

CAUSES OF GROSS HEMATURIA

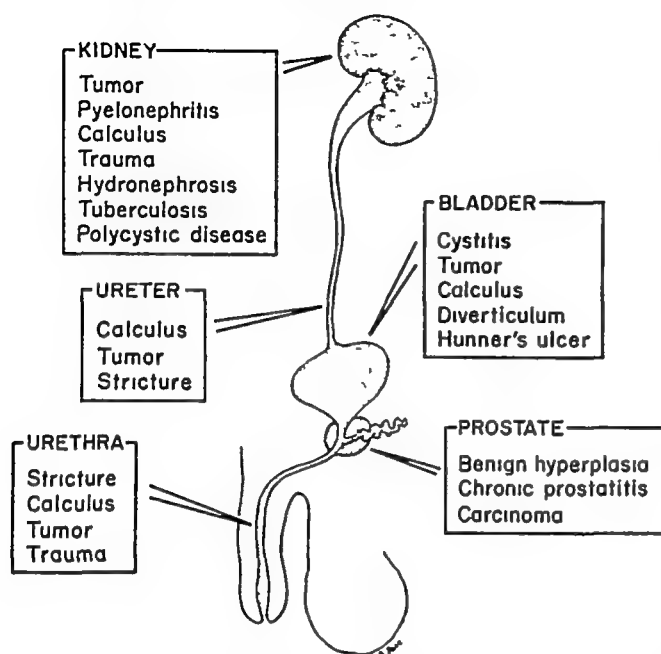


Fig 276 The cause of gross hematuria should always be determined

Prevention of Stone Formation

The initial step in prophylaxis is that of avoiding the conditions which predispose to stone formation. In patients who have already formed one or more stones, certain special preventive measures may be tried. Cystine stones can be prevented—and perhaps even reabsorbed—by reducing dietary protein intake and by giving alkalis to keep the urine constantly alkaline. The prevention of calcium and phosphate stone recurrence is not as successful. The use of hyaluronidase, acetylsalicylic acid, irrigating solutions, and vitamin A have been tried with inconclusive results. The incidence of recurrence of renal calculi is approximately 30 per cent.

Hematuria

The presence of blood in the urine may be so limited that microscopic means are required for its detection. In contrast, urinary tract bleeding may be so extensive as to represent virtually pure blood. Many of the same processes which cause microscopic hematuria initially may lead to gross hematuria later. Some of the more important

causes of hematuria are shown in Figure 276.

The more common causes of gross hematuria arising in the kidney are tumor, infection, calculus, and trauma. In the ureter, calculi represent by far the most prominent cause. In the bladder, cystitis and tumor are frequent, whereas calculi far less often give rise to gross bleeding. Prostatic hypertrophy, infection, or malignancy may occasion bleeding. In the urethra, strictures and calculi produce bleeding most frequently.

All significant hematuria should be carefully studied by means of intravenous pyelography, cystoscopy, and retrograde pyelography. Urinalyses should be repeated until the hematuria has been explained or the urine is clear of even microscopic hematuria.

Urinary Tract Injuries

The Kidney

The possibility of renal injury should be suggested by the history of circumstances that might have occasioned such injury, by physical examination, by urinalyses which shows red cells, and by urography. The intravenous pyelogram may reveal extravasation of the radiopaque medium into the perirenal tissues.

Management If hemorrhage or extravasation of radiopaque medium should force exploration of the involved kidney, one may be faced with the decision of whether or not to do a nephrectomy. As a rule, conservatism is greatly to be desired. The bleeding can often be stopped, the parts of the kidney sutured together, and the area drained. All this may result in a functioning kidney. Such a procedure recently saved renal function for an individual who sustained multiple gunshot injuries—for the ureter to the opposite kidney was later found to have been severed and after a number of weeks that kidney had to be removed. In a few instances uncontrollable primary or secondary hemorrhage may require ne-

phrectomy but this should never be done electively unless the kidney is obviously mutilated beyond repair. If one kidney is to be removed, it is always desirable to have proved function of the opposite organ by urography, rather than to depend upon simple palpation to establish its presence.

Ureter

Many devices and techniques have been proposed with which to salvage a damaged, severed, or ligated ureter. By and large, however, permanent success is uncommon unless the ureter proximal to the injury can be implanted into the bladder. To implant the ureter into the colon, to anastomose it over a small T tube or ureteral catheter or to perform cutaneous ureterostomy, all too often may result in ureteral stricture, hydro-nephrosis, infection, perhaps stone formation—and eventual loss of the kidney. Nephrectomy is the final outcome of most ureteral injuries which occur at a level which precludes ureterocystostomy. However, in the future such kidneys may be transplanted to the pelvis, the renal vessels being anastomosed to the iliac vessels and the short ureter implanted into the bladder.

Bladder

Bladder injuries are for the most part



Fig 277 Result of urethral stricture with urinary extravasation. When urine extravasates, a particularly vicious inflammatory process may be produced. This patient sustained rupture of the urethra.

readily diagnosed and readily treated. The injection of a measured volume of saline per urethral catheter, a cystogram, or the injection of fluorescein per catheter and its detection in peripheral blood have all been used to demonstrate bladder rupture. The first two are generally used and are usually satisfactory.

Suprapubic cystostomy with repair of the bladder injury with chromic catgut is indicated. Drainage is instituted as deemed necessary, for extravasated urine produces a particularly serious type of necrotizing inflammation (Fig. 277).

Urethra

Injuries to the urethra are likely to occur in association with fractures of the pelvis or in association with strictures, either spontaneously or during attempts at dilatation or passage of a catheter. When rupture or tearing of the urethra does occur, it is generally desirable to perform cystostomy and to drain adequately. This prevents further tissue damage by extravasated urine. Healing of the urethra itself is facilitated if a Foley indwelling or other catheter can be inserted (from bladder outward at operation if necessary) to serve as a scaffold during mucosal regeneration.

Urinary Retention: Acute and Chronic

Acute Urinary Retention

Following many operations the patient, especially if a male, may not be able to void for hours, days or even weeks. When this follows upper abdominal or thoracic procedures it is usually assumed that the normal neuromuscular processes of micturition have been interrupted and that time is required for these pathways to regain normal function. However, operations which are particularly apt to be associated with inability to void are those involving the perineum, i.e., hemorrhoidectomy. Here the postoperative pain may produce reflex spasm which the patient cannot voluntarily relax. Of course acute urinary retention may

CAUSES OF GROSS HEMATURIA

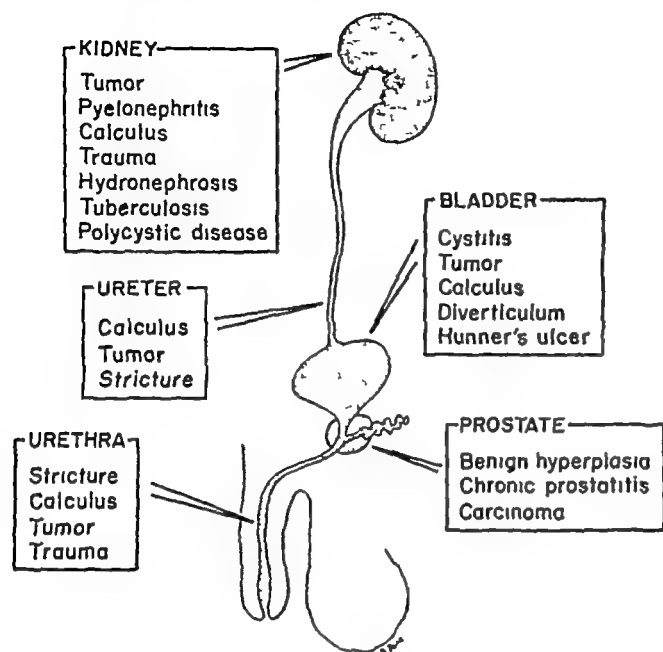


Fig 276 The cause of gross hematuria should always be determined

causes of hematuria are shown in Figure 276

The more common causes of gross hematuria arising in the kidney are tumor, infection, calculus, and trauma. In the ureter, calculi represent by far the most prominent cause. In the bladder, cystitis and tumor are frequent, whereas calculi far less often give rise to gross bleeding. Prostatic hypertrophy, infection, or malignancy may occasion bleeding. In the urethra, strictures and calculi produce bleeding most frequently.

All significant hematuria should be carefully studied by means of intravenous pyelography, cystoscopy, and retrograde pyelography. Urinalyses should be repeated until the hematuria has been explained or the urine is clear of even microscopic hematuria.

Prevention of Stone Formation

The initial step in prophylaxis is that of avoiding the conditions which predispose to stone formation. In patients who have already formed one or more stones, certain special preventive measures may be tried. Cystine stones can be prevented—and perhaps even reabsorbed—by reducing dietary protein intake and by giving alkalis to keep the urine constantly alkaline. The prevention of calcium and phosphate stone recurrence is not as successful. The use of hyaluronidase, acetylsalicylic acid, irrigating solutions, and vitamin A have been tried with inconclusive results. The incidence of recurrence of renal calculi is approximately 30 per cent.

Hematuria

The presence of blood in the urine may be so limited that microscopic means are required for its detection. In contrast, urinary tract bleeding may be so extensive as to represent virtually pure blood. Many of the same processes which cause microscopic hematuria initially may lead to gross hematuria later. Some of the more important

Urinary Tract Injuries

The Kidney

The possibility of renal injury should be suggested by the history of circumstances that might have occasioned such injury, by physical examination, by urinalyses which shows red cells, and by urography. The intravenous pyelogram may reveal extravasation of the radiopaque medium into the perirenal tissues.

Management If hemorrhage or extravasation of radiopaque medium should force exploration of the involved kidney, one may be faced with the decision of whether or not to do a nephrectomy. As a rule, conservatism is greatly to be desired. The bleeding can often be stopped, the parts of the kidney sutured together, and the area drained. All this may result in a functioning kidney. Such a procedure recently saved renal function for an individual who sustained multiple gunshot injuries—for the ureter to the opposite kidney was later found to have been severed and after a number of weeks that kidney had to be removed. In a few instances uncontrollable primary or secondary hemorrhage may require ne-

tomy but this should never be done unless the kidney is obviously injured beyond repair. If one kidney is to be saved, it is always desirable to have function of the opposite organ by nephrectomy, rather than to depend upon palpation to establish its presence.

er

any devices and techniques have been provided with which to salvage a damaged, injured, or ligated ureter. By and large, however, permanent success is uncommon unless the ureter proximal to the injury can be implanted into the bladder. To implant the ureter into the colon, to anastomose it over a small T tube or ureteral catheter, or to perform cutaneous ureterostomy, all too often may result in ureteral stricture, hydro-nephrosis, infection, perhaps stone formation—and eventual loss of the kidney. Nephrectomy is the final outcome of most ureteral injuries which occur at a level which excludes ureterocystostomy. However, in the future such kidneys may be transplanted into the pelvis, the renal vessels being anastomosed to the iliac vessels and the short ureter implanted into the bladder.

adder

bladder injuries are for the most part

readily diagnosed and readily treated. The injection of a measured volume of saline per urethral catheter, a cystogram, or the injection of fluorescein per catheter and its detection in peripheral blood have all been used to demonstrate bladder rupture. The first two are generally used and are usually satisfactory.

Suprapubic cystostomy with repair of the bladder injury with chromic catgut is indicated. Drainage is instituted as deemed necessary, for extravasated urine produces a particularly serious type of necrotizing inflammation (Fig. 277).

Urethra

Injuries to the urethra are likely to occur in association with fractures of the pelvis or in association with strictures, either spontaneously or during attempts at dilatation or passage of a catheter. When rupture or tearing of the urethra does occur, it is generally desirable to perform cystostomy and to drain adequately. This prevents further tissue damage by extravasated urine. Healing of the urethra itself is facilitated if a Foley indwelling or other catheter can be inserted (from bladder outward at operation if necessary) to serve as a scaffold during mucosal regeneration.

Urinary Retention: Acute and Chronic

Acute Urinary Retention

Following many operations the patient, especially if a male, may not be able to void for hours, days, or even weeks. When this follows upper abdominal or thoracic procedures it is usually assumed that the normal neuromuscular processes of micturition have been interrupted and that time is required for these pathways to regain normal function. However, operations which are particularly apt to be associated with inability to void are those involving the perineum: i.e. hemorrhoidectomy. Here the postoperative pain may produce reflex spasm which the patient cannot voluntarily relax. Of course acute urinary retention may



Fig. 277 Result of urethral stricture with urinary extravasation. When urine extravasates, a particularly vicious inflammatory process may be induced. This patient sustained rupture of the urethra.

CAUSES OF GROSS HEMATURIA

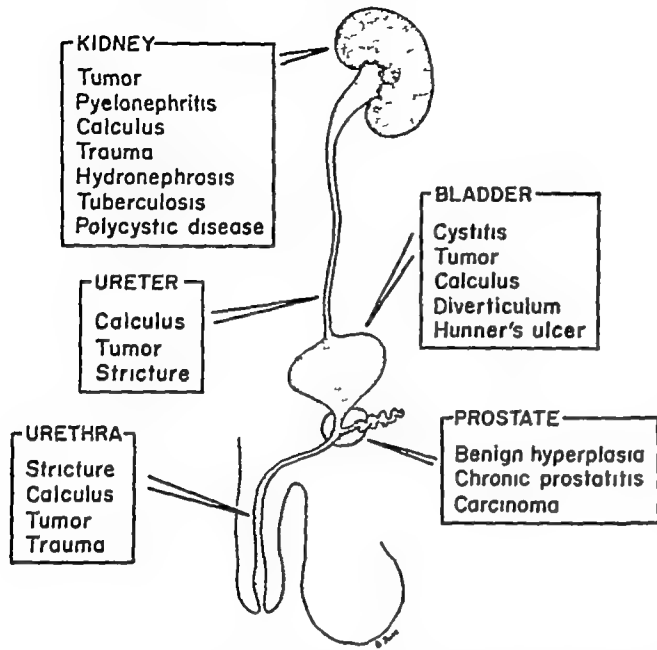


Fig 276 The cause of gross hematuria should always be determined

causes of hematuria are shown in Figure 276

The more common causes of gross hematuria arising in the kidney are tumor, infection, calculus, and trauma. In the ureter, calculi represent by far the most prominent cause. In the bladder, cystitis and tumor are frequent, whereas calculi far less often give rise to gross bleeding. Prostatic hypertrophy, infection, or malignancy may occasion bleeding. In the urethra, strictures and calculi produce bleeding most frequently.

All significant hematuria should be carefully studied by means of intravenous pyelography, cystoscopy, and retrograde pyelography. Urinalyses should be repeated until the hematuria has been explained or the urine is clear of even microscopic hematuria.

Prevention of Stone Formation

The initial step in prophylaxis is that of avoiding the conditions which predispose to stone formation. In patients who have already formed one or more stones, certain special preventive measures may be tried. Cystine stones can be prevented—and perhaps even reabsorbed—by reducing dietary protein intake and by giving alkalis to keep the urine constantly alkaline. The prevention of calcium and phosphate stone recurrence is not as successful. The use of hyaluronidase, acetylsalicylic acid, irrigating solutions, and vitamin A have been tried with inconclusive results. The incidence of recurrence of renal calculi is approximately 30 per cent.

Hematuria

The presence of blood in the urine may be so limited that microscopic means are required for its detection. In contrast, urinary tract bleeding may be so extensive as to represent virtually pure blood. Many of the same processes which cause microscopic hematuria initially may lead to gross hematuria later. Some of the more important

Urinary Tract Injuries

The Kidney

The possibility of renal injury should be suggested by the history of circumstances that might have occasioned such injury, by physical examination, by urinalyses which shows red cells, and by urography. The intravenous pyelogram may reveal extravasation of the radiopaque medium into the perirenal tissues.

Management If hemorrhage or extravasation of radiopaque medium should force exploration of the involved kidney, one may be faced with the decision of whether or not to do a nephrectomy. As a rule, conservatism is greatly to be desired. The bleeding can often be stopped, the parts of the kidney sutured together, and the area drained. All this may result in a functioning kidney. Such a procedure recently saved renal function for an individual who sustained multiple gunshot injuries—for the ureter to the opposite kidney was later found to have been severed and after a number of weeks that kidney had to be removed. In a few instances uncontrollable primary or secondary hemorrhage may require ne-

phrectomy but this should never be done electively unless the kidney is obviously mutilated beyond repair. If one kidney is to be removed, it is always desirable to have proved function of the opposite organ by urography, rather than to depend upon simple palpation to establish its presence.

Ureter

Many devices and techniques have been proposed with which to salvage a damaged, severed, or ligated ureter. By and large, however, permanent success is uncommon unless the ureter proximal to the injury can be implanted into the bladder. To implant the ureter into the colon, to anastomose it over a small T tube or ureteral catheter, or to perform cutaneous ureterostomy, all too often may result in ureteral stricture, hydronephrosis, infection, perhaps stone formation—and eventual loss of the kidney. Nephrectomy is the final outcome of most ureteral injuries which occur at a level which precludes ureterocystostomy. However, in the future such kidneys may be transplanted to the pelvis, the renal vessels being anastomosed to the iliac vessels and the short ureter implanted into the bladder.

Bladder

Bladder injuries are for the most part



Fig 277 Result of urethral stricture with urinary extravasation. When urine extravasates, a particularly vicious inflammatory process may be produced. This patient sustained rupture of the urethra.

readily diagnosed and readily treated. The injection of a measured volume of saline per urethral catheter, a cystogram, or the injection of fluorescein per catheter and its detection in peripheral blood have all been used to demonstrate bladder rupture. The first two are generally used and are usually satisfactory.

Suprapubic cystostomy with repair of the bladder injury with chromic catgut is indicated. Drainage is instituted as deemed necessary, for extravasated urine produces a particularly serious type of necrotizing inflammation (Fig 277).

Urethra

Injuries to the urethra are likely to occur in association with fractures of the pelvis or in association with strictures, either spontaneously or during attempts at dilatation or passage of a catheter. When rupture or tearing of the urethra does occur, it is generally desirable to perform cystostomy and to drain adequately. This prevents further tissue damage by extravasated urine. Healing of the urethra itself is facilitated if a Foley indwelling or other catheter can be inserted (from bladder outward at operation if necessary) to serve as a scaffold during mucosal regeneration.

Urinary Retention: Acute and Chronic

Acute Urinary Retention

Following many operations the patient, especially if a male, may not be able to void for hours, days or even weeks. When this follows upper abdominal or thoracic procedures it is usually assumed that the normal neuromuscular processes of micturition have been interrupted and that time is required for these pathways to regain normal function. However, operations which are particularly apt to be associated with inability to void are those involving the perineum, i.e. hemorrhoidectomy. Here the postoperative pain may produce reflex spasm which the patient cannot voluntarily relax. Of course acute urinary retention may

occur when no operation has been performed, in conditions such as prostatic hypertrophy or urethral stricture

In most instances of acute urinary retention one first attempts to pass a urethral catheter. If this cannot be done, the suprapubic cystostomy must often be resorted to. In some patients the bladder sphincter can be caused to relax by placing the penis in warm water, standing the male subject up, by allowing the patient to sit on the commode, by the sound of running water or by the use of cholinergic drugs.

The indwelling catheter We know surgical services on which almost every male patient has an indwelling Foley (self-retaining) catheter inserted prior to, during, or shortly following surgery. This is a "routine" and has no relation to whether or not the individual might have been able to void.

We are opposed to the routine use of an indwelling catheter following surgery. To begin with, most surgeons would (if operated upon themselves) probably elect to attempt to void before catheterization was resorted to. Hence, for reasons of both comfort and peace of mind, voiding is superior to catheterization. Second—and more important—bladder and urethral infections are increased by the promiscuous use of indwelling catheters.

Our practice is to remove the catheter the first time catheterization is required. If it must be repeated, then a Foley catheter is used and left in until the patient is out of bed and ambulatory. When catheters are required for prolonged periods they should be changed with reasonable frequency to diminish encrustation and stone formation.

Chronic Urinary Retention

Prostatic hypertrophy is a most frequent cause of chronic urinary retention. During the past 20 years much progress has been made in reducing the morbidity and mortality associated with the treatment of "prostatism." Essentially, long-standing incomplete obstruction of the urethra results

in urinary retention, bladder distention, and infection.

*Effect of back pressure on the kidneys*⁴ As the obstruction increases, the accumulation of urine in the bladder raises intravesical pressure, and there results an increase in intraureteral and intrapelvic pressure. In turn, this pressure is transmitted to the infundibula, calices, and tubules of the nephrons. Since effective glomerular filtration pressure is the difference between the intravascular hydrostatic pressure, on the one hand, and the sum of the osmotic pressure of the plasma proteins and the intrarenal tissue pressure, on the other, any increase in renal tissue pressure produced by urinary retention will result in decreased glomerular filtration. Glomerular filtration will be impaired further because of decreased blood flow, as a result of compression of the blood vessels by the increased intrarenal tissue pressure. Tubular function will be disturbed also because of a decrease in peritubular blood flow, which is due to compression of the vessels by increased intrarenal pressure.

Hence, it is apparent that sustained hydrostatic back pressure due to urinary tract obstruction has multiple deleterious effects upon renal physiology. If complete obstruction persists for long, as following ligation of a ureter, renal function will cease on the involved side, that is, the kidney will be destroyed. In contrast, if obstruction is relieved promptly, renal function may be largely restored.

To return to chronic, incomplete lower urinary tract obstruction, anemic and pressure atrophy of renal tubules will be followed by glomerular destruction, until finally little functioning parenchyma remains. Moreover, the degree of renal destruction is essentially proportional to the duration and the degree of obstruction. Following bladder decompression, one may expect improvement in both glomerular and tubular function over the next few weeks, provided irreversible structural changes leading to intractable renal failure have not occurred.

The *electrolyte disorders* which develop in the presence of urinary tract obstruction depend, again, upon the duration and degree of obstruction. Of course, abrupt and complete obstruction results in clinical uremia after a few days. Brief but incomplete obstruction may produce little more than azotemia without significant change in the plasma electrolytes. Chronic obstruction with the almost inevitable infection, however, results in progressive renal damage and insufficiency. Almost invariably the carbon dioxide combining power declines, with or without an early decline in blood pH. lowered " CO_2 " is due in part to the accumulation of fixed acid radicals such as sulfates and phosphates—that is it is a pulmonary compensation phenomenon (Fig. 194). Acidotic breathing and the other familiar symptomatology of chronic renal failure eventually ensue.

Immediate versus gradual bladder compression. For many years it was considered hazardous to decompress the chronically distended bladder abruptly, lest anuria or various forms of "collapse" be precipitated. More recently this view has been abandoned in favor of immediate and total decompression, since few report more than temporary albuminuria and microscopic hematuria due presumably to reactive renal congestion.

Pathophysiology of Ureterosigmoidostomy

Radical cystectomy for cancer and other conditions has required implantation of the ureters in the skin or, more frequently, in the colon or an isolated ileal loop. Creevy³ has inquired into whether the prognosis of ureterosigmoidostomy itself quite apart from that of a cancer is good enough to support the use of this procedure. Other less radical bladder resection for cancer, with preservation of normal continuity of the urinary tract, might result in a greater salvage of happy life, if the complications of ureterosigmoidostomy are too great. While patients have been reported who survived many years following ureterosigmoidostomy for exstrophy of the bladder (in one instance,

43 years), it is not known what proportion of the cases done have this favorable a longevity.

*Hazards of ureterosigmoidostomy.*³ It has been pointed out that there are many objections to all types of anastomoses between the ureters and the bowel. Paramount is the incidence of ascending renal infection following exposure of the normally sterile kidneys to the reflux of colon contents. The longer the anastomosis exists, the higher the incidence of serious infection of the kidneys, which ranges from 30 to 70 per cent of cases in various reported series. For example, only 30 per cent of patients may still exhibit a normal urographic appearance as early as 18 months following the operation. Clearly, the infection and perhaps a degree of hydronephrosis from ureteral stricture take a heavy toll of functioning renal parenchyma (Fig. 278).

Mechanism of hyperchloremic acidosis following ureterosigmoidostomy. For some time it was believed that the hyperchloremic acidosis which gradually appears over the months in many patients following ureterosigmoidostomy was due to excessive reabsorption of urinary chlorides from the colon. However, this did not explain the often late appearance of this phenomenon. It has since

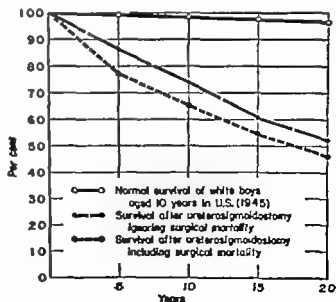


Fig. 378 Prognosis for life following ureterosigmoidostomy for nonmalignant disease. (From Creevy C. D. Facts about ureterosigmoidostomy J. A. M. A. 151: 120, 1953.)

been appreciated that, in addition to the reabsorption of urinary chlorides from the bowel, a diminished renal function is also important. That is, normally functioning kidneys are able to re-excrete the chlorides reabsorbed from the bowel—and at a rate which prevents hyperchloremia from occurring. As renal damage due to chronic infection and hydronephrosis develops, however, the rate of chloride excretion diminishes and chloride retention occurs. The alkali reserve is gradually depleted by combining with the fixed acid chloride radical, and metabolic acidosis results.

In summary, while hyperchloremic acidosis due to chloride reabsorption probably can develop in the absence of renal impairment, the latter is doubtless a complementing factor in most cases. The azotemia which may develop following ureteroenteric anastomoses may be due to absorption not only of urea but also of ammonia from the bowel. To minimize the chemical derangements due in part to reabsorption of various urinary constituents, it has been recommended (1) that a high fluid intake be urged to dilute

the urinary constituents in the bowel so as to diminish rates of absorption, (2) that the rectum or isolated pouch be emptied frequently (every hour or so) to reduce the length of time that the chloride ion is in contact with the mucosal surface, and (3) that the length of bowel that the urine must traverse be minimized. Sodium bicarbonate should be given by mouth to reduce the tendency toward acidosis.

REFERENCES

- 1 BOYCE, W. H., GARVEY, F. K., AND NORFLEET, C. M., JR. Proteins and other biocolloids of urine in health and in calculous disease. I. Electrophoretic studies at pH 4.5 and 8.6 of those components soluble in molar sodium chloride. *J. Clin. Invest.*, **33**, 1287, 1954.
- 2 BOYCE, W. H., GARVEY, F. K., AND NORFLEET, C. M., JR. The turbidity of urine in the normal and in patients with urinary calculi. *Exper. Med. & Surg.*, **12**, 450, 1954.
- 3 CREEVY, C. D. Facts about ureterosigmoidostomy. *J. A. M. A.*, **151**, 120, 1953.
- 4 LAPIDES, J. Fluid and electrolyte disturbances in prostatism. *J. A. M. A.*, **152**, 1305, 1953.
- 5 MACLEAN, J. T. Genitourinary system. In *Textbook of Surgery*, edited by H. F. Mosley. St. Louis, C. V. Mosby Company, 1952.

Index

A

Abdomen, bullet wounds of 6
 drainage of in traumatic injuries, 8
 exploring, in trauma, routine for 6
 pain in 618
 approximate reference point, of various or
 gans, 618
 ruptured aneurysm of aorta 410
 surgery of traction reflexes during 317
 wall of congenital anomalies of 631
 ABO system of blood groups, 270
 Abscess drainage of positive blood cultures
 after 131
 formation of in acute pancreatitis, 202
 lung, 506
 pancreatic flank drainage of 263
 subdiaphragmatic, proper drainage of 133
 Absorption intestinal factors affecting, 323
 Ac globulin properties of 275
 Acidimisation mechanism of 368
 Achalasia confusion with biliary disease 291
 management of 291
 of esophagus, 291 *See also* Esophagus, cardio-
 spasm of
 treatment of by dilatation 292
 Achromycin, 141
 Acid phosphatase level elevation in cancer of
 prostate 182
 Acid-Base
 balance maintenance of role of kidney in 46
 management, sodium bicarbonate to carbonic
 acid ratio in 40
 regulation, mechanisms of 35
 nomenclature 35
 of body fluids, 35
 role of kidney in 40
 role of lungs in, 40
 status, illustrative case history 70
 of body fluid 68
 Acidity expressed as pH, 38
 Intracellular bacterial immunity from 129
 inflammation and 129
 Acidophilic adenomas of pituitary gland 533
 Acidosis
 diabetic, *See* Diabetic acidosis
 hyperchloremic following ureterosigmoidostomy
 mechanism of 643
 in acute renal failure treatment of 78
 in burn patients, 161
 management of 163
 in infants, during anesthesia 638

Acidosis—continued

 metabolic 68
 plasma electrolyte values in 41
 respiratory 68
 Acrocyanosis skin color in 414
 Adromegaly due to tumors of pituitary 533
 ACTH
 effects of 531
 on hydrocortisone levels of plasma 567
 on lymphoid tissue 181
 on nitrogen metabolism 16
 in etiology of peptic ulcer 306
 physiological functions of 531
 release in normal *versus* stressed subjects, 13
 rate of governed by blood level of corticoids,
 11
 test in diagnosis of hyperadrenocorticism 570
 therapy positive blood culture after 134
 uses of in infections, 145
 in peritonitis, 145
 in preoperative treatment in thyrotoxicosis,
 517
 in thrombocytopenic purpura 282
 in treatment of terminal malignancy 184
 Adenomas, of pituitary gland, 533
 ADH in cirrhosis, 237
 Adipokin 95
 Adrenal
 carcinoma adrenogenital syndrome due to 575
 cortex carcinoma of Cushing's syndrome due
 to 563
 Cushing's syndrome due to case study of
 569
 functional anatomy of 565
 general discussion of 564
 hormones of 564
 effects on fluid metabolism 44
 hydrocortisone major output of 564
 role of in carbohydrate metabolism 18
 genesis of shock 359
 water and salt metabolism 43
 secretory products, 43
 glands, arterial metastases to explanation of
 178
 medulla, general discussion of 581
 responses of in trauma, 11
 to thermal burns, 153
 tumor of *See* Pheochromocytomas
 Adrenalectomy bilateral for breast cancer 183
 effect on excretion of 17-ketosteroids, 574
 fever following, 568

- Adrenalectomy—*continued*
 subtotal, cortisone therapy following, 568
 use in treatment of prostatic cancer, 182
- Adrenergic-corticoid phase, of postoperative convalescence, 21
 clinical aspects, 21
- Adrenocortical
 activity, of infants, 636
 carcinoma, excision of, effect on urinary excretion of 17-ketosteroids, 576
 functioning, urinary excretion of corticoids in, 575
 crisis, findings in, 44
 extract, effect on nitrogen metabolism, 16
 failure, acute, 361
 clinical findings in, 361
 following operation, 361
 water intoxication and, 52
 hormones, action of, general principles, 581
 during thyroid crisis, 553
 effects of, modifying factors, 45
 on blood sugar level, 13
 on water and fluid metabolism, 44
 thyroid activity, 552
 hyperplasia, adrenogenital syndrome due to, 571
 bilateral, adrenogenital syndrome due to, case study of, 577
 urinary excretion of 17-ketosteroids, 574
 insufficiency, 578
 acute, 578
 clinical findings in, 578
 findings in, 44
 shock in, 578
 altered effects of antidiuretic hormone on, 45
 chronic, 580
 findings in, 44
 effects of, on acid-base balance, 45
 on fluid metabolism, 44
 fever due to, 369
 case study of, 371
 subacute, 579
 case study of, 579
 types of, 44
 response, to surgery, 636
 secretion, dual regulation of, 578
 following thermal burns, 154
 stimulation, possible cause of hyperglycemia in endotoxin poisoning, 133
 therapy, complications of, 580
 cortical atrophy due to, 580
- Adrenocorticotrophic hormone, secretion in trauma, 12
- Adrenocorticotropin *See* ACTH
- Adrenogenital syndrome, 571
 age of onset, 573
 breast development following, 594
 case study in, 573, 577
 clinical findings in, 571
 comparison with Cushing's syndrome, 571, 572
- Adrenogenital syndrome—*continued*
 cortisone in therapy of, 573, 575
 diagnosis of, 573
 due to adrenal carcinoma, 575
 due to bilateral adrenocortical hyperplasia, case study of, 577
 effect of cortisone therapy in reducing 17-ketosteroid excretion in, 573
 etiology of, 571
 fractionation of 17-ketosteroids in diagnosis of, 574
 hereditary tendency of, 571
 17-ketosteroid excretion in, 573
 life span normal in, 572
 management of, 575
 pathophysiology of, 571
 precocious body development in, 571
 strong libido in, 577
 surgery *versus* steroid therapy in, 575
 virilism in, 571
- Adrenolytic agents, benzodioxane, 583
 dibenamine, 583
 effect in pheochromocytomas with functioning metastatic lesions, 584
 piperoxan, 583
 Regitine, 584
 use in testing for pheochromocytomas, 583
- Age (Aging)
 beginning of, 216
 biology of, 216
 body processes not affected by, 219
 effects of, on basal metabolism rate, 218
 on pituitary, 218
 on metabolism, 97
 on sexual capacity, 218
 nature of, 216
 of cardiovascular system, 218
 of endocrine system, 218
 of kidney, 218
 of liver, 218
 of musculature, 218
 of nervous system, 219
 of pulmonary function, 218
 of sex organs, 218
 of thyroid activity, 218
 pathophysiologic changes in, 217
 problem of, scope of, 216
 process of, variations in different organs, 217
 psychology of, 217
 relation of blood volume to, 353
 study of, methods, 217
 surgical aspects of, 219
 variation in individuals, 216
- Airway, establishment of, in trauma, 3
 foreign body obstruction of, during anesthesia, 514
 pulmonary, dead spaces in, 485
- Albinism, role of enzymes in, 207
- Albumin globulin ratio, in liver function tests, 224

- Albumin loss in urine in renal edema 58
- Alcohol, absolute in intravenous feeding 102
- infusion of for correction of water excess 52
- Alcoholism pancreatitis in 280
- Aldosterone edema caused by 59
- effects on body fluid metabolism 578
- role of in familial periodic paralysis 61
- in syndrome of familial periodic paralysis 578
- in water and salt metabolism 44
- Allosthenism primary clinical findings in 578
- discussion of 578
- plasma chemical changes in 578
- Alimentary tract 257
- congenital anomalies of 631
- in infants 635
- innervation of 611
- patency of Farix test for 633
- Alimentation, intravenous 100 102
- biquil, tube for 100
- therapeutic gastrostomy for 101
- intravenous, 102
- jejunostomy for 101
- materials for 99
- oral administration 99
- routes for 99
- Alkali reserve in regulation of blood pH 38
- Alkalinity expressed as pH 38
- Alkalosis
- in potassium deficiency 65
- mechanism of acid urine in presence of 65
- mixed water and salt loss in in fluid imbalance 69
- produced by pyloric obstruction with vomiting management of 70
- respiratory 68
- Alkaptonuria 206
- role of enzymes in 208
- Alkylating agents use in cancer therapy 185
- Allergic edema, mechanism of formation 60
- Alpha rays, 189
- Alveolar air concentration of anesthetic agent in
- variation in at different periods of anesthesia, 513
- Alveolar membrane interference with transport of anesthetic agent across effects of 513
- Alveoli, poorly ventilated effect on carbon dioxide content of blood 487
- Ambulation early effect on wound healing 113
- Ameboid motility of in cancer 176
- Amino acid(s)
- content, relation to food value of protein 94
- genetic message transmitted by chromosomes in certain arrangements of 104
- isolated, found in thyroid gland structural formulas of 536
- labeled, following path of 90
- role in construction of protein, 87
- various whole proteins in nutrition 94
- Aminopyrine measurement of in body fluids, 29
- use in measurement of body water 28
- Ammonia intoxication from in man facts about, 223
- production of by kidney 46
- Ammonium chloride efficacy as acidifying compound 39
- Amylase level of serum *See also* Serum amylase level
- normal range 236
- Anabolic phase spontaneous of convalescence 25
- Analgesic anesthetic stage signs of 514 515
- in general anesthesia, 514
- Anastomoses growth of 121
- vascular effects of various methods, 121
- growth of 121
- suturing, 122
- Androgens effect on size of breasts 503
- in etiology of cancer 171
- increased secretion of adrenogenital syndrome due to 571
- therapeutic use of effect on body fluid metabolism 43
- in treatment of cancer of breast 183
- Anemia(s)
- causes of cancer of rectum 180
- carcinoma of right colon 340
- infectious, mechanism of 134
- congenital hemolytic characteristics of 284
- gallstones in 284
- reticulocyte count increased in 284
- spleen usually enlarged in 284
- splenectomy in 284
- following insertion of Hufnagel valve 302
- gastrostomy following 322
- in acute renal failure 80
- in cancer patients, 180
- mechanism of production 180
- in esophageal hiatal hernia 298
- in extensive burns 163
- in starvation 64
- nitrous oxide contraindicated in presence of 520
- nutritional 85
- splenic 285
- transfusions in case of effects on blood volume 359
- Anencephalic children appetite in 92
- Anesthesia
- agents commonly used in 519
- variation in concentration in alveolar air at different periods of anesthesia 513
- anoxia in 523
- aspiration of gastric contents into lungs during, 523
- blood pressure fall during 522
- cardiac arrest due to type of anesthetic conduct causing, case study 527
- cardiac arrest during 525
- cause and management of 527

Anesthesia—continued

- management of, 528
- hazard in, 528
- circulatory disturbances in, 523
- complications of, 523
- deep, dangers in, 518
- due to effect of cold on nerve supply, 419
- effects on metabolism in infants, 636
- general, analgesic stage in, 514
 - physical signs of, 515
- delirium stage in, 514
 - physical signs, 515
- depth of, physical signs of, 515
- eyelid reflex in, 516
- in infants, problems with, 637
- laryngospasm in, 517
- physical signs of, 514, 515
 - of various anesthetic agents, 516
- planes of, 514
 - signs, 514
- pulmonary compliance reduction after, 10
- reflex apnea in, 517
- reflex swallowing in, 516
- reflexes of importance in, 516
- respiratory paralysis stage in, 514
- skin reflexes in, 518
- stages of, 514
 - signs, 514
- surgical anesthesia stage in, 514
 - physical signs of, 515
 - planes in, characteristics of, 515
- swallowing reflex in, 516
- traction reflexes in, 517
- vago-vagal reflex in, 517
- vomiting in, 516
 - hyperpyrexia during, 371
- hypertension during, 525
- hypoxia in, 523, 524
- in infants, body temperature during, 637
 - metabolic effects of, 637
 - problems occurring with, 637
- in management of wound separation, 116
- inflation of lungs during, comparison of mechanical and "usual" methods of, 525
- inhalation, 512
 - agents commonly used in, 519
 - variation in speed of action, 514
 - aspiration during, 514
 - broad principles of, 512
 - control of respiration during, 518
 - depot tissue storage effect of, 513
 - efficiency of, factors governing, 513
 - gas machine for, 518
 - hazards during, 514
 - ideal transport in, 513
 - influence of pulmonary circulation efficiency on, 514
 - influence of systemic circulation efficiency on, 514

Anesthesia—continued

- use of cyclopropane in, 519
 - use of ethyl ether in, 519
 - use of nitrous oxide in, 519
 - intravenous, agents used in, 520
 - use of pentothal sodium in, 520
 - local, in poor risk patient, 5
 - reactions to, 530
 - use on breast, 592
 - metabolic response to, 11
 - physiology of, 512
 - preanesthetic medication, 512
 - respiratory difficulties in, 523
 - respiratory function as related to, 512
 - safe conduct of, important factors in, 513
 - shock during operation due to, 360
 - spinal, agents used for, 522
 - blood pressure, fall in, 522
 - management of, 522
 - complications in, 522
 - effects on intestinal motility, 324
 - hyperbaric solutions used in, 522
 - hypobaric solutions used in, 522
 - nausea in, 523
 - neurologic sequelae, 523
 - Nupercaine in, 522
 - Pontocaine in, 522
 - procaine in, 522
 - technics of administering, 522
 - vomiting in, 523
 - stage of, determination of, value of eye sign in, 516
 - surgical, planes of, signs indicative of, 515
 - stage of, in general anesthesia, 514
 - use of, in intestinal obstruction operations, 334
 - ventricular fibrillation during, 525
 - management of, 529
- Aneurysm(s)**
- abdominal, ruptured, 440
 - arterial *See* Arterial aneurysms
 - dissecting, 442
 - case study of, 442
 - etiology of, 442
 - ischemia due to, 443
 - mortality rate in, 444
 - pathogenesis of, 442
 - false *See* Hematoma, pulsating
 - mycotic, due to infection, 441
 - of aorta, untreated, prognosis of, 444
- Angiocardiograms, in tetralogy of Fallot, 401**
- Angiocardiography, definition of, 393**
- Angiography, coarctation of aorta demonstrated by, 398**
- definition of, 393
 - effectiveness in venous and arterial disease, 416
 - hazards in, 416
 - in peripherovascular disease, 415
 - venous, use to diagnose obstruction of veins, 452
- Angioneurotic edema, 60**

- anions, total, equal to total cations, 37
- anomalies, congenital
- artificial production of 620
 - epidemiology of 630
 - experimental studies in, 620
 - historical notes on, 620
 - of surgical importance 631
 - pathogenesis of 629
 - prevention of 630
 - measures for 631
 - representative 631
- role of intrauterine stress in formation of 630
- teratogenic factors involved in 630
- anorexia, in appendicitis, 311
- in malnutrition 80
- anoxemia, carbon dioxide content of blood in 480
- effect on respiratory center 471
- anoxia during pregnancy effects on fetus, 630
- effect on respiratory center 471
- hepatic irreversible shock due to 9
- in anesthesia 523
- causes of 523
 - of tissue prevention of 350
 - progressive, effects in 526
- antacids, use in management of peptic ulcer 300
- antagonism antibiotic incidence of 136
- antibacterial defenses, effect of pH upon 129
- of body 131
- Antibiotic therapy fungus infections of mouth following 127
- micrococcal pseudomembranous enterocolitis as complication of 141
- reasons for failure of 142
- synergism, nature of 136
- antibiotics, antagonism of incidence 136
- bacterial mutations due to use of 137
 - bactericidal properties of 136
 - bacteriostatic properties of 136
 - biologic principles, general 136
 - combinations of value in certain infections, 136
 - commonly used 138
 - cross-resistance among, 138
 - effect on bacterial flora of urinary tract, 137
 - ineffectiveness in certain situations, 137
 - resistance to among strains of staphylococci 126
 - development during hospitalization 138
 - development during therapy with 137
 - in hospital populations 138
 - nature and development of 137
 - selection for therapeutic use 142
 - use of, in clinical infections, 138
 - in diabetic acidosis, 500
 - in fungous diseases, 146
 - in management of intestinal obstruction 334
 - in potassium intoxication 79
- anticholinergic drugs, in pancreatitis, 262
- anticoagulants, 276
- use in management of thrombophlebitis, 457
- Antidiuretic hormone role in body fluid metabolism 42
- secretion of in hepatic edema, 59
- in trauma III
- water intoxication and 52
- Antihemophilic globulin 275
- Antiperistalsis, of small intestine 323
- Antithyroid drugs 541
- effects of 536
 - in hyperthyroidism mechanisms of 540
 - use in management of hyperthyroidism 544
- anus, congenital anomalies of 631
- aorta, and pulmonary artery transposition of
- general discussion of problem 410
 - life expectancy without surgery 410
 - surgical correction 410
- aneurysm of dissecting 442, 443
- etiologic factors, 442
 - untreated prognosis of 444
- coarctation of angiography used to demonstrate 308
- cause of death in, 308
 - diagnosis 308
 - hazard of cross-clamping, 308
 - hypertension in, decline of 399
 - etiology of 396
 - mechanical factors in 307
 - paradoxical following resection of 399
 - renal factors in 307
- patent ductus arteriosus associated with 306
- pathology 306
- prognosis without operation 398
- resection of postoperative course following, 309
- technics of anastomosis following, 309
 - use of homografts in 306
- surgical correction, 308
- sutures used in interrupted, importance in children 399
- types, classification of 396
- growth of following resection in children, 399
- occlusion of clinical findings in 432
- diagnosis, 433
 - hazards of 432
 - management of 433
 - nature of 411
 - surgery for prognosis of 435
 - use of thromboendarterectomy in 435
- occlusive disease of selection of cases for surgery in 435
- proximal cross-clamping of hazards, 441
- heart failure due to cross-clamping of 441
- resection of in occlusion, 434
- thoracic cross-clamping of 441
- Aortic arch chemoreceptors, effect on respiration, 470
- pressure receptors effect on respiration 470

Aortic arch—*continued*

- respiratory reflexes elicited from, 470
- types of receptors in, 470

Aortic insufficiency, clinical findings in, 391

- Hufnagel valve for, 391
- operations for, 391
- pathologic lesions in, 391
- pathophysiology of, 391

Aortic obstruction, terminal, 432

Aortic-pulmonary septal defect, 395

- hazards of cross-clamping in, 396
- nature of, 395
- similarity to patent ductus arteriosus, 395
- use of hypothermia in, 396

Aortic resection, delayed foot pulses following, 435

- for occlusive disease, 434
- ischemia of extremity following, 435

Aortic stenosis, coronary filling impaired in, 390

- etiology of, 390
- left ventricular failure and atrial fibrillation grave signs in, 390
- pathophysiology of, 390
- surgical correction of, 390
 - results of, 390
 - technics of, 390

Aortic valvulotomy, results of, 390

Aortorrhaphy, lateral, 441

Apnea, reflex, in anesthesia, 517

Appendicitis, anorexia in, 341

- clinical findings in, 341
- diagnosis of, difficulty in infants and the elderly, 341
- etiology of, 341
- management of, 341
- multiple attacks of, 341
- systemic reaction to, 341

Appendix, disease of, location of pain in, 618

- rupture of, complications, 341
 - management of, 341
 - peritonitis due to, bacterial flora of, 341
 - with extensive peritonitis, conservative management indicated in, 341

Appetite, 91

- bulk *versus* caloric content in satisfying, 91
- conditioning affecting, 92
- effect of gastrectomy on, 92
- food by gastric fistula *versus* food by mouth, in satisfaction of, 91
- gastric hunger contractions in, 92
- in anencephalic children, 92
- locus of, 91
- role of hypothalamus in, 92

Areolar connective tissue, physiology of, 104

Arm, gunshot wound of, 111

- lymphedema of, treatment, 60

Arrhythmias, cardiac, 374

Arterial supply, role in wound healing, 111

Arterialization, in arteriovenous fistula, 448

Arteries, anastomosis of, 445

Arteries—*continued*

- following traumatic division, case study of, 445

Arteries, oxygen content *See* Oxygen content, arterial

- post-stenotic dilatation, pathogenesis of, 439
- pulsations of, palpation, diagnostic importance of, 414

- tone, factors regulating, 356

Arteries—disorders of

- aneurysms, 439
 - dissecting, 442
 - due to congenital defect, 441
 - etiologic factors, 439
 - fusiform, 441
 - of circle of Willis, 441
 - post-stenotic dilatation, pathogenesis of, 439
 - saccular, 441
 - types of, 441
- defects of, bridging, plastic materials used for, 121
- division of, anastomosis, case study of, 445
 - association with nerve injuries, 446
- embolism, arrest of, at bifurcations, 436
 - case study of, 436
 - need for early operation in, 437
 - source of, 436
- gunshot injuries of, 445
- inflammatory disease of, 431
- injuries, traumatic, arteriovenous fistula due to, 447

- causalgia due to, 451

- false aneurysm due to, 446

- pulsating hematoma due to, 446

occlusion, sudden, 436

- diagnosis of, 437

- level of, diagnosis, 438

- acute, of lower extremity, management of, 439

- arteriogram of, 438

- arteriospasm simulating, 438

- due to embolus, 436

- due to thrombus, 436

- mesenteric, 437

- of lower extremity, 436

spiders, blood flow in, 415

- nature of, 415

- pulsation in, 415

trauma, due to injuries, 444

- types of, 444

- with loss of vessel integrity, 445

Arteriolar concept, of effect of bronchomotor tone on pulmonary circulation, 496

Arterioles, role in vascular diseases, 422

Arteriosclerosis, clinical findings in, 432

- definition of 431

- obliterans, 431

- symptoms of, determining factors in, 432

- treatment of, general summary, 435

Arteriospasm due to phlebitis 433
 following arterial surgery 435
 nerve block in treatment of 439
 secondary to venous disease 438
 stimulating arterial occlusion 438
 threatening gangrene 438
 Arteriotomy to control blood pressure 363
 Arteriovenous fistula 447
 arterialization in 448
 cardiac derangements in 449
 complications of 449
 development of collateral circulation in 449
 femoral 448
 following knife wounds or gunshot injury 447
 management of 449
 surgery in 449
 technic 450
 patent ductus arteriosus, 448
 prognosis in 449
 pulmonary 448
 representative 448
 signs of 447
 skin temperature in, 448
 symptoms of 447
 trauma as cause of 447
 types of in extremities, 445
 Arteriovenous shunts, functional 483
 pulmonary 498
 Arteritis, temporal 431
 Artificial respiration 475
 methods of 475
 push-pull method 475
 Schafer prone method of 475
 versus push-pull methods 475
 Strekker method, 476
 Ascaris, causes of 237
 hormonal factors in, 237
 portacaval shunt in treatment of 238
 treatment of 237
 Asphyxia, in tetanus infection, 147
 Aspiration during anesthesia protection against, 514
 during inhalation anesthesia 514
 Asthma, bronchial role of bronchospasm in, 497
 lung function tests in 491
 role of emotions in 604
 Atelectasis, pathogenesis of 472
 postoperative pathogenesis of diminished respiratory excursion causing 474
 pulmonary following operations, 10
 Atheromatous, in thrombosis of mesenteric artery 338
 Atherosclerosis, aging and 218
 arterial, segmental nature of 413
 blood lipid levels in etiology of 432
 clinical findings in, 432
 factors affecting, 431
 incidence of effect of diet on 218
 major factor in abdominal defects, 440

Atherosclerosis—continued
 of coronary arteries development of 381
 distribution of 381
 in women prior to menopause relative absence of 381
 incidence in different countries 381
 role of diet in producing, 381
 Atmospheric gas composition of 481
 Atrial septal defects, 404
 cyanotic left to right shunt, 404
 cardiac catheterization in 406
 clinical findings in 406
 closure under direct vision using hypothermia, 408
 diagnosis of 405
 differential diagnosis of 406
 differentiation from high ventricular septal defect 406
 pathophysiology of 405
 surgical correction of 406
 Atropine use to reduce saliva flow 287
 Aureomycin administration of 140
 antibacterial spectrum 140
 dosage 140
 properties of 140
 uses of 140
 Atriculo-ventricular node anatomie location of 374
 heart block following injury to 374
 Auscultation in peripheral vascular disease, 415
 Autografts, failure to "take" in thermal burn management 165
 reasons for 165
 Autonomic dysfunction (familial discussion of 600)
 Autonomic nerves, conduction of impulses by anatomy of 611
 functional components of 611
 Autonomic nervous system *See* Nervous system, autonomic
 Axillary vein "effort thrombosis" of 462
 Isotemia immune response impairment in 135
 in abdominal aneurysm 63
 positive blood cultures in, 135

B

Bacitracin properties of 142
 uses of 142
 Back pain in due to peptic ulcer 307
 Bacteremia, shock due to 5
 without disease 127
 Bacteria *See also* Microorganisms
 antibiotic resistance of nature and development of 137
 biochemical environment of influence on virulence 129
 clearance of from blood stream rates of 128
 from tissues, normal mechanisms for 127

Bacteria—continued

- defenses against, in body, 131
- effect on pH of phagocytes, 128
- growth of, effect of metabolic changes on, 129
- inflammatory response against, factors producing, 130
- injection of, bacterial disease from, relation of size of dose to incidence, 128
- intracellular defenses against, 128
- lysogenic, 127
- more virulent in infants and children, 135
- mutations of, due to use of antibiotics, 137
- toxin production of, effect of chemical environment on, 130
- use in cellular metabolism studies, 90

Bacterial

- disease, distinguished from bacterial infection, 125
- from bacterial injection, relation of size of dose to incidence, 128
- flora, normal, 125
- of urinary tract, alteration during antibiotic therapy, 137
- infections, as distinguished from bacterial disease, 125
- major problem in burn patients, 164
- morbidity due to, 126
- products of, 131
- invasion, factors influencing, 130
 - blood flow, 130
 - ionic content of body fluids, 130
 - oxygen concentration, 130
- fibrin barrier against, 130
- nature of, 128
- toxicity, forms of, 131
- Bactericides, intracellular acidity, 129
- intracellular enzymes, 130
- lysozyme of leukocytes, 130

Bacteriophage activation by radiation, 127

- nature of, 127
- occurrence of, 127
- use in typing staphylococci, 127

*Bainbridge reflex, effect of heart rate on, 375**Balance study, in evaluation of nutritional processes, 89**Ballistocardiograph, use in measuring cardiac output, 351*

- use in myocardial disease, 352

*Banti's syndrome, 285**Banthine, use in management of peptic ulcer, 309*

- long-term use disappointing, 310
- side effects of, 309

- use to reduce saliva flow, 287

*Barbiturates, use in preanesthetic medication, 512**Basal metabolism rate, effect of aging on, 218 in nephrosis, 58**Basal metabolism rate—continued*

- measurement of, machine for, 367
- unreliability of, 541
- use in diagnosis and management of hyperthyroidism, 541

Base, available See Alkali reserve

- conservation by kidney, 46
- fixed, renal conservation of, 46

*Basophil adenomas, of pituitary, 533**Bed rest, effect on blood volume, 353*

- effect on calcium balance, 353

*Bed sores, in malnutrition, 85**Belladonna, use in management of peptic ulcer, 309**Benzodioxane, use in diagnosis of pheochromocytoma, 583**Beta rays, 190**Beta-cell tumors, of pancreas, 267**Bicarbonate-carbonic acid system, in regulation of blood pH, 38**Bile, absorption from peritoneal cavity, jaundice due to, 235*

- cholesterol, 222

- constituents of, 222

- daily volume lost, 49

- duct, common, drainage of, in pancreatitis, 265

- obstructions of, 246

- causes of, 246

- differentiation from jaundice, 246

- pressure in, in obstruction, 229

- stricture of, 248

- jaundice in, 248

- following injury, success of, 248

- repair of, following injury, success of, 248

- flow of, in acute pancreatitis, 259

- formation of, by liver, 221

- passages, lesions of, 246

- peritonitis, 235

- pigments of, 222

- circulation of, in complete extrahepatic obstruction, 231

- in hepatocellular degeneration, 232

- in hemolytic jaundice, 233

- normal, 224

- properties of, 222

- reaction, 222

- salts in, 222

- functions of, 222

- volume of, 222

- white, nature of, 246

- origin of, 246

Biliary ductal disorders, 229

- obstruction of, 229

- parenchymal changes in, 229

*Biliary dyskinesia, 247**Biliary fistula, external, causes of, 74*

- fluid losses in, 74, 331

- low salt syndrome in, 74

- biliary tract 241
 obstruction of 632
 bilirubin, conjugation to glucuronide by liver cells, 225
 Bilroth I versus Billroth II 316
 comparison of nutritional disturbances following, 317
 incidence of "dumping" in 317
 mortality following, 316
 recurrence of ulcer in following, 317
 simplicity of operative procedure 316
 weight changes following 318
 Bilroth operations, after post-gastric resection to maintain weight, 99
 for gastric resection, 316
 biochemistry role of enzymes in 206
 biologic predeterminism as factor in cancer management and prognosis 181
 birth, blood pressure changes at 633
 hemodynamic change in fetal circulation occurring at 633
 bladder care of in acute head injuries 624
 compression of immediate vs gradual 643
 in chronic urinary retention 643
 disease of location of pain in 618
 injury of 641
 diagnosis, 641
 urinary clots in streptokinase-streptodornase in treatment of 213
 block anastomosis, 408
 Block Taussig procedure for correction of tetralogy of Fallot, 402
 Bleeding. *See also* Hemorrhage
 from ear or nose in acute head injuries 624
 gastric versus duodenal comparison of mortality rates, 311
 in hiatal hernia 298
 internal in chest injuries, 6
 intestinal, significance of 330
 postoperative complicating induced hypothermia, 372
 management of 277
 pulmonary severe 610
 time, prolonged mechanism and pathogenesis of 278
 blister formation, due to cold injury 418
 Blood, anticoagulants in 276
 arterial, normal oxygen content, 485
 normal pH of 485
 aspiration of benefit in acute pericardial tamponade 378
 buffers, 38, 39
 phosphate system 39
 plasma proteins, 39
 red blood cells, 30
 carbon dioxide in *See also* Carbon dioxide
 arterial
 concentration of regulation of 40
 normal values, 482
 Blood—continued
 cells red buffers of 30
 chemistry in burn patients, 161
 clots, retraction of causes, 276
 poor mechanism and pathogenesis of 278
 responsibility of platelets for 275
 clotting and pancreatic function possible relationships of 257
 factors of physical and chemical properties of 275
 in tumors of pancreas, 258
 normal physiology of 271
 normal time of 277
 prolonged causes of 276
 coagulation of *See also* Blood clotting
 a scheme of 275
 blood factor deficiencies, effect on, 277
 causes of alterations in various measures of 278
 classic factors in 275
 defects of 274
 causes of 276
 diagnosis of 276
 identification of steps in 276
 in surgical patients, 276
 treatment of 276
 when whole blood clotting time is almost normal identification tests for 279
 effect of hypothermia on 373
 factors in 274
 mechanism of 274
 natural inhibitors of 276
 outline of 274
 role of fibrinolysis in 276
 time for prolonged mechanism and pathogenesis of 278
 cultures, interpretation of 134
 positive after ACTH and cortisone therapy 134
 after drainage of abscesses, 134
 after tooth extractions, 134
 effect of pH of small bowel on, 134
 effect of temperature changes on, 134
 following whole body irradiation 134
 in diabetes, 135
 in infants and children, special considerations of 135
 in upper respiratory infections, 134
 incidence of 134
 interpretation of 134
 problems of 135
 significance in clinical practice, 135
 dyscrasias, bone marrow studies essential in, 282
 red cell fragility variations in 284
 effect on color of skin, 412
 effect of splenectomy on 280
 factors of deficiencies effect on blood coagulation, 277

Blood—*continued*

- Factor V, properties of, 275
- Factor VII, deficiency of, treatment, 277
 - properties of, 275
- flow, effect of cold on, 419
 - effect on bacterial invasion, 130
 - hepatic, 222
 - increased, in a part of the body, diagnostic significance of, 414
 - interplay of pulmonary ventilation and, 482
 - of liver, gastroduodenal hemorrhage and, 310
 - in cirrhosis, 236
 - normal, 235
- protective influence against external cold, 419
- groups, ABO system, 270
 - fundamentals concerning, 270
 - MN groups, 270
 - Rh system, 270
- in urine *See* Hematuria
- inadequate transport of oxygen by, hypoxia due to, 524
- intrapleural collections of, use of streptokinase and streptodornase in treatment of, 212
- labile factor, properties of, 275
- lipid levels, in etiology of atherosclerosis, 432
- loss of, around fractures, 3
 - at common operations, 357
 - best replacement for, 362
 - during operation, causing shock, 360
 - estimation of, by posture changes, 360
 - in strangulated intestinal obstruction, 329
 - value of blood volume determination in estimating, 360
- oxygen content *See also* Oxygen, arterial
 - normal values, 482
- oxygenation of, importance in efficient lung functioning, 482
- pepsin levels, 304
- pepsinogen, 304
- pH of, as a respirator stimulus, *versus* carbon dioxide tension, 471
 - normal values, 482
 - maintenance of, 38
 - regulation of, 37
 - alkali reserve in, 38
 - bicarbonate-carbonic acid system in, 38
 - pulmonary function in, 40
 - respiratory compensation in regulation of, 39
- plasma *See also* Plasma water
 - acid-base composition, 33
 - as tissue culture medium, 117
 - electrolyte composition of, 75
 - ionic composition, 33
 - levels, elevation of, as evidence of dehydration, 530
- platelets, responsible for clot retraction, 275
- transfusions of, 279

Blood—*continued*

- pressure, and urine flow rate, relationship after thermal burn, 156
- arterial, best indication of shock, 356
- as guide to circulatory status, 8
- changes in, at birth, 633
 - in increased intracranial pressure, 622
- controlled *See* Hypotension, controlled
- diastolic, in pulmonary artery, 495
- effect of starvation on, 84
- fall of, during anesthesia, 523
 - in mismatched blood transfusions, 272
 - in spinal anesthesia, 522
 - management of, 522
 - mechanism of, 522
- in infants, 635
- in pulmonary artery, 495
- in salt and in water depletion, 51
- levels, in starvation, 97
- maintenance of, basic factors in, 347
 - cardiac output in, 347
 - role of blood volume in, 352
 - role of peripheral resistance in, 354
- regulation of, role of carotid sinuses in, 355
- response to norepinephrine, 363
- response to thermal burns, 155
- systolic, in pulmonary artery, 495
- venous, measurement of, 452
- proconvertin-convertin, properties of, 275
- sludging of, in cold injury, 420
 - invasion by microorganisms, 126
- sugar level, in stress, 13
 - regulation of, 18
 - relation to consciousness, 588
- supply, of pancreas, 250
 - to bronchi, 479
 - to lungs, 479
- thromboplastin factors, properties of, 275
- transfusion, carelessness in, 272
 - coagulation defects, 272
 - complications of, 271
 - excessive, pulmonary edema due to, 349
 - fever complicating, 271
 - in diabetic acidosis, 590
 - in pancreatitis, 262
 - massive, 272
 - of mismatched blood, clinical findings in, 272
 - management, 273
 - reactions due to, 272
 - of platelets, 279
 - overtransfusion, 272
 - precautions in, 271
 - problems of, 270
 - reactions to, 271
 - due to incompatible blood, 272
 - type O blood, restriction of use of, 273
 - unnecessary, hazards of, 273

Blood—*continued*

type O restriction of use of in transfusions, 273

venous, oxygenation of 482

vessels, grafting in anastomoses 121

arterial homografts, 121

autogenous, 121

early studies on 120

heterogenous grafts 121

homologous, 121

plastic materials used in 121

types of 120

phasing of as protection against frostbite injury 419

in contraction during chilling 410

volume of average normal values, 32

changes in effect on cardiac output 310

in burn patients, 160

in parts of body significance of 410

in starvation, 84

decrease in following thermal burn 166

effect of immobilization in bed on 353

effect of physical training on 353

effect of pregnancy on 351

in anemic patients effect of transfusions on 350

in infants, 635

measurement of 352

blue dye method 352

limitations in acute hemorrhage 300

methods, 352

normal values of 353

physiologic variations in, 353

probable loss in adult in persistent shock 360

relation of age to 353

relation of sex to 353

relation to body weight, 353

in the very obese 353

relation to height, 353

relation to surface area 353

relation to total body water 353

seasonal variations, 354

significance in surgical practice 352

total, calculation of 32

variations in hematocrit levels and 352

Blue dye method for measurement of blood volume 352

for measurement of cardiac output, 350

BMR machine, 367

Body

composition of changes in, types of 35

measuring, methods of 28

of normal male 31

whole tissue loss, 25

constituents, 28

dynamic state of 18

solids, 28

Body—*continued*

water 28

fluid(s) *See also* Body water

acid-base regulation of 35

acid-base status of 68

clinical losses of 40

compartment changes in burn patients, 160

compartments, 29

in stress, 15

maintenance of volume and composition of

role of kidney in 45

extracellular *versus* intracellular 28

imbalance states of 40

classification of 40

insensible loss of 40

in burn patients 160 161

in thermal burns 158

intracellular ionic composition of 33

isotonicity of 33

Darrow Yarnet concept of 33

loss into leg 56

metabolism antagonism among cortical steroids in 45

effects of aldosterone on 578

effect of androgen therapy on, 43

effect of diabetic acidosis on 43

effects of insulin on 43

hormonal factors in, 41

role of adrenal corticoid steroids in 42

role of aldosterone in 41

role of antidiuretic hormone in, 42

role of pituitary in 42

role of thyroxine in 42

plasma water of 32

replacement orderly procedure in 71

retention in therapy 43

shifts, in thermal burns, 158

total blood volume in, 32

functions, subconscious influences on 602

mass, lean 28

plasma pH of 47

solids, 34

fat free 35

measuring methods of 28

organic 35

temperature gradients in different parts of body 366

in infants, during anesthesia 637

range of extremes endurable 368

in normal persons, 368

regulation of 365

balance between heat production and heat

loss 365

by hypothalamus, 365

by shivering, 365

by sweating, 366

chemical regulation 367

fever in 368 *See also* Fever

Body—*continued*

- heat dissipation, 366
- heating unit, 365
- high and low limits, 368, 369
- in premature infants, 635
- mechanism of acclimatization, 368
- nervous system relationship to, 366
- neural mechanisms in, 366
- normal physiology of, 365
- role of hypothalamus in, 608
- the conduction system, 365
- warmth, protection against cold injury in exposed extremities by, 419
- water *See also* Body fluids, Water
 - and body size, relationships, 30
 - circulation of, nomenclature, 32
 - compartments containing, 30
 - extracellular, 31
 - intracellular, 30
 - maintenance of volumes of, 32
- content, consistency of, 49
- depletion of mixed salt and, clinical findings in, 51
- depletion, pure, 49
- excess, 52
 - absolute, 52
 - correction of, 52
 - in starvation, 83
- extracellular, chloride in, 32
 - measurement of, 31
 - percentage of total body water, 31
 - sodium in, 32
- gain, 35
- in cardiac decompensation, 30
- in dehydrated individuals, 29
- in disease states, 29
- interstitial, measurement of, 32
- intracellular ions of, 34
 - measurement of, 31
 - percentage of total body water, 31
- loss, 35
 - clinical signs of, 31
 - from various routes, 49
 - uncompensated, effects of, 49
- measuring, dilution method of, 28
 - principle of, 31
 - methods of, 28
- metabolism, role of adrenal cortex in, 43
- shift between compartments, 49
- total, in lean individuals, 29
 - in obese individuals, 29
- weight, changes during burn therapy, 159
 - in burn patients, 160
 - curve, in convalescence, 26
 - drug dosage and, 29
 - effect of thoracoplasty on, 20

Body—*continued*

- postoperative gain, edema as cause of, 54
- relation of blood volume to, 353
- Bone
 - grafts, autogenous, fate of, 122
 - homologous, fate of, 122
 - marrow, iliac, in hypersplenism, 283
 - in idiopathic purpura, 282
 - studies of, in diagnosis of hypersplenism, 282
 - essential in blood dyscrasias, 282
 - overgrowth of, in arteriovenous fistula, 415
 - transplanting, 119
 - wound, healing of, 110
- Bowel *See also* Intestine
 - disease of, location of pain in, 618
 - electrolyte content at various levels, 72
 - fluid sequestered in, effect on body weight of, 73
 - injury to, seriousness of, at various points, 7
 - large *See* Intestine, large
 - lengthening of, in intestinal obstruction, 328
 - perforations, closure of, 7
 - shock caused by, 133
 - radiation injury of, 199
 - sequestration of large volumes of fluid in, in
 - intestinal obstruction, 329
 - small *See also* Intestine, small
 - fistula in, 73
 - aspiration, 73
 - balanced fluid loss in, 73
 - fluid losses in, 73
 - jejunostomy in, 74
 - management of, 73
 - use of Miller-Abbott tube in, 74
 - herniation of, following gastric resection, 320
 - obstruction of, balanced salt loss in, 72
 - fluid loss in, 49, 72
 - fluid sequestration in lumen in, 72
 - vomiting in, 72
 - pH of, positive blood cultures after, 134
 - wall of, changes in, detection of, 329
 - in low small bowel obstruction, 329
 - separation from meconium of, 267
- Brain, fat embolism to, in traumatic injuries, 5
 - lesions of, in salt excess, 54
 - tumors of, localization, use of radioactive phosphorus in, 204
- Breast
 - cancer of, age at onset, role of heredity in, 169
 - effect of hypophysectomy on, 533
 - etiology of, role of heredity in, 169
 - factors involved in development of, 168
 - hematogenous, spread of, 591
 - hereditary aspects of, 168
 - hormonal therapy in, 182
 - incidence, role of heredity in, 169
 - pain in, testosterone propionate to relieve, 183
 - role of milk agent in etiology of, 168
 - surgery on, 590

Breast—continued

- terminal malignancy ACTH in treatment of 184
 - cortisone in treatment of 184
 - treatment of androgens in 183
 - bilateral adrenalectomy in 183
 - castration in 183
 - estrogen in 183
 - testosterone propionate in 183
 - development of endocrine factors in 503
 - following adrenogenital syndrome 501
 - during lactation 593
 - during pregnancy 593
 - effect of androgens on size of 505
 - estrogenic influences on 501
 - functional anatomy of 500
 - functioning of endocrine factors in 503
 - hormonal influences on, 501
 - introductal papilloma of surgery for 501
 - lymphatic drainage of 501
 - physiologic considerations in surgery 500
 - surgery on in cancer 501
 - in introductal papilloma 501
 - transient enlargement in boy 502
 - virginal hypertrophy of 502 501
- Breathing, maximum capacity as index of lung function, 488**
- reserve 492
 - as index of lung function 492
 - definition of 492
 - normal value 492
- Brock valvulotomy 408**
- Bromsulphalein test in liver function tests, 225**
- unreliable in presence of jaundice 225
- Bronchi blood supply to 479**
- enlargement on inspiration 472
 - of pulmonary segments, 477
- Bronchiectasis, etiology of 506**
- Broncholar tone arteriolar tone school 497**
- concept, value of 497
 - penalty school 497
 - role in prevention of development of pulmonary edema, 497
- Bronchomotor tone, direct central control of 498**
- role in regulation of pulmonary circulation, 496
- Bronchospasm, effect on pulmonary circulation, 497**
- role in bronchial asthma, 497
- Bronchopneumetry definition of 480**
- diagnostic value of 491
 - difficulty of 491
- Bruit, systolic, due to partial arterial occlusion, 433**
- Buerger's disease See Thromboangitis obliterans**
- Buffers, blood, 38**
- Bullet wounds. See also Gunshot wounds**
- causalgia due to 445
 - of abdomen, 6
- Burns, acidosis in, 161**

Burns—continued

- management of 163
- adrenal medullary response to 155
- adrenocortical secretion in, 151
- anemia in 158 163
- autografts' failure to "take" in 165
- bacterial infection a problem in, 161
- blood chemistry after 161
- blood pressure response to 155
- blood volume changes in 160
- blood volume decrease following, 156
- body fluid compartment changes in 160
- body water changes after 160
- capillary permeability changes from 157
- cardiac output response to 157
- cardiovascular responses to 155
- changes in cardiac output after 162
- chronic inanition due to 165
- complications of 161
- Curling's ulcer in, 165
- edema in 54
- effect of ambient temperature upon temperature of patients with 161
- effect on gastrointestinal tract, 157
- electrical 152
 - delayed realization of injury extent in, 162
 - extensive tissue injury in 162
- emotional aspects of 165
- first degree 162
- flame 152
- flash 151
- fluid shifts in, 158
- hematocrit changes in 160
- hypertensive response to 9
- infections complicating, 161
- injury due to depth of 152
 - difficulty of assessment of 163
 - extent of relationship to mortality 154
 - full thickness, appearance of 153
 - magnitude of 162
 - prognosis of factors in 163
 - relationships between extent of burn, age and mortality in, 161
 - surface area estimating 163
- insensible fluid loss in 160 161
- malnutrition in 158
- metabolic compensation in, 161
- mortality in 163
- neuroendocrine response to 154
- nitrogen excretion following, 165
- pathophysiology of 161
- plasma chemistry value changes in, 161
- plasma sodium changes in, 160
- plasma volume changes in 160
- pseudomembranous enterocolitis following, 144
- pulmonary changes in, 157

Burns—continued

- relationship between blood pressure and rate of urine flow after, 156
 - renal function changes in, 162
 - salt metabolism changes in, 162
 - scald, 151
 - second degree, 152
 - sedation in, 163
 - shock stage in, 158
 - skin grafting in, 164
 - slough removal in, 164
 - sodium changes in, 158
 - stages of, 158
 - systemic response in, 154
 - tetanus in, prophylaxis of, 164
 - third degree, 152
 - thermal *See* Burns
 - thyroid activity following, 155
 - toxemic stage in, 158
 - treatment of, body weight changes during, 159
 - Evans' formula for use in, 163
 - exposure method of, 164
 - fluids used in, 162
 - Evans' formula for, 163
 - need for frequent evaluation in, 163
 - open method, 164
 - principles of, 162
 - supportive measures of, 162
 - types of, 151
 - urine volume following, 161, 162
 - visceral responses to, 155
 - water alteration in, 158
 - wounds due to, local management of, 164
- Buttocks, suppurative foci, 126

C

- Cachexia, due to cancer, characteristics of, 179
 - etiology of, 179
- Calcium, cardiac arrest caused by, 376
 - effect on length of myocardial contraction, 376
 - excretion of, following fracture, 15
 - urinary, in hyperparathyroidism, 558
 - normal range of, 558
 - fraction, in serum, notes on, 558
 - gluconate, for hypoparathyroidism, 550
 - importance in blood clotting, 276
 - intravenous, rarely required, 280
 - ions, deficit, 68
 - effects upon heart, 376
 - in potassium intoxication, 79
 - metabolism, effect of parathormone on, 555
 - role of, in clotting mechanism, 274
 - serum level, normal range of, 555
 - parathormone in regulation of, 555
 - reciprocal relationship to that of phosphorus, 555
 - solutions, in management of pancreatitis, 262
 - use in cardiac resuscitation, 376

Calculi, salivary, 288

urinary *See* Urinary calculi

Caloric intake, in treatment of acute renal failure, 78

Calories, excessive intake of, obesity due to, 88

- in diet, chief sources of, 83

of foodstuffs, 95

requirements, 96

Calorimetry, use in studying nutritional processes, 89

Cancer, air-borne spread of, 179

anemia in, 180

mechanism of production, 180

arterial metastases, explanation of, 178

biologic predeterminism in, 181

breast, hereditary aspects of, 168

cachexia due to, 179

etiology of, 179

cell division in, relation to critical colony size, 171

cells, ameboid motility rates, 176

growth of, fundamental considerations of, 172

latency or dormancy of, explanation of, 173

properties and qualities inherited in, 172

characteristics of tumors of, 175

chemical changes in, 180

chemotherapy of, 185

classification of, in relation to radiation treatment, 199

development at site of unusual cell proliferation, 173

development in irradiated areas, 200

due to radiation injury, 194

effects upon liver catalase activity, 180

effects upon patient, 179

etiology of, 168

androgens in, 171

autonomous neoplasms in, 173

co-carcinogens in, 174

conditioned neoplasms in, 173

estrogens in, 169

from single cell, evidence for, 172

fundamental considerations of, 171

hormones in, 169

initiating action in, 174

mechanical trauma in, 172

multiple mutation theory in, 171

mutation process in, 173

nutritional role in, 171

pituitary glands in, 170

promoting action in, 174

role of chronic irritation in, 169

role of heredity in, 168

somatic mutation theory in, 173

thyroid in, 171

TSH in, 171

two-step theory, 173

fever in, case study of, 371

force feeding in, ineffectiveness of, 180

Cancer—continued

- hereditary factors in, 163
- in identical twins, 163
- invasion, local, mechanism of 175
- invasiveness of amoeboid motility in 170
 - nature of 175
 - relation to metastasis, 170
- mutants causing, 160
- mutation as factor in etiology of 160
- local invasion prerequisite to blood-borne metastasis 175
- lymph nodes as mechanical barrier to spread of 179
- metastasis of *See also* Metastasis
 - factors affecting distribution of 178
 - lymphatic 179
 - mechanism of 177
 - relation to invasiveness, 176
- normal cell growth restraints failure to function in, 172
- of breast hormonal therapy of 183
- of cecum anemia associated with 180
- of pancreas 237
- of prostatic fibrinolysis in 200
- pathogenesis of 172
- physiologic considerations in 163
- prostatic hormonal therapy of 181
 - metastases to spine 178
 - serum acid phosphatase level in 200
- recurrence of factors in 179
- regression of spontaneous explanations for 175
- remote effects of 181
- similarity to infection 179
- spread during colon resection 170
 - by veins, 179
 - factors in 179
- thyroid 184
- treatment of
 - duration of symptoms as factor in resectability, 181
 - hormonal, 181
 - major variables, 181
 - physiologic consideration 181
 - unpredictability of individual tumors in, 181
 - use of alkylating agents in, 185
 - weight loss due to 180
- Candida albicans* overgrowth during antibiotic therapy 127
- Capillaries, hydrostatic pressure of 31
 - arterial, 56
 - venous, 56
 - in various tissues, relative permeability 58
 - membrane of water movement across, factors affecting, 56
 - permeability of
 - changes due to thermal burn, 157
 - increase in renal edema, 58
 - tissue fluid movement into factors affecting, 56
- Carbohydrate absorption of following total pan-

Carbohydrate—continued

- digestion of following total pancreatectomy 255
- metabolism of 93
 - adrenal cortical role in 18
 - by liver 220
 - effects of endotoxin on 133
 - effect of shock on 357
 - factors influencing 90
 - hormonal factors of 18
 - in stress, 111
 - role of hypothalamus in 607 608
 - role of potassium in 64
 - nitrogen-sparing role of 19
 - role in dietary metabolism 95
- Carbon dioxide arterial content of conditions di-
- minishing 186
 - effect of poorly ventilated alveoli on, 487
 - importance in classifying states of acid-base imbalance 186
 - importance in pulmonary function 486
 - increase in association with anoxemia 486
 - relation to pulmonary disease 487
- combining power of plasma 38
- concentration in blood regulation of 40
- effect on heart rate and force 375
- expired bedside collection of 80
- removal from blood 482
- role in control of respiration 410
- tension *versus* blood pH as a respiratory stimu-
- lus, 171
- Carcinogenesis *See* Cancer etiology of
- Carcinoma *See also* Cancer
 - etiology of biologic chain reaction 174
 - of gallbladder 216
- Cardiac *See also* Heart
 - arrest anesthetic conduct producing case study of 527
 - cardiac compression in management of 529
 - during anesthesia cause and management, 527
 - management of 523
 - hazards in 523
 - catheterization *See* Heart catheterization of
 - compression, in management of cardiac arrest during anasthesia 529
 - edema, mechanisms of 57
 - output, deranged renal function and 349
 - effect of blood volume changes on 349
 - effect of excessive blood transfusions on 349
 - in burn patients, 162
 - inadequate causes of 347
 - symptoms of 347
 - measurement of 349
 - ballistocardiographic method for 351
 - blue dye method for 350
 - comments on methods for 351
 - direct Fick method for 350
 - role in maintenance of blood pressure 347
 - sphincter function in swallowing 288

- Cardiectomy, in treatment of cardiospasm, 292
- Cardioesophageal sphincter, sacrifice of, peptic esophagitis following, 293
- Cardiopexy, to increase blood supply to myocardium, 382
- Cardioplasty, in treatment of cardiospasm, 292
- Cardiospasm, of esophagus, 291
- Cardiovascular system, aging of, 218
- effects of hypothermia on, 373
- effects of smoking on, 428
- effects of stress on, 603
- response to thermal burns, 155
- Carotid
- bifurcation, chemoreceptors, effect on respiration, 470
- denervation of, in carotid sinus syndrome management, 613
- pressoreceptors of, effect on respiration, 470
- types of receptors in, 470
- sinus syncope, 613
- sinus syndrome, 355, 613
- fainting in, 355
- management of, 355, 613
- nature of, 613
- nervous mediation of, 355
- sinuses, respiratory reflexes elicited from, 470
- Carpopedal spasm, in hypoparathyroidism, 549
- Cartilage, grafts, autogenous, fate of, 122
- homologous, fate of, 122
- Castriation, favorable effects of, on prostatic cancer, 181
- use in treatment of cancer of breast, 183
- Catalase, decrease in liver concentration, in presence of cancer, 180
- Catheter, indwelling, hazards of use of, 642
- use in management of urinary retention, 642
- urinary, technic of passing, 642
- Catheterization, cardiac *See* Heart, catheterization of
- Cations, total, equal to total anions, 37
- Cattle, resistance of, to human tuberculosis bacterium, 128
- Causalgia, a "neurologic" vascular pain, 411
- association with hyperalgesia, 451
- caused by bullet wound, 445
- etiology of, 451
- following traumatic neurovascular injury, 451
- mechanism of, 451
- relief by block or division of sympathetic nerves, 613
- Cavity, lung, of tuberculosis and abscess, similarity between, 508
- Cecostomy, in obstruction of colon, 335
- Cells, adhesiveness of, in malignant and benign tumors, 176
- cancer, adhesiveness of, 176
- colonies of, critical size required for metastatic growth, 171
- Cells—*continued*
- growth of, stimulus, in normal as compared to cancer cells, 172
- mutations of, producing, 172
- normal growth restraints of, failure to function in cancer, 172
- structure of, radiation effects on, 193
- Cellular ions, buffering capacity of, 39
- Cellular metabolism, 90
- Cellular overhydration, in adrenocortical insufficiency, 44
- Cephalin flocculation test, 226
- Cerebellum, lesions of, with increased intracranial pressure, 623
- Cerebral cortex, influence of, on function of thoracic and abdominal viscera, 606
- lobes of, 605
- regions of, 604
- Cerebrospinal fluid, circulation of, 620
- course of, 620
- discharge from ears or nose, in acute head injury, 624
- flow of, factors affecting, 620
- origin of, 619
- pressure, effect of intravenous therapy on, 621
- factors affecting, 620
- Cerebrovascular accident, shock due to, 5
- Cerebrum, contusion of, electroencephalogram following, 625
- Cervical cordotomy, for relief of pain, 619
- Cervical rib syndrome, 425
- Chemotherapy, of cancer, 185
- Chest, injuries of, internal bleeding in, 6
- knife wounds in, 6
- traumatic injuries of, management of, 6
- types of, 509
- wall of, stabilization of, in event of injury, 509
- strapping, 509
- Children *See also* Infants
- preoperative medication in, 637
- Chills, following blood transfusions, 271
- Chloramphenicol, 140
- Chloromycetin, antibacterial spectrum of, 140
- dosage, 140
- properties of, 140
- uses of, 140
- Chlortetracycline, 140
- Cholangitis, cholestasis associated with, 230
- Cholecystectomy, for removal of gallstones and common duct stones, 265
- Cholecystitis *See also* Gallbladder colic
- acute, 243
- complications of, 246
- factors indicating immediate operation in, 245
- management by early operations in, 245
- mechanics of attack in, 243
- nervous mechanism in pathogenesis and progression of, 244
- role of innervation of gallbladder in, 244

- Cholecystograms, interpretation of 212
 principle of 242
- Cholecystokinin secretion of 211
- Choledochojunostomy in treatment of chronic relapsing pancreatitis 266
- Choledochostomy for removal of gallstones and common duct stones 265
- Cholestasis association with cholangitis 230
- Cholinesterase level value in diagnosis 210
- Choroid plexuses, bilateral hypertrophy of 620
- Chromophobe adenomas of pituitary 531
- Chromosomal structure effects of radiation on 193
- Chvotek's sign in hypoparathyroidism 550
- Circulation, alterations produced in by rebreathing, 528
 blood pressure as guide to status of 8
 disturbances in due to anesthesia 523
 effects of cold on 418
 effects of hypothermia on 372
 effects of starvation on 81
 effects of trauma upon 8
 fetal, hemodynamic changes in at birth 632
 general, 347
 management of in trauma importance of 5
 normal pressures throughout 318
 postural reflexes following trauma 9
 problems in, in newborn and premature babies 634
 pulmonary *See* Pulmonary circulation
 systemic differences between pulmonary circulation and 494
 the third. *See* Cerebro-spinal fluid
- Cirrhosis, biliary 230
 effects on arterial blood flow through liver 236
 effects on vascular network of hepatic lobule 236
 hepatic blood flow in 236
 hyperplenism secondary to with portal hypertension, 238
 of liver 228
 peptic ulcer in 238
 portal etiologic factors in including alcoholic intake, 228
 pathophysiology of 234
- Claudication intermittent mechanism of 411
 nature of 411
 symptoms of 411
- Climate, effect of on metabolism 97
- Clitoris, enlargement of in adrenogenital syndrome, 573
- Clubbing, of fingers and toes, in pulmonary arteriovenous shunt, 499
 in tetralogy of Fallot 400
 symptomatic of chronic lung disease 506
- Coagulation, blood. *See* Blood clotting of Blood, coagulation of
- Coagulogram, abnormal in thrombocytopenic purpura, 283
- Cobalt unit radioactive as gamma radiation source 201
- Co-carcinogens, in etiology of cancer 174
- Coenzymes vitamins and their role as, 208
- Cold anesthetic effect of 419
 circulatory effects of 418
 cold water more chilling than cold air 418
 effect on blood flow 419
 effect on muscle 419
 effect on nerve tissue 419
 effect on temperature of limbs 419
 external protective influences against 419
 injuries, blister formation due to 418
 blood sludging in 420
 changes in a limb subjected to 418
 clinical considerations in 420
 emergency treatment of 421
 etiology in civilians 420
 experimental, 418
 factors in protection against 420
 in exposed extremity body warmth as protection against 419
 management effect of 421
 of limb experimental pathologic changes in 420
 pathophysiology of 420
 skin color changes in 418
 variations in capacity to withstand 420
 relative vulnerability of peripheral nerves to 420
 sensitivity to in Raynaud's phenomenon 422
 shock due to 418
- Colitis ulcerative *See* Ulcerative colitis
- Collagen, 105
 fibers, fibroblasts in production of 105
 photograph of 105
 functions of 106
 of connective tissue 105
 properties of 105
- Colloid goiter *See* under Goiter
- Colloids, urinary protective effect against formation of calculi, 630
- Colon anatomy of 340
 carcinoma of right portion of anemia associated with 340
 circulation of marginal 340
 congenital anomalies of 631
 congenital megacolon 342
 diverticula of 339
 diverticulitis of 339
 clinical findings in, 340
 management of 340
 diverticulosis of 339
 effect of stress on 603
 gross appearance of in ulcerative colitis, 342
 injury to fecal odor suggesting 342
 innervation of 340 615
 multiple congenital polyps of incidence of malignant change in, 339
 multiple polyps of ileoproctostomy for 323

- Colon—continued*
 obstruction of, 329
 operations for, 334
 physiology of, 340
 resection of, spread of cancer during, 179
 tumors of, 339
- Colostomy*, in obstruction of bowel or colon, 334
- Coma*, hepatic, precipitating factors, 227
 in tetanus infection, 147
 in trauma due to injury, 2
- Congenital anomalies*, representative, 631
- Connective tissue* *See* Tissue, connective
- Consciousness*, relation of blood sugar level to, 588
- Convalescence*, body weight curve during, 26
 delay in, due to malnutrition, 85
 postoperative, adrenergic-corticoid phase, 21
 clinical aspects, 21
 corticoid withdrawal phase, 23
 fat gain phase, 26
 wound condition in, 26
 sexual activity in, 26
 spontaneous anabolic phase, 25
 clinical aspects, 25
 metabolism during, 26
 wound condition during, 26
 stages of, 21
- Copper*, essential in enzyme molecules, 209
- Cor pulmonale*, value of bronchiolar tone concept
 in treatment of, 497
- Cordotomies*, for relief of pain, 619
- Coronary circulation*, normal, 382
- Coronary sinus*, arterialization of, 382
- Cortical steroids*, antagonism among, in fluid metabolism, 45
- Corticoid withdrawal phase*, of postoperative convalescence, 23
 clinical aspects, 23
- Corticoids*, blood level of, effect on rate of release of ACTH, 14
 secretion of, following thermal burns, 154
 increased, in Cushing's disease, 566
 role of nerve impulses in, 14
 urinary excretion of, effect of thoracoplasty on, 24
 in functioning adrenocortical carcinoma, 575
- Corticosteroid therapy*, in management of hyperinsulinism, 588
 in thrombocytopenic purpura, 282
 tetany during, 580
 undesirable side effects, 580
- Cortisone*, adrenal androgen suppression using, 577
 edema caused by, 59
 effects upon 17-ketosteroid excretion in adrenogenital syndrome, 575
 effects upon lymphoid tissue, 184
 effects upon nitrogen metabolism, 16
 free and conjugated levels in plasma, 636
- Cortisone—continued*
 in etiology of peptic ulcer, 306
 therapy, fat deposition following, 60
 following subtotal adrenalectomy, 569
 in adrenogenital syndrome due to adrenocortical hyperplasia, 575
 in infections, 145
 in peritonitis, 145
 in treatment of terminal malignancy, 184
 positive blood culture after, 134
 use in preoperative treatment in thyrotoxicosis, 547
- Cough*, effective, value of, 474
 mechanism, function of, 473
 tracheobronchial tree cleared by, 473
 value of, 473
- Coughing*, act of, initiation, 474
 fainting following, causes of, 498
- Courvoisier's law*, 232
- Cramps*, in salt and in water depletion, 51
- Cranial trauma*, fever due to, 369
- Crohn's disease* *See* Enteritis, regional
- Cross-clamping*, of proximal aorta, hazards of, 441
 heart failure due to, 441
 of thoracic aorta, 441
- Culture*, in America, stress-promoting factors of, 601
- Curling's ulcer*, as complication of thermal burn, 165
- Cushing's disease*, ACTH test in diagnosis of, 570
 corticoid secretion increase in, 566
 17-ketosteroid secretion increase in, 566
- Cushing's syndrome*, case studies of, 568
 clinical findings in, 566
 comparison with adrenogenital syndrome, 571, 572
 diagnosis of, 565
 due to adrenocortical carcinoma, case study of, 568, 569
 ecchymoses in, 569
 history in, 565
 in a child, 566
 laboratory studies in, 566
 mental changes in, 569
 nerve deficits due to vertebral compression fractures, 570
 original case, 566
 osteoporosis in, 570
 pathophysiology of, 565
 physical examination in, 565
 physical signs of, 565
 renal stones in, 570
 response of plasma hydrocortisone levels to ACTH in, 567
 surgical treatment of, 567
 choice of incision, 567
 weakness in, 568

- Cyanosis. *See also* Oxygen saturation arterial, diminished
 basis of in pulmonary or intracardiac shunts, 392
 diagnostic assistance of in congenital heart disease 392
 effect of skin temperature on, 113
 in pulmonary arteriovenous shunts 499
 causes of 490
 in tetralogy of Fallot 400
 postoperative 10
 Cyclopi, pathogenesis of 630
 Cyclopropane advantages of in anesthesia 519
 concentrations of used in anesthesia 519
 physical properties of 519
 physiological effects of 519
 respiratory depressant effect of 519
 use in inhalation anesthesia 519
 Cystogastrostomy 263
 Cystogram in trauma, 3
 Cystojejunostomy 263, 264

D

- Darrow-Lannet concept of osmolar body fluid balance 33
 Deafness, pathogenesis of 630
 Death, mode of in salt and in water depletion 51
 Decortication, pulmonary. *See* Pulmonary decortication
 Decubitus ulcers in malnutrition 85
 Dehydration due to salt loss in diabetes mellitus 589
 elevated plasma and chloride levels as evidence of 84
 estimation of fluid requirements in 99
 fever due to 360
 physiologic effects of 50
 Delirium stage in general anesthesia 514
 signs of 514 515
 Depot tissue storage effect in anesthesia 513
 Desiccation procedures, for measuring body water and solids, 28
 Desoxycorticosterone administration of effects on water intoxication 45
 edema caused by 45 50
 Deoxyribonuclease. *See* Streptodornase
 Deuterium first use as a tracer 202
 Developmental defects. *See* Anomalies congenital
 DeWall Lillehei pump-oxygenator 409
 Diabetes, immune response impairment in 135
 increased susceptibility to infection in 129
 insulin, following hypophysectomy 533
 importance of water reabsorption in 45
 use of pituitary in management of 45
 mellitus. *See also* Hypoinsulinism
 diagnosis of 589
 discussion of 589
 due to infected lung cyst 18
 effects of motions upon 604
 Diabetes—continued
 etiology of 589
 in acute pancreatitis, 261
 in surgical patients, 589
 pathophysiology of 589
 role of enzymes in 207
 signs and symptoms of 589
 positive blood cultures in, 135
 stress in 11 18
 Diabetic acidosis antibiotics in 590
 blood transfusions in 590
 diagnosis of 589
 effect on body fluid metabolism 43
 electrolyte deficits in, 590
 fluid replacement in, 590
 in surgical patients, 589
 treatment of 590
 plasma electrolyte values in 41
 therapy of hypokalemia during 43
 Diagnosis use of enzymes in 209
 Diaphragm disease of location of pain in 618
 hernia of considerations in repair of 298
 in newborn, 298
 findings in 296
 management of 296
 retrosternal, 295
 symptoms of 295
 traumatic 7 295
 symptoms of 295
 types, 295
 perforations of due to infection 296
 role in respiration 472
 Diarrhea, acid-base derangement produced by 72
 fluid loss in 331
 in tube feeding, 101
 Diastase urinary in pancreatitis, 257
 values in pancreatitis, 209
 Dibenzamine use in diagnosis of pheochromocytoma 583
 Dibenzylamine in chronic management of functioning metastases of pheochromocytomas 581
 Dicumarol use in thrombophlebitis, 467
 Diet effects on pancreatic secretion 253
 palatability of fat content and, 95
 role in producing coronary atherosclerosis, 331
 Dietary disturbances, following gastrectomy 322
 Diethylstilbestrol dosage in treatment of breast cancer 183
 Digestion, role of pancreatic enzymes in 255
 Dihydrostreptomycin antibacterial spectrum of 140
 dosage 140
 Dihydrotaehysterol, use in hypoparathyroidism 550
 Dilatation in treatment of achalasia 292
 Dilution method for measuring body water 28
 Discom lowered resistance to in malnutrition, 85

Disc, choked, in increased intracranial pressure, 622

Dissecting aneurysms, 442

Dissection, surgical, hyaluronidase as aid in, 211

Distal loop, neurogenic syndrome of, following gastric resection, 320

Diverticula of intestine *See* Intestinal diverticula

Diverticulitis, of colon, 339

Diverticulosis, of colon, 339

Diverticulum, esophageal, 289

 Meckel's, at surgery, 634

Diuresis, stage of, in acute renal failure, 80

Drainage, 135

 flank, of pancreatic abscess, 263

 of abdomen, in traumatic injuries, 8

 of subdiaphragmatic, proper drainage of, 135

Drugs, dosage of, body weight and, 29

 effects on pancreatic secretion, 253

 effect of sphincter of Oddi, 242

Ductus arteriosus, patent, 393, 448

 clinical findings in, 393

 complications of, 394

 diagnostic features, 393

 heart action following closure, 395

 in association with coarctation of aorta, 396

 nature of, 393

 patient 5 days after, 632

 prognosis of, without surgery, 394

 pulmonary hypertension due to, 394

 roentgen changes in, 394

 surgical management of, 394

 mortality in, 395

 results of, 395

 technics of, 394

 thrill due to, 394

Dumping syndrome, clinical findings in, 319

 complication of gastric resection, 319

 nature of, 319

Duodenal drainage, crystals from gallstones in, 242

 in pancreatic function tests, 257

Duodenal obstruction, in peptic ulcer, 310

Duodenal stump, blowout of, 321

Duodenal ulcer, comparison with gastric ulcer, 308

 rare, in presence of gastric achlorhydria, 305

Duodenum, congenital anomalies of, 631

 diverticula of, 338

 effect of emotions on, 602

Dyskinesia, biliary, 247

Dysphagia, 288

Dyspnea, in mitral stenosis, 383, 385

E

Echymoses, in Cushing's syndrome, 569

Ectromelia, pathogenesis of, 630

Edema, allergic, 60

 angioneurotic, 60

 as cause of postoperative weight gain, 54

Edemas—*continued*

 cardiac, mechanisms of, 57

 famine, 55

 formation of, mechanism, 55

 hepatic, 58

 hormonal, 59

 hydrostatic, of leg, in venacaval obstruction, 57

 hypostatic, 56

 in burn patients, 54

 in cold injuries, 420

 inflammatory, 60

 larval, 54

 nutritional, 55, 87

 not necessarily caused by hypoproteinemia, 55

 renal sodium excretion in, 56

 of venous origin, 57

 effect on central venous pressure, 57

 effect on peripheral venous pressure, 57

 "physiologic," 56

 pitting, as evidence of salt excess, 53

 of extremities, in heart failure, 57

 protein deficiency in development of, 87

 pulmonary, 58

 renal, 58

 starvation, 55

 types of, 55

 wound, 54

"Effort" thrombosis, of axillary vein, 462

Electrical burns, 152

Electrocardiogram, effects of plasma potassium level on, 64

 normal, 374

Electroencephalogram, following cerebral contusion, 625

Electroencephalography, general discussion, 625

Electrolyte composition, of bowel at various levels, 72

 of various gastrointestinal fluids, 75

Electrolytes, deficits of, in diabetic acidosis, 590

 disorders of, resulting from urinary retention, 643

 metabolism of, in thermal burns, 158

 plasma, levels in stress, 15

 pools, in body, method of measurement of, 35

Embolectomy, arterial, need for early operation, 437

Emboli, arterial occlusion by, 387

 embolectomy for, 387

 in mitral stenosis with atrial fibrillation, 387

Embryo, developmental defects, pathogenesis of, 630

Emotional aspects, of thermal burn, 165

Emotional responses, mediated through autonomic nervous system, 607

Emotions *See also* Stress

 influence on stomach, 601

 visceral consequences of, 599

Emphysema, fluoroscopic examination in, 492

- Emphysema—continued**
 lung function tests in 491
 pulmonary 502 *See also* Pulmonary emphysema
 chronic impaired gas mixing as factor in 502
 respiratory acidosis in 486
- Empyema, chronic decortication for 489**
 spiograms of patient with before and after pulmonary decortication 400
- Endocrine factors, in etiology of peptic ulcer 306**
- Endocrine glands in trauma 11**
- Endocrine organs effect of starvation on 61**
- Endocrine system 531 *See also* specific endocrine glands**
 aging of 218
 effect of hypothyroidism on 373
- Endocrines effects in hematopoietics 280**
 effects on metabolism 97
 function of in infants, 636
 influence on intestinal absorption 323
- Endotoxins bacterial fever due to 309**
 composition of 132
 effects of on carbohydrate metabolism 133
 pyrogenic 133
 hyperglycemia due to 133
 nature of 132
 physiologic effects of 132
 produced by infection 131
 resistance to production 132
 shock 132
 similarity of from wide range of organisms 132
 some pertinent facts 132
 syndromes produced by 133
 vascular effects of 132
- Energy radiation transfer 100**
 metabolism at the cellular level, 00
- Enteric fistula acid-base derangement produced by 72**
- Enteritis, regional, bowel resection in 337**
 clinical findings in, 330
 complications with operations for 336
 ineffectiveness of ACTH and cortisone in 337
 management of 336
 pathology of 336
 prognosis of 337
 stages of 336
- Enterocolitis, micrococcal antibiotic therapy in 144**
 causes of 144
 findings in 144
 signs and symptoms of 144
 staphylococcal, 127
- Enzymes**
 activity of effect of malnutrition on 86
 tryptophane deficiency and 87
 central position in human biochemistry and physiology 209
 control by hormones, evidence showing, 206
 effect of radiation on 193
 implication in specific disease states, 207
- Enzymes—continued**
 inhibitors 208
 intracellular antibacterial nature of 130
 metals as essential elements of molecules of 208
 nature of 207
 pancreatic role in digestion, 235
 possible roles in surgical disease 209
 properties of effect when using in treatment 210
 role in biochemistry 208
 role in stress, 21
 use in diagnosis 209
 use in treatment 210
 difficulties encountered, 210
- Enzymology surgical 206**
- Eosinophil count effect of thoracoplasty on, 24**
 following thermal burns 154
 in adrenocortic phase of convalescence 23
- Epinephrine deficiency of role in shock following resection of pheochromocytoma, 585**
 effect on renal tubular function 42
 injection of effect on ACTH release 14
 secretion of in stress, effects of 13
 in trauma 12
- Equivalent weight compared with molecular weight 36**
 definition of 36
- Erythroblastosis fetalis abnormal hemagglutinin in serum of mothers and infants with 270**
- Erythromelalgia skin color in 412**
- Erythromycin dosage 141**
 effectiveness against streptococci 141
 properties of 141
 uses of 141
- Esophageal hiatal hernia 297**
- Esophageal varices bleeding, in portal hypertension management of 223**
- Esophagitis peptic 200**
 association with hiatal hernia 294
 diagnosis of 203
 due to acid-pepsin factor 204
 due to destroying cardiac sphincter mechanism 293
 following sacrifice of cardioesophageal sphincter 203
 incidence of 293
 symptoms of 203
 with and without ulceration, 293
- Esophagocardiomyotomy extramucosal, similarity to Ramstedt pyloromyotomy, 292**
 in treatment of cardiopasm 292
- Esophagoenteric anastomoses, esophagoscopic observations of 322**
- Esophagogastric junction in esophageal hiatal hernia 298**
- Esophagogastrotomy in treatment of cardiopasm 292**
- Esophagus achalasia of 291 *See also* Esophagus, cardiopasm of**
 blood supply of 288

Esophagus—*continued*
 carcinoma of, 290
 preoperative alimentation, 100
 cardiospasm of, 291
 cardectomy in treatment of, 293
 cardioplasty in treatment of, 292
 esophagogastricostomy in treatment of, 292
 extramucosal esophagocardiomyotomy in
 treatment of, 293
 surgical treatment of, 292
 treatment, physiologic aspects of, 291
 caustic stricture of, 290
 treatment of, 290
 congenital anomalies of, 631
 disease of, location of pain in, 618
 diverticulum of, development of, 289
 locations, 289
 surgical repair of, 290
 symptoms of, 289
 treatment of, 290
 dysfunction of, 288
 dystonia of, 291 *See also* Esophagus, cardio-
 spasm of
 flow of gastric juice into, heartburn due to, 289
 functions of, 288
 innervation of, 614
 layers of, 288
 lesions of, 289
 management of, 290
 mucosa of, sensation in, 288
 localization of, 289
 rupture of, 294
 clinical findings in, 294
 etiology, 294
 in severe vomiting, mechanism of, 295
 location of tear in, 294
 management of, 295
 mechanism of, 294
 pneumomediastinum in, 294
 spontaneous, 294
 sensations of, 288
 spasm of, due to achalasia, 291
 stricture of, caustic, 290
 tumors of, 290
 varices of, with hemorrhage, 290
 management of, 291
 wall of, 288
Estrogens, edema caused by, 59
 effect in postmenopausal women, 183
 effect on fat deposition, 60
 in etiology of cancer, 168
 influence on breasts, 594
 role in gynecomastia, 594
 role in vaginal hypertrophy of breasts, 594
 therapeutic use, in breast cancer therapy, 183
 in myocardial infarction, 381
 in prostatic cancer, 182
Ether *See* Ethyl ether
Ethyl ether, concentration used in anesthesia, 519

Ethyl ether—*continued*
 desaturation time of, 519
 method of elimination from body, 519
 physical properties, 519
 use in inhalation anesthesia, 519
Evans' formula, for burn therapy, 163
Examination, physical, in trauma due to injury, 2
Exercise, effect on arterial oxygen saturation, 486
 increased respiratory requirements in, accessory
 muscles used in, 472
 tolerance, as index of lung function, 489
 definition of, 489
 tests for, 489
Exophthalmos, in Graves' disease, causes of, 539
 malignant, 552
 management of, 552
 mechanism of, 540
 progressive, 540
 treatment of, 540
 types of, 540
Exotoxins, 126
 produced by infection, 131
Extracellular water, 31
Extracellular fluid, as reflected in plasma, 37
 volume, increase in, low plasma sodium level
 caused by, 61
Extremities, effects of cold on, 418
 lower, acute massive venous occlusion in, 462
 arterial lesions in, pain associated with, 433
 arterial occlusion of, 436
 diminishing viability of, following aortic sur-
 gery, signs of, 435
 diseases of blood vessels of, 431
 gangrene of, line of demarcation in, 439
 occlusion of, diagnosis, 437
 stasis ulcer of, management of, 458
 vascular disorders of, neurosurgery for, 613
 swelling of, significance, in peripheral vascular dis-
 ease, 415
 unequal length of, in peripheral vascular disease,
 415
 upper, pain in, causes of, 425
 sympathetic innervation of, 612
Eye sign, value in determining depth of anesthesia,
 516

F

Face, gunshot wound of, 2
Fainting, due to carotid sinus syndrome, 355
 following fit of coughing, causes of, 498
 orthostatic, in salt and in water depletion, 51
Familial autonomic dysfunction, discussion of,
 609
Familial periodic paralysis
 clinical findings in, 63
 management of, 63
 role of aldosterone secretion in, 578
Famine edema, 55
Faiber test, for patency of alimentary tract, 635

Fascia wound healing of 108, 109

Fat(s)

- absorption of in absence of bile and pancreatic juice, 255
- and protein interrelationships between metabolism of 33
- consumption of postoperative 10
- content and diet palatability 35
- deposition, effect of estrogens on 60
 - following cortisone therapy 60
 - in lipedema 60
 - rapid skin strains in 10
- distribution in Cushing's syndrome 10
- effect on gastric secretion 304
- embolism to brain in traumatic injuries 5
- emulsions oral, in alimentation 100
- focal, increase of following total pancreatectomy 255
- feeding of in peptic ulcer management 309
- free solids, of body 35
- gain, of pure fat 35
 - phase of convalescence 20
- labeled use in study of pancreatic disease 256
- loss of 35
- metabolism of 91
 - by liver 221
 - role of hypothalamus in 608
- mixtures, use in intravenous feeding 102
- role in dietary metabolism 91
- specific gravity of 28
- synthesis of in the body 95
- transportation of to liver 95
- Fatigability in mitral stenosis 383
- Fatty acid, labeled use in study of pancreatic disease 256
- Feces, fat in, increase following total pancreatectomy 255
 - nitrogen in, increase in, following total pancreatectomy 255
 - odor of suggesting colon injury 6
- Feeding, force in cancer ineffectiveness of 180
- Intravenous, 100
 - solutions used for 102
 - oral tube formula for 101
 - indications for 99
- Feet, normal comparatively low temperature of 420
- Felon, false, in Raynaud's disease 412
- Femoral
 - artery occlusion of 436
 - superficial vessel occlusion of pain associated with 433
 - ven ligation of results in stasis ulcer 459
- Fever case studies of 371
 - causes of, 369
 - absence of sweat glands, 370
 - absorption products of necrotic goiter 370
 - adrenocortical insufficiency 369
 - bacterial endotoxins, 369

Fever—continued

- cranial trauma 369
- dehydration, 369
- diminished capacity for heat loss, 369
- endotoxins, 132
- heat exhaustion 369
- heat stroke 369
- increased environmental temperature 369
- increased heat absorption, 369
- increased heat production examples of 369
- infection and tumor necrosis 370
- liver failure 369
- pheochromocytoma 369
- psychogenic 369
- sympathectomy 369
- terminal shock 369
- thyrotoxicosis 369
- tumors 369
- clinical examples in 369
- clinical states of mechanism of production, 369
- clinical temperature measurements 368
- during anesthesia 361
- extremities with survival 371
- following adrenalectomy 369
- following blood transfusions 271
- following placentation 280
- herpes simplex resulting from 126
- in adrenocortical insufficiency case study of 371
- in malignant tumor case study of 371
- in sites of surgery case study 371
- in surgical patients bacterial infection chief cause of 371
- mechanism of production 369
 - postoperative 20
- psychogenic 369
 - case study of 371
 - pyrogen-induced mechanism of 132
- Fibers elastic functions of 106
 - of connective tissue 106
 - properties of 106
- Fibrillar elements, of connective tissue 105
 - collagen 105
 - elastic fibers, 106
 - reticulum 105
- Fibrin barrier against bacterial invasion 130
 - collection of globulin antibodies at, 131
 - lysed by streptococci 131
- Fibrin deposition role in inflammatory response to bacterial invasion, 130
- Fibrinogen deficiency of effect on blood coagulation 277
 - properties of 275
- Fibrinolysin, use of in diagnosis, 209
 - in prostatic cancer 209
- Fibrinolysis, role in blood coagulation 276
- Fibrocytic disease of pancreas, 266
- Pick method, direct, for measurement of cardiac output, 360

- Fick method—*continued*
 disadvantages of, 350
- Fistulas, biliary, effect on extracellular electrolytes, 232
 fluid loss in, 74
 low salt syndrome in, 74
 of jejunum, management of, 326
 of pancreas, duration of sepsis in, effects of, 74
 fluid loss in, 74
 in acute pancreatitis, 263
 of salivary glands, 288
 of small bowel, 73, 326
 aspiration, 73
 fluid losses in, 73
 jejunostomy in, 74
 management of, 73
 use of Miller-Abbott tube in, 74
 postirradiation, 199
 salivary, management of, 287
 tracheoesophageal, 290
- Flail chest, due to multiple rib fractures, 5, 509
- Flame burn, 152
 adrenocortical response to, 155
- Flash burn, 151
- Flocculation tests, in liver function testing, 226
- Flora, bacterial, normal, 125
- Fluid(s)
 imbalance, diagnosis of, 67
 pathologic states, in surgery, 69
 intake, in acute renal failure therapy, 77
 loss of, balanced, in small bowel fistula, 73
 clinical evidence of, 73
 in small bowel obstruction, 72
 replacement, factors to consider in, 333
 replacement of, in intestinal obstruction, 333
 orderly procedure in, 71
 therapy, general approach to, 67
 value of plasma sodium levels in, 61
- Food intake, spontaneous, factors affecting, 91
- Foodstuffs, caloric equivalents of, 95
 caloric values of, 100
 effect on gastric secretion, 304
- Foot, immersion, 418
 pulses of, delayed following grafting, 435
 trench, 418
- Foramen ovale, patent, associated with pulmonic stenosis, 404
- Fractures, blood loss around, 3
 calcium excretion following, 15
 nitrogen excretion following, 15
- Frontal lobe, lesions produced by increased intracranial pressure in, 623
- Frostbite, 418
 injury from, compared with immersion foot, 419
 management of, 421
 rewarming rate in management of, 421
- Fructose, use in intravenous feeding, 102
- Fungous diseases, resistance to chemotherapy, 146
- Fungous diseases—*continued*
 surgery in management of, 146
 use of antibiotics in, 146
- ### G
- Gallbladder, 241
 carcinoma of, 246
 colic *See also* Cholecystitis
 pain of, causes, 244
 distribution, 243
 duration, 244
 quality, 244
 disease of, location of pain in, 618
 pathophysiology of, 243
 functions of, 241
 in trauma, 11
 innervation of, parasympathetic, 245
 role in cholecystitis, 244
 vagal, 245
 motor functions of, 241
 rupture of, gallstones in omentum from, 247
 not necessarily fatal, 235
- Gallstones, black, in congenital hemolytic anemia, 284
 crystals from, in duodenal drainage, 242
 etiology of, 243
 in omentum, from gallbladder rupture, 247
 pancreatitis and, 259
- Gamma radiation, radioactive cobalt unit as source of, 204
- Gamma rays, 190
- Ganglionic blockade, drugs used for, 364
 to induce hypotension, 364
- Gangrene, around wall, hazard in intestinal obstruction, 327
 irreversible shock in, 4
 of extremity, line of demarcation in, 439
- Gantrisin, uses of, 142
- Gas distribution, intrapulmonary, as index of lung function, 492
 conditions in which it is a factor, 493
- Gas machine, common, for inhalation anesthesia, 518
- Gastrectomy, dietary disturbances following, 322
 gastric hunger contractions after, 92
 weight loss following, 322
- Gastric
 acid values, abnormal, 304
 acidity, relation to pain of peptic ulcer, 306
 anacidity, 304
 function, insulin test of, 301
 glands, anatomy of, regional, 299
 function of, 299
 hyperacidity, 304
 juice *See also* Gastric secretion
 daily volume lost, 49
 electrolyte composition of, 75
 motility, inflating balloons in study of, 301
 reduction of, by atropine-like drugs, 309

Gastric—continued

- relationships, to pain of peptic ulcer 308
- to peptic ulcer symptoms, 301
- pepsin, secretion of 301
- resection, Billroth I method, Polya modification 316
- Billroth I method *versus* Billroth II method, 316
- Billroth II method Hoffmeister modification 316
- complications of 319
- in treatment of chronic relapsing pancreatitis, 265
- massive small bowel insufficiency due to 321
- neurogenic syndrome of distal loop following 320
- nutrition following, 90
- of small bowel, indications for 321
- proximal loop obstruction following 319
- retention following 320
- subtotal for peptic ulcer 313
- types of for peptic ulcer 315
- weight loss following 319
- retention causes of 320
- following gastric resection 320
- secretion. *See also* Gastric juice
- cephalic, 299
- components of 299
- effects of foodstuffs on 301
- effects of gastric resection on, 303
- fractional test meal in testing 300
- gastric phase 299
- mediation of 299
- hyperacid, 301
- hypothalamic stress stimulation of 305
- increase of in pyloric obstruction 49
- intestinal phase of 299
- phases of 299
- relative importance of each 299
- physiology of 299
- quantitative methods for study of 302
- role in ulcer formation, 304
- stimulation of mechanism for 300
- study of gastric surgery in 298
- tests for 300
 - fractional test meal, 300
 - interpretation of 300
 - significance of 300
 - technic of 300
 - histamine test of 301
- tubeless method for study of 303
- limitations of 303
- secretion, continuous, salt and water losses in, 52
- in management of pancreatitis, 262
- surgery physiologic basis of 298
- use of in study of gastric secretion, 298
- syndrome dumping syndrome as complication of 319

Gastric—continued

- ulcer comparison with duodenal ulcer 308
- malignant degeneration of 313
- management of 313
- Gastrin manufacture of 299
- Gastroduodenal hemorrhage associated with pheochromocytoma 582
- Gastroenterostomy for peptic ulcer 313
- Gastroileal fistula produced inadvertently at gastrojejunostomy 321
- Gastrointestinal
 - complications, in jejunostomy feeding, 101
 - fluids, electrolyte composition of 75
 - motility in malnutrition 88
 - surgery pseudomembranous enterocolitis following 144
 - tract effect of thermal burns on 167
 - effects of trauma on, 10
 - innervation of 614
 - wound healing of 110
- Gastrojejunocolic fistula following gastrojejunostomy 321
- Gastrojejunostomy gastrojejunocolic fistula following 321
- Gastrostomy for feeding 101
- Genetics, effects of radiation on, 103
 - mutations of due to radiation, identification of enzymic lesions in 194
 - surgical implantations of 194
- Genitourinary tract, congenital anomalies of 631
- Giantism due to tumors of pituitary 533
- Globulin antibodies, collection of against fibrin barrier 131
- Glomerular disease, kidney function in, 47
- Glomerular filtration rate evaluation of 47
- Glucose hypodermoclysis, edema due to 54
- reabsorbed in proximal convoluted tubule 46
- solution, for intravenous feeding 102
- hypertonic, effect on plasma potassium level, 79
- Glucuronide conjugation of bilirubin to by liver cells 225
- Glycine use for synthesis of protoporphyrin of hemoglobin, 90
- Glycogen formation deposition of potassium in 64
- potassium requirements for 51
- Glycogenolysis, in postoperative convalescence 21
- Glycosuria, potassium deficiency in 64
- Goiter colloid, management of 547
 - iodine therapy 548
 - thyroid substance in, 548
- diffuse toxic *See* Graves' disease
- nontoxic etiology of 547
- formation of mechanism 547
- incidence of 547
- iodine deficiency as cause of 547
- management of surgical, 549
- physiologic considerations in 547

Goiter—*continued*

- toxic diffuse, *versus* toxic nodular goiter, 539
- Gold, radioactive, therapy using, 205
- Gonadotropin, 532
- Grafting, skin, factors in host influencing, 120
- Grafts, arterial homografts, early results of, 121
 - autogenous, advantages, 121
 - human tissue, behavior of, 119
 - blood vessel, autogenous, 121
 - early work in, 120
 - homologous, 121
 - types of, 120
 - bone, 122
 - cartilaginous, 122
 - heterogenous vascular, unsatisfactory, 121
 - skin, clinical uses of, 120
 - in thermal burns, 164
- Graves' disease *See also* Hyperthyroidism
 - effects of iodine in, mechanism of, 540
 - emotional instability in, 540
 - exophthalmos in, causes of, 539
 - physiologic concepts of, 539
 - role of TSH in etiology of, 531
 - well defined date of onset in, 540
- Ground substance, functions of, 106
 - of connective tissue, 104
- Growth, normal, effect of small bowel resection on, 325
- Gunshot wounds *See also* Bullet wounds
 - damage caused by, 6
 - of face, 2
 - of thorax and arm, 111
 - to arteries, 445
 - case study of, 445
- Gynecomastia, causes of, 594
 - in boy at puberty, 592
 - role of estrogens in, 594

H

- Harelip, pathogenesis of, 630
- Hashimoto's struma, 553
 - incidence of, 553
 - nature of, 553
 - treatment of, 553
- Head, congenital anomalies of, 631
 - injuries, acute, bladder care in, 624
 - bleeding from ears or nose in, 624
 - cerebral edema in, management of, 624
 - chronologic clinical record in, 624
 - control of hyperthermia in, 625
 - discharge of cerebrospinal fluid in, 624
 - early care of, 624
 - operative intervention in, 625
 - position of patient in, 624
 - relief of pain in, 624
 - scalp lacerations in, 624
 - shock in, treatment of, 624
 - state of consciousness in, 624
- Head—*continued*
 - tracheostomy in, 625
- Headache, in increased intracranial pressure, 622
 - post-spinal, 523
 - causes of, 523
 - management of, 523
- Heart *See also* Cardiac
 - and great vessels, congenital anomalies of, 631
 - arrhythmias of, 374
 - atrial fibrillation, causes of, 374
 - auriculoventricular node, 374
 - autonomic nervous dysfunction of, 613
 - bundle of His, anatomic location, 374
 - catheterization of, in tetralogy of Fallot, 401
 - technic, 393
 - uses, 393
 - changes in, in mitral stenosis, 383
 - in starvation, 84
 - compression of, in management of cardiac arrest, 529
 - conduction in, 373
 - mechanism of, 374
 - congenital anomalies of, 631
 - defibrillator, 530
 - disease of, location of pain in, 618
 - effects of calcium on, 376
 - effects of combined ions on, 376
 - effects of potassium intoxication on, 63
 - effects of potassium on, 64, 376
 - influence of other ions, 64
 - reversal by infusions of sodium ion, 376
 - effects of sodium on, 376
 - effect of starvation on, 84
 - failure, due to cross-clamping of proximal aorta, 441
 - due to heart disease, 349
 - management prior to surgery for other conditions, 349
 - pitting edema of extremities associated with, 57
 - pulmonary edema in, 58
 - role in irreversible shock, 359
 - force of beat, chemical factors influencing, 375
 - effect of carbon dioxide on, 376
 - effect of oxygen on, 375
 - homotransplantation of, 122
 - inadequate function of, causes, 347
 - innervation of, 613
 - intrinsic, 373
 - lesions, acquired, operations for, 375
 - acyanotic, 392
 - congenital, 392
 - aortic-pulmonary septic defect, 395
 - atrial septal defect, 404
 - coarctation of aorta, 396
 - cyanosis in, value in diagnosis, 392
 - diagnosis of, 392
 - patent ductus arteriosus, 393
 - pulmonic stenosis, 403

part—continued

- transposition of aorta and pulmonary artery 410
- transposition of pulmonary veins 403
- cyanotic 393
- mitral valve See Mitral valve
- murmurs how produced 393
- importance in diagnosis of heart disease 393
- systemic in tetralogy of Fallot 401
- nerve supply extrinsic 375
- intrinsic 374
- nervous influences on 373
- output of 317 See also Cardiac output
 - following thermal burn 187
- pacemaker of 374
- pain in mediation by sympathetic nerve fibers 375
- rate acceleration of by sympathetic impulses, 374 375
 - by sympathetic nerve fibers 375
 - by vagal fibers 375
- chemical factors influencing 373
- effect of Bainbridge reflex on 375
- effect of carbon dioxide on, 375
- effect of oxygen on 375
- in infants, 635
- regulation of Bainbridge reflex in 375
- sino-auricular node 374
- standstill of in anesthesia cause of 325
- stoppage causes of 375 See also Cardiac arrest
- sympathetic nerve fibers, 375
- vagal fibers, 375
- vagus nerve influences on 375
- valvular disease of inadequate output due to 347
- ventricular fibrillation, causes of 374
- Heartburn due to reflux of gastric juice into esophagus, 289
- Heat, dissipation from body 366
- elimination decreased efficiency in pyrogen-induced fever 133
- exhaustion, fever due to 369
- production, basal increasing, ways of 367
 - normal values 367
 - of body, 367
 - measurement of 367
 - variations in factors causing, 367
- stroke fever due to 369
- Height, relation of blood volume to 363
- Hemagglutinin abnormal in serum of mothers and infants with erythroblastosis fetalis, 270
- Hematocrit, changes in in burn patient 160
- levels, variations in, and in total blood volume 362
- values, changes in following acute hemorrhage, 360
- Hematoma, pulsating, 441
- case study of 447
- diagnosis of 446

Hematoma—continued

- difficulty 446
- discovery long-delayed, 446
- etiology of 446
- Hematopoiesis endocrine effects in 280
- Hematopoietic syndrome due to radiation 194
- Hematuria causes of 640
- findings in 640
- gross, causes of 640
- Hemoconcentration in salt and in water depletion 51
- Hemoglobin protoporphyrin of glycine used for synthesis of 90
- Hemopericardium in acute pericardial tamponade 378
 - late constrictive pericarditis due to 378
- Hemophilia causes of 276
- Hemoptysis, severe etiology of 510
- management of 510
- Hemorrhage See also Bleeding
 - acute hematocrit value changes in 360
 - as sign of visceral injury 6
 - at valvulotomy management of 387
 - concealed use of blood volume measurement in 360
 - esophageal, due to varices, 291
 - following thyroidectomy with respiration obstruction 550
 - gastrointestinal: pseudomembranous enterocolitis following 141
 - in acute renal failure 80
 - of liver controlling, 7
 - surgical shock due to 365
- Hemothorax 509
 - traumatic pulmonary decortication in, 494
- Henderson Hasselbach equation, for expressing sodium bicarbonate to carbonic acid ratio 40
- Heparin use in aortic resection 434
- use in thrombophlebitis, 457
- Hepatic See also Liver
 - artery ligation for portal hypertension 241
 - coma, causes of precipitating factors, 227
 - duct, bile electrolyte composition of 75
 - edema, 58
 - altered hormone metabolism in, 59
 - increased hydrostatic pressure in 58
 - reduced plasma proteins in 60
 - insufficiency See Liver failure acute
- Hepatitis, 228
 - homologous serum 273
 - parenchymatous, 228
- Hepatocellular degeneration bile pigment circulation in, 232
- Hepatorenal syndrome 59
- Hereditary factors, in cancer 168
- Heredity role in incidence of breast cancer 168
- Hernia, hiatal, association with peptic esophagitis, 294

Hernia—continued

of diaphragm *See* Diaphragm, hernia of
 Herpes simplex, stimuli producing, 126
 Hexamethonium, use in treatment of hyperten-
 sion, 614

Hiatal hernias, bleeding in, 298

confusion with other lesions, 297
 distress in eating in, 298
 esophageal, in adults, 297
 incidence of, 297
 management of, difficulties in, 297
 narrowing or compression of esophagogastric
 junction in, 298
 pain in, 297
 relief of, on standing, 298
 significance of, 297
 symptomatology of, 297

*Hiccoughs See Hiccups**Hiccups, 475*

etiology of, 475
 management of, 475

"Hilar dance," due to rapid blood flow into pul-
 monary artery from aorta, 394

Hirschsprung's disease See Megacolon, congenital

His, bundle of, anatomic location of, 374

Histamine test, for pheochromocytomas, 583

of gastric secretion, 301
 significance of, 301
 technic of, 301

Hoarseness, due to injury of recurrent laryngeal
 nerves, 549

Homeostasis, role of hypothalamus in maintenance
 of, 608

Homografts, arterial, early results of, 121

clinical uses of, 120
 factors limiting use of, 120
 fate of, attempts to modify, 119
 general discussion of, 119
 technic of use of, 434

Homotransplantation, between identical twins, 118

concepts of, 118
 experimentation on, 118
 of heart, 122
 of lung, 122
 renal, 122

Hormonal edema, 59

types of, 59

*Hormonal regulation, of pancreatic secretion, 252**Hormonal therapy, for carcinoma of breast, 182**Hormones, adrenocortical See Adrenocortical*

adrenocorticotropin, 531
 anterior pituitary, survey of, 531
 cortical, effects on fluid metabolism, 44
 effect on intestinal motility, 324
 effect on renal function in stress, 12
 enzymes controlled by, evidence showing, 206
 gonadal, effect on body fluid metabolism, 43
 gonadotropic, 532

Hormones—continued

growth, 531
 in body fluid metabolism, 41
 in etiology of cancer, 169
 in treatment of cancer, 181
 influence on body fluid metabolism, general
 survey, 42
 influence on breasts, 594
 metabolism, altered, in hepatic edema, 59
 of adrenal cortex, 564
 parathormone *See* Parathormone
 possible site of action, 207
 secreted by posterior pituitary, 534
 thyroid, mechanism of action of, 539
 stimulating (TSH), 531

Hospital population, antibiotic resistance among,
 138

Hospital starvation, 98

Hospitalization, acquisition of antibiotic resist-
 ance during, 138

Host, and microorganisms, relations between, 125

Hufnagel valve, anemia following insertion of, 392

for aortic insufficiency, 391

physiologic effects of, 391

special hazard where myocardial ischemia likely,
 392

Hunger contractions, gastric, 92

effect of various factors on, 92

Hyaluronidase, as aid in surgical dissection, 211

clinical uses of, 211
 commercial availability of, 211
 diffusion of subcutaneous injections by, 211
 properties of, 211
 use in treatment of paraphymosis, 212

Hydrocephalus, characteristic physical changes in, 620

experimental production of, 619
 external, 621
 internal, 621

resulting from excessive rate of cerebrospinal
 fluid secretion, 621

resulting from obstruction, 620

*Hydrochloric acid, efficacy as acidifying com-
 pound, 39*

infusion of, effects, 39, 41

Hydrocortisone, edema caused by, 59

effect in hypoglycemia, 589
 free, plasma level during operation, 25
 levels, of plasma, response to ACTH, 567
 major secretory product of adrenal cortex, 13
 role in water and salt metabolism, 43
 secretion of, direct measurement of, 25
 in adrenergic-corticoid phase of convalescence,
 23

Hydrogen ion concentration See pH

Hydrolysates, protein, use in intravenous feeding,
 102

Hydrostatic pressure, increased, in hepatic edema,
 58

- Hydrothorax 509
 Hyperadrenocorticism 564
 causes of 565
 types of 564
 Hyperalgesia 617
 causalgia associated with 451
 Hyperalimentation postoperative 98
 psychological outlook following 101
 Hyperbaric solutions use in spinal anesthesia 522
 Hypercalcemia in hyperparathyroidism 556
 Hypercalciuria, in hyperparathyroidism 558
 Hyperchloremia, in salt excess 53
 Hyperemia reactive skin color in, 413
 Hypersthesia 617
 conditions in which it is common 617
 Hyperkalemia, due to endotoxins 133
 in diabetes mellitus 580
 of endotoxin poisoning, 133
 Hypensulinism 586
 age of onset of 587
 blood sugar level and consciousness 588
 diagnosis of 587
 difficulty 588
 relationship of hypoglycemia to 587
 historical notes on, 586
 management of medical 588
 surgical, 589
 preoperative and postoperative care 589
 prognosis of 589
 neurologic injury in 588
 Whipple's triad in diagnosis of 587
 Hyperkalemia in acute renal failure treatment of 78
 management of 80
 Hypermagnesemia clinical signs, 69
 Hyponatremia, in salt excess, 51
 Hyperosmolality 67
 Hyperparathyroidism 555 563
 differential diagnosis of 558
 pancreatitis in 558
 peptic ulcer in 558
 physical examination for 558
 primary alkaline phosphatase level in serum 558
 diagnosis of 556
 due to parathyroid adenoma or hyperplasia, 556
 effects of 556
 hypercalciuria in, 558
 hypophosphatemia in, 558
 lesions in 556
 symptoms of 556
 urinary calcium excretion, 568
 secondary due to renal disease 556
 serum calcium level in 558
 surgical management of 558
 types of 555
 Hyperphagia, due to hypothalamic injury 92
 Hyperplasia islet cell, 587
 Hyperpyrexia, in anesthesia 371
 Hypersplenism 281
 bone marrow studies in diagnosis of 282
 causes of 282
 findings in, 281
 iliac bone marrow in 283
 megakaryocytes in 283
 neutropenia due to 285
 pancytopenia due to 285
 primary 281
 versus secondary 281
 secondary 281
 to cirrhosis with portal hypertension 238
 Hypertension arterial 364
 causes of 364
 management of 365
 surgical 365
 due to pheochromocytoma, 581
 due to thermal burns 9
 during anesthesia 525
 essential management of 614
 sympathectomy in treatment of 613
 following operation 9
 following trauma 9
 management of 9
 in coarctation of aorta etiology of 396
 paradoxical following resection of coarctation of aorta 399
 portal ascites as result of 237
 bleeding esophageal varices in, management of 223
 causes of 235
 collateral circulation in 237
 hepatic artery ligation in 241
 hypersplenism secondary to cirrhosis with 238
 mechanism of 235
 physiologic sequelae various, 237
 portacaval shunt for 238
 splenoportogram in, 240
 surgical problem in a medical disease 235
 venous pressure in 237
 pulmonary diseases occurring in, 483
 etiology of respiratory symptoms from 384
 in mitral stenosis, 384
 in patent ductus arteriosus, 394
 Hyperthermia See Fever
 Hyperthyroidism 539 See also Graves' disease
 clinical evidence of 541
 diagnosis of 541
 tests for general discussion 544
 effects of iodine and antithyroid drugs in mechanism of 540
 etiology of 539
 laboratory tests for 541
 management of 544
 principles in, 541
 pathophysiology of 539

Hyperthyroidism—continued

- potassium iodide in management of, 545
 - radioiodine, in management of, 545, 546
 - limitations, 546
 - radioiodine *versus* surgery in management of, 544
 - surgical management of, 546
 - preparation of patient for, 546
 - thiouracil in management of, 545
 - ultimate effects of, 539
 - use of antithyroid drugs in management of, 545
 - use of basal metabolic rate in diagnosis of, 541
 - use of inorganic iodine in management of, 545
- Hypertonic solution, injection of, thrust induced by, 93
- Hyperventilation, respiratory alkalosis in, 486
 - syndrome, diminished arterial carbon dioxide content in, 486
- Hypesthesia, 617
- Hypobaric solutions, use in spinal anesthesia, 522
- Hypodermoclysis, of glucose, salt-shock in, 55
- Hypofibrinogenemia, treatment of, 280
- Hypoglycemia, causes of, 587
 - effect of hydrocortisone on, 589
 - nerve injury in attacks of, 588
 - nervous components of, 587
 - role in diagnosis of hyperinsulinism, 587
 - signs and symptoms of, 587
- Hypoinsulinism *See also* Diabetes mellitus
 - discussion of, 589
- Hypokalemia, in diabetic acidosis during therapy, 43
- Hypomagnesemia, clinical signs of, 69
- Hyponatremia, management of, 62
- Hypoparathyroidism, following thyroidectomy, 549
 - management of, 550
 - signs and symptoms, appearance of following thyroidectomy, 549
- Hypophosphatemia, in hyperparathyroidism, 557
- Hypophysectomy, diabetes insipidus following, 533
 - effect on cancer of breast, 533
 - effect on ovarian function, 533
 - for advanced cancer, endocrinologic aspects of, 533
 - thyroid function following, 533
- Hypopituitarism, ovarian function following, 533
 - spontaneous, causes of, 532
 - surgical, 533
- Hypopotassemia, due to glycogen deposition, 64
- Hypoproteinemia, in malnutrition, 87
 - in renal edema, 58
 - relation to nutritional edema, 55
- Hypostatic edema, 56
 - in cardiac patients, 56

Hypostatic edema—continued

- in normal subjects, 56
- Hypotension, arterial, due to malfunction of postural reflexes, 354
 - chronic, in starvation, 356
 - controlled, by arteriotomy, 363
 - by ganglion blockade, 364
 - by total spinal block, 364
 - indications for use of, 364
 - objectives of, 363
 - physiologic effects, 364
 - technics of, 363
 - use of, during surgery, 363
 - during anesthesia, 524
 - induced, physiologic effects, 364
 - orthostatic, following trauma, 9
- Hypothalamus, anatomy of, 43
 - body temperature regulation by, 365, 608
 - clinical syndromes of, 609
 - effect on sleep, 609
 - feeding center in, 608
 - functions of, 607
 - integrative center of autonomic nervous system, 605
 - pathways of, influencing thoracic and abdominal viscera, 606
 - regulation of pituitary secretion by, 608
 - role in appetite, 92
 - role in carbohydrate metabolism, 608
 - role in fat metabolism, 608
 - role in gastric functions, 608
 - role in genesis of pulmonary edema, 609
 - role in lactation, 608
 - role in maintenance of homeostasis, 608
 - role in metabolism, 607
 - role in protein metabolism, 608
 - role in water and salt metabolism, 608
- Hypothermia, 372
 - accidental, 372
 - effect on blood coagulation, 373
 - effect on cardiovascular system, 373
 - effect on endocrine system, 373
 - effect on general metabolism, 373
 - effect on oxygen consumption, 373
 - effect on respiratory system, 373
 - effects upon metabolism of chilled extremity, 420
 - induced, anesthesia needed to prevent shivering during, 372
 - complications of, 372
 - postoperative bleeding, complicating, 372
 - physiologic effects of, 372, 373
 - reduction of tissue oxygen requirements with, 372
 - therapeutic, 372
 - historical background of, 372
 - technics of, 372
 - uses of, 372

- Hypothermia—continued**
 ventricular fibrillation a hazard in, 372
 use in correction of atrial septal defect 408
- Hypothyroidism** during growth period effects of 538
 in adults effects of 538
 postoperative treatment of 552
- Hypotension** arterial relationship of disability in pulmonary emphysema to 501
 relationship to cor pulmonale 502
- Hypoxia**, causes of classification 524
 due to inadequate oxygenation, of abnormal lungs, 524
 of normal lungs, 524
 due to inadequate tissue oxygenation 524
 due to inadequate transport of oxygen by blood 524
 due to obstruction in pharyngeal or laryngeal pathways, 524
 due to obstruction of tracheobronchial airway 524
 due to respiratory muscle insufficiency 524
 due to venous-arterial shunts 524
 in anesthesia 523
 causes of 523
- I
- Ileitis**. See Enteritis regional
- Ileoproctostomy** effect on number of stools 325
 in colectomy for multiple polyps 325
- Ileostomy** complications of 340
 incidence 340
 problem or solution? 340
- Ileum**, congenital anomalies of 331
- Ileus**, adynamic 335
 paralytic 336
 causes of 335
 management of 336
 nature of 335
 post-operative 15
- Iliac artery** occlusion of 436
- Iliac occlusion** arterial clinical findings in, 432
 pain associated with 433
 partial, systolic bruit due to 433
- Illness**, chronic metabolic response to operation in, 8
- Immersion** foot 418
 causes of 418
 compared with frostbite injury 419
 pathology of condition, 418
- Immunity** bacterial intracellular acidity and 129
- Inanition**, chronic as complication of thermal burn, 165
- Incision**, type of wound disruption due to 115
- Inigo carmine** excretion rate as test of kidney function 47
- Infancy** special problems of 629
- Infants**, adrenocortical activity in, 636
 alimentary tract in 635
 altered physiology in newborn and premature 634
 anesthesia in body temperature during, 637
 problems in 637
 blood pressure in 635
 blood volume in 635
 circulatory problems in 634
 coagulation defects in 635
 endocrine function in 636
 heart rate in 635
 metabolic response in to anesthesia and operation 636
 premature blood volume in 635
 body temperature regulation a problem in, 635
 coagulation defects in 635
 renal function in 636
 respiratory problems in 634
 renal function in 636
 response to surgery in 638
 thyroid activity in 636
 vasomotor stability in 635
- Infections** antibiotic combinations value in 136
 bacterial. See Bacterial infections
 clinical, control of 134
 reasons for failure to respond to antibiotic therapy 142
 use of ACTH in 145
 use of antibiotics in 138
 use of cortisone in 145
 complicating thermal burns, 165
 currently of major importance 125
 effect on red cell production 134
 increased susceptibility to in diabetes, 120
 in malnutrition 86
 latent stimuli producing overt disease from 126
 mechanism of fever in 134
 of submaxillary glands 268
 of wounds, 114
 increased incidence 137
 management 114
 perforations of diaphragm due to 296
 role in wound healing 111
 similarity to cancer 179
 staphylococcal, increase in 143
 surgical, of special importance 143
 systemic effects of 131
 tetanus, management of 147
 upper respiratory positive blood cultures in 134
- Inflammation** response against bacteria factors producing, 130
 fibrin deposition in 131
 role of intracellular acidity in 129
- Inflammatory** edema 60
- Inhalation** anesthesia. See Anesthesia, inhalation

- Inhibitors, enzyme, 208
- Injuries, arterial trauma due to, 444
 metabolic response, 21
 neuroendocrine reactions to, 12
 of bladder, 641
 of kidney, 640
 of pancreas, drainage in, 7
 of ureter, 641
 of urethra, 641
 of urinary tract, 640
 evaluation of, 7
 physiology of, 1
 response to, systemic, 8
 transaminase levels following, 210
 traumatic, case history of, 1
 vascular, management, 8
- Inspiration, nervous reflexes during, 470
- Insulin, effect on carbohydrate metabolism, 18
 role in body fluid metabolism, 43
 secreting tumors, of pancreas, 267
 test, in evaluating completeness of vagotomy, 314
 of gastric function, 301
 technic of, 301
 versus cortical hormones, physiological antagonism, 19
- Intercostal muscles, external, role in respiration, 472
- Interventricular septal defect, 406
 acyanotic left to right shunt, 406
 bi-directional shunt in, 407
 diagnosis of, 406
 etiology of, 406
 pathophysiology of, 406, 407
 right-to-left shunt, 407
 surgical correction of, 407
 symptoms of, 406
- Intestinal
 diverticula, 338
 Meckel's, of ileum, 338
 of colon, 339
 of duodenum, 338
 juice, secretion of, 322
 motility, inhibition, in tube feeding, 101
 neoplasms, 339
 of colon, 339
 of small bowel, 339
 obstruction, bowel lengthening in, 328
 closed-loop type, hazards of gangrene in, 327
 colon obstruction, management of, 334
 death due to, causes, 327
 diagnosis of, 330
 fluid losses in, at various levels, 331
 fluid replacement in, 330
 intraluminal pressures in, 328
 effect of, on duodenal circulation, 328
 hazard of allowing to persist, 328
 importance of level and duration of, 328
- Intestinal—*continued*
 level at which capillary stasis begins, 32
 low small bowel, 329
 management of, 330
 management of, antibiotics in, 334
 conservative, time allowed for, 332
 continuous tube suction, 330
 fluid replacement in, 333
 general considerations, 330
 principles, 330
 short-tube *versus* long-tube in, 332
 use of long tube for splint following operation for, 335
 operative intervention, 334
 anesthesia used in, 334
 bloody dark fluid in, significance of, 331
 incision used in, 334
 returning distended bowel to closure, 33
 pain of, cramping or colicky, 330
 paralytic ileus, 336
 pathogenesis of, 327
 pathophysiology of, 327
 physiologic changes in, 327
 pressure measurements, 328
 sequestration of large volumes of fluid
 bowel, 329
 simple *versus* strangulated, comparison
 mortality in, 327
 sources of bowel fluids in, 327
 sources of gas in, 328
 strangulation type, blood loss in, 329
 cause of death in, 329
 intraluminal pressure in, 328
 syndrome, due to radiation, 194
 tract, effect of starvation on, 84
- Intestines, autonomic ganglia in, 615
 fistula of, fluid loss in, 49
 fluid conservation by, 48
 juice, daily volume of, 49
 large, pathologic physiology of, 322
 obstruction of, 327
 etiology, 327
 small, absorption by, endocrine influences on, 323
 factors affecting, 323
 absorptive functions of, 322
 acid chyme movement through duodenum, 323
 congenital anomalies of, 631
 effects of segment reversal on, 324
 fistula of, 326
 diagnosis of, 326
 fluid losses in, 326
 management, 326
 prognosis, 326
 surgical management of, 326
 use of long tube in, 326
 innervation of, 614

Iodine—continued

- insufficiency of 321
 - causes 321
 - pathophysiology in 323
 - metabolic disturbances in 321
- length of variations in normal individuals 323
- massive resection of effect on normal growth 323
 - indications for 321
 - metabolic disturbances following factors governing, 323
 - results 323
- mobility of 323
 - effect of hormones on 321
 - effect of spinal anesthesia on 321
 - effect of vagotomy on 321
 - types 323
- motor functions of 322
- neoplasms of 330
- nervous control of 323
- pathologic physiology of 322
- secretory functions of 322
- segmentation movements of 323
- suerus entericus of 322
- Intracellular ions 31
- Intraocular pressure increased 618
 - acute signs and symptoms of 622
 - causes of 621
 - chronic signs and symptoms of 622
 - focal signs of 623
 - management of 618
 - mechanics of 621
 - pathophysiology of 618
 - results of 622
- Intrapleural pressure fluctuations in, during respiratory cycle 473
 - importance of in respiration 473
 - normal, 473
- Intrathoracic tumors 502
 - physiologic disturbances by 502
- Intravenous alimentation, 100 102
 - solutions used for 102
- Intravenous anesthesia *See* Anesthesia intra-venous
- Intravenous feeding alcohol use in 102
 - glucose solution for 102
- Intravenous therapy effect on cerebrospinal fluid pressure 621
- Intra-ception, due to neurogenic polyp 626
- Inulin, in measurement of body water 31
- Iodine conversion of iodide to role of thyroid in, 536
 - cycle effect on thyroid gland, 535
 - scheme of 537
 - deficiency of goiter due to 547
 - effects in Graves' disease mechanism of 540

Iodine—continued

- in hyperthyroidism mechanisms of 540
- elemental subcutaneous injection of effects, 536
- inorganic use in management of hyperthyroidism 540
- low protein bound of serum relationship to thyroid activity 512
- metabolism 533
 - effect on thyroid gland 535
 - quantity of in thyroid gland and plasma 536
 - radioactive diagnostic usage of 201
 - thyroidal metabolism of 537
 - use in therapy for colloid goiter 548
- Ions of cellular fluid buffering capacity of 30
 - deficits of types of 68
 - exchange ions to alter plasma potassium level 70
 - intracellular 31
- Ionic content of body fluid effect on bacterial invasion 130
- Ionization concept of in radiation effect 101
 - densities of isotopes, 100
 - of a substance 36
 - secondary 191
- Iron essential in enzyme molecules, 208
- Irradiation whole body effects of 127
 - positive blood culture following 134
- Irritation chionic as cause of cancer 169
- Ischemia arterial, neuralgia due to 432
 - of extremity signs of 435
 - treatment of 433
 - conservative 433
 - surgical, 433
 - chronic trophic changes in 411
 - in etiology of peptic ulcer 306
 - nerve lesion annulation by 411
 - of extremity following aortic resection 435
 - pain due to 411
 - of myocardium *See* Myocardial ischemia
 - rest pain due to 411
 - versus neurologic pain 432
- Islet cell tumors, of pancreas, 267 586
- Isomeric use in tuberculosis 146
- Isotonicity of body fluids 33
- Isotopes half life of concept of 203
 - determining, 203
 - importance in human application, 202
 - ionization densities of 190
 - radioactive half-lives of 203
 - radiations emitted by various, 203
 - uses of diagnostic 202
 - historical comment, 200
 - medical 200
 - in research 201
 - in studying nutritional processes and pathways, 69

Isotopes—continued

- in therapy, 204
- surgical, 202

J

- Jaundice**, bromsulphalein test unreliable in presence of, 225
- causes of, 230
 - common duct stone in, 231
 - differential diagnosis, 230
 - doubtful, daily inspection of stools in, 234
 - diagnostic laparotomy in, 235
 - punch biopsy in, 235
 - value of prolonged observation in, 233
- due to absorption of bile from peritoneal cavity, 235
- hemolytic, bile pigment circulation in, 233
 - history taking in, 230
 - in acute pancreatitis, 263
 - in stricture of bile duct, 248
 - laboratory data in, 233
 - physical examination in, 230
 - serum alkaline phosphatase level in, 209
 - surgical, causes of, 231
- Jejunostomy**, complications in, 101
- feeding, difficulty in achieving satisfactory nutritional intake using, 102
 - gastrointestinal complications, 101
 - peritonitis from, 101
 - for feeding purposes, 101
 - in small bowel fistula, 74
- Jejunum**, congenital anomalies of, 631
- fistula of, management, 326
 - obstruction of, in acute pancreatitis, 263
 - Roux-Y loop of, fistulous tract implanted in, 264
 - secretions of, electrolyte composition of, 75

K

- Keloids**, formation of, in wound healing, 107
- Ketone bodies**, acidotic renal compensation for, 41
- 17-Ketosteroids**, excretion of, greater in presence of masculinizing adrenocortical tumor than with hyperplasia, 573
- fractionation of, in diagnosis of adrenogenital syndrome, 574
 - secretion of, following thermal burns, 155
 - in Cushing's disease, 566
 - urinary excretion of, effects of excision of adrenocortical carcinoma on, 576
 - effects of thoracoplasty on, 21
 - in adrenocortical hyperplasia, 574
- Kidneys**, acidosis of, plasma electrolyte value in, 11
- ammonia production in, 46
 - anomalies of, congenital, 631
 - aging of, 218

Kidneys—continued

- arterial metastases to, explanation of, 178
 - artificial, use in acute renal failure, prognosis of, 81
 - use in acute renal shutdown, 79
 - base conservation by, 16
 - chloride conservation by, 45
 - disease of, location of pain in, 618
 - effects of urinary retention on, 642
 - excretion in stress by, of chloride, 14
 - of potassium, 14
 - of sodium, 14
 - of water, 14
 - excretion of solids, daily, 48
 - fluid conservation by, 48
 - functions of, in glomerular disease, 17
 - in pyelonephritis, 17
 - multiple, 48
 - role in maintenance of volume and composition of body fluid compartments, 15
 - tests of, 47
 - by indigo carmine excretion rate, 17
 - intravenous pycnogram, 47
 - homotransplantation of, 122
 - in trauma, 11
 - injury to, 6, 640
 - diagnosis, 640
 - management, 640
 - role of, in acid-base regulation, 40
 - in compensation for acidic ketone bodies, 41
 - in compensation for chloride loss in vomit, 41
 - in excretion of waste products, 15
 - in maintenance of acid-base balance, 46
 - shut-down of, acute, water intoxication in, 1
 - sodium conservation by, 45
 - tubule *See* Renal tubule
 - vaso-excretor material derived from, 358
- Knife wound**, of artery, case study of, 115
- of chest, 6
- Kondoleon operation**, for lymphedema of leg,

L

- Lacrimation**, defective, familial, 609
- Lactation**, breast physiology during, 593
- role of hypothalamus in, 608
- Lactic acid**, bactericidal action of, 130
- Laparotomy**, diagnostic, in jaundice, 235
- Laryngeal nerves**, recurrent, injury to, in thyroidectomy, 549
- incidence, 549
 - recovery of function after, 549
 - respiratory obstruction caused by, 549
 - results of, 549
- Laryngoscope**, use of, 529
- Laryngospasm**, in anesthesia, 517
- management of, 517
 - use of muscle relaxants in treatment of, 517

- Larynx airway of obstruction hypoxia due to 524
- Lean body mass, 28
- Legs, fluid loss into 56
hydrostatic edema of in venacaval obstruction 57
lower edema of venous origin, 57
lymphedema of treatment 59
venous pressure in, effect of exercise upon 50
effect of quiet standing on 56
- Lens nuclear cataract of pathogenesis 630
- Leriche's syndrome due to terminal aortic obstruction, 432
- Leukocyte count in acute pancreatitis 261
- Leukocytes due to endotoxins 132
- Leukopenia, due to endotoxins 132
- Leukotaxine properties of 100
- Leyn tube 332
- Lidelo strong in adrenogenital syndrome 577
- Limbic system anatomy and functions of 604
areas controlled by 605
elements in 604 606
- Lipase values in pancreatitis 209
- Lipedema, 60
nature of 60
occurrence in women 60
- Lipids metabolism of in stress, 19
- Liver *See also* Hepatic
aging of 218
blood flow in 222
in cirrhosis, 236
gastroduodenal hemorrhage and 310
normal, 235
blood flow through effect of cirrhosis on 236
blood volume in sources, 235
cells, secretory pressure of 242
congenital anomalies of 631
cross perfusion of with oxygenated blood to protect against shock, 358
disease of cirrhosis 228
hepatitis, 228
hepatorenal syndrome 59
hypertension, 50
irreversible shock, 80
parenchymatous disorders, 228
pathologic changes in 228
effects of malnutrition on, 86
examination of in trauma, 7
failure of acute 227
findings in, 227
symptoms of 227
fever due to 369
following operation 59
fat transportation to 95
fatty condition of in starvation stress, 95
functions of 220
bile formation 221
carbohydrate metabolism 220
detoxifying activities, 221
- Liver—continued
effect of starvation on 84
metabolism of fat 221
metabolism of foodstuffs 220
metabolism of protein 221
storage 221
tests for efficiency of 224 225 226
albumin globulin ratio 224
bromsulphalein test 225
comments on 226
flocculation tests 226
history taking in 224
physical examination in 224
serum alkaline phosphatase level, 226
serum bilirubin level 224
serum cholesterol content 225
serum mucoprotein level 226
serum protein level 224
serum prothrombin level 225
urobilinogen in urine 225
functional anatomy of 220
general discussion of 220
hemorrhage of controlling 7
in trauma 11
obstruction of complete bile pigment circulation in, 231
primary anatomic elements of 220
punch biopsy in undiagnosed jaundice 235
relationship between hepatic artery and portal vein in 236
role of in irreversible shock 358
sarcomas 236
vascular architecture of 236
vasodepressor material derived from 358
- Livido reticularis 414
- Lobotomy for relief of pain 619
- Lockjaw *See* Tetanus infection
- Lumbar sympathectomy in arterial occlusion, 433
use in peripheral vascular disorders 613
- Lumen, bowel, fluid sequestration in, in small bowel obstruction 72
- Lungs *See also* Pulmonary
abscess of cavity in similarity to tuberculous abscess, 508
etiology 506
healing rate versus healing rate in tuberculous 507
treatment of mechanics of healing in, 508
anomalies of congenital 631
blood supply to 479
bronchiectasis of generalized 506
capacities of 479
functional residual, 479
inspiratory 479
maximum breathing correlation with vital capacity 468
factors diminishing, 489

Lungs—*continued*

- measurement of, 488
- normal values of, 488
- significance in diagnosis, 489
- measurement of, using spirometer for, 488
- total lung, 479
- vital, 479
- carcinoma of, choice between lobectomy and pneumonectomy in, 494
- changes in, following thermal burns, 157
- cysts of, 504
 - acquired, 504
 - classification of, 504
 - congenital, 504
 - with air-fluid level, 505
 - diabetes mellitus developing due to, 18
 - excision of, 504
 - management of, 504
 - pathophysiologic changes accompanying, 504
 - pneumatocele of, 504
- disease of, lung function test and lung volumes in, 480
- expiratory reserve volume of, 479
- functions of, blood flow defects affecting, 482
 - breathing reserve as index of, 492
 - diffusion defects affecting, 482
 - efficiency of, arterial oxygen content and, 484
 - elements necessary for, 482
 - exercise tolerance as index for, 489
 - fluoroscopic examination in testing, 492
 - importance of blood oxygenation in, 482
- intrapulmonary gas distribution as index of, 492
- maximum breathing capacity as index of, 488
- minute volume as index of, 487
- pulmonary circulation as index of, 493
- reduction of, factors involved in, 482
- tests of, 481
 - in asthma, 491
 - in emphysema, 491
 - in pulmonary fibrosis, 491
 - spiograms in, 492
- tidal volume as index of, 487
- use of x-ray in testing, 492
- ventilation defects of, 482
- vital capacity as index of, 487
 - work of each lung in, 490
- functional anatomy of, 476
- functional residual capacity of, 479
 - measurement of, 481
- homotransplantation of, 122
- inequality of function of pair of, in individual, 190
- inflation of, during anesthesia, manual *versus* mechanical methods of, 525
- inspiratory capacity, 479
- inspiratory reserve volume, 479

Lungs—*continued*

- layers of, through which blood gases pass, 483
 - ligation of pulmonary veins, effect of, 495
 - minute volume of, definition of, 487
 - nonventilated "functional shunt" in, 10
 - nutrition of, pulmonary arterial supply insufficient, 495
 - obstruction of, by mediastinal mass, 503
 - of rat, layers through which blood gases must pass, 483
 - oxygenation of, inadequate, hypoxia due to, 524
 - pathophysiology of, 468
 - postradiation fibrosis of, 200
 - pulmonary segments of, 476
 - residual volume of, 479
 - measurement of, 481
 - sequestered, 632
 - surgery of, changes through the years in, 476
 - tidal volume, 479, 487
 - tissue around, keeping from expansion, 494
 - tissue of, uneven mixing of air in, effect of, 493
 - total capacity, 479
 - venous drainage from, effects of, interruption of, 495
 - vital capacity, 479
 - correlation with maximum breathing capacity, 488
 - definition of, 487
 - diagnostic value, 487
 - limitations of, 488
 - diseases affecting, 488
 - values of, in determining possible success in pulmonary surgery, 488
 - volumes of, 479
 - expiratory reserve, 479
 - inspiratory reserve, 479
 - measurement of, use of spirometer in, 488
 - normal values, 479, 481
 - residual, 479
 - tidal, 479
 - Lymphatics, drainage of, lymphedema in, 59
 - metastases via, 179
 - Lymphedema, 59
 - in surgery, 59
 - massive, treatment of, 59
 - of arm, 60
 - Lymphoid tissue, effect of ACTH on, 184
 - effect of cortisone on, 184
 - Lysogenic bacteria, 127
 - Lysozymes, increase of, in ulcerative colitis, 342
 - of leucocytes, antibacterial nature, 130
 - Lytic cocktail, to block autonomic nervous system, 372
- M**
- Magnesium, ions of, deficit of, 68
 - plasma level, measuring, 69

- Malnutrition** *See also* Starvation
 anorexia in, 86
 decubitus ulcers in 83
 disease resistance lowered in 85
 disturbed gastrointestinal motility in 86
 effects of on convalescence 86
 on enzyme activity 86
 on liver 86
 on success of skin grafts, 83
 hypoproteinemias in 87
 infection susceptibility in 83
 with normal food intake 83
 wound healing poor in 83
- Mammary artery implantation** of to revascularize myocardium 383
- Mannitol infusion** for correction of water excess 88
- Mastectomy radical lymphedema** of arm following, 60
- Meat**, effect of eating on gastric secretion 301
- Mecholyl test** use in phoerchromocytomas 583
- Meckel's diverticulum** 338
 at surgery 634
 complications of 338
 management of 339
- Meconium** 635
 separating from bowel wall 266
- Mediastinum displacement** of effect on venous return 5
- Megacolon congenital**, 312
 etiology of 312
 innervation of 615
 neurosurgery in management of 615
 psychogenic basis of 312
 pull-through operation for 313
 time required for colon to return to normal size after operation 313
 functional type 603
- Megaeosophagus**, 291 *See also* Esophagus; cardio-spasm of
- Megakaryocytes** increase in bone marrow in hyperplenism 284
- Membrane transfer** 60
- Mercaptoundazole** use as an antithyroid drug 541
- Mesenteric artery thrombosis** of 337
- Mesenteric vascular occlusion** 337
 case studies in 337
 sources of 337
- Mesenteric artery of occlusion** of 437
 inferior harmlessness of ligation of in lower aortic surgery 340
- Metabolism**, body effects of thyroid hormones on, 14
 cellular 90
 changes in, effect of on bacterial growth 129
 in shock, 356
 dietary components of functions of 93
 dietary role of carbohydrates in 96
- Metabolism—continued**
 role of fats in 94
 role of proteins in 93
 disturbances of in small bowel insufficiency 324
 wound disruption caused by 114
 during spontaneous anabolic phase of convalescence 26
 factors influencing, age 97
 chilling 120
 climate 97
 endocrines, 97
 injury 97
 lactation 97
 pregnancy 97
 psychological stress, 97
 sex 97
 thyroxine 538
 total pancreatectomy 265
 triiodothyronine 538
 electrolyte in thermal burns 158
 energy at the cellular level 90
 general effect of hypothermia on 373
 in adrenergic-cortical stage of postoperative convalescence 23
 in cortisol withdrawal phase of convalescence 24
 infants' changes in due to anesthesia and operation, 636
 nondietary factors affecting 97
 of body fluid *See also* Body fluid metabolism of hormonal factors in 41
 of carbohydrate 95
 effects of endotoxin on, 133
 in stress, 18
 role of adrenal cortex in 18
 role of potassium in 64
 of fat 94
 and protein interrelationships 95
 of iodine *See* Iodine metabolism
 of lipids, in stress 19
 of nitrogen effect of ACTH on 16
 effect of cortisone on 16
 effects of thiocaplasty on 17
 in trauma 15
 of potassium 63
 of protein and fat interrelationships of 95
 of salt, in stress, 14
 role of adrenal cortex in 43
 of water in stress, 14
 role of adrenal cortex in 43
 protein function in 93
 response of to acute trauma, 11
 to anesthesia-operation 11
 to injury recapitulation of 21
 role of hypothalamus in regulation of 607
- Metals**, essential parts of enzyme molecules, 208
- Metastases**, blood-borne: distribution soil versus blood flow theories in 176

Metastases—*continued*

- mechanism of, 176
- dormant, possible explanation for, 175
- following intravenous injection of tumor cells, 177
- number of, related to duration (not size) of primary tumor, 178
- relation of invasiveness to, 176
- via lymphatics, 179

Mice, parabiotic, 117

Microcuries, 204

Microorganisms *See also* Bacteria

- and host, relationships between, 125
- attenuated, nature of reduced pathogenicity in, 128
- blood stream invasion by, 126
- radiation effects on, 193

Milk agent, role in breast cancer, 168

Milk, skimmed, use in gastrostomy formulas, 101

Miller-Abbot tube, 332

- difficulty of passing into bowel, 332
- use in small bowel fistula, 74

Millicurie, definition of, 204

Milhequivalents, comparison with millimols, 36

- of electrolytes, 37
- use of, instead of milligrams or volumes per cent, 37
- weight, definition of, 36

Milligrams, per cent, in electrolyte values, use of milhequivalents for, 37

Millimol, comparison with milhequivalent, 36

definition of, 35

Milhosmol, definition of, 36

Minerals, in body, 35

amount of, 35

Minute respiratory volume, influence on diffusion volume of inhalation agent across alveolar membrane, 513

Mitral

- commissurotomy *See* Valvulotomy, mitral
- insufficiency, 388
 - fatigability more prominent than dyspnea, 389
 - operations for, 390
 - pathogenesis of, 388
- regurgitation, cardiodynamics in, 389
 - diagnosis of, 389
 - hemodynamics of, 389
 - pathophysiology of, 388
- valve, anatomic defects in, in mitral insufficiency, 388
 - diseases of, 383
 - stenosis of, 383
 - age as factor in operation for, 386
 - aortic stenosis associated with, 386
 - cardiac catheterization findings in, 385, 386
 - cardiac changes in, 384
 - cardiac output reduced in, 383
 - classification of severity of disease of, 385

Mitral—*continued*

- clinical findings in, 385
 - contraindications to surgery in, 385
 - diagnostic features of, 385
 - dyspnea in, 384
 - emboli in, 387
 - indications for valvulotomy in, 385
 - mechanism of pulmonary edema in, 383
 - pathologic changes in heart and lungs in, 383
 - pathophysiology of, 383
 - physiologic effects, 383
 - pulmonary hypertension in, 384
 - pulmonary vascular changes in, 384
 - roentgen findings in, 385
 - size of mitral orifice in, 383
 - symptoms of, 385
 - valvulotomy for, age not necessarily a factor in, 386
- MN groups, in blood typing, 270
- Mol, definition of, 35
- Molecular weight, compared with equivalent weight, 36
- Monckeberg's sclerosis, 431
- Mongolism, pathogenesis of, 630
- Monilia, growth in antibiotic therapy, 147
- Morbidity due to bacterial infections, 126
- Mortality rate, in severe trauma, 5
- Motor cortex, lesions of, in increased intracranial pressure, 623
- Mouth, fungous infections of, following antibiotic therapy, 127
- Mucoproteins, urinary, factors influencing quantity of, 639
- Mucus, barrier to diffusion in inhalation anesthesia, 514
- Murmurs *See* Heart murmurs
- Muscle, arterial metastases to, explanation of, 178
 - effects of cold on, 419
 - effects of starvation on, 84
 - in trauma, 11
 - participation, in stress response, 20
 - tone, maintenance, role of walking in, 57
 - wound of, healing, 108
- Muscular strength, effect of starvation on, 84
- Musculature, aging of, 218
- Mutation, multiple, theory of, in etiology of cancer, 171
- Mycotic aneurysm, due to infection, 411
- Myocardial
 - contraction, length increased by calcium, 376
 - disease, use of ballistocardiograph in, 352
 - ischemia, 380
 - ECG changes in, 380
 - incidence of, 380
 - mechanism producing, 380
 - operations for, 381
 - revascularization procedures, general comment on, 383

Myocardial—continued

- surgery on occluded artery 381
- Myocardium cardiopexy to increase blood supply to 382
- operations to increase vascularity of 381

N

- Nasogastric tube for liquid alimentation, 100
- Nausea complicating spinal anesthesia 523
- Neck, congenital anomalies of 631
- Necrosis hemorrhagic due to endotoxins 132
- Neocortex 604
- Neomycin disadvantages of 141
- damage 141
- effectiveness of against Proteus 141
- properties of 141
- uses of 141
- Neoplasms autonomous, in etiology of cancer 173
- conditioned in etiology of cancer 173
- Nephron, functions of 46
- Nephrosis albumin loss in urine in 38
- basal metabolic rate in 53
- lower nephron in trauma 5
- Nephrotic necrosis renal failure due to 76
- Nerve(s)
- impulses effect on corticoid secretion, 11
- injuries to association with arterial injuries, 116
- due to hypoglycemia attacks, 588
- due to vertebral compression fractures in Cushing's disease 570
- in hyperinsulinism 588
- in the incubated 6
- supply of pancreas, 250
- tissue effect of cold on 119
- transplantation of 119
- wound of healing 110
- Nervous
- control of pancreatic secretion 232
- system aging of 219
- autonomic, clinical classification of autonomic dysfunction, 610
- dysfunctions of clinical classification of 610
- emotional 609 610
- gastrointestinal, 609
- genitourinary 609
- metabolic 609
- organic, 610
- peripheral afferent, 610
- peripheral efferent, 610
- reflex, 610
- emotional responses mediated through 607
- general discussion on 599 604
- hypothalamus as integrative center of 605
- limbic system of 604
- neocortex of 604
- reaction to stress of 599
- role of sympathin in 612
- surgery of 612
- syndromes characterized by pain, 610

Nervous—continued

- vascular system of surgery of 612
- importance in human organism of 509
- in trauma, 11
- lesions of in malnutrition 86
- role in surgical practice 509
- Neuralgia due to arterial ischemia, 432
- Neuroendocrine response to thermal burns, 154
- to trauma 11
- Neurofibromatosis, general discussion 626
- relationship of pheochromocytoma to 582
- Neurohypophysis anatomy of 43
- Neurologic evaluation importance of in trauma 6
- Neurologic pain ischemia versus 432
- Neurosis obesity as component of 89
- Neutropenia due to hypersplenism 285
- Nicotine addiction 429
- Nitrogen balance of effect of testosterone on, 16
- positive postoperative establishment of 98
- carbohydrate sparing of 10
- daily balances of 94
- excretion of effect of ACTH on 16
- effect of testosterone on 98
- following fracture 15
- following thermal burns 155
- fecal increase of after total pancreatectomy 235
- metabolism of changes in shock 356
- factors influencing ACTH 16
- cortisone 16
- thoracoplasty 17
- in trauma, 15
- negative balance of 80
- positive balance of 80
- Nitrous oxide contraindicated in anemic patient 520
- concentration of in use as anesthetic 510
- relaxation induced by insufficient for surgery 519
- use in inhalation anesthesia, 519
- Nodes lymph as mechanical barrier to cancer spread 179
- Norepinephrine blood pressure response to 363
- effect on renal tubular function, 47
- response to trauma 12
- use in management of shock 4 362
- hazards in using 362
- Supercaine anesthetic action length of 522
- use in spinal anesthesia 522
- Nutrition *See also* Starvation
- deficiencies of wound disruption caused by 115
- effect on incidence of atherosclerosis, 218
- excess of 88 *See also* Obesity Overnutrition
- importance of in surgical patients 83
- in etiology of cancer 171
- in surgery 83
- inadequate surgical problems arising in 85
- problems of following gastric resection 99

Nutrition—continued

- re-alimentation, hazards of, 96
- requirements of, factors influencing, 99
- special problems in surgery related to, general comment on, 98
- studies on, in postoperative patients, 98

Nutritional

- disturbances, following gastric operations, 318
- edema, 55, 87
- processes, studying, balance study in, 89
 - calorimetry in, 89
 - isotopic technics, 89
 - methods of, 89
 - respiratory quotient in, 89

O*Obesity, adverse effects of, in surgical patients, 100*

- as component of neurosis, 89
- causes of, 88
- due to excessive caloric intake, 88
- due to hypothalamic injury, 92
- syndrome, 88
- wound healing and, 112

*Occipital lobe lesions, in increased intracranial pressure, 623**Occlusion, of aorta, selection of cases for surgery in, 435**Occlusive disease, of arteries, diagnosis of, 433*

- lumbar sympathectomy in, 433
- management of, 433
- resection of occluded segment with graft, 434
- treatment of, 433

Oliguria, acute cardiovascular changes in, 77

- cerebral dysfunction in, 77
- clinical manifestations of, 76
- gastrointestinal symptoms of, 77
- management of, 76
- treatment of, principles, 77

Operations, common, blood lost in various, 357

- hypertension following, 9
- metabolic response to, 11
- plasma level of free hydrocortisone during, 25
- thyroid activity following, 14

*Opiates, use in pancreatitis, 262**Oral tube feeding, formula for, 101**Oscillometry, in peripheral vascular disease, 416**Osmol, definition of, 36**Osmolar (salt) deficit, diagnosis of, 67*

- estimation of, 67
- illustrative case, 69

- relationships, normal, 37

*Ovary, disease of, location of pain in, 618**Overnutrition, deleterious effects of, 88**Owren's scheme of blood coagulation, 274**Oxygen, arterial saturation, and carbon dioxide content, comparison of, value in testing lung function, 487**Oxygen—continued*

- low, significance of, 485
- carbon dioxide, and inhalation anesthetic agent, ideal transport of, 513
- concentration of, effect on bacterial invasion, 130
- consumption of, effect of hypothermia on, 373
- content, of arteries, measurement to determine lung function efficiency, 484
- normal, 485
- values expressed in, 484
- desaturation, arterial, in tetralogy of Fallot, 400
- effect on heart rate and force, 375
- inadequate transportation by blood, hypoxia due to, 524
- saturation, arterial, diminished *See also* Cyanosis
- effect of exercise on, 486
- significance in indicating pulmonary lesions, 485
- tension, arterial, effect on respiration, 470
- of skin, information obtained from, 417
- measurement of, 417
- normal arterial, 485

*Oxytetracycline, 140***P***Pain, abdominal, 618*

- central, 618
- chronic, effect on emotional stability, 616
- deep, 617
 - causes of, 617
 - types of, 617
- diagnostic value of, 616
- distribution of, in gallbladder colic, 243
- in acute head injuries, relief of, 624
- mechanism of, 616
- mediation of, 616
- nature of, 616

*originating in pancreas, reference to body surfaces, 250**phantom limb, 618**psychic component of, 616**referred, 617*

- causes of, 617

relief of, opiates for, 618

- surgery for, 618, 619

*role as a defense mechanism, 616**superficial, 616**types of, 616**visceral, defense reactions against, 616**Palate, cleft, pathogenesis of, 630**Pancreas, anatomic relationships, 250*

- annular, and its management, 633

*blood supply of, 250**carcinoma of, 267**diseases of, 258*

- location of pain in, 618

Pancreas—continued

- endocrine disorders of 556
- fat necrosis in 261
- fibrocystic disease of 266
- in trauma, 11
 - examination of 7
- insulin-secreting tumors of 267
- islet-cell tumors of 267 556
 - hyperplasia 557
 - incidence of 557
 - pathology of 558
 - size of relation to severity of disease 557
- nerve supply of 250
- pain originating in, reference to body surfaces, 250
- radicles pressure required to rupture 250
- reaction of formidability of 266
- secretion of analysis of 257
 - technic of 257
 - value of 257
- external, 251
- use in diagnosis of disease 257
- superficial anatomy of 250
- topography of 251
- tumors of 267
 - blood clotting in, 258
 - ulcerogenic 267

Pancreaticectomy total, effects of 254

- effects upon digestion and absorption of carbohydrate 255
- fecal fat increase following, 255
- fecal nitrogen increase following, 255
- indications for 254
- metabolic effects, 255

Pancreatic

- disease, study of use of labeled fat in, 256
 - fatula, effects of duration of sepsis in, 74
 - fluid losses in, 74
 - function tests, 256
 - blood clotting, 257
 - duodenal drainage 257
 - pancreatic secretion analysis, 257
 - serum amylase level, 256
 - serum lipase level, 256
 - urinary diastase 257
 - juice 251
 - composition of 251
 - conversion of trypsinogen to trypsin by 252
 - daily volume lost 49
 - electrolyte composition of 75
 - enzymes of 251
 - volume of 251
 - secretion, effect of diet on, 253
 - effects of drugs on, 253
 - effect of vagotomy on, 254
 - nervous control of 252
 - regulation of 252
- Pancreatitis, acute abscess formation in, 262**

Pancreatitis—continued

- anticholinergic drugs in, 262
 - clinical findings in, 260
 - "common channel" theory of etiology, 258
 - complications of 262
 - edematous, 258
 - clinical findings in 260
 - etiology of 258
 - bile flow in 250
 - initial defect in, 250
 - factors patients with have in common 250
 - fluid therapy of 262
 - gastric suction in 263
 - gross pathologic findings in 261
 - hemorrhage 258
 - jaundice in 263
 - jejunal obstruction in 263
 - leukocyte count in 261
 - management of conservative 262
 - surgical, 262
 - pancreatic fistulas in 263
 - pseudocysts in, 263
 - relief of pain in 262
 - roentgen examination in 261
 - serum bilirubin level in 261
 - serum calcium level in 261
 - shock in 262
 - sympathetic block in management of 262
 - types of 258
- chronic relapsing, 264**
- cholecystojejunostomy in treatment of 266
 - diagnosis of 261
 - findings in, 264
 - gastric resection in treatment of 265
 - removal of gallstones in, 265
 - sphincterotomy in treatment of 265
 - sympathectomy in treatment of 266
 - treatments for 265
 - vagotomy in treatment of 265
- diagnosis of use of enzymes in 260**
- etiology of theory concerning 250
 - experimental, pressure of required in bile in junction through ducts, 259
- gallstones and 260**
- hemorrhagic acute blood clotting in, 258
 - clinical findings in 260
 - increased vagal tonus in 260
 - necrotizing 261
 - role of enzymes in 268
 - serum amylase level in, 256
 - serum lipase level in, 256
 - sphincterotomy for 248
 - urinary diastase in 257
- Pancreatoduodenectomy / methods of reconstruction following, 267**
- Pancreomyxin, role in pancreatic secretion 253**
- Pancytopenia due to hypersplenism 255**

- Para-aminobenzoic acid*, role as coenzyme, 208
- Parabiosis*, early use of, 116
of mice, 117
types of, 117
- Paracentesis*, effect in lowering femoral venous pressure, 57
- Paralysis*, familial periodic *See* Familial periodic paralysis
- Paramedian incision*, in abdominal exploration, 6
- Paraphymosis*, hyaluronidase in treatment of, 212
- Parasympathetic nerves*, peripheral distribution of, 609
postganglionic fibers of, substance liberated by stimulation of, 612
- Parathormone*, actions of, 554
effects of, in idiopathic hypoparathyroidism on calcium and phosphorus metabolism, 555
on calcium metabolism, 555
on phosphorus metabolism, 555
in body fluid metabolism, 43
role in regulation of phosphorus serum level, 554
role in regulation of serum calcium level, 555
secretion of, regulation by parathyroid glands, 554
use in hypoparathyroidism, 550
- Parathyroid adenoma*, 557
case studies of, 560
locations of, 559
operative exposure for, 559
seldom more than one, 559
surgical excision of, postoperative care, 559
prognosis, 560
tetany following, 559
with massive bone involvement but without renal calculi, case study of, 562
with renal stones but without bone lesions, case study of, 560
- Parathyroid glands*, general discussion of, 554
historical notes on, 554
normal physiology, 554
parathormone secretion regulated by, 554
- Parathyroid hyperplasia*, 559
incidence of, 559
management of, 559
- Paravertebral sympathetic nerve block*, 439
- Parenchyma*, blood supply to, 479
changes in, in biliary obstruction, 229
disorders of, 228
- Parenteral trypsin*, therapeutic usage, 214
- Paresthesias*, in scalenus anticus syndrome, 426
- Parietal lobe*, lesions of, in increased intracranial pressure, 623
- PAS*, use in tuberculosis, 116
- Patent ductus arteriosus* *See* Ductus arteriosus, patent
- Pathogenicity*, nature of, 128
of tuberculosis microorganisms, 128
- Pathogenicity—continued*
reduced, nature of, in attenuated microorganisms, 128
- Penicillin*, administration of, 139
antibacterial spectrum of, 139
dosage, 139
post-therapy recovery, 139
properties of, 139
selective affinity of, 139
uses of, 139
- Penicillinase*, produced by bacteria, 139
- Pentobarbital*, use in preanesthetic medication, 512
- Pentothal sodium*, administration of, 520
advantages of, 520
death from, case study of, 521
disadvantages of, 520
effects of, 520
excretion of, 522
expert handling in anesthesia necessary, 520
improper administration, case study, 520
physiological effects of, 520
storage in depot tissues, 520
use in intravenous anesthesia, 520
- Pepsin*, levels of, in blood, 304
in urine, 304
secretion of, 304
- Peptic esophagitis* *See* Esophagitis, peptic
- Peptic ulcer*, 304
"channel" type, nausea and vomiting in, 308
complications of, 310
constitutional factors in etiology of, 305
diagnosis of, value of history in, 308
duodenal obstruction in, 310
etiology of, 304
endocrine factors in, 306
ischemia in, 306
motility factor in, 306
role of gastric secretion in, 304
gastric resection for, subtotal, 313
gastric *versus* duodenal, 308
bleeding in, mortality rate associated with, 311
gastroenterostomy for, 313
hemorrhage in, 310
in cirrhosis, 238
in hyperparathyroidism, 558
incidence of, change in male-female ratio, factors in, 602
management of, anticholinergic drugs in, 309
diet in, 309
medical treatment, failure to respond to, 310
physiological principles, 309
use of atropine-like drugs in, 309
vagotomy in, 311
necessity of gastric acidity in formation of, 310
operations for, considerations in selection of, 315
gastric resections, complications of, 319

Peptic ulcer—continued

- physiologic pros and cons 313
- vagotomy with or without gastroenterostomy or pyloroplasty 314
- pain of character 307
 - in back causes 307
 - location of 307
 - mechanism of 306
 - requirements for 307
 - sympathectomy for 307
 - transmission 307
- use of Bantline in relief of 310
- pathogenesis of 301
- perforation of 311
 - management of 312
 - sequelae of 312
 - serum amylase in, 312
- psychogenic factors in etiology of 303
- pyloric obstruction in 310
- recurrence of after Billroth gastric operation, 317
- role of stress in 301
- sedation in 309

*Perianthitis nodosa 431**Pericardiectomy in management of pericarditis 379*

- Pericardial tamponade acute and chronic constrictive pericarditis 377*
 - benefit of aspiration of blood 378
 - case study of 378
 - causes of 376
 - clinical findings in, 378
 - management of 378
 - shock due to 378
 - pathophysiology of 376

*Pericardiectomy limited exercise after 380**Pericarditis chronic constrictive and acute pericardial tamponade 377*

- causes of 379
- etiology of 379
- operation for 379
 - hazards of 379
- pericardiectomy in management of 379
- treatment of 379
- constrictive due to hemopericardium 378
- following pneumonia 379

Peripheral

- arterial disease skin color in 414
- arterial ischemia, trophic alterations in skin in 414
- arterial occlusion arterial "head of pressure" in 413
- vascular resistance carotid sinus syndrome 355
 - changes in, 354
 - decreased causes of 354
 - increased, causes of 354
 - postural reflexes of 354
 - role in maintenance of blood pressure 354
- vascular vessels, disease of diagnosis of 410

Peripheral—continued

- pathophysiology of 410
- therapeutic principles in treatment of 410
- vasodilatation production of 351
- peripheral vascular disease, angiography 415
 - arterial palpation in value of 414
 - auscultation in, 415
 - diagnosis of 410 412
 - history taking in 410
 - ocillometry in 416
 - oxygen tension in 417
 - pain in 411
 - importance in diagnosis of 412
 - physical examination in 412
 - plethysmography in 416
 - reflex vasodilatation in, 417
 - skin color in 412
 - changes in 413
 - diagnostic value of 413
 - skin temperature changes in 414
 - measurements in 417
 - swelling of extremities in 415
 - significance of 415
 - unequal length of extremities in, 415
- Peritonitis bile 235
- due to appendiceal rupture bacterial flora of 341
 - due to jejunostomy feeding, 101
 - use of ACTH in 145
 - use of cortisone in 145
- Personality changes, in increased intracranial pressure 623
- pH acidity expressed as, 38
 - alkalinity expressed as 38
 - concentration of body fluids, regulation of, essential to life 37
- decrease of in phagocytes following engulfment of bacteria 128
- definitions of 37
- effects upon antibacterial defenses, 130
- measurement of 37
- of blood, normal maintenance of 38
 - regulation of 37
- Phagocytosis, in body surfaces and in edema fluid 120
- Pharyngeal airway obstruction of hypoxia caused by 524
- Phenylketonuria role of enzymes of 208
- Pheochromocytomas 581
 - abdominal mass in flank in, 582
 - clinical findings in 582
 - diagnosis of 582
 - adrenolytic agents used in, 583
 - laboratory tests in 583
 - provocative tests in 583
 - excision of basal anesthetic prior to 583
 - fever due to 580
 - gastrointestinal hemorrhage associated with 582

Pheochromocytoma—*continued*

- historical notes on, 581
- hypertension due to, 581
- incidence of, 582
- incidental, hazards of, at operation, 586
- locating tumor in, 584
- management of, 584
- modes of death in, 582
- nature of, 581
- pathology of, 581
- peptic ulceration with, 306
- relationship to neurofibromatosis, 582
- resection of, shock following, 585
- signs and symptoms of, 582
- with functioning metastatic lesions, effect of
adrenolytic drugs in, 584

Phlebitis *See also* Thrombophlebitis

- arterial spasm due to, 438
 - diagnosis of, 457
 - deep, obstruction by, value of phlebography in
demonstrating, 453
 - migratory, in thromboangitis obliterans, 427
- Phlebography, lower limb, 452
- value of, in demonstrating obstruction by deep
phlebitis, 453
 - in demonstrating recanalization of thrombosed
or ligated veins, 453

Phlebothrombosis, 456

Phlegmasia cerulea dolens, 462

Phosphate blood buffer system, 39

Phosphate bond, energy release from, 90

Phosphorus, excretion of, effects of parathormone
on, 555

metabolism, effect of parathormone on, 555

radioactive, use in localization of brain tumors,
204

serum level, normal range of, 555

parathormone in regulation of, 554

reciprocal relationship to that of calcium, 555

Photochemical reaction, in tissue, due to x-ray
bombardment, 191

Physical examination, in trauma, 2

Physical training, effect on blood volume, 353

"Pickwickian" syndrome, 88

Piperoxan, use in diagnosis of pheochromocytoma,
583

Pitresin, edema caused by, 59

use in management of diabetes insipidus, 45

Pituitary, anterior, 531

adenoma of, acidophilic, 533

basophil, 533

effects of, 533

chromophobe, 534

cosinophil, 533

hormones of, functions, 532

hormones secreted by, survey of, 531

hypofunction of, 532

tumors of, 533

differential diagnosis of, 534

Pituitary—*continued*

effects of, 533

management of, 534

Pituitary gland, 531

activity of, TSH secretion, 538

effects of aging on, 218

enlargement of, clinical findings in, 623

humoral transmission of impulses to, 13

hypertrophy of, produced by thyroidectomy, 552

in etiology of cancer, 170

lesions of, in increased intracranial pressure, 623

necrosis of, causes of, 532

neural transmission of impulses to, 13

regulation of secretin formation by, 251

response to trauma, 12

role in body fluid metabolism, 42

secretions of, hypothalamus in regulation of,
608

stimulation of, in stress, 13

Pituitary, posterior, 534

hormones secreted by, 534

hyperfunction of, effects of, 534

hypofunction of, effects of, 534

Plasma, chemistry values of, changes in burn pa-
tients, 161

CO₂ combining power, 38

corticoid levels, following thermal burns, 155

cortisone levels in, 636

electrolyte levels in, in acidosis, 41

in stress, 15

expanders, use in hemorrhagic shock, 362

level, of free hydrocortisone, during operation,
25

potassium level, altering, 79

normal, significance of, 71

proteins, as blood buffers, 39

reduced, in hepatic edema, 59

sodium levels, abnormal, etiology of, 62

changes in burn patient, 160

elevated, in salt excess, 53

mechanism of, 62

in potassium intoxication, 79

low, management of, 62

mechanisms of, 61

syndromes of, 61

normal, estimating, 61

value in fluid therapy, 61

thromboplastin, deficiency of, treatment for, 277

volume, changes in burn patients, 160

in salt and in water depletion, 51

water, 32 *See also* Blood plasma

volume of, influence of colloid osmotic pres-
sure on, 34

maintenance of, 34

relation to body water, 32

relation to body weight, 32

Plastic materials, used for bridging ar-
fects, 121

- Platelet blood transfusion of** 270
 count rise in after splenectomy 283
- Pneumathography technique of** 416
 use as an experimental tool 416
 value in clinical practice 416
- Pneumatocele pulmonary** 501
- Pneumomediastinum in rupture of esophagus** 294
- Pneumonecrosis of consolidation of remaining lung following, significance of** 493
 thoracoplasty following, necessity for 493
- Pneumothorax, 500**
 tension, management of 474
 use of needle in 510
- Polycthemia in pulmonary arteriovenous shunt** 409
 in tetralogy of Fallot 401
 vera in thrombosis of mesenteric artery 337
- Polymyxin properties of** 141
 toxicity of 141
 uses of 141
- Polyp neurogenic intussusception due to,** 626
- Polypoma, multiple: congenital of alimentary tract** 330
 of colon, 339
- Pontocaine advantages of** 522
 length of anesthetic action 522
- Popliteal artery occlusion of** 436
- Popliteal vein, ligation of in stasis ulcer results of** 459
- Portacaval shunt for portal hypertension** 238
 in treatment of ascites 238
 percutaneous splenic portal venograms in 230
 proper procedure to employ 239
 results of 239
- Postcholecystectomy syndrome** 247
 causes of 247
 nature of 247
- Postcommisurotomy syndrome** 387
 clinical findings in 387
- Postphlebitic syndrome** 458
 symptoms of 458
- Postphlebitic ulcers operative treatment of** 459
- Postural reflexes, arterial hypotension due to malfunction of** 355
 in vascular peripheral resistance 354
- Potassium as cardioplegic agent in open heart surgery** 63
 cellular concentration of 31
 chloride infusions in treatment of potassium deficiency 66
 concentration of in cells, factors dependent upon, 63
 deficiency of as cause of metabolic alkalosis 65
 causes, 65
 clinical, 65
 etiology of 65
 clinical findings in 66
 correction of 63
- Potassium—continued**
 diagnosis of 65
 in pyloric obstruction diagnosis of 70
 in rats, cardiac lesions due to 17
 signs of 66
 symptoms of 66
 time required to correct 66
 treatment of 66
 deposition of in glycogen formation 64
 effects of on nitrogen metabolism 18
 on the heart 64 376
 influence of other ions on, 64
 from adrenocortical hormones increased excretion of 44
 intoxication calcium ion in 79
 ECG in 78
 effects upon heart 63
 in acute renal failure treatment of 78
 management of 78
 plasma sodium level in 79
 signs of 78
 use of antibiotics in 79
 iodide use in management of hyperthyroidism 545
 ions, deficit 68
 losses of daily average 63
 metabolism 63
 general physiology of 63
 miscellaneous effects of 63
 physiologic relationship to sodium 64, 65
 plasma level of altering 79
 effects of infusions of alkalies and acids on, 65
 effects upon electrocardiograms 64
 normal, significance of 71
 oral ion-exchange resins to alter 70
 pool in normal man, 63
 reciprocal physiologic relationship with sodium 376
 renal excretion of 66
 in serum, 14
 replacement of 66
 movement of hydrogen and sodium ions out of cells in, 65
 requirements of for tissue protein formation, 64
 role of in carbohydrate metabolism 64
 in familial periodic paralysis, 63
 in tissue formation 17
 shifts of between burned and unburned tissues, 158
 in familial periodic paralysis 63
 therapy precautions to be used in 66
 transfer across cell membrane effect of adrenocortical hormones on 44
 use of in management of ventricular fibrillation, 376
 in treatment of ventricular fibrillation 63
 to arrest heart during open surgery 376
 wound healing and 113

- Poudiage, to increase blood flow to myocardium, 382
- Pleianesthetic medication, 512
- Predeterminism, biologic, as factor in cancer growth, 181
- Pregnancy, blood volume changes in, 354
breast changes in, 593
effect on tensile strength of healing laparotomy wounds in rats, 113
malnutrition in, effect on offspring, 85
thyrotoxicosis in, management of, 545
toxemia of, hormonal nature, 43
- Premature infants *See* Infants, premature
- Premenstrual tension syndrome, water retention in, 43
- Prioperative medication, in children, 637
- Pressure sores, in malnutrition, 85
- Procaine, length of anesthetic action, 522
- Profunda femoris, obstruction of, pain associated with, 433
- Propylthiouracil, use as an antithyroid drug, 541
use in treatment of thyrotoxicosis, 546
- Prostate, cancer of, acid phosphatase level elevation in, 182
adenectomy in management of, 182
diethylstilbestrol in treatment of, 182
fibrinolysin in, 209
hormonal therapy of, 181
pain from, alleviation, 182
retardation by castration, 182
serum acid phosphatase level in, 209
use of estrogens in treatment of, 182
hypertrophy of, as cause of urinary retention, 642
- Protein, and fat, interrelationships between metabolism of, 95
bound iodine level, of serum, relationship to thyroid activity, 542
deficiency, wound disruption caused by, 114
equilibrium of body, maintenance of, 93
fabrication of, amino acids in, 87
food value of, relation of amino acid content to, 94
foods, primary function in metabolism, 93
formation, in tissue, potassium requirements for, 64
hydrolysates, use in intravenous feeding, 102
isotopic technic for determining role of amino acids in, 90
metabolism of, by liver, 221
factors influencing, 96
role of hypothalamus in, 608
molecules, relative dimensions, 55
requirements, factors affecting, 93
minimal daily, 93
whole, amino acids *versus*, in nutrition, 91
- Prothrombin, consumption of, reduced, mechanism and pathogenesis of, 278
deficiency of, correction of, 275
- Prothrombin—*continued*
effects on blood coagulation, 277
treatment, 277
properties of, 275
time, importance in screening hemorrhagic diseases, 277
lowered, in hepatic disease, 225
prolonged, mechanism and pathogenesis of, 278
- Prothrombinase, role of, in clotting mechanism, 274
- Proximal loop, obstruction of, causes of, 319
following gastric resection, 319
hazards of, 320
- Pseudocysts, pancreatic, in acute pancreatitis, 263
marsupialization of, 263
- Pseudohermaphroditism, hormonal and genetic, distinguishing between, 575
in females in utero, 573
- Pulmonary *See also* Lungs
arterial pressure, elevation of, in absence of heart disease, 493
mechanism preventing full head of, from being thrust on alveolar wall capillaries, 497
necessity to consider before resecting a lung, 493
- arteriovenous shunts, 498
cyanosis in, causes of, 499
signs and symptoms of, 499
treatment of, 499
- artery, and aorta, transposition of, general discussion of problem, 410
and aorta, transposition of, life expectancy without surgery, 410
transposition of, surgical correction, 410
blood pressure in, 495
dilatation of, in pulmonic stenosis, 403
- atelectasis, following operations, 10
- bleeding, severe, 510
- blood vessels, effect of occlusion on, 495
- circulation, 484
abnormalities of, 494
arteriolar tone theory of, effects of stimulation on, 497
as index of lung function, 493
differences between systemic circulation and, 494
effects of bronchospasm on, 497
effects of respiration on, 496
passivity school of, effects of stimulation on, 497
role of bronchomotor tone in regulation of, 496
- compensation, in regulations of blood pH, 39
- compliance, 10
diminished, following operations, 10
- conditions, representative, pathophysiology of certain, 493

Pulmonary—continued

- "cripple" 491
- decoloration, findings in 491
- indications for 491
- spiograms of patient with empyema before and after operation 490
- value of 491
- disability: distinction between pulmonary insufficiency and 485
- edema, acute causes of 493
- management of 493
- signs and symptoms of 493
- during surgery: management of 386
- in heart failure 38
- role of bronchial tone in prevention of development of 497
- role of hypothalamus in genesis of 609
- embolism 499
- cause of death from obscure 499
- chronic pattern of 500
- incidence of 500
- clinical patterns of 500
- incidence of 500
- lack of knowledge about 499
- massive case study of 500
- prognosis of 500
- mortality rate in 499
- subacute course in, 500
- incidence of 500
- sudden death pattern of 500
- emphysema, 501
- acute definition of 501
- chronic definition of 501
- etiology of 501
- treatment of 502
- clinical findings in 501
- disability in relationship of arterial hypoxemia to 501
- pathological findings in 501
- fibrosis, lung function tests in 491
- function: aging effect upon 218
- arterial carbon dioxide content in 486
- arterial oxygen content in 484
- role in regulation of blood pH 40
- hypertension: *See* Hypertension pulmonary
- infection: chronic 506 *See also under specific disorders*
- clubbing of fingers and toes: symptomatic of 503
- insufficiency: distinction between pulmonary disability and 485
- lobes, number required for survival 494
- resection, order of ligation of pulmonary artery and vein in, 496
- segments, anatomically distinct elements of pulmonary tissue 478
- anatomy of 478
- bronchi of 477
- visualization by bronchoscope 477

Pulmonary—continued

- functional anatomy of 477
- suppuration: pathogenesis of 472
- tissue: excision of respiratory dysfunction due to 493
- vagal reflexes: effects on respiration, 470
- veins: ligation of effect on lungs, 495
- transposition of 498
- general nature of the problem 498
- ventilation: *See also* Respiration
- chemical control of 470
- control of 498
- nervous, 498
- expiratory: nervous control centers of 468
- inspiratory: nervous control center of 468
- intrapleural pressure: importance in 473
- mechanics of, 472
- nervous control of 468
- respiratory center: spontaneous activity of 460
- Pulmonic stenosis: congenital, 493
- angiography in 494
- cardiac catheterization in 494
- definition of 493
- location of stenosis, 493
- patent foramen ovale associated with 494
- pathophysiology of 493
- post-stenotic dilatation of pulmonary artery in 493
- surgical correction in 494
- prognosis following 494
- isolated (pure): *See* Pulmonic stenosis congenital
- Pulsating hematoma: *See* Hematoma pulsating
- Pulses, changes in: increased intracranial pressure 622
- femoral: absence of significance 415
- of foot: delayed following grafting 435
- absence: significance of 415
- rate: changes in with increased intracranial pressure 622
- Pulsus paradoxus, 379
- Pump-oxygenator: DeWall Lillehei, 499
- Purpura, idiopathic thrombocytopenic 282
- abnormal coagulogram in, 283
- bone marrow in 282
- diagnosis of 282
- management of 282
- splenectomy for results, 283
- Pus, intrapleural collections, use of streptokinase and streptodornase in treatment of 212
- Pyelogram as test of renal function 47
- in trauma, 3
- Pyelonephritis: kidney function in, 47
- Pyloroplasty for correction of pyloric stenosis, 313
- Pylorus, obstruction of: in peptic ulcer 310
- increased gastric secretion in, 49
- not a surgical emergency 70

- Pylorus—continued*
potassium deficit in, diagnosis of, 70
with vomiting, case history of, 70
fluid imbalance resulting from, 69
- Pyocyaneus infections, polymyxin in therapy for, 142
- Pyopneumothorax, hypertensive, clinical findings in, 508
massive left, 474
- Pyrogens, represented by endotoxins, 133

Q

- Quinine, urinary excretion of, effect of gastric acid on, 303
- Quininium cations, effect of gastric secretions on, 303

R

- Rabbits, resistance to human tuberculosis bacterium, 128
- Radiation, 188
alpha rays, 189
as a tool in study of genetics, 193
bacteriophage activation in, 127
beta rays, 190
biochemical changes produced by, 191
biologic effects, similarity between x-rays and gamma rays, 189
cancer caused by, 194
carcinogenesis due to, 200
cumulative mortality in dogs, 198
death due to, causes of, 195
dosage units, 197
dosages, effects of various, 195
effects of, in genetics, 193
on cell structure, 193
on chromosomal structure, 193
on enzymes, 193
on microorganisms, 193
variations and how to get them, 190
emitted by various radioactive isotopes, 203
energy transfer, mechanisms of, 190
gamma rays, 190
hematopoietic syndrome, 194
historical aspects of, 188
hyperacute syndrome, 194
injury, protection against, 196
interaction of matter and, 192
intestinal syndrome, 194
ionizing effects of, 191
of tissue, wound healing following, 198
physiologic balance in, 196
physiologic effects in mammals, 194
radiobiologic effects, modification of, 196
sickness, findings in, 194
substances counteracting effects of, 197
syndromes, 194
therapeutic sources of, 189

- Radiation—continued*
therapeutic use, bowel injury due to, 199
clinical considerations, 198
effects on various types of malignant tissue, 199
with fibrosis of lung following, 200
translation of physical energy to photochemical change, 191
types of, 188
x-rays, 190
tolerances among mammals, 195
- Radioactivity artificial, production of, 202
- Radiobiologic effect, in simple systems, modification of, 196
- Radioiodine, conversion to thyroxine, rate of, as measurement of thyroid activity, 542
response to, in treatment of hyperthyroidism, 546
scintigram following administration of, 543
thyroid crisis as result of massive dose of, 546
uptake, by thyroid gland, 542
measurement of, conversion ratio variant of, 542
conversion ratio variant, advantages in determining thyroid activity, 542
disadvantages, 542
of thyroid gland, as measurement of activity of, 542
use in management of hyperthyroidism, 545, 546
limitations, 546
- Radiomimetic effect, of alkylating agents, 185
- Raynaud's disease, association with other vasospastic phenomena, 423
attacks of, 422
mechanism, 422
cervical sympathectomy in management of, 424
clinical findings in, 422
cold sensitivity in, 422
diagnosis of, 422
differential diagnosis of, 423
distinguished from Raynaud's phenomenon, 421
incidence of, preponderantly in females, 424
management of, 424
conservative therapy, 424
operative treatment, 424
pain of, 411
physiologic basis of, 422
skin color changes in, 423
sympathectomy in, reasons for failure of, 425
type to choose in management of, 421
- Raynaud's phenomenon, conditions associated with, 423
definition of, 421
delineation of, 421
distinguished from Raynaud's disease, 421
secondary, 423
skin color in, 412

Raynaud's phenomenon—*continued*
 superimposed on thromboangitis obliterans 428
 thromboangitis obliterans in 429
 Raynaud's syndrome neurosurgery for treatment of 612
 Re-alimentation hazards of 96
 Rebreathing, circulatory alterations produced by 526
 Recanalization of thrombosed or ligated veins demonstration by phlebography 453
 Rectum, congenital anomalies of 631
 injury of management of 7
 Recurrent laryngeal nerves, injury to in thyroidectomy 519
 Red cells, effect of infections on 134
 fragility of in blood dyscrasias, 284
 Regional enteritis. *See* Enteritis, regional
 Regtine use in diagnosis of pheochromocytomas, 584
 Renal. *See also* Kidney
 decompensation, acute 74
 causes of 74
 edema, 58
 mechanism of formation 58
 failure *See also* Renal shutdown
 acute azotemia in, treatment of 78
 anemia in 80
 clinical signs of 76
 diuretic phase of 76
 hemorrhage in 80
 neuromuscular dysfunction in 77
 oliguric phase of 76
 potassium intoxication in treatment of 78
 stage of diuresis in, 80
 treatment caloric intake 78
 fluid intake in 77
 principles 77
 function changes of in burn patients, 162
 effect of hormones on, in stress, 12
 in infants 636
 practical measurement of 47
 role in maintenance of volume and composition of body fluid compartments, 45
 insufficiency 74
 shutdown *See also* Renal failure
 acute 75
 causes of 75
 causes nephrotic necrosis, 76
 tubulorhexis, 76
 clinical course of 76
 use of artificial kidney in 79
 prognosis, 81
 tubules, distal, 46
 effect of epinephrine on function of 42
 effect of norepinephrine on function of 42
 excretory capacity 47
 functions of 46
 effect of adrenocortical hormones on, 44

Renal—*continued*
 proximal 46
 reabsorption of water by 45
 reabsorptive capacity measurement of 47
 role in body fluid metabolism 42
 Research isotopes used in 201
 Reticulum of connective tissue 105
 functions of 106
 Respiration *See also* Pulmonary ventilation
 artificial *See* Artificial respiration
 central responses influencing, 470
 control of in anesthesia 518
 technique of 518
 difficulties in 523
 dysfunction of due to excision of pulmonary tissue 493
 effect of anoxemia on 471
 effect of anoxia on, 471
 effect of arterial oxygen tension on, 470
 effect of influences from aortic arch on 470
 effect of pulmonary vagal reflexes on 470
 effect of reflexes elicited from carotid sinus on, 470
 effect on pulmonary circulation, 496
 enlargement of bronchi in, 472
 expiratory center 468
 increased requirements during exercise accessory muscles used in, 472
 influence of pulmonary vagal reflexes on, 470
 inspiration and expiration, relative time required for 492
 speed of 492
 inspiratory center 468
 management in trauma importance of 5
 muscles of 472
 diaphragm 472
 external intercostal 472
 inadequacy hypoxia due to 524
 normal 473
 paradoxical motion in 473
 physiology of 468
 primary afferent impulse of course of 472
 problems in, in newborn and premature babies, 634
 reflexes influencing, 470
 regulation of 471
 relative time required for inspiration and expiration, 492
 role of aortic body in, 355
 role of carbon dioxide in control of 470
 role of carotid body in 355
 speed of normal inspiration and expiration, 492
 stimulation of CO₂ tension versus blood pH as, 471
 time required for chest to return to resting expiratory level 492
 voluntary and automatic aspects of 468
 with closed pneumothorax 473
 with open pneumothorax 473

Respiratory

- acidosis, in emphysema, 486
 - in infants, during anesthesia, 638
- alkalosis, in hyperventilation, 486
- center, reflexes influenced by, 469
 - reflexes which influence, 469
- subsidiary, 470
- compensation, in regulation of blood pH, 39
- cycle, intrapleural pressure fluctuations during, 473
- dead space, types of, 485
 - volume of, 487
- function, estimation of, 480
 - relation to anesthesia, 512
- obstruction, due to injury of recurrent laryngeal nerves, 549
 - following thyroidectomy, 550
- paralysis, in anesthesia, 516
 - stage of, in general anesthesia, 514
- quotient, use in studying nutritional processes, 89
- symptoms, from pulmonary hypertension, etiology of, 384
- system, effects of hypothermia on, 373
 - in trauma, 10
- tract, innervation of, 614
 - sympathetic nerves of, 469
 - vagus nerves of, 469
- Rest pain, due to ischemia, 411
- Rh negatives, incidence of, 270
- Rh system, of blood groups, 270
- Rhizotomies, for relief of pain, 619
- Ribonucleic acid core, of virus, essential genetic element, 194
- Ribs, multiple fractures of, flail chest due to, 5, 509
 - traction of, in stabilization of chest wall, 509
- Riedel's struma *See* Thyroiditis, chronic
- Risus sardonicus, in tetanus infection, 147
- Roentgen examination, of skull, in trauma, 2
- Roentgen rays, effect on wound healing, 113
- Roux "Y" loop, length for defunctionalization, 324
- Rubella, during pregnancy, effects on fetus, 629

S

- Sage respiration calorimeter, 367
- Saline, infusions of, use in treatment of shock, 362
 - solution, for fluid loss replacement, in intestinal obstruction, 333
 - in management of pancreatitis, 262
- Saliva, daily volume, 49
 - digestive functions of, 287
 - mechanical functions of, 287
- Salivary
 - fistula, management of, 287
 - glands, 287

Salivary—*continued*

- calculi of, findings in, 288
 - management of, 288
- diseases of, 288
- infection of, 288
- nervous influences on, 287
- secretion of, 287
- tumor of, 288
- Salt *See also* Sodium chloride
 - and water loss, with metabolic alkalosis, fluid imbalance in, 69
 - depletion, absence of thirst in, 50
 - and water depletion, mixed, comparison with water depletion, 50
 - body water and, clinical findings, 51
 - cellular overhydration in, 51
 - clinical findings in, 50
 - effect on circulatory efficiency, 51
 - experimental observations in man, 50
 - pure, 50
 - excess, 52
 - absolute, 52
 - brain lesions in, 54
 - clinical occurrence of, 52
 - reflected in elevated chloride levels, 53
 - reflected in elevated plasma sodium levels, 53
 - relative, 52
 - loss of, balanced, in small bowel obstruction, 72
 - metabolism, in burn patients, 162
 - in stress, 14
 - role of adrenal cortex in, 43
 - role of hypothalamus in, 608
 - osmolar, deficit, diagnosis of, 67
 - restriction of intake, in ascites, 237
 - solution, effect on weight of newborn, 54
 - syndrome, low, in biliary fistulae, 74
- Saphenous vein *See also* Vein, saphenous
 - long, competency of, tests for, 451
- Scald burns, 151
- Scalenus anticus syndrome, 425
 - lesions causing, 426
 - diagnosis of, 426
 - management of, dependent on etiology, 426
 - pain in, 426
- Scalp, lacerations of, in acute head injuries, 621
- Schafer prone method of artificial respiration, 175
- Scintigram, following administration of radioiodine, 543
- Secretin, formation of, 251
 - possible hypophyseal regulation of, 251
 - role in pancreatic secretion, 253
- Sedation, in burns, 163
- Seizures, convulsive, in water intoxication, 52
- Sensation, esophageal, 288
- Septal defect, atrial *See* Atrial septal defect
 - See* Interventricular septal defect

- septicemia fatality rate effect of antibiotics on 137
- Serosanguinous drainage profuse as sign of impending wound disruption 116
- Serotherapy of tetanus infection, 148
- Serotonin crisis from carcinoid tumor 330
- Serum
- and phosphate level in prostatic cancer 200
 - albumin level relation to edema in nephrosis 58
 - alkaline phosphatase level in jaundice 200
 - in liver function tests 220
 - amylase level, in pancreatic function tests, 256
 - in pancreatitis 256
 - in perforated ulcer 312
 - values in pancreatitis 200
 - bilirubin level, in acute pancreatitis 261
 - in liver function tests 221
 - calcium level in acute pancreatitis 261
 - in hyperparathyroidism 558
 - cholesterol content in liver function tests, 225
 - Epsa level in pancreatic function tests 256
 - in pancreatitis 256
 - macroprotein level in liver function tests 226
 - phosphatase level alkaline in hyperparathyroidism 558
 - protein bound iodine level of normal range of 544
 - relationship to thyroid activity 542
 - protein level, in liver function tests 221
 - prothrombin level in liver function tests 225
- Sex, activity in postoperative convalescence 26
- capacity for effect of aging on 218
- effect on metabolism 97
- relation of blood volume to 353
- Shivering body heat production by 365
- Shock. *See also* Shock surgical
- blood pressure rise following transfusion good sign in 360
 - caused by bowel perforation 133
 - causes of 5
 - cardiovascular accident 5
 - cold, 418
 - due to accidental transfusion of staphylococci 133
 - due to acute pericardial tamponade, 378
 - due to bacteremia 5
 - due to endotoxin, 132
 - during operation 360
 - causes of 356 360 361
 - due to anesthesia, 360
 - during postoperative period 361
 - causes of 361
 - effects on carbohydrate metabolism 367
 - effects on nitrogen metabolism 356
 - following resection of pheochromocytomas, 585
 - mechanism of 585
 - following trauma, causes of 2
- Shock—continued
- genesis of role of adrenal cortex in 359
 - in acute adrenocortical failure 678
 - in acute head injuries treatment of 624
 - in acute pancreatitis, 262
 - in trauma 2
 - indication of arterial blood pressure level 356
 - irreversible causes of 9 356
 - cross perfusion of liver as protection against, 358
 - in gangrene 4
 - nature of 350
 - pathogenesis of 354
 - role of heart failure in 359
 - role of liver in 358
 - vasodepressor material in 358
 - vaso-excitor material in 358
 - management of norepinephrine in, 4 362
 - use of plasma expanders in 362
 - use of saline infusions in 362
 - metabolic changes in 356
 - persistent probable blood loss in adult in, 360
 - predisposing factors in 359
 - preoperative causes of 359
 - prevention of tissue anoxia in, 359
 - surgical. *See also* Shock
 - causes of 355
 - clinical findings in 356
 - metabolic changes in 356
 - terminal fever due to 360
 - therapeutic considerations in, 350
- Shotgun wounds 6
- Shoulder-hand syndrome angiography in 426
- causes of 613
 - nature of 613
 - sympathetic nerve reflex in, 426
- Shunting procedure venous, when to use 238
- Shunts, artificial production of in correction of tetralogy of Fallot, 402
- operations for in tetralogy of Fallot, prognosis following, 402
- vascular flow direction regulated by pressure on sides of defect, 392
- general distribution of in body, 393
 - nature of 393
- Sialolithiasis, 268
- Silvester method of artificial respiration 476
- Singultus. *See* Hiccups
- Sinusoids, liver 236
- Skeleton congenital anomalies of 631
- Skin blotching of familial 610
- color of bluish to bluish red mottling 414
 - brownish 414
 - changes in in Raynaud's disease 423
 - due to cold, 418
 - diagnostic value 413
 - duky red 414
 - effect of amount and color of blood on 412

Skin—continued

- in acrocyanosis, 414
 - in erythromelalgia, 412
 - in peripheral arterial disease, 414
 - in peripherovascular disease, 412, 414
 - in Raynaud's phenomenon, 412
 - in reactive hyperemia, 413
 - in von Recklinghausen's neurofibromatosis, 626
 - of extremity, in ischemia, 413
 - pink-burning, 413
 - stasis pigmentation, 414
 - grafts, after excision of stasis ulcer, 460
 - clinical use of homografts, 120
 - effect of malnutrition on effect of, 85
 - factors in host affecting, 120
 - oxygen tension of, measurement of, 417
 - reflexes of, in anesthesia, 518
 - temperature of, diagnostic value, 417
 - effect on cyanosis, 413
 - factors influencing, 414
 - in arteriovenous fistula, 448
 - in peripherovascular disease, 414, 417
 - measurement of, 414
 - technics, 417
 - transplanting, 118
 - striae, in rapid fat deposition, 19
 - trophic alterations, 414
 - wound, healing of, 108, 109
- Skull**, roentgen examination, in trauma, 2
- Sleep**, effect of hypothalamus on, 609
- Slough**, removal of, in burn patients, 164
- Smoking**, ballistocardiographic changes due to, 429
 - ECG changes following, in patients with coronary disease, 428
 - etiologic role in thromboangitis obliterans, 428
 - habit of, a constitutional conditioning to nicotine, 429
 - influence on vascular system, 428
- Sodium**
- bicarbonate carbonic acid ratio, 40
 - in practical acid-base management, 40
 - efficacy as alkalizing compound, 39
 - infusion into vein, effects of, 39
 - chloride *See also* Salt
 - conservation by kidney, 45
 - in extracellular body water, 32
 - in urine, in salt and in water depletion, 51
 - levels, elevated, evidence of dehydration, 54
 - in salt excess, 53
 - loss in vomiting, renal compensation for, 41
 - renal excretion in stress, 14
 - conservation by kidney, 45
 - content, of body, abnormal, etiology of, 62
 - deficit, causes, 62
 - management of, 62
 - excretion, during treatment for burns, 159
 - of kidney, impairment in anorexia nervosa, 55
 - in extracellular fluid, 32

Sodium—continued

- ion, effects upon heart, 376
 - lactate, as alkalizing compound, 39
 - pentothal *See* Pentothal sodium
 - physiologic relationship to potassium, 64, 65
 - plasma levels, elevated, mechanism of, 62
 - etiology of, 62
 - low, management of, 62
 - syndromes of, 61
 - normal, estimating, 61
 - value in fluid therapy, 61
 - reciprocal physiologic relationship with potassium, 376
 - renal excretion, in cardiac edema, 57
 - in stress, 14
 - retention, in cardiac edema, 57
 - in portal cirrhosis, 59
 - shifts, between burned and unburned tissues, 158
 - thiocyanate, in measurement of body water, 31
 - tubular reabsorption, increased, effect of adrenocortical hormones on, 44
- Solution**, normal, definition of, 36
- Somatotropin**, 531
 - anatomical function of, 531
 - effects of administration of, 532
- Spectrum**, and effects produced, 189
- Sphincter**, of Oddi, effects of drugs on, 242
 - fibrous stricture of, 266
- Sphincterotomy**, for pancreatitis, 248
 - in chronic relapsing pancreatitis, 265
- Spiders**, arterial, 415
- Spinal**
- anesthesia *See* Anesthesia, spinal
 - block, to lower blood pressure, 364
- Spine**, prostatic metastases to, 178
- Spirograms**, data derived from, 492
 - use in testing lung function, 492
- Spirometer**, use to measure lung volumes and capacities, 488
- Spleen**, anatomy of, 280
 - arterial metastases to, explanation of, 178
 - blood cell regulation by, 280
 - capsular injury, splenectomy indicated in, 7
 - contraction, in stress, 11
 - dysfunction of, 280
 - enlargement of, in congenital hemolytic anemia, 284
 - examination, following injury, 7
 - in trauma, 11
 - normal, functions of, 280
- Splenectomy**, effects upon peripheral blood picture, 280
 - fever following, 280
 - hematologic effects of, 285
 - in capsular injury, indication for, 7
 - in congenital hemolytic anemia, 284
 - platelet count rise following, 283
 - results of, in thrombocytopenia, 283

- Splenic artery contribution to portal blood flow 213
- Splenoportogram in portal hypertension 210
- Splenoportal shunt 239
results of 239
- Spotum in trauma 10
- Stamm gastrotomy 101
- Standing effect on hydrostatic venous pressure of leg, 56
effect on tissue fluid flow 56
- Staphylococci accidental transfusion shock due to 133
- antibiotic resistance among strains of 125
- infections from increased morbidity in 143
- phage Group 3 of found in carriers in hospitals 144
- resistance to antibiotics, nature and development of 137
- typing, use of bacteriophage in, 127
- Staphylococcal enterocolitis 127
- Star veins 415
- Saturation, blood pressure levels in 97
- blood volume changes in 81
- edema, 55
- effects of on blood pressure 81
on blood volume 83
on body weight 83
on circulation 81
on endocrine organs 81
on heart 81
on hepatic function 81
on intestinal tract food acceptance 81
on muscular strength 81
- excess body water in 83
- fatty liver in, 95
- hospital, 98
- human, experimental effects of 83
- maternal, congenital malformations due to 85
- miscellaneous effects 81
- nutritional anemias in 85
- psychiatric changes in, 81
- tuberculosis in 127
- weight loss in 83
- Stasis ulcer excision of technic 400
with skin grafting, 400
of lower leg, management of 458
conservative measures, 458
patient cooperation needed 458
prophylaxis of 458
operative treatment of 450
prognosis, 450
technic, 450
postoperative management of 459
- Steroids, adrenal corticoid role in body fluid metabolism 42
- Stockings, elastic use in management of varicose veins, 456
- Stomach acid-secreting cells of location, 314
anatomy of regional 290
antrum of gastrin secreted by 300
dis ease of location of pain in, 618
effect of emotions on, 602
hyperacidity of in absence of peptic ulcerations, 305
influence of emotions on 601
innervation of 611
pepsin secretion by 301
peptic activity of 301
- Stomach ulcer location of pain in 618
- Stools inspection of in jaundiced patient, 234
- Strength muscular effect of starvation on 84
- Streptococci ability to lyse fibrin barrier 131
effectiveness of erythromycin against 141
failure to develop marked antibiotic resistance 138
resistance to antibiotics nature and development of 137
- Streptodornase
base reaction, 213
complications in use of 212
preparation for use 212
properties of 212
use in treatment of clots in urinary bladder 213
use in treatment of contaminated wounds, 213
use in treatment of intrapleural collections of pus or blood 212
uses of 212
- Streptokinase base reaction 213
complications in use of 212
preparation for use 212
properties of 212
use in treatment of contaminated wounds, 213
use in treatment of clots in urinary bladder 213
use in treatment of intrapleural collections of pus or blood 212
uses of 212
- Streptomycin administration of 139
antibacterial spectrum of 139
8th nerve damage from 140
dosage 139
properties of 139
uses of 139
in tuberculosis, 146
- Stress See also Emotions
autonomic reaction, 590
carbohydrate metabolism in, 18
cultural backgrounds and 600
diabetes, 11 18
effects of in asthma, 604
on cardiovascular system 603
on colon, 603
on diabetes mellitus, 604
on duodenum 602
on gastrointestinal tract 10
on stomach 602

Stress—*continued*

- on thyroid function, 604
- factors in American culture promoting, 601
- influence on stomach, 601
- metabolism of lipids in, 19
- pituitary gland stimulation in, 13
- response, muscle participation in, 20
- role in peptic ulceration, 601
- role of enzymes in, 21
- salt metabolism in, 14
- water metabolism in, 14
- Struma lymphomatosa, 553
- Stupor, in increased intracranial pressure, 622
- Subatomic particles, schematic representation, 190
- Subconscious influences, on measurable body functions, 602
- Submaxillary gland, excision of, for calculi, 288
- Succinyl Choline, use in treatment of laryngospasm, 517
- Succus entericus*, of small intestine, 322
- Sucking wounds, of chest, 509
- Suction, continuous, short-tube *versus* long-tube, in intestinal obstruction management, 332
- Sulfadiazine, uses of, 142
- Sulfasuxidine, uses of, 142
- Sulfathalidine, uses of, 142
- Sulfonamides, properties of, 142
- use of, 138, 142
- Suppuration, 135
- Surgery, fluid imbalance states in, 69
 - lymphedema in, 59
 - pathologic fluid states in, 69
 - problems in, arising from nutritional inadequacy, 85
 - stress of, fever in, case study, 371
- Suture materials, role in wound disruptions, 114
- Suturing, vascular anastomoses, 121
- Swallowing, nervous system control of, 288
- reflex, in general anesthesia, 516
- Sweat, body heat cooling by, 365
- daily volume, 49
- glands, absence of, fever due to, 370
- volume secreted, reduction in stress, 15
- Sweating, postoperative, 20
- Swelling, due to cold injury, 420
- Sympathectomy, cervical, alternative pathways in, 425
 - fiber regeneration in, 425
 - in management of Raynaud's disease, 424
 - reasons for failure of, in Raynaud's disease, 425
- extensive, fever due to, 369
- in treatment of chronic relapsing pancreatitis, 266
- in treatment of thromboangitis obliterans, 130
- in treatment of vascular system disorders, 612
- lumbar, in arterial occlusion, 433
- Sympathetic block, in management of pancreatitis, 262

- Sympathetic nerves, peripheral distribution
- Sympathin, effect in autonomic nervous system, 612
- Synergism, in antibiotic therapy, nature of antibiotics, establishing presence of, 136

T

- Tamponade, pericardial *See* Pericardial effusion
- Tapazole, use as an antithyroid drug, 6
- Teeth, extractions of, positive blood cultures, 134
- Temperatures, abnormal, some causes
 - changes in, positive blood cultures at comfort zone, 367
 - effect of thoracoplasty on, 20
 - in stress, 20
 - measurement of, clinical, 368
 - of body, regulation *See* Body temperature
 - of limb, effect of cold on, 419
- Temporal lobe, lesions of, in increased intracranial pressure, 623
- Tendon, wound, healing of, 110
- transplanting, 119
- Teratogenic agents, types of, 630
- Terramycin, antibacterial spectrum, 141
- dosage, 141
- properties of, 140
- uses of, 140
- Testosterone, edema caused by, 59
- effect on nitrogen balance, 16
- effect on nitrogen excretion, 98
- Testosterone propionate, dosage, in treatment of breast cancer, 183
- use in cancer of breast, 183
- Tetanus
 - antitoxin, 148
 - in thermal burns, prophylaxis of, 164
 - infection, coma in, 147
 - infection, etiology of, 147
 - exotoxin of, 147
 - immunization against, active, 148
 - latency of, 147
 - management of, 147
 - pathogenesis of, 147
 - portals of entry, 147
 - prognosis in, 148
 - respiratory failure in, 147
 - serotherapy, 148
 - signs of, 147
 - symptoms of, 117
 - types of, 147
- Tetany, during corticosteroid therapy, 58
- following excision of parathyroid adenoma
- Tetracycline, dosage, 141
- properties of, 111
- Tetracyan, 141

- etiology of Fallot 303, 309
- angiography in, 401
- arterial oxygen desaturation in 400
- clinical findings in 400
- cyanosis in, 400
- ECG in, 401
- fluoroscopic in 401
- pathology of 309
- pathophysiology of 309
- roentgenograms in 401
- shunt operations for correction of 402
 - prognosis following, 402
- surgical correction of 402
- thermal burns *See* Burns
- thermal injury, types of 151
- thermocouples, use in measuring skin temperature 417
- thermometers, clinical inaccuracy of 368
- humane role as coenzyme 208
- thoracic space changes in burn patients 160
- thopental sodium *See* Pentothal sodium
- thiouracil, an antithyroid drug 341
- use in management of hyperthyroidism 345
- fluid space" concept of 62
 - examples of 62
- replenishing plasma volume from 63
- sequestration of fluid in 63
- thirst 93
 - absence of in salt depletion 51
 - in salt and in water depletion 51
 - initial symptom in water depletion 50
 - origin of sensation of 93
 - studies in 93
- thoracic cordotomy for relief of pain 619
- thoracoplasty effects of on body weight 20
 - on corticoid excretion 24
 - on eosinophil count 24
 - on 17-ketosteroid excretion 24
 - on nitrogen metabolism 17
 - on temperature 20
- following pneumonectomy effect on mechanics of ventilation on other side 491
 - necessity for 493
- thorax, anterior gunshot wound of 111
- surgery on traction reflexes during, 517
- thrill, due to patent ductus arteriosus, 394
- thrombin, activation of by accelerator system 274
 - conversion of fibrinogen to fibrin by 275
 - properties of 275
- thrombongitis obliterans, 426
 - clinical findings in 426
 - definition of 426
 - diagnosis of 430
 - etiology of 428
 - false felon in, 430
 - gangrene in 430
 - migratory phlebitis, 427
 - pathologic findings in, 427
- Thrombongitis obliterans—*continued*
 - preponderance in males 428
 - rare in nonsmokers 429
 - Raynaud's phenomenon in 429
 - recanalization of occluded vessels in, 427
 - segmental character of 427
 - smoking in etiology of 428
 - treatment of 430
 - conservative measures of 430
 - surgical measures of 430
 - sympathectomy in 430
 - with vasodilating drugs 430
 - with superimposed Raynaud's phenomenon 428
- Thrombocytopenia *See also* Purpura idiopathica
 - thrombocytopenic
 - mechanism and pathogenesis of 278
 - treatment of 277
- Thromboendarterectomy, technic of 435
 - use in occlusive disease of aorta 435
- Thrombophlebitis 456
 - acute management of 458
 - use of anticoagulants in 457
 - diagnosis of 456
 - etiology of 456
 - surgical 458
 - signs of 456
 - symptoms of 456
 - use of antibiotics in 458
 - use of anticoagulants in hazards of 457
 - rationale for 457
- Thromboplastin, deficiency of effect on blood coagulation 277
 - factors properties of 275
 - release in tissue injury 274
 - sources of 274
- Thyroid testing 226
- Thyroglobulin 535
- Thyroid 534
 - activity of effect of aging on 218
 - following operation, 14
 - following thermal burns 155
 - in infants 536
 - measurement using radioactive iodine 204
 - protein bound iodine level of serum relation ship to 542
 - carcinoma of in center of solitary nodule 548
 - crisis 551
 - adrenocortical hormones during, 553
 - case study of 551
 - due to massive dose of radioiodine 546
 - embryology of 534
 - function of effects of stress on 604
 - following hypophysectomy 533
 - gland activity of rate of radioactive uptake as measurement of 542
 - anatomic relationships of 535
 - appearance of role of iodine cycle in 535
 - changes in during physiological development 553

Thyroid—continued

- colloid in, 536
- effect of adrenocortical hormones on activity of, 552
- iodinated amino acids found in, structural formulas of, 536
- iodine cycle in, 535
- iodine in, quantity of, 536
- microscopic pathology of, 535
- operations on, possible damage to surrounding structures during, 535
- relation to other endocrine glands and organs, 552
- solitary nodules in, hyperplastic rather than neoplastic in many instances, 548
- significance of, 548
- hormone, absence of, edema caused by, 59
- effects upon body metabolism, 14
- mechanism of action of, 539
- in etiology of cancer, 171
- overactive *See* Hyperthyroidism
- role in conversion of iodide to iodine, 536
- role in iodine metabolism, 537
- stimulating hormone *See* TSH
- substance, desiccated, dosage with, 538
- effect on secretion of thyrotropin, 548
- use in treatment of colloid goiter, 548
- underactive *See* Hypothyroidism
- Thyroidectomy, complications of, 549
- hypoparathyroidism, 549
- malignant exophthalmos, 552
- postoperative hemorrhage with respiratory obstruction, 550
- recurrent laryngeal nerve injury, 549
- recurrent thyrotoxicosis, 552
- thyroid crisis, 551
- exposure of laryngeal nerves during, importance of, 549
- injury to recurrent laryngeal nerves in, 549
- postoperative hemorrhage, onset of, 550
- signs of, 550
- tracheostomy for, 550
- total, production of pituitary hypertrophy by, 552
- Thyroiditis, 553
- chronic, 553
- nature of, 553
- treatment of, 553
- subacute type, 553
- treatment of, 553
- woody *See* Thyroiditis, chronic
- Thyrotoxicosis, during pregnancy, management of, 545
- fever due to, 369
- management of, 544
- nutritional deficits associated with, 547
- operative treatment of, 547
- preoperative treatment of, 546
- propylthiouracil in treatment of, 547

Thyrotoxicosis—continued

- recurrent, following thyroidectomy, 552
- management of, 552
- Thyrotropin *See also* TSH
- effect of thyroid substance on secretion of, 5
- Thyroxine, conversion of radioiodine to, rate as measurement of thyroid activity, formation of, 536
- location in system, 538
- metabolic effects of, 538
- physiological effects of, 538
- release into blood stream, principle of, 53
- role in body fluid metabolism, 42
- time to take effect, 14
- Tissue, anoxia of, prevention of, 359
- autogenous human, grafts of, behavior of, 11
- bacteria in, normal mechanism for clearing, connective, dynamic state of, 106
- embryology of, 104
- fibillar elements of, 105
- ground substance of, 104
- loose areolar, functions of, 104
- physiology of, 104
- major components of, 104
- role in repair of wounds, 106
- culture, blood plasma as medium for, 117
- early work in, 117
- technics of, 118
- damage, transaminase levels as index of, 210
- injury of, thromboplastin release in, 274
- lean, gain of, 35
- loss of, 35
- oxygen requirements of, reduced, during hyperthermia, 372
- oxygenation, hypoxia due to inadequate, 524
- protein, formation, role of potassium stores 17
- traction, in stabilization of chest wall, 506
- transplantation of, 116
- autogenous human, grafts, 119
- historical review, 116
- homografts, 119
- homotransplantation, 118
- parabiosis, 116
- tissue culture, 117
- whole, gain of, 35
- loss of, 35
- Toxemia, stage of, in thermal burns, 158
- Toxin production of bacteria, effect of chemical environment on, 130
- Tourniquet test, positive, mechanism and pathogenesis, 278
- Toxoid, use for immunization against tetanus, 1
- Trachea, congenital anomalies of, 631
- Tracheal suction, with catheter, 475
- Tracheobronchial airway, obstruction of, hypox due to, 524
- Tracheobronchial tree, cleared by cough reflex 173

- Tracheocephalic fistulas, 290
 causes of 290
 management of 290
 pathogenesis of 330
 Tracheostomy: beneficial effects 3
 in acute head injuries 623
 in wounds of mouth 8
 use in post-thyroidectomy hemorrhage 530
 Tracheal reflexes in anesthesia 517
 Tractotomies for relief of pain 619
 Transmucosal levels following injury 210
 Transplantation. *See* Tissue transplantation
 Trauma, acute: management of 1
 order of physiologic urgency 1
 adrenal medullary response to 11
 body temperature in 20
 cistogram in 3
 diminished sweating in 13
 due to injury: case history of 1
 coma in 2
 fat embolism to brain in 3
 management 3
 physical examination in 2
 roentgen examination in 2
 shock in 2
 effects on circulation 8
 effects on gastrointestinal tract 10
 endocrine glands in 11
 gallbladder in, 11
 hormone secretion in 12
 hypertensive response following 9
 irreversible shock following 9
 kidneys in 11
 liver in, 7 11
 lower nephron nephrosis in 5
 management of: importance of circulation in 5
 importance of respiration in 5
 physiologic requirements 5
 massive low plasma sodium level following, 61
 metabolic response to 11
 muscles in, 11
 nervous system in, 11
 neuroendocrine response to 11
 activation of 13
 nitrogen metabolism in 15
 of abdomen, 11
 routine for exploration in, 6
 systematic routine in 7
 orthostatic hypotension following 9
 pancreas in 7 11
 pituitary response to 12
 postural circulatory reflexes following 9
 pulmonary compliance reduction of 10
 pyelogram in 3
 respiratory system in 10
 severe mortality rate following 5
 shock following, causes of 2
 spleen in 11
 urinary tract in 7
 Trench foot 418
 Trendelenburg test for competency in saphenous vein 151
 Triiodothyronine effects when injected 14
 formation of 536
 metabolic effects of 538
 physiologic effects: time necessary to detect, 538
 Trypsin: aerosol of therapeutic use 214
 parenteral therapeutic uses 214
 properties of 214
 secreted by pancreas 201
 uses of 214
 Trypsinogen conversion to trypsin by 252
 Tryptophane deficiency: effects of 87
 TSH: control of pituitary activity by 538
 effects of administration of 531
 in etiology of cancer 171
 physiologic action of 531
 role in etiology of Graves disease 531
 secretion in trauma 12
 Tube feeding, in tetanus infection 148
 oral formula for 101
 pump for 101
 Tube suction in management of intestinal obstruction 330
 Tubecost method of study of gastric activity 303
 Tuberculosis: cavity of similarity to cavity of lung abscess 508
 chemotherapy of 110
 etiology of 506
 human type: nature of resistance of cattle and rabbits against, 128
 microorganisms of bovine *versus* human types: pathogenicity of 128
 starvation and 127
 treatment of: mechanics of healing 508
 use of isoniazid in 146
 use of PAS in 146
 use of streptomycin in 146
 versus lung abscess, rates of healing of 507
 Tubulorrhexis, renal shutdown caused by 78
 Tumors: *See* Cancer *see also* under individual organs
 benign cell adherence mechanism 178
 inability to invade 178
 fever due to 369
 intrathoracic 502
 malignant. *See* Cancer
 of esophagus, 290
 Tumors: syncopal causes of 408
 Twins, conjoined: pathogenesis of 630
 identical cancer in 168
 homotransplantation between 118

U

- Ulcer: peptic *See* Peptic ulcer
 Ulcerative colitis, chronic idiopathic 341
 clinical findings in, 342

Thyroid—*continued*

- colloid in, 536
- effect of adrenocortical hormones on activity of, 552
- iodinated amino acids found in, structural formulas of, 536
- iodine cycle in, 535
- iodine in, quantity of, 536
- microscopic pathology of, 535
- operations on, possible damage to surrounding structures during, 535
- relation to other endocrine glands and organs, 552
- solitary nodules in, hyperplastic rather than neoplastic in many instances, 548
- significance of, 548
- hormone, absence of, edema caused by, 59
- effects upon body metabolism, 14
- mechanism of action of, 539
- in etiology of cancer, 171
- overactive *See* Hyperthyroidism
- role in conversion of iodide to iodine, 536
- role in iodine metabolism, 537
- stimulating hormone *See* TSH
- substance, desiccated, dosage with, 538
- effect on secretion of thyrotropin, 548
- use in treatment of colloid goiter, 548
- underactive *See* Hypothyroidism
- Thyroidectomy, complications of, 549
- hypoparathyroidism, 549
- malignant exophthalmos, 552
- postoperative hemorrhage with respiratory obstruction, 550
- recurrent laryngeal nerve injury, 549
- recurrent thyrotoxicosis, 552
- thyroid crisis, 551
- exposure of laryngeal nerves during, importance of, 549
- injury to recurrent laryngeal nerves in, 549
- postoperative hemorrhage, onset of, 550
- signs of, 550
- tracheostomy for, 550
- total, production of pituitary hypertrophy by, 552

Thyroiditis, 553

- chronic, 553
- nature of, 553
- treatment of, 553
- subacute type, 553
- treatment of, 553
- woody *See* Thyroiditis, chronic

Thyrotoxicosis, during pregnancy, management of, 545

- fever due to, 369
- management of, 544
- nutritional deficits associated with, 547
- operative treatment of, 547
- preoperative treatment of, 546
- propylthiouracil in treatment of, 547

Thyrotoxicosis—*continued*

- recurrent, following thyroidectomy, 552
- management of, 552
- Thyrotropin *See also* TSH
- effect of thyroid substance on secretion of, 54
- Thyroxine, conversion of radioiodine to, rate of, 54
- as measurement of thyroid activity, 54
- formation of, 536
- location in system, 538
- metabolic effects of, 538
- physiological effects of, 538
- release into blood stream, principle of, 536
- role in body fluid metabolism, 42
- time to take effect, 14
- Tissue, anoxia of, prevention of, 359
- autogenous human, grafts of, behavior of, 119
- bacteria in, normal mechanism for clearing, 119
- connective, dynamic state of, 106
- embryology of, 104
- fibrillar elements of, 105
- ground substance of, 104
- loose areolar, functions of, 104
- physiology of, 104
- major components of, 104
- role in repair of wounds, 106
- culture, blood plasma as medium for, 117
- early work in, 117
- technics of, 118
- damage, transaminase levels as index of, 210
- injury of, thromboplastin release in, 274
- lean, gain of, 35
- loss of, 35
- oxygen requirements of, reduced, during hypothermia, 372
- oxygenation, hypoxia due to inadequate, 524
- protein, formation, role of potassium stores in, 17
- traction, in stabilization of chest wall, 509
- transplantation of, 116
- autogenous human, grafts, 119
- historical review, 116
- homografts, 119
- homotransplantation, 118
- parabiosis, 116
- tissue culture, 117
- whole, gain of, 35
- loss of, 35
- Toxemia, stage of, in thermal burns, 158
- Toxin production of bacteria, effect of chemical environment on, 130
- Tourniquet test, positive, mechanism and pathogenesis, 278
- Toxoid, use for immunization against tetanus, 119
- Trachea, congenital anomalies of, 631
- Tracheal suction, with catheter, 475
- Tracheobronchial airway, obstruction of, hypoxia due to, 524
- Tracheobronchial tree, cleared by cough reflex, 473

- atherosophageal fistulae 200
 rates of 290
 management of 290
 aithogenesis of 630
 aithotomy beneficial effects 3
 in acute head injuries 623
 in wounds of mouth 8
 use in post-thyroidectomy hemorrhage 530
 action reflexes, in anesthesia 517
 aithotomies for relief of pain 619
 anastomotic levels following injury 210
 anastomosis *See* Tissue transplantation
 anastomosis, acute management of 1
 order of physiologic urgency 1
 arterial medullary response to 11
 body temperature in 70
 cystogram in 3
 diminished sweating in 13
 due to injury case history of 1
 coma in, 2
 fat embolism to brain in 3
 management 3
 physical examination in 2
 roentgen examination in 2
 shock in, 2
 effects on circulation, 8
 effects on gastrointestinal tract, 10
 endocrine glands in 11
 gallbladder in, 11
 hormone secretion in, 12
 hypertensive response following, 9
 irreversible shock following 9
 kidneys in, 11
 liver in 7 11
 lower nephron nephrosis in 3
 management of importance of circulation in, 5
 importance of respiration in, 5
 physiologic requirements 5
 massive low plasma sodium level following, 61
 metabolic response to 11
 muscles in, 11
 nervous system in 11
 neuroendocrine response to 11
 activation of 13
 nitrogen metabolism in, 15
 of abdomen 6
 routine for exploration in 6
 systematic routine in 7
 orthostatic hypotension following 9
 pancreas in 7 11
 pituitary response to 11
 postural circulatory reflexes following 9
 pulmonary compliance reduction of 10
 pyelogram in, 3
 respiratory system in 10
 severe mortality rate following, 5
 shock following causes of 2
 spleen in 11
 urinary tract in, 7
 Trench foot 418
 Trendelenburg test for competency in saphenous vein 451
 Truodothyronine effects when injected, 14
 formation of 538
 metabolic effects of 538
 physiologic effects time necessary to detect, 538
 Trypan acrosol of therapeutic use 214
 parenteral therapeutic uses 214
 properties of 214
 secreted by pancreas 251
 uses of 214
 Trypogen conversion to trypsin by 252
 Tryptophano deficiency effects of 87
 TSH control of pituitary activity by 538
 effects of administration of 531
 in etiology of cancer 171
 physiological action of 531
 role in etiology of Graves disease 531
 secretion in trauma, 12
 Tube feeding in tetanus infection 148
 oral, formula for 101
 pump for 101
 Tube suction in management of intestinal obstruction 330
 Tubeloss method of study of gastric activity 303
 Tuberculosis, cavity of similarity to cavity of lung abscess 508
 chemotherapy of 146
 etiology of 506
 human type nature of resistance of cattle and rabbits against 128
 microorganisms of bovine versus human types, pathogenicity of 128
 starvation and 127
 treatment of mechanics of healing, 508
 use of isoniazid in 146
 use of PAS in, 146
 use of streptomycin in, 146
 versus lung abscess, rates of healing of 507
 Tubulorrhexis renal shutdown caused by 76
 Tumors. *See* Cancer *see also* under individual organs
 benign, cell adherence mechanism 176
 inability to invade 176
 fever due to 369
 intrathoracic 502
 malignant *See* Cancer
 of esophagus 290
 Tumors syncope causes of 498
 Twins, conjoined pathogenesis of 630
 identical, cancer in 168
 homotransplantation between 118

Ulcerative colitis—*continued*

- definition of, 341
- emotional factors in etiology of, 342
- etiology of, current theories, 342
- functional element in, 603
- gross appearance of colon in, 342
- lysozyme increase in, 342
- management of, 342
 - physiologic basis of, 342
- psychogenic factors in, 603
- remissions in, 342
- symptoms of, 342
- Ulcerogenic tumors, of pancreas, 267
- Ulcers, peptic *See* Peptic ulcer
 - stasis *See* Stasis ulcer
- Ureachus, patent, 633
- Urea, use in measurement of body water, 28
- Uremia, clinical, syndrome of, 79
- Ureters, congenital anomalies of, 631
 - disease of, location of pain in, 618
 - injury to, 641
- Ureterosigmoidostomy, hazards of, 643
 - hyperchloremic acidosis following, mechanism of, 643
 - pathophysiology of, 643
 - prognosis for life following, 643
- Urethra, injuries of, 641
- Urethral stricture, with urinary extravasation, result of, 641
- Urinary
 - calculi, physical factors in formation of, 639
 - predisposing conditions for, 639
 - prevention of formation of, 640
 - colloids, protective effect against formation of calculi, 639
 - tract, bacterial flora, alteration during antibiotic therapy, 137
 - in trauma, 7
 - injuries of, 640
- Urine, acid, in presence of metabolic alkalosis, mechanism of, 65
 - blood in *See* Hematuria
 - excretion of, obligatory, 49
 - flow, rate of, relationship between blood pressure and, after thermal burn, 156
 - retention of, 641
 - acute, 641
 - management of, 642
 - chronic, 642
 - bladder decompression in, 643
 - causes of, 642
 - effect on kidneys, 642
 - electrolyte disorders caused by, 643
 - indwelling catheter in management of, 642
 - volume, changes, during burn therapy, 159
 - in burn patients, 161
 - in stress, 14
- Urobilinogen in urine test for, 225

Urology, considerations regarding, of special interest, 639

Uterus, disease of, location of pain in, 618

V

- Vagotomy, dumping as a complication of, 314
 - effects of, 314
 - on intestinal motility, 321
 - on pancreatic secretion, 254
 - on pepsin secretion, 304
 - gastric hunger contractions following, 92
 - in chronic relapsing pancreatitis, 265
 - in management of peptic ulcer, 314
 - weight gain following, 315
 - with gastroenterostomy, considerations, 315
- Vago-vagal reflex, in anesthesia, 517
- Vagus nerves, effect on respiration, 470
 - influence on heart rate, 375
- Valence, ionic, 36
- Valvulotomy, aortic, results of, 390
 - indications for, 385
 - mitral, acute pulmonary edema during, management of, 386
 - hemorrhage during, management of, 387
- Varicose veins, chronic ulcer of, 456
 - contributing factors, 453
 - diagnosis of, 454
 - etiology of, 453
 - incompetency of valves of various communicating venous systems in, 454
 - management of, surgical, 455
 - pathophysiology of, 451, 453
 - physical examination in, 455
 - recurrences of, causes of, 456
 - surgery for, techniques of, 455
 - symptomatology of, 454
 - ulceration in, management of, 454
 - venous stasis in, 451
 - management of, 454
- Varicose ulcer, chronic, 456
 - operative treatment of, 459
- Vascular
 - disease, diagnosis of, 410
 - effects, of endotoxins, 132
 - injuries, management of, 8
 - transfusions in, 8
 - system, influence of smoking on, 128
 - disorders, sympathectomy in treatment of, 612
- Vasodepressants, derived from liver, 358
- Vaso-excitants, derived from kidney, 358
- Vasomotor instability, in disease states, 56
- Vasomotor stability, in infants, 635
- Vasoneuropathy, in immersion foot, 118
- Venous, difficulty of studying, 151
 - diseases of, 151
 - history taking in, 152
 - methods of studying, 152
 - physical examination in, 152

Veins—continued

- pneuro in measurements of 452
- superficial, pressure in 452
- thrombotic diseases of miscellaneous manifestations, 460
- varicose *See* Varicose veins
- inferior vena cava inferior occlusion of 460
- superior obstruction of 461
 - causes of 461
 - diagnosis of 461
 - prognosis of 461
 - treatment of 461
 - vessel grafts in 461

Venacaval obstruction hydrostatic edema of legs in, 57

Venograms interpretation of pitfalls in 452
percutaneous spleno-portal valve in portacaval shunts 239

Venous

- arterial shunts hypoxia due to 524
- blood carbon dioxide removal from 482
- insufficiency chronic 458
- occlusion acute massive of lower extremity 462
 - diagnosis of 462
 - pathophysiology of 462
 - treatment of 462
- origin, edema of 57
- pressure hydrostatic of leg, effect of exercise and quiet standing on 56
- increased in cardiac edema 57
- return effect of mediastinal displacement on 5
- stasis, management of 454
- stasis 415
 - centripetal blood flow in 415
 - nature of 415
 - significance of 415

Ventilation, pulmonary *See* Pulmonary ventilation

Ventricular defibrillation mechanical defibrillator 530

- complicating induced hypothermia 372
- in anesthesia cause of 525
- management of during anesthesia 520
- potassium in management of 378
- use of potassium in treatment of 63

Virilism, in adrenogenital syndrome 571

Vitamins, neurotropic 128

See Neurotropic, 128

Vitamins, abdominal referred pain from mechanism of, 617

Vital capacity reduction following operation 10
Vitamin C deficiency of effect in wound healing 112

 effect on ground substance formation 104

Vitamin D use in hypoparathyroidism 560

Vitamin K effect on prothrombin level, 225

Vitamins, deficiencies of clinical manifestations of 87

 role as coenzymes 208

Volkman's ischemic contracture causes of 451

Volume (water) deficit diagnosis of 67

 illustrative case 69

Volumes per cent, for stating electrolyte values, use of milliequivalents for 37

Vomiting acid-base derangement produced by 72
chloride loss in renal compensation for 41

 complicating spinal anesthesia 523

 esophageal rupture in mechanism of 296

 in increased intracranial pressure 622

 in salt and in water depletion 51

 in small bowel obstruction 72

 pyloric obstruction with case history 60

 fluid imbalance in 69

 reflex in general anesthesia 516

Vomitus aspiration of during anesthesia 514

von Recklinghausen's disease general discussion of 626

 neurofibromatosis pigmentation in 620

W

Walking role in maintenance of muscle tone 57

Water

 and salt loss with metabolic alkalosis fluid imbalance in 60

 balance daily 18

 and conservation 48

 intake-output chart 48

 positive in water intoxication 52

 body 28

 deficit volume diagnosis of 67

 estimation of 67

 history taking in 67

 physical examination in 67

 depletion clinical findings of compared with salt depletion 51

 comparison with mixed water and salt depletion 50

 death in causes of 50

 deprivation complete length of survival in 50

 in man experimental observations in, 50

 diuresis in corticoid withdrawal phase of convalescence 23

 excess, in starvation, 83

 management of 62

 from food oxidation 48

 gastrointestinal conservation of 49

 heavy use in measurement of body water 28
 ingestion failure to produce diuresis in subjects depleted of salt 51

 intake of average adult 48
 intoxication clinical findings in 52

 difficulty to produce, when sodium chloride is administered 45

 effect of desoxycorticosterone on 45

 experimental production of 52

